

***Now I beseech you,
brethren, by the name of our
Lord Jesus Christ, that ye all
speak the same thing, and
that there be no divisions
among you; but that ye be
perfectly joined together in
the same mind and in the
same judgment... [1 Cor 1:10](#)***

***...your faith should not stand
in the wisdom of men, but in
the power of God. Howbeit
we speak wisdom among
them that are perfect
[“mature”]: yet not the
wisdom of this world, nor of
the princes of this world,
that come to nought: But we
speak the wisdom of God in
a mystery, even the hidden
wisdom, which God ordained
before the world unto our
glory... [1 Cor 2:5-7](#)***

***Now we have received, not
the spirit of the world, but
the spirit which is of God;
that we might know the
things that are freely given
to us of God. Which things
also we speak, not in the
words which man's wisdom
teacheth, but which the Holy
Ghost teacheth; comparing
spiritual things with spiritual
[1 Cor 2:12-13](#)***



The Raptures of The Great Tribulation

The Beginning Study in ***The Perfect Principles of The Doctrine of Christ Trilogy***

Copyright © 2009 by J. Arthur Hale; 1st printing May 2012; 2nd printing May 2016

Free downloads of book and audio recording by author (copyright © 2010) available at

www.archive.org/details/TheRapturesOfTheGreatTribulation (case sensitive)

Info at endtimesprophecywatch.wordpress.com; [Proverbs 23:23](#); [1 Peter 4:11](#)

The “Intermediate Study”, ***The Great Judgments of The Ages of Creation***, should be completed early next decade, ***God willing***, but should not be read before this ***study***

The “Advanced Study”, *The Fellowship of The Kingdom of God*, hopefully completed late next decade, *if God permit*, will certainly be *‘spiritually perilous’* to read before *‘mastering’* (read, becoming *apt to teach*) the first two, and still even then, *God knoweth*

The Raptures of The Great Tribulation

The Beginning Study in The Perfect Principles of the Doctrine of Christ Trilogy

J. Arthur Hale

Copyright © 2009, 2010

Begun Late Spring 2006 on the North American Continent

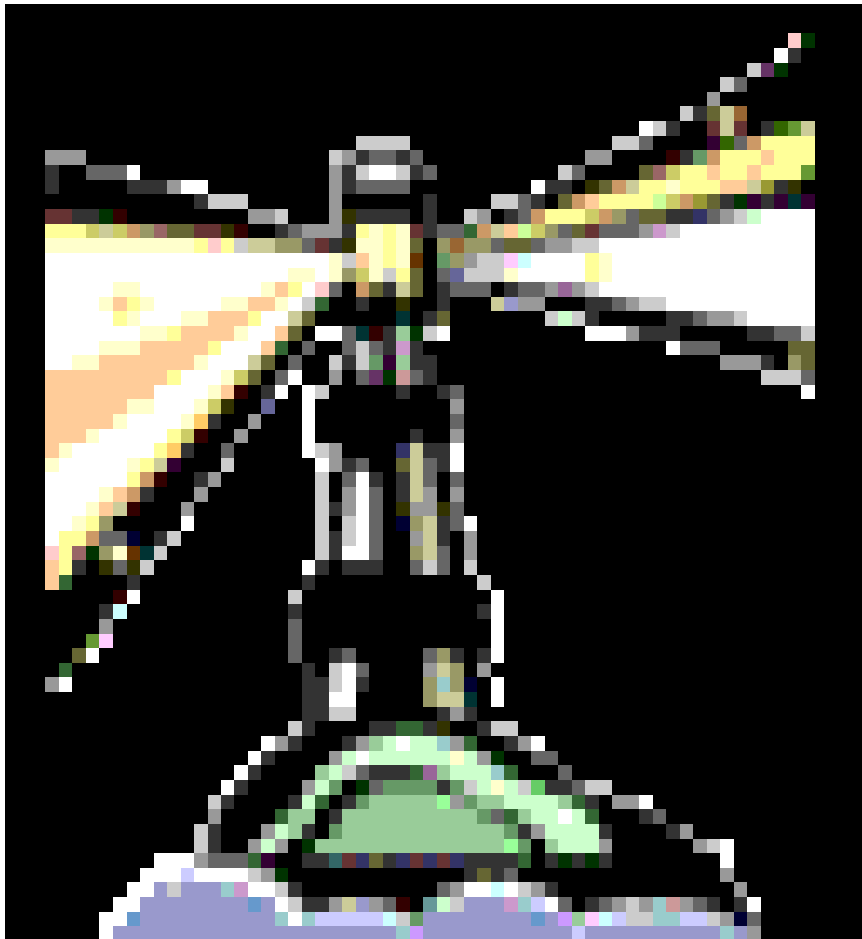
Free downloads of book and audio recording by author available at
Archive.org/details/TheRapturesOfTheGreatTribulation

- SECTION 1** Key Precepts of Bible Study and Key Terms of End Times
Prophecy
5 - 21
- SECTION 2** The Presently Revealed Mystery Church Age of Grace
22 - 27
- SECTION 3** The Coming Pretribulation Rapture of the Church,
28 - 37 The Mystery of Iniquity, and The Beginning of Sorrows
- SECTION 4** Overviews of The Great Tribulation in the Book of Revelation
38 - 84
- SECTION 5** The Coming Midtribulation Raptures, Part 1:
85 - 134 The Tribulation Gentiles and The Two Witnesses
- SECTION 6** The Coming Midtribulation Raptures, Part 2:
135 - 183 The 144,000 Jews and The Tribulation Jews
- SECTION 7** God, Satan, and the Antichrist in The Great Tribulation
184 - 309
- SECTION 8** The False Prophet and The Days of Vengeance
310 - 378
- SECTION 9** The Rapture of the Dead Jews to Israel
379 - 430 and The Demise of the Red Horse in The Sixth Seal Judgment
- SECTION 10** The Coming Posttribulation Raptures: The Final Harvest
Rapture to
431 - 463 The Marriage of The Lamb and The Rapture of Wrath to
Armageddon

SECTION 11 The Coming Premillennial Rapture of The First Resurrection
Martyrs,
464 - 517 The Millennial Kingdom, and The Last Rebellion

SECTION 12 The Coming Postmillennial Rapture of The Harvest at the End of
the World,
518 - 583 (The Second Resurrection and The Rapture of the Damned),
and The Eternal Age of Peace

* Page numbers in this printing no longer match online audio recording, but online text still does.



SECTION 1 Key Precepts of Bible Study and Key Terms of End Times Prophecy

Key Precepts of Bible Study

This **study** is only for those who already **know** Jesus. And for those who aren't afraid to get to know Him better. If this is not you, you should probably save yourself the frustration and stop now. I mean it's enough for some Christians to know that when they're raptured they're going to "sing and shout the victory" in the presence of Jesus. Sure we will. But it's really not that simple. And you can wait to get all the details when you get there. But you're likely to get some big and unpleasant surprises if you do. Because 'the whole picture' is much more provocative, challenging, and complicated than can be fully imagined. But if you think you're ready for a look at the whole **truth** and nothing but **the truth**, enter this future with me now. And I promise you a picture beyond your present wildest dreams.

But this kind of **experience** shouldn't be entirely new to you. After all, life is a journey that's about growth. And you know growing sometimes heals you. And sometimes it hurts. And it's the same with studying God's Word. Like life, it's a journey that's not complete without both healing and hurt. And growth is also about the unexpected. And the benchmarks of growth are the surprises along the way. And these surprises can sometimes be amazing and exhilarating, and at other times bring embarrassment, pain and shame. So such a journey is not best judged by any part of it. And it can't be judged by where you think you're going. It must instead be judged by where you start and how you plan to get there. But if you're not ready to **grow** you won't make it far. And besides these obstacles, there are endless diversions. And there are many other worthwhile journeys you can take besides this one. And this overview of end times **prophecy** might at first appear to be just another possible interpretation contending with all the others. This is why I can only proceed in **faith** that it's been God's plan all along to unify the Church on this subject before all of these events occur—that **the Spirit of truth** will really show us **all truth** concerning these future events before they all come to pass. And this is a goal worthy of a little **faith**. And it requires **faith** indeed because more than a little **patience** will also be required to get there. This is because **the truth** is best **understood** in the totality of **scripture** and beyond. And I mean we'll be looking for quite a big picture.

And naturally, this kind of **understanding** should take some time. It also has a preferred process. This would be a methodology that's specifically defined by **scripture**. And you shouldn't want it any other way. The essence of this process is identifiable in the proclamations of Moses and Jesus who both agree, **The Lord our God is one Lord**. And this could be a **study** in itself. But for now I just want to acknowledge that we see here that The Father, Jesus, and The Holy Spirit have Their act together, and that They are the source of **all truth**, and that we must agree with Them. This means that

there is altogether but one **truth** and one **interpretation** of the whole **Word of God**. And this makes it our job to **learn** through The Word of God how to agree with Them, and do so on Their terms—not try to convince Them to agree with us on ours. You may think you already agree with this and do this, but I expect that this **study** of end times **prophecy** may show many of you a different perspective.

This **study** is not like other studies. In it I'm not just following an outline. There's a process that's practiced in it that will allow you to **grow** beyond what you will **learn**. And this process is not simple or easily explained. My **experience** is that it's best **learned by experience**. And I mean this study is meant to provide that **experience**. And in the end you should **understand** why this is best learned along the way. Or to put it another way, this is a **study** where you'll be shown how to **study** by **experience** and as a side benefit **learn** how to **understand** end times prophecy. And like I have, you should sometimes **experience** a tedious journey, especially in the earlier sections. And sometimes a frustrating or upsetting journey, especially in the first half. And sometimes a confusing journey, especially for those new to Bible study. But sometimes **experience** a wildly fantastic, rollercoaster exhilarating, and breathtakingly awesome journey, especially in the later sections. But ultimately an eternally rewarding journey.

Also along the way this **study** revises, refines, corrects, and sometimes just reconsiders the 'popular' interpretations of end times **prophecy**. This is necessary because these popular versions, though containing some **truth**, are too often built on too few selected precepts from The Word of God to stand up to reasonable scrutiny. And under-supported misinterpretation is naturally blind to **scripture** that opposes it. But such misinterpretations may still seem justified because in many presentations of end times **prophecy** they are also commonly matched with a ton of collected 'supporting facts'. And it's too often more the 'facts' and not so much the **scripture** that's being used to justify conclusions presumed to be **'approved unto God'**. Further, even the facts themselves can be blind—or nearsighted—to other collections of facts that oppose them. You can imagine here that cartoon character Mr. Magoo if you want. It often gets that blind. And all this goes on when everyone should **know** that a case can be made for anything with enough facts and as long as you don't use too much **scripture**. The **truth** is that you'll never find much **truth** if you're too easily satisfied with your conclusions, and never test them further in the whole Word of God. And the surprise here is that God has actually designed His Word to be misunderstood by these and other arguably deceptive means in order to expose those who don't really want to **know** Him, or those who just don't **know** Him as well as they should. Lord have mercy on us all, because this is partly why Jesus will be able to say to **many** who thought they knew Him, **I never knew you: depart from me**. And this is painful. But it's worse than you might expect because these misguided practices have been used by the **teachers** I **learned** from, men whom I **know** love God and who are loved of Him.

Such practitioners, whether saved or reprobate, are also compelled to use strong persuasion and passion, trying to convince you that their ideas are probably right, while at the same time implying or even demanding that they speak for God. But such presentations, to the extent that they rely only on such practices, are given in man's terms—not God's. And though some may find or reinforce some very good **revelations** this way, they too often also

create or perpetuate disruptive, divisive, and dangerous **error** in the process, being unable to detect it. This common approach is all wrong for my intentions, because using it would mean that I only intend to offer you my opinions too, or just imply that I speak for God. So let me be clear. I absolutely intend to speak for God. This is because the only sure way to show new **revelations** to others while also exposing and avoiding **error** is to speak for God. Of course speaking for God in this way is not just a matter of will and simple faith. It takes 'skill'. There are also qualifications and tests to pass. And you have to **know** how to do it His way. My testimony is that I was homeschooled by God for this purpose, and the **proof** is in this **study**. This may sound boastful at first. But you must come to the **revelation** that speaking for yourself is what is really boastful, and that truly speaking for God cannot be.

I must add that you should keep in mind that I am not speaking as a **prophet**. I am not able to **prophecy** as far as I **know** and I won't have to. What I will have to do is **prove** I'm distinguishing **truth** from **error** by **rightly** interpreting **prophecy**. And everyone should **believe** that there is more than enough **proof** for **the truth** in **scripture** alone. I'm not saying that there is no place for speculation. We'll be doing plenty of that. But I mean to make it clear when I do. And I'm not saying that there is no place for 'fact checking'. We'll be doing some of that too, though this is especially hazardous work. The point is that, in this **study**, I can and do speak for God, and I rely entirely on **scripture** to do so. Aside from **prophecy**, this can only be done with the full confirmation of all **scripture** without contradiction. In one sense this is impossible because God and His Word are infinite and we are not. But it's nonetheless possible to be **approved** by Him to speak for Him. Possible, but no where near easy. Christians in general should not presume to speak too 'far-afield' for God. And in this **study**, as in any, I can at best only begin to draw on the unending messages that can be found in His Word. So I'm not saying you have to **know** as much as God to speak for Him, but that you'd better be using 'the whole Bible' when you do. Still, even this, because of **error**, is no guarantee. God's approval is the only guarantee. And how do you get God's approval?

Before we get into that, to those of you who follow end times **prophecy**, the following should get your attention and serve as an introduction to the journey before us. Those who **teach** that the present trouble that the World is having with the religion of Islam will lead to The Great Tribulation are in **error**. Of course everything is eventually leading to The Great Tribulation. But this present situation (in 2010) cannot immediately precede it. And I mean the Muslims aren't the ones that the rest of the World really have to worry about. Oh, the Muslim extremists will cause plenty of trouble as they do now, but they will not cause the worst of it, and they play a relatively minor role at best with other contenders to World domination in The Great Tribulation. And they will ultimately fail in their efforts to expand beyond their present holdings, and for the most part not even hold onto their present ones. Instead, Israel and whoever will help them—not that they will need any, though blessings along these lines are always available—will overwhelmingly subdue the strongest factions of the Muslim World at least once more and necessarily some time before The Great Tribulation can start. I can say this because I'm speaking for God and agreeing with Him. But to **prove** this will naturally require a lot of **scripture**—probably more than

you're used to. And we'll need to look all over The Bible. In this way we'll need only a few supporting facts to really be **approved unto God**.

Also, those of you who expect that The Great Tribulation involves predominantly modern conventional warfare and 'weapons of mass destruction' (WMD's) including a localized nuclear holocaust or two, plus a preponderance of '1984-style', computer-networked, satellite-linked surveillance and management systems to control and oppress the population of the World are in **error** too. None of this technology of man will play a significant role. And again, **scripture** alone will **prove** that this is the case, and that we'll be seeing a much bigger God than many of you are used to. So do I have your attention?

I intend to offer you **the truth** as I **know** it and as God and Jesus mean it. This will require probably the most 'panoramic' review of end times **prophecy** you've ever seen. But it starts more like an end times **prophecy** primer, because we first have to make sure that we're all generally on the same page. Getting on the same page is possible because of the 'popular version' of end times **prophecy** many of us have **learned** from top evangelical **teachers** of **prophecy**. This is the version which promises that anytime now there will be a rapture of the Church, followed by the seven-year Great Tribulation, ending with Armageddon, then followed by The Millennium, and finally by eternity in New Jerusalem in The New Heaven and Earth. These **teachers** taught me all this. And I will be forever grateful to these servants of God whom God will undoubtedly richly reward for their **work**. But they do not relieve us from the ongoing **work** that was laid on them and afterward is laid on all who follow behind. Sifting out the **errors** and improving the perspective attached to anyone's **teaching** is the **continuing** obligation of anyone serious to, as Jesus puts it, **continue in my Word**, so that we can all, as Peter puts it, **grow in grace, and in the knowledge of our Lord**. And the **knowledge of the truth** should **grow** as new **teachers** today 'climb upon the shoulders' of the ones who taught them in order to gain ever-increasing insights into God's future plans for us all, and for as long as there remains time to do so. And I will try to do all this without leaving behind the 'beginners'. Because of this, the **study** grows in difficulty along the way. And certainly this overview of end times **prophecy** 'snowballs' to perspectives that past and even present day **teachers** of **prophecy** have never before imagined. This is the natural eternal progression of The Word of God by The Spirit of God. Surely followers of God must, in the progression of God's plans for us all, **continue** to 'climb unendingly higher'. And anyone who desires to do so may join us, now and forever.

Still, there are others decidedly not on the same page when it comes to eschatology —the **study** of end times **prophecy**. I **know** that many of these dissenters from the 'popular version' disagree 'honestly' because I can see how they come to their disagreements and altered versions, especially considering the popular 'man's-way' **study** method mentioned above. But some of these apparently honest dissenters even believe it appropriate to pronounce the rest of 'the Church' condemned precisely because of its more popular brand of eschatology, and some of us pronounce sentence on them, having not satisfactorily answered them, even though we all believe that Jesus died for our sins. Fundamentally, I don't care what you believe about **the end of the world**. It's not essentially what will get you into Heaven.

Anyone that teaches that eschatological **error** can in and of itself somehow overcome faith in the blood of Christ doesn't fully **understand** the promise and power of the blood of Christ. But the sacrifice of Jesus alone cannot, in and of itself, save us from other ignorance of the **knowledge of God**. However it makes attaining more **knowledge** of Him possible. But the majority of evangelicals today perpetuate the cause of all this division by their adherence to a variety of popular untested eschatological **errors**. And we all are still giving the various dissenters this case against us by our own **errors** compounded upon theirs. So another reason we must revise, refine, correct, and reconsider the popular interpretations of end times **prophecy** is that they are causing major problems in the Church as a whole. The worst of these is radical dissension because of eschatology. Brethren, this alone makes it a serious issue for everyone. And all we really need to do is just 'lighten up'—double meaning absolutely intended.

And still, it's natural to be in **error** to some extent. This is the natural condition of a growing child of God. But an honest chance given to this **study** can at least end eschatology as a source of major division among us, correcting **errors** on all sides, and separating **truth** from speculation. There is no way I can attempt to specifically expose all eschatological **error**. And I really don't have to because, hopefully, you all **know** what you believe and why. So I more intend to lay down a fuller and therefore truer picture of the coming **end of the world**. Then you can lay your perspective beside it that is likely less complete and compare. If you believe what you believe because someone simply told you so, **errors** should be more easily given up, unless you're more attached to certain relationships than you are to **the truth**. And if you have done some **study** on your own it should be even easier, unless again, you're unnaturally attached to your perspectives for some reason. I promise you're definitely going see some things you've been missing, and also plenty of big **errors** you've been lead to believe exposed, if you're big enough to admit it. In other words, for this 'natural progression' to work we must all be honest.

Again, this **study** is not really about what saves you. It's about The Natural Progression of the Knowledge of God. We are all at best 'links' in a 'growing chain' of growth in Him. I hope this **study** makes clear that it's time for us all to **grow** some more again. But it may reach beyond your ability to follow your first time through it. This is the natural progression of God's **knowledge** too. And I'll tell you why. The Apostle Peter tells us that God's **divine power hath given unto us all things that pertain unto life and godliness, through the knowledge of him 2 Peter 1:3**. So it's **through the knowledge of him** that we should expect to be able to **understand** more and more **truth** and thereby **grow** spiritually. The point is that God has given us specific **instruction** about exactly how He intends for us to **grow** in this **wisdom, understanding, and knowledge of him**. Try to do it your own way, or in **a way that seemeth right unto you**, and you will likely err and be deceived (**Proverbs 16:25**). The pursuit of **knowledge** is best carried out God's way. And what is God's way? Let's start with **instruction** from the mouth of the Prophet Isaiah. He asks and answers this exact question, saying,

Whom shall he [God] teach knowledge? and whom shall he make to understand doctrine? them that are weaned from the

milk, and drawn from the breasts. For precept must be upon precept, precept upon precept; line upon line, line upon line; here a little, and there a little... [Isaiah 28:9-10](#)

A child ***weaned from the milk*** is an obvious metaphor here for someone who is 'off the spiritual milk' and mature enough for the 'solid spiritual food' of God's Word. More specifically, this implies that ***truth*** comes in the form of 'baby's milk' for the 'spiritually immature' and also in the form of 'chewable solid food' for the 'spiritually mature'. Isaiah makes clear that the transition from ***milk*** to 'solid food' must be made in order to really be able to ***grow in knowledge and understand doctrine***. And Isaiah also shows us the difference between the two. Until your Bible ***study*** has reached the stage where you commonly ***understand*** a topic of ***scripture*** by connecting precepts about it from ***here a little and there a little*** all over The Bible, you are still basically a 'milk drinker'. This does not mean that you cannot sit down and read through your Bible for hours. It means that God has scattered the complete picture of ***the truth*** on any given subject all over The Bible, and you're not yet mature until you're familiar enough with the entire Word of God so that you're able to find and gather together all the related precepts on any given subject and put them together in order to gain this fuller ***knowledge and understanding***. Isaiah says this is how God will ***teach knowledge*** and how He will make us able to ***understand doctrine***. This is His way.

Isaiah also tells us that by this same means God is able to hide ***the truth*** from those who refuse to ***handle*** His Word His way ([Verse 13](#)). Why would God hide the 'meatier' ***truth*** in His Word from us? One reason is made clear in this ***study***. God hides His prophetically ***revealed*** plans and other ***truth*** this way to protect it from those who would abuse it. But without even intending to, we ignorantly abuse God's Word anyway. I have. You have too. This is also part of the natural progression of growing in God's Word. And the reason there are so many different versions of eschatology is because so few are properly and consistently ***handling*** God's Word God's way. So you end up with 'washed-in-the-blood believers' who are divided because they all use the same Bible to conclude such different things as that The Rapture of the Church is at the beginning, middle, or end of The Great Tribulation, or that there will be no rapture at all and that we must all go through The Great Tribulation, or that The Great Tribulation is past and that The Millennium is already ongoing with Jesus coming at the end which supposedly makes it our job to conquer the World for Him before that, and much worse, all of which promotes exclusivism in our greatly divided Church. And of course they all can't be right. It's obviously the 'mishandling' of The Word of God that leads to all these conflicting eschatologies, not to mention doctrines in general. Fortunately, the version most popularly taught by evangelicals is nearest to correct. But the popular ***errors*** associated with it are also partly why so many other versions get so much ink and airplay. Again, it's time to remedy this. To do this we must ***understand*** that God has hidden ***the truth*** on any topic in the totality of ***scripture***. In the same way ***the truth*** of this ***study*** can only be seen in its totality.

But 'spiritual infancy' is not necessarily a bad thing. According to Peter it's where we all start. He says,

As newborn babes, desire the sincere milk of the word, that ye may grow thereby [1Peter 2:2](#).

As a new Christian this is how you begin to **grow** in your 'spiritual infancy'. You start with single precepts and at best and are able to put together only a few of them from different parts of The Bible while becoming more familiar with The Bible as a whole. But in time this should change. The Apostle Paul says all those who have too long remained in **need of milk** are **dull of hearing**. He also identifies someone like this as **a babe** and therefore **unskilful in the word**. As a result, he says their problem is that they're unable to **discern both good and evil**. In other words, if you are still mainly just a spiritual **babe**, then you can't tell the difference between **good and evil** in too many **things that pertain unto life and godliness**. Paul laments,

For when for the time ye ought to be teachers, ye have need that one teach you again which be the first principles of the oracles [or truth] of God; and are become such as have need of milk, and not of strong meat. For every one that useth milk is unskilful in the word of righteousness: for he is a babe. But strong meat belongeth to them that are of full age, even those who by reason of use have their senses exercised to discern both good and evil [Hebrews 5:11-14](#).

Now that's a mouthful. I think Paul got Isaiah's message. Paul is talking about a shameful place to be. He puts the same message in a nutshell for the Corinthians, saying,

Awake to righteousness, and sin not; for some have not the knowledge of God: I speak this to your shame [1Corinthians 15:34](#).

But if you're a new Christian, being someone that still has the **need of milk** is a wonderful place to be. Rejoice in it; just don't get too used to it, because the spiritual reality remains—whatever you think of yourself, you are closer to being a spiritual **babe** by God's definition if you are **not by reason of use** of His Word regularly and properly **exercised in the word of righteousness**. And 'proper exercise' is the gathering of more and more precepts from all over The Bible on any given subject in order to correctly **understand** God's complete **truth** on that subject. Jesus expresses His support for God's way when He says,

If ye continue in my word, then are ye my disciples indeed; And ye shall know the truth, and the truth shall make you free [John 8:31-32](#).

There is an ocean of **truth** connected to this teaching, but included in it is the implied process that you must **continue** in The Word to **grow** more and more **free** from **sin** and **error**. Isaiah and Paul make clear that this 'continuing exercise' must include connecting precepts together in larger and larger groups—which becomes stronger and stronger **strong meat**—for

greater and greater **understanding** of God's Word. This is God's stated way for you to **grow** in **the knowledge of him**. So the first step in growing in The Word of God is not to be offended if you recognize that you're still a spiritual **babe**. Be ashamed if it's appropriate. But let that be the motivation Paul is trying to offer you. The upside is that once you give up just **milk** and **learn** to regularly eat **strong meat**, you are promised that you will have the ability with your **senses exercised to discern both good and evil**. This means that you'll really be able to **understand** more and more of The Word of God. But there are many, many wonderful **promises** for those who **grow** in God's Word. The downside for now, if you fit Paul's description of **a babe**, is that you don't yet have the 'skill' to **understand** real **strong meat** yet. God is **patient**, but if you've been a Christian for some time and are still **a babe**, this is not only a **shame**, it is also dangerous to you and everyone around you. And **salvation** is by **grace**, but to all Christians Peter says,

Be sober, be vigilant; because your adversary the devil, as a roaring lion, walketh about, seeking whom he may devour [1 Peter 5:8](#).

So if you think you're safe just because you're presently **saved**, you may be in for some unpleasant surprises. These would be the kind of surprises that those with the **knowledge** and **understanding** that Isaiah speaks of would no longer **experience**. This **study** uses God's way to **teach knowledge** so that you can get **weaned from the milk** and **understand [strong meat] doctrine** like never before. It can fast-track your progress on the road to maturity in the **knowledge of God** by way of the **study** of end times **prophecy**. But be forewarned, this is what I mean when I say this journey is not so much about where we're going. It's really about how to **study** God's Word God's way.

You don't **know** me. But God does. And He says you should recognize His voice. So if I speak for Him, you eventually should recognize that too. I mean that the presentation of this **study** is by His design—not mine. And I also mean that there's nothing we will cover that's my own idea. Every single 'good idea' in this **study**, including its design, came to me from The Word of God by The Spirit of God. I don't mean that I'm intellectually challenged. I graduated from a 'top ten' public university and in the undeniably most rigorous undergraduate division of the institution. And I am therefore familiar with a myriad of empirical and conventional formats and paradigms. I mean that the spiritual reality is that there is no **truth** that does not come from Him. And what I also mean is that it's not so much my 'man-given' credentials that should really be of any interest to you. When it comes to the **study of prophecy**, what should interest you is my ability to assist you to see...

...the day dawn, and the day star arise in your hearts [2 Peter 1:19](#).

And I mean this as Peter means it. I also mean that, besides The Spirit, God **gave gifts unto men** [Ephesians 4:8](#) including **some... teachers** [Verse 11](#), and particularly for this work of God that can help you with this endeavor. And again, I mean this as Paul means it. Any other 'credential' believed to be

of any help with such an endeavor is just as likely a hindrance. What matters most is God's **gift** that supernaturally empowers me to **teach** you His Word. And supposing that there is any other necessarily meaningful credential for this job often leads to a diversity of doctrinal 'messes', some of which we will identify and clean up in the process of this **study**. At the same time I am a **workman** doing **work**. And it's for you to decide whether I am **worthy** of my **labour**.

And by-the-way, as Paul also teaches, I do not value my part in the body of Christ any more than any other part. All have the same mission. And it includes striving to make all parts work together better. This is my ultimate hope and goal. And this is my testimony—that God has equipped me to be a **teacher** in order to help in this way. For me it began decades ago. God began **teaching** me, 'spoon-feeding' me at first really, till I recognized that I had His **gift** of **teaching** for His **purpose**. So I really have nothing to boast about in any of this; it's all His doing. But He has made me feel very special because of it. Though it's nothing more than he **promises** everyone. **Draw nigh to God, and he will draw nigh to you** [James 4:8](#). Still, one reason it's a special place to be is that, the fact is, most put limits on just how close they want to get to God, not wanting to give up too much of this World to get there. In other words, Paul's message about 'too-long-postponed growth in spiritual maturity' needs a lot more 'pulpit time' than it usually gets. So come along if you will, as long as you will. And God bless you if you decide somewhere along the way you have something more important to do.

Our goal is a broad perspective of end times **prophecy** because **truth** is found and determined and proven in the totality of **scripture**. But now that I have invited you on board to **study** in topical groups of precepts, I have to next warn you that this is hazardous work. Another key related to Isaiah's **instruction** for Bible **study** is that focusing too narrowly will also lead to misinterpretation if done outside a whole perspective of The Word of God. Every part needs to be seen within the complete framework that it fits in. It also needs to be seen within the complete framework of the whole Word of God, which this **study** addresses in too limited a fashion. The more 'ancient parts' of God's plan we must and will, God willing, focus on another time. I hope to do more of that with the release of my next overview which at this point I'm calling [The Ages of Creation](#). It will be an overview of the whole plan of God for man. I say this to assure you that though the scope of this **study** is limited to end times **prophecy**, the whole plan of God for man from beginning to end is fixed in the background.

And besides this limitation, containing the topics of end times **prophecy** in 'sections' can only be arbitrary. These topics, as all topics of **scripture**, are much too interconnected for such treatment, except that God has made us to read or hear one word at a time in a linear fashion, and we don't have unlimited attention spans. So we are confined to acquire **knowledge** in arguably arbitrary measured 'bites' and 'meals', or, if you will, by sections and subsections. By-the-way, I hope you **learn** along the way that the 'tangents' I constantly take throughout this **study** are the 'glue' holding all the sections together as well as the **proof** that the sections are arbitrary and that properly connecting precepts of The Word of God is what it's all about.

But some of you may need to go through certain sections a few more times than others to get up to speed. This is because of what Paul calls **strong meat**. I mean that eventually all topical groups must be connected

together without any contradictions anywhere if you really want to **understand**. This is the key to really eliminating **error**. It is also why The Word of God is appropriately referred to as 'living'. You can ask it questions on any topic and it will eventually answer you. But the 'meatier' answers are not found in just one verse or passage. Another key to getting such answers is to **continue** asking questions. This is what we'll be doing in this **study**. And this **study** is held to all these standards.

Questions are naturally followed by speculation, which does have an important role to play in growth. Speculations are like questions—only becoming **error** when presumed to be **truth**. But unfortunately, all the good, popular **teachers** of **prophecy** I know continue to perpetuate this kind of **error**. Still I have been able to stand on their shoulders to get a better view. And I'm sure I will be found guilty of misidentifying speculation as **truth** too, even though I'm ever vigilant to avoid it. Needless to say I've corrected countless **errors** in my own prophetic interpretation over the last couple decades (1987-2010) amidst ever ongoing speculation, and ever increasing confirmation of **the truth**. But most of **the truth** I offer to you in this **study** has stood the test of time for me, surviving the scrutiny of cross-examination across increasing numbers of topical groups, though all this cross-examination cannot be shown in this one **study**.

This also leads to some unavoidable conclusions about you if you have not been so **diligent** and have not been focusing on **learning** God's Word God's way. Some of you will have to be 'dragged', maybe 'kicking and screaming', away from the **errors** that you now hold dear. But surely many of you will cheer to see such **errors** exposed. And I won't even hold it against you if you find that I show you the **proof of doctrines** that you already hold dear that you had no idea could be so conclusively supported. Indeed, it's not my intention to offend. We will all end up on the same side eventually in the end, and that is on the side of The Word of God, and better now than later.

So the limited aim of this **study** is at a complete overview of end times **prophecy** from here to eternity without getting too bogged down in the details. The main features we will use to order our **study** are the nine raptures of The Great Tribulation. And at least some of them will be news to pretty much everybody. But because of the scope of this **study**, I will need to continually defer further more detailed **study** to other sources and times. Still, this **study** is more than comprehensive enough to **prove** itself. Below is a list of some of the things you can expect to **learn** and **prove** that will be news to even most 'top' **teachers** of end times **prophecy**.

- There are nine distinct raptures of nine different groups in and around The Great Tribulation whose groups can be specifically identified and whose raptures can be all placed at different specific times.
- These groups will serve in different prescribed stations to be filled between here and the end of The Millennium for better or for worse including both more or less fortunate positions within each station.
- The pretribulation Rapture of the Church is directly mentioned in The Book of Revelation, and Gentile immortals are identifiable in Old Testament **scripture**, not just implied.
- New biblically-defined details about the roles of The U.S., The E.U., Russia, China and the Islamic World are now known. And new biblically-

derived deductions can be made about The U.K. and the remaining countries of the Americas.

- New biblically-defined details about the origins and development of the Antichrist Kingdom and the city of the False Prophet are now known, and there are some startling new speculations too, all showing it's not really Islam we have to worry about.
- The 'nature' of the majority of God's judgments on the Earth during The Great Tribulation will be like His previous judgments in Egypt administered by the Prophet Moses. And for the most part God's future spectacular judgments will not involve modern, man-made technology as most 'teach'. Expect to try to imagine something much more awesome.
- There is a direct connection between The Red Horse of The Second Seal Judgment and the earthshaking events of The Sixth Seal Judgment in The Book of Revelation. This connection is clarified in Ezekiel 38-39 and in various other prophecies. In this case, 'holding on to your hat' won't help.
- The U.S. and probably The U.K. will stop by the 'show of force' of warships in the Mediterranean Sea the Antichrist's first attempt to assimilate the North African and Southwest Asian Muslim World in the middle of the first half of the 7-year Great Tribulation. But the Antichrist will succeed in the assimilation of these Muslims by the midpoint because by then no one will be in a position to stop him.
- Daniel 11 can now be confirmed to be finally fully opened and is crucial to understanding many events heretofore not understood or misinterpreted. This means ***the time of the end*** has just fully come. And this helps reveal that the pretribulation Rapture of the Church is not yet imminent.
- There are disasters of prophetic misinterpretation popularized by top evangelical teachers that must be corrected before further spiritual damage is done. This includes misinterpretations now effective in dividing the Church, and others that will also become formidable stumbling blocks to Christians.

But this is just some of the news for the 'top' evangelical ***teachers of prophecy*** along the way. To ***prove*** stuff like this I must present a complete overview of end times ***prophecy***. Only with a 'whole picture' can we, for example, distinguish and identify the nine raptures in and around The Great Tribulation. We will be able to construct this 'whole picture' using a couple of different complete frameworks. One is the whole Book of Revelation. The other is Jesus' Discourse on the Mount of Olives. Many other ***revelations*** will come from Paul and other ***teachers*** who ***learned*** and ***grew*** from his ***teaching***. Foremost of these ***revelations*** is how we place The Church Age of Grace in time and use it to finish 'opening' the book of Daniel. And I mean that. As far as I ***know***, The Book of Daniel has not until now been fully 'opened'. Specifically what I mean is that I expect to show you Chapter 11 now fully 'opened', including the identities of each ***king of the north*** and ***king of the south***, etc, which will add new dimensions to our ***understanding*** of the Antichrist and his kingdom, and even to the False Prophet and his institution. We'll finally also take a fresh look at The Millennium and the transition to the New Heaven and Earth in light of the identified 'stations' related to these nine raptures that we'll see all identified

by **scripture** by then. And I have identified at least eight different 'stations' where Christians will be placed in eternity. I will also share along the way several reasons from **prophecy** why I do not expect The Great Tribulation to begin anytime real soon, soon, but not real soon. It's still likely at least a decade or two away. So I think that there's at least enough time for us all to come together on what we have all together made possible to agree on.

All this will also result in some excursions into Old Testament history to trace the kings **of the north** and **south** in Daniel 11, and into Ezekiel 40-48 to get a better picture of our new 'hometown' during The Millennium, and into The Bible's longest **prophecy** to get a better idea of what God's ultimate plan for us all is really all about. We will also need the help of Jesus, Moses, Isaiah, Daniel, Ezekiel, Peter, Paul, John, even Gabriel the Archangel, and many more inspired loved-ones of God to help us along the way. I should also mention that this includes the help of a great sinner, King David, because we will also need the help of other sinners beloved of God, whose help we have had more recently—from about 1840 to date to be exact—that we will also rely on to help us finish 'opening' The Books of Daniel and Revelation. An exception to this is found in Revelation 10. I don't expect God will let us figure out this chapter until the middle of The Great Tribulation. But I do see a good reason why He will continue to hide it from us until then. We'll get to all of this and much more along the way.

You should have already noticed that I avoid the use of quotation marks by using **Bold Italics** (and just *italics*) for all **scripture** references, and all such references are the King James Version (KJV). And I'll try not to leave you floundering in the Old English. One way I'll do this is to use quotation marks to identify helpful vocabulary from various modern translations. And I am keeping my eye on more than a dozen popular translations along the way, and you can too in a number of ways at blbclassic.org [the site address has changed]. And I'm not just doing all this to avoid copyright infringement as you will eventually see. And if this is not a book on CD or online where direct links are accessible, then I recommend you use blbclassic.org [again, the site address has changed] for all the underlined Scripture links found throughout this **study** to view as you go along. There are also a variety of other links identified by web addresses available along the way. And there are a variety of other personal conventions of mine I hope you'll get used to too.

Another point of order is that Jesus and the Apostles Paul and Peter are alive. Though the apostles' bodies are presently dead at this writing, their spirits live, and their bodies will again too. And it is and should be customary to speak of the things people have said in the past as what they would also still say in the present or the future, especially when it's the living Word of God. So I avoid the past tense whenever possible in this **study**. And after all, when it comes to end times **prophecy**, most of what is 'said' hasn't happened yet.

And let's face it, memorization by rote is out, but it shouldn't be when it comes to Bible **study**. Rote memorization—or at least reference familiarization—of larger and larger groups of connected precepts can be an escape from 'spiritual infancy'. Repetition of spiritual truths is highly recommended by the Apostle Peter ([2 Peter 1:12-13](#); [3:1-2](#)). But to be practical, because of the high resistance to it nowadays, I endeavor to avoid its use unnecessarily. Still, some call restatement for additional clarification—even along with the addition of one or two new ideas—'repetition'. But I tell

you that The Bible calls this the road to **wisdom**, on which I am a traveler, and ultimately you'll need to be too. It's the true nature of spiritual **exercise**. However if you're already familiar with end times **prophecy**, you're bound to view more of this **study**, but not necessarily most, as more regimen than **revelation**. But this **study** is not about repetition beyond the amount needed by new end-times-**prophecy** students to make the more complicated connections, that is, more complicated than my guess of what the 'average' Bible-studier is used to. All said and done, there are other ways this material could be presented, but I **know** no better way, as it is not my way, but it is by and large the way it is taught to me by **the Spirit of truth** ([John 14:17](#); [15:26](#); [16:13](#); [1John 4:6](#)).

And if you **know** The Spirit of God you also **know** that sometimes He's a mysterious ethereal **experience**. This is His nature. But when it comes to the **knowledge of God**, our part in this **experience** is clearly defined in The Bible. Besides **gifts** of The Spirit related to the **knowledge of God**, Paul teaches that our general **experience** with The Spirit's **teaching** comes through being **exercised** in The Word of God, and he maintains that this regimen is necessary for truly **understanding** what The Spirit teaches us. The Apostle Peter assures us that the **experience** should be accompanied by our **diligence**, promising unlimited growth in **the knowledge of God**. And the Prophet Isaiah explains how it works on our end. He tells us that **knowledge** and **understanding** come by connecting, **hear a little and there a little**, more and more **precepts** of The Word of God. Do these things and you will **experience** the power of The Spirit working in you in ways you may have never experienced before. So whatever point you're at, this is a good place from which to **continue** with practice in the way God says He will **teach** you and **make** you **to understand doctrine**. I contend the Church has lost its way on this road to some extent. But if God is willing, I **believe** we can still get back to a more 'sure footing' before The Rapture. Though again, there can be no doubt that we all must eventually **learn** how to travel this road together. And there is also no doubt that it will be better sooner than later. So please join me now.

If you already feel comfortable to jump right into most of these topics mentioned above you can skip the rest of this section and go on to [SECTION 2](#). Of course there's value to confirming that we are all on the same page or at least to finding out what page I'm on. We'll **continue** from here with the literal centerpiece of our **study**, a future event, (that some consider past), popularly called The Abomination of Desolation. We'll rely on it as a reference point from which all connections can be made, as Jesus implies it can be used. Then Jesus will help us with several more popular key terms of end times **prophecy** that we must **understand** in order to begin and build this overview. And we will **exercise** with these terms throughout the **study**. Our purpose, as explained by Paul, Peter, and Isaiah, is not just to **learn** to get an **understanding** of these terms, but to see how through their **use**, as Paul means it, we'll be better able **to discern both good and evil**, including right **interpretations** and wrong **interpretations** of prophetic **scripture**. Focusing on these terms will limit our **study** within **scripture**, but there's nonetheless no limit to what we can **learn** from exercising in them.

Still, there is a goal. It's a point of arrival you can reach in this **study**. It's that place where you become **approved unto God**. Paul encourages you to,

Study to shew thyself approved unto God [and reasonable men],
a workman that needeth not to be ashamed, rightly dividing
[by precepts] ***the word of truth*** [2 Timothy 2:15](#).

This is how you get ***approved unto God*** to speak for Him. Because if you can show yourself you are able to do this, you have arrived at a place of God's approval. And you can speak for Him, and you are prepared for significant participation in God's eternal kingdom. All God's ***sons*** must eventually gain this approval. Those of us who don't receive it in this age will in the next. But as Paul is trying to tell the Church of this age, it will be a ***shame*** to be among the last to receive it.

Finally, our guiding eschatological goal in this ***study*** will be to establish an unshakable defense of the pretribulation Rapture of the Church. Again, quite a broad view will be required to do this. We'll start by depicting one way to summarize God's plan for the rest of human existence. I call it the [TIMELINE of End Times Prophecy](#) (p.17). It lays out in time all our key terms and then some.

Key Terms of End Times Prophecy



The Abomination of Desolation

The **abomination of desolation, spoken of by Daniel the prophet** [Matthew 24:15](#) is, according to Jesus, the coming sign for Jews in Israel to **flee into the mountains** ([Matthew 24:16](#); [Luke 21:21](#)) to escape the Antichrist who at this time plans to desecrate and destroy The Temple in Jerusalem and to exterminate all the Jews and Christians he can get his hands on. It's also marked by the spectacle of **Jerusalem compassed with armies** [Luke 21:20](#). This is part of God's plan of salvation for the Jews and is the signal for their escape to safety during 'the worst period of history ever'. Jesus defines it as the beginning of a period of...

...great tribulation, such as was not since the beginning of the world to this time, no, nor ever shall be [Matthew 24:21](#).

Specifically, The Abomination of Desolation refers to when the Antichrist will declare himself to be God inside a future Jerusalem Temple. This **abomination** will be enough to effectively stop the sacrifices and offerings for sin that were commanded by God through Moses putting the temple again into a state of uselessness or **desolation**. And also at this time the Antichrist will have The Jerusalem Temple leveled, probably to make room for his own **palace** [Daniel 11:45](#), because he will set up camp in Israel at this time. Daniel also identifies The Abomination of Desolation as a marker for the beginning of the worst time ever in [Daniel 12:1](#), and mentions it repeatedly ([8:11](#), [9:27](#), [11:36](#), [12:11](#)). Paul also clarifies that it's when the Antichrist...

...exalteth himself above all that is called God, or that is worshipped; so that he as God sitteth in the temple of God, shewing himself that he is God [2 Thessalonians 2:4](#).

This event is our central reference point. But when does it occur?

The 70 Weeks Plan of Salvation for the Jews



The above [TIMELINE of The 70 Weeks for Jews & The Church Age for Gentiles](#) (p.18) shows the interrupted 70 weeks plan of salvation for the Jews (in blue), and the presently ongoing plan of salvation for the Gentiles (in purple). It is the Archangel Gabriel that **informed** Daniel of this then future final period of **Seventy weeks** [Daniel 9:24](#) to complete God's plan of salvation for Daniel's people the Jews, where...

...in the midst of the [70th] week he [the Antichrist] shall cause the sacrifice and the oblations [or offerings] to cease, and for the overspreading of abominations he shall make it [The Temple] desolate [or desecrated and destroyed] [Daniel 9:27](#).

This description of The Abomination of Desolation tells us when it occurs—**in the midst of the** 70th week of Daniel's **prophecy**. This last **week** of the **Seventy weeks** is the end of Jewish **prophecy** because Daniel also tells us that the whole period is...

...to finish the transgression, and to make an end of sins, and to make reconciliation for iniquity, and to bring in everlasting righteousness, and to seal up [or finish] the vision and prophecy, and to anoint the most Holy [Jesus] [Daniel 9:24](#).

The **end of sins, reconciliation**, and 'sealed up' **vision and prophecy**, with **everlasting righteousness** all 'brought in'—that would pretty much wrap things up. This is also when God will **anoint**—Jewish for 'make king'—**the most Holy** who is Jesus. All this speaks of Jesus' reconciling sacrifice for sin and the establishment of His **everlasting kingdom**. All these things must be complete by the end of the 70th week. And The Abomination of Desolation happens in **the midst** or in the middle of this last **week**. But the question stands. When is this?

A **week**—in Hebrew meaning a "seven"—can be seven days, or **seven years** as in the story of Laban and Jacob [Genesis 29:25-30](#). So it's necessary with Old Testament **scripture**—or Hebrew—to determine which time scale is

more appropriate whenever such quantities of time are given. This will help us find when it is. And it's weeks of seven years, not days, that fit this scenario perfectly. And this would be a total of seventy sevens (70 x 7) or a 490-year plan. The first **week** of seven years begins with a Medo-Persian king's **commandment to restore and to build Jerusalem** [Daniel 9:25](#). This is when the Jews are finally released from their Assyrian to Babylonian then Medo-Persian period of captivity. And the first 69 weeks—or 483 years—we **know** are passed because they ended when **messiah** was **cut off** [or "killed"], **but not for himself** [Daniel 9:24-26](#). So the end of the 69th week is marked by Jesus' crucifixion. Some have done the history and the math. There are arguably exactly 483 years between this Medo-Persian king's **commandment** and when Jesus was **cut off** by crucifixion. But the last week of seven years to complete this plan for the Jews was postponed and has plainly still not yet started. Between Jesus, Daniel, John, and Paul we **know** that 'the 70th week' must still be a future seven years of **great tribulation** divided by **the abomination of desolation** event. And from this midpoint, as in any **week** of years, another ½ **week** would be 3½ years, 42 months, or around 1275 days. An angel later explains to Daniel that...

...from the time that the daily sacrifice shall be taken away, and the abomination that maketh desolate set up, there shall be a thousand two hundred and ninety days [Daniel 12:11](#).

This takes us to **the end** of the 70th week ([Daniel 12:8](#)). And this ½ week of 1290 days is also defined to be **a time, times, and a half** or $1 + 2 + \frac{1}{2} = 3\frac{1}{2}$ **times** or years ([Daniel 12:7](#)). And we'll eventually talk about why there seems to be a few extra days here. Otherwise, all this fits perfectly with the 'one **week** = seven years' timescale.

But all this also means that the time of The Abomination of Desolation remains unknown. This is because we don't **know** when the 70th week is going to start. There's still a **mystery** or two that must be **revealed** before we'll **know** when it will be. But the revealing of the first of these 'mysteries' will result in our not being here to see any of this **great tribulation** transpire. This **mystery** is The Rapture of the Church that ends this present age. The Abomination of Desolation will occur ½ **week**, or 3½ years after The Rapture. The **end** comes another ½ **week** or 1290 days after that. This is all popularly accepted doctrine. And this 70th week we're all still waiting for is commonly called The Great Tribulation.

But for all of you who don't believe in 'The Great Tribulation' or a 'pretribulation rapture', I'm not pretending to have proven any of this yet, just to have defined it. We will more than **prove** all this before we're through, and if you now see things differently you will see how you were misled too. However I don't need to spend any more time on the first 69 weeks of Daniel's **prophecy** because it's verifiably fulfilled **prophecy**, and there are too many good studies out there to **prove** this that you can check out on your own. Future end times **prophecy** involves only the last or The 70th Week.

[The Church Age of Grace](#)

This **study** refers to The Church Age of Grace also as just The Church Age or The Age of Grace—all commonly used. The beginning of The Church Age of Grace is Jesus. Whether you mark it at His Birth, or when Jesus is **cut off** or as late as Pentecost when the 'God-sent' Holy Spirit comes, is debatable. Cases can be made for all these relatively close together starting points. According to Paul this period is a **dispensation** (or 'planned age') **of the grace of God** that is unlike any of the **other ages** or **dispensations** of God. This is partly because this 'age' was a **mystery** that was **hid in God** until it was **revealed** to the **holy apostles and prophets** of the Church with the coming of **the Spirit** beginning at Pentecost ([Ephesians 3](#)). The surprise 'good news' is that this **dispensation** is a plan of salvation for Gentiles. So Gentiles have only known of their opportunity to be saved by faith in Christ since the beginning of this present age. But we'll see in the next sections that many both Jews and Gentiles from the **other ages** before The Church Age of Grace were redeemed at the beginning of this age too.

This previously unforeseen but now **revealed** plan of God implies that The 70 Weeks Plan for the Jews salvation was interrupted and put on hold exactly at the end of The 69th Week, which Daniel marks as when Jesus is crucified. We can also tell this because the events described in The 70th week did not follow The 69th Week on schedule and still have not yet occurred. But the best evidence of **the truth** of this comes from Paul who tells us about this Age of Grace directly. He also helps us see that we along with The Spirit must be **taken out of the way** at The Rapture before the final 70th Week can begin. And The Rapture remains a **mystery** because we don't **know** when it will occur. It could be anytime. But the fact that Jesus told everyone to **watch** the end coming means that we should not be clueless about it. We'll cover all this more thoroughly in [SECTION 2](#) and [3](#). Other Great Tribulation raptures will be covered in [SECTION 4, 5, 6, 9, 10, and 11](#). And there is a postmillennial rapture in [SECTION 12](#). So there are nine specifically distinguishable 'group raptures' in and around the 7-year Great Tribulation, and another one at the end of The Millennium.

The Mystery of Iniquity

The actual beginning of The 70th Week is not technically The Rapture. Its beginning instead takes place just after The Rapture, at an event commonly called The Mystery of Iniquity—as Paul's describes it in [2 Thessalonians 2:7](#). This is another still unrevealed **mystery** because we won't find out who the Antichrist really is until after The Rapture, at the beginning of this last seven years of the Jewish plan of salvation. We already do **know** a lot about him though. But his specific identity will not be **revealed** until...

...he shall confirm the covenant with many for one week: and in the midst of the week he shall cause the sacrifice and the oblation to cease, and for the overspreading of abominations he shall make it [The Temple in Jerusalem] desolate [Daniel 9:27](#).

So it's popular doctrine that the Antichrist will be **revealed** when he makes an 'international peace treaty' or **covenant with many** for one **week** or

seven years. And this would start the last **week** of the **seventy weeks** plan. 3 ½ years later he will break **the covenant** at The Abomination of Desolation. But there are many other ways to identify the Antichrist. I've actually charted 45 of them, most of which we will cover in [SECTION 7](#). So really both The Rapture of the Church and The Mystery of Iniquity together mark the beginning of The 70th Week of Daniel's **prophecy** which is The Great Tribulation, but also the start of a period called The Beginning of Sorrows which is the first half of that **week**.

The Beginning of Sorrows

The Beginning of Sorrows is a description Jesus uses in His Discourse on the Mount of Olives that outlines the first 3 ½ years of The 70th Week of Daniel's **prophecy** from The Mystery of Iniquity to The Abomination of Desolation. This is the period of the rise of the Antichrist and of the rise and fall of other significant powers. It's also the period of the first 14 out of the total of 21 judgments from God that occur throughout the 7-year Great Tribulation. These 14 **beginning of sorrows** judgments from Heaven are described in Revelation 6-11 and are popularly called The Seven Seal Judgments and The Seven Trumpet Judgments. Some divide these judgments up differently in The Great Tribulation. We'll see why they do it and why it's an understandable **error** in [SECTION 4](#). This restarted period of God's dispensation of salvation for the Jews, according to Jesus, is a period of **wars, famines, plagues, earthquakes**, etc. We examine The Beginning of Sorrows starting with The Rapture of the Church and the revealing of The Mystery of Iniquity in [SECTION 3](#) and [4](#). Jews in Israel are miraculously protected by God in The Beginning of Sorrows. And some **chosen** Jews escape the horrors of the following Days of Vengeance too by fleeing to a safe haven **prepared of God** for that entire second half-week. These are topics of [SECTION 9](#).

The Days of Vengeance

The Days of Vengeance is also a description Jesus uses in His Discourse on the Mount of Olives. This is that 'worst time ever', 3 ½-year period of **great tribulation** from The Abomination of Desolation to the end of The 70-week Plan, also known as the second half of the 7-year Great Tribulation. [Revelation 13](#) specifically establishes that this is when the Antichrist is **given his forty and two months** (also 3 ½ years) of **power... over all kindreds, and tongues, and nations**. This period and its duration is also identified as **a time and times and the dividing of time** in a number of **scriptures** in Daniel and Revelation ([Daniel 7:25](#), [12:7](#), [Revelation 12:17](#)). The necessarily worst and last 7 of God's 21 Great Tribulation judgments are **poured out** on the Earth during this second half-week too. These seven judgments of God are called The Seven Plague Judgments (or Seven Vial or Seven "Bowl" Judgments) and are described in [Revelation 16](#). We'll cover these judgments and The Ministry of the False Prophet which also dominates in this half-week in [SECTION 4](#) and [8](#). All Jews and Christians caught by the Antichrist in The Days of Vengeance will be executed. It will be a **time of trouble, such as**

never was since there was a nation even to that same time. The **consummation** of this period is popularly called **Armageddon** and demonstratively few survive it to live on into the following new Millennial Age.

Armageddon

The **prophecy** of Daniel of The 70-week Plan of salvation for the Jews promises that by the end of it, **all these things shall be finished** [Daniel 9:24](#), including the establishment of Jesus' eternal kingdom on Earth. And this must be after the Antichrist's 42 month's of power over the Earth are concluded that start at The Abomination of Desolation. Daniel indicates that the mid-week **desolation** of Jerusalem and its Temple will continue throughout the second half of The 70th Week **until the consummation** when **that determined shall be poured out on the desolate** [Daniel 9:27](#). This is a brief description of the futile encounter between the Antichrist and his armies with Jesus and His armies popularly known as The Battle of Armageddon and also described in the Book of Revelation ([16:16](#), [19:11-21](#)). It's a marker of the end of The Great Tribulation and of The 70th Week of Daniel's **prophecy**. It also marks the beginning of Jesus' Millennial Kingdom. These topics will be elaborated upon in [SECTION 4](#) and [10](#). And this should be enough to get us started. Are you ready to **prove** all this? Ready or not here we go.

SECTION 2 The Presently Revealed Mystery Church Age of Grace

TIMELINE of The Ages of Creation									
From Eternity	Past or "Other Ages"				Present Age	Future Ages	To Eternity		
Creation	Eden	Pre-Flood World	Babel	Abraham	Jewish Law & 1 st 69 Weeks	Mystery Church Age of Grace	70 th	Millennium	New Creation
Physical Creation Begins	Adam & Eve Fall from Grace by Sin	An Evil World is Deluged	Languages End World Rebellion	5 Beastly World-ruling Kingdoms Rise & Fall & the 6 th Rises	Jesus Voids The Law	Christians Raptured and Immortalized	6 Raptures Redeem Souls in The Great Tribulation	Man's Last Rebellion Crushed	
Man Lives by Innocence	Man Lives by Conscious & Work	Man Lives by Conscious & Work Controlled by Human Gov't	Gentiles Live as Before	Gentiles Live as Before	6 th World-ruling Kingdom Wanes & None Rises	World-ruling Antichrist Rises and Falls	Armageddon Ends Age	The Second Resurrection & The Final Judgment	
			Jews Live by The Promise to Abraham	Jews Live by The Promise & The Law of God	Gentiles Live by Reconciliation to Jesus by The Spirit	Jews & Gentiles Live by 7 Plans of Reconciliation to Jesus	Jesus Rules with the First Resurrection 1000 Years	Physical Creation Ends	

An **understanding** that is central to this **study** involves the dramatic and unexpected changes in the way God deals with man. One of these changes is

the newest **dispensation of God** beginning from the time of Jesus on. This change dramatically alters how we view unfulfilled or future **prophecy** in The Old Testament, which in turn helps us better understand New Testament **prophecy** too. Several changes have already occurred since 'Creation' that I've outlined in the [TIMELINE of The Ages of Creation](#) above (p.22). Popularly, there are seven dispensations or **ages** altogether, but really these several 'plans' overlap quite a bit. And two plans that were ongoing, one for Gentiles and one for Jews, were 'interrupted' by the latest one, The Church Age of Grace, and will be completed after it. The Church Age of Grace starts sixth. And the two 'interrupted plans' will be completed in The Great Tribulation, The 70th Week of Daniel's **prophecy**. And there is still one more to start after these three known as The Millennium. I hope to eventually explore the **other ages** of the past more closely in [The Ages of Creation study](#). It will more thoroughly cover the above timeline as a whole. But for this **study** an **understanding** of the present and future ages will suffice because they're the only ones directly involved in end times **prophecy**. The following precepts establish the reality of this 'surprise' present 'age' or **dispensation of the grace of God**.

The Apostle Paul proclaims the newly revealed Church Age of Grace to save Gentiles through faith in Jesus. This plan is purposely hidden by God since Creation until it is revealed by the Church's apostles and prophets [after](#) the coming of The Spirit at Pentecost.

Acts 2
Ephesians 3:1-9

The age or **dispensation of the grace of God** [Eph 3:2](#) is also commonly called The Age of Grace or The Church Age. Before the arrival of The Spirit at Pentecost the Apostle Paul tells us that this plan was a secret or **mystery** [Eph 3:3-4](#)...

...which from the beginning of the world hath been hid in God
[Eph 3:9](#).

It was also a secret...

...which in other ages was not made known unto the sons of men, as it is now revealed unto his holy apostles and prophets by the Spirit [Eph 3:5](#).

And in **other ages**, or in past ages starting with The Age of Innocence in the Garden of Eden, God has dealt with man in a number of changing ways to bring us back to Himself. But at this point we are interested in only two questions. What is this present age? And what age directly precedes The Great Tribulation which begins when the Antichrist is **revealed**? The answer to both of these questions is The Church Age of Grace. One way this can be seen is by showing that The Rapture of the Church immediately precedes The Mystery of Iniquity, which we will do in the next section. Before that we should more clearly identify the conditions that exist in this present age.

The events that mark the beginning of this present Age of Grace involve

The First Coming of Jesus including His birth, His earthly ministry, His death and resurrection, His ascension to Heaven, and the descending to Earth of The Holy Spirit at the event in Jerusalem we now know as **Pentecost** recorded in [Acts 2](#). The coming of The Spirit is the final marker of the beginning of this present age **now revealed... by the Spirit**, and the **mystery** The Spirit **revealed** when He came has been out now for nearly 2,000 years. We are now living in The Age of Grace for **Gentiles** [Ephesians 3:6, 8](#). This age is mainly the Gentiles' chance to escape the **wrath of God** and just **everlasting punishment** for **sin** by **reconciliation** to God through **faith** in Jesus' **sacrifice** for us all. Jews may also receive this **gospel** of **grace** now and be saved as Gentiles are, but Gentiles who survive The Age of Grace, and Jews whether they survive it or not, also have other 'options' for **salvation** in future **ages**. There are what could be called several different 'plans of salvation' that will be completed in the coming **great tribulation**—The 70th Week of Daniel's **prophecy**—and in the following Millennial Age, which are all topics of later sections.

Jesus personally 'commissions' the Apostles to go into **all the world** with the gospel message before He leaves, and He 'commissions' one more apostle just after He leaves. Jesus ministers salvation to the Jews while He is here, and the Disciples **receive** The Spirit **before** Jesus goes. But God sends The Spirit to reveal this Age of Grace and to begin 'full operations' **after** Jesus leaves.

[Matthew 3:11](#)
[John 14:16, 26; 15:26; 16:7-8,13; 20:19-22](#)
[Luke 3:16; 24:49](#)
[Acts 1:4-5, 8-11; 2; 9:3-6](#)

The Spirit, sent by The Father and Jesus, cannot **come** until Jesus leaves. This is evidently The Father's orders. Jesus says,

It is expedient for you that I go away: for if I go not away, the Comforter will not come unto you; but if I depart, I will send him unto you [John 16:7](#).

So when Jesus ascends into Heaven, having kept the secret from the Gentiles of the **dispensation of the grace of God**, The Spirit can then come and **reveal** it. But Jesus did **reveal** His offer of salvation to the Jews first, specifically to his Jewish disciples who become the Apostles. They **receive** their **salvation** along with **the Holy Ghost** in the evening of the day after Jesus' resurrection ([John 20:19-22](#)). About 40 days later, as Jesus is about to finally ascend into Heaven, He 'commissions' His disciples to **be witnesses** to Him **unto the uttermost part of the earth**, but that they should first **wait** and **that they should not depart from Jerusalem** until they **receive power** of **the Holy Ghost**. Luke records,

[Jesus] commanded them that they should not depart from Jerusalem, but wait for the promise of the Father, which, saith he, ye have heard of me. For John truly baptized with water; but ye shall be baptized with the Holy Ghost not many days

hence... [And] ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judaea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth [Acts 1:4-5, 8](#).

What the Disciples had previously **heard of** Jesus is that they are to wait **...in the city of Jerusalem until ye be endued** [meaning to be 'filled' or "clothed"] **with power from on high [Luke 24:49](#)**. So we see that first the Disciples **receive** The **Holy Ghost** from Jesus just after His resurrection, but then about 50 days later, or about 10 days after Jesus ascends into Heaven ([Acts 1:9-11](#)), The Spirit appears at **Pentecost** and the Disciples are **baptized** with The Holy Spirit. And this is obviously when the Apostles **receive power** of The Holy Spirit. Jesus also much earlier **heard of** John the Baptist that this would be the time that,

...he [God The Father] shall baptize you with the Holy Ghost and with fire [Matthew 3:11](#), [Luke 3:16](#).

This is before Jesus **began to preach**, and before He began to call His Disciples, saying, **follow me [Mat 4:17,19](#) [audio errors]**. To oversimplify, it appears that still today you need only **believe to receive**, but back then if not still, to **preach with power** you need to be **baptized with fire**. This of course leads to that whole Baptist/Pentecostal debate that I hope to eventually fuss with sooner or later, but no longer here. Our focus now is in **understanding** that at **Pentecost** The Holy Spirit is in 'full operation' including the **promises** also earlier given by Jesus that The Spirit will **reprove** [or "convict"] **the world of sin, and of righteousness, and of judgment [John 16:8](#)**, will be **the Comforter [14:16,26](#); [15:26](#); [16:7](#)**, will **teach you all things [14:26](#), will guide you into all truth [16:13](#)**, will **bring all things to your remembrance... [that Jesus] said [14:26](#), will testify of [Jesus] [15:26](#), and will shew you things to come [16:13](#)**, etc. And by these ministries of The Holy Spirit we can and will come to **understand** what Peter calls the **more sure word of prophecy**. And we should be especially encouraged that Jesus specifically promises that The Spirit 'will show you things to come', because this is the operation of The Spirit we'll rely on the most in this **study**.

It's also after Jesus leaves that He 'commissions' Paul the Apostle by a visitation ([Acts 9:3-6](#)). He becomes known as the Apostle to the Gentiles because of his extensive work starting **churches** among them.

Jesus declares His ministry to the Jews finished and that the time for His crucifixion has come at the point when Gentiles begin to seek after him.

[John 12:20-33](#)
[Acts 10](#)

There is more strong evidence that Jesus did not and would not **reveal** the mystery Age of Grace to the Gentiles, but intended to leave this job to the **holy apostles and prophets by the Spirit**. This is seen in His seemingly strange reaction when **Greeks**—or Gentiles—start to seek after Him. His

response when this happens is that He says His time to be crucified has come. The story goes like this...

And there were certain Greeks [or Gentiles] among them that came up to worship at the feast: The same came therefore to Philip, which was of Bethsaida of Galilee, and desired him, saying, Sir, we would see Jesus. Philip cometh and telleth Andrew: and again Andrew and Philip tell Jesus. And Jesus answered them, saying, The hour is come, that the Son of man should be glorified [John 12:20-23](#).

Now some argue that the Jews were also **Greeks** back then and that if they **came up to worship at the feast** then these **Greeks** referred to here must be Jews. This is wrong for two reasons. One is that this overlooks the fact that **wise men from the east**, who were not likely Jews, came to **worship** Jesus after He was born. And other 'wise men' such as **Cornelius**, plainly a Gentile, **made enquiry to Peter** just after Jesus is gone ([Acts 10](#)), showing that there must have been other Gentiles like **Cornelius** seeking after Jesus, which provoked Jesus to end His ministry to the Jews. The Gentile **Cornelius** is described as a...

...devout man, and one that feared God with all his house, which gave much alms to the people, and prayed to God alway[s] [Acts 10:1-2](#).

And he must have been this way both before and throughout Jesus' ministry too. And Jesus would have likely attracted his attention. And in the story of **Cornelius** we **learn** from **Peter** that **Cornelius** and **his kinsmen and near friends** cannot be the only Gentiles at this time that had been trying to get to Jesus. From this encounter with Cornelius and his clan Peter recognizes that there are and always have been God-fearing Gentiles...

...in every nation... that feareth him, and worketh righteousness... [and are] accepted with him [Acts 10:35](#).

Peter comes to the **revelation** at Cornelius' house that all these **accepted** Gentiles have all along been coming from **every nation** to worship God in Jerusalem at the feasts, as Peter must have seen them doing so all his life. And they are obviously the same ones who come to 'bother' Jesus signaling that it is time for Him to be crucified.

The second reason that these **Greeks** must be only Gentiles is more obvious. It's that Jesus had no reason to turn away Jews. How is it that Jesus knows that, **The hour is come, that the Son of man should be glorified?** What makes sense is that He knows the **hour** is come when **accepted** Gentiles start to seek after Him. And since we now **know** that He was not allowed by The Father to respond to Gentiles, their seeking after him must mark the end of His ministry. And this is easily enough **understood** after the fact when the purpose of the secret Age of Grace is finally **revealed** by the **holy apostles and prophets by the Spirit** after Jesus is gone. Jesus' ministry was only to the Jews, and He makes this clear by going to **the cross** instead of to those **accepted** Gentile **Greeks**. At this point, He is ready to

die for the sins of the World to finish setting up The Age of Grace so that the ministry of the Gospel can continue to be **revealed** to the Jews, and begin to be **revealed** to the Gentiles **by the Spirit**.

Three of the Gospel accounts tell the story where Jesus refers to us Gentiles as **dogs** who at best are trying to **eat of the crumbs which fall from their masters' table**, remember? I think this was Jesus' way of continuing to hide the fact that The Spirit's ministry to the Gentiles must come later. In this case He is simply trying to 'put us off' in order to prolong his time of ministry to Jews, because He knows the time for the Gentiles is coming later. In the story about Cornelius, Peter seems to come to this **revelation**, saying,

I perceive that God is no respecter of persons [Acts 10:34](#).

And we will come to **understand** in the remainder of this **study** that God 'traffics' in lots of 'obfuscation' for some very good reasons.

Jesus stops in mid-sentence reading from the Prophet Isaiah showing by The Spirit in hindsight that **the acceptable year of the lord** is The Church Age of Grace. Jesus declares that this time has come and implies that He is the reason for it. But He also implies and later confirms that **the days of vengeance** is the **great tribulation** and has not yet come.

[Isaiah 61:1-2](#);

[Matthew 24:15-21](#)

[Luke 4:16-21](#); [21:20-22](#)

Jesus also gives us a clue that The Age of Grace is hidden in Old Testament **prophecy** before we're able to see it. Jesus makes clear in hindsight with The Spirit's help that The Age of Grace comes with His coming. But Jesus and other Old Testament **prophets** don't hide that the **great tribulation** or the **days of vengeance** are coming. So when Jesus implies that He marks the beginning of **the acceptable year of the Lord**, but stops short of including also the beginning of **the day of vengeance of our God** by stopping in the middle of a sentence in Isaiah's **prophecy**, He makes it possible for us to later **understand** that there will be a hidden period described as the **acceptable year of the Lord** that occurs before the period of **the day of vengeance**. And this is how Jesus shows us that we can look for what are now commonly called 'gaps' in Old Testament **prophecy** where The Age of Grace is hidden. Compare Isaiah's Old Testament Hebrew to Jesus' New Testament Greek in the KJV. Isaiah records,

The Spirit of the Lord GOD is upon me; because the LORD hath anointed me to preach good tidings unto the meek; he hath sent me to bind up the brokenhearted, to proclaim liberty to the captives, and the opening of the prison to them that are bound; To proclaim the acceptable year of the LORD, and the day of vengeance of our God... [Isaiah 61:1-2](#).

But Jesus reads,

The Spirit of the Lord is upon me, because he hath anointed me to preach the gospel to the poor; he hath sent me to heal the brokenhearted, to preach deliverance to the captives, and recovering of sight to the blind, to set at liberty them that are bruised, To preach the acceptable year of the Lord [Luke 4:18-19](#).

And He stops reading exactly before He gets to ***the day of vengeance of our God***, and sits down and tells us,

This day is this scripture fulfilled in your ears [Luke 4:21](#).

This all implies that The Age of Grace starts for the Jews with Jesus' ministry but that ***the day of vengeance*** is not yet ready to start. Later, when Jesus finishes ministering to The Jews, and they reject him, generally speaking, He leaves the Earth and sends The Spirit so that ***the holy apostles and prophets*** can then ***reveal*** this ***acceptable year of the Lord... unto the uttermost part of the earth***. And before he goes He marks these ***days of vengeance*** to start when the Jews must ***flee to the mountains*** to be saved [Luke 21:20-22](#), and also says that this will occur at the mid-week ***abomination of desolation*** event—the beginning of the 'worst time ever' ([Mat 24:15-21](#)). Still, some argue that these ***days of vengeance*** have already taken place. But we'll ***prove*** they haven't, and that the Jews that have recently returned to Israel will eventually fulfill these ***prophecies***. But they cannot be fulfilled until The Age of Grace is concluded.

We would not be able to make sense of end times ***prophecy*** without the ***understanding*** of how The Age of Grace is hidden in Old Testament ***prophecy***. Indeed, many 'messes' have been made without ***understanding*** it. And by-the-way, how do you think someone could come to such an ***understanding*** about this ***mystery of God*** on their own? Higher education alone will never lead to such ***revelations*** in The Word of God. But this ***revelation*** is plainly the work of The Spirit, and I came to it through the ***teaching*** of 'top' ***prophecy*** scholars. And this ***revelation*** is an example of how ***wisdom*** and ***knowledge*** are necessarily gained with ***precepts*** from ***here a little and there a little***.

So we're looking for the end of The Age of Grace, which means we're looking for the 3 ½-year period before the mid-tribulation ***abomination of desolation*** event, known as ***the beginning of sorrows***, because this half-week starts with the revealing of the ***mystery of iniquity***, or the revealing of the Antichrist, which is a marker of the end of The Age of Grace. With the help of The Spirit, and gifted ***teachers*** of The Word of God, we will see that the Church must be 'spirited away' at the end of The Age of Grace before the Antichrist can be ***revealed*** and The Great Tribulation can start. ***Proving*** this is our next assignment in [SECTION 3](#).

SECTION 3 The Coming Pretribulation Rapture of The Church, The Mystery of Iniquity, and The Beginning of Sorrows



Take a look at the [TIMELINE of Great Tribulation Raptures & Events on Earth](#) (p.28). Above the (purple, blue, and silver) timeline you can see when six of the nine raptures in and around The Great Tribulation will take place. Below the timeline you see when The Mystery of Iniquity, The Abomination of Desolation, and Armageddon will take place. All these raptures and events take place between the end of The Church Age and the end of The Great Tribulation. There are three other group raptures not yet on the timeline because one of them is not for redemption, another is not necessarily for redemption, and they are all from the grave to the Earth, not to Heaven. We'll get to them in later sections. And there are also other raptures I don't count because they are also not redemptive, not of a group, or do not include any humans. And there is one more redemptive rapture a thousand years after the ones associated with The Great Tribulation. We'll place and identify the participants of all of them eventually.

The first thing we must **prove** to substantiate this timeline is that The Rapture of the Church occurs just before The Mystery of Iniquity. But let's start by defining exactly what The Rapture of the Church is.

The Coming Pretribulation Rapture of the Church

Mortal Christians are instantaneously **changed** into immortal beings and are supernaturally **raised** at the **sound** of a **trumpet** from Heaven at an unknown time.

1 Corinthians 15:51-54
Romans 5 14-21

The event popularly called The Rapture of the Church is a future event whose exact time remains a **mystery**, but is **revealed** by Paul to be when both dead and living Christians from The Church Age are at the **sound** like a **trumpet** from Heaven suddenly **raised** and **changed** from mortal physical beings into immortal spiritual beings bringing an end to The Church Age. Paul reveals,

Behold, I shew you a mystery; We shall not all sleep, but we shall all be changed, In a moment, in the twinkling of an eye, at the last trump: for the trumpet shall sound, and the dead shall be raised incorruptible, and we shall be changed. For this corruptible [body] must put on incorruption, and this mortal [body] must put on immortality. So when this corruptible shall have put on incorruption, and this mortal shall have put on immortality, then shall be brought to pass the saying that is written, Death is swallowed up in victory [1Cor 15:51-54](#).

Paul is talking to the Church in Corinth, implying that all Church-Age Christians may look forward to this transformation from mortality to immortality. The fact that it will occur is certain, but this event remains a **mystery** because we don't **know** when this **last... trumpet will sound** that signals this 'transformation'. And surely this rapture, whenever it is, will end the **dispensation of the grace of God**. Of course, it cannot really be the end of the '**grace of God**' because no matter which '**dispensation of God**' you are redeemed in, **salvation** can only be a **free gift... of grace** [Rom 5:14-21](#). And to the Thessalonians Paul adds that **the dead** will be involved in this redemption of the Church. And we will later confirm that this not only includes dead Christians from The Church Age, but also souls from the **other ages** before The Church Age too.

Both **dead** and **alive** Christians are redeemed and rise from the Earth to be forever with Jesus just before the start of God's salvation plan of **wrath**. The Rapture must come before The Mystery of Iniquity because the Antichrist cannot be revealed until The Spirit is removed from the Earth. And The Spirit cannot be removed without first redeeming Christians as God promises.

[Ephesians 1:13-14](#) [2 Thessalonians 2:1-8](#)
[1 Thessalonians 4:13-18](#) [1 John 4:3](#)

In another account of The Rapture of the Church, Paul, speaking to the Thessalonians, informs us that...

...the dead in Christ shall rise first, Then we which are alive and remain shall be caught up [or "caught away" or raptured] together with them in the clouds, to meet the Lord in the air; and so shall we ever be with the Lord [1Thes 4:16-17](#).

This shows that dead Christians, being already saved, have no need to go through the **great tribulation**, but proceed directly from the grave to meet Jesus in the sky. For the same reason, living Christians have no purpose entering the **great tribulation** either and will bypass it too. However dead

Jews do have a **purpose** in the **great tribulation** and will be resurrected from their graves directly to Israel to join the ones already there, because they have not yet recognized their Messiah, and this is when they will be given an opportunity to do so. And Gentiles who survive The Age of Grace but are 'left behind' will get another chance at redemption in the **great tribulation** too. We'll detail the trials of these Tribulation Jews and Gentiles more fully in later sections. But Age of Grace Christians, **dead** or **alive**, are already ready to be redeemed, and must be **taken out of the way** off the Earth along with The Spirit before the **wrath of God** can begin and before the Antichrist can be **revealed** [2 Thes 2:1-8](#). This must be the case because The Spirit, and arguably the Church too, **now letteth** ([Verse 7](#)) or **withholdeth** ([Verse 6](#)) the Antichrist from being **revealed**.

You'll have to pardon Paul for his repetitive use of terms that indicate that 'someone' now 'restrains' the Antichrist from being **'revealed'**. I guess he wants to make it abundantly clear that 'the spirit of the Antichrist' ([1John 4:3](#)) is now being 'held back' in The Age of Grace by 'someone'. But there is some confusion in this passage about who is doing this 'restraining'. Still, Paul plainly refers to the time when **that man of sin** is **revealed** as **the mystery of iniquity**. And he also makes clear that when **that man of sin** is **revealed** ([Verse 3](#)), popularly referred to as the Antichrist, it's only possible because 'someone', referred to here as **'he'**, will have been **taken out of the way** ([Verse 7](#)). Now it's true that Paul doesn't specifically say who **'he'** is that is now in **the way** of the Antichrist. But this cannot reasonably be considered confusing. It's obvious that there's only one reasonable choice, because **'he'** must be both 'someone' who now "restrains" the Antichrist and that later can **be taken out of the way**. This could only be The Spirit who has been in **the way** since Pentecost—unless you think it's appropriate in this case to refer to The Church as **'he'** too. But it really doesn't matter which of these two clearly 'removable forces' it is. They are the only two united against 'the spirit of the Antichrist', and they are also now forever inseparable by the promise of God. The key is that Christians of The Church Age are promised by God that they will have The Spirit with them until they are redeemed. The Apostle Paul promises by The Spirit and **revelation** of God to the Church in Ephesus, and therefore to us, that,

...ye were sealed with that holy Spirit of promise, Which is the earnest of our inheritance until the redemption of the purchased possession, unto the praise of his glory [Eph 1:13-14](#).

So Paul promises us here that The Spirit cannot be taken from us. This implies that if The Spirit must **be taken out of the way**, then we must be taken with Him. The Spirit is our **earnest**, a word still used today for a "deposit guaranteeing" a purchase, in this case, **the redemption** of The Church **purchased** by the blood of Jesus. The Spirit and The Church are the only two 'holding back' the spirit of the Antichrist. We must be taken out of the way **to meet the Lord in the air** before **the mystery of iniquity** can be **revealed** and The Great Tribulation can begin.

Here are the astounding conclusions we can make so far. The Spirit is the only reasonable **'he'** who can 'restrain' the Antichrist and later, like in The 69th Week and before, return to being **out of the way** again. This also means

that the **mystery of iniquity** must continue **until** the removal of The Spirit from the Earth which allows the Antichrist to be **revealed** and rise to power where he can 'exalt' **himself above all that is called God** in his time ([2 Thes 2:4](#)). And this implies that after The Spirit and therefore the Christians of The Age of Grace are **taken out of the way**, then The 70th Week, starting with the revealing of the **mystery of iniquity** and **the beginning of sorrows** and followed by **the days of vengeance**, will no longer be 'held back' from literally leveling the entire Earth. Both Gentiles and Jews will be **saved** on Earth after The Rapture of the Church, but not by the same 'operations' of The Spirit that are now going on in this **age**. It will no longer be by **grace** and **the Spirit**, but by **grace** and the blatantly expressed **wrath of God**. For this reason you could call it The Age of Wrath. However it will be seen by the whole World that the Jews in **Judea** will be kept safe by God in **the beginning of sorrows**, and that some of them will also escape the horrors of **the days of vengeance** if they **flee into the mountains** on cue. Nonetheless, during this 7-year **great tribulation** God will stage an awesome exhibition of **wrath** that will motivate souls to seek God in ways The Spirit could not. As a result, at least some still on the Earth will finally accept His **grace**. We'll get to more of all this later. But Age-of-Grace Christians can have no part in any of The Great Tribulation until the very end, until after **the marriage of the Lamb**. After that watch out, because then, here comes **the bride**.

Christians, also called **the bride** of Christ, are not **appointed... to wrath** but instead have an appointment while The Great Tribulation transpires to prepare themselves in Heaven for **the marriage of the Lamb**.

John 14:2-3 2 Corinthians 12:2-4
 Romans 5:9; 8:1 Revelation 6:15-17;
 1 Thessalonians 5:9-11 19:17,19; 22:17

What we've covered so far is **proof** enough of a pretribulation rapture, but we're not near through yet. There is additional **proof** of the pretribulation rapture throughout this **study** along the way. But there is more fundamental **proof** that Age-of-Grace Christians, and also Christians from **other ages** that we'll identify later, have no business in The Great Tribulation. Paul declares repeatedly that Church-Age Christians **shall be saved from wrath** ([Rom 5:9](#), [8:1](#)). And further he says,

God hath not appointed us [Church-Age Christians] **to wrath, but to obtain salvation by our Lord Jesus Christ, Who died for us, that, whether we wake or sleep** [are alive or dead], **we should live together with him. Wherefore comfort yourselves together, and edify one another, even as also ye do** [1Thes 5:9-11](#).

So if you're not 'asleep', you'll notice he's referencing The Rapture here again. Paul tells the Thessalonians all about The Rapture in the previous chapter. He calls **the dead in Christ** there, **them... which sleep in Jesus**, simply again distinguishing those who **sleep** (or are **dead**) from those who **wake** (or are still **alive**). And in Chapter 5 he adds that both will **obtain**

salvation and avoid the **wrath** to come in The Rapture. Here he also tells them for the second time to **comfort** themselves with this news. This kind of news is certainly worth mentioning a couple of times.

Next it would help to determine when in the Book of Revelation **wrath is come**. Because when **wrath is come**, The Spirit and the Church must already be **out of the way**. In Revelation 6 Jesus begins to open The Seal Judgments of God on the Earth. After six out of seven are opened, it's apparently obvious to everyone that **wrath is come**. John says,

...the kings of the earth, and the great men, and the rich men, and the chief captains, and the mighty men, and every bondman, and every free man, hid themselves in the dens and in the rocks of the mountains; And said to the mountains and rocks, Fall on us, and hide us from the face of him that sitteth on the throne, and from the wrath of the Lamb: For the great day of his wrath is come; and who shall be able to stand? [Rev 6:15-17](#)

But reading through the first five Seal Judgments I'm sure a lot of people get the message that **wrath is come** a few judgments sooner than this. So it must be that The Rapture of the Church takes place before any of these Seal Judgments are opened.

So during these early Great Tribulation events, the Church, also known collectively as **the bride** of Christ ([Rev 22:17](#)), must already be somewhere in Heaven. And we do **know** of a particular 'engagement' that **she** has sometime during The Great Tribulation. Specifically, Christians will have to 'make themselves ready' in Heaven for **the marriage of the Lamb** or for their marriage to Jesus. And this preparation may take the entire Great Tribulation. And you may have heard the story told this way. Marriage tradition has it that a prospective groom, before he is ready to marry, should prepare a house for his bride. This, of course, could take years. Jesus may have been referring to this tradition when He says,

I go to prepare a place for you. And if I go and prepare a place for you, I will come again, and receive you unto myself; that where I am, there ye may be also [John 14:2-3](#).

And apparently He's been at it nearly 2,000 years now.

Traditions for the bride while anticipating her wedding day include making and acquiring all the things she will need for her new house, or in more recent times, a 'hope chest', often including the pure white wedding dress itself. So the bride's preparation could also appropriately go on for years too. And again, this 'engagement and preparation' period in Heaven may transpire throughout the time that The Great Tribulation is happening on Earth. But what it actually involves maybe only God knows for sure. I don't. But it must begin sometime after The Rapture of the Church and end just before Armageddon when...

...the marriage of the Lamb is come, and his wife [the Church] hath made herself ready [Rev 19:17](#).

After this 'wedding', there will be a 'wedding reception' called ***the marriage supper of the Lamb*** [Rev 19:9](#). Call it a celebration of the Savior with the saved. It's a party no one will want to miss. But at least some of those scheduled to meet at this wedding celebration might wish to miss their next 'engagement' following the reception. This event must necessarily be an unimaginably 'grave undertaking', pun intended. And we'll talk more about all this later too.

The Apostle John's personal view of The Rapture of the Church in Revelation is between where ***grace*** ends and ***wrath is come***.

Revelation 1-6

My second Bible ***teacher*** taught me how to 'imply' the placement of The Rapture of the Church in the Book of Revelation over two decades ago. He was using a Scofield Study Bible to help him. And Scofield should get the credit for most of the commonly used end times ***prophecy*** terms I will use throughout this ***study***. I had to come up with a few new ones on my own though. And we'll talk more about Scofield and his work—and because it's unavoidable, his shortcomings—in a later section. To locate the implication of a pretribulation Rapture in Revelation—besides that it must come before the ***wrath*** unleashed in Chapter 6—we'll kind of do the same thing we did when looking for the start of ***wrath***, except this time we'll look more directly for the end of The Church Age.

[Revelation 2-3](#) is plainly Jesus' summary of The Church Age. In these chapters Jesus outlines the 'rewards and punishments' for ***the seven churches*** of the age. We'll look at these consequences a little more closely next section. Right now we simply need to notice that if we see the 'praise and admonitions' to the ***churches*** in Chapters 2-3, and judgments of ***wrath*** from Heaven coming down beginning in Chapter 6, we should expect to see evidence of The Rapture of the Church somewhere in Chapters 4 and 5.

The first two words in [Chapter 4](#) imply a sequential time change. These two words are, ***After this***, and they refer to what happens ***after*** the 'rewards and punishments' for the behavior of ***the churches*** in The Age of Grace are completed. What follows '***After this***' is that the Apostle John, presumably along with the rest of the Church, is invited ***up*** through a ***door... opened in heaven*** at a ***voice*** that sounds like a ***trumpet***. This must be when those with faith in Jesus abandon the Earth and the soon coming ***wrath of God***. And it may be when they begin to make themselves ready in Heaven for ***the marriage of the Lamb*** that takes place seven years later.

John is told from the first chapter of the Book of Revelation to be on the lookout for the beginning of future events. Jesus specifically instructs John on the matter, saying,

Write the things which thou hast seen, and the things which are, and the things which shall be hereafter [Rev 1:19](#).

Jesus' glorious presentation of His Resurrected Self to John becomes the past event that John ***hast*** just ***seen***. The ***things which are*** presently ongoing—The Church Age—find explanation in Chapters 2-3. So the '***After this***' at the beginning of Chapter 4 is obviously the beginning of future events or of

things which shall be hereafter. This is the point where The Spirit's 'holding back' of the Antichrist must end. And Chapters 4-5 show the ceremony in Heaven at **the throne** of God that takes place when this transition occurs. In the ceremony, Jesus is found worthy to open the seals of The Seven Seal Judgments that will release **the wrath of God** on the Earth. And when He opens them we see it's a matter of time before everyone on Earth seeks to **hide... from the face of him that sitteth on the throne, and from the wrath of the Lamb** [Rev 6:16](#). This clear transition from The Church Age to a future time when **wrath is come** is the time where The Rapture of the Church should fit—at the end of The Age of Grace and just before The Great Tribulation. Of course, we really only see John **come up** through this **door... opened in heaven**. So in Chapter 4 we have to presume that this is when the Church 'comes up' too. Yeah, this argument is kind of thin. But it gets much better in Chapter 5.

The ceremony in Heaven that finds Jesus worthy to open the seals of The Seven Seal Judgments of God on the Earth beginning The Great Tribulation is followed by **a new song** of praise to Jesus by the 24 **elders** that includes praise for the rapture and redemption of the Church.

[Revelation 5:8-9; 19:7; 21:12,14](#)

Now we're going to identify a specific reference to the pretribulation rapture of the Church in the Book of Revelation. I belabor the point because I think that most who care don't even **know** of this direct reference to it. Again, I think that the **proof** given so far for a pretribulation rapture is sufficient, but many still insist that there is no pretribulation rapture of the Church and that this rapture takes place during or at the end of The Great Tribulation, or not even at all. These kinds of mistakes are common because there are several identifiable raptures in Revelation, and most all of them have been mistaken for The Rapture of the Church. So you see we won't be completely done with a comprehensive **proof** of any of the raptures until we have specifically identified all nine raptures in and around The Great Tribulation. And I venture to say that everyone has some 'housecleaning' to do on the issue.

In Chapter 4, at first glance, and except by presumption, the Church is not shown to be there. By-the-way, the **sea of glass** around **the throne** of God presumed by some to allegorically represent the Church is actually just a really nice floor to stand on. We'll make this as clear as the floor itself in a later section. But there is a specific reference to the Church during this pretribulation ceremony found in a **song**. This **new song** is **sung** in Heaven by the 24 **elders** around The Throne of God when they...

...fell down before the Lamb [Jesus], having every one of them harps... And they sung a new song, saying, Thou art worthy to take the book [or scroll], and to open the seals thereof: for thou wast slain, and hast redeemed us to God by thy blood out of every kindred, and tongue, and people, and nation... [Rev 5:8-9](#).

At this point before the opening of The 7 Seal Judgments, this **song** declares that the redemption of these souls **out of every kindred, and tongue, and**

people, and nation is a done deal, and done before **the wrath of God** begins. And as there really are no better candidates, most consider the 24 elders to be the 12 Apostles and the 12 Patriarchs of the 12 Tribes of Israel. One reason they are the likely choice is that it's already **known** that these 24 will have their names forever inscribed on the gates and walls of the city of New Jerusalem that will come down out of the New Heaven to the New Earth ([Rev 21:12,14](#)). Now all 24 of these apostles and patriarchs are Jews. But these elders sing their praises representing those **redeemed... out of every kindred, and tongue, and people, and nation**. Fittingly, this is what should be expected. The **elders** represent **us** with their **new song** around The Throne, though we are not seen there, because evidently we are not there. We could already be off somewhere else in Heaven making ourselves **ready... for the marriage of the Lamb** [Rev 19:7](#). But whatever the case, we don't seem to be hanging around The Throne of God.

And once we have looked at all the other raptures, we will see how none of them fit the requirements of The Rapture of the Church like this one **sung** about it Revelation 5. However we'll also find that some of these other raptures to Heaven are followed by the singing of a special song of praise and other details that differentiate them from the Church and from other groups. In the case of The Rapture of the Church, their **song** is **sung** by their leaders, the 24 **elders**. These **elders** are allowed to praise Jesus as being worthy to administer The Seal Judgments beginning The Great Tribulation, and also for redeeming them from the Earth. They sing of their redemption by Jesus' **blood** sacrifice of Himself, and, though being all Jews, identify themselves as a group coming from every culture and nation on Earth. So ends The Church Age of Grace. And so begins a **dispensation of wrath** the likes of which has never been seen before, nor will ever be seen again. There will be more to say on these subjects as we begin the process of differentiating the raptures in the following sections.

The Mystery of Iniquity

The Mystery of Iniquity is the revealing of the identity of the Antichrist by the making of a multinational, 7-year peace treaty, and occurs just after The Rapture of the Church.

[Revelation 6:1-2](#)

[2 Thessalonians 2:1-10](#)

[Daniel 9:26-27](#)

Meanwhile, down on Earth, things must be at some level of alarm with all the suddenly missing people. Of course, it will be the perfect opportunity for some strong, confident, and cunning leader to make his move. And things really get moving from the very first **seal** Jesus opens. This is when the **white horse** rides. We can expect that this horse and its rider represent a particular 'principality and power' otherwise unidentified here, except that what this rider accomplishes is summarized. John sees,

...he... had a bow; and a crown was given unto him: and he went forth conquering, and to conquer [Rev 6:1-2](#).

This 'crowned king' must be the rising **revealed** Antichrist. The initial **proof** of this is the simple **revelation** that here at the start of The Great Tribulation there can be no other 'king' more significant to be identified as 'on the rise' than the Antichrist. But this is another case of **truth** that must be proven in the broad view. The more precepts connected, the broader the view. And the broader the view, the better the **proof** becomes. Such **truth** is not adequately proven otherwise. And this is the perspective of prophetic **interpretation** that this **study** is all about. So it's this whole **study** that proves that the **white horse** is ridden by the Antichrist, though what we have done so far makes it already highly suspect. And we can say here that whoever this rider is, he is released by God to rise and **conquer** following The Rapture of the Church at the end of The Age of Grace. This also implies that this 'conqueror' marks the beginning point of The 70th Week of Daniel and The Great Tribulation. Indeed, this looks like the Antichrist, and with an ever broadening view that we'll see as we go, we'll be able to confirm this. God is now by The Spirit 'holding back' the Antichrist, but after we're gone the act of Jesus opening the first **seal** is the very act that allows **the mystery of iniquity** to be **revealed** [2 Thes 2:7-8](#)

The last verse of Daniel 9 gives us a complete summary of the entire 70th Week with three events that mark the beginning, middle, and end of The Great Tribulation. Daniel reveals that...

...he [the Antichrist] shall confirm the covenant with many for one week: and in the midst of the week he shall cause the sacrifice and the oblation [or offerings] to cease, and for the overspreading of abominations he shall make it desolate, even until the consummation, and that determined shall be poured upon the desolate [Dan 9:27](#)

The perpetrator that **shall confirm the covenant with many for one week**, and that **in the midst of the week shall cause the sacrifice and the oblation to cease, and for the overspreading of abominations he shall make it** [The Temple in Jerusalem] **desolate** is the Antichrist. The Antichrist's 7-year treaty is the inauguration of this week. 3 ½ years later he pulls off The Abomination of Desolation. Another 3 ½ years later is when **the consummation** is **poured upon the desolate** at Armageddon. And this is why this covenant-making event is seen as the one that starts The Great Tribulation and is therefore at least one of the ways that the Antichrist will be **revealed**. So it's expected that just after all the Christians disappear, some possibly American, European, or Southwest Asian leader will make some kind of hugely successful multinational, 7-year peace treaty, or **a covenant with many for one week**, thereby identifying himself as the Antichrist. Except that most that could recognize him for who he really is must already be gone. Still, this will be why a small minority that **know** why they were left behind will finally have to deal with that 'Jesus issue' that they have been putting off for so long. And we'll see that this small minority becomes a **multitude** of people.

There are many more **prophecies** that identify the Antichrist, his alliances, his enemies, his behavior, and also his kingdom, but the 7-year **covenant with many** is the first event that identifies him. And God will not

allow him to be positively identified before this event. This universal revealing of the Antichrist marks the beginning point of The 70th Week of Daniel, and the beginning of the 3 ½ years of **the beginning of sorrows**, which is followed by the 3 ½ years of **the days of vengeance**, adding up to quite a **great tribulation**. We will more thoroughly investigate the origins and nature of the Antichrist and his kingdom in later sections.

The Beginning of Sorrows

The Beginning of Sorrows is identified by Jesus as a **sign of [His] coming, and of the end of the world**, and as a time of 1) Jewish persecution, 2) false Christs and prophets, 3) wars and rumors of war, 4) famines, 5) plagues, 6) earthquakes, and 7) fearful heavenly sights. Following these 'sorrows', according to Jesus, is The Abomination of Desolation midterm event and The Days of Vengeance. And from this we **know** that John's description of The Seal and Trumpet Judgments of Revelation 6-11 correspond to Jesus' description of The Beginning of Sorrows in His Discourse on the Mount of Olives found in Matthew 24, Mark 13, and Luke 21. Likewise we can also see that The Plague Judgments of Revelation 16 correspond to the time Jesus calls The Days of Vengeance because this worst of all times follows The Abomination of Desolation in both Jesus and John's accounts.

Matthew 24:3-15
Mark 13:3-14
Luke 21:7-22

Revelation 6:11;13:5-6, 16
Daniel 7:8-11; 11:36
2 Thessalonians 2:4

On the Mount of Olives, Jesus' disciples ask Him, **when... and what shall be the sign of thy coming, and of the end of the world?** His answer begins by outlining **the beginning of sorrows** including, in this order, 1) the persecution of Jews, 2) false Christs and false prophets, 3) wars and rumors of war, 4) famines, 5) plagues, 6) earthquakes, and 7) fearful signs in the heavens. Putting together the three accounts from [Matthew 24:3-14](#), [Mark 13:3-13](#), and [Luke 21:7-19](#) gives this complete list of events. **All these are the beginning of sorrows** according to Jesus ([Mat 24:8](#)). And this is just part of the full outline given by Jesus of the entire Great Tribulation that He covers at this time on the Mount of Olives that John later expands in Revelation 6-19. Each of these Gospel passages contain an outline of the entire **great tribulation** from the perspective of three **apostles**, (and yes, only one of the original 12), and can be connected to John's expanded version for a better picture than any one of them offer. Again, once we have built a broader view, we will be able to confirm that **the beginning of sorrows**, as Jesus outlines it, is the summary of John's description of The Seal and Trumpet Judgments of Revelation 6-11. And John's expanded description reveals more detail of the worldwide devastations such as economic collapse, and the assault of man-eating wild animals that are partly responsible for killing over half of the earth's population during this period. Indeed, **wrath is come**, but it's just **the beginning**. These 3 ½ years of events that include the Antichrist's rise and 14 lesser judgments of God from Heaven must take

place in the first half of The 70th Week of Daniel starting with the revealing of ***the mystery of iniquity*** and continuing to ***the abomination of desolation*** mid-week event ***spoken of by Daniel the prophet*** and according to Jesus, John, and Paul.

Finding The Abomination of Desolation in Revelation to mark the end of The Beginning of Sorrows is also a bit of a trick because, as usual, this event finds the components of its full definition scattered ***here*** and ***there*** all over The Bible. The component that helps us find this event in Revelation is that the Antichrist is repeatedly reported to have a really 'big mouth'. John says,

And there was given unto him a mouth speaking great things and blasphemies; and power was given unto him to continue forty and two months. And he opened his mouth in blasphemy against God, to blaspheme his name, and his tabernacle, and them that dwell in heaven [Rev 13:5-6](#).

This 'big-mouthed blasphemy' of the Antichrist in God's ***tabernacle*** or Temple in Jerusalem connects him to The Abomination of Desolation. This ***blaspheming*** is also described by Paul when he says that the Antichrist...

...opposeth and exalteth himself above all that is called God, or that is worshipped; so that he as God sitteth in the temple of God, shewing himself that he is God [2 Thes 2:4](#).

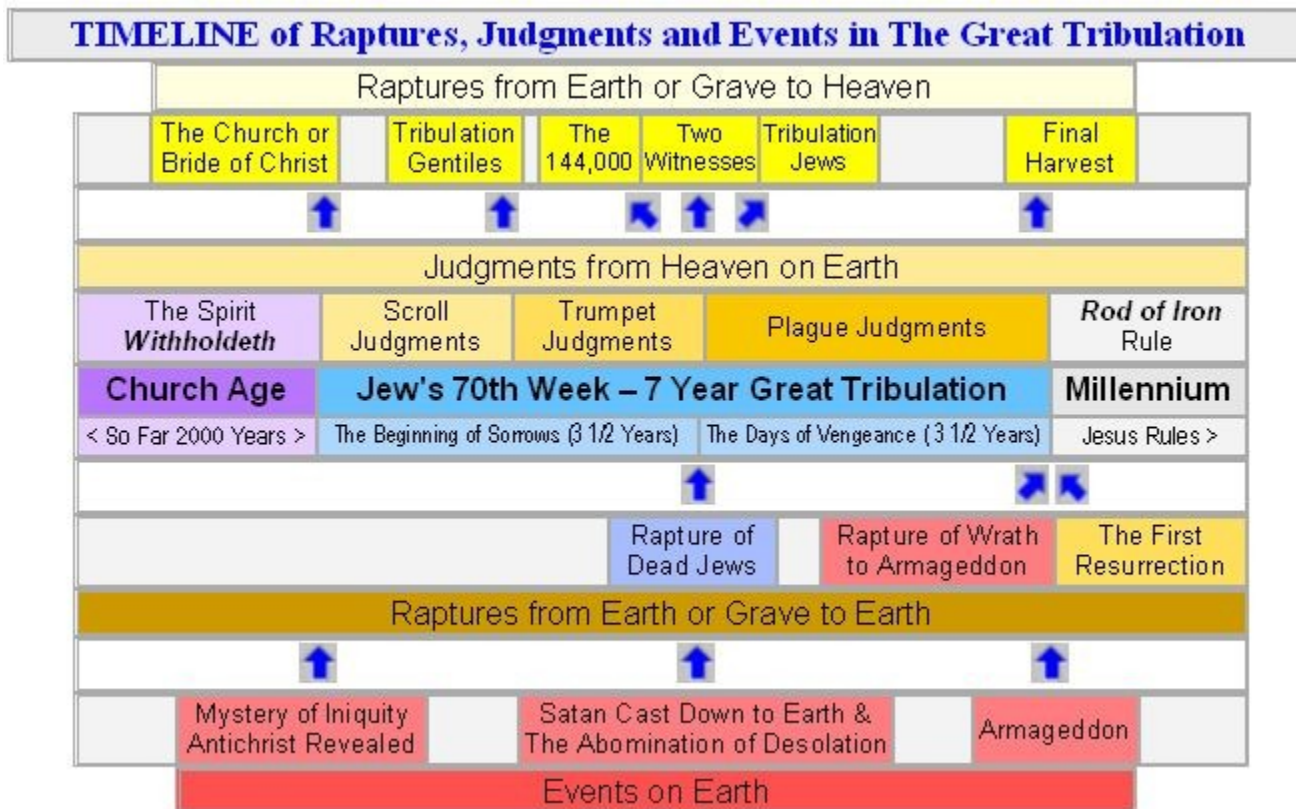
Three times Daniel identifies the Antichrist as a 'boaster' at The Abomination of Desolation. He says that the Antichrist will be ***speaking great things*** [Dan 7:8](#) (with ***interpretation*** in [Verse 20](#) and [25](#)), and also that he will 'magnify' ***himself even to the prince of the host*** [or over Jesus Himself] [Dan 8:11](#). And he says that the Antichrist, ***shall exalt himself, and magnify himself above every god*** [Dan 11:36](#). So this 'boasting-fest' of the Antichrist in Revelation 13—when he's also ***given*** 42 months of ***power***—must occur at The Abomination of Desolation. We can also assume that because the descriptions of the first 14 judgments from Heaven (in Chapters 6-11) are given before Chapter 13 that they will all occur in The Beginning of Sorrows, in the first half of The 70th Week of Daniel. But there is more confirmation to come about all this too.

And we ***know*** that after ***the abomination of desolation***, according to Jesus, things really start to get bad. He calls these second half events ***the days of vengeance*** [Luke 21:22](#). And with a 3½-year long half-week left at this point, we must conclude that both the 42 months that is ***given*** to the Antichrist at The Abomination of Desolation ***and*** the remaining 7 judgments of God from Heaven (in Chapter 16), must happen in the same ***time, times, and an half***. And this period must be the second half of The 70th Week of Daniel. Again, the better ***proof*** of all this is in the totality of this ***study***.

For most people, reading any particular verse in the Book of Revelation is like being 'lost in the jungle'. So before we jump right into the individual identifications of the nine raptures seen throughout the Book of ***Revelation***, it will help to first familiarize you with this ***vision*** as a whole. And like any other work of

God, you have to ***learn*** how to use it as designed. But don't forget that The Spirit promises to show us how. This will be our task in the next section.

SECTION 4 Overviews of The Great Tribulation in the Book of Revelation



Putting together the timelines you have seen so far and adding the remaining 'Earthbound raptures' would result in something like the [TIMELINE of Raptures, Judgments and Events in The Great Tribulation](#) above (p.38). Next we're going to do a few different overviews of The Great Tribulation so that later you won't be so lost in the details, though you may have to go through these overviews a few times before you **understand** them. They're not so much meant to **prove** anything, but more to help you later **understand** the **proofs** in the following sections. This section is also all about the processes and frameworks we'll be working with to identify and differentiate the nine raptures of The Great Tribulation—all of them necessarily **understood** by specific **instruction** or examples out of The Bible. Let's start with **instruction** from Jesus found in the first chapter of the Book of Revelation.

What thou seest, write in a book, and send it unto the seven churches
[Rev 1:11.](#)

These are specific overlying instructions given to the Apostle John by Jesus in the Book of Revelation. The book itself John calls...

The Revelation of Jesus Christ, which God gave unto him [Jesus], to shew unto his servants [the first being John] things which must shortly come to pass [Rev 1:1](#).

So **after** John **hast seen** the resurrected Jesus in Chapter 1, and **after** He encourages and admonishes **the churches** of The Age of Grace **which** [now] **are** in Chapters 2-3, the things **which must shortly come to pass** or **the things which shall be hereafter** begin to be **revealed** in Chapter 4. There we see where John and evidently the Church too are taken up through **a door... in heaven** to **the throne** of God where John witnesses the ceremonial beginning of The Great Tribulation. This means that all of Chapters 4-22 are **the things which shall be hereafter** making Revelation mostly about God's descriptions, promises, and warnings of what **must shortly come to pass**. This account of the future in Revelation is at first glance bizarre and fantastic, causing many to dismiss it as just a vague spiritual allegory of the triumphs of good over evil. And indeed it's full of allegory and symbolism. But we will see that Revelation is in no way allegorical, metaphorical, or symbolic except that these devices are used in it by God to portray real future events, nations, institutions, people, and spiritual principalities and powers **which shall be hereafter**. Again, looking at Revelation from a number of angles first will help us lose that 'lost in the jungle' feeling that's too common when exploring this **book**.

There are many clues available to help us chart the positions of the nine raptures and the other events in the Book of Revelation. They include:

- 1) past, present, and future events
- 2) a seven year time parameter
- 3) time periods
- 4) time transitions
- 5) death tolls
- 6) severity and escalations
- 7) sequential and concurrent accounts of events

Revelation 1-22

To place the raptures and many other events in and around The Great Tribulation, it will be necessary to **understand** how to 'navigate' in The Book of Revelation. Much of the 'navigation' is purely sequential, but there are other telling chronological indicators used by John. Foremost of these is the three part division of past, present, and future events. This is when Jesus directs John to...

Write the things which thou hast seen, and the things which are, and the things which shall be hereafter [Rev 1:19](#).

So this indicates that the actual linear, space-time events of The Revelation include

1) past, present, but mostly still future events. Other chronological indicators are
2) events that disclose the 7-year time parameter of The Great Tribulation, 3) other accounts of time periods within the seven years, 4) transitional phrases that indicate sequential events, 5) periodic death tolls, and 6) statements of severity and of the escalations thereof, all which help mark the progress of time in The Great Tribulation in The Book of Revelation.

But there is one more important way we can distinguish events. Besides about half the chapters that report the events sequentially, in the rest of them we find instead concurrent or overlapping accounts of the events. And these multiple overlapping accounts are found in Chapters 11-18. And they all describe events spanning the second half of The Great Tribulation, except for Chapter 11 which describes events that overlap the first half. And they are told from several different perspectives.

But before we start all this chronological analysis, there is one more thing everyone must **understand** in order to **continue** from here. And it's time to make sure we have gotten rid of something too. This is key to even having a chance of getting a clue.

To **experience** the **day star arise in your hearts** you must first be **weaned from the milk**. And your eternal **reward** absolutely depends on it, and your **salvation** may too.

1 Peter 2:2; 4:10-11

2 Peter 1

Isaiah 28:9-13; 55

1 Corinthians 9:17-19; 14:20-21;
15:34

2 Corinthians 2:10; 4:17; 8:7

2 John 1:8

2 Timothy 2:15

Hebrews 5:11-14; 10:24

1 Corinthians 3:1-2

Psalms 19:7

Unfortunately, too many also have that 'lost in the jungle' feeling just reading **scripture** in general. So before we go on I insist we review and expand our **understanding** of that one process that is foundational to **understanding** all **scripture**, and therefore **prophecy** too. Peter compares the process of gaining the ability to **understand** all **prophecy** to **the day star** 'arising' **in your hearts**. This comes from the fact that Peter knows that Jesus himself fulfilled hundreds of Old Testament **prophecies** at His first coming. Peter is referring to this fact when he says,

We have also a more sure word of prophecy; whereunto ye do well that ye take heed, as unto a light that shineth in a dark place, until the day dawn, and the day star arise in your hearts
[2 Pet 1:19](#).

This is an amazing **promise**. He says that if you **take heed** to—or **study**—**prophecy** that you can gain **a light** to see by in the **dark** that no one else has, one that even other

'Bible-studying' Christians who don't **study** the **more sure word of prophecy** can't have. And this should sound familiar. Peter's recommendation here is really the same as what Jesus counsels. Jesus says, **continue in my word**. Peter qualifies this adding **also** to **take heed to prophecy**. Jesus **promises** that the result will be that **ye shall know the truth** and be made **free**. Peter's more narrowly defined process of 'continuing in the prophetic Word' **promises** you will eventually **experience** the **day star arise in your hearts** and **light** so you can see in the **dark** where others can't. In other words, he **promises** that you will be able to **understand** the **more sure word of prophecy**, and that you'll be able to see the future, just as The Spirit **promises** you can. The point is that the process of studying **prophecy** is the same as studying any other part of **scripture** except that it comes with its own special **promise**. But this is a **promise** that those who still have **need of milk** cannot receive, because anyone able to **take heed** to **prophecy** must be **weaned from the milk** too. Cherish the moment, God willing you **experience** it, when the **day star** 'arises' in you. You'll **know** it when it happens. You'll **know** when by **scripture** you have seen God's 'meaty truth' as never before. Then you will **know** that you have no more **need of milk**. And there should be at least be a 'glimmer' of this **revelation** starting in you already.

The fact is that God is not only hiding a lot of **truth** from the **unbelieving**, but He is also hiding it from the immature in Christ. Plainly and openly stated, precepts of The Word of God that can be found in just one passage of **scripture** are by definition **the sincere milk of the word** [1Pet 2:2](#). Mature handling of **truth** requires widespread **use** of **scripture** and deductive analysis. Growth in **understanding** requires recognizing that 'meatier' precepts are not directly stated but implied, and constructed from **scripture** from all over The Bible, **precept upon precept... line upon line... here a little, and there a little**. This is not random, but God's stated plan to hide truth from those who cannot possibly **rightly** use it, and to punish those with insincere or selfish motives, or those who are simply 'carelessly ignorant'. But His intention by His plan is to **teach knowledge... and... doctrine** while in the process providing **rest... and... refreshing** to those who truly desire to search out **the truth**. All this can be gleaned from [Isaiah 28:9-13](#). And Paul approves Isaiah's message for New Testament Christians by making reference to this **precept upon precept** method, saying,

Brethren, be not children in understanding: howbeit in malice be ye children, but in understanding be men. In the law it is written [in [Isa 28:11-12](#)], **With men of other tongues and other lips will I speak unto this people; and yet for all that will they not hear me, saith the Lord** [1Cor 14:20-21](#).

In other words, Paul specifically says to **be men** like Isaiah means it, quoting from the very passage where Isaiah instructs us to be taught **knowledge** and **understand doctrine... precept upon precept**. So Paul means you should **be men** in the way you **handle** the **knowledge** and **doctrine** of God, which means that you must do it God's way. But you should also see in this passage that God is expressing His disappointment with His people,

implying that no matter how He tries to communicate to them they won't hear, and that this forces Him to keep His messages in a 'precept upon precept' style, so as to trap and expose those who aren't sincerely paying attention.

And Peter and Paul also plead that such **revelation** requires **diligence** [2 Cor 8:7](#); [2 Pet 1:1-11](#). And you can see that Peter really goes on and on about this in 2 Peter 1. The problem is that 'milk drinkers' tend too often to think that they are saved and that nothing else is really expected of them. And this is not entirely their fault. Too many 'teachers' teach this. But I'm speaking for God when I tell you that you can **fall** from **grace**, be **cut off**, and be forever **lost** after you have been **saved**. Nonetheless, the false doctrine of 'once saved always saved' is commonly believed to be true. But this **study** is more about where you'll end up in God's eternal kingdom. And it's about the degrees of **reward** or **eternal glory** that you can **gain** or "produce" or 'achieve' for yourself before you get there ([1 Cor 9:17-19](#); [2 Cor 4:17](#)). And I mean that even if you remain **saved** you can **lose** your **full reward** [2 John 1:8](#), if not also your immortal soul. And any Christian should be able to see that when Peter warns of the dangers of being **barren** and **unfruitful** in [2 Peter 1](#) that this is exactly what he is talking about. He's trying to tell you that if you don't get serious about growing in **the knowledge of God** then you should not expect much of an **entrance... into the everlasting kingdom of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ**. I mean it will be short of the **full reward** John speaks about. And Peter is telling you that without the **diligence** he speaks of you should expect that you could easily **fall** and not make it in at all. So stop here and at least read [2 Peter 1](#)—a couple of times would be better.

And I know I promised this **study** wouldn't be about what saves you, but about how to **study** God's Word God's way. However His **instruction** to us about this comes with warnings. And they are not idle threats. Isaiah warns us along with this **instruction** that those that will **not hear** God's Word God's way will **go, and fall backward, and be broken, and snared, and taken**. But maybe you just read that Peter says,

...if ye do these things, ye shall never fall: For so an entrance shall be ministered unto you abundantly into the everlasting kingdom of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ [2 Pet 1:10-11](#).

This is the 'grand entrance' and 'high station' you can get when you enter His **everlasting kingdom**. But 'milk drinkers' tend to think that all Christians will get this same treatment and position when they 'enter Heaven'. Welcome to reality. You won't unless you **do these things**. Of course we're talking a 'sliding scale'. The more you **do** here the safer you are now and the better off you are in eternity. So this **study**—a word in The New Testament that also means **earnest** or **diligent**—is not so much for the purpose of getting or keeping you saved. It's more for the purpose to **provoke** you ([Heb 10:24](#)) and **persuade** you ([2 Cor 5:11](#)) to move 'upscale', and to show you how. To **do** this you must become a **workman... rightly dividing the word of truth** [2 Tim 2:15](#), and become someone...

...who by reason of use [of *scripture*] have their senses exercised to discern both good and evil [Heb 5:11-14](#).

And Isaiah, Paul, Peter, and Jesus **promise** that the more immediate **rewards** are **wisdom, understanding, rest, refreshing, exceeding great and precious promises**, and 'freedom', and later on, 'an abundant, reward-filled entrance into Heaven'. And there are many, many wonderful **precious promises** for such **workman**, including some that are out of this World, some of which we'll get to before we're through. Of course the consequences for 'lack of growth' are 'darkness' and 'blindness' and 'falling from grace', because if you remain 'carelessly ignorant', Isaiah **promises**, and Paul and Peter confirm, that you will **go, and fall backward, and be broken, and snared, and taken**. But I say this mostly for motivational purposes, kind of like Paul does. When he is preaching to the Church in Corinth, to people he considers **saved**, remember that he says to them,

Awake to righteousness, and sin not; for some have not the knowledge of God: I speak this to your shame [1 Cor 15:34](#).

And he means this for motivational purposes.

And I have to ask. Do you rely on the **teaching** of others without really seeing the **proof** for yourself? Do they **teach** you from one passage at a time with limited connection to the rest of The Word of God? If so, you're at best able to **discern** what your 'teacher' believes is **good** or **evil**. And if you don't **study** The Bible regularly at all, call Paul a liar, but he says you can't really tell right from wrong when it really counts. What? Is there anything that you have that's not given to you by God including **knowledge**? And He can give you **wisdom** too. But He says He will only do it His way. He **promises**. And it's no wonder that the consequences for 'careless ignorance' are so severe when He is offering you so much. Again, welcome to reality. Or maybe you expect to be able to stand without the **knowledge** and **wisdom** He offers you because you think you shouldn't have to **work** for it? If you think so, you're confusing **salvation** with **reward**. And this is common among the 'spiritually immature'.

Another obstacle is that Isaiah, Paul, and Peter also imply that **a babe** 'chokes' on 'solid food'. The very sustenance they need to sustain themselves **in all things that pertain unto life and Godliness** they cannot even 'swallow'. They are simply **not able to bear it [1 Cor 3:1-2](#)**. And these **babes** are **dull of hearing**, meaning they cannot digest 'meaty' combinations of **precept upon precept**. And this would be anyone who is only used to digesting **milk** which means they are only used to 'handling' a few precepts at a time. And anyone who is not regularly **exercised** in wide-reaching, multi-percept-connected Bible **study** cannot be expected to be able to digest **strong meat**. Paul's use of the term **meat** is a metaphor for this synthesizing of many scattered precepts into new and bigger ones that are not visible otherwise. And **strong meat** can make your head swim. And you should **experience** some 'head-swimming' in this **study** because by the end of it, with **scripture** coming from most all of the Books of The Bible, it will be all connected together for **one** 'big mind-blowing picture'.

And for those that are just coming to **understand** that they are still in

need of milk and **dull of hearing**, this **study** is meant to remedy that. And keep in mind that if you don't **experience** these 'head-swimming' moments along the way then you're not really getting it. In such cases you should return to the parts that you don't **understand** again and again until you begin to **understand**. Because unless you become **weaned from the milk** and **learn** to eat **strong meat**, you will never truly **understand** end times **prophecy**, or any of **the deep things of God** for that matter ([1 Cor 2:10](#)). But I tell you that if you **continue** in this **study** with **patience** and **diligence** you will.

So have I **provoked** you enough by now? Some too far I'm sure. But hopefully you're among those with enough **patience**, though I'm really not trying to chase you away. I'm trying to prepare you for what's ahead. This is a **study of prophecy**. And I **promise** you that time is short. Too short for messing around anymore anyway. Those of you who **know** these things cannot be offended. But if you feel insulted, it means you really don't **understand**. Nonetheless, the reality is that the first moment you believed Jesus could save you and you accepted His sacrifice for you, you became a **babe** in Christ. No insult, just fact. And if until now you do not regularly **study to shew thyself approved** or have not lately, you are still a **babe**. And worse, you are living dangerously. Again, no insult, just fact. But it's **faithless** to be discouraged about growing in **the knowledge of God** because God **promises** that His Word will not fail in **making wise the simple** [Psalms 19:7](#). That means any dummy 'thirsty' for the **truth** who has enough **patience** and **diligence** will eventually be able to **understand**. And that would be a good description of me. Read [Isaiah 55](#) now at least a couple of times. It's only 13 verses.

And all this is God's message; I only received it, and offer it to you. Really want The Spirit to **shew you things to come**? Come along with me and we'll see amazing things. And I **promise** you we will stare into the pit of **hell** and see the pinnacle of the Kingdom of God before we're through. But this can only happen if you have gotten the memo from God that makes this possible. Chuck the baby bottle. You can start by **continuing** in this **study of prophecy** authorized by a 'gifted' **teacher** who is **approved unto God**. And there is no other forum whereof I can speak of these things. Peter constrains me, saying,

As every man hath received the gift, even so minister the same one to another, as good stewards of the manifold grace of God. If any man speak, let him speak as the oracles of God; if any man minister, let him do it as of the ability which God giveth: that God in all things may be glorified through Jesus Christ, to whom be praise and dominion for ever and ever. Amen [1 Pet 4:10-11](#).

Amen. But not every Christian should presume to **speak as the oracles of God**. I think Peter makes clear here that in cases where you can't you should shut up. But so I **speak**. And the **proof** that I **speak as the oracles of God** is in the totality of this **study**. The bottom line is that it's time to **grow up**. And I mean that as God means it.

We proceed next with heightening our sense of the devices uses to mark

time in the Book of Revelation to help us more clearly picture the chronology of all the events in it, and ultimately to see the arrangement of the raptures. And by-the-way, if you're still reading, you're probably ready to go on.

The seven year time parameter of The Great Tribulation in the Book of Revelation is seen through events that span both of its 3 ½-year half-weeks. Altogether, there are four events that mark these halves. One marks the first half and the other three mark the second. The first event of 1260 days is The Ministry of the Two Witnesses and marks the period of The Beginning of Sorrows. The next three all mark the period of The Days of Vengeance. They are the 42 months **given to the beast** who is the Antichrist, the same 42 months **given to the Gentiles** to trample down Jerusalem, and also the concurrent period described as both 1260 days and **a time, and times, and half a time** of sanctuary for **a woman clothed with the sun, and the moon under her feet, and upon her head a crown of twelve stars**. She is an **allegory** for the Jewish people in Israel as plainly shown by Joseph's dream in Genesis. Jesus also gives us a hint about the length of The Great Tribulation that helps us confirm its relatively short duration.

Genesis 37:9-10; 41:43; 42:6
Daniel 12
Matthew 24:15-21,34

Mark 13:14-19
Luke 21:20-22
Revelation 6-19

It can be deduced in the Book of Revelation alone that The Great Tribulation described in Chapters 6-19 is seven years long, much like we have already deduced from Jesus and Daniel's **prophecies**. And we should expect to see that all the time periods literally defined in Revelation fit within a seven year scenario. Plus we already **know** from Jesus and Daniel that the last week of The 70 Weeks is divided by The Abomination of Desolation and concludes with Armageddon. So one way we can place the other events John describes is by determining when they occur in relation to The Abomination of Desolation or Armageddon. We have also already placed The Abomination of Desolation in [Revelation 13:5-6](#) where the Antichrist opens his 'big mouth'. And Armageddon is fairly easy to spot in [Revelation 19:11-21](#). Next we can simply find the specifically defined literal 3 ½ year time periods found in Revelation and establish that they either start or end with The Abomination of Desolation. This gives us the 7-year parameter for the events of Chapters 6-19. And all the other literal time periods **revealed** in these chapters, and all the events described therein easily fit within one or the other of these two 3 ½-year 'half-weeks', and all within the entire seven years.

Again, only one 3 ½-year long event is described that ends just before The Abomination of Desolation, obviously spanning The Beginning of Sorrows, but there are three other events described as 3 ½ years long that all start with it. These last three must span the period of The Days of Vengeance. The event spanning The Beginning of Sorrows is specifically described to last '1260 days'. This first-half event is the ministry of the **two witnesses** in Israel described in [Revelation 11:3-6](#). The Ministry of the Two Witnesses is a story told near the end of The Trumpet Judgments, but the duration and conclusion of this ministry show that it must transpire throughout The Seal and Trumpet

Judgments or throughout the first half of The Great Tribulation (Revelation 6-11). The Two Witnesses are also the centerpiece of the conclusion of the second to last Trumpet Judgment from Heaven shortly before The Abomination of Desolation occurs. And besides 'mysterious' Chapter 10, we will see that the story of The Ministry of the Two Witnesses is our first departure from a purely sequential chronological account. In other words, it's the first major overlapping of accounts. And it's a brief retelling of the events of The Beginning of Sorrows from the perspective of the **two witnesses**. So chapters 1-9 are chronological. And Chapter 10 is a **mystery**. But in Chapters 11-18 we'll see that the overlapping of accounts is the rule and sequence is much harder to find. And this is because there's a lot going on in The Great Tribulation from many different perspectives, especially in The Days of Vengeance. Finally, Chapters 19-22 return to events described in order.

We can see that the 3 ½ year ministry of The Two Witnesses concludes before The Abomination of Desolation because it's shown in Chapter 11 to last until...

...the beast [or the Antichrist] that ascendeth out of the bottomless pit shall make war against them, and shall overcome them, and kill them [Rev 11:7](#).

This event must be the result of Satan 'giving' **power** to the Antichrist ([Rev 13:4](#)). And this 'empowering' is described along with the fact that he is also **healed to live** after being **wounded to death** [Rev 13:3,14](#). This 'resurrection' of the Antichrist—presumably **out of the bottomless pit**—becomes another marker of The Abomination of Desolation.

The next specifically defined 3 ½-year-long event is actually the first one mentioned in The Book of Revelation. It's the time when Jerusalem...

...is given unto the Gentiles: and the holy city shall they tread under foot forty and two months [or 3 ½ years] [Rev 11:2](#)

But it must be talking about a time beginning with The Abomination of Desolation too because they can't trample **the holy city** until it's surrounded with **armies**, and until they get rid of The Two Witnesses, and until the Jews get their chance to **flee** to safety. Israel must remain secure in her **power** until all this occurs. And Daniel's **prophecy** tells us that **the end** will come **a time, times, and an half** or 3 ½ years after...

...he [the Antichrist] shall have accomplished to scatter the power of the holy people, [then] all these things shall be finished [Dan 12:6-7](#).

So this 'trampling' of Jerusalem along with the 'scattering' of the Jews takes place throughout The Days of Vengeance. Daniel's **prophecy** also tells us that it's **accomplished** and **finished** '1290 days' after...

...the abomination that maketh desolate [is] set up [Dan 12:8,11](#).

Again, we'll deal later with why we have '1290 days' here instead of the '1260 days' or '42 months' from other descriptions of this 3½ year period. And we'll overwhelmingly **prove** that this **he** is the Antichrist when we get through Daniel 11 in [SECTION 7](#). But this alone confirms that these 42 months **given to the Gentiles** to 'trample' Jerusalem and **scatter** the Jews is a period that starts with The Abomination of Desolation and **shall be finished** 3½ years later before Armageddon. This then is another marker and component of The Abomination of Desolation. But in this case it's a 3½-year event whose **beginning** is marked by The Abomination of Desolation.

These **scriptures** also simultaneously **prove** that these are the same '42 months' that **power** is **given to the beast** or the Antichrist. This **power** is **given him over all kindreds, and tongues, and nations**, and at a time when...

...all that dwell upon the earth shall worship him, whose names are not written in the book of life... [Rev 13:4-8](#)

So both **the beast** and **the Gentiles** are given the same 42 months to **tread under foot** anyone that gets in their way.

And you would think that all this second-half brutality and 'bowing to the Antichrist' should be unbearable for the Jews. It certainly will be for the ones who remain in **Jerusalem** and **Judaea** or who are still in other countries at the time of The Abomination of Desolation. And the remaining 3½-year period left to identify—mentioned third in [Revelation 12](#)—makes this clear. It starts when the Jews **flee** from **Judaea** as instructed by Jesus. They're told to **flee to the mountains** when they **see the abomination of desolation** and **Jerusalem compassed with armies** because, according to Jesus, this is when...

...in those days shall be affliction, such as was not from the beginning of the creation which God created unto this time, neither shall be
([Mat 24:15-21](#), [Mark 13:14-19](#), [Luke 21:20-22](#)).

And we can now see that it will be 'the worst time ever' because **the beast** or the Antichrist will be newly 'empowered' by **Satan** to rule the World. And we'll see that he hates Jews and the 'newly-wakened' Christians the most, and that he won't like Muslims much either. This period is also for God's final round of judgments from Heaven on Earth—The Plague Judgments. So it's bound to be an unimaginably bad 3½ years. But we're going to try to imagine it all anyway. Because The Spirit **promises** that He will **show us things to come**, and you should expect He'll want to show you plenty about this worst period of history ever which is still **to come**.

And we already **know** that at The Abomination of Desolation some Jews will escape **Judaea** on cue to some kind of **wilderness** 'sanctuary' in the **mountains**. [Revelation 12](#) adds that they will be kept safe there throughout The Days of Vengeance. This **wilderness** 'sanctuary' **prepared of God** for the Jews during the time of Satan's **great wrath** will be a place of safety where...

...the woman [who represents The Jews] will be **nourished for a time, and times, and half a time** [also specifically 1260 days] **from the face of the serpent** [or from **Satan**] ([Rev 12:6,9,12-14](#)).

Daniel also confirms this **time of trouble, such as never was since there was a nation even to that same time**, to be the time when the Jews...

...shall be delivered, every one that shall be found written in the book... [and that this **time of trouble**] **shall be for a time, times, and an half**
[Dan 12:1,7](#).

This again is **when he** [the Antichrist] **shall have accomplished to scatter the power of the holy people** [Dan 12:7](#). And we now **know** we're talking about the time when **he** gets 3½ years or 42 months to accomplish this. But **he** will not be able to catch Jews that escape to their 'mountain sanctuary' **prepared of God**. More on the destiny of these Jews in both The Beginning of Sorrows and The Days of Vengeance in later sections.

Next we should confirm the identity of the **woman clothed with the sun, and the moon under her feet, and upon her head a crown of twelve stars** from [Revelation 12](#). I said **she** is demonstrably the symbolic representation of the Jewish people. What we have confirmed so far could be enough, but this symbolism comes from a dream or vision of Joseph, the Jewish patriarch, where 'the Jews' are identified in this way in his dream. In his dream the Sun, the Moon, and 11 stars all **bow down** to him. And his father Jacob interprets himself to be **the sun**, and his wife Rachel to be **the moon**, and his other 11 sons, Joseph's brothers, who are the Patriarchs of Israel, to be the 11 stars, who must, to fulfill this particular prophetic dream, all **bow down** to Joseph, who is obviously the twelfth star. And years later when Joseph becomes a **ruler over all the land of Egypt** they do ([Genesis 37:9, 41:43, 42:6](#)). And this is the same symbolism used in Revelation 12. This **woman clothed with the sun, and the moon under her feet, and upon her head a crown of twelve stars** represents the Jewish people. And **she** is the one who will be **nourished in her place** that is **prepared of God** for 1260 days during the time of Satan's **great wrath**. But we'll have to wait to expose the identify of **her child** until the section after next. Still we can now see that this future real-life drama—allegorically described—is a conflict between Satan, **the serpent**, and the Jews, **the woman**, and that this is another perspective of The Days of Vengeance.

Chapter 13 symbolizes the behavior of Satan and the Antichrist during this same period using **the dragon** and **the beast**. And we will see that this 'beastly' allegory describing Satan and the Antichrist has its origins in The Old Testament, the most notable of which are given by God to Daniel, that is, except for **the serpent** in the Garden of Eden.

So we see that these four 3½-year events set out the first half and repeatedly so the second half of The Great Tribulation, and together define this entire seven year period, give or take a month or so that we'll discuss later. Jesus also indicates the 'ballpark period' of The Great Tribulation when He says,

This generation shall not pass, till all these things be fulfilled [Mat 24:34](#).

Specifically, ***All these things*** Jesus refers to here are ***the beginning of sorrows, the abomination of desolation, the days of vengeance***, and finally, the time when there ***shall appear the sign of the Son of man in heaven*** which is His 'second coming' to Jerusalem and Armageddon. So this is Jesus' hint that The Great Tribulation will last conspicuously less than a ***generation***. Hindsight with The Spirit makes clear it's more precisely the seven years of The Great Tribulation that He is talking about. But some popular 'interpretations' of this verse have been 'handled' quite badly. We'll deal with this 'mess' in a later section. In the meantime, we ***know*** that the period Jesus specifically refers to in this passage—starting with The Beginning of Sorrows and ending with Armageddon—totals only seven years. So we can see from this that the ***generation*** He refers to need only be longer than seven years, and that the shortest interpretation of a ***generation*** will easily suffice.

Jesus and John's descriptions of the 'beginning events' of The Great Tribulation match, and the shorter literal time periods found in the Book of Revelation help anticipate the duration of all the events.

[Matthew 24:3-15](#)
[Mark 13:3-14](#)

[Luke 21:7-22](#) 16
[Revelation 6-11, 13:5-6,](#)

The next longest literally defined time period for an event found in Revelation is the duration of The 5th Trumpet Judgment. It's reported to last for 5 months ([Rev 9:10](#)), which should be ***understood*** to be overlapped by The Ministry of the Two Witnesses. The 14 Seal and Trumpet Judgments also must fit within this 3 ½ years, 42 months, or about 1260 days or so of the first half of The Great Tribulation. And this period is described by Jesus as The Beginning of Sorrows. Another way we can deduce this is that the seven signs Jesus gives of The Beginning of Sorrows appear to match the events John describes in The Seal and Trumpet Judgments of Revelation 6-11. We also ***know*** Jesus is talking about 'the signs' of His 'second' ***coming, and of the end of the world*** ([Mat 24:3-15](#), [Mark 13:3-14](#), [Luke 21:7-22](#)) which must all start after The Church Age is over, and when God's ***wrath*** is released on the Earth. And we ***know*** that these 'beginning wrathful events' described both by Jesus and John end with The Abomination of Desolation.

So to fit within 3 ½ years, each of the first 14 Seal and Trumpet Judgments must average about 3 months long each (42/14). And if The 5th Trumpet Judgment is not the longest judgment of The Beginning of Sorrows, it's at least longer than the average judgment in this first half of The Great Tribulation. Similarly, The 7 Plague Judgments of the second 42 months should average about six months long each (42/7). And we can refine this picture a bit more by adding the last specifically designated time period in the Book of Revelation. However it will require some extra consideration because it's so short and also very similar to another judgment of undesignated duration.

This last specifically defined time period occurs in the middle of The Beginning of Sorrows. It's the period described for the duration of The 7th Seal Judgment. Specifically, it's a period of...

...silence in heaven about the space of half an hour [Rev 8:1](#).

In this case, it's debatable as to whether this is a common **half an hour** or an expression of the timescale of a week = seven years, 1 day = 1 year or 360 days, 1 hour = 15 days, and **half an hour** = 7 ½ days. I mean we've confirmed by now that both 'regular' and 'week-based' timescales are used to account for time in Revelation. The reason I pause on this consideration is that it occurs to me that a common 'half hour' may not attract enough attention amid such turmoil. I believe the main purpose of **the silence** in this judgment is to attract attention heavenward. So I'm guessing the period needs to be long enough so that everyone who's had their heads down for so long will have enough quiet to start lifting them up again. Evidently this will be the first time in over a year when there will be nothing going on in the sky —when there will be **silence in heaven**. And we'll see as we go how this above all things is likely to attract a lot of attention. But at this point I can't be sure about the actual duration of this judgment. It's either a common **half an hour** or 7 ½ days. Whichever the case, it must be the shortest judgment of them all with one possible exception.

The 7th Trumpet Judgment has a nearly identical description as The 7th Seal Judgment, and this leads me to believe that it's very short or possibly even shorter in duration ([Rev 11:15-19](#)). And if we assume that both these judgments are equally short, we really have closer to just 12 judgments in the first 42 months (42/12), which is an average of about 3 ½ months per judgment. So we could expect that the average Beginning of Sorrows Judgments will be about 105 days, except that we **know** The 5th Trumpet Judgment is 5 months or around 150 days. This would leave us with an average of just over 100 days for each of the 11 remaining Seal and Trumpet Judgments —not counting the two very short ones. But these considerations don't change anything for the average six-month, or around 180-day Plague Judgments of The Days of Vengeance, except that in a later section we'll look for clues to see if The 7th Plague Judgment might be a short one too. But for now these are just averages. Still, it occurs to me that besides the specifically described exceptions, the rest of the judgments should proceed at a much more regular pace and therefore probably close to their average lengths. And we'll see an abundance of other details that seems to support all these conclusions in the next couple of sections.

But at this point it appears that these 'short pauses' in the proceedings at the end of each of the first two sets of seven judgments must be noticeable transitions. The first tells the World that The Seal Judgments are over and that the following Trumpet Judgments are ready to begin. The next one tells everyone that The Trumpet Judgments are over and that The Abomination of Desolation followed by The Days of Vengeance is coming. But The Ministry of the Two Witnesses must continue through this first pause, except that I expect that they will take a break at this midpoint of their ministry and cast their attention heavenward too. After all, we're told that they may perform their ministry **as often as they will**. So I expect their ministry from the

Earth, like God's from above, cannot be as effective without some time given along the way to respond to it. Also we'll see that The 144,000 Jews begin their ministry just before The 7th Seal Judgment is opened. But since I'm not exactly sure what the ministry of these Jews will be, it's hard to tell how they will take advantage of this 'lull'. But we can see that the sequential order of the three sets of judgments of The Great Tribulation is established by these pauses in between them.

Before we go on it is important to notice that there are no other time periods specifically identified in Revelation for The Great Tribulation. There is of course the 1,000 years for The Millennium that follows The Great Tribulation in Chapter 20 that we'll get to much later. But there is nothing to contradict the 7-year scenario, and much to support it. And both of the first two set-ending judgments appear to be intermissions that are important time and event transitions. Next we will see that the account of The Great Tribulation in Revelation is full of indicators of time transitions.

Time transition indicators of consecutive and overlapping events in Revelation

Mark 13:3-14

Revelation 6-19

In this subsection we may seem to be finally overstepping relevance into tediousness by delineating apparently every single transitional indicator in the Book of Revelation. But as we begin to place the midtribulation raptures and other midtribulation events throughout John's vision, the value of 'clearing this hurdle' will present itself. These transitions become important tools in constructing a detailed timeline of the events of the Book of Revelation, a timeline that's framed by the one Jesus gave us on the Mount of Olives the week before His crucifixion (Matthew 24, Mark 13, Luke 21), which will also help us identify and place other events of The Great Tribulation found throughout The Bible. So, take deep breath.

The most common indicators in Revelation of the passage of time and events are the sequential transitions, one after the other, of The Seal, Trumpet, and Plague Judgments described individually and in numerical order in [Revelation 6](#), [8-9](#), [11:7-19](#), and [16](#). And John consistently uses the word **when** at the opening of each of the first six Seal Judgments implying they are opened at different times. And the fact that all these seals are opened by Jesus, here called **the Lamb**, further suggests that they are opened in order, one at a time ([Rev 6](#) ; [8:1](#)). In the same way, attention to the fact that the next 14 judgments are initiated by 14 different angels, numbered in two sets of seven, leads us to the same conclusion, namely, that these angels evidently preside over individually and consecutively administered judgments one at a time. And of course it makes no sense that the angels who, as John saw them, **sounded** The Trumpet Judgments and **poured out** The Plague Judgments would 'step on each other's toes'. The first angel to 'pour out' a Plague Judgment on the Earth is also introduced with two transitional actions: **and the first went and poured out...** ([Revelation 16:2](#)). This plainly isolates his actions from those of the other angels.

But there are even stronger indicators of the measured progress of The Great Tribulation found in overt transitional phrases spelled out by John throughout Revelation including: **after this, after that, after these things, from henceforth, is past, and are yet to**. We discussed in the previous section the **after this** from [Revelation 4:1](#) that indicates the end of The Age of Grace and the beginning of the **wrath** that follows. This transition implies not only the departure of Christians and The Spirit but the beginning of The Great Tribulation and the rise of the Antichrist. Next, we see that The first six Seal Judgments are postscripted similarly with **after these things** [Rev 7:1](#) indicating they are passed and finished before whatever else follows. And what does follow next is not the opening of The 7th Seal, but first the 'holding back' of **the four winds of the earth** by **four angels**, and then the supernatural 'initiation' by other angels of the **hundred and forty and four thousand** [144,000] **of all the** [12] **tribes of the children of Israel**. These 'commissioning angels', as John saw it here, **sealed the servants of our God in their foreheads** [Rev 7:1-8](#), marking these Jews for their 'enlistment' in what we will see is an 'eternal tour of duty'. At the end of this 'induction' into The Ministry of the 144,000 Jews, John again transitions writing, **after this** [Rev 7:9](#) referring to the next event, again not yet The 7th Seal, but the apparent rapture of **a great multitude... about the throne... which came out of great tribulation** [Rev 7:9-17](#) conveying clearly that this rapture **out of great tribulation** comes **after** the specifically identified **wrath** of the first sixth Seal Judgments, and **after** the initiation of The 144,000, but before the opening of the following, very short 7th Seal Judgment. This distinctly identified rapture **out of great tribulation** of **a great multitude** must therefore be very near the middle of The Beginning of Sorrows—near the end of The Seal Judgments and before the start of The Trumpet Judgments.

And next, in due course, at the beginning of [Chapter 8](#), comes the 'action-stopping' **silence** at the opening of The 7th Seal. The events just preceding it, one moving from Heaven to Earth and another from Earth to Heaven, have occurred after the opening of The 6th Seal and before the opening of The 7th Seal which should make the 'timeout' of The 7th Seal Judgment—whether a literal ½ hour or really 7 ½ days—even more 'pronounced'. And from all of this, the chronology so far is clear.

And we should pause long enough here too to recognize the several similarities between The 7th Seal Judgment and The 7th Trumpet Judgment. Both appear to be 'ceremonial transitions' involving The Temple in Heaven. And both judgments end with **voices** from Heaven, **thunderings, lightnings, and an earthquake** ([Rev 8:1-6](#); [11:19](#)). Again, these set-ending judgments are presumably 'wake-up calls' where God is using the transition time to get the attention of the people on Earth and give them a chance to respond. And these set-ending judgments also mark transitions in the severity of judgments which we'll see later in this section. Also remember that this midpoint 'time-out' in The Beginning of Sorrows at The 7th Seal Judgment is just after the start of The Ministry of The 144,000 Jews but half way through the Ministry the Two Witnesses, and we will see that the ending 'timeout' at the end of The Beginning of Sorrow at The 7th Trumpet Judgment comes just after the end of both of these ministries. And this indicates that there will be very little time left to complete The 7th Trumpet Judgment

following these ministries within the 3 ½-year framework. I mean there must be no more than a few days left, or maybe just hours, or maybe just a literal **'half an hour'**, as in The 7th Seal Judgment. More on this later too.

Then there are the last three Trumpet Judgments that end the first half. They are the most clearly identified transitions in Revelation. They are horrific judgments, and so much so that each of these three judgments is additionally identified as a **woe**. John says,

I beheld, and heard an angel flying through the midst of heaven, saying with a loud voice, Woe, woe, woe, to the inhabitants of the earth by reason of the other voices of the trumpet of the three angels, which are yet to sound [Rev 8:13](#).

The point here is that they clearly don't **sound** 'in concert'. At the end of The 1st Woe which is also The 5th Trumpet Judgment of **five months**, John records,

One woe is past; and, behold, there come two woes more hereafter [Rev 9:12](#).

And these last **two woes** would be The 6th and 7th Trumpet Judgments. And similarly, at the end of The 2nd Woe, which is The 6th Trumpet Judgment, John updates us again saying,

The second woe is past; and, behold, the third woe cometh quickly [Rev 11:14](#).

Now **quickly** is a word used a few times by Jesus. He uses it at the end of Revelation referring to His Second Coming to Jerusalem and Armageddon. Some take this word used there to mean "soon", but consistent with its use throughout The New Testament (Strong's Concordance #5035), it much more likely means 'speedily', referring not to when He is coming but how fast He is going to come. By-the-way, some confuse The Second Coming with The Rapture of The Church which we will clear up as we go. For now we can see that **the third woe**, which is that 'intermission-style', set-ending final Trumpet Judgment, apparently follows very close after the **second woe**—The 6th Trumpet Judgment. And it makes sense that the word **quickly** is used for this transition because it indicates a 'crescendo', or a short, climactic, attention-getting finale at the close of The Beginning of Sorrows. And The 3 Woe Judgments, finishing off the first half of The Great Tribulation, could not be any more clearly represented as coming one at a time, and one after the other, each building to this climax.

Next, we jump passed the next three 'perspective-specific', 'second-half summary' chapters—Chapters 12-14—to find the next transitional phase ordering the events of The Great Tribulation. This would be the **after that** in [Revelation 15:5](#) which follows immediately after the description of a rapture of Jews at the beginning of Chapter 15. This transitional phrase makes plain that The 1st Plague Judgment at the beginning of The Days of Vengeance is poured out **after** this midterm rapture of this unique group of Jews. We'll get back to them a little later too.

And these middle 'second-half summary' chapters—Chapters 12-14—are three of John's 'synchronized' accounts from different perspectives of the second half of The Great Tribulation before he returns, in Chapters 15 and 16, to the also concurrent, 'blow-by-blow' account of The Plague Judgments, all of which must transpire in the transition to or during The Days of Vengeance. We have already seen in Chapter 12 an account of The Days of Vengeance from the perspective of **the dragon** and **the woman**. And in Chapter 13 the same period is seen from the perspective of **the dragon** and **the beast**. And we have yet to establish that Chapter 14 is another account of this 'worst time ever' from a Heavenly perspective. And each of these 'second-half summaries' come after the description of The 7th Trumpet Judgment which marks the 'wrap-up' of the first half. So these summaries of Satan and the Jews, Satan and the Antichrist, and the action in Heaven are individually incomplete, but together, along with the following 'blow by blow' account of God's Plague Judgments, provide a comprehensive account of events from the midterm to the end of The Great Tribulation.

But this is still not the whole story. In Chapter 13 there are really two **beasts**, identified as **the first beast** and **another beast** in [Verses 11-12](#). The First Beast is obviously the Antichrist because he's the one seen 'boasting' in The Temple, and he's clearly distinct from this **other beast** and his institution. And we'll see that the institution of this Second Beast rates additional detailed 'second-half summary' accounts in Chapters 17 and 18. And all these accounts must transpire during The Days of Vengeance. This **other beast** is also commonly known as **the false prophet** because that's what he's called at the time of his demise at Armageddon in [Revelation 19:20](#).

So all these 'second-half summary' accounts can be recognized as all framed by the 3½ years, or 42 months, or 1290 days of the second half of The Great Tribulation. These several, 'perspective-specific summaries' include descriptions of the several transitional midterm events, including, The Rapture of the 144,000 Jews, Satan cast out of Heaven to Earth, The Death and Resurrection of the Antichrist, The Abomination of Desolation, the beginning of the Antichrist's 42 months of **power**, the beginning of the False Prophet's 42 months too, the escape of some Jews from Judea to their 'mountain sanctuary' **prepared of God**, and The Rapture of the Tribulation Jews. All of these midterm events must take place near the end of The Beginning of Sorrows, and near the conclusion of The Ministry of The 144,000 Jews, and also at the end of The Ministry of the Two Witnesses. They must also happen near the beginning of The Days of Vengeance, and all just before the beginning of the 'pouring out' of The 1st Plague Judgment. And the midterm Rapture of The Tribulation Jews is likely the last of these midterm events because it clearly just precedes the beginning of The Plague Judgments. We **know** this because John specifically tells us that The Plague Judgments begin just **after** this rapture of Jews described in Chapter 15.

Of course, being 'second-half summaries', these chapters include not only events that mark the conclusion of The Beginning of Sorrows—or the beginning of The Days of Vengeance—they also contain descriptions of events transpiring throughout and concluding The Days of Vengeance too, including references to two Great-Tribulation ending raptures in preparation for Jesus' Second Coming and the slaughter at Armageddon.

Finally, in Chapter 19, after the three middle 'second half summaries' of Chapters 12-14, and after the ordered narrative of The Plagues Judgments in Chapters 15-16, and after the account of the rise and fall of the False Prophet and his institution in Chapters 17-18, all of this happening more or less concurrently, John sets down another clear transitional signpost that gives notice that all of **these things** have passed, and that the beginning of the closing events of The Great Tribulation has come. At this point John writes,

And after these things... [Rev 19:1](#)

Here John begins the report of the final two events. The first is **the marriage of the Lamb** with its following 'wedding reception for all the redeemed', including everyone who's been raptured up to Heaven by this point. And the second is **Armageddon**. So this transition implies that, except for these last two events, all the events of The Days of Vengeance are passed. And that we've reached **the end** or **Armageddon**. And Jesus essentially tells His disciples that **the sign** of His coming **and of the end of the world** is the entire 7-year Great Tribulation that culminates in His return at Armageddon—these 7 years, according to Daniel, being the last **week** of the 70 **weeks** of years that concludes God's plan of salvation for the Jews.

But this **study** ultimately shows how God saves both Jews and Gentiles in several different ways, though of course, all by **the blood of Jesus**. As for the Jews, we'll see how He saves a special group of 144,000 first. Then he redeems just two more even more special ones. Next he redeems many Jews who cannot escape the Antichrist but will not succumb to him. And at the end of The Great Tribulation He redeems the rest by a few different means. He also redeems Gentiles by some of these means and others too. Remember we've already seen **a multitude** of Gentiles redeemed in the middle of The Beginning of Sorrows. Finally, beyond The Great Tribulation and up to the end of the following 1,000 years, His plan will be to save by His own divine rule, which we will see will make clear that there are no limits to man's rebellion.

And one final point of clarification could be added to help with all the speculation involved. Consequences of the Seal, Trumpet, and Plague Judgments, once they are released by God, may continue to plague survivors beyond the specific administrations of each judgment, and last throughout the remainder of The Great Tribulation, and even beyond into The Millennium. I mean when a **great earthquake** 'knocks down' a building, it will not rebuild itself. And we will confirm at least a couple examples of 'clean-up operations' that go on into The Millennium. And we can assume that this would be the case for judgments such as mountain-sized, toxic meteors impacting the oceans, or the phenomenon that turns all the oceans, lakes, and rivers to **blood**, etc. But unless otherwise indicated or implied, it occurs to me that the most serious and direct effects of any judgment are confined, for the most part, within the administration of that judgment. Consider the **famine** of The 4th Seal Judgment, for example. I'm expecting that this widespread famine should subside at the end of the judgment because of the greatly decreased number of survivors competing for the remaining stores of a previously much larger population, as we will see next. But before that...

This is a special prescript to the next subsection about numerals, etc. It's only really directed at a few, I hope, but many more could be entertained by it. This is where I make clear that though I can only relay what I have been given by God and am confined to do it His way, at the same time I have no qualms about doing all that my own way too. See [2 Corinthians 10-12](#)

'Speaking foolishly', formal writers have noticed thus far my adventures into the use of numerals possibly with dismay, but with prejudice if any negative premature conclusions have been made on their part. Indubitably, it is common, pun intended, that language is assailed continually with change due simply to ignorance. Still, it must also come by the deliberate resolutions of its disciples for the purposes they deem poetic, stylistic, efficient, natural, etc. And still speaking foolishly, my personal outlook generally allows indulgence of a erudite snob for the cause of tradition alone, who surely would disdain any point of view simply on the basis that its holder has inadequate academic credentials, and if secular, especially if they're below, say, a top 10 public university, (from which I—yes, a first person personal pronoun—have been so conferred with—concluding preposition also intended), only so far. For the tradition is—have you read the KJV lately or even Mr. Shakespeare?—that language changes. Still and forthrightly so, good reason is the better cause, I concede, mine here being that mathematics, (of which I also have been schooled at said university through the discipline of calculus at which institution I completed three terms work which for each I was awarded the grade of "C"), traditionally uses numerals. And being the fool that I am, I hope to make clear, (while trusting you have gotten over the arguably excessive use of conjunctions at the beginning of sentences—not to mention the ongoing possibly excessive prosopopoeia), that this subsection, and parts of those previous, is as connected to mathematics as much as to language, and as I have properly credentialed top-ten-public-university license, pun again intended, I have often chosen against tradition, not mistakenly, unless you want to bully me with your license if you think you can, to seemingly sporadically use the first 20 natural numbers in their numerical form, (remember when we were writing out all 20 of the buggers?), and not just as counting numbers, but additionally as simple fractions, mixed numbers, even in improper fractions and, in an intrepid construction indeed if I do say so myself, (and with a multitude of clauses and commas I might add), as, dare I say, 'contractions' per se to make "positional numerals", (a term I just made up on my own as I am unaware of it's more proper name, and will leave up to you to further identify—sounds legitimate though, huh), and each to the degree I deem appropriate, and without the ability to nursemaid your feelings on the matter, ('cause in such a format, unavoidably, it's all about me so I gotta be me, now don't I? —contractions and colloquialisms intended without apology because I was going for the double cliché—but pardon my French anyway—*eh? Comme tu pense que tu es quelqu'un trop formidable quand même—parce que si ce n'est pas d'accord avec vous ou pas d'assez—zut alors!—sacré bleu!—qu'est-ce que tu me veux dire, ou chanter—<<Au Clair de la Lune>> peut-être?!—alors, excusez-moi, s'il vous plaît—d'accord?*—and oh, by-the-way, and in case you were ignorant of the fact, contractions are by no means a departure from formal exposition in French, *mais bien sûr et merci beaucoup*), but my intention is to use these various numerical forms at least some of the time, and not just as appropriate to their mathematical use, nor to aggravate in general, but for the efficiencies their abbreviated forms afford. Regardless, and undoubtedly, and having explained much too much already, if you still feel this, (pun unavoidable as it's another pun of absolutely manifest destiny—herein afterward referred to as 'PAMD'), is blatant disregard for the proper use of language in your perspective, don't be such a big baby—I mean this is an exercise in gaining maturity isn't it—and make yourself comfortable in mine, and not

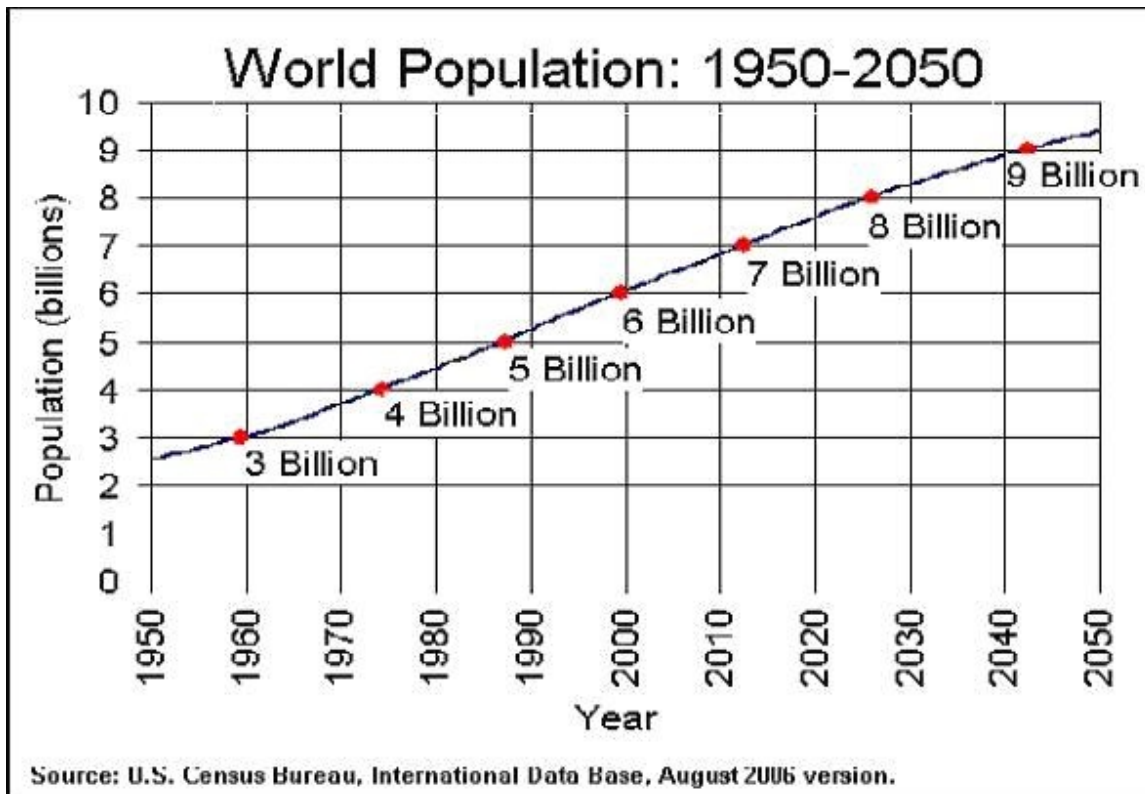
just to my world of numbers, but also in my many other adventures beyond our, (I'm feeling daring again), arbitrary and 'not-even-really-retained-anyway' boundaries of formal writing, and get over it, or you are not allowed to read anymore of this **study** (stop here if this applies to you), because anyone who reads this (PAMD) must **understand** that this (PAMD) is not written to offend, (though possibly, and especially if you have a sense of humor and/or a formal education, to entertain), but to enlighten, even as I have been enlightened by God—if God will so permit :P. (Oops, I guess my tongue was pressing way too hard against my cheek!)

The above 'prescript' kind of exposes me as more like one of those 'Anabaptist' types. They were the branch of the Protestant Reformation that, like all Protestants, rejected 'salvation' by any other way than faith, but unlike other branches also rejected transubstantiation (look it up), and infant baptism (which gave them their name), and more significantly, they also rejected a churchwide hierarchy of ruling clergy too. They settled on what might be described as 'individual community rule'. More on all these **branches** later. Now onto more 'grave' matters. And I mean that the way the fictional character Mercutio meant it in **Romeo and Juliet** by the aforementioned Mr. Shakespeare. And feel free to entirely ignore that prescript 'foolishness' above.

The progress of time in the Book of Revelation can be seen by the death tolls — Scripture references below are in the order that they are covered in this subsection.

Isa 13:9-13	Rev 9:6	Rev 16:18-21	Rev 17:3, 8-11
Mat 24:21;	Rev 8:12	Luke 21:11	Rev 17:12-13
Dan 12:1	Jos 10:12-14	Rev 19:20;	Rev 17:16-17
1 Pet 3:20	Mat 24:22	Rev 20:10	Dan 2; 7-8
Gen 5-6	Rev 11:13	Rev 13:11-18	Rev 13:16-17
Rev 6:2-8	Rev 6:12-14	Rev 17-18	Rev 14:19-20;
Dan 7:7-28	Dan 9:26	Dan 2; 5; 7; 8;	Rev 19:15-21
Eze 38:2-6;	Eze 38-39		Rev 19:15
Eze 39:1-5	Rev 16:17-21	Dan 9-12	Rev 20:2-3
Rev 6: 9-17	Rev 9:20	Rev 13:1-10;	
Rev 9:13-15	Rev 16:8-11		

Behold, the day of the LORD cometh, cruel both with wrath and fierce anger, to lay the land desolate: and he shall destroy the sinners thereof out of it. For the stars of heaven and the constellations thereof shall not give their light: the sun shall be darkened in his going forth, and the moon shall not cause her light to shine. And I will punish the world for their evil, and the wicked for their iniquity; and I will cause the arrogance of the proud to cease, and will lay low the haughtiness of the terrible. I will make a man more precious than fine gold; even a man than the golden wedge of Ophir. Therefore I will shake the heavens, and the earth shall remove out of her place, in the wrath of the LORD of hosts, and in the day of his fierce anger [Isa 13:9-13](#).



As Isaiah puts it, during The Great Tribulation God **will punish the world for their evil** and **shall destroy the sinners thereof out of it...** [And]... **make a man more precious than fine gold.** And this will involve quite a lot of 'shaking' of both **the heavens** and **the earth.** Probably more than 9 out of 10 people will die during The Great Tribulation— over 90% of the World's population. This subsection will account for that. At today's estimated population near 7 billion, this would be around 6 ½ billion people or more killed. And this is not really speculative, but stated and implied throughout the course of John's record. And this is one way to see why it **shall be** the worst time ever, past or future ([Mat 24:21](#); [Dan 12:1](#)). More than half of these casualties are specifically accounted for in just 3 of the 21 judgments of God from Heaven including one Seal and two Trumpet Judgments. And we should notice that none of these three judgments occur in the 'worst time' that Jesus and Daniel speak of—they are all in The Beginning of Sorrows. This indicates that fewer will die in The Days of Vengeance but likely only because there just aren't as many people left to kill in order to match the earlier death tolls. But we also must **understand** that both Jesus and Daniel were talking to Jews. This indicates something else that we'll talk about more in the next sections. But the idea is that the Jews will have it 'easy' in The Beginning of Sorrows because, though God plans to **punish the world** and especially the Gentiles **for their evil** starting with The 1st Seal, He won't allow any real **trouble** for the Jews until after The Abomination of Desolation. And the point for now is that the progress of time

can also be measured in the 'body counts' at points along the way. But before we get to that, a little more perspective may be in order.

The Flood of Noah had **eight** survivors ([1Pet 3:20](#)). More will survive The Great Tribulation, but surely many, many more will die in The Great Tribulation than in The Flood. For example, I calculate that if no one died from the time of Adam to Noah, and everyone in each of the 10 generations that lived before The Flood—including Adam and Noah's generations—participated in producing 10 offspring per couple, then as many as a billion to two billion people could have been born before The Flood. (See [Genesis 5-6](#) and do the math, or eventually see [The Ages of Creation study](#).) But all the patriarchs in the line of Adam in this Pre-flood Age died before The Flood began, except Noah of course. So it should be assumed that only those from later generations were still alive, and that the total remaining alive should also be diminished by the deaths from all the bloodshed occurring in this generation reported by God to be in serious decline due to a common worldwide 'mindset'. With the exception of Noah and his family, God's testimony for every individual alive at the time of The Flood is that...

...every imagination of the thoughts of his heart was only evil continually [Gen 6:5](#).

So I expect World population at the time of The Flood would have been less than a billion. And by this we can estimate that The Flood's casualties were little more than 'a drop in the bucket' compared to what we'll see in The Great Tribulation. I expect The Flood may account for as little as $\frac{1}{10}$ of The Great Tribulation's death toll.

Also The Black Death—or the bubonic plague—was likely only 'a drop in the bucket' compared to The Flood. It reduced the population of England which was at...

...3,700,000 inhabitants when the Black Death struck in 1348, but only 2,100,000 in the early 15th century ([The Black Death](#), Professor Gerhard Rempel, Western New England College, <http://mars.wnec.edu/~grempe/courses/wc1/lectures/27blackdeath.html>).

And if as many as 5 million died across the continent, this is a comparative magnitude in the ballpark of $\frac{1}{200}$ of The Flood.

But some estimate that the combined murders in the last century by 'power-drunk' totalitarian dictators totaled approximately 170 million. In first place there is...

...the Soviet Union (near 62,000,000 people), [then] the communist government of China is second (near 35,000,000), followed by Nazi Germany (almost 21,000,000), and Nationalist China (some 10,000,000). Lesser megamurderers include WW II Japan, Khmer Rouge Cambodia, WW I Turkey, communist Vietnam, post-WW II Poland, Pakistan, and communist Yugoslavia (www.hawaii.edu/powerkills/POWER.ART.HTM).

But if these numbers are accurate this is only approaching $2/10$ of a billion, less than half my projection for The Flood, and up to 50 times less than what we can expect in The Great Tribulation. And the total deaths caused by all other wars, earthquakes, famines, plagues, etc., of all history up to this point will still fall astoundingly short of the death toll even in the first half of The Great Tribulation.

This 'stampede of carnage' in The Great Tribulation begins with the **white horse** of The 1st Seal Judgment. The number of deaths resulting from this first judgment is not specified in Revelation, but by comparing its description to judgments that have specified totals we can estimate. And the totality of this **study** shows us that there is no better 'rider' for this time and purpose than the Antichrist. This rider is the most significant 'conqueror' that is first released on the World to start The Beginning of Sorrows. And if this is not the Antichrist, who else could it be? We can see he's the first to 'trample under hoofs', likely both metaphorically and literally, and substantially and successfully **conquer** [Rev 6:2](#) a significant part of the World (read, Europe). But particularly we will **learn** that he first usurps 3 nations in the process of his cunning and brutal rise to power over a 10 nation kingdom ([Daniel 7:7-28](#), etc.), through which he will ultimately have control over the entire World. And we can expect more than 'a few eggs broken making this omelet'. And after the Antichrist's 'white-horse-riding' time of **conquering** starts, the hostilities are added to by a **red** horse in The 2nd Seal Judgment where people will also, to a horrifying extent, **kill one another** in additional wars [Rev 6:4](#). And we will **prove** later that this **red** horse suffers a severe 'setback' in The 6th Seal Judgment, but also that the **white horse** will ride, and only on one occasion 'in retreat', throughout the entire 7 years of The Great Tribulation.

Most of the deaths in the Book of Revelation occur in sizable distinguishable portions. We **know** that over a quarter of the World's population is dead by the end of The 4th Seal Judgment relatively early in The Great Tribulation. We **know** this because the description of The 4th Seal Judgment tells us that it alone is responsible for the death of **the fourth part of the earth** [Rev 6:8](#). We're talking 1½ to 2 billion people dying at the present population, and all within about 100 days. These are the kind of numbers that rate a mention in Revelation. The rest evidently do not. And certainly a few hundred million get no specific mention. So the first three judgments of The Great Tribulation do not result in enough people being killed to specifically mention the number. However we're talking about The Beginning of Sorrows, so though we can assume that each judgment's contribution is less than $1/4$ of the population, they each must still surpass the totals reached by last century's 'megamurderers'.

But there is another distinguishing number connected to the 'red horse' of The 2nd Seal Judgment. This number is $5/6$, a fraction that expresses the number of deaths suffered by the armies of Russia, as well as those of Iran, Iraq, Syria, Egypt, Sudan, Ethiopia, Libya, Turkey, and probably others. Ezekiel informs us that $5/6$ of **all** these armies are slated to die when they attack Israel near the end of the period of The Seal Judgments ([Ezekiel 38:2-6](#) and [39:1-5](#)). Still this is a small number compared to **the fourth part of the earth**. But this is an important event, so we will 'reconnoiter' this conflict with Israel in [SECTION 9](#). The Third Seal Judgment, by-the-way, may not result in many deaths at all as it appears to be an 'economic collapse', but

this would be an effective set up for The Fourth Seal Judgment given God's declared intention to kill many in it by **famine**.

By the same logic, The 5th and 6th Seal Judgments ([Rev 6:9-17](#)) involve additional fractions of deaths 'too insignificant to mention'. So again, compared to **the fourth part of the earth**, I expect that all the deaths in the 1st, 2nd, 3rd, 5th, and 6th Seal Judgments to total only a few hundred million at most. And though this figure seems unimaginably high, it's much less significant than the 1,750 million or 1.75 billion— $\frac{1}{4}$ of the population at 7 billion—that are marked for death in The 4th Seal Judgment. And this is absolutely the minimum number of casualties we can expect in the about 100 days of this judgment. Because the figure will be higher if World population increases between now and the start of The Great Tribulation—and it should. See again the [Chart of World Population](#) on [page 56](#). And with at least a couple hundred million dying in the other 5 Seal Judgments, this gives a ballpark figure of about 2 billion dead by the end of The Seal Judgments at the present population. The 7th Seal is likely to be more of a 'transitional warning period' that I expect very few will die in. And with a little more than $\frac{1}{4}$ of the population dead, next comes The Trumpets.

Similar **noisome** 'cacophonies of death'—increasing the death toll to undeniably over half the population—are 'orchestrated' in the explicitly worse Trumpet Judgments. We **know** this because the Angel of the 6th Trumpet Judgment alone will be 'conducting' a single judgment that is meant **to slay the third part of men** [Rev 9:13-15](#). But we should realize here that this figure must be closer to $\frac{1}{4}$ of the original population because it's $\frac{1}{3}$ of the remaining $\frac{3}{4}$. And we can add to this another couple tenths of a billion or so—a few hundred million—for the lesser judgments, except that in this set there are **many** more deaths specifically mentioned.

The 5th and 7th Trumpet Judgments, like the 3rd and 7th Seal Judgments, will likely mostly cause misery and dread but not many deaths. John records specifically that the longer than average (five-months or 150-day) 5th Trumpet Judgment is a time when,

...in those days shall men seek death, and shall not find it; and shall desire to die, and death shall flee from them [Rev 9:6](#).

And the 7th Trumpet, like The 7th Seal, appears to be more of a warning that fosters the suspense and foreboding of worst things to come, not so much death.

But the 'core' of the problems caused by the first three Trumpet Judgments is much more life-threatening. These judgments promise to be like some of God's earlier judgments on ancient Egypt that occurred during the Exodus. So I expect that in The Great Tribulation, as in Egypt and at other times, another very close gravitational and electromagnetic interaction of the Earth with another Venus-or-Mars-like planet is scheduled to 'spin-off' God's planned destruction in the form of atmospheric interactions that will cause the poisoning of $\frac{1}{3}$ the trees and grass, $\frac{1}{3}$ the oceans and sea life and $\frac{1}{3}$ of the rivers, lakes, and springs, and somehow in the process destroy $\frac{1}{3}$ of the ships of the sea. And these future God-powered, 'supernatural disasters' will no more likely involve any form of man-made nuclear weapons or other WMD's than were likely involved in ancient Egypt. And the first evidence of

this is exactly that. God did not need man's help for His similar judgments in the past and He will not all of a sudden have to rely on man's help in the future. Instead and again, 'extra-planetary interaction' will occur with the Earth as it has been recorded to have done so repeatedly in the past. And in this 'ballgame' we can imagine that God, with His **hand** and 'throwing' **arm**, is 'all alone in His league'.

His **arm** is also responsible for The 4th Trumpet's forecasted darkening of the heavens and shortening of the days by $\frac{1}{3}$. This implies that there will be a speeding up of the rotation of the Earth so that a full rotation will transpire in just 16 instead of 24 hours, making 8-hour days and 8-hour nights. And as for the reduction of light, a dramatic change in the Earth's distance from the Sun is unlikely. It's more likely that the planetary interactions that produce this increased 'spin rate' will also produce 'a haze of smoke' that will reduce visible light ([Rev 8:12](#)). High casualties would be expected if all this is caused by relatively abrupt changes. So I guess it depends on how strongly God will **shake the heavens, and the earth** at this point. Because surely God could handle this transition as gently or as abruptly as He likes. But Jesus seems to indicate that God will to some extent restrain Himself, because He refers to this 'orbit-altering action' when He indicates that it will serve by design to preserve life in The Days of Vengeance ([Mat 24:22](#)). And this action is probably akin to the one that helps prolong Joshua's day of battle ([Joshua 10:12-14](#)). So I assume that The 4th Trumpet Judgment is the beginning of the limiting of the number of deaths by the limiting of daylight hours. Of course if the event is 'abrupt', it will only help to preserve life after it's all over. But however this acceleration of the rotation of the earth occurs, it appears that from then on short days will be the norm, because no other changes in the length of days is mentioned as part of any of the remaining judgments from Heaven. We will clarify much more about God's 'cosmic interventions' along the way, but even more so in [The Ages of Creation study](#).

The obviously incredible devastation of the first three Trumpet Judgments on the other 'hand', (which is not to confirm or deny God's ambidextrousness), should net more than a couple hundred million in deaths in the process. This is because one of these judgments is considered bad enough to be specifically qualified. It is The 3rd Seal Judgment and its description quantifies the number of deaths in a way we have not seen so far. John tells us that in it **many men die**. Now **many** is necessarily somewhere between all the unmentioned quantities and **the fourth part of the earth**—somewhere between, say, a couple hundred million and 1.75 billion. Shooting for the middle ground we could estimate that this would ballpark somewhere between 500 million and a billion people dying during this judgment alone. This is indeed **many** compared to the previous estimates for unspecified death tolls and still significantly short of $\frac{1}{4}$ of the population. And since we can assume that this judgment from God provides 'poisoned water' to $\frac{1}{3}$ of the planet, and assume that about $\frac{1}{3}$ of the remaining about 5 billion people—about $1\frac{1}{3}$ billion people—are affected (at the current population), we can easily project such a large number of deaths. Of course I don't expect all of the $\frac{1}{3}$ of 5 billion will die in the contaminated zones because I'm guessing some should find stored water left behind by the previously much larger population.

The death toll in the first five Trumpets Judgments then, staying relative, should be more than $\frac{1}{10}$ but less than $\frac{1}{3}$ of the remaining population, let's say around another billion people. And we should also notice that the $\frac{1}{3}$ of the remaining World population killed by the 6th Trumpet cannot be $\frac{1}{3}$ of 5 Billion, but, with the other Trumpet Judgments before it, closer to $\frac{1}{3}$ of say 4 billion. This **third part of men** then would be about $1\frac{1}{3}$ billion, which when added to the about 1 billion casualties from the previous five Trumpet Judgments, and the 2 billion from The Seal judgments, totals about $4\frac{1}{3}$ billion dead up to the end of The Trumpet Judgments given the present population, which is more than 6 out of 10 people departed since the start of The Great Tribulation.

How again is this not speculative? Of course it is to some extent. But the $\frac{1}{4}$ of the population that dies in the 4th Seal Judgment, and the $\frac{1}{3}$ of the remaining population that dies in the 6th Trumpet Judgment, and the comparatively **many** that die in The 3rd Trumpet Judgment are not to any extent speculative, except we do not **know** what the population will be at the start of The Great Tribulation. But these three judgments alone account directly for more than 5 out of 10 people dead. And we can see from this that if we only consider the total of deaths, The Beginning of Sorrows will be worse than The Days of Vengeance. Indisputably, more than half the population will be dead by the end of The Trumpet Judgments whether we start with 7 billion people or more, totals adjusted accordingly. The only speculation so far then is whether all the other judgments of unspecified numbers of deaths result in enough casualties to account for the deaths of another 1 out of 10 people or more to bring the total to 6 out of 10 or more. And there will likely be at least 6 out of 10 dead by the end of the first half because this estimate respects a relationship between the specified and unspecified death tolls while acknowledging that the unspecified judgments should still be considered more deadly than the worst wars, plagues, famines, and both terrestrial and extraterrestrial 'natural disasters' of previous history.

Also worth mentioning is The Ministry of the Two Witnesses which will be responsible for another significant but unnumbered quantity of deaths by their God-given power to stop the rain, turn water to **blood**, and **to smite the earth with all plagues, as often as they will** throughout the first half of The Great Tribulation. This 'deadly unlimited partnership' is not terminated until the end of The 6th Trumpet just before The Abomination of Desolation.

And following The Ministry of the Two Witnesses at the conclusion to The 6th Trumpet Judgment—still just before The Abomination of Desolation—we come to a second...

...great earthquake, and the tenth part of the city [of Jerusalem] **fell, and in the earthquake were slain of men seven thousand** [Rev 11:13](#).

But it's not likely that the effects of this midterm **great earthquake** are confined to Jerusalem and limited to 7,000 deaths. It is instead noteworthy that so few die in Jerusalem as a result of it, because this **great earthquake** also must involve the close interaction of the Earth with a planet like Mars—a

planet that must arrive in time for all the **earthquakes** Jesus speaks of in **the beginning of sorrows** [Mat 24:7-8](#), and possibly in time for the **pestilences** of The 4th Seal Judgment as we will consider shortly. But as these many **earthquakes** that Jesus describes evidently are not all mentioned by John in Revelation, pinpointing this planet's first interactions with Earth is difficult to determine. But a 'planet to planet interaction' must be the cause of the first **earthquake** John describes in The 6th Seal Judgment. In this **great earthquake** He sees that...

...every mountain and island were moved out of their places
[Rev 6:12-14](#).

But still these evidently horrendously **great** earthquakes fall short of causing **many** to die—and of course I mean **many** by Great Tribulation standards—though we'll see that these **great earthquakes** are accompanied by 'global meteor showers' as well as other associated 'meteorological effects' that are evidently 'common' in such 'planetary interactions'.

But the midterm **great earthquake** at the end of The 6th Trumpet reporting damage to just $\frac{1}{10}$ of the City of Jerusalem, and just 7,000 deaths, possibly all Jews—though it may be the part of the city still housing mostly Muslims—leads me to expect that both these **great** earthquakes must be similar to the one in Egypt where the Jews were unaffected by the earthquake (in Goshen) while the rest of Egypt suffered serious adverse effects. This is documented by **scripture**, but also by the rest of the World in historical documentation compiled by Immanuel Velikovsky. And all this evidence suggests that there will be virtually no damage done to the City of Jerusalem in The 1st Great Earthquake of The 6th Seal. And this is why mentioning that $\frac{1}{10}$ of **the city** is damaged in The Midterm Great Earthquake is significant. It shows how much worse The Midterm Great Earthquake is than The 1st Great Earthquake. But neither of these **great** earthquakes can **destroy** The Temple in Jerusalem or much of **the city**, because we **know** that the Antichrist **shall destroy the city and the sanctuary** [Dan 9:26](#) at The Abomination of Desolation following both of these **great** earthquakes.

And by-the-way, no wonder the Antichrist will want to move to Israel at this time. It will apparently be relatively untouched by the **great tribulation** (John's reference) that the rest of the World has experienced up to this time. We can see that Israel will have sustained minimal damage because of John's report about The Midterm Great Earthquake relative to God's city and people. In this way God confirms that He will protect $\frac{9}{10}$ of the city of Jerusalem and evidently the rest of Israel too, just as He will evidently protect all of Jerusalem and Israel in The 1st Great Earthquake. But in The Midterm Great Earthquake He must purpose to target $\frac{1}{10}$ of the city as well as again most all of the rest of the World, including making **every mountain and island** 'move' **out of their places** again. However I'm guessing that this Midterm Great Earthquake will also be sufficiently effective throughout Israel and especially in the City of Jerusalem for distraction. I mean I expect it will help with the subsequent escape of the Jews to **the mountains of the wilderness**. And The 1st Great Earthquake, by-the-way, will also undoubtedly aid in the defense of Israel against Russia and all the Muslims when they attack. And surely a horrendous number, but evidently not **many** by Great

Tribulation standards, should die globally from the effects of both these **great** earthquakes in The Beginning of Sorrows.

I should also add that this seeming lack of attention given to the rest of the World is typical of God's focus on His own people in **prophecy**, but it also serves the purpose to help obscure the big picture which I see as part of His intention. I mean you can see how the information is nonetheless sufficient for us to deduce the broader picture once we see where God's focus is. Further, it is not **wise** to doubt an 'awesomely fantastic' and 'miraculous' outcome given some of the 'awesomely fantastic' and 'miraculous' aspects of God's previous judgments in Egypt, for example. I mean if it can be imagined, it might happen, especially if there is evidence He has done something like it before. And what He has done before involves 'extraterrestrially-assisted' and 'precisely targeted seismic disturbances' likely producing both 'multiplied and cancelled ground waves' precisely when and where He wants them—got to know a little wave theory, factor in some Velikovskian 'astro-geophysics', and use your God-given imagination here, or see [The Ages of Creation study](#). But I know God can do these things because He has done them before. Again, the idea is that we can imagine to a great extent what these judgments in The Great Tribulation will be like because we can look at what God has already done in the past.

We will also continue to employ along the way the help of Immanuel Velikovsky who collected the worldwide historical records that provide additional evidence of God's 'awesomely fantastic' and 'miraculous' previous work—though Velikovsky didn't see it quite that way. The point for now is that besides having a 'masterful hand' over the physical laws that He has created and uses, there will be, as in the past, other 'awesomely fantastic and miraculous manipulations' of Creation, some of which will necessarily remain entirely beyond our **understanding**. But only some of them if we're paying attention. And even fewer in time if we continue to speculate about them and wait upon The Holy Spirit for answers. This has been my **experience**. And again, this will continue as a topic of discussion.

And while we're on this topic, anyone figure out yet how in Egypt God made it light only inside the dwellings of the Jews in Goshen while there was **thick**, oppressive, evidently particle-filled **darkness** throughout Egypt and covering at least that particular half of the World? I've got some good theories for most the rest of The Egyptian Plagues about how God used His Own 'orderly laws' to accomplish them. And we'll cover them all more fully in [The Ages of Creation study](#). But this judgment still has me stumped. And the point I want to make here is that **understanding** how God does it doesn't make it any less 'miraculous'; it actually makes it even more awesome. And yes, Velikovsky's research suggests that there were three days of sunshine in China at the same time other regions experienced three days of dusk or dark. This implies that the Earth's axis of rotation shifted—it could not have abruptly stopped—moving China toward the Sun and Israel away from it, then back again, all in a three day period, kind of like the way I'm guessing that God extended that day for Joshua. Do you think that the rest of the World didn't notice the exceptionally long nights of **thick darkness**, or long days of sunshine, or extended periods of dusk? They did. And Velikovsky proved it, and much more.

Incidentally, there are only two 'plain-old Great-Tribulation-sized'

earthquakes described in Revelation during The Beginning of Sorrows. One is during The 7th Seal Judgment and the other in The 7th Trumpet Judgment. But there is also the unspecified number of **earthquakes** mentioned by Jesus implying many others. Surely some will die as a result of these two and possibly other 'less-than-great' earthquakes, but I see their purpose as more attention-getting than life-threatening. And I would expect that in the first **great earthquake** where **every mountain** [except in Israel] **and island were moved out of their places** that most buildings will be 'knocked down' too, so that there will not be nearly as much damage left to be done in either of the two 'less-than-great' **earthquakes** that are recorded to follow. And this should also be why not so '**many**' will die in The Midterm Great Earthquake either.

One of our objectives will be to confirm that The 1st Great Earthquake of The 6th Seal Judgment is also the **great shaking in the land of Israel** and beyond described in Ezekiel 39. This connection will help us identify that this first **great earthquake** is really all about the demise of The Red Horse that rises to make war in The 2nd Seal Judgment. Ezekiel tells us that,

...Surely in that day there shall be a great shaking in the land of Israel; So that the fishes of the sea, and the fowls of the heaven, and the beasts of the field, and all creeping things that creep upon the earth, and all the men that are upon the face of the earth, shall shake at my presence, and the mountains shall be thrown down, and the steep places shall fall, and every wall shall fall to the ground [Ezekiel 38:19-20](#).

Yes, surely this is one of the **great** earthquakes, and surely beyond the 'less-than-great' Great Tribulation variety. And you can see here that it will be 'greatly' felt **in the land of Israel**. And the whole account in Ezekiel 38-39 is full of 'Exodus-like manipulations of Creation' which surely are the result of the 'planetary interactions'. And God not only causes **great** seismic disturbances but also a **rain of great hailstones, fire, and brimstone**, and **blood** by the 'interactions' of the 'stirred atmospheres' of the two planets, which we will spend more time 'forecasting' in [SECTION 9](#), but again, even more in [The Ages of Creation study](#). And again, somehow the damage to Israel and The City of Jerusalem will be negligible, and there will be only the destruction of 10% of the city in The Midterm Great Earthquake, because the Antichrist will **destroy the city and the sanctuary** just after The Abomination of Desolation. And this Midterm Great Earthquake must be at least as bad as The 1st Great Earthquake worldwide, except with few if any heavy structures still left standing after The 1st Great Earthquake, there should be much less of them to fall on people, and less people left to kill.

So there should be at least 6 out of 10 dead at the end of The Trumpets Judgments, and at the present population no more than 2 ½ to 3 billion people left alive at the onset of The Plague Judgments. John identifies these survivors at the end of The 6th Trumpet Judgment as...

...the rest of the men which were not killed by these plagues [The Seal and Trumpet Judgments] yet repented not of the works of their hands... [Rev 9:20](#)

But The Trumpet Judgments are not immediately followed by The Plague Judgments because there are several other midterm events including a rapture and other 'judgments' that surely account for more deaths. We cover this 'transition period' from The Beginning of Sorrows to The Days of Vengeance in the next couple of sections.

The 1st, 4th, and 5th Plague Judgments—in the last set of judgments—also appear to yield a relatively few deaths because John speaks of how survivors are tormented and continue to be tormented, adding to pain from sores, pain from heat, then more pain in darkness, but no mention of death as a result—mainly only torment. And The 6th Plague Judgment appears to be only a 'gathering to judgment', though we will eventually see how it could be the most 'tormenting' of all.

But The 2nd and 3rd Plague Judgments are by no means ambiguous about deaths. They involve the 'poisoning' of **all** the fresh water and seawater and the end of **all** sea life. We will nonetheless see the 'revival' of freshwater, seawater, and sea life in The Millennium in [SECTION 11](#). And one must still assume that the continually shrinking population can be sustained by the remaining stores of water and food from the recently much larger population. But one must also assume that since John tells us that **many** die with the poisoning of just $\frac{1}{3}$ of water sources, and the loss of just $\frac{1}{3}$ of sea life during The 3rd Trumpet Judgment, that a significant number of deaths will again occur with the poisoning of all water sources, and the death of all sea life, though the number should not overtop The 3rd Trumpet Judgment, though likely only because there won't be as many people left alive to die. To be sure, John indicates there are still survivors who will endure the torture of the first five Plague Judgments who...

...repented not to give him [God] glory... [and who] repented not of their deeds [Rev 16:8-11](#).

And the purpose of The 6th Plague Judgment is to begin the rounding-up of these unrepentant souls for slaughter. So the theme of this last set of judgments, more than the previous two, seems to be torment. Still, I expect that The 2nd and 3rd Plague Judgments should mark the death of '**many**', taking out another billion people or more. So I'm seeing no more than 1 or 2 billion left when we get to The 7th Plague Judgment, and that's even if we start with 9 billion—the projected population in 2042—because the more we start with the more there will be to lose.

And in The 7th and Final Plague Judgment we see the last **great earthquake**. And this one is **such as was not since men were upon the earth, so mighty an earthquake, and so great**. In it,

...the great city [Jerusalem] was divided into three parts, and the cities of the nations fell: and great Babylon came in remembrance before God, to give unto her the cup of the wine of the fierceness of his wrath. And every island fled away, and the mountains were not found. And there fell upon men a great hail out of heaven, every stone about the weight of a talent: and

men blasphemed God because of the plague of the hail; for the plague thereof was exceeding great [Rev 16:18-21](#).

Let's recap this **great earthquake**. First we **learn** that Jerusalem is 'shaken in three'. Then, what's left of all **the cities** of all **the nations** will be destroyed, including what seems to be a 'retroucing' of already 'trounced' **Babylon** (read, Vatican City). We'll try to distinguish these different 'trouncings' of **Babylon** in [SECTION 8](#). Next, islands are shaken below sea level, mountains are shaken flat, and the biggest rocks yet—not likely ice—will be falling from the sky. These catastrophes, like similar judgments of God recorded in **scripture** and in ancient history, and as other judgments in The Great Tribulation **prophesied** in **scripture**, are all accomplished by God's **hand** who will again bring another planet in close proximity to the Earth. And this will cause, according to Jesus, **fearful sights and great signs... from heaven [Luke 21:11](#)**.

But all of this will only continue to aggravate the rebellion against God by the surviving inhabitants of the Earth with apparently too **'few'** exceptions. How many of the remaining population of the World could survive with no more new sources of water, (until and if it rains), and through an earthquake and 'meteor shower' like this? God knows. But reasonably, as Jesus, Isaiah, and Daniel say, and as we will see in the next sections, this is the worst half of The Great Tribulation, implying no comparably trivial number of deaths, but rather that reaching beyond 9 out of 10 dead is no great stretch of speculation.

And still there are other causes of many deaths—though not the **'many'** of Revelation 8:11—that have not yet been identified. There is still the Antichrist-supported mass murders by the **false prophet** ([Rev 19:20](#); [20:10](#)) or **the second beast** ([13:11-18](#)), whose person and domain is also symbolized as **a woman** 'riding' **the beast**. We will see that these depictions all represent the Pope and his Catholic Church that dominate the Antichrist and his kingdom ([Rev 17](#)). And some of this 'riding' must go on in The Beginning of Sorrows as well as in The Days of Vengeance. This False Prophet is headquartered in his extravagant **city [Rev 18](#)**—The Vatican—where the identities of this **woman** 'riding' **the beast** and this **city** are shown to be one in the same ([Rev 17:18](#)).

And we will see that this **city** is central to the amalgamation of the cultures of the 'seven-headed beast' that is formed of the **seven kings** and their kingdoms, these being Egypt, Assyria, Babylon, Medo-Persia, Greece, Rome, and the Antichrist Kingdom. And the 7th **head** or the 7th **king**—who is the angelic **king** or **prince** over the Antichrist and his kingdom—is the only one that **is not yet come** ([Dan 2](#); [5](#); [7](#); [8](#); [9-12](#); [Rev 13:1-10](#); [17:3,8-11](#)). And this 7th **head** is a 'monster' in its own right. He is an angel **prince** that is more likely Satan's top 'archangel' than Satan himself. But when Satan empowers the human Antichrist he makes him worthy of the designation of the **eighth, and is of the seven** angelic 'world-ruling' **princes** or 'archangels' all under Satan ([Rev 17:11](#)). This implies that the person of the Antichrist will be a force to be reckoned with equal to any one of the six previous angelic **kings**, and also to the then existing 7th **king**, in and of himself. This **eighth** is also the one who has control of the **7 kingdom**—the Antichrist Kingdom—with its **ten horns which... are ten** [human] **kings**

([Rev 17:3,12-13,16-17](#); [Dan 2; 7-8](#)). And these **ten kings** become the agents of the Antichrist when he takes over their kingdoms. Among other world-dominating and devastating undertakings, these **ten kings** ultimately overthrow the **false prophet** somewhere into The Days of Vengeance. This is evidently because the **ten** will think that the False Prophet is 'riding' **the beast** 'a little too hard'. Even still, the False Prophet will remain an advocate of the Antichrist to the end of The Great Tribulation. And we too will 'surmount' and **prove** all of this throughout the next several sections, especially [SECTION 7](#) and [8](#).

And still worst than all this is **Armageddon**, an unimaginable 'sea of blood', which will, generally speaking, dispense with...

...all, both small and great, rich and poor, free and bond [Rev 13:16](#); [19:11-21](#).

And this **all** is all of those who take **the mark... of the beast** ([Rev 13:17](#)). I mean **all** those who take **the mark** and don't die sometime before Armageddon and wait in **hell**. The ones that are still alive at the time of Armageddon become the 'blood donors' for the 'sea of blood' that will fill **the valley of Megiddo** [2 Chron 35:22](#) or **Armageddon** [Rev 16:16](#). And their bodies become 'bird feed' for this **supper of the great God** ([Rev 14:19-20](#); [19:15-21](#)). But the rest who have not **received the mark of the beast** and who survive the entire Great Tribulation will be survivors in all the **nations** over which **Jesus** will **rule** ([Rev 19:15](#)), and over which **Satan** will lose his power to **deceive** ([Rev 20:2](#)).

How many will be left in the end? Let's see, there are the 2 ½ to 3 billion left at the end of The Trumpet Judgments. Then take away at least a billion for those who die in The Plague Judgments because I expect that in them a larger percentage of the remaining population will be killed than in the previous sets—over a third but less than half—as Jesus, Daniel, and John together seem to imply. But let me make clear that this higher percentage but smaller number of deaths than in the previous sets will also be worse because of the more tormenting nature of the judgments. And at the end of all three rounds, there can't be more than a billion or two left.

Finally, Jesus seems to imply that literally half the remaining population of the World will die at Armageddon, a figure made possible both by The 6th Plague Judgment and by The Rapture of Wrath which we will assess in [SECTION 10](#). This should leave less than a billion people on the planet at the end of The Great Tribulation.

So whether 9 out of 10 die leaving 700 to 900 million survivors, or 99 out of 100 leaving 70 to 90 million survivors, at least some 'environmentalists' and 'world-government types'—who actually believe that the Earth can only support about half a billion people anyway—will pretty much get their wish. Of course, they won't likely be able to hang around to enjoy it. And talk about being 'careful what you wish for'. And all this must lead us to conclude that when God says, **I will make a man more precious than fine gold**, you'd better believe Him, because it is not a wish, and it is not an allegory, nor even so much a political agenda inspired by Satan. It's God's promise of a 'soon coming' reality, and part of the **more sure word of prophecy** Peter speaks of.

And speaking of severity, The Great Tribulation isn't just severe. You may have already noticed that the severity escalates. This fact not only supports the numbers we just talked about, it shows the passing and transitions of time too.

[Severity & Escalations in the Book of Revelation](#)

Rev 6:9-11
Mat 7:13-14
2 Pet 3:9
Rev 8:11;
Rev 9:12;
Rev 11:14
Rev 11:18;
Rev 6:17
Rev 12:9-12

Rev 13:2-7

Rev 6:2
Mat 24:3-10
Luke 21:9-12
Mat 24:21
Luke 21:20-23
2 Th 2:4; Dan
9:27
Rev 14:13; 15:1
Rev
16:1;12:12,17

Mat 10:28
Rev 12:9
Rev 14:6-12
Rev 6:6
Rom 11:22
Mat 24:20-22
Isa 24:23
Rev 11:15
Rev 19:20

Rev 20:2-3

Isa 24:21-22
Isa 24:1-6
Isa 24:17-18
Gen 7:11
Isa 24:19
Luke 21:11;
Luke 21:21-22
Heb 13:8

Rev 6:12-14
Rev 8:7-8

Luke 21:26
Rev 2-3; 13:9
Rev 12:11;
Rev 13:10;
Rev 14:12
Rev 1:7
Isa 28:13;24:17

Deaths escalate quickly at the outset of The Great Tribulation climbing to over a quarter of the population of the planet by the end of The 4th Seal. After this opening 'stampede of carnage', the next indication that deaths are going to escalate comes when believers who have already paid the ultimate price by their death speak up, crying that they have had enough. It's a short, 'pre-cautionary tale' told within the description of The 5th Seal Judgment that implies worse times to come. The setting is...

...under the altar [obviously in The Temple in Heaven where] ***the souls of them that were slain for the word of God, and for the testimony which they held... cried with a loud voice...*** [Rev 6:9-10](#).

At this time these martyrs express their impatience for God's retribution on the Earth. But though honored with new ***white robes***, these martyrs are told to 'chill', figuratively speaking, because evidently the purpose of this judgment is to initiate the start of a growing campaign of persecution against Christians and Jews. John hears that...

...it was said unto them [the martyred saints], ***that they should rest yet for a little season, until their fellow servants also and their brethren, that should be killed as they were, should be fulfilled*** [Rev 6:11](#).

So these martyrs are told that their vengeance will be satisfied, but not immediately because they will be joined by other martyrs first. Jesus and Daniel also add credence to this conclusion as we will see in [SECTION 7](#). But the number of these impending deaths cannot be considered significant compared to other judgments in The Great Tribulation because most will not ***understand*** the necessity to volunteer to die in order to save their eternal souls. How do I ***know***? It's supernatural 'insider' ***knowledge*** from Jesus every Christian should ***know***. He says,

Enter ye in at the strait gate: for wide is the gate, and broad is the way, that leadeth to destruction, and many there be which go in thereat: Because strait is the gate, and narrow is the way, which leadeth unto life, and few there be that find it [Mat 7:13-14](#).

This principle unfortunately applies to all time and dispensations. The inhabitants of the Earth during The Great Tribulation must not be exempt, though thankfully, the purpose of this 'great shaking' of the Earth will be to 'sift out' the precious '***few***' who will ***find*** and accept ***everlasting life*** from the unfortunate ***many*** who will choose ***eternal damnation*** and ***destruction***. Of course these particular '***few***', just a few months earlier, did not respond to The Spirit of Conviction in The Age of Grace, or at least were not responding at the time of The Rapture, so it will be no 'cakewalk' for them. These are the ones who will have missed their chance to choose Jesus in ***the dispensation of the grace of God*** and will find themselves forced to make that same choice in an age of God's ***wrath and fierce anger***. But

remember that this is also the time of The 70th Week for the Jews where God is also implementing and finishing His completely different plan of **salvation** for them, though of course no one can be **saved** other than by **the blood of Jesus**. Still, all this implies that the number of both Jews and Gentiles who will **find it** and die for **it** in The Great Tribulation must be an even smaller tally of deaths than in most of the unmentioned tallies for other judgments. However it must be that this escalation of severity will bring with it the very motivation these **'few'** will need to **find it**. This unleashed 'campaign of genocide' that apparently begins in The Beginning of Sorrows and is intensified in The Days of Vengeance we'll talk about further in [SECTION 7](#) and [8](#).

By-the-way, we can see more **proof** for the pretribulation Rapture of the Church here, because the only way these martyrs **that were slain for the word of God** could be no longer just generally somewhere in **paradise** or the **third heaven** but specifically **under the altar** near God's Throne would be that they were raptured with the Church too. And now we can see three groups from The Rapture: The 24 elders around The Throne, the bulk of The Church who is not seen, and these martyrs that are now seen waiting **under the altar** until their number is complete.

And apparently they will be waiting patiently early in The Beginning of Sorrows until they start to see that the 'spirit of the Antichrist' and the 'religious system' that is most responsible for their martyrdom are only getting stronger and stronger. And this is when they will start to complain, and when they are told that they will have their revenge, but that others must suffer their fates before they get it.

We have already talked about how The 7th Seal and Trumpet Judgments are like 'time-outs' that allow Earth's remaining population to 'catch their breath' and contemplate their fates while at the same time hear from Heaven in no uncertain terms that God's **anger** is not yet appeased. As most are still not responding appropriately with repentance, they are left hanging in an environment of impending doom. But these must also be the times when some of the **few there be that find** the 'salvation of their souls' **find it**. Because **The Lord** is all about 'saving some'. Peter says,

The Lord is not slack concerning his promise, as some men count slackness; but is longsuffering to us-ward, not willing that any should perish, but that all should come to repentance

[2 Pet 3:9](#).

And this must apply to all time and dispensations too. And this must be the main reason for The 7th Seal and Trumpet Judgments. As in **grace** so in **wrath**, His **will** remains the same. These ominous 'interludes' are 'conducted' by God with the 'perfect tenor' as to be 'instrumental' in a 'recital of souls' whether in 'harmony' or 'discord' with Him.

And we can also see that between these 'interludes' things progress from bad to worse. This is most easily seen through the last three Trumpet Judgments. John tells us that these 'angelically announced' escalations increase the severity beyond the previous levels of **woe**. John witnesses this writing,

...I beheld, and heard an angel flying through the midst of heaven, saying with a loud voice, Woe, woe, woe, to the inhabitants of the earth by reason of the other voices of the trumpet of the [last] three angels, which are yet to sound! [Rev 8:11](#)

This is as plain as an angel in the sky shouting, 'ready or not, here comes the three worse judgments so far'. And John reminds us along the way when **One woe is past; and, behold, there come two woes more hereafter [Rev 9:12](#)**, and likewise when the **second woe is past; and, behold, the third woe cometh quickly [Rev 11:14](#)**. And you **know** things are getting worse when the last three angels of The Trumpet Judgments have their own additional angel introducing them as what we might call a special 'evangelical ensemble' performing their rendition of the 'earth-shaking hit', "Johnny B. Good". Just insert "woe" for "go" and stick to the chorus and you'll get it.

At the end of The Trumpet Judgments, a kind of 'discordant' and seemingly redundant statement that **thy wrath is come** reappears ([Rev 11:18](#)). This proclamation is near the conclusion of The Beginning of Sorrows but comes just before some assorted midterm raptures and events that conclude the first half. And I say 'seemingly redundant' because John has already told us that **his wrath is come** in [Revelation 6:17](#) during The Seal Judgments. So this restatement here must imply that the severity is going to escalate yet again. Of course, Jesus and Daniel make clear that this is the case too, because at this point The Abomination of Desolation is ready to take place.

The cause of the biggest escalation of The Great Tribulation, besides The Holy Trinity, is another big trio. And next to the members of The Holy Trinity, this threesome is the biggest. It's none other than Satan himself at the head of his own unholy trinity including the Antichrist and the False Prophet. Chapters 12 and 13 give summary accounts of Satan's second-half endeavors. Chapters 13 and 17 outline the activities of the Antichrist. And Chapters 13, 17, and 18 cover the False Prophet. And we will more fully expose them all in [SECTIONS 7](#) and [8](#). But for now suffice it to say that the cause of this biggest escalation comes when this...

...great dragon was cast out, that old serpent, called the Devil, and Satan, which deceiveth the whole world: he was cast out into the earth, and his angels were cast out with him [being defeated by **Michael and his angels** of God]... [Rev 12:9](#)

This midterm event is also when we hear an anonymous angelic...

...loud voice saying in heaven [concluding about this 'downfall']...
Woe to the inhabitants of the earth and of the sea! for the devil is come down unto you, having great wrath, because he knoweth that he hath but a short time
[Rev 12:10-12](#).

And since Satan only has a **short time** from the midpoint on, his first

order of business must be to empower the Antichrist to do his bidding. As John foresaw it,

...the dragon gave him [the Antichrist] his power, and his seat, and great authority... and power was given unto him [the Antichrist] to continue forty and two months [Rev 13:2-5](#).

So in the first half of The Great Tribulation a portion of the Earth is plagued with a **white horse... and a crown was given unto him... who went forth conquering, and to conquer [Rev 6:2](#)**, but for these remaining **forty and two months** of The Great Tribulation, **power is given unto him over all kindreds, and tongues, and nations [Rev 13:7](#)**. And the start of all this second-half trouble is also marked by when...

...he opened his mouth in blasphemy against God, to blaspheme his name, and his tabernacle, and them that dwell in heaven [Rev 13:6](#).

Yes, The Abomination of Desolation. And John has just one word for the survivors on Planet Earth from this point on, **Woe**.

But it's Jesus' framework of The Great Tribulation outlined on the Mount of Olives along with the detail Jesus directs us to by **Daniel the prophet** that best confirm the sequence of events. On the Mount of Olives Jesus confirms that things start off with 1) the **persecution** of Jews by Jews, 2) the 'rise' of **false Christs, and prophets**, 3) **wars**, 4) **earthquakes**, 5) **famine**, 6) **pestilences**, and 7) **fearful sights and great signs... from heaven**, and that all this is just **the beginning of sorrows** ([Mat 24:3-10, 24](#); [Luke 21:9-12](#)). And by-the way, we now have more than a beginning idea of what the **fearful sights and great signs... from heaven** will be, and that it doesn't really involve 'mushroom clouds' and nuclear radiation or any other kind of manmade WMD.

Next Jesus makes it clear that after **the beginning of sorrows** and at the time of the **abomination of desolation** when **Jerusalem is compassed with armies**, this is when the worst of the **great tribulation** begins—**the days of vengeance**. And Matthew records, as does Mark, where Jesus gives the point in time when things really start to get bad, explaining that after...

...the abomination of desolation, spoken of by Daniel the prophet... Then let them which be in Judaea flee into the mountains... For then shall be great tribulation, such as was not since the beginning of the world to this time, no, nor ever shall be ([Mat 24:15, 21](#)).

Now Luke covers details on the Mount of Olives that Matthew and Mark miss, while by the same selective inspiration of God they cover details Luke does not. Remember, **here a little, and there a little** is not by accident. It's God's stated and too-little-used **instruction** for us to **understand** His **knowledge** and **doctrine**. A couple of important details only Luke records are when Jesus says,

...when ye shall see Jerusalem compassed with armies, then know that the desolation thereof is nigh. Then let them which are in Judaea flee to the mountains... For these be the days of vengeance, that all things which are written may be fulfilled... for there shall be great distress in the land, and wrath upon this people [Luke 21:20-23](#).

So The Abomination of Desolation is not just happenstance. There is a lot of preparation on the Antichrist's part involved. And much more than meets the eye. It really takes him half The Great Tribulation to get ready. We will see the details of the preparation for this central event as explained **by Daniel the prophet** in [SECTION 7](#). And once he is prepared and has Jerusalem **compassed with armies**, he will enter the future temple, **cause the sacrifice and the oblation** [or offerings] **to cease**, and being newly resurrected from the dead, **he as God sitteth in the temple of God, shewing himself that he is God [2Thes 2:4](#)**. And through this **overspreading of abominations he shall make...** [The Jerusalem Temple] **desolate, even until the consummation** [or until **Armageddon** 3 ½ years later], **and** [at **Armageddon**] **that determined shall be poured upon the desolate**--who are the rebellious survivors and the fallen angels including Satan, the Antichrist, and the False Prophet (see [Dan 9:27](#)) . So I'd say that the word for these **days of vengeance** would be **abomination**.

And it appears that The Days of Vengeance get progressively worse too. Apparently the **sores** everyone gets in The 1st Plague Judgment don't go away and are added to by worse pains in later judgments. And John specifically describes how it gets worse for **believers** at this time. The escalation for them is 'voiced' from somewhere in Heaven when John is told to,

Write, Blessed are the dead which die in the Lord from henceforth [Rev 14:13](#).

This must be referring partly to **saints** who refuse the 'threefold absolute proclamation' to **worship the beast**, and **his image**, and to 'receive' **the mark of his name**. And the result of this is that they become martyrs, as anticipated in The 5th Seal. But we can truly be thankful about them because it means that they get their resolve to accept death by receiving the **promise** of **rest** and **eternal redemption** as their **reward** amidst all this chaos. And they are also **Blessed** because in death they escape the remaining torment of The Days of Vengeance. And we will also see that some of God's **saints** are **Blessed** because God will kill them Himself by His Own judgments to mercifully spare them from 'worse exits'. And some Gentiles and Jews will die **in Christ** before the end of The Beginning of Sorrows and will therefore not be tempted by the Antichrist's 'threefold absolute proclamation' because this **worship** of the Antichrist doesn't become absolutely mandatory until The Days of Vengeance as we will see. But all of God's **chosen** Jews who are still unconverted, and whether dead or alive, will find themselves one way or another alive in Israel at the middle of The Great Tribulation to make their ultimate choice amidst unimaginable chaos. And everyone who is saved and somehow survives the

entire Great Tribulation will eventually be **Blessed**, but to do so they will have to **endure** The Plague Judgments of The Days of Vengeance which **in them are filled up the wrath of God** [Rev 15:1](#); [16:1](#), and also **endure** Satan's **great wrath** that is directed in an 'all out' **war** with...

...the woman [or the Israeli Jews and]... **with the remnant of her seed** [the 'nation-dwelling' Jews and Gentiles], **which keep the commandments of God, and have the testimony of Jesus Christ** [Rev 12:12,17](#).

And I expect that the rewards for **enduring** under both God and Satan's overflowing and great **wrath**—because you **fear** and **love** God—will be 'out of this World'. Easily 'shook up'? Those who believe Jesus can save them from their sins in The Great Tribulation must also believe Him when He says,

...fear not them which kill the body, but are not able to kill the soul: but rather fear him which is able to destroy both soul and body in hell [Mat 10:28](#).

So even with all the mass torment and slaughter, the word for **saints** who die in The Days of Vengeance is **Blessed**.

Again, we will **prove** that the forced worldwide **worship** of **the beast** and **his image**, and the requirement to 'receive' **the mark of the beast** starts in the second half of The Great Tribulation, in The Days of Vengeance, though some will likely voluntarily surrender to **the Beast** in the first half, and others possibly even before The Rapture of the Church during this present Church Age. And the word for these souls that submit to any part of this **worship** is **torment... for ever and ever**.

And there are several powerful deceptions of Satan already in play that will be very effective in 'deceiving' **the whole world** [Rev 12:9](#). This means that most won't know what's really going on in The Great Tribulation. And I expect the most effective cause of all this deception is the Theory of Evolution, along with its accompanying false philosophies. And ultimately, we must come to some **understanding** of how powerfully deceptive the **lying wonders** based on such universally accepted deceptions can be. And these and other deceptions will be so effective that **the whole world** won't even believe three angels 'in concert' in the sky 'singing out the truth' of what's really going on. One of these angels is seen,

...having the everlasting gospel to preach unto them that dwell on the earth, and to every nation, and kindred, and tongue, and people, Saying with a loud voice, Fear God, and give glory to him; for the hour of his judgment is come: and worship him that made heaven, and earth, and the sea, and the fountains of waters [Rev 14:6-7](#).

And this is more **proof** that God is still **not willing that any should perish**, even in The Days of Vengeance. But unfortunately, it better illustrates just how effective the deception will be by the fact that so **'few'** will respond. And there are still two more Herald Angels following. A second angel

proclaims the coming ruin of the False Prophet and his kingdom. Then **the third angel...**

...followed them [in the sky], **saying with a loud voice, If any man worship the beast and his image, and receive his mark in his forehead, or in his hand, The same shall drink of the wine of the wrath of God, which is poured out without mixture into the cup of his indignation; and he shall be tormented with fire and brimstone in the presence of the holy angels, and in the presence of the Lamb: And the smoke of their torment ascendeth up for ever and ever: and they have no rest day nor night, who worship the beast and his image, and whosoever receiveth the mark of his name. Here is the patience of the saints: here are they that keep the commandments of God, and the faith of Jesus...** [Rev 14:9-12](#).

We will discuss all this further in [SECTION 8](#). But with it all spelled out so clearly—repent and refuse the Antichrist's agenda or burn **for ever and ever**—it seems a wonder from this side of The Great Tribulation that anyone is lost. That's if you don't already see how effective some of Satan's deceptions have already become. Still I'm expecting that **the whole world** hasn't seen anything yet. Because in addition to these popularly accepted deceptions already at work, we'll expose, deduce, and speculate on other upcoming deceptions too, some directly **prophesied** and some coming from more 'meaty' deductions we can put together, mostly in [SECTION 7](#). And these deceptions tend to 'pop up' pretty much everywhere. Somehow Satan successfully **deceiveth the whole world**, which is another general way **scripture** reveals that **few** will **find** the **truth**.

We will also **study** other conditions and events that mark the beginning of the second half of The Great Tribulation in the next couple of sections. And we'll do this while focusing on all the midterm raptures which involve those who respond properly to God's **wrath**. This naturally implies, however, that survivors beyond the midpoint who have not yet responded to God through Jesus must need even greater 'encouragement'. And I mean that some of them will just not have been 'shaken' hard enough yet. The word that applies to what they need is escalation.

Still, some events imply 'an amazing moderation of intensity'. It should be recognized that God exercises incredible 'restraint' throughout The Great Tribulation. Not that anything is hard for God, but it would be much easier for Him to outright destroy the Earth all at once. So The Great Tribulation should not be seen as a case of 'overkill', but as one of unbelievable 'finesse'. It should be seen that He is not only 'meting out incredible destruction', but also controlling it at the same time in order to open the eyes of the formerly **blind**. And we can find many examples of 'precautions' taken by God that are necessary for the survival of those who would otherwise perish. In The 3rd Seal Judgment, for example, Jesus must be intending to cushion the blow when He instructs the administering angel to **hurt not the oil and the wine** [Rev 6:6](#). Another example of restraint is seen when He denies the **cries** to **avenge** the martyrs **under the altar**, and another when He holds back the four angels given to **hurt the earth and the sea** till the appointed times.

Even the specified large death tolls are at the same time a planned limiting of His **severity**. See [Romans 11:22](#). So God's 'merciful restraint' is at least as important a theme as His 'unleashed vengeance'.

On the Mount of Olives Jesus also acknowledges this restraint when He recommends to the Jews to petition God for help. This is when He advises them at the time of their escape **to the mountains** to **pray** that their **flight be not in the winter, neither on the sabbath day** [Mat 24:20](#). And referring to the second half of The Great Tribulation, Jesus reveals God's overall 'restraint', saying,

...except those days should be shortened, there should no flesh be saved: but for the elect's sake those days shall be shortened [Mat 24:22](#).

And remember that this probably refers to The 4th Trumpet Judgment because this is when **days** are **shortened** by one third. And remember this occurs in The Beginning of Sorrows, though Jesus is referring to The Days of Vengeance. So this condition where the days and nights are **shortened** must continue throughout The Days of Vengeance. And Jesus must be implying that this will be crucial for survival during The Plague Judgments. One of the more obvious applications of this would be the **shortened** 'scorching hot days' of The 4th Plague Judgment. But remember that this 'saving effect' really only applies to The Days of Vengeance, and this may imply that The 4th Trumpet Judgment itself causes more of an 'annihilating effect'. Again, God could shorten the days gently or very gently. Too abruptly and everyone dies. My guess is that the transition from longer to shorter days in The 4th Trumpet Judgment will be quite destructive and deadly, but that the resulting shorter days will be a lifesaver. And this is not a wild guess. It's based on an **understanding** of past judgments of God like in the Exodus or in Joshua's day of battle when "the sun stood still, and the moon stopped". And such events have been accompanied by 'rains' of **fire, brimstone**, and/or **blood** from the sky. And these past events are in many ways similar to the future ones described by Isaiah, Ezekiel, and John. But Isaiah doesn't mention the **fire, brimstone**, and/or **blood** like John and Ezekiel do, but he does mention the 'orbital wobble' and the 'targeting' **windows** in the sky that help produce this coming 'rain of destruction'—the cause of it all being God using His Creation. Again, God is the 'MVP' in this 'ball game'.

So let's take a closer look at this 'ball game' by taking a closer look at a **prophecy** of Isaiah's that talks about this same 'cataclysmic effect' that Jesus and John do. The events described in Isaiah 24 are said to occur...

...when the LORD of hosts shall reign in mount Zion, and in Jerusalem, and before his ancients gloriously [Isa 24:23](#).

And it's in The 7th Trumpet Judgment, the last brief judgment just before the midterm **abomination of desolation** event, that John records,

The kingdoms of this world are become the kingdoms of our Lord, and of his Christ; and he shall reign for ever and ever [Rev 11:15](#).

Yes, the World 'officially' becomes God's just before The Abomination of Desolation. This may be little known but it's nonetheless indisputable **truth**. And we will **prove** this to be absolutely **true** in the next couple of sections. Of course, Jesus will not come down from Heaven until **Armageddon** about 7 Plague Judgments, or 3 ½ years later. So though the Earth including Jerusalem will **become** God's at the midpoint of The Great Tribulation, it will be 'on loan' to Satan and the Antichrist for the 42 months of The Days of Vengeance. And according to John, the completion of the establishment of this eternal **reign in mount Zion, and in Jerusalem** is after **Armageddon**, and after...

...the beast... and with him the false prophet... were cast alive into a lake of fire [Rev 19:20](#).

This is also when Satan is...

...bound... [by an angel of God who] **cast him into the bottomless pit, and shut him up... the thousand years** [Rev 20:2-3](#).

Isaiah is also speaking about these events when he refers to when...

...the LORD shall punish the host of the high ones that are on high [Satan and his angels], **and the kings of the earth upon the earth** [including the Antichrist and his 10 kings and kingdoms]. **And they shall be gathered together, as prisoners are gathered in the pit, and shall be shut up in the prison, and after many days** [or 1000 years] **shall they be visited** [Isa 24:21-22](#).

So according to Isaiah and John, Satan and **the host of the high ones** are **visited** in **the pit** after **the thousand years should be fulfilled: and after that... must be loosed** ['out of the bottomless pit'] **a little season** to cause trouble at the end of The Millennium ([Rev 20:3](#)). However the **kings of the earth upon the earth** and all other rebellious mortals who die must instead wait **in hell** and will only get **visited** to be brought to The Great White Throne Judgment shortly thereafter.

And both Isaiah and John mark the time that Jesus occupies His eternal kingdom on Earth. It's near the time of the final punishment of the Antichrist and the False Prophet in the **lake of fire** at the end of The Great Tribulation and at the beginning of **the thousand years**. And this must be the main reason why The Great Tribulation—as opposed to The Millennium—is called **the time of the end**, because this is when the **kingdoms of this world are become the kingdoms of our Lord, and of his Christ; and he shall reign for ever and ever**. But unfortunately, Satan and his angels and probably other of God's 'evil creatures' are to be heard from again after **the thousand years**. This revolt of Satan's at the end of The Millennium is popularly called The Last Rebellion. And this revolt must be just before The Harvest at the End of the World Rapture. This is apparently a 'split rapture' taking some to their **eternal judgment** at The Great White Throne Judgment

while taking others to their **eternal redemption** in what I call The Second Resurrection. Jesus describes the rapture that occurs at **the end of this world** in [Matthew 13:36-43](#), and these are all topics we will cover in [SECTION 11](#).

Having connected John's and Isaiah's **prophecies**, there are other connections between them we are now ready to see. According to Isaiah, the general situation on Earth during The Great Tribulation—the time of transition from Satan being 'on the loose' to becoming **bound**—is as follows:

Behold, the LORD maketh the earth empty, and maketh it waste, and turneth it upside down, and scattereth abroad the inhabitants thereof. And it shall be, as with the people, so with the priest; as with the servant, so with his master; as with the maid, so with her mistress; as with the buyer, so with the seller; as with the lender, so with the borrower; as with the taker of usury [“bankers” or “creditors”], so with the giver of usury to him [“debtors”]. The land shall be utterly emptied, and utterly spoiled: for the LORD hath spoken this word. The earth mourneth and fadeth away, the world languisheth and fadeth away, the haughty people of the earth do languish. The earth also is defiled under the inhabitants thereof; because they have transgressed the laws, changed the ordinance, broken the everlasting covenant. Therefore hath the curse devoured the earth, and they that dwell therein are desolate... [Isa 24:1-6](#)

And Isaiah sums up this general fate imposed by God on Earth saying, ***Fear, and the pit, and the snare, are upon thee, O inhabitant of the earth*** [Isa 24:17](#).

The first clues given by Isaiah of what this 'transition time' will be like involves descriptions of what is happening to the Earth as a whole. Specifically, it's when ***the LORD maketh the earth empty, and maketh it waste, and turneth it upside down, and scattereth abroad the inhabitants thereof... [Isa 24:1](#)*** And you could assume the part about when He ***turneth it upside down*** is a metaphor, but it would be the only metaphor within this list of literal happenings, so it is more likely literal too. Yes, the Earth evidently literally 'flips over'. And this should 'knock down' more than a few walls and even mountains, not to mention at some point affect the spin-rate of the globe itself.

But if you follow popular 'scientific thought', please **understand** I am not implying that this is simply the result of Earth's theorized 'regular cycle' of the reversal of its magnetic field. No, this cannot be the result of the Earth's magnetic field alone, but must instead involve the interaction of the magnetic and gravitational fields and the momentums of two planets, one of which is Earth, and the other a planet like Mars, with these two reacting to each other in close proximity. This is what The Bible implies, and this is backed up by the historical record. And it's plausible, as long as you **understand** that with God, all things are plausible.

But some scientists presently believe from clues from present day physical phenomena that the Earth 'flips over regularly' because of natural changes in its magnetic field. A newer study aided by a super-computer-generated

model I saw on the **Science Channel** shows that the Earth naturally shifts its north and south poles 'routinely'. And such occurrences are expected in a process that maintains the Earth's magnetic field. And our magnetic field is essential to life because it repels some of the Sun's harmful radiation that left unrepelled would eventually kill us all, not to mention that it shields our atmosphere from being slowly 'blown away'. Now I'm not what most would consider an expert on this subject. But this is what is reported in various science media outlets. And the fact is that popular science points to apparently clear evidence that the Earth has 'flipped' repeatedly in the past. And I think it has too. But we will examine how this same physical evidence in view of some related but unpopular ancient history, along with the equally poorly received Biblical record, shows instead that this is all really evidence for God's 'routine use' of 'momentum-controlled planetary field collisions'. And of course, no one could 'routinely' control 'worlds in collision' except God. But please allow me to **continue**.

The next clues in Isaiah's **prophecy** include 'phenomena' where **the windows from on high are open, and the foundations of the earth do shake** [Isa 24:18](#), which also imply these same 'multiple field and momentum interactions'. And I expect that such **great** earthquakes, the kind that will 'shake the Earth to its core', will require the combined forces of two planets 'stretched' by their close proximity to each other. But what does it mean that **the windows from on high are open**? In The Flood, **the windows of heaven were opened** too, becoming a major 'spigot' of that deluge ([Gen 7:11](#)). Water came down out of the sky then. But in The Great Tribulation I anticipate—like in The Plagues of Egypt and on Joshua's Day in the Sun—that **fire, brimstone, and blood** will come through these **open** heavenly **windows**. And what are these **windows**? I'm guessing they are the same kind of 'windows' that produce the North and South Pole auroras. Today, these auroras provide evidence of one way these **windows... from on high** can work. These magnetic pole **windows** 'catch' solar radiation and 'funnel it' into our atmosphere. The result among other things is a nifty 'light show'. In The Flood they were probably enormous 'waterfalls' from the sky. And we'll talk about where this water comes from in [The Ages of Creation study](#). But these **windows** would not necessarily be stationary with another magnetized planet involved. This is because it's also popularly believed that the naturally circulating magma flow within the Earth—moving much like the water in our oceans—produces our electromagnetic field. So the pole positions would only stay fixed if the magma flow within the Earth also remained unshifting under the Earth's crust. But if another planet's magnetic field and gravity came along and influenced ours, it could conceivably rotate the magma within the Earth's crust and thereby move the poles over the surface of the planet. So I'm expecting in The Great Tribulation, as it has apparently happened in the past, that cataclysmic judgments will be dispensed by 'gently' floating magnetic poles over God's desired 'targets'. This 'rain of destruction' will again be 'siphoned' to Earth from the 'stirred up' atmosphere of a very nearby 'red planet'. And this 'rain' will again be composed of rocks that are sometimes on fire and sometimes mixed with what appears to be blood. But I would expect such debris would find other entrances into our atmosphere too. It's just that God will evidently do some 'heavy-duty targeting' with His **windows... from on high**. And even Einstein couldn't imagine all this

without a mature Biblical perspective. But please let me **continue** a little further.

Next we see in Isaiah records,

The earth is utterly broken down, the earth is clean dissolved, the earth is moved exceedingly. The earth shall reel to and fro like a drunkard, and shall be removed like a cottage... [Isa 24:19](#).

Yes, this fits this awesomely providential 'game plan' too. You have to accept the fact that God is reported to be an awesome God who at the same time is able to give us a concept of just how awesome He is. Here, the view of the Earth is that it's literally 'wobbling' in space. And remember that the last sign Jesus identifies happening during ***the beginning of sorrows*** is that there will be ***great signs... from heaven***. This must include the effects and view we have of that other planet when it's very close to the Earth. Later in the same passage and in ***days of vengeance***, Jesus adds,

And there shall be signs in the sun, and in the moon, and in the stars; and upon the earth distress of nations, with perplexity; the sea and the waves roaring [Luke 21:11, 21-22](#).

What are these ***signs in the sun, and in the moon, and in the stars*** He's talking about? And why are ***the sea and the waves roaring***? I see them as ***signs*** of...

Jesus Christ the same yesterday, and to day, and for ever [Heb 13:8](#).

And what I mean by that is that He will use the same means to save his people and destroy his enemies as He has used repeatedly in the past such as in The Exodus from Egypt, and as in Joshua's Day in the Sun. I've already suggested in this section that no one is in The Lord's 'league'. And I propose that this 'wobbling and shaking' of the Earth in its orbit are the result of the supernatural use of two planets that maintain for a time a somewhat stable balance between their gravitational and magnetic attractions, their magnetic repulsion, and their momentums. And this, by-the-way, is 'light-years' beyond the perspective of purely 'accidental' consequences of the natural laws proposed by the late Immanuel Velikovsky, if you recognize his ideas here. Though it's his ideas that helped me recognize God's repeatedly used 'game plan' that I introduce here. The exact dynamics, with two planet-sized ball magnets 'balanced' in a 'dance of motion' is difficult to imagine. But Velikovsky helps with history, however unwittingly, to show that this is what God has done in the past. And I say that God's character and His Word dictate that He will again use this kind of 'administration of planets' for even more awesome ***great signs... from heaven*** in The Great Tribulation. And He will accomplish this with mindboggling restraint, balance, finesse, and control, because this is His plan of 'salvation by wrath' for those ***which keep the commandments of God, and have the testimony of Jesus Christ***, and much like it was for The Jews at the time of The Exodus.

And you may now realize why I haven't described any kind of nuclear war

as yet. It's because I don't see any of any serious consequence in any **scripture** of end times **prophecy**. There may be a nuclear bomb or two 'go off' in the early wars of The Beginning of Sorrows, or not. But such an occurrence is not specifically mentioned nor even necessarily implied. One place people see a nuclear explosion is in The 6th Seal Judgment. I don't. They see it because John describes here that the **heaven departed as a scroll when it is rolled together**. A nuclear explosion can do this but it isn't all that's described there. We also see an incredibly **great earthquake** where **the stars of heaven fell unto the earth... and every mountain and island were moved out of their places** [Rev 6:12-14](#). If this is caused by a nuclear explosion then no one will survive it. And I don't think man could do this with any kind of WMD. But God with two planets has, and could again, and all without irradiating the Earth well into The Millennium.

And there's really only one more popular place in **scripture** I know of where people understandably see a nuclear explosion, but we'll save that one for later. For now I do see, for example, how the Greeks immortalized in myth the 'highly charged' battle in the sky of Zeus and the serpent Typhon, which was really a view from Greece of the 'struggle' between Venus and Earth. More specifically, this was an 'out-of-this-world' spectacle of electrical discharge and smoke created in the 'clash' of two planet's atmospheres at the time of The Exodus. And we can begin to **understand** from all this why virtually all ancient cultures worshipped Venus and Mars. This is Immanuel Velikovsky's contribution. He deserves the credit for bringing this perspective of history to our attention. But as these ideas 'clash' with your average PhD's perspective of things, it's more likely that you haven't ever even heard of him. Be patient, we'll talk much more along the way about all of this too.

But we can now begin to **understand** in The 1st Trumpet Judgment when the...

...first angel sounded, and there followed hail and fire mingled with blood, and they were cast upon the earth: and the third part of trees was burnt up, and all green grass was burnt up [Rev 8:7](#).

This must be the result of God's 'targeting windows' of judgments, including probably other 'encroachments' on the Earth, all supplied by a very nearby Mars-like planet. We can also start to **understand** The 3rd Trumpet Judgment's...

...great mountain burning with fire [that] was cast into the sea: and the third part of the sea became blood [Rev 8:8](#).

This mountain-sized meteor does not destroy the Earth because it's not striking the planet at the incredible speeds most meteors travel at, because it's instead just 'falling off' a planet that is being 'shaken to pieces' while 'orbiting' the Earth. In this way it would land at a relatively low speed and thereby, though really 'stirring up' the oceans and sinking a bunch of ships, mostly just 'poison' the sea while turning the water 'red'. By-the-way, red iron oxide (rust) as found on the surface of Mars would turn water red. And this future event in The Great Tribulation must be the result of God 'throwing'

another red planet at us, if not again Mars. In fact I would guess that it was during the Creation that, like clockwork, God set in motion everything needed to make all His judgment arrive perfectly on time as He has **foreordained**. This 'preordination' must also include the 'planetary field interactions' and 'targeting' by God throughout The Great Tribulation that must continue until the final **great earthquake** and **great hail** of *stones* of The 7th Plague Judgment. And from descriptions of suchlike past events throughout The Bible, and some history 'dug up' by Velikovsky, we can start to see how God actually shows us just how awesomely powerful yet amazingly restrained He can be, and will be.

But let's 'zoom out' a little further. These more or less synchronized events described by Isaiah, Jesus, and John offer two perspectives. They offer us views focused down on Earth, and others focused up in the sky. And it takes both views to get the 'bigger picture'. What is this 'bigger picture'? That a Mars-like planet will again somehow be caught and held extremely close to the Earth. And I mean that the Earth and this 'caught' planet will be held together by gravity and magnetic forces in a controlled motion that is given to each of them by God's unrivaled 'throwing arm'. This will result in 'a whole lot of shakin' going on'. It will also result in God's 'targeting system' and various other 'atmospheric interactions' that together will deliver a variety of 'ordinance' to Earth in the form of cold or hot solid 'projectiles', or liquid or gaseous 'inundations', including probably 'chemical weapons', and possibly even 'biological weapons' that, for example, may cause the **pestilences** of The 4th Seal Judgment.

Of course I can't tell for sure whether God simply stresses and weakens immune systems and thereby activates some of the potential pandemics already among us, or if He actually incubates and delivers His own, or both. I tend to think that just the stress of The Great Tribulation alone would be sufficient to cause pandemics. And Dr. Luke records something about this that Jesus' reveals in His **end of the world** discourse on the Mount of Olives about The Days of Vengeance. Jesus says that the World at that time will see...

...Men's hearts failing them for fear, and for looking after those things which are coming on the earth: for the powers of heaven shall be shaken [Luke 21:26](#).

Isaiah's record also predicts **every man's heart shall melt [Isa 13:7](#)**, a record Jesus is probably referring to. And if **Men's hearts** are **failing them for fear** in The Days of Vengeance, I expect there will be some severely over-stressed immune systems in The Beginning of Sorrows too. But I also expect that along the way some relief will be provided too, like when the **days** are **shortened**.

And if you don't think God can do all this, your God is smaller than mine—unless you think that just 'snapping His fingers' to get all this done would make Him bigger. And surely He could do it with just a 'snap of His fingers', but this is where you should start to see that He's trying to show us the biggest God we can possibly **understand**, and that He can't really show us how big He really is. Then again, you may be having some trouble imagining these astonishing events and need some closer examination, which will not

really take place in this **study**. I'm afraid you'll have to accept any comments or evidence I offer in this overview of **prophecy**, including here, as just an introduction for consideration. A more complete **proof** will come, God-willing, in *The Ages of Creation study*. But we will interact some more with these 'heavenly bodies of knowledge' along the way in this **study** too. And somewhere along the way you should begin to **understand** God's awesome 'driving forces' for 'cataclysmic judgment' and 'miraculous deliverance' in The Great Tribulation, and how He does it all with 'mind-boggling restraint'.

And whatever happens, God's moderation will save some **flesh**, because we will see that representatives of many nations will survive, and others will be restored to life, to live on Earth beyond The Great Tribulation. But however you choose to **understand** these awesome displays of God's **power, glory, and majesty**, if at all, you should at least **understand** that it would be better if you did not hang around to witness them first hand. Still, the conclusion for Church Age Christians in all the **seven churches** is the same as the conclusion for Tribulation Christians surviving halfway through The Great Tribulation. John records seven times for all the Church Age Christians that, **He that hath an ear, let him hear...** [Rev 2-3](#), and later for Tribulation Christians that, **If any man have an ear, let him hear** [Rev 13:9](#). And paying attention in either case implies a course of action where sin is **diligently** avoided. And that if you find yourself in The Great Tribulation you must not only repent of all your ongoing sins, but you must also be ready to suffer anything when the price of escape would cost you your eternal soul, whether it be torture, or any form of persecution, or hardship, and all to **the death** if necessary.

But what you may never suffer is the taking of **the mark** of the Antichrist, or worshipping the Antichrist, or worshipping the Image of the Antichrist. Because unless you resist to **the death** any form of **worship** of the Antichrist, you will not be saved from eternity in The Lake of Fire. And apparently, by whatever means you try to defend yourself, by that same means you must **die**. In other words, Christians are best off 'defenseless' in The Great Tribulation. John gives us a general statement about how all this works, saying,

And they [Christians] **overcame him** [the Antichrist] **by the blood of the Lamb, and by the word of their testimony; and they loved not their lives unto the death...** **He that leadeth into captivity shall go into captivity: he that killeth with the sword must be killed with the sword. Here is the patience and the faith of the saints...** **here are they that keep the commandments of God, and the faith of Jesus** [Rev 12:11](#); [13:10](#); [14:12](#).

Again, **If any man have an ear, let him hear**. And the occasional repetition of these things to those who already **know** them is no waste of time either.

In conclusion, The Great Tribulation is a story of escalating cataclysmic cosmic judgments controlled by God. And it is upheld throughout this overview that the period of The Days of Vengeance—as Jesus and Daniel

specifically indicate—will be the worst time ever. And 'right off the bat' in Revelation John depicts the horrified response of those so unfortunate to be left alive and unrepentant—or just marked by the Antichrist—when Jesus returns at the end of it all. John writes,

Behold, he [Jesus] cometh with clouds; and every eye shall see him, and they also which pierced him: and all kindreds of the earth shall wail because of him. Even so, Amen [Rev 1:7](#).

But we also discussed the end of **grace** and the beginning of **wrath** which marks the start of The Great Tribulation. And there are clear indications that The Beginning of Sorrows is in some ways worse than The Days of Vengeance. And the overall extreme severity of the entire Great Tribulation is indicated in a question of John's near the end of the first round of judgments from Heaven. He tells us,

For the great day of his wrath is come; and who shall be able to stand? [Rev 6:17](#).

The obvious answer to this rhetorical question is, generally speaking, 'no one', with precious **few** exceptions.

This 'big picture' of escalating cataclysm is mostly told by John in The Book of Revelation, but we also rely on Jesus, Paul, Peter, Isaiah, Daniel, Ezekiel, and other **prophets** of God for their 'eschatological contributions' in order to get 'the whole picture' presented in this **study**. And the whole is greater than the sum of these individual contributions, because putting them together **precept upon precept** leads to deduced precepts not visible in any individual verse or passage of **scripture**. We have come across some of these 'transcendent precepts' already, like the fact that The Great Tribulation is literally seven years in duration. The actual duration of The Great Tribulation cannot be found with any one verse or passage of **scripture**; it takes several of them and from all over The Bible to **prove** this. This is the way, according to Isaiah and acknowledged by Paul, to **learn** 'meaty' **knowledge** and **understand** 'meaty' **doctrine**. And Isaiah's admonition for failing to process **scripture** in this way is similar to his declaration of the fate of those stuck in The Great Tribulation. If you 'mishandle' **scripture**, he promises you will **fall backward, and be broken, and snared, and taken [Isa 28:13](#)**. And if you end up in The Great Tribulation, **Fear, and the pit, and the snare, are upon thee, O inhabitant of the earth [Isa 24:17](#)**.

Or from another angle, is it puzzling to you that Paul teaches already saved Christians, let's say possibly such as yourself, to **work out your own salvation with fear and trembling [Phil 2:12](#)**? Or maybe you already **know** what's so scary about trying to stay saved? Whether you **understand** the basis of this **fear and trembling** or not, you should be scared—and I mean as Paul means you should be. And you should at least **understand** that Paul means that there are 'forces' and 'false doctrines' out there that you are ignorant of that are out to get you and me. But you can also **understand** that Jesus, Peter, Paul, and Isaiah **promise** that **if ye continue** in The Word of God, you have a guarantee that you are **safe**. But if you don't, a guarantee that you're **in danger** is just as sure. So however you do, please

continue. Peter warns if you don't you are **blind, and cannot see afar off** and may **fall** [2 Pet 1:1-11](#). Or you could easily end up in The Great Tribulation. And your odds won't be too good there either.

Peter also hopes for that day when you will **experience** the **revelation** of the...

...more sure word of prophecy... [and see] **the day dawn, and the day star arise in your hearts** [2 Pet 1:19](#).

But this only comes by **study** of the **more sure word of prophecy**. And this only happens **precept upon precept... line upon line... here a little, and there a little**. And if you really want to see the 'big picture' of what you should be afraid of, **continue** in this **study**. But we'll also see the 'abundant entrance' **into the everlasting kingdom of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ** that those who **continue** can expect too.

Before we go on with the midterm raptures, let's do a couple more short overviews. But the first time through them I'm afraid they'll probably only show you how much you have to **learn**.

Oversimplified Summary of The Book of Revelation

Rev 1	Heb 10:20	Rev 15-16	Rev 19
Rev 2-3	Rev 4-5	Rev 13	Rev 20
Rev 2:7,11,17, 29	Rev 6-11	Rev 17-18	Rev 21-22
Rev 3:6,13,22	Rev 12-14	Rev 16:16	

Revelation can be divided into three parts: past, present and future. It can also be divided into four or five parts: The Church Age (presently occurring), The Beginning of Sorrows and The Days of Vengeance of The Great Tribulation (coming soon), The Millennial Age (starting 7 years later), and The Eternal Age (starting 1,000 years after that). In the three-part 'past, present and future' perspective we find that the beginning of Revelation showcases the results of the most significant event in Earth's history which is John's vision of Jesus glorified, having already died for the sins of the World, and already magnificently resurrected in resplendent majesty [Rev 1](#). This is past.

Next Jesus praises and admonishes the present seven representative Christian Churches. This is a summation of Jesus' evaluation of the present Church Age seen through the works of **the churches** of Jesus Christ [Rev 2-3](#). I believe that this 'summation' is more prophetic than retrospective because, though it's surely an accurate description of the existing **churches** at the time of John's writing late in The 1st Century, these **churches** must also be the 'foretold types', the 'progenitive models' if you will, that all future Gentile churches can be described by and are descended from, even to today, and to the day these **churches** are redeemed at the end of this age. This must be

the case or we have to conclude that God only evaluates the Churches of John's day, telling us nothing about ours, though follows with lots of detail about what will happen after our time too. Not likely. And don't you think that any of these admonitions and judgments, encouragements and rewards still apply? Remember, The Lord admonishes each of **the seven churches**, saying,

He that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith unto the churches ([Rev 2:7,11,17,29](#); [3:6,13,22](#))

So He is plainly addressing all **the churches** in John's time. But what makes New Testament **scripture** part of what Paul calls **a new and living way** [Heb 10:20](#) is that this admonition and encouragement must be meaningful to the whole Church Age. and all **churches**, and all Christians no matter when or where throughout the age. The Lord has given us here a **living** composite statement that applies across **the seven churches** and throughout the age. I see this message as like the facets of a diamond called 'The Church' where any particular 'brilliance' or 'flaw' described in it may or may not apply to any particular Christian, but nonetheless universally applies to all **the churches** and selectively to individual Christians. And these applications are presently still ongoing.

However, I would admit that there might be something to that 'Ages of the Church' theory too—where each of **the seven churches** represent the 'overall tone' of different periods of The Church Age. But if this theory applies it must work together with its universal application—like would have to be the case at the time John writes Revelation. I hope to one day share my **meditations** on suchlike topics beyond this **study**, including on the present Protestant **churches** and on Catholics too, God willing.

The final section of The Book of Revelation is by far the largest and is all still in the future. It will be easier summarized in 'chunks'.

It begins with The Rapture of the Church (shown through John's experience) which ends The Church Age, and with the heavenly ceremony that celebrates The Rapture of the Church and also Jesus' right to open The Seal Judgments that begin The Great Tribulation [Rev 4-5](#);

...followed by The Beginning of Sorrows, that contains four more raptures including, in the middle of it, The Rapture of the Tribulation Gentiles to Heaven, and near the end of it, The Raptures of the 144,000 Jews to Heaven (described in later chapters), and of the Two Witnesses to Heaven, and of the Dead Jews to Israel (not described in Revelation but placed by events), these raptures interspersed between 14 increasingly horrifying Seal and Trumpet Judgments individually described, the first being the rise to power of the Antichrist and his Kingdom, opposed by the ministry of God's **two witnesses** who are **two prophets** given power by God, both campaigns more or less tormenting the Earth throughout The Beginning of Sorrows until these Two Witnesses are killed by the Antichrist and raptured by God to Heaven [Rev 6-11](#);

...and the Antichrist is able to kill the Two Witnesses because, having been assassinated, he is then 'resurrected' from the dead and empowered by Satan to do so, then to enter The Temple in Jerusalem committing The Abomination of Desolation having gained worldwide support and authority by his 'resurrection' and by killing the Two Witnesses, and then to continue on to an unprecedented rampage against **the saints** throughout the following 42 months, but especially at the start of these Days of Vengeance [Rev 11-13](#);

...and these events are overlapped by other midterm and second half events from various perspectives including from the points of view of Satan and the Jews (Ch.12), from Satan, the Antichrist, and the False Prophet (Ch.13), and from Heaven (Ch.14), each of these separate but overlapping accounts of The Days of Vengeance beginning with midterm events that wrap up The Beginning of Sorrows and/or initiate The Days of Vengeance including three midterm raptures previously mentioned, The Rapture of the 144,000 Jews (described in Ch.12 and 14), The Rapture of the Two Witnesses (described back in Ch.11), and The Rapture of the Dead Jews (described and placed in [Eze 37:10-14](#) and [Dan 12:1-2](#)), plus these chapters conclude with two more raptures near the end of The Great Tribulation which are The Final Harvest Rapture to Heaven, including some of the last to be redeemed, and The Rapture of Wrath to Armageddon, not a trip anyone will want to take [Rev 12-14](#);

...and all these events are overlapped by John's descriptions of the intolerable Plague Judgments of The Days of Vengeance, (which is a return to a chronological description of judgments like in The Beginning of Sorrows), which begin after his description of the last of the midtribulation raptures, The Rapture of The Tribulation Jews to Heaven, which is evidently after The Abomination of Desolation and after a great slaughter of this rapture's participants [Rev 15-16](#);

...and also overlapping all these second half events is the symbolic and literal account (or accounts) of the association of the Antichrist and his kingdom with the False Prophet and his institution, (which is a return to an overlapping description like that of the Two Witnesses), where the False Prophet's deleterious role in the second half, first being summarized in 'bestly' terms in Chapter 13, is finally identified by his institution that symbolizes as a wicked **woman** controlling the World by 'riding' the Antichrist Kingdom (read, The E.U.) until **she** is finally subordinated by the Antichrist's **ten kings**, and finally interpreted literally as an extravagant **city** symbolically called **that great city Babylon** (read, Vatican City) that is finally destroyed by God [Rev 17-18](#);

...and all this is followed by the end of The Great Tribulation including **the marriage of the Lamb** in Heaven—the eternal mutual commitment of Jesus to His **bride** and **wife**, and then **Armageddon**, which is partly 'staged' in The 6th Plague Judgment ([Rev 16:16](#)), and

partly by The Rapture of Wrath, after which the Antichrist and the False Prophet are **cast alive into a lake of fire** [Rev 19](#);

...followed by the 1,000-year rule of Jesus on Earth that begins with a rapture called **the first resurrection**, a redemption of martyrs from the grave to the Earth, at which time Satan is **bound... And cast into the bottomless pit** until The Millennium's end when he is then let go to again persuade most of the population of the World, **the number of whom is as the sand of the sea**, to join him in a 'last rebellion', and then in The Lake of Fire for eternity, after being **judged** before the **great white throne** along with everyone else who has been waiting in **hell**, and all this occurring at the end of physical Creation [Rev 20](#);

...followed by a description of **the holy city, new Jerusalem**, coming down out of the **new heaven** to the **new earth**, where **the nations of them which are saved** [who live outside the city] **shall walk in the light of it: and the kings of the earth do bring their glory and honour into it**, and inside the **city**, God The Father and His angels, Jesus and His **wife**, The Two Witnesses, The 144,000, the former Temple Servants, the former Millennial Rulers, and other immortal Jewish and Gentile **sons of God** 'live happily ever after' [Rev 21-22](#).

Again, you'll probably have to read through this summary a number of times, over time, to get it all. It's simply what John describes in Revelation. But to **prove** all this you must **understand** that Revelation is purposefully written by God like a complex puzzle that must be properly 'put together'. We're going to be doing a lot of this 'puzzle work' in the remaining sections. And we'll need the whole Word of God to do it.

Among other objectives, remember that our guiding purpose throughout

CHART of 7 Distinguishing Features of Raptures of The Great Tribulation X = CERTAIN x = UNCERTAIN BLANK = CERTAINLY NOT							
Raptures	From Grave	From Earth	Jews	Gentiles	To Earth	To Heaven	Saved
The Church	X	X	X	X		X	X
Tribulation Gentiles	X	x		X		X	X
Two Witnesses	X	X	X		X	X	X
Dead Jews	X	x	X		X		
The 144,000		X	X			X	X
Tribulation Jews	X		X			X	X
Rapture of Wrath		X	X	X	X		
Final Harvest	X	x	X	X		X	X
1st Resurrection	X		X	X	X		X

this **study** is to **continue** the process of elimination to distinguish and position all the raptures in an around The Great Tribulation. **Study** the [CHART of 7 Distinguishing Features of Raptures of The Great Tribulation](#) and the [CHART of Rapture Positions in the Main Sets of Events of The Great Tribulation \(p.82-83\)](#). These charts more or less 'plot our course' for the remainder of this **study**. The next two sections cover The Midtribulation Raptures found in Revelation. But before we get to that there is one more little overview I want to get to.

CHART of Rapture Positions in the Main Sets of Events of The Great Tribulation				
Sets of Events	The Beginning of Sorrows	Abomination of Desolation	The Days of Vengeance	Armageddon
Position				
Before	The Church	Dead Jews		Rapture of Wrath
Beginning			Tribulation Jews	
Middle	Tribulation Gentiles			
Near End	The 144,000		Final Harvest	
End	Two Witnesses			
After				1st Resurrection

Haggai's 7-year Recipe to Save by Wrath in The Great Tribulation

1) Separate out and combine as necessary the **spirits** and **bodies** of the 'saved by grace' from the mix, including combining the **spirits** and **bodies** of those 'pre-redeemed' before The Age of Grace who **spirits** waited **in prison** (or **captivity** or **Abraham's bosom**) but who are now redeemed by Jesus and wait **in paradise** and whose **bodies** still wait **in the grave**, and including combining the **spirits** and **bodies** of **the dead** Church Age Christians whose **spirits** also now wait **in paradise** and whose **bodies** are also still **in the grave**, and including **alive** Church Age Christians whose **bodies** and **spirits** will not have to be recombined to separate them out.

2) Shake the remainder with **great tribulation** including with ½ week of **the beginning of sorrows** and with ½ week of **the days of vengeance** while continually **removing** 'impurities', and while being careful to separate out and save fully 'purified' parts while not losing any 'yield' that is still in the process of purification and will **remain** to be ultimately separated out with the other 'purified' parts.

3) Continue with increasing intensity to **shake** the **earth** and **heaven** to **remove** all 'impurities' to **eternal judgment** and until only 'pure yield' remains for **eternal redemption**.

Luke 16:19-31;
Eph 4:8-10;
1 Pet 3:18;
Luke 23:43;

2 Cor 12:2-4
1 Thes 4:16-17
Mat 7:13-14
Luke 21:20-22;

Mat 24:8,21
Rev 7:14
Heb 12:25-29;
Haggai 2:6-7

1) Those already **saved** will escape The Great Tribulation. Souls who will escape it include, first, those **saved** at the beginning of The Age of Grace who after they died in **other** or previous **ages** waited in **Abraham's bosom** in **captivity** in **the lower parts of the earth** until Jesus **descended** to **preach unto the spirits in prison**, then **ascended** and **led** them to **paradise** or **the third heaven** to wait—nearly 2,000 years so far—for the rest that are to be saved in this present Church Age ([Luke 16:19-31](#); [Eph 4:8-10](#); [1 Pet 3:19](#); [Luke 23:43](#); [2 Cor 12:2-4](#)). So in **paradise** all the **spirits** of those who died in previous **ages** and were redeemed at the beginning of this age now wait with all those who die **in Christ** in this age, while everyone's bodies still wait **in the grave**. And at The Rapture of the Church all these separated **spirits** and **bodies** will be 'reunited', when...

...the [the *bodies* of the] *dead in Christ ...shall rise first* [being 'reunited' with their *spirits* in the process]: *Then we which are alive and remain shall be caught up together with them in the clouds, to meet the Lord in the air: and so shall we ever be with the Lord* [1Thes 4:16-17](#).

2) None of the **dead** whose **spirits** instead wait on the wrong side of the **great gulf** in **hell** and who will be **judged** at the end of The Millennium will **experience** The Great Tribulation either. But everyone else still alive on Earth will **experience** at least some of it. We're talking billions of people—a bigger number than all the people that have lived and died since the beginning of Creation. But this **time of trouble** is mainly the period for the **salvation... of the Jews** in Israel, though God also plans to save other Jews and Gentiles by His awesome displays of **power** and **wrath** where His longsuffering **grace** did not. Still, most of this majority of all humanity will not respond to this ultimate of 'wake-up calls' and will be forever 'discarded'. Jesus refers to the first half of this coming seven-year period as **the beginning of sorrows** [Matthew 24:8](#), and the second half as **the days of vengeance** [Luke 21:22](#) and **great tribulation** [Matthew 24:21](#), though the Apostle John refers to the first half as **great tribulation** too ([Rev 7:14](#)). This is a difference between a focus on Jews and Gentiles as we will see.

3) The Apostle Paul quotes the Prophet Haggai about The Great Tribulation explaining that God **promises**,

Yet once more I shake not the earth only, but also heaven...
[for the purpose of] **removing of those things that are shaken** [in

faith] **that those things which cannot be shaken** [in faith] **may remain** ([Heb 12:25-29](#); [Hag 2:6-7](#)).

It doesn't sound like very much fun. And the present Church Age of Grace is the 'calm' before this coming 'storm', and Jesus says we should be able to see the 'storm' coming.

Now it's highly unlikely that the version you've heard of this coming 'storm' is the same in all respects to the one I'm presenting here. I **know** this because I **know** the popular variations, and have weighed them in the balance and found them all at least in some ways wanting. I don't mean I'm not indebted to all who have sincerely tried and erred. Indeed I am. And I am determined to join their ranks as I likely too will err, just on a little bit higher level, thanks to their help. But shame and error can be avoided when you see and admit that your conclusions are still in the speculative stage. And God is **glorified** when you find **revelations** that you can call **truth**, because He has sent **the Spirit of truth** to **accomplish** this. More than this, we should all expect to be able to go on beyond this **study** if we travel this road together. So let's **continue** with this perspective of God's coming 'storm' by way of The Midtribulation Raptures, and **continue to prove** that this version is not mine, it's just a 'most corrected and improved picture' of God's plans than you've ever seen before. Call it the next stage in an eternal journey of growth, because this journey is on a road where we can forever expect God to show us new **things to come** because He **promises** He will if we **continue** in His Word.

SECTION 5 The Coming Midtribulation Raptures, Part 1:
The Tribulation Gentiles and The Two Witnesses



Above is a timeline with no new information, just a focus on the [Raptures to Heaven and Earth in The Great Tribulation \(p.85\)](#). At this point it serves the

purpose of reminding us the direction of our **study**. And my timelines may have similarities with others you have seen in the past, but nine raptures are likely more than you have ever seen indicated before. Still we should keep in mind that we are building on the past work of men of God. And that this improved timeline would not have been possible without their faithful work. However other timelines I've seen that have as much or even more detail are not just incomplete, they are also too often misleading or contain understandable errors based on 'incompletely gathered' and/or misinterpreted **scripture**. And the advantage that I have is that I have come along at the end of **the work**—the end because The Great Tribulation will reveal this timeline to be accurate relatively soon. And it's not necessary to consider me presumptuous. I just arrived late enough in time when the 'watching' **work** was relatively nearly done, when one more good **study** could pretty much bring into focus an essentially complete picture. I mean, as clear as God intended for us to see things before we all leave in The Rapture and it all starts. And all the timelines in this **study** are accurate representations derived from 'properly connected' parts of God's Word and should aid in your more complete **understanding** of end times **prophecy**. Next we're going to **continue** with the charts introduced at the end of last section. They're accurate representations of God's Word too, except of course where speculation is clearly indicated. And we'll use them now to help us get ourselves up to speed to **handle** this section.

The Nine Raptures in and around The Great Tribulation can be distinguished by 'Who, What, Why, When, and Where'

Rev 4-19
1 Thes 4

Mat 24
Mark 13

Luke 21
Luke 17

Ezek 37
Dan 12

The overviews of the Book of Revelation in the last section are to help us prepare to pinpoint its nine raptures in time. And there are many other ways to tell

CHART of 7 Distinguishing Features of Raptures of The Great Tribulation							
X = Certain X = Uncertain BLANK = Certainly Not							
Raptures	From Grave	From Earth	Jews	Gen-tiles	To Earth	To Heaven	Saved
The Church	X	X	X	X		X	X
Tribulation Gentiles	X	X		X		X	X
The 144,000		X	X			X	X
Two Witnesses	X	X	X		X	X	X
Dead Jews	X	X	X		X		
Tribulation Jews	X		X			X	X
Final Harvest	X	X	X	X		X	X
Rapture of Wrath		X	X	X	X		
1st Resurrection	X		X	X	X		X

them apart too. Some of the raptures include or are entirely resurrections of the dead, and some include or are entirely of the living. Most are straight to Heaven. But one that is not directly mentioned in Revelation, only implied, and described in [Ezekiel 37:1-14](#), and marked in time in [Daniel 12:1-2](#), is from the grave to Israel. Another is from points all over Earth to a valley in Israel, that is, to Armageddon. Still another is from the grave to Millennial Jerusalem.

In and around The Great Tribulation there are nine distinctly identifiable 'supernatural transportations' of groups of souls to and from various physical and spiritual locations. Taken individually and at first glance, it's easy—

though a mark of 'spiritual immaturity'—to mistake six of these raptures from the Book of Revelation, and one revealed by Jesus in [Matthew 24:37-42](#), as The Rapture of the Church from [1 Thessalonians 4:16-17](#). And all six of these raptures have been mistaken this way. But we can establish that only one of the nine raptures we will place in Revelation is The Rapture of the Church, because all the others, including the one described by Ezekiel and Daniel, and the one described by Jesus, can be clearly differentiated. And this is not only by the fact they take place at different times, but also by many other distinguishing features including 1) coming from the grave, and/or 2) from the Earth, 3) involving Jews, and/or 4) Gentiles, 5) going to Earth, or 6) to Heaven, and 7) receiving different judgments from God. Our task is to **continue** to show how **scripture** individually identifies each of these nine raptures as shown on the [CHART of 7 Distinguishing Features of Raptures of The Great Tribulation](#), and how **scripture** shows when each rapture takes place as shown by the [TIMELINE of Raptures to Heaven and Earth in The Great Tribulation](#), and on the [CHART of Rapture Positions in the Main Sets of Events of The Great Tribulation](#). And as we **continue** to **handle** raptures individually, we will see that there are even more ways to distinguish them than these.

[Rapture Positions in the Main Sets of Events of The Great Tribulation that are outlined by Jesus to his disciples on the Mount of Olives](#)

- 1) [The Beginning of Sorrows](#)
- 2) [The Abomination of Desolation](#)
- 3) [The Days of Vengeance](#)
- 4) [Armageddon](#)

[Rev 4-19](#)
[1 Thes 4](#)

[Mat 24](#)
[Mark 13](#)

[Luke 21](#)
[Luke 17](#)

[Ezek 37:1-14](#)
[Dan 12:1-2](#)

Starting with the time sequence then, how is the order of these raptures in Revelation established? As he was instructed, John 'keeps an eye on the clock' as he goes, showing the order of events in sets of events that are sequential, and by indicating when one set ends and a new one begins. But we will not be able to simply assume that the events are actually in the order they appear in Revelation. Though a lot of it is purely sequential, there are also accounts that overlap or are synchronized though they might at first appear to be sequential. To sort out these overlapping or synchronized accounts and gauge the placement of the raptures and other events in Revelation we will place them in relation to other **known** events, like The Abomination of Desolation. We also have the help of 'marker clues' from all over The Bible where more detail to the story can be fit in, and we will have to match up markers from all over The Word of God in order to begin to get close to the real sequence of events. Daniel, for example, helps identify the time of his people's rapture—the one that is not specifically mentioned in Revelation—by placing it with another **known** event, that in turn Jesus helps us pinpoint. And it can then be placed in the design of Revelation. Jesus also helps us with another rapture that He specifically describes in Matthew 24, except that it and the event associated

with it, Armageddon, are also referenced repeatedly in Revelation. And we will see that these and other references should not be confused with The Rapture of the Church.

Jesus also provides the best overall key to the chronology of Revelation in His outline of The Great Tribulation in Matthew 24, Mark 13, and Luke 21 and 17, because we can lay His outline down as a guide to Revelation. Jesus' outline of the end times **as he sat upon the mount of Olives** is a response to His disciples when they asked,

...when... and what shall be the sign of thy coming, and of the end of the world? [Mat 24:3](#)

His answers in these different accounts recorded by the different Apostles give us the guideline we can lay alongside John's 'blow by blow' account of the end of the World in Revelation. Jesus' outline identifies the main sets of events as **1) the beginning of sorrows, 2) Jerusalem compassed with armies at the abomination of desolation... 3) then shall be** [or begin]

great tribulation, such as was not since the beginning of the world to this time, no, nor ever shall be... [namely]... the days of vengeance... [where] after that tribulation... 4) then shall they see the Son of man coming in the clouds with great power and glory... [to Armageddon]

([Mat 24:3,8,15,21](#); [Luke 21:20,22,27](#); [Rev 16:16](#)). All nine raptures can be placed either before, at the beginning of, in the middle of, near the end of, at the end of, or after one of these four sets of events as shown on the [CHART of Rapture Positions in the Main Sets of Events of The Great Tribulation \(p.87\)](#). Please **understand though that the placement of certain raptures at the "End" of one set, or "After" that same set, or "Before" the next set, or at the "Beginning" of that next set, may all be very close to the same time, and to that extent some of these placements are arbitrary**

CHART Of Rapture Positions in the Main Sets of Events of The Great Tribulation				
Sets of Events	The Beginning of Sorrows	The Abomination of Desolation	The Days of Vengeance	Armageddon
Position				
Before	The Church	Dead Jews		
Beginning			Tribulation Jews	Rapture of Wrath
Middle	Tribulation Gentiles			
Near End	The 144,000			
End	Two Witnesses		Final Harvest	
After				1st Resurrection

and debatable. But acknowledging this subtlety, and as instructed by John, we are looking for the chronological indicators that allow us to place events described in Revelation, including raptures, on a detailed timeline in agreement with Jesus' more general outline and timeline. And as we investigate individual raptures in Revelation and in other **scripture**, discovering 'when' they occur will also help us to find the 'who, what, why, and where' along the way too. We also must 'rehearse' these techniques for differentiation 'in concert' with other **instruction** 'composed' throughout The Bible that we have already introduced and will introduce along the way. And so we are ready to begin the presentations of the 'solo recitals' of the remaining eight individual raptures. But, let's warm up using some of these techniques with a review of the first rapture in Revelation, The Rapture of the Church, seen by only a small 'choral' of it's participants who are around The

Throne of God in Heaven in a 'production' obviously representing the 'offstage' presence of the whole Church.

Voice-activated raptures

1 Thes 4:16-17

Rev 4:1
Rev 5:9-10

There are two raptures in Revelation that are specifically reported to be initiated by a voice from Heaven saying ***Come up hither***. The second of these two raptures, which is presented third in Revelation, we will easily eliminate from the possibility of being The Rapture of the Church later. But other raptures are said or implied to be voice or trumpet initiated too. The first specifically 'voice-activated' rapture is the first rapture seen in Revelation. And Paul's description of the initiation of The Rapture of the Church is most specific. Paul explains that

...the Lord himself shall descend from heaven with a shout, with the voice of the archangel, and with the trump of God: and the dead in Christ shall rise first: Then we which are alive and remain shall be caught up together with them in the clouds, to meet the Lord in the air: and so shall we ever be with the Lord [1Thes 4:16-17](#).

And Paul must have thought that it was possible that The Rapture of the Church could have occurred in his lifetime. But it's easy to place this rapture in the future simply because it hasn't happened yet. The process of elimination with the multiple ways we will identify and place the other remaining eight raptures would be sufficient alone to conclude that a rapture which occurs just before the opening of The Seal Judgments, before the beginning of The Great Tribulation, is the only place The Rapture of the Church can possibly fit. But we are also shown John's perspective of this rapture in Revelation when...

...he looked, and, behold, a door was opened in heaven: and the first voice which I heard was as it were of a trumpet talking with me; which said, Come up hither, and I will shew thee things which must be hereafter [Rev 4:1](#).

And we ***know*** this is The Rapture of the Church because we are shortly after not shown but told in a ***song*** that many others from ***every kindred, and tongue, and people, and nation*** [Rev 5:9-10](#) have also been redeemed at this ***voice... of a trumpet***.

The 24 elders stand in for the Church around The Throne

Rev 21:10-14

Rev 1:4-6; 5:8-10

1 Pet 2:9

Rev 19:4-8; 11-21

John is taken to The Throne of God in Heaven where we can only say for sure that the 'Lion's share' of the Church, (pun intended), is not seen with The

24 Elders around The Throne, nor is 'she' symbolically represented here as **a sea of glass**, as this transparent but solid foundation will later be shown to literally support those participating in the sixth rapture when we get there. Still, we are told that the Church has been redeemed to Heaven here, so we can therefore assume they are off somewhere else in Heaven, possibly already 'making themselves ready' to be The Bride of Christ. We **know** this because these 24 all-Jewish **elders**, Jews whose names will apparently be etched eternally in the 12 foundations and 12 gates of New Jerusalem ([Rev 21:10-14](#)), are around The Throne at the time Jesus is acknowledged worthy to open The Seal Judgments, and they are singing of the completed redemption of the peoples they represent that are **...out of every kindred, and tongue, and people, and nation...**, whose destiny is **revealed as kings and priests**. And these **kings and priests** clearly are not just the crown-wearing Elders, because all the members of **the seven churches** are designated **kings and priests** in the first chapter of Revelation, further confirming that the whole Church must be redeemed to Heaven though apparently not visible to John. Certainly **the seven Gentile churches** represented by the **four and twenty** all-Jewish **elders** are **redeemed... out of every kindred, and tongue, and people, and nation as kings and priests** before The Great Tribulation starts, and **shall reign on the earth** after The Great Tribulation ([Rev 1:4](#); [5:8-10](#)). The Apostle Peter, addressing the Church, says,

But ye are a chosen generation, a royal priesthood, an holy nation, a peculiar people; that ye should shew forth the praises of him who hath called you out of darkness into his marvellous light [1 Pet 2:9](#).

And we are shown the legitimacy of this designation of royalty at the end of The Great Tribulation when, with The 24 Elders still around The Throne, the announcement is made that the Church, as a bride who has **made herself ready** for **the marriage of the Lamb**, becomes the **wife** of **King** Jesus in Heaven just before the end of The Great Tribulation [Rev 19:4-8](#); [11-21](#).

So let me then sum up The Rapture of the Church using what we have already covered here and in previous sections to distinguish this first of the nine raptures. The pretribulation Rapture of the Church is both a rapture of the dead from the grave and the living from the Earth, and of both Jews and Gentiles who believe in Jesus, and so it's a 'transportation' to Heaven. It involves souls from both The Church Age and from previous or **other ages** who are redeemed to 'make themselves ready' in Heaven as the **wife** of Jesus. And this happens at **the marriage of the Lamb** at the end of The Great Tribulation just before Armageddon. And having become **kings and priests** by this symbolic **marriage**, they will **reign** with Christ forever afterward on the Earth. This rapture is one of the great climaxes of history, but there are others to follow that are comparably consequential. And by deduction, there are eight remaining raptures that must follow The Rapture of the Church during or just after The Great Tribulation. So, on to the next one.

The Tribulation Gentiles

A **great multitude** of Gentiles—and Jews—appears before The Throne of God in Heaven **out of great tribulation... from all nations...** in the middle of The Beginning of Sorrows

Rev 7:9-11

Rev 7:13-17

Mat 5:35

CHART of 7 Distinguishing Features of The Tribulation Gentiles Rapture							
X = Certain X = Uncertain BLANK = Certainly Not							
Raptures	From Grave	From Earth	Jews	Gentiles	To Earth	To Heaven	Saved
Tribulation Gentiles	X	X	X	X		X	X

CHART of The Tribulation Gentiles Rapture in the Main Sets of Events of The Great Tribulation				
Sets of Events	The Beginning of Sorrows	The Abomination of Desolation	The Days of Vengeance	Armageddon
Position				
Middle	Tribulation Gentiles			

John describes the next rapture to be **after** the first six Seal Judgments that are administered by Jesus from before The Throne of God in Heaven and just **after** an angel of God has chosen 144,000 Jews and **sealed** them **in their foreheads**—the rapture of whom is described third in the lineup further on. With only one more brief Seal Judgment to go before the start of The Seven Trumpet Judgments, we easily place this second rapture of a different **great multitude... before the throne** near the middle of The Beginning of Sorrows, in the middle of the first 3 ½ years of The Great Tribulation.

John says that this different...

...great multitude, which no man could number, of all nations, and kindreds, and people, and tongues, stood before the throne, and before the Lamb, clothed with white robes, and palms in their hands; And cried with a loud voice, saying, Salvation to our God which sitteth upon the throne, and unto the Lamb. And all the angels stood round about the throne, and about the elders and the four beasts, and fell before the throne on their faces, and worshipped God [Rev 7:9-11](#).

Why must this be a different group than the one described by the song of The Elders in Revelation 5? Because one of The Elders—all of whom are still seen around The Throne here—answers John's question about who this **multitude** is. The unknown elder identifies them by where they come from and the different judgment of God concerning them, saying,

These are they which came out of great tribulation, and have washed their robes, and made them white in the blood of the Lamb. Therefore are they before the throne of God, and serve him day and night in his temple; and he that sitteth on the throne shall dwell among them. They shall hunger no more, neither thirst any more; neither shall the sun light on them, nor any heat. For the Lamb which is in the midst of the throne shall feed them, and shall lead them unto living fountains of waters; and God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes [Rev 7:13-17](#).

So these are plainly not the **kings and priests** from The Rapture of the Church because they will instead be **before the throne of God, and serve him day and night in his temple**. And they will evidently keep this '24-hour-a-day job' until the end of The Millennium where some new and better arrangements will be made for them as we will see. And it's not a bad assignment, as positions in eternity go, but arguably a 'step down' from **wife**, or from **kings and priests**. And this position is only available to those who consistently resist the conviction of The Holy Spirit during The Church Age and who only get the message when God finally 'puts his foot down' in the opening set of judgments of The Great Tribulation. And you may have heard about God that **the earth... is his footstool** [Mat 5:35](#). From this perspective we can see that He should have some success getting the attention of distracted, backsliding Christians, and even some with new converts, though it's clear He did not get their attention by the 'conviction of The Holy Spirit'. But this shows that God does not give up on us easily. And this is a clue that there are some awesome displays of God's power coming to get their attention that we will cover more in this and later sections.

John's and Jesus' use of the description **great tribulation** leads to confusion, but the difference is the focus on Gentiles by John and Jews by Jesus

[Rev 7:9-17](#)
[Mat 24:15](#)

[Luke 21:22](#)

According to John, this **great multitude** is coming **out of great tribulation**, though Daniel together with Jesus link the later occurring midpoint of the seven years, **the abomination of desolation**, with the beginning of **great tribulation** too. This is one reason some only refer to the second half, but others to all seven years, as The Great Tribulation. It's also a reason why some mistakenly place the start of the second half with The 7th Seal Judgment which we will eliminate as a possibility in due course. Those who are dogmatic that only the last 3 ½ years are The Great Tribulation have a point. It can be clearly distinguished as the worst half. Though just as clearly, Jesus offers **great tribulation** as a description, not a name. And according to John, the first half, including the first six Seal Judgments, is worthy of the description **great tribulation** too. Again, these are clues of the awesome power God will put on display, and that He will evidently do so in both halves of these seven years. Remember that though Jesus and Daniel call the second half 'the worst', we have nonetheless seen that more people die in the first half, if only because there are more to kill.

But what we're really missing here is perspective. What we must **understand** is that when Jesus uses the description **great tribulation**, He is talking to Jews, while John is reporting more on what Gentiles will **experience**. And in the first half we'll see that God keeps Israel safe from harm so they don't **experience** it as **great tribulation** as the Gentiles will. However in the second half both groups, except the Jews who escape to God's 'refuge', 'get it with both barrels'. So the first half is plainly **great tribulation** to the Gentiles and to any Jews not in Israel, and the second half

is further escalated **great tribulation** for all, except again for the Jews 'sequestered' by God.

And hopefully those that insist on the point that only the second half is **great tribulation** do not do so in ignorance of John's use of this identical description, which we will establish must be in the middle of the period Jesus describes as **the beginning of sorrows**—in the middle of the first 3 ½ years. The problem is that many still suppose that John's mention of **great tribulation** in Chapter 7 implies that the second half begins 'after' The 6th Seal Judgment. This cannot be the case for lots of reasons, but the issue is raised out of understandable confusion. John speaks of those who come **out of great tribulation** at this point. But this could mean that this raptured **multitude** is 'rescued' from **great tribulation** before it starts, or that they have been 'rescued' from ongoing **great tribulation**, though the severity of this first-half of **great tribulation** is easily enough accounted for in the first six Seal Judgments. Remember somewhere near 2 billion people or more die during this period. And nearly as many die in The Seal Judgments as in The Trumpet Judgments, and probably even more than die in The Plague Judgments if you don't count Armageddon. And it all sounds like **great tribulation** to me.

So besides this, the way we determine that John must be talking about a group that is being raptured out of ongoing **great tribulation** in the middle of The Beginning of Sorrows and not at the beginning of The Days of Vengeance will be to **continue** to establish the clear transitional event between **the beginning of sorrows** and **the days of vengeance** indicated by Jesus, which is **the abomination of desolation** ([Mat 24:15](#); [Luke 21:22](#)). So when we remember that The Abomination of Desolation in Revelation is described in Chapter 13 after all The Seal and Trumpet Judgments are over (Chapters 6-11) but before The Plague Judgments start (Chapter 16), and that this rapture of Gentiles **out of great tribulation** is in Chapter 7 and is described with clear chronological indicators to be pretty much between The Seal and Trumpet Judgments, this shows us that this rapture of Gentiles is in the middle of The Beginning of Sorrows, and that the first half of these seven years must be appropriately described as **great tribulation** too—especially if you're a Gentile.

And we can distinguish that this Rapture of the Tribulation Gentiles and The Abomination of Desolation are separated by all The Trumpet Judgments. And we will **continue** to establish that the period of **great tribulation** that Jesus refers to for the Jews starts with The Abomination of Desolation and **after** The Trumpet Judgments, much like we have already established that John's reference to raptured Gentiles coming **out of great tribulation** plainly occurs before The Trumpet Judgments. And by establishing that this rapture of Gentiles **out of great tribulation** and **of all nations** to **before the throne** occurs before the start of The Trumpet Judgments—between the 6th and 7th Seal Judgment—we **know** that this **multitude** must go through a set of judgments that should result in even more casualties than the last and worse set, not counting Armageddon.

So call it how you see it. And maybe God intends a double meaning here, that He is both bringing them **out of** worse **great tribulation** to come—which He is, as well as bringing them **out of** ongoing **great tribulation**—which He is too. In all cases, these Gentiles come **out of great tribulation**,

and in the middle of The Beginning of Sorrow as we will **continue** to establish. But I would guess that you have to die before this rapture to get **out of great tribulation** at this point. Because I'm assuming that those who stay alive will have to **remain** in it for the duration, or until they die at a later point, and are redeemed in later raptures. And of course I am only speaking of those who **remain** 'unshakable' in their **faith**.

So I offer 'The Great Tribulation' as a name and a description for the entire future seven years, as it is already commonly used anyway. And I do not offer it, as I've already made clear, in ignorance of the fact that the second half, for many reasons, is worse than the first. And all this evidence is convincing enough to distinguish the first two raptures and their positions in The Great Tribulation, but let's look at another way to get a more specific view of the position of this second rapture.

From The 6th Seal Judgment to The Abomination of Desolation or from the middle of The Beginning of Sorrows to the mid-point of The Great Tribulation.

Rev 8; 13:5
2 Thes 2:3-9
Mat 24:15;

Mark 13:14
Dan 9:26-27
Luke 21:20-22

Isa 61:1-2
Mat 24:8;
Mark 13:8

Heb 5:11-6:3
Isa 28:9-13

Assuming that The Seal and Trumpet Judgments are initiated in relatively regular intervals, this rapture of Gentiles **out of great tribulation** must be very near the middle of The Beginning of Sorrows. This rapture is plainly **after** The 6th Seal Judgment, and **after** the 144,000 are **sealed**. And immediately after this...

...when he [Jesus] had opened the seventh seal, there was silence in heaven about the space of half an hour... [followed by a ceremony in Heaven whereby] **...the seven angels which had the seven trumpets prepared themselves to sound** [Rev 8:1-6](#).

And in [Verse 7](#) we begin to see that these angels **sound** off, one by one, and that they complete their sequential assignments by the end of Chapter 11, before we see any mention of The Abomination of Desolation.

So The Rapture of the Tribulation Gentiles is at a point **when** there are still 8 more of the 14 Seal and Trumpet Judgments to go before, in Chapter 13, the Antichrist is found to be...

...speaking great things and blasphemies; and power was given unto him to continue forty and two months [Rev 13:5](#).

And this, according to Paul, is 'when' this...

...son of perdition... Who opposeth and exalteth himself above all that is called God, or that is worshipped... [behaves] **as God** [and] **sitteth in the temple of God, shewing himself that he is God...** [2 Thes 2:3-4,8-9](#)

...which also, according to Jesus, is...

...When ye therefore shall see the abomination of desolation, spoken of by Daniel the prophet, stand in the holy place... [Mat 24:15](#) standing where it ought not... [Mark 13:14](#),

...which also, according to Daniel, is when...

...the prince that shall come [the Antichrist]... shall... in the midst of the week [the midpoint of the seven years]... cause the sacrifice and the oblation to cease, and for the overspreading of abominations [including declaring himself God] he shall make it [The Jerusalem Temple] desolate... [Dan 9:26-27](#)

...which also, according to Jesus, is...

...when ye shall see Jerusalem compassed with armies... [and] know that the desolation thereof is nigh... [Luke 21:20](#)

...which, getting back to the point, is the beginning of what Jesus and Isaiah describe as **the days of vengeance** ([Luke 21:20-22](#); [Isa 61:1-2](#)) but, more to the point, is long after The Rapture of the Tribulation Gentiles by the space of time of one Seal and all seven Trumpet Judgments—somewhere between a year or two later—which means that this rapture of Gentiles must be in the middle of the period that Jesus describes as **the beginning of sorrows** ([Mat 24:8](#); [Mark 13:8](#)), and long before The Abomination of Desolation which starts the worst time of all, The Days of Vengeance. Catch all that? All we did was nail down several markers of The Abomination of Desolation to help us with our view of our central reference point and its position in [Revelation 13:5](#). I wouldn't call this **strong meat** [Heb 5:11-6:3](#), but it's not **milk** either ([Isa 28:9-13](#)). And a review of these connections—and all of [SECTION 4](#) for that matter—may be in order if you're still 'fuzzy' about it.

Is The Rapture of the Tribulation Gentiles for the dead as well as for the living?

[Haggai 2:6-7](#);
[Hebrews 12:25-27](#)

Getting back to this second raptured **multitude**, we can easily enough see where they end up, but I've already admitted that it's not as easy to say where they come from. I mean, are they solely raptured from the grave having died in the first six Seal Judgments, or as in The Rapture of the Church, are believers again raptured dead and alive from off the Earth? Though I can't be sure, there is some 'discriminating evidence' worth speculating about. First, we **know** that starting with The 5th Seal, it's 'open season' on all those willing to be martyrs for Christ, and I expect all these new martyrs should make the trip. And any others of the near 2 billion who otherwise die in these first six Seal Judgments—who **repent** of their **sins** and **trust** Christ for their **salvation** before they die—should also be raptured with this **great multitude** to The Throne of God. And there will apparently be

plenty enough to make up this **multitude** from the deaths alone.

But beyond this, the best evidence that believing survivors may participate too is that they are finally saved and no longer need this dispensation of wrath. Except that God has declared through both the Apostle Paul and the Prophet Haggai that God's agenda for The Great Tribulation is to expose those who can be **shaken** in their faith and also those who **cannot be shaken** ([Heb 12:25-27](#); [Hag 2:6-7](#)). And this would seem to be the bigger issue. It implies that The Great Tribulation will be a test to the end or to the death. For this reason I believe it's more likely that survivors must maintain their faith until death, whether it comes earlier or later or even sometime into The Millennium. And surely at the end of The Great Tribulation there will be survivors who will not need to be raptured, because everyone who survives will find themselves in Christ's Millennial Kingdom anyway.

And we will also cover other later raptures for Gentiles that will accommodate others who die later in The Great Tribulation. So the question is whether survivors of The Great Tribulation include believers who are alive but not raptured in The Rapture of the Tribulation Gentiles. The problem with including survivors in any rapture where it's not specifically indicated is that if all believing survivors are included there wouldn't be any believing survivors left at the end of The Great Tribulation. So it seems unlikely that all Christian survivors are raptured. And I don't see any evidence that at the end of The Great Tribulation all survivors will be 'transported' at one time to one place, say, to a 'campaign headquarters' in Jerusalem for an 'inaugural celebration of theocracy'. I see instead that everyone will have to get there on their own power annually. And we will 'rally' to 'drum up support' and 'pound out' the details for this 'platform' in our 'debates' about the 7th and 9th raptures in later sections. In the meantime, to me it's unlikely that believers who are still alive will be taken in The Rapture of the Tribulation Gentiles because they will have a couple of other ways to make it out in 'good standing' a little ways 'down the trail', that is if they can stand up to all the 'shaking' along the way. But whatever the case, it must all come down to **patience** and **faith**.

Jesus and John say **patience** and **faith** are required, and in some cases unto death

Rev 13:10; 14:12
Dan 7:21; Rev 13:7

Luke 21:9-19
Eph 3:5-9

Mat 24:13;
Mark 13:13

Rev 7:13-17

There is counsel from both Jesus and John for all believing survivors in The Great Tribulation. John speaks to all **...which keep the commandments of God, and have the testimony of Jesus Christ** to keep **patience** and **faith** ([Rev 13:10](#); [14:12](#)). And surely they'll need it. When they find themselves in The Trumpet Judgments, then later in the Antichrist's **war with the saints** ([Dan 7:21](#); [Rev 13:7](#)), and in The Plague Judgments, they will have to avoid the 'absolutely enforced threefold worship' of Satan and the Antichrist, and remain otherwise 'guiltless' before God by **the blood of Jesus**. And whether they die somewhere along the way or somehow survive it all, it's only by **patience** and **faith** that they can secure their citizenship in Christ's Millennial Kingdom. Those **believers** who die in later stages of The Great Tribulation will catch later raptures, which we'll talk about when we get to those 'stopovers' along the way.

More specifically though, the **patience** mentioned by John above refers to how **believers** must respond in The Days of Vengeance. The degree of **patience** required in this worst half of The Great Tribulation must involve either suffering unavoidable death or becoming an extraordinarily creative and resourceful 'fugitive'. We will see how those that die **in Christ** are fortunate, experiencing the **mercies** of God in this way. But help for those who survive must come from God too. For example, there are some **believers** already planning to be 'fugitives' in The Great Tribulation, mistakenly thinking they'll have to go through it. And I can only hope that their preparations will not be entirely wasted. Years after they die or vanish I'm hoping that other future **believers** will find use of these 'preparations'. And such things should happen because, again, you don't have to have a correct eschatological **understanding** to be raptured with the Church, just **faith** in Christ.

Jesus offers similar counsel to Jews who desire to escape the **destruction** of their **souls** in The Beginning of Sorrows, saying,

In your patience possess ye your souls [Luke 21:9-19](#).

But again, we need to view this in the proper perspective. Even though the Jews as a whole are kept safe during The Beginning of Sorrows, Jesus also speaks of a special group that are not so safe precisely because they are the first ones to believe in Him after The Rapture of the Church. These early converted Jews are the ones that will be suffering persecution in Israel in The Beginning of Sorrow and beyond. And they will suffer much worse **persecution**, including incarceration and death, than the so-called Messianic Jews in Israel today already do. This must be the case because most other Jews in Israel won't come to the Revelation of Jesus Christ until near the end of The Beginning of Sorrows. And this is why these outnumbered early converted Jews will be so sorely 'persecuted' by the majority of still

unconverted Jews, as we eventually see. Of course when many more Jews in Israel get to **know** Jesus at the midpoint, they too will fall under even greater **persecution** from the whole World, unless they can follow instructions and **flee** in time. And evidently one of their first clues will be the Messianic Jews that are in Israel today who will be the first to 'disappear'. So this message by Jesus to Jews applies primarily to early Beginning-of-Sorrows **believers in Israel**, but also to the ones who don't escape Israel to that safe **place prepared of God**.

But though it's clear Jesus is most directly addressing 'persecuted Jews' in Israel in The Beginning of Sorrows, I'm sure He would have counseled Gentiles in the same way if He could have. After all, He is talking here to Jews in Israel who convert early as Gentiles can. But at the time He could not make this point clear. He was 'under orders' from The Father and could not overtly **reveal** anything about salvation to Gentiles—that there was a plan to save them too—as this part of the Gospel was then still **hid in God**, reserved to be **revealed unto his holy apostles and prophets by the Spirit** after Jesus left ([Eph 3:5](#)). That restated, we should accept into evidence that any presumption of a 'free pass' **out of great tribulation**—for anyone—seems to contradict the last thing Matthew and Mark recorded on the subject about the strategy offered to the Jews for redemption in either half of The Great Tribulation, namely,

...he that shall endure unto the end, the same shall be saved
([Mat 24:13](#); [Mark 13:13](#)).

I believe that in hindsight we can see that these two particular 'signposts' for Jews, to **endure unto the end** and to do so with **patience** and **faith**, should lead us to conclude that 'what's good for the goose is good for the gander'. And in this case I mean, what's good for Jews is good for Gentiles too. So I expect that anyone who is raptured **out of great tribulation** must **endure** until they die in it, or **endure** until they survive it, with the exception of a relatively small group of Jews that, in due course, we will **prove** are raptured out of The Great Tribulation alive.

So this mid-Beginning-of-Sorrows **great multitude** rapture **out of great tribulation** [Rev 7:13-17](#), as well as other later-departing raptures, will not likely be so much cases of 'early dismissal', as 'acquittal', and this only after extremely difficult 'trials prosecuted' by the enemies of Jesus, together with the extremely forceful 'cross-examinations' of the judgments of God from Heaven. And there is more 'supporting evidence' for all this to come. But I 'rest this case' for now. Though now we can already easily imagine that a **great multitude** of new believers in Christ will not survive the first six Seal Judgments, but will nonetheless be saved **out of great tribulation**. And it will all be worth it, because we will see that God has a different plan for every different group redeemed out of The Great Tribulation.

[A semantic argument over who is a Jew in a rapture of Gentiles](#)

[Rev 7:9-17](#)

The last remaining feature we need to distinguish in The Rapture of the

Tribulation Gentiles is that it's only for Gentiles. The idea is that the only Jews who would be eligible are those who choose a 'Gentile's track to salvation', and there should be some. The semantic argument over who is a Jew is an issue here. A liberal definition could include any descendant of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. But any of these who have acknowledged Jesus as their Savior since the beginning of The Church Age can no longer be considered—operationally—Jews, because they are opting, whether they know it or not, to participate either in God's plan of **grace** for Gentiles—if they accept Jesus in this age—or in God's plan of **wrath** for Gentiles—if they instead acknowledge Him early enough and die early enough in The Great Tribulation. In this way they are converted to Christianity as Gentiles are—not as we will see 'real Jews' will be. Of course this is not a bad thing, but Jews that make The Rapture of the Church or otherwise come to **know** Him before their time in The Great Tribulation, will be left out of God's plans to reveal Jesus to Jews in Israel near the end of The Beginning of Sorrows. And Jews that **find** Jesus in The Age of Grace become part of The Bride of Christ, as other Gentiles do, and they will participate in The Rapture of the Church. And any Gentile or Jew that is converted to Christianity after The Rapture of the Church but before The 7th Seal Judgment, and dies so converted, must surely join the redeemed **great multitude** around The Throne of God in the middle of The Beginning of Sorrows. These will **serve him day and night in his temple** [Rev 7:15](#), at least until there is no more Temple, as we will eventually see. But more consideration will be needed for Jews who are converted late in The Beginning of Sorrows or early in The Days of Vengeance as we will also see.

Beyond this, we can confirm that The Rapture of the Tribulation Gentiles only includes, besides Gentiles, Jews already converted to Christianity, because this **great multitude** comes from everywhere, which must include Israel, and from every people, which must include Jews. This mid-Beginning-of-Sorrows rapture is of...

...a great multitude, which no man could number, of all nations, and kindreds, and people, and tongues, [that] stood before the throne [Rev 7:9](#).

And this is a definition of Gentiles that must include converted Jews—really the same kind of group earlier found in The Rapture of the Church, except these will instead enter a continuous ministry as God's 'temple servants', having missed the opportunity to become part of The Bride of Christ in The Age of Grace.

The Cry of the Tribulation Gentiles

Rev 7:10

There is another way we can distinguish this group as Gentiles. It is in their proclamation of praise to God. It's not identified as a song as in other redemptive raptures, but in this case, as John saw it, they...

...cried with a loud voice, saying, Salvation to our God which sitteth upon the throne, and unto the Lamb [Rev 7:10](#).

Besides the fact that they are **before the throne**, they are specifically thankful for their **salvation**, and are specifically thankful to Jesus, **the Lamb**. However this generic proclamation of appreciation for salvation does not distinguish this group as Gentiles per se, except when compared to other proclamations, songs, judgments, and other identifications of the remaining groups. In this process of elimination we will see how other proclamations distinguish other redeemed worshippers as involving, besides more Gentiles, 'real Jews' who will ultimately by **patience** and **faith** come to **understand** God's '70th Week Plan' for their **salvation**.

And as we go, like it or not, you'll see that God will maintain a distinction between Jews and Gentiles forever, though the time will come when Israel will cease to be a nation as we now **know** it. And you may need a little **patience** and **faith** too just to get through the **proof** of this. But for now, we can see that there are at least some 'Jews' participating in the first two raptures who become like Gentiles by faith in Christ. In the remaining raptures we will also see that other 'Jews' join with Gentiles to make it '**out of great tribulation**' one way or another. But we will also see that there are at least three raptured groups that will remain solely groups of **special, chosen, holy, peculiar**, '70th-Week-Plan', 'real Jews'.

Gentiles and Jews must '**endure unto the end**' in '**that day**'

Jeremiah 30-31

2 Thes 2:6-7

2 Peter 3:8

Jesus tells 'Jews' that they must **endure unto the end** to be **saved**. But the question remains, when is this **end**? And besides 'Jews', this question must also be raised for Gentiles. The answers to these questions are many and complicated by the fact that there are at least seven identifiably different redeemed groups in The Great Tribulation that reach this **end** in a variety of ways. There is also a group that makes it out by surviving it all. This makes at least eight identifiably different judgments of God for these different groups. So the answers are complicated by the fact that some will exit alive by rapture, some will exit alive just by surviving it, and the rest must at some point die to escape it, with some of all these, in some cases, ending up in the same group. And the answers are complicated by the fact that some groups are all 'real Jews' while the rest are a mix of Jews and Gentiles that are saved as Gentiles. Still, there are two simple answers to these questions that immediately pop up. One is that they must **endure unto the end** of The Great Tribulation. And the other is that they must otherwise **endure unto the end** of their lives. And narrowing it to just three answers, the remainder must **endure unto the end** until they are raptured alive. However some must die and be raptured more than once to finally escape, as we will see.

And there are additional complications only **understood** by the right perspective. We have seen some of these different perspectives already, but let's consider another. There is an account when the Jews are **saved out of their time of... trouble** in Jeremiah's final **prophecy**. The period is popularly called **the time of Jacob's trouble** [Jer 30:7](#). Most evangelicals consider **the time of Jacob's trouble** to be The Great Tribulation, and it certainly includes it. But like many other **prophecies**, we must see this one in God's grand perspective, so that even **the time** He speaks of here must be **understood** in His terms. We can begin to **understand** God's perspective of **time** through the counsel of the Apostle Peter. He says,

...beloved, be not ignorant of this one thing, that one day is with the Lord as a thousand years, and a thousand years as one day [2 Pet 3:8](#).

Peter assures us that what we see as **a thousand years**, God sees and sometimes speaks of as just **one day**. Of course God does not always use this 'timescale' when He speaks, but just like in the '**days**' of a '**week**', we must always be sensitive to when '**one day**' refers to one regular day, or at other times to a year, and also possibly to **a thousand years**. And we should notice, for example, that **the time of Jacob's trouble** is spoken of by God as **that day** [Jer 30:7](#). And there are many ways to see this perspective in this particular **prophecy** alone that we won't deal with here, but we'll pause just long enough to 'open the door' on the issue. A few verses earlier, God says,

...the days come, saith the LORD, that I will bring again the captivity of my people Israel and Judah, saith the LORD: and I

will cause them to return to the land that I gave to their fathers, and they shall possess it [Jer 30:3](#).

Now God is **prophesying** as if these events will take place in **days**, saying He **will bring** home **again** a final round of **captivity of my people Israel and Judah** in this **time of Jacob's trouble**. The beginning of this foretold **captivity** is also predicted by Jesus on the Mount of Olives when he speaks about the destruction of The Temple in Jerusalem that prompts the disciples to ask about **the end of the world [Mat 24](#)**. This is what occurs in 70 A.D., when the Romans finally put down a Jewish rebellion and destroy The Temple and scatter the Jews. Jews who weren't killed or who didn't escape as refugees were taken as slaves. Some of these slaves were put to work digging the canal through the Isthmus of Corinth in Greece, for example. Check your favorite encyclopedia or search engine for more details. The point is that these events began nearly two full **days** ago to God. And these **days** will end, according to God, when the Jews **return to the land that I gave to their fathers, and they shall possess it**. Most evangelicals agree we are still seeing this take place in Israel now. In other words, these 'two days' are still ongoing.

But a more direct way we can see that God is speaking about **days** in His perspective, and thousands of years in ours, is the way He refers to **the time of Jacob's trouble**, saying, **for that day is great, so that none is like it**. This tells us that God is not just talking about The Great Tribulation but all or some part of the previous thousand years. In this 'grand perspective' you could include in **the time of Jacob's trouble** the rise of Islam in the 7th Century, The Holocaust, and all the trouble the Jews have had and are still having in establishing, defending and growing their recovered homeland, culminating of course in The Great Tribulation. Indeed, even from God's perspective **that day is great, so that none is like it**. And in addition to seeing events in God's perspective of the last 'couple of days', we can also see events taking place 'tomorrow', or in The Millennium. So God is speaking in this **prophecy of days to come**, specifically about the last 'three days' of His plan for the World. This is God's perspective. And Peter's **revelation** by The Spirit about the way God sees all this helps us see it all too.

And what we can now see in God's 'grand perspective' is that **the end** is coming later 'today', and that His eternal kingdom will be established early 'tomorrow'. This is the perspective we see when God promises that...

...he [Jacob and His people] shall be saved out of it [or saved out of... that day which is the time of Jacob's trouble] [Jer 30:7](#)

This **day** we're talking about is 'today' and **that day** ends with The Great Tribulation followed by The Millennium, the next and last **day**. And this perspective gives us the idea that Jews will be **saved out of it** before 'today' is over. But we've already seen that it's not as simple as that. I mean you could say that any believer that dies in The Great Tribulation is at that point **saved out of it**. But the most notable escape of Jews is not so much by death or rapture as by a good set of legs. This would be when Jews in Israel have the opportunity to escape The Days of Vengeance to a 'safe haven' **prepared of God** for the remainder of The Great Tribulation. But God by

rapture will save other groups of Jews **out of it**, both dead and alive, as we will see.

We can also begin to get a glimpse of the divisions of Jews in Jeremiah's **prophecy** because God refers to the **gladness** of **the remnant of Israel** [Jer 31:7](#), who God will restore, provide for, and protect. But He also speaks of Jews that,

In those days they shall say no more, The fathers have eaten a sour grape, and the children's teeth are set on edge. But every one shall die for his own iniquity: every man that eateth the sour grape, his teeth shall be set on edge [Jer 31:29-30](#).

In other words, only some Jews will get a 'free ride', while others that are late to respond may not be so fortunate, if **saved** at all. Of course **those days** in this verse might be man's days—regular 24-hour days—or they may be referring to the new fate of Jews in the two **days** of The Church Age and The Great Tribulation, which also shows that God will make you earn your better **revelations** because you have to be aware that He commonly mixes around not only the precepts but also the perspectives. And we'll naturally get to more of God's 'grand perspective' as we go, because, as Peter assures us, this is unavoidable for those who **continue** in His Word.

By-the-way, Jeremiah shows us that in order for Jews to be able to 'happily exit' The Great Tribulation, they must make **a new covenant** with God. God says,

Behold, the days come, saith the LORD, that I will make a new covenant with the house of Israel, and with the house of Judah... I will put my law in their inward parts, and write it in their hearts... and I will remember their sin no more [Jer 31:31-34](#).

We will see that these **days come** at a point when the bulk of 'real Jews' finally get **the revelation of Jesus Christ** late in The Beginning of Sorrows. However we will also see that this **revelation** for 'real Jews' cannot be entirely restricted to this climactic point.

It's also important to remember that some of this must happen when the operations of The Spirit of God are **out of the way** [2 Thes 2:6](#), much like they were before The Age of Grace. Nonetheless, by the awesome displays of God's **power** and **wrath** different groups of Jews and Gentiles will come to this crucial **revelation** at different times even up to the close of **that day**. And any way you look at it, anyone living at anytime in The Great Tribulation who makes **a new covenant** with Jesus will be **saved out of it** at some point if they **endure unto the end**. Except we'll also establish that all 'unsaved real Jews' who die anytime between The Resurrection of Jesus and The Abomination of Desolation will find themselves alive again by rapture to Israel just before The Abomination of Desolation. These 'real Jews' will be put back into **that day** by God so that they'll get their chance to be **saved out of it**.

Again, there are many correct answers to the question, 'what is **the end**?' For the Tribulation Gentiles, their escape comes no later than halfway

through The Beginning of Sorrows. But by this point no exclusively Jewish groups are seen exiting. So we must look for the 'first wave' of Jews beyond this point. Next we'll 'get our feet wet' with the first presented rapture of 'real Jews'. It is not really a 'wave', but they do make a 'big splash'. And so do Satan and the Antichrist. But of course no one can make them bigger than God.

The Rapture of the Two Witnesses

The power of the Two Witnesses

Rev 11:3-6

CHART of 7 Distinguishing Features of The Rapture of the Two Witnesses							
X = Certain X = Uncertain BLANK = Certainly Not							
Raptures	From Grave	From Earth	Jews	Gen- tiles	To Earth	To Heaven	Saved
Two Witnesses	X	X	X		X	X	X

CHART of the Rapture of the Two Witnesses in the Main Sets of Events of The Great Tribulation				
Sets of Events	The Beginning of Sorrows	The Abomination of Desolation	The Days of Vengeance	Armageddon
Position				
End	Two Witnesses			

Something else is going on throughout The Beginning of Sorrows besides The Seal and Trumpet Judgments and the rise of the Antichrist. And it culminates in a rapture at the end of The 6th Trumpet Judgment. This would be The Ministry of the Two Witnesses, and it's a ministry of **power** for **repentance**. So what is their **power**? It's that...

...if any man will hurt them, fire proceeded out of their mouth, and devoured their enemies: and if any man will hurt them, he must in this manner be killed. These have power to shut

heaven, that it rain not in the days of their prophecy: and have power over waters to turn them to blood, and to smite the earth with all plagues, as often as they will [Rev 11:3-6](#).

Power? Yes. Repentance? Surprisingly enough, not so much, except for a select '**few**'. I mean I expect that their ministry doesn't really have its best result until after they're gone. But we should keep in mind as we go that the ministry of this Jewish 'duet' is likely directed mainly to the Jews in Israel, though will undeniably profoundly affect the entire World. And we should also keep in mind that they are merely an 'accompaniment' to the entire 'orchestration' that is The Beginning of Sorrows. And they will be joined midway through their 'performance' by another ministry of a larger 'band' of 144,000 Jews. However I expect that The Seal and Trumpet Judgments and the exploits of the Antichrist will have a lesser effect on Israel in The Beginning of Sorrows because we will see that God protects **her** during this time. Altogether though, these various 'performances' should prove a 'harmonious and masterful symphony in the key of repentance' that will largely fall on 'deaf ears' until its 'crescendo finale'.

The sackcloth of repentance

Rev 11:3

Jonah 3:8

Jer 4:8; 6:26

Who are these Two Witnesses? Let's go to the beginning of their story. Primarily, they are all about the ministry of repentance. God decrees,

I will give power unto my two witnesses, and they shall prophesy a thousand two hundred and threescore [1260] days, clothed in sackcloth [Rev 11:3](#).

What being ***clothed in sackcloth*** means here is that they will be ministering ***repentance*** for ***sin***. A KJV concordance search shows 45 entries for ***sackcloth***. Job, Jacob, David, Isaiah, Jeremiah, Ezekiel, Daniel, Joel, Amos, Jonah, and other ***prophets*** and kings of Israel, and Jesus, all speak of and/or wore ***sackcloth***, often while sitting in a heap of ashes, as an appropriate indication of repentance for themselves and/or for those who they were repenting for. This 'waiting-on-God-for-forgiveness process' lasts until a sign from God is received. And an answer of His mercy dependably comes to the sincerely repentant.

Jonah, in the example of the salvation of ***Nineveh, that great city*** of the Assyrians, makes clear the connection between sackcloth and repentance for wrong-doing, convicting them to...

...let man and beast be covered with sackcloth, and cry mightily unto God: yea, let them turn every one from his evil way, and from the violence that is in their hands [Jonah 3:8](#).

Jeremiah shows us the motivation for this deliberate, openly observable display of repentance when he charges the contrite, saying,

For this gird you with sackcloth, lament and howl: for the fierce anger of the LORD is not turned back from us [Jer 4:8](#).

He also seems to foreshadow the very method to properly respond in ***the time of Jacob's trouble***, pleading,

O daughter of my people, gird thee with sackcloth, and wallow thyself in ashes: make thee mourning, as for an only son, most bitter lamentation: for the spoiler shall suddenly come upon us [Jer 6:26](#).

And in ***sackcloth*** The Two Witnesses, with their God-given ***power***, will try to promote and enforce their ministry of ***repentance***, but instead will more pervasively provoke worldwide rebellion against God. These two can really 'dish it out'. And they 'serve up' a lot more than just warnings, because they'll have the whole World cursing God as we will see.

The candidates Moses and Elijah

[Luke 4:25](#) [1 Kings 17-18](#) [Exodus 7:20](#) [Luke 9:28-32](#)

But do these ***two witnesses*** remind you of anyone? The ***power to shut heaven, that it rain not in the days of their prophecy...*** [and the] ***power over waters to turn them to blood, and to smite the earth with all plagues, as often as they will*** should ring a bell. Remember what Elijah did? Jesus reminds us about it, telling of...

...when the heaven was shut up three years and six months, when great famine was throughout all the land ([Luke 4:25](#); [1 Kings 17-18](#)).

And this was just to get Israel's attention. And speaking of getting attention, everyone remembers what Moses did. He **turned** the **waters... to blood** [Exod 7:20](#) and administered a number of other memorable **plagues** upon Egypt.

These two **prophets of God** also appear to Jesus on **a mountain** during His ministry on Earth. Peter, James, and John witnessed them there as Jesus' face is **altered** and his clothes become **white and glistening**, and these disciples see them in their **glory** or heavenly forms. Luke tells us that they came to talk to Jesus about His **decease** [or his death] **which he should accomplish at Jerusalem** [Luke 9:28-32](#). In other words, they were conferring about His upcoming crucifixion. So **Elijah**, (or **Elias** in The New Testament KJV), and **Moses** have comparable 'on-the-job' **experience** to be The Two Witnesses. On top of that, they are seen involved in the **continuing** work of serving Jesus in their 'afterlife' which also seems to uniquely qualify them for this ministry. They are Jews who were aware that Jesus is the Messiah even before His crucifixion, and evidently still remain in close contact with Him. Or do they? I mean it's possible that they'll need to come to **the revelation of Jesus** again if they have to be born into the World again in order to serve as The Two Witnesses, which we will speculate about further.

The '**once to die**' rule and some notable exceptions

[Heb 9:27](#)

[John 11:39-44](#)

Still others argue, as the Apostle Paul teaches, that,

...it is appointed unto men once to die, but after this the judgment [Heb 9:27](#).

So by this rule it should be impossible for Moses, Elijah, or anyone else who has already died to come back to live another life. But we all should remember what happened to Jesus' friend Lazarus, because it was not just a resuscitation. No, he was a stinking corpse before coming back to life, specifically defined as **dead** [John 11:39](#). And there is far more overwhelming evidence of exceptions to this rule, my favorite being another multitude of 'as-dead-as-you-can-get' Jews that will be resurrected and transported to Israel in the middle of The Great Tribulation. And we will 'autopsy' this 'revived multitude' a few sections from now. There are also the 'never-to-die-even-once' 144,000 Jews that we have an appointment with in the next section. And of course there are also the Christians who are still alive at The Rapture of the Church. They will never die either. Indeed, there are several 'multitudes' of exceptions to this rule. So Paul's **teaching** is a general rule with exceptions. And as such it's generally true enough because most live and die just once.

Elijah could set the 'lifetimes' record

Mat 17:10-13

2 Kings 2:11

Naturally, or supernaturally as the case may be, this means Elijah may be in line to set the record. Jesus confirms that Elijah has already come and gone—to and from the Earth—twice, and that he was expected to return the second time, because He was **prophesied** to do so. And Jesus confirms that he did as **John the Baptist** [Mat 17:10-13](#). But maybe he didn't break the rule if you think he was taken 'alive' in that 'chariot of fire' the first time ([2 Kings 2:11](#)). Getting technical, you could argue he has only 'died' once so far as John the Baptist. But others might conclude that since he left the Earth when he was taken in the chariot that he has already 'died' twice. And if you look at it this way, and if he should come back again and die once more, then he could be breaking the record for number of deaths. And if he does return again, he'll at least get the opportunity to die twice just like a multitude of Jews are scheduled to do anyway.

And there is more clearly a record broken if he is born the third time of a third mother. And these births would be spaced from hundreds to thousands of years apart. See! The Bible does teach reincarnation—just kidding! But seriously, I assume his body was not left on the Earth the first time, but that it was the second, and in two pieces for that matter—he was beheaded. So the question is whether John the Baptist's physical body gets recycled again or is left in the grave to be replaced by a new one should he come back a third time.

However John's teeth may no longer be in a grave, and the rest of his body may have been found and moved from one place to another earlier this century. Well, at least some believe that John's grave was found. 'He' was dug up and reburied by "Israeli religious authorities". And the teeth of this body went to labs in Arizona and Israel for carbon dating and DNA testing, respectively (BBC News World Edition, August 27, 2002

http://news.bbc.co.uk/2/hi/middle_east/2218763.stm). So if this is really Elijah and John's remains, will they disappear when He is conceived in the womb of his third mother? And will the teeth disappear from the labs? Or should we expect that each time his different mother—and father—must provide their different contributions of his DNA, and that only **the spirit and power of Elias** is transferred ([Luke 1:17](#)). I think verifiably disappearing remains would answer this question, and so would confirmation that his remains remained. But if Elijah comes back again to his familiar role, I'm guessing we'll eventually find out one way or another. And whatever the case, I wouldn't consider any imaginable scenario in any way too difficult for God.

We also **know** that The Two Witnesses will be killed and do a dramatic 'Lazarus-without-tomb' style resurrection from the dead before they finally leave the Earth. So without getting too technical, if Elijah should return again as one of The Witnesses, you could say he will live four different times and dies three times, that is if you don't count his final rapture as a death. Moses would chalk up three lives and two deaths with this kind of reckoning. And

besides their 'job experience', what could be a better qualification than having more **experience** with 'life and death' than anyone else?

Enoch lived longest of those who never died

Gen 5:22-24

In answer to that last question you could say that when it comes to **experience** with life, there's Enoch. He didn't die and lived longer on Earth than the total years in the lives of Moses and Elijah put together. And as far as I **know** he hasn't come back yet ([Gen 5:22-24](#)). This is why some think he's a candidate. However the 'groundswell of support' for this candidate comes along with the oversight that there are many exceptions to the '**once to die**' rule. And besides Enoch, there are other candidates that seem to be officially nominated.

Both the Prophet Ezekiel and the Apostle John 'eat books' and 'measure' The Temple in Jerusalem in prophetic visions from God.

Rev 10:1-11 Eze 2:8-3:4 Eze 42:20 Rev 11:3-10

After The Trumpet Judgments' **sixth angel** sounds at the end of Chapter 9, and after **another mighty angel** will **sware...** [that] **the mystery of God should be finished**—indicating some other '**hid in God**' big surprise to come involving **the seven thunders... voices** that we can only 'fruitlessly' speculate upon—then another **voice... from heaven** will instruct this same **mighty angel** to give John a little book **sweet as honey** that, as commanded, he will **eat** and it will make his stomach **bitter** ([Rev 10](#)). Similarly, Ezekiel has an **experience** 'eating' a **roll of a book** [a scroll]... **as honey for sweetness** whose message for Israel is plainly 'bitter' ([Eze 2:8-3:4](#)).

And just after John's **experience**, the **mighty angel** tells John,

Thou must prophesy again before many peoples, and nations, and tongues, and kings [Rev 10:11](#).

This is certainly a high office whatever it may be, but it seems to fit The Ministry of the Two Witnesses. And this seems to be further confirmed because John is next instructed to do temple measurements. And Ezekiel's similar temple-measuring **experience** specifically serves...

to make a separation between the sanctuary and the profane place... [Eze 42:20](#)

And this too seems to fit with The Beginning of Sorrows Ministry of the Two Witnesses. And all this seems to connect Ezekiel and John to this ministry. Both he and John **eat** a 'honey-sweet' **book** (which were scrolls back then) in order to deliver a 'bitter' message, and measure The Temple to distinguish between **the holy** and **the profane place**. These surely sound like proper qualifications, and preparations, for The Ministry of the Two Witnesses to me.

And if that's not enough, it's right after this that John is informed of the mission of...

...[God's] **two witnesses**... [that] **they shall prophesy a thousand two hundred and threescore days**... [and that] **they of the people and kindreds and tongues and nations shall see their dead bodies** [when they are killed at the end of their ministry]... **And they that dwell upon the earth shall rejoice over them, and make merry, and shall send gifts one to another; because these two prophets tormented them that dwelt on the earth** [Rev 11:3-10](#).

And these **two witnesses** 'torment' **them that dwelt on the earth** not only with **plagues** but evidently also with their **bitter** message. In other words, The Two Witnesses are given **power... in the days of their prophecy** over all **the people and kindreds and tongues and nations** who will feel the **bitter** effects of their ministry. This seems to be very close to what is promised to John—to **prophesy again before many peoples, and nations, and tongues, and kings**.

[John miraculously escapes death, but this is common](#)

And for those of you still who still feel attached to the '**once to die**' rule, some may wonder whether John actually died, or was his **experience** more like Enoch's? It is documented in [Foxe's Book of Martyrs](#) that John,

The 'beloved disciple', was brother to James the Great. The churches of Smyrna, Pergamos, Sardis, Philadelphia, Laodicea, and Thyatira, were founded by him. From Ephesus [founded by Paul] he was ordered to be sent to Rome, where it is affirmed he was cast into a cauldron of boiling oil. He escaped by miracle, without injury. [Roman Emperor] Domitian afterwards banished him to the Isle of Patmos, where he wrote the Book of Revelation. Nerva, the successor of Domitian, recalled him. He was the only apostle who escaped a violent death.

So John shows a tendency of being favored enough by God to be able to miraculously escape death. But it should be clear by now that being redeemed without ever having died will turn out to be rather common. Let me be even more specific. More people are alive today than the total of all who have lived and died before now, if you can believe The Bible that is. And a small percentage of the, say, 7 to 9 billion people living at the time of the coming Rapture of the Church will be raptured having never died. The number of those raptured alive at this time should, hopefully, be a larger number than **the dead in Christ**, whose spirits wait in **paradise**, and whose bodies **rise first** out of **the grave** also to be made 'immortal'. I mean maybe the redeemed of **the dead** in this rapture will be less than half as many as those raptured alive. Still, this ratio must change during The Great Tribulation where there will likely be many more who die before being raptured. And by the end of The Great Tribulation, maybe the numbers are about equal, making 'never experiencing death' rather common, at least

among the redeemed.

Can the Apostle John be one of the Two Witnesses?

Dan 3:12-30
Dan 9:24

Rev 21:9-14
Rev 7:9-11

Rev 11:15-16
Rev 19:4-7

So did John ever even really 'die'? God knows. We **know** He was miraculously saved from death at least once, kind of like Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego ([Dan 3:12-30](#)). But when it comes to his eligibility to be one of The Two Witnesses it doesn't really matter. And whether any of the above so-called candidates has already died once or not, I'm sure they would all be willing to finally die or die again as one of The Two Witnesses. So the real determiner is who gets to choose. And that would be God. Personally, I'm betting on Moses and Elijah, (figuratively, of course), because it is not possible that John is a candidate for this office.

And I can't guess what John's real future mission will be otherwise, especially since a case can be made that all of Jewish **prophecy** will be completely fulfilled, that God will **seal up the vision and prophecy** for the Jews at the end of The 70 Weeks Plan at the end of The Great Tribulation ([Dan 9:24](#)). But this ministry John is given isn't really to a group appropriately labeled 'for Jews only'—it must be a worldwide ministry. And after all, according to John Foxe, he helped establish most of the Churches Jesus identifies in Revelation for the Gentiles. In other words, he is a significant 'Apostle to the Gentiles' in his own right. So evidently his ministry takes place after The Great Tribulation in The Millennium, because The Great Tribulation is by no means the end of the story. And whenever and whatever John's 'next ministry' may be, we are clearly still waiting on his 'more sure words of prophecy' because they cannot come until his next 'incarnation' or 'immortalization', which I assume has not yet occurred. And by-the-way, in [SECTION 11](#), and counting **the tabernacle... in the wilderness**, we will see that Ezekiel is measuring the 5th Temple in Jerusalem erected at the beginning of The Millennium, while John measures the 4th one that is to be built next and destroyed at The Abomination of Desolation. So they are measuring dramatically different temples as we will see.

But enough beating around the bush. John is the least likely of all these candidates to be the one of The Two Witnesses because he is most likely one of the **four and twenty elders**, one of the 24 who have their names forever engraved into the walls of the eternal city New Jerusalem, because he is undoubtedly one of **the twelve apostles of the Lamb** [Rev 21:9-14](#). And he is evidently seen around The Throne of God throughout The Great Tribulation from beginning to end. More explicitly, besides being seen in Heaven before the start of The Great Tribulation, The 24 Elders are seen for the second time 'encamped' around The Throne of God at the time of The Rapture of the Tribulation Gentiles in the middle of The Beginning of Sorrows [Rev 7:9-11](#), and are shown to still be there at the sounding of The 7th Trumpet Judgment at the end of The Beginning of Sorrows ([Rev 11:15-17](#)), and they are even mentioned again at the end of The Great Tribulation at The Marriage of The Lamb ([Rev 19:4-7](#)), all showing John to be otherwise occupied and therefore

disqualified as a candidate for one of The Two Witnesses. The Witnesses will have to be on the Earth during The Beginning of Sorrows to do their job. I guess this also means that John sees himself in his vision a number of times, but not as one of The Two Witnesses.

The wild goose chases of Scripture

John 8:31-32, 36

What do you **know**? Those who feel I have 'led you on a wild goose chase' with John, let me tell you what we were really 'hunting for' here. One little detail disqualifies John as one of the Witnesses. He's evidently got a position to fill elsewhere during the same time. Missing that can make you sure, especially if you have not been shown any other good candidates, that he's got to be one of The Two Witnesses. And all of us who have 'handled' **prophecy** on a regular basis, or **scripture** in general for that matter, have deceived ourselves this way from time to time. We may even find errors of misinterpretation we have believed true for years until we finally find or recognize one more precept that changes our perspective. And it's the same reason why various students of **prophecy**, with even less subtle oversights, place The Rapture of the Church erroneously in several different positions in and around The Great Tribulation when only one can be right. But these are only a couple among many other popular crucial misinterpretations, many of which you will discover and hopefully abandon in this **study**, if you're honest enough to give them up. And of course, we should always be finding new precepts to add to our larger and larger collections to enhance if not to change our **understanding**. This is a part of what it means to **continue** or to **grow** in The Word of God. And this is The Natural Progression of The Word of God.

But I would hope that some of you weren't fooled at all by this 'wild goose chase' of mine, and were hopefully questioning my credibility or even prematurely ready to slander me. To those of you to whom this applies, 'gotcha'. But my real point is that Satan has most likely already beaten me to it. And the real problem is that my 'gotcha' here is an easily conceded point because it's not really that controversial, nor does anyone have their ministries too heavily invested in this particular 'gotcha' to care. But other more popular, more 'heavily invested' **errors of interpretation** will not be given up quite as easily because they involve the majority of evangelicals. Still, I'm sure many of you just gave up your previously long-held 'stance' on the identity of The Two Witnesses—and that should include those of you that have insisted that it's Moses and Elijah too.

I have acknowledged hundreds or maybe even thousands of significant **errors of interpretation** on my own part over the decades. Again, this is a part of what it means to **continue** or to **grow** in The Word of God. Growing in **the knowledge of God** is an unending revision of everything you **know** by adding to it and looking it all over again and again to gain better and better perspectives. But I have personally never been compelled by a large audience to acknowledge such 'revisions' of mine up till now. And God-willing, I will eventually be compelled to do so, and most likely by my own discoveries than by someone else's. But I thank God He has tested me on a

smaller scale, again and again, so that I trust that He has prepared me to error as little as humanly possible, to acknowledge errors as quickly as discerned, and to always endeavor to keep clear the difference between when I **know** I am speaking on His behalf, and when I am speculating in a process where I hope to eventually prove new **revelations** that I can then add to what I **know**, and I can then speak to on His behalf. Or else by this process be further equipped to show others additional traps of misinterpretation and error. This is included in what Jesus means in [John 8:31-32](#), and is also part of what He means in [Verse 36](#) when he says,

If the Son therefore shall make you free, ye shall be free indeed.

The Discernment Prayer and the Apostle Peter's Commandment

[1 Pet 4:11](#)

[Col 1:10](#)

So live **free**. Find your way to a better continuing attitude and approach to the **study** of the **more sure word of prophecy**, and to the whole Word of God for that matter. And along the way you must keep in mind that to **please God** you should be ever **increasing in the knowledge of God** [Col 1:10](#), and thereby never cease from improving and correcting your perspectives. And with that said, consider my altered version of the 'serenity prayer' based on Jesus' **promise** that if we **continue** in His Word, we will be made **free**.

God grant me the discernment by The Spirit to **know the truth**,
to acknowledge it openly when I do not **know** for sure,
and the **wisdom** to tell the difference.

Or in other words, and as the Apostle Peter commands,

If any man speak let him speak as the oracles of God... [1Pet 4:11](#)

Of course the alternative is to shut up. And I will eventually be shown by someone else other than myself to be in error concerning The Word of God in this study. But it was over twenty years before God released me to 'open my mouth' in a way that could land me on any kind of significant stage. And you should **know** that God has qualifications and tests—and **know** that God likes tests—if you presume to speak for Him. I recommend a couple decades preparation as a good rule of thumb, but no guarantee. Again, my real credentials can only exist is the totality of my **teaching**.

The exceptions to the '**once to die**' rule are sure, but the identity of The Two Witnesses is not

[Dan 12:1-2](#)

[Ezekiel 37:1-14](#)

It's true that this oracle's 'totality' does not promise to answer all questions. In fact, in a 'healthy growing process' you should raise at least as many questions that cannot be immediately answered as ones that can, which brings us back to the case in point. The identity of the Two Witnesses remains uncertain, however likely it is that it's Moses and Elijah. I can speak for God, however, and say that...

...many of them that sleep in the dust of the earth shall awake, some to everlasting life, and some to shame and everlasting contempt

[Dan 12:1-2](#).

This means, especially with the added detail in [Ezekiel 37:1-14](#), that lots of people are going to live and die twice before they are judged, and, as with The Rapture of the Church, plenty will have never died before they are raptured and judged. These also happen to be two similar descriptions of the next couple of raptures we will cover in the middle of The Great Tribulation, except both these raptures will be indisputably only of 'real Jews'.

'The Lord of the Sabbath' rule

[Rev 11:4](#)

[Mat 12:1-13](#)

[Mark 2:23-28](#)

[Luke 6:1-11](#)

Moses, Elijah, Enoch, maybe Ezekiel? Someone else? Someone new? Who are **...the two olive trees, and the two candlesticks standing before the God of the earth?** [Rev 11:4](#) Who deserves this place of honor more? Who has the **experience** and qualifications? Who is available, eligible, and appropriate? But the easily most relevant question is, who has The Lord of the Sabbath Day chosen? We must not forget that...

...the Son of man is Lord even of the sabbath day... ([Mat 12:1-13](#); [Mark 2:23-28](#); [Luke 6:1-11](#))

This means that He makes, and as He sees fit, breaks the rules, or simply breaks earlier presumed conventions or interpretations, which in either case would be His business. And after all, thank God, it's His call.

The Two Witnesses are killed by **the beast** and their bodies 'lay' 3 ½ days **in the street** in Jerusalem while at the same time their spirits wait elsewhere, maybe preaching in **Abraham's bosom**, after which their spirits return to resurrect their bodies on Earth, where they are then visibly raptured alive to Heaven.

[1 Cor 15:51-58](#)

[Rev 11:7-14](#)

[Luke 16:22](#)

[Eph 4:9](#)

[1 Pet 3:19](#)

[2 Cor](#)

[12:2-4](#)

Indeed The Two Witnesses will be 'called'. And John hears this call too, and reports that...

...they heard a great voice from heaven saying unto them, Come up hither. And they ascended up to heaven in a cloud; and their enemies beheld them [Rev 11:12](#).

This sounds similar to when John is 'called' at the time of The Rapture of the Church, but this rapture seems to be in 'slow motion' compared to Paul's description of the Church's rapture which happens ***in the twinkling of an eye*** [1Cor 15:51-58](#). And in [Revelation 11:7-14](#) John sees several things that must occur just before and just after this rapture of The Two Witnesses. It will happen...

...when they shall have finished their testimony, [and when] the beast that ascendeth out of the bottomless pit [apparently the Antichrist] shall make war against them, and shall overcome them, and kill them. And their dead bodies shall lie in the street of the great city, which spiritually is called Sodom and Egypt, where also our Lord was crucified. And they of the people and kindreds and tongues and nations shall see their dead bodies three days and an half, and shall not suffer their dead bodies to be put in graves... And after three days and an half the Spirit of life from God entered into them, and they stood upon their feet; and great fear fell upon them which saw them. And they heard a great voice from heaven saying unto them, Come up hither. And...

...well, you ***know*** the rest of the story. These two are raptured alive from the Earth after being killed—evidently by the Antichrist—and after their ***dead bodies*** lie unburied 3 ½ days. And while they're ***dead*** I'm guessing their ***spirits*** probably wait in ***Abraham's bosom*** [Luke 16:22](#), in the ***lower parts of the earth*** [Eph 4:9](#) where the ***spirits*** of both Jews and Gentiles waited to be redeemed before Jesus ***descended*** to this ***prison***, and ***preached*** to them ([1Pet 3:19](#)), and then ***ascended*** and ***led*** them up to ***paradise***, leaving it empty. And these ***spirits*** of ***dead*** Jews and Gentiles are still in ***paradise*** or ***the third heaven*** [2Cor 12:2-4](#), being joined by others who die in this age, and who are all waiting to finally be immortalized in The Rapture of the Church. And since the resurrection, ***Abraham's bosom*** must be filling back up again with 'unsaved real Jews' that will be returned to Israel to get an opportunity to be saved half way through The Great Tribulation, as we will see.

So ***Abraham's bosom*** must be presently occupied only by Jews who do not yet ***know*** their Messiah. And I expect this growing number of dead Jews will all still be there when the spirits of the Two Witnesses make a 3 ½-day visit down there just before being returned to Israel and then raptured. And I mean I'm guessing that this is part of their ministry to the Jews, that these Two Witnesses will ***preach*** to these '***spirits in prison***' too, except that this time ***some*** of them will not get the message as Daniel confirms.

Again, The Two Witnesses die when they are finished with their 1260-day

ministry on Earth, when **the beast** kills them, and they apparently spend 3 ½ days of ministry inside the Earth, and after that stand back up alive on the Earth where, being in plain view of all their **enemies**, they are 'called' from Heaven to **Come up hither**. These two are unquestionably Jews who are really 'double raptured', evidently for the benefit of those watching from Earth, and they go to an undoubtedly special and greatly esteemed but unspecified eternal station. It has been suggested they will be 'right-hand men' to Jesus, and this makes sense to me. And we will discuss **Abraham's bosom** and other **lower parts of the earth** some more in later sections.

When the **second woe is past... behold, the third woe cometh quickly**, and time is up for The Beginning of Sorrows.

Rev 11:14

So as we come to the end of The 6th Trumpet Judgment, we have found the third rapture, or so it appears, but we also **know** we must be near the end of The Beginning of Sorrows because since The Ministry of the Two Witnesses is over, we must be at least 1263 ½ days into the first half of The Great Tribulation, which must be very close to all the time available. And after the description of the conclusion of their ministry we are next informed that,

The second woe is past; and, behold, the third woe cometh quickly [Rev 11:14](#).

And as we have determined before, The 7th Seal and Trumpets Judgments must be conspicuously short, meaning that **the third woe** must not only come quickly, it must pass quickly too. And when this 7th Trumpet Judgment is over we can expect it's time for The Abomination of Desolation. And we can deduce this by the time constraint. If limited by Daniel's **prophecy** to a strict interpretation of just one **week** to finish the plan, we must be about out of time for The Beginning of Sorrows, because The Two Witnesses are given **a thousand two hundred and threescore** (or 1260) **days** on Earth, and 3 ½ days probably in **Abraham's Bosom** to finish their ministry which must account for nearly all of the 3 ½ years that is allowed for the entire first half. And surely there will be enough time for the **quickly** following and likely brief 7th Trumpet Judgment or The 3rd Woe. But we will see that there is quite a lot more to cram into this intense, time-limited period. Still, there are several ways we can see that there will be enough time.

Only a small part of one day may be needed to complete The 7th Trumpet Judgment

Rev 11:3-14

First of all it helps that The 7th Trumpet Judgment could fit into the final hours, or possibly even in half an hour, on the fourth day following the 1260th day of The Ministry of The Two Witnesses on Earth. Because if their ministry begins the same day that The Mystery of Iniquity is **revealed**, The Beginning of Sorrows could end as soon as 1263 days, 13 ½ hours later. We **know** this

because their ministry will go on ***a thousand two hundred and threescore days plus three days and an half*** more while ***their dead bodies shall lie in the street of the great city... where also our Lord was crucified*** before, as John saw it, they ***ascended up to heaven in a cloud***. And less than an ***hour*** after this rapture there is ***a great earthquake*** that marks the end of The 6th Trumpet Judgment, or the end of the ***second woe*** [Rev 11:3-14](#). And if the 7th Trumpet Judgment immediately follows taking less than half a day, then The Beginning of Sorrows would be over in less than 1264 days.

And there is another helpful consideration. Just as the first and last of the three days of the Lord's entombment unambiguously were not full 24 hour periods, so the first and last ***days*** of the designated time period for The Ministry of the Two Witnesses may not be either. In other words, another day or two could be 'freed up' by this reckoning. And this may be partly how The 7th Trumpet Judgment can be completed on time. More particularly, traditional Jewish calendar days begin and end at sunset, and the days of an event such as the entombment of Jesus are counted around the sunsets. Since He was entombed not long before sunset on day one, and stayed in the tomb through the next sunset ending day two, and arose at sunrise during day three, His body may have been entombed less than 40 hours. But this does not change the fact that this is appropriately counted as a three calendar-day event. And this same reckoning may be used as appropriate in all specified time periods throughout The Bible. So adding a 7th Trumpet Judgment/ 3rd Woe that could be as short as a literal half hour, the minimum number of days required to complete the first half could instead be just short of 1263 actual days—and just short of 1262 days if a short partial first day in The Ministry of The Two Witnesses also helps, though it may not because the beginning of their ministry is not the 'official marker' of the start of The Beginning of Sorrows.

Of course whether any of this partial day stuff applies is all speculation. It may be an unnecessary consideration, because we may not have such a 'tight squeeze' at all. All we can be sure of is that when all is said and done, what happens will perfectly agree with what God has told us in advance. In today's popular reckoning of time, 3 ½ years of 365 ¼ days per year would give us 1278 days—no problem. But it's more likely that we need to do our reckoning with the original Jewish calendar system.

[The Jewish calendar system and its leap years](#)

[Dan 7:25](#)

I intend to show the overwhelming likelihood that we are dealing with Jewish calendar years, months, and days here, even though the present day Gregorian or Civic Calendar would give the needed time too. First, given the constraints of the Jewish calendar, how many days are or could be available in 3 ½ years? There is a concise explanation of what we are working with on The Jewish/Civil Calendar Program website:

The Jewish year harmonizes the solar and lunar cycle, using the 19-year cycle of Meton (c. 432 B.C.E.). Meton discovered that after nineteen years the years reckoned using the sun and the moon get

back into synch (almost). It corrects so that certain dates shall not fall on certain days for religious convenience. The Jewish year has six possible lengths: 353, 354, 355, 383, 384, 385 days, according to the day and time of the new year lunation, and position in the Metonic cycle. [The Jewish/Civil Calendar Program](http://www.uwm.edu/~corre/calendar.html) (<http://www.uwm.edu/~corre/calendar.html>)

On the Jewish calendar, years with lengths of 353, 354, and 355 days are "regular years" with twelve 29 or 30-day months. The years with 383, 384, or 385 days are "leap years" with thirteen months due to the repeat of the month Adar—as indicated by immature barley crops—to catch up the slipping calendar once every few years. With a cycle like this, 3½ years could be anywhere from just short of 1240 days—if these years contain no leap year—to just over 1270 days with one. Obviously we are going to need a leap year in The Beginning of Sorrows in order to have enough time to complete the minimum of about 1263 days on schedule. And there would seem to be just enough room for a 7½-day **half an hour** for The 7th Trumpet Judgment if needed.

And if an underdeveloped barley crop signals that a leap month is needed early enough in The Beginning of Sorrows, another one should eventually 'crop up' in The Days of Vengeance too—not that any Jews will still be free to grow barley in The Days of Vengeance. And the World in general won't have a clue either. For one thing, we **know** that the days will be **shortened** which is a consideration we'll overlook for now. And besides that, Daniel has a **dream** that tells us that the Antichrist will be messing with the popular calendar during the **time and times and the dividing of time** of The Days of Vengeance [Dan 7:25](#). So who'll **know**? God will.

Revelation uses the Jewish calendar that anticipates still future events that **are a shadow of things to come... but the body is Christ**

Col 2:16-17

A good way to see that end times **prophecy** does not use the 'anticipated' present Civil Calendar is to recognize that though The Church Age of Grace is primarily about the Gentiles, The Great Tribulation, and **the time of Jacob's trouble**, is primarily about the Jews. And though there are undoubtedly many ways to show this, one of the better ones involves how the Jewish calendar indicates both past events that were and future events that still are a **shadow of things to come**. These events are 'memorialized' by the commandment of God and are observed in the Jewish 'holidays'. Paul reveals this

'timetable' insight that tells us that 'Jewish holy days' or **feast days**, including **new moons** and **sabbaths**, are a **shadow** or 'representation' which altogether gives us a 'grand timetable' patterned after **things to come**, some of which already have, but all of their 'substance' is **Christ**. Paul reveals,

Let no man therefore judge you in meat, or in drink, or in respect of an holyday, or of the new moon, or of the sabbath

days: **Which are a shadow of things to come; but the body is of Christ** [Col 2:16-17](#).

What did Paul **understand** about the 'timetable' of these **holyday** calendar events that led him to believe they fulfilled a pattern that identify the person of Jesus? Let's briefly review the annual Jewish 'holydays' to see why.

The Feasts of Passover, Unleavened Bread, Firstfruits, and The Feast of Weeks mark The Crucifixion, The Entombment, and The Resurrection of Christ, and The Coming of The Holy Spirit, while The Feast of Trumpets, The Day of Atonement, and The Feast of Tabernacles represent still future events.

- Haggadah (Passover)
- The Feast of Unleavened Bread
- Festival of First Fruits
- Shavuot (Feast of Weeks)
- Rosh Hashanah (Feast of Trumpets or 'New Years')
- Day of Atonement
- Hag Ha-Sukkot (Feast of Tabernacles or Booths)

Act 2:41

The Jewish Year begins in the first month on a **new moon** followed two weeks later with The Passover Feast, presently popularly kept by the telling of [Haggadah](#) (<http://www.karaite-korner.org/haggadah.shtml>), which is the story of the Exodus, immediately followed by the week of **the feast of unleavened bread**, which is immediately followed by The Feast or Festival of **firstfruits**. Seven **sabbaths** or weeks and one day (50 days) later comes **the feast of weeks** or [Shavuot](#) (http://www.karaite-korner.org/holiday_dates.shtml).

And later in the year beginning in the seventh month comes three more **memorial** events similarly 'clumped together'. The next one is **a memorial of blowing of trumpets**, referred to as The Feast of Trumpets (or **Shofar**), also referred to as The Day of Shouting (**Yom Teruah**) but popularly known as "New Years" or [Rosh Hashannah](#) (http://www.karaite-korner.org/yom_teruah.shtml). By-the-way, "New Years" is a modern misnomer popularized in their civil calendar—their traditional calendar shows that it occurs in the seventh month. This is immediately followed by **the day of atonement**, and afterward, the weeklong **feast of tabernacles** or The Feast of Booths or [Hag Ha-Sukkot](#) (<http://www.karaite-korner.org/sukkot.shtml>).

Paul knew that these feasts fulfilled a pattern because Christ's death, entombment, and resurrection, and 50 days later the coming of The Holy Spirit at Pentecost, perfectly coincided with the first four of these seven Jewish 'holidays'. The Passover coincided with Christ's sacrifice of Himself for us. His dead body in the tomb was represented by and coincided with The Feast of Unleavened Bread where, according to Jesus, **unleavened** symbolizes His sinlessness and the **bread** symbolizes His body. Jesus rose on [The Festival of First Fruits](#) (<http://home.clara.net/arlev/ffruits.htm>) after He had **descended** and **preached** to **the spirits** in **prison** in the Earth—

in **Abraham's bosom**—and He **led... captive** these **spirits** to Heaven to deposit them in **paradise** to await the still to come Rapture of the Church and their ultimate redemption. Seven weeks and a day later, on The Feast of Weeks, The Holy Spirit **filled** the Apostles and the rest of the then existing Church numbering **about three thousand souls** [Act 2:41](#). And this is also now known as The Day of Pentecost.

By-the-way, the more or less still ongoing Sadducean-Pharisaic disagreement over which Sabbath—the first or the second—in the celebration of Passover and Unleavened Bread marks Firstfruits was really already **gloriously** resolved to be the second by The Lord's Resurrection, though understandably, the Jews still haven't agreed on this yet. But Jews are more naturally prepared to receive such **revelations** than Gentiles. And surely it's the **revelation** of the real meaning of these Jewish 'holydays' that will one day help convince many Jews that Jesus is their true Messiah. And apparently it will be a mass **revelation** at God's chosen time. Of course we might also expect that Satan and the Antichrist **know** all this too and will use it to their advantage as long as they can—which is really all part of the process for God's 'timetable'. We will try to pin down the time of this mass **revelation** that the Jews will have about the identity of their Messiah by trying to associate it with other events we situate in The Great Tribulation. But we have some other 'situating' to do first. And before we **continue** with that, let's speculate a bit about what those future feast days may represent.

[The still unfulfilled feast days mark unknown future events](#)

Now the last three 'holydays' in this annual cycle remain just as obviously unfulfilled because nothing involving Jesus occurred later that same year or since. So they become another way to see God's 'stealth insertion' of The Age of Grace at this point because by suspending their fulfillment we can **understand** that they must have been 'put on hold' to give time for the completion of The Church Age. But what events these three outstanding unfulfilled Jewish 'holidays' are **a shadow of** remains debatable. I like the theory that The Feast of Trumpets memorializes in advance the day when The Rapture of the Church takes place, the point where Christ redeems His Bride. Unfortunately, this theory was popularized by a very bad **teacher** along with other theories since proven to be erroneous. But if we were to try to salvage this idea, next I would guess that seven years and a feast later, near the end of The Great Tribulation on the Day of Atonement, comes the completion of God's plan for the Jews probably including another Tribulation-ending rapture along with the liberation of the faithful who are still alive. And the following and last celebration, The Feast of Tabernacles, would mark when we will all begin our eternal 'residence' with Jesus in The Millennium.

Of course I said I like the theory that The Feast of Trumpets 'pre-memorializes' The Rapture of the Church, and it very well could be that this rapture takes place on one of The Feast of Trumpets, but the compulsion of too many Christians to make everything about themselves when this time it's more likely just about the Jews gives me pause. So I like better the theory that all these still unfulfilled **feast days** correspond to events that involve God's plan for the Jews, possibly 'pre-memorializing' events such as The Final

Harvest Rapture, Armageddon, and/or the beginning of Jesus' eternal kingdom at the start of The Millennium. In other words, I think these remaining **feast days** will all be fulfilled at the end of The Great Tribulation, concluding The 70th Week. But I must admit that I haven't yet found a particular scenario with a 'perfect fit' as we will see.

Still, The Feast of Trumpets is more likely a 'pre-memorial' of a rapture planned predominantly for Jews, even though it may likely involve some Gentiles too. And since the last remaining **holyday** that needs to be fulfilled is The Feast of Tabernacles, The Great Tribulation could begin just after—or possibly at the start of—one of these weeklong **feast** seven years earlier, with The Rapture of the Church taking place just before that, possibly on one of The Feast of Trumpets, and just before the official start of The Great Tribulation. This would allow exactly seven Jewish calendar years for The Great Tribulation to end precisely at the start or end of The Feast of Tabernacles seven years later. And I offer these two possibilities even though it seems more likely to me that The Feast of Tabernacles starts The Millennium than ends The Great Tribulation.

And this is a lot of speculation. Still it appears to me that The Great Tribulation will start sometime in the seventh month on the Jewish calendar thereby incorporating the last three Biblically commanded Jewish 'holydays' at its conclusion. And it's clear that God is still using the Jewish calendar that He established for this purpose. And these Biblical 'holydays', New Moons, and Sabbaths are worthy of a **study** in themselves, but beyond what is covered here, they are beyond the general scope of this one. But this is enough for us to be able to place most of the raptures and events of The Great Tribulation.

Before you go on make sure your mind is fresh. And I mean if you're tired get some sleep before you read any further, because you'll need to be at your sharpest from here on. While we're still in Revelation 11—The Two Witnesses chapter—we're going to try to make some connections of midterm events from this chapter to ones in the second-half summary chapters and even all over The Bible. This **exercise** in the 'situating' of mid-term events will be quite a chore.

The **exercise** of one detail exposes many

Heb 5:14

So with evidently both 'past and future' **memorial** dates on the Jewish Calendar observably on schedule, and with probably two Jewish calendar leap years 'popping up' in a seven year period, we can count on enough time for all the events that must take place in The Beginning of Sorrows and The Days of Vengeance. And we can calculate that there will be from 6 to 12 days from the death of the Two Witnesses to The Abomination of Desolation. This is because there can be at most 1272 days, and as little as 1266 days in The Beginning of Sorrows (max. length is $385 + 355 + 355 + 177 = 1272$; min. length is $383 + 353 + 353 + 177 = 1266$). And subtracting the 1260 days of the living Ministry of the Two Witnesses leaves 6 to 12 days remaining. Then again, some of these 6 to 12 days could be lost in a delayed start of their

ministry at the beginning of The Great Tribulation. But worse than this, we will account for over a dozen major events that must fit at the end of The Beginning of Sorrows within this concluding 6 to 12 days. Still, we can expect that it will be a perfect fit.

One way to see that all of these events must fit into this brief period at the end of The Beginning of Sorrows is by the connection of three precepts in three places that all account for the same event and connect to the rest of them. One of these precepts that we have already passed by we are now ready to consider, and two others we will peek at now and in more detail later when we get to the accounts of the False Prophet's relationship with the Antichrist. The one we have passed by, easily enough overlooked, is in Chapter 11. It apparently connects with precepts in Chapter 13 and 17. These precepts work together to show that there is a lot more that's got to 'go down' besides The Two Witnesses before The Beginning of Sorrows can end. And they also provide another way we can see that the **second** and **third woe**—The 6th and 7th Trumpet Judgments—both 'wrap up' rather closely together in time. And they produce a chain of deductions that lead to the conclusion that The Rapture of the Two Witnesses is really the fourth rapture, and that it likely takes place about a common week after The Rapture of the 144,000 Jews, which is really the one in third place.

And I'll also interject here that you may find me at times overcautious in some of my conclusions, especially if you agree with me. This is for your sake. If any of this is new to you or contradicts your existing beliefs, you should first consider it speculation until you have had the time to **continue** to test and confirm it 'here and there' throughout The Word of God. Any true **revelation** should be able to be so tested and confirmed. And any conclusion reached in just one place is untrustworthy. I may **know** many **scriptures** that support a true **revelation** when I introduce it, but I have to assume for your sake that you don't. And this is likely the case with a lot of the precepts in this **study** from here on. And this is to get you used to the idea that, usually, speculation must endure scriptural 'cross-examination' for a while before it can be trusted. And remember, this is The Natural Progression of The Word of God.

Another good reason for this caution is that there is a lot of error out there to 'unravel'. For example, surely you've heard that some think it's Satan himself that possesses and thereby 'falsely resurrects' the Antichrist. This assumption is natural. Satan seems a likely suspect to occupy the dead body of the Antichrist. But there's a lot of evidence that indicates otherwise, foremost of which is that these two appear to operate independently after the resurrection, but also that they end up in different places come The Millennium. These different occupations and destinations can be traced in that the Antichrist is referred to as **the beast** while Satan is referred to by many other names including **the dragon**. And besides the efficiencies of independent operation, the best reason they remain independent is Satan's pride. It would be demeaning for him to confine himself in the body of the Antichrist if he doesn't have to. The same reasons and similar evidence applies to other spiritual **principalities and powers** against them being involved this way too. I see the strongest case as being that the resurrected Antichrist is human with a human spirit who, in some ways like Lazarus, takes a 'short vacation' in **spirit** from his **body**. We will **continue** to defend this

case as we go. So get ready, it's time to get **exercised**. I mean that as Paul means it in [Hebrews 5:14](#).

The **beast** described as 'ascending' *out of the bottomless pit* apparently reverses the presented order of the raptures of The Two Witnesses and of The 144,000 Jews

[Rev 11:7](#)

[Rev 17:8](#)

[Eph 3:10; 6:12](#)

[Rev 13:3](#)

When The Two Witnesses die, it should be noticed that it is...

...the beast that ascendeth out of the bottomless pit [that] shall make war against them, and shall overcome them, and kill them [Rev 11:7](#).

This **beast** is later described in the same terms where John records,

The beast that thou sawest was, and is not; and shall ascend out of the bottomless pit, and go into perdition: and they that dwell on the earth shall wonder... when they behold the beast that was, and is not, and yet is [Rev 17:8](#).

This 'dead then resurrected then eternally damned' **beast** is popularly called the Antichrist and is identified and described 'here and there' all over The Bible, though he is sometimes confused with Satan and other spiritual **principalities and powers** [Eph 3:10; 6:12](#), most all of which we will get to in this **study**, including some descriptions of him you have likely never **understood** before.

But here, this connection that **the beast** that 'ascends' **out of the bottomless pit** is both the 'resurrected' Antichrist and the one who kills The Two Witnesses gives reason to think that these two midtribulation raptures—The Rapture of the Two Witnesses and The Rapture of the 144,000 Jews—do not occur in the order in which they appear in Revelation, but actually take place in the reverse order. We will provide further support in the next section and in later sections for the idea that the Antichrist is indeed **the beast that ascendeth out of the bottomless pit**, but what we'll take notice of here, assuming he does, is that the Antichrist **shall... kill** The Two Witnesses, and evidently before he will be able to **kill them**, 'the spirit of the Antichrist' must first come **out of the bottomless pit** to 'reoccupy' (or just 'occupy') the body of the Antichrist—the body that has the **deadly wound** that is **healed** [Rev 13:3](#). And apparently it's Satan that will 'resurrect' and 'empower' the Antichrist at this time to **overcome** and **kill** The Two Witnesses. And contrary to popular opinion, this implies that Satan has just been **cast down** to Earth just before The Two Witnesses are killed. And this implies, as we will see, that The 144,000 must therefore already be gone to Heaven, even before The Two Witnesses are killed, necessarily a few days before these two are raptured. This is an involved **proof** and you may not likely **understand** it all your first or second time through, especially since we will in the process be **proving** a number of other things at the same time.

By-the-way, I don't consider it my job to make this easy for you—or even think that I can make it easy. I just hope to make it eventually possible—like God did with me. But I can tell you that it's unavoidably required that you are **patient, diligent, and continue** in **the word of truth** if you are to come to and be able to **prove** such **revelations**.

The Rapture of the 144,000 Jews is closely tied to Satan being cast out of Heaven, both of which must occur at least 3 ½ days before The Rapture of the Two Witnesses

Revelation 12

We're kind of getting ahead of ourselves again here, but this is inevitable with the 'dispersion' yet 'interconnectivity' of precepts in God's Word. It's an obstacle He expects us to deal with if we really want to **learn** more. We have already established that the Jewish people are represented by **a woman clothed with the sun, and the moon under her feet, and upon her head a crown of twelve stars** in Revelation 12. But we also need to establish that this woman's **child** is The 144,000 Jews who are introduced in Chapter 7 and are also seen at the beginning of Chapter 14 already raptured to Heaven. But our main focus on The 144,000 comes in the next section. However we have also already proven that The Rapture of the Church occurs before The 1st Seal Judgment is opened—before the **white horse** 'rides'. So this **woman** cannot represent 'The Church' as some believe. It must instead represent a 'minority subset' of Jews. And a 'division' of 144,000 Jews that are marked by God in their foreheads would fit the representation of **her child**. And the case for this will be made plenty strong enough as we go. Of course we must keep in mind that we are not really through proving any of The Raptures of The Great Tribulation until we place and distinguish all of them by this **continuing** method of identification, deduction, elimination, etc.

Suffice it to say for now that those that consider this **child of the woman** to be The Church seen at the time of her midtribulation rapture—and again, there are those who do—are lost in that they have too little sight of the other raptures, not to mention other mid-term events, though they have at least found one of the five midtribulation raptures, four of which are near The Abomination of Desolation. And this confusion is no great **shame**, because the rest of you should be discarding some of your similar or worse 'endeavors into misinterpretation' too before we're done, unless of course, and even worse, you have not even endeavored to consider any —brand new Christians excepted.

And I mean I need your honest attention. And most of you must admit that you are, by and large, lost in the Book of Revelation before you are ready to begin 'sorting it out'. And although it's not usually as serious a case of confusion for some **teachers**, this includes them too. It applies even to those who already **understand** that The Millennium hasn't happened yet and that it's still to be preceded by The Great Tribulation where Satan and the Antichrist 'run amuck' for seven years while God 'pounds down' from Heaven, and who also **know** that all of this is

preceded by the pretribulation Rapture of the Church. And I **know** this level of confusion is common even among **teachers** because they have created terrible 'messes' that need 'cleaning up', and that these 'messes' remain unrecognized and make it impossible to adequately defend their generally correct stand on this 'holy ground'. And I would only be glad to find someone to **prove** me wrong on this point, anyone. But unfortunately, the other 'camps' and their 'messes' are evidence enough that this is at least generally true.

So until we get through all the **proof**, you'll have to trust me when I tell you that that the **child** represents The 144,000 Jews. And there is another more important point that we'll have to assume to be true at this point that will bear on the order of events. I suspect that Satan will not be allowed or even want to resurrect and empower the Antichrist until after there has been a **war in heaven** and he **is cast out** and **down** to Earth [Rev 12:4-12](#). And no, Satan isn't already 'cast out' of Heaven as some believe. We will confirm that this event happens just before The Abomination of Desolation in the middle of The Great Tribulation. He is actually now still 'on speaking terms' with God and technically still in 'good standing'. And he may still visit God's Throne in Heaven whenever he wants—especially to continue in his role as **the accuser of our brethren** [Rev 12:10](#).

And we shouldn't pass up noticing where it is recorded that Satan has this title. John tells us that Satan will remain very busy in this role up to the very point when he is 'thrown out' of Heaven. John records,

...the accuser of our brethren is cast down, which accused them before our God day and night [Rev 12:10](#).

This shows that Satan loses access to God to be our **accuser** near the middle of The Great Tribulation when He is **cast down** from Heaven and confined to Earth. And just after this is when Satan 'chases' **the woman** who is seen to **fly into the wilderness** [Rev 12:14](#), which we **know** is just after The Abomination of Desolation. And yes I know, some of your heads are already spinning. But get a grip. And let's go on.

So this could be considered **proof** enough that Satan is not **cast down** until just before The Abomination of Desolation. And I don't see him giving up his access to God to 'accuse us' until just before then either. Because even though after this 'expulsion' he can break just about any rule he wants, He can only do so confined on the Earth, and without access to God to 'accuse us' anymore. But I expect that this will make him free to, first of all, 'resurrect' and 'empower' the Antichrist. I mean one of the reasons why this will be the worse time ever is because Satan will have cut his ties to God and will no longer have to stay within his original 'boundaries', except again that he will be confined to the Earth. So before Satan is **cast out** he will not likely jeopardize his access to God to 'accuse us', but just after he is **cast down** he will have nothing more to lose. And I expect that the timing will be perfect to facilitate the 'resurrection' of the Antichrist.

Necessarily connected to these circumstances, and also developed more in the next section, is that The 144,000 Jews—'the child of the woman'—must be raptured very near the time Satan is **cast down**. We can tell this because

after arriving on Earth, Satan will be seen to have no more 'predisposition' to pursue The 144,000 Jews whom he had formerly resolved to **devour** [Rev 12:4](#), and will instead pursue the rest of the Jews—**the woman**—showing in this way that The 144,000 will have already been taken to Heaven out of his reach [Rev 12:13](#). So, if 'the spirit of the Antichrist' cannot be 'resurrected' **out of the bottomless** pit until Satan is **cast out** of Heaven, and if 'the spirit of the Antichrist' also must be 'resurrected' before he can **kill** the Two Witnesses, and if The Two Witnesses aren't raptured until 3 ½ days after being killed by the 'resurrected' Antichrist, and if Satan is no longer looking for The 144,000 when he arrives on Earth because they must be already gone, then The 144,000 Jews must be raptured at least 3 ½ days or so before The Two Witnesses are raptured near the end of The 6th Trumpet/ 2nd Woe.

The order of events before and after Satan arrives on Earth

[Rev 12:13-17](#)

[Rev 12:9](#)

[Rev 13:6](#)

[2 Thes 2](#)

John's report that Satan pursues **the woman**—the remaining Jews—when he arrives on Earth ([Rev 12:13](#)) cannot be the first thing he does. In fact it's not even the first thing he does in his agenda to 'persecute the Jews' which is what the account in Chapter 12 is all about. I mean when John reports that after Satan arrives he 'pursues' **the woman**, he is not giving us an account of 'consecutive events', but simply making clear that when Satan arrives on Earth that The 144,000 are already gone, which gives us another clue that helps in the placement of all the other events around this time.

And in order to determine the actual order of events we must first gather them all together from where their descriptions are 'dispersed' and use the clues with them to put them in the right order as we're already starting to do. What we'll find is that the first thing Satan does after his 'ouster' from Heaven, in order to facilitate his plan to 'devour' as many Jews as possible, among other agendas, has got to be that he 'raises the Antichrist from the dead', 'empowering' him to kill Jews and Christians.

The second thing—or the first concerning persecuting the Jews—should be that he then immediately directs the Antichrist, having been raised **out of the bottomless pit**, to **kill** the Two Witnesses. And 3 ½ days later, having by then deceived **the whole world** [Rev 12:9](#), and garnered its praise and worship by killing The Two Witnesses, not to mention having 'risen from the dead', the Antichrist will be ready to 'institute' the support necessary to go after all Jews and Christians, and some more Muslims too for that matter, as we will see. This is when **the second woe**, and shortly after **the third woe**—The 6th and 7th Trumpet Judgments—and The Beginning of Sorrows will finally be ready to end.

At this point Satan, using these and other deceptions, will have 'paved the way' for the Antichrist to get away with...

...blasphemy against God, to blaspheme his name, and his tabernacle [Rev 13:6](#).

This is when Paul tells us that the Antichrist enters The Temple in Jerusalem saying that **he is God** [2 Thes 2:4](#). Jesus adds that this is when the Jews **flee**

[Mat 24:15-21](#). And John makes clear that Satan 'unsuccessfully pursues' those who **flee** [Rev 12:13-17](#).

But failing in this 'pursuit' too, as he fails to get The 144,000, Satan's really going to be mad as he goes after the 'stragglers' or 'misdirected' Jews, and also after all the 'baby' Gentile Christians. I mean none of them can be much more than **babes** in Christ because they can't have been **saved** very long, and they won't even have the **earnest** of The Spirit to **guide** them the way we do now. But as Gentiles were surely **saved** in **other ages** before The Age of Grace without this **earnest**, don't underestimate God's ability to **save** simply by His 'displays' of His **power** and **wrath**. Gentiles in the past, without the 'indwelling help' of The Spirit, surely ended up in **Abraham's Bosom** to hear Jesus' preaching there, many simply only because of the reports of such past 'displays' —which we will also get the chance to marvel at some more throughout this **study**, but much more, God willing, in [The Ages of Creation study](#). And besides, no one really needs to escape the Antichrist. They just need to keep their **patience** and **faith**, and **endure unto the end**.

[The Dozen Crucial Events in the approximately weeklong transition scenario from The Beginning of Sorrows to The Days of Vengeance](#)

Let's go over this sequence of events again, adding some other significant events that are involved too. These are what I will refer to as [The Dozen Crucial Events in the Weeklong Transition Scenario from The Beginning of Sorrows to The Days of Vengeance](#). They are:

- 1) The Slaying of the Antichrist about 3 days before...
- 2) The Rapture of the 144,000 Jews at the same time as...
- 3) The War in Heaven when Satan and his angels are cast to Earth followed by...
- 4) The Resurrection of the Antichrist out of the Bottomless Pit followed by...
- 5) The Slaughter of the Two Witnesses by the armies of the Antichrist followed by...
- 6) The Worldwide Celebration of the Slaughter of the Two Witnesses for 3 ½ days where the stage is set for The Absolute Enforcement of the Worship of Satan and the Antichrist led by the False Prophet culminating in...
- 7) The Resurrection and Rapture of the Two Witnesses who probably will have been preaching to the spirits of Jews in **Abraham's bosom** for the last 3 ½ days, quickly followed by...
- 8) The Midterm Great Earthquake which ends The 6th Trumpet Judgment/ 2nd Woe which is likely synchronized with...
- 9) The Rapture of the Dead Jews to Israel—their bodies coming from the grave and their spirits from **Abraham's bosom**—followed by...

10) The Celebration of the Eternal Kingdom of God and of Christ in Heaven which

concludes The 7th Trumpet Judgment/ 3rd Woe and The Beginning of Sorrows

and is followed by...

11) The Abomination of Desolation where the Antichrist enters The Temple in

besieged Jerusalem to proclaim himself to be God, which marks the initiation of

his 42 months of **power** and The Absolute Enforcement of the Worship of Satan

and the Antichrist while also signaling...

12) The Flight of the Jews to their 1260 days of 'sanctuary' during the 42 months of

the Antichrist's power in The Days of Vengeance, their flight likely aided by the

confusion caused by the immediately preceding Midterm Great Earthquake and

by all those dead Jews 'showing up alive out of nowhere'.

And a four! (We're exercising, remember?)

Revelation 11-13

Luke 21:20

So, very near the time that The 144,000 go up, Satan is **cast down**, and in this scenario this is at least 3 ½ days before the end of **the second woe**, The 6th Trumpet Judgment, if indeed Satan's 'expulsion' from Heaven is required before he is able to 'resurrect' and 'empower' the Antichrist's about three-day-old dead body, so that the Antichrist can then, being just 'resurrected' **out of the bottomless pit... kill** The Two Witnesses and celebrate his 'resurrection' and their death, after which **a great earthquake** ends The 6th Trumpet Judgment and The 2nd Woe, followed **quickly** by a short period of time for a 'heavenly celebration' including the obvious **thanks** for the fact that Satan and his angels are finally forever banished from Heaven. But there is also the just as obvious **Woe to the inhabitants of the earth** because of Satan's new and time-limited reign on Earth that begins either when Satan 'resurrects' the Antichrist a little more than 3 ½ days before The Two Witnesses are raptured or at The Abomination of Desolation just following—that's debatable. The **woe** and the **thanks** of all this we will endeavor to envision in appreciably more detail before we're done with this section, as well as in later sections.

Another likely deduction we could make here is that the Antichrist's 'Jerusalem-surrounding' **armies** [Luke 21:20](#) must arrive with the initial mission to **make war against** The Two Witnesses ([Rev 11:7](#)). And this could be quite a revealing detail as we will see. These **armies** must also be the ones that **shall destroy the city and the sanctuary** [Dan 9:26](#), after which the Antichrist will 'camp' in Jerusalem and there establish his **palace** [Dan 11:45](#), as we will also see. And this is the time when **he** will 'busy himself' with his **war with the saints** ([Dan 7:20-25](#); [Rev 13:6-7](#)), endeavoring to kill

as many Jews and Christians as he can find. And this should include some of the ones who 'show up out of nowhere' in Israel by rapture which I'm guessing will be just after the 'disorienting **great** shake-up' provided by God at the end of The 6th Trumpet Judgment, with all the resulting confusion facilitating the escape of some of them too, if they're sufficiently 'hasty'.

Still, the Antichrist will have worldwide support for this greatest holocaust ever against Jews and Christians because, after he is 'resurrected' and kills the Two Witnesses, he will enter The Temple in Jerusalem and understandably get away with declaring himself to be the supreme authority of the World. But this act should be recognized by some Jews in Israel as their final signal to **flee** for their lives, and it should also be a 'heads-up' for others, both Jews and Gentile Christians all around the World, to try to hide. We will also see that the Antichrist will finish off the Muslim World around this time because they will have been rendered helpless by God in The 6th Seal Judgment and by then will have no one left who can defend them.

Backwards now... stay with the count!

Rev 11:14

Rev 13:3,15

Rev 11:7

Rev 17:8

Heb 5:14

Let's go through this one more time working backwards from a logical perspective, because several different views of all this can only help. We **know** the Antichrist will not have the ultimate supreme authority to pursue Jews, etc, until after he enters The Temple in Jerusalem to commit The Abomination of Desolation. And he cannot enter The Temple in Jerusalem until the dead Jews are raptured there and get their chance to escape. I'm guessing this rapture will happen when the 7th Trumpet sounds—a prediction I will further reinforce along the way. But this **third woe** cannot begin until The Ministry of the Two Witnesses is **past** [Rev 11:14](#). And The Ministry of the Two Witnesses cannot conclude until they are raptured 3 ½ days after **the beast** [the Antichrist] **that ascendeth out of the bottomless pit shall kill them** [Rev 11:7](#). And **the beast** will not be able to **kill** these two Jewish Witnesses without already having been 'resurrected' and given **power** by **the dragon**—which is **Satan** ([Rev 12:9](#); [13:2,5,7](#)). And for 'effect', **the dragon** will wait about 3 days before he will 'resurrect' and 'empower' **the beast**. This is when John **saw** that **his deadly wound [with a sword] was healed... and [he] did live** [again] [Rev 13:3,14](#). This is also **when they behold the beast that was, and is not, and yet is** [Rev 17:8](#), likewise referring to when he is newly 'raised from the dead', and when he is raptured **out of the bottomless pit** ([Rev 11:7](#); [17:8](#)).

By-the-way, I'm not counting the Antichrist's 'rapture' as one of The Raptures of The Great Tribulation because it's not of a group, and it's presumably initiated by Satan, not God. And again, all these conclusions are further accounted for in the next couple of sections.

Also Satan would not likely be sharing any accolades at this time unless he was being acknowledged as responsible for 'resurrecting' and 'empowering' **the beast**. And logically, I don't think God will allow Satan to 'revive' and 'empower' the Antichrist until after he is **cast out** of Heaven to Earth in the **war in heaven** [Rev 12:7-12](#). Neither is it likely that Satan will compromise His access as **the accuser of our brethren... before our God** until he is

cast down and he no longer has access to accuse us anymore ([Rev 12:10](#)). We will make the case in the next section that Satan will be **cast unto the earth** directly because he is preparing to **devour** The 144,000 Jews which God certainly will not allow. So when Satan is finally confined to the Earth, The 144,000 Jews must already be in Heaven because he will no longer be focusing on them ([Rev 12:13](#)), but on all other Jews and Christians ([Rev 12:17](#); [13:7](#)), and on ruling the World through the Antichrist **as God** [2Thes 2:4](#). And when Satan finds himself newly confined to the Earth, if he should happen to find, appropriately enough, a 'not-too-long dead' Antichrist that he can 'resurrect' in order to 'put him through his steps', he undoubtedly will. And we will oversee this 'workout' more 'rigorously' in the next section too.

By-the-way, what would you call someone who is put through a step by step regimen repeatedly? Yes, **exercised** [Heb 5:14](#). And you have just been so engaged. And if you're all warmed up and don't need a 'breather', let's not quit now because we've really only just started.

[Revelation 10-11 conclude The Beginning of Sorrows and precede the six, time-synchronized 'second-half summaries' of The Days of Vengeance in Chapters 12-18 with some 'overlapping' of the midterm events](#)

It is important to emphasize at this point that Revelation 10 and 11 stage a significant departure from the predominantly sequential presentation of events that begins in Chapter 1. Still, the event that arguably ends The Beginning of Sorrows, The 7th Trumpet Judgment, sounds at the very end of Chapter 11. However it becomes more and more apparent that it sounds shortly after some of the events described in the 'second-half summary' chapters—Chapters 12-18—including The Slaying of the Antichrist, The Rapture of the 144,000 Jews, The War in Heaven, and The Resurrection and Empowering of the Antichrist. And these 'second-half summary' chapters also cover other midterm events that occur just after The 7th Trumpet Judgment including John's description of the most unmistakable markers of the midpoint, The Flight of The Jews and The Abomination of Desolation.

These 'second-half summary' chapters also cover all the other events which span the bulk of time of the second half such as The Sanctuary of the Jews **prepared of God** for 1260 days, The Administration of the Antichrist for 42 months, and various other angelic activities that effect the Earth that are initiated from Heaven including The Administration of The Seven Plague Judgments, and The Ministry of the Herald Angels. Further complicating matters is The Ministry of the False Prophet of which we have multiple descriptions.

So I see the events in each of these 'second-half summary' chapters as occurring more or less simultaneously, with the exceptions that Chapters 15 and 16 function together as one 'second-half summary' and that the same could be argued for Chapters 17 and 18—making only 5 summaries if this is the case—though these last two chapters seem to include two different perspectives. So all 5 of these different perspectives together, or 6 if you prefer, cover all the major midterm events that are not included in Chapters 10-11 as well as all the events spanning the entire second half. But it should be acknowledged that these summaries don't match up exactly in time, just closely, depending on which of the many midterm events and Great

Tribulation-ending events that they do or do not describe. But all of the events in these seven chapters can be **understood** to fit within the same period—between The Slaying of the Antichrist, about a week or so before The Abomination of Desolation, and Armageddon. And again, the events of Chapters 10-11 precede in time the events in the second-half summary chapters for the most part, except for some 'overlapping' of the midterm events. We have already seen one example of this 'overlap' in The Resurrection of the Antichrist **out of the bottomless pit**. This event is seen one way or another in both Chapters 11 and 13 with further clarification in Chapter 17. And we will **continue** to follow up connections like these which further reinforce all these conclusions. And here we go.

...and all the world wondered after the beast...

Rev 11:7-19

Rev 13:3-8

Rev 12:9

Another 'triple connection' can be seen by comparing in Chapter 11 when...

...they that dwell upon the earth shall rejoice over [The Two Witnesses because] the beast that ascendeth out of the bottomless pit [will make] war against them, and... kill them... [Rev 11:7-10](#)...

...to in Chapter 13 when the Antichrist's...

...deadly wound was healed: and all the world wondered after the beast [or the Antichrist]. And they worshipped the dragon [Satan] which gave power unto the beast: and they worshipped the beast, saying, Who is like unto the beast? who is able to make war with him? ...And it was given unto him to make war with the saints, and to overcome them [evidently starting with the Two Witnesses]: and power was given him over all kindreds, and tongues, and nations. And all that dwell upon the earth shall worship him... [Rev 13:3-8](#)

And this 'joyful state' of international affairs at the end of The Beginning of Sorrows also appears to be connected to a single cause **revealed** in Chapter 12, which is that **Satan... deceiveth the whole world [Rev 12:9](#)**, evidently mainly by 'resurrecting' the Antichrist who kills The Two Witnesses.

The connection between the beginning of The Eternal Kingdom of God and of Christ and the voice of the angel proclaiming 'the mystery of the seven thunders'

Rev 11:15

Rev 10:1-7

Rev 12:10-12

Arguably the 'biggest triple connection' within these 'second-half summary' chapters involves The 7th Trumpet Judgment. In Chapter 11, during this 3rd Woe, John hears...

...the seventh angel sounded; and there were great voices in heaven, saying, The kingdoms of this world are become the kingdoms of our Lord, and of his Christ; and he shall reign for ever and ever [Rev 11:15](#).

This is a big event. John reports that The 24 Elders start worshipping and ***give... thanks***. And it evidently has something to do with what The 2nd Woe's ***mighty angel... cried*** back in Chapter 10. All we ***know*** is that ***when he had cried, seven thunders uttered***, because John was forbidden to tell us what the ***seven thunders uttered***. This remains a ***mystery*** because it is still ***'hid in God'*** as far as I ***know***. But this ***mighty angel*** does tell us that it has something to do with ***when there should be time no longer***, and to do with ***when*** this ***mystery of God*** is ***finished***, telling us that...

...in the days of the voice of the seventh angel [the third woe], when he shall begin to sound, the mystery of God should be finished [Rev 10:1-7](#).

Sounds about right. At the sounding of The 7th Trumpet, time will be up for Satan in Heaven and up for whatever else holds back the establishment of The Eternal Kingdom of God and of Christ. At this midterm event the 'last hand' will be 'dealt'. But we should ***understand*** that this is really only the point when The Eternal Kingdom of God and of Christ will begin in Heaven, because we will see that Earth is ***given*** to Satan and the Antichrist and will not be fully controlled by God for another 42 months. In the meantime, getting rid of Satan and His angels from Heaven will be more than enough cause for celebration up there. And again, it will be, ***Woe to the inhabitants of the earth***, at least for ***a time, times and a half***.

But is it possible that a celebration like this happens twice? I ask because it seems that the same celebration implied to be coming in Chapter 10 and identified as happening in Chapter 11 seems also to be taking place in the next chapter. In Chapter 12 John also hears ***a loud voice saying in heaven, Now is come... the kingdom of our God, and the power of his Christ***, adding that everyone in Heaven should ***rejoice [Rev 12:10-12](#)***. Of course it makes more sense that these three proclamations are about the same event, only from different perspectives, and that this event can also be used to connect these chapters together in time, which we will do more of in the next section.

All these connections are clues we will have to keep our eyes on, and add to as we ***continue*** to use them to help us establish the order of events in the transition from The Beginning of Sorrows to The Days of Vengeance. And we must be able to confirm that this order of events stands up to ***continued*** 'cross examination' in the whole Word of God. All this is necessary to help us place the three remaining midtribulation raptures, and help us more clearly ***understand*** our way through this most difficult to decipher set of chapters in The Book of Revelation.

The 24 Elders report that The 7th Trumpet Judgment brings

- 1) The time of greater wrath,
- 2) The time to judge the dead,
- 3) The time to reward the God-fearing, and
- 4) The time to destroy the destroyers of the Earth

Rev:11:16-18

Now we'll direct our attention in Chapter 11 more closely to what The 24 elders are doing during The 7th Trumpet Judgment. John sees that...

...the four and twenty elders, which sat before God on their seats, fell upon their faces, and worshipped God, Saying, We give thee thanks, O Lord God Almighty, which art, and wast, and art to come; because thou hast taken to thee thy great power, and hast reigned. And the nations were angry [at God], and [1] thy wrath is come, and [2] the time of the dead, that they should be judged, and [3] that thou shouldest give reward unto thy servants the prophets, and to the saints, and them that fear thy name, small and great; and [4] shouldest destroy them which destroy the earth Rev 11:16-18.

Indeed, these are the four things that would be expected to be the result of the kingdoms of this World becoming The Eternal Kingdom of God and of Christ. But these things should not be expected to be all finalized at this point. We should expect them instead to be **finished** through the period of judgment that this celebration initiates, The Days of Vengeance.

The time of greater **wrath**

That **wrath is come**, again, can only mean an escalated version of it, as this has already been declared in The Seal Judgments. And this is how The Days of Vengeance is compared to The Beginning of Sorrows. It will be as if **wrath** hadn't even started yet in comparison.

The time to **judge** the **dead**

Daniel 12

Ezekiel 37

Revelation 11:13-14

That **the time of the dead, that they should be judged** is come means several things, much of which we will 'unearth' in later sections, but the first of which is likely the immediate 'disinterment' of a multitude of Jews who immediately 'materialize' in Israel so they can 'choose' their 'judgment'. They must be 'exhumed' prior to the 'revived' Antichrist's arrival to 'desecrate' and **destroy** The Temple in Jerusalem, and Daniel's record indicates it is very close to that time—close enough to be one of the markers for it. All this is why I see The 7th Trumpet Judgment as the 'shout and trump of God' for The Rapture of the Dead Jews. It's in Daniel 12 that an angel

fitting the description of Gabriel the Archangel tells **the prophet** that one of the signs that The Days of Vengeance are ready to start is that...

...many of them that sleep in the dust of the earth shall awake, some to everlasting life, and some to shame and everlasting contempt [Dan 12:2](#).

More details of this event are found in [Ezekiel 37](#), and we will 'make many bones about it' in [SECTION 9](#).

For now let's consider this. Without a doubt, within **the same hour** are contained The Rapture of the Two Witnesses to Heaven and a midterm **great earthquake** along with some major damage to the City of Jerusalem ([Rev 11:11-13](#)). And this **great earthquake** could serve as a perfect 'diversion' that should actually protect the Jews from the **armies** of the Antichrist. I mean these **armies** don't just appear out of nowhere. They must be already surrounding Jerusalem at the blowing of The 7th Trumpet. And this Trumpet may also be 'blown' within this **same hour** too, but no later than **quickly** thereafter ([Rev 11:14](#)). So what the Archangel Gabriel must be implying is that The Abomination of Desolation is a critical point when most Jews in Israel will either finally recognize their true Messiah and live forever—even if they are killed because they don't **flee**—or submit to the Antichrist and eventually suffer eternal punishment one way or another. And Gabriel also implies that this is when these formerly **dead** Jews will arrive. And it fits that these 'resuscitated' Jews will be initially protected by God by being raptured to Israel just after this **great earthquake** and into all the chaos and confusion that follows it.

But whenever they are transported to Israel, I expect God will protect all the Jews in Israel up to The Abomination of Desolation. And though I am still 'sidestepping' the Calvinism v. Arminianism debate here, I expect God will go out of His way to give all Jews in Israel what they must perceive as their choice to accept the true Messiah or the false one. And I mean it may be possible that some Jews could die just before this point, in the **great earthquake** for example, and 'yoyo' right back up from **Abraham's Bosom** to Israel. I'm hoping to eventually hear a few stories about 'wild rides' like this anyway. But one thing is sure. This Midterm Great Earthquake surely will not rob any of them of this opportunity. It will more likely protect them and aid in their escape from the Antichrist.

And if you don't think that God can and will deliver every Jew in Israel one way or another during such an earthquake, you don't **know** Him that well yet. Indeed, another key to figuring out all this is getting to **know** Him and **his ways** because, generally speaking, He never changes. And if this **study** doesn't do it for you, I'm hoping you can get to know Him even better in my next **study**.

The time to **reward** the 'God-fearing', and to **destroy them which destroy the earth**

[Rev 11:16-18](#)
[Daniel 12:3](#)

[Phil 2:12-14](#)
[Mat 5:19](#)

[2 Peter 1](#)
[2 Timothy 4:8](#)

[Isaiah 9:7](#)

And that...

[God] ***shouldest give reward unto... them that fear thy name, small and great; and shouldest destroy them which destroy the earth... [Rev 11:18](#)***

...is also to be expected. It is in The Raptures of The Great Tribulation that God will ***give reward*** to those who ***fear*** His name. Also throughout The Great Tribulation He will ***destroy them which destroy the earth***. And we will talk more about the administration of God's ***reward*** and how He will ***destroy them which destroy the earth*** throughout the rest of this ***study***. But starting with the ***reward***, we can ***understand*** here that God will only ***give reward*** to whom it is due. And we can ***understand*** that there are different kinds of ***reward***. Paul, for example, speaks of a ***crown*** that is available for each of us to receive. And there are also implications that such ***crowns*** come in varying 'scales of brilliance'. So no, I don't see it that we'll all get the same kind. Surely some of us will get much nicer ones than others. And some may not even get one, or much of one, because though you don't have to earn your ***salvation***, you do have to be worthy of your ***reward*** or the ***reward*** would be meaningless.

Do a New Testament KJV search of ***crown*** at blbclassic.org and you should find at least several different attributes of ***crowns***. And I mean that you could have more than one of them. Or maybe the one you get can be 'layered' with various rewards, or not. But I expect that because Jesus says that varying 'levels of obedience' to God will result in a corresponding scale of ***reward*** from ***the least*** to ***great in the kingdom of heaven [Mat 5:19](#)***, that this could also indicate the 'scale' in the 'brilliance' of ***crowns*** too. And there should be many other reasons for ***reward*** than the several attributes mentioned about ***crowns*** in The New Testament. Gabriel the Archangel tells us that...

...they that be wise shall shine as the brightness of the firmament; and they that turn many to righteousness as the stars for ever and ever [Dan 12:3](#).

This also gives us a picture of this 'scale of brilliance' which seems to go beyond just ***crowns***. And this implies that if you do little or nothing worthy of ***reward***, you can still be ***saved***, but you should expect little or no ***reward*** in comparison to those who by God's strength and Spirit do ***great*** things for Him. And I mean you should only expect a ***reward*** appropriate to what you ***do*** for Him. Yes, I ***know*** we are nothing and can do nothing without God. But I hope to show through the course of this ***study*** that this is more His 'experience'—not as much ours.

I 'do stuff'. And when I choose to 'do stuff' for Him I expect ***reward***—if it's truly for Him. And I ***know*** He doesn't need my help. But I also ***know*** I should choose to 'willingly obey' Him, because Paul says that just as you 'willingly obey' God, you should also...

...work out your own salvation with fear and trembling. For it is God which worketh in you both to will and to do of his good pleasure. Do all things without murmurings and disputings: That ye may be blameless and harmless, the sons of God, without rebuke, in the midst of a crooked and perverse nation, among whom ye shine as lights in the world; Holding forth the word of life; that I may rejoice in the day of Christ, that I have not run in vain, neither laboured in vain [Phil 2:12-14](#).

This is that scary part about 'working out your salvation'. If you don't **will** or 'want' or at least 'choose' to do God's **good pleasure**, you should be scared, because He must not be working in you. And I expect that because of Paul's warning about **murmurings and disputings**, and because of his warnings about 'running' and 'laboring' **in vain**, that you could be one of those that doesn't much feel like or even think about obeying or serving God. But I recommend that you get busy 'obeying' and 'serving' Him anyway, and in a growing fashion, or you will have something to be afraid of, or at least ashamed of.

But back to your **reward**. Differences in rewards are promised by Gabriel in Daniel 12:3 to be appropriate and forever distinguishable. And we **know** that The 24 Elders will get **crowns** that they will throw **before the throne** before the start of The Great Tribulation. But there is no mention of **crowns** in the descriptions of any of the other raptured groups that I am aware of, except that we hear mention of a **crown** or two in Revelation 2-3, and except that some of the raptured groups have clear leadership roles, while some roles are clearly priestly, and some are mixed. In other words, I would expect that **kings** or those who **rule** or **reign** will get **crowns**, but that those that **serve** in The Temple may not. However you could argue that everyone who is redeemed will get a **crown of life** [James 1:12](#); [Rev 2:10](#). But we should expect that every **crown** or **reward** will be unique, because each **crown** or **reward** comes conditionally. Those who do the **work** get them, and those who don't won't, and those who do more **work** must get better ones. And should it be any other way? And don't worry, I doubt we'll have the problem of too many 'chiefs' and not enough 'Indians', because relatively few will take this **truth** seriously enough. And by-the-way, I'm guessing God will give back the **crowns** to The 24 Elders as it would be unfitting for them not to wear one while others do. I'm sure not wearing one if they don't.

We should **continue** to **take heed** to these details, and not just to obtain **exceeding great and precious promises: that by these ye might be partakers of the divine nature** [2 Pet 1:4](#), including when you **experience** the **day dawn, and the day star arise in your hearts** [2 Pet 1:19](#), and including when you receive **a crown of righteousness, which the Lord, the righteous judge, shall give... at that day... unto all them... that love his appearing** [2 Tim 4:8](#), but we should also **continue** because we would say to our God that we will stand among **them that fear thy name**. As such, and at the risk of constantly reminding you of what the Apostle Peter endeavors to constantly remind us of, I requote,

Wherefore the rather, brethren, give diligence to make your calling and election sure: for if ye do these things, ye shall never fall [2 Pet 1:10](#).

And the **day star** will not only **arise in your hearts**, but it will from now on **grow** brighter and brighter without end. And Isaiah assures us that,

Of the increase of his government and peace there shall be no end [Isa 9:7](#).

And there is no better **study** that can put you in touch with your ultimate and true 'civic duty' than of end times **prophecy**. The picture only gets 'brighter and brighter' for those who **continue**, double meaning intended as usual.

What John identifies as **the great city, which spiritually is called Sodom and Egypt, where the Lord was crucified** cannot be Sodom or Egypt, but must be Jerusalem which represents all of Israel, and what he also **spiritually** identifies as **MYSTERY, BABYLON THE GREAT, THE MOTHER OF HARLOTS AND ABOMINATIONS OF THE EARTH** cannot be Mecca or old Babylon, representing all the Muslim World, or even Washington, D.C., representing the 'decadent' United States, but must instead be Vatican City representing the worldwide Catholic Church

[Rev 11:8](#) [Gen 13:10](#) [Gen 19](#) [Rev 17](#) [Exodus; Joshua](#)

It is also significant to notice in Revelation 11 that Jerusalem is identified as,

...the great city, which spiritually is called Sodom and Egypt, where also our Lord was crucified [Rev 11:8](#).

And this cannot be referring to the locations of either Sodom or Egypt, but instead to the city of Jerusalem and the people of Israel who at this time will have taken on some of the characteristics historically associated with both Sodom and Egypt. The only place where **Sodom** and **Egypt** are used in the same verse elsewhere in **scripture** is in [Genesis 13:10](#) where Moses records,

Lot lifted up his eyes, and beheld all the plain of Jordan, that it was well watered every where, before the LORD destroyed Sodom and Gomorrah, even as the garden of the LORD, like the land of Egypt, as thou comest unto Zoar.

And Israel will again, as it is now starting to do, and till the end of The Beginning of Sorrows, enjoy lush desirable vegetation and prosperity, before it's 'wiped out' again. This conclusion will be supported and expanded further in [SECTION 9](#).

But there are other popular reputations owned by **Sodom** and **Egypt**. As for the character of **Sodom**, it is associated with the worst kind of debauchery as you may remember from the story of Lot ([Gen 19](#)). And **Egypt** brings to mind the story of some hard-hearted tyrants who enslave an

arguably 'lost and faithless' people for centuries until they are ultimately, no thanks to them, delivered back home by Moses and Joshua ([Exodus](#); [Joshua](#)). These kinds of associations imply that neither The 144,000 Jews nor The Two Witnesses will have immediate overwhelming success in winning Jews back to The Lord, just as the crucifixion of the Lord was not immediately successful for this purpose either. However I expect there will be some success in this respect near the end of The Beginning of Sorrows. We'll cover more evidence of this in [SECTION 9](#) too. And this brings up more associations.

There is another allegorical **woman** in Revelation 17 who is identified in a similar way that the city of Jerusalem is identified in Chapter 11. This is a 'style connection' between these two chapters and there are others we will discuss shortly. The similarity here is that they are obviously both cities that are described by John **spiritually**. John represents this second **city** as a **woman** that...

...upon her forehead was a name written, MYSTERY, BABYLON THE GREAT, THE MOTHER OF HARLOTS AND ABOMINATIONS OF THE EARTH [Rev 17:5](#).

Of course we can immediately see that this 'spiritual description' is offered as another **MYSTERY**. Still, since the start of The Protestant Reformation **her** identity has been assumed to be Vatican City. And we will **prove** this must be the case. In [SECTION 7](#) we will **prove** that no **city** in the Muslim World will be in a position to play this role, and that by scriptural identifications and the process of elimination that the only **city** that can is Vatican City. Yeah, we'll throw around a few supporting facts, but again, you could 'prove' just about any case with selected facts and limited **scripture**. So before you start 'heaping facts' onto whomever you think the **MOTHER OF HARLOTS** is, you should see the **proof** of who **she** is in The Word of God first. Then you won't need too many 'supporting facts'. Except that, according to Jesus, we should **all** be 'watching', and that in The Natural Progression of The Word of God, reasonable speculation is always fair game. However God has shown me, with the help of those who have gone before me, how we can remove the further necessity of 'far flung' speculation on this topic. And be **patient**. Wait for it. It's coming in [SECTION 7](#) with further support in [SECTION 8](#).

The 'state of the art' of end times **prophecy**

Rev 11:7; 17:8	1 Thes 5:21	2 Cor 10:17	Heb 5:12-14	John 12:49-50
Rev 10:7	John 8:31-32	Psalms 119	John 14:26	Mark 13:37
2 Peter 1	Psalms 34:2	Isaiah 9:7	John 16:13	

Getting back to the order of the events in the transition from The Beginning of Sorrows to The Days of Vengeance, one of the most important **revelations** in this **study** would be appropriate to review again right here. It's that one corrected error can change everything. For example, just one mistaken perception of mine in the above "Dozen Crucial Events" could change the scenario, at least a little. One way the order of events could change is if **the beast that ascendeth out of the bottomless pit that... shall... kill...** The Two Witnesses ([Rev 11:7](#)) is a different entity altogether

than the ***beast that... was, and is not; and shall ascend out of the bottomless pit, and go into perdition*** [Rev 17:8](#). If these are not the same ***beast*** I could be mistaken about the order of events. And in this case the raptures may really take place in the order that they appear in Revelation. Well, no, not really. This is not a good example of a correction that could change the order of events. Connections we have already covered—unless there are other misconceptions in them—still hold the order of events even with different 'beasts' involved. And the challenge I'm hinting at here is that there is—as far as I know—no popular examples of error concerning the order of these dozen events I can show you. Because I've never seen anywhere near so many events as this identified in order at the midpoint of The Great Tribulation. So if I am still blind to a misconception that would change the order, well, then I am. And my caution at this point comes from the fact that I am unaware of anyone who can or will help me get a clearer view. This is one of the reasons I am writing this ***study***. Such a perspective needs help. So I'm sharing it to get yours. But don't worry, there are many other popular misconceptions I have identified that will serve as good 'wild goose chases' in the remainder of this ***study***. I mean I intend to make you aware that they exist in abundance in the ***teachings*** you have already heard, but also that you can come to ***understand*** that they generally become increasingly minor or less consequential as you ***continue***. This too is part of The Natural Progression of The Word of God. And these 'misadventures' I intend to take you on will do more good than harm as long as I eventually explain the errors, and as long as you ***continue*** until the end. So stay on your toes.

By-the-way, another reason I am writing this ***study*** has little to do with you or me. I mean the order of the midtribulation raptures and whether it's the same or different 'beasts' is of no direct consequence to me because I plan to leave this Earth in The Rapture of the Church before all that. So it's more about helping those who are left behind, to whom it may become extremely consequential. The point is that my faith and hope is not only for you and me, but also in that these ***revelations*** of God will get from us to those left behind in time, which is another reason why we should ***work*** for such an end. And we will see plenty of serious consequences that Tribulation Jews and Gentiles will be better off made aware of in the next few sections.

Still, we should expect that some issues with the timescale of these midtribulation events, and with the order of a few of the events, and with the roles of Satan and the Antichrist, etc., may only be resolved for sure, say, at The Abomination of Desolation. After all, this is when ***the mystery of God*** will ***be finished*** [Rev 10:7](#). But when all is said and done, we have ***promises*** that any personal dangers to ourselves when we error are eliminated as we ***continue*** in ***the knowledge of God***. This is one of the remarkable ***promises*** from the Apostle Peter from [2 Peter 1](#). He tells us in this chapter that God's 'got our back' if we, ***giving all diligence, add and abound... in the knowledge of our Lord Jesus Christ***. And this makes sense because God will more likely protect those who are actively ***seeking*** to eliminate error in order to, as Paul says, ***Prove all things; [and] hold fast that which is good*** [1Thes 5:21](#). Or as Jesus says,

If ye continue in my word, then are ye my disciples indeed; And ye shall know the truth, and the truth shall make you free [John 8:31-32](#).

God's **promises** to look after you no matter what, but only **if** you **continue**, should give you a really secure and safe feeling. Or a really scary one **if** you have not really **continued** in His Word.

And you can think of this **study** in God's Word this way. It's 'state of the art'. And this is not really a boast—though I do **boast in The LORD [Psalms 34:2](#); [2 Cor 10:17](#)** that His **promises** to **teach me** (see [Psalms 119](#), for example), and **shew me things to come**, are **true**. But this makes this **boast** much more an admission of ignorance, because I don't ever, ever expect to stop 'growing' **in the knowledge of the Lord Jesus Christ**. Remember,

Of the increase of his government and peace there shall be no end [Isa 9:7](#).

This will require the increase of **knowledge**, etc., forever. And this means those of us who will live forever with Him will never stop improving and correcting our perspective of **the truth** in all areas. And with the 'skills' and 'exercise' ([Heb 5:12-14](#)) we practice in this **study**, you can begin right now. You can because we have the help of **the Holy Ghost** who **shall teach you all things, and bring all things into your remembrance [John 14:26](#)**, who is **the Spirit of truth** who **will guide you into all truth**, and more specific to this **study**, **he will shew you things to come [John 16:13](#)**. But He won't **if** you don't **continue**. And I tell you that **if** you can't come to a full **understanding** of this **study**, you can have no more than a comparably immature **understanding** of any other part of The Word of God. And you don't have to believe me to come to this **understanding**—only **understand** how I'm speaking for God.

And when dealing with the uncertainties of end times **prophecy**, keep in mind that God is not toying with us. As Peter put it, **we have not followed cunningly devised fables [2 Pet 1:16](#)**, and he adds,

We have also a more sure word of prophecy; whereunto ye do well that ye take heed [2 Pet 1:19](#).

This is serious business of a **sure** nature. Further, Jesus means it when He says,

For I have not spoken of myself; but the Father which sent me, he gave me a commandment, what I should say, and what I should speak. And I know that his commandment is life everlasting: whatsoever I speak therefore, even as the Father said unto me, so I speak [John 12:49-50](#).

And His command **to all** on the subject of **the end of the world** is plainly, **Watch [Mark 13:37](#)**, which requires that we **take heed** to this **more sure**

word of prophecy so we can have an idea of what we're looking at.

The finality of The 7th Trumpet Judgment

Rev 11:14

Mat 6:10

The divinely placed and celebrated finality of the administration of The 7th Trumpet is the conclusion to Chapter 11 which helps us make sense of all that has gone on up to that point. It is arguably the most significant transition in Revelation, heralded to be when...

...The kingdoms of this world are become the kingdoms of our Lord, and of his Christ; and he shall reign for ever and ever [Rev 11:14](#).

This implies that whatever 'heavenly influence' that had been exercised by Satan and his cohorts up to this point is over. And it means that all those left in Heaven are now united under God. This celebration will be appropriately heightened by the newly received 144,000 Jews and The Two Witnesses. And the celebration anticipates that after the completion of the final **forty and two months** of The Days of Vengeance, those left on Earth will also be united with those from Heaven when The Eternal Kingdom of Jesus Christ is established on Earth.

And The 7th Trumpet Judgment appears to be God's statement, if not the direct statement of The 24 Elders, that the close of the first half and the beginning of the second half of The Great Tribulation has come. On Earth, this last judgment of The Beginning of Sorrows should be a short reprieve and otherwise not too consequential. It is little more than the 'closing of the curtain' between the two 'acts' of this ultimate 'epic drama'. Nonetheless, I believe Jesus teaches us that the coming of this judgment should always be part of our prayers. His **instruction** is that we should pray,

Thy kingdom come. Thy will be done in earth, as it is in heaven [Mat 6:10](#).

Indeed The Eternal Kingdom of God and of Christ is already come in part, but obviously will show a fuller presentation at the midpoint of The Great Tribulation, and again at the end of The Great Tribulation, with unlimited **increase of his government and peace** continuing into and beyond The Millennium.

The symmetry of The Great Tribulation in The Book of Revelation

- 1) Rapture or raptures
- 2) Ceremonies of celebration, dedication, and commencement of judgment from Heaven
- 3) A set of 7 judgments on Earth
- 4) Repeat

2 Timothy 2:15

John's descriptions in Revelation 4-19 of God's coming kingdom show us specifically how it will finally **come**. In the process he reveals a structure and symmetry we can identify. This broad view reveals a 3-part, repeating sequence of events. Here's what I mean. Chapters 4-5 showcase, 1) The Rapture of the Church and more evidently, 2) The-24-Elder-led heavenly ceremony and celebration that also validates Jesus' following outpouring of 3) The Seal Judgments on the Earth beginning in Chapter 6. And near the conclusion of these judgments in Chapter 7 comes, 1) The Rapture of the Tribulation Gentiles followed by, 2) the ceremony of their dedication to service, and in Chapter 8, the **silence** and ceremony that serve to release, 3) The Trumpet Judgments in Chapters 8-11. And near the end of these judgments there are four more closely occurring, midtribulation raptures accounted for in Chapters 12-15 including The 144,000 Jews, The Two Witnesses, The Dead Jews, and The Tribulation Jews, each followed by 2) more ceremonies and celebrations including The Celebration of The Eternal Kingdom of God and of Christ, and also ceremonies of celebration and dedication for The 144,000 Jews and The Tribulation Jews. The pattern continues with the ceremony to initiate the final set of judgments in Chapter 15 followed by the execution of 3) The Plague Judgments in Chapter 16. So goes the thrice repeated pattern of first raptures, then ceremonies and celebration, and then 7 judgments.

We will also see that God will conclude it all with one more 'special cycle'. This is 1) The Final Harvest Rapture evidently followed by 2) the ceremony and celebration of The Marriage of The Lamb, and finally 3) the judgments involved in His Second Coming to Armageddon. And I'm guessing that The 1st and 2nd Resurrections have similar 'special cycles' of their own which we'll consider in the later sections.

We can also see an additional subtle two-part structural symmetry in the accounts of the 'ministers' of The Great Tribulation. Here's what I mean. The account of the evidently 1263 ½ days of the exploits of The Two Witnesses is found in Chapter 11 at the end of the descriptions of The Beginning of Sorrows, but their ministry must actually go on throughout this period. Similarly, the most descriptive account of the exploits of another 'minister' who could be considered The Great Tribulation's foremost 'spiritual deceiver', the False Prophet, also comes last, in Chapter 17-18, after all the other 'presentations' of The Days of Vengeance, though his 'ministry' must also span the entire period too. So this convention is used twice in Revelation, and in the same way in both halves of The Great Tribulation, each account helping us to properly **understand** the 'scope' of the other so to speak.

And all this symmetrical analysis is a more concrete example of what we are doing. We are **rightly dividing the word of truth** [2 Timothy 2:15](#). Primarily, it's a process of 'dismantling' it precept by precept and putting it back together with the clues that come along with all these precepts so we can arrange them all in their proper and otherwise unknowable 'order', except that we now also see that God constructs the scattered precepts in His Word into intelligible patterns that add meaning too. And these patterns and symmetries work together. Our most recent example is that the placement of the descriptions of the exploits of The Ministry of The Two

Witnesses (in Chapter 11) and The Ministry of the False Prophet (in Chapters 17 -18) are each given just before the conclusions of each half, or just before The Celebration of the Eternal Kingdom of God and of Christ in Heaven (at the end of Chapter 11), and just before The Marriage of The Lamb and The Second Coming of Christ to Armageddon (in Chapter 19). And I find the symmetry, analogies, and overall construction of the Book of Revelation beyond poetic. And the more sensitive you are to these designs in The Word of God, the more you will see them. And I am sure there is no limit to the discoverable design in the 'presentation' of His Word.

Still, at first glance, and for a while after that, The Word of God seems to be little better than 'disorganized'. Deeper **revelations** require **patience** and **exercise**, and enough time until you can 'handle' **strong meat**. Because the fact is that **strong meat belongeth to them that are of full age, even those who by reason of use have their senses exercised to discern both good and evil**. But this is a goal worth **working** for. Unfortunately, any further analysis of pattern and symmetry is not only beyond the scope of this **study**, it's still to a great extent beyond me. Still, I have faith that the more you simply gather and organize apparently 'disjointed' **scripture**, the more likely you are to find more of these **revelations** of pattern and symmetry that add higher meaning, and that transform apparent chaos into perfect order. And I believe that by the end of this **study** alone you can see yourself as **approved unto God, a workman that needeth not to be ashamed, rightly dividing the word of truth**, that is, **if** you're also willing to **continue** on beyond it.

The Midtribulation Raptures

Revelation 12:12

I have and will refer to five raptures that follow The Rapture of the Church (#'s 2 - 6) as midterm raptures or The Midtribulation Raptures. The Rapture of the 144,000 Jews, the fourth rapture **revealed** in Revelation, we are beginning to see is the third rapture chronologically. This leads us to conclude that The Rapture of the Two Witnesses, **revealed** third, must actually be the fourth rapture. And having already scrutinized to some extent the first, second, and fourth raptures, we will next delve deeper into the third rapture of The Great Tribulation, The Rapture of the 144,000 Jews. It is also a rapture of relatively few compared to most others, all Jews, and also a 'spiriting away' to a 'to die for' station in Heaven, except they won't have to die, ever.

The fifth also previously mentioned but not necessarily redemptive midtribulation rapture 'on trial', though not specifically mentioned in Revelation, is likely 'convened' at the sounding of The 7th Trumpet, and we will deliberate on this case mostly in [SECTION 9](#).

The sixth rapture and the last of the five midterm raptures is the climax of another midterm event following not too far behind The 7th Trumpet Judgment but surely after The Abomination of Desolation too, which we will also see exposed in the next section. It's a rapture you can really 'lose your head' over.

And in addition to the raptures, topics continuing though the next few sections include a rescue of Jews in Israel, but also some other judgments on Earth besides those initiated by God. And they are appropriately enough called 'judgments' too because their coming is heralded by God's as **Woe to the inhabitants of the earth** [Rev 12:12](#). This particular **Woe** is the focus of [SECTION 7](#) and [8](#). Our focus in the next section will be to **continue** to 'chart out' the transition from The Beginning of Sorrows to The Days of Vengeance.

SECTION 6 The Coming Midtribulation Raptures, Part 2:
The 144,000 Jews and The Tribulation Jews



CHART of the Transition from The Beginning of Sorrows to The Days of Vengeance
< > = SIMULTANEOUS OR POSSIBLE OUT OF ORDER EVENTS

Described Events	Implied Events	
Revelation 11 The Two Witnesses & The Beast	Revelation 12 The Woman, The Child & The Dragon	Revelation 13 The First & Second Beasts
The end of the massacre of 1/3 of Earth's population (from Ch. 9) and of The Ministry of the Two Witnesses at the end of The Second Woe or 6th Trumpet Judgment	Woman in labor Child born then raptured to Heaven < > Satan & angels lose war & cast to Earth	Beast's armies surround Jerusalem Beast killed by 'sword wound'
Witnesses killed in War with the Beast	Satan revives & empowers the Antichrist to plot to annihilate Jews & Christians & to rule the World & empowers the False Prophet to institute worldwide worship during 3 1/2 days of worldwide rejoicing	Beast dead about 3 days
Witnesses dead 3 1/2 days in Jerusalem while World celebrates	God's kingdom begins in Heaven	Beast rises from the dead
Resurrection and Rapture of Witnesses	Satan chases fleeing Woman but she escapes to 1260-days sanctuary	Worldwide celebration of the Dragon and Beast prepares the way for 42 months of World rule, the mark & worship of the Image of the Beast controlled by the Second Beast
2nd Great Global Earthquake	War on remnant Jews & Christians by Satan unleashed	God's kingdom begins in Heaven
7th Trumpet < Dead Jews Rapture >	Beast commits The Abomination of Desolation	God's kingdom begins in Heaven
God's kingdom begins in Heaven	Beast World rule begins & his War with the Saints peaks	Beast commits The Abomination of Desolation
Jews flee, or get caught and killed, or side with the Beast		
Decapitation of dissenters & war-kills by beast escalate		

CHART of 7 Distinguishing Features of The Midterm Raptures of The Great Tribulation							
X = Certain X = Uncertain BLANK = Certainly Not							
Raptures	From Grave	From Earth	Jews	Gen-tiles	To Earth	To Heaven	Saved
Tribulation Gentiles	X	X		X		X	X
The 144,000		X	X			X	X
Two Witnesses	X	X	X		X	X	X
Dead Jews	X	X	X		X		
Tribulation Jews	X		X			X	X

CHART Of Midterm Rapture Positions in the Main Sets of Events of the Great Tribulation			
Sets of Events	The Beginning of Sorrows	The Abomination of Desolation	The Days of Vengeance
Position			
Before		Dead Jews	
Beginning			Tribulation Jews
Middle	Tribulation Gentiles		
Near End	The 144,000		
End	Two Witnesses		

The new chart in this section is the [CHART of the Transition from The Beginning of Sorrows to The Days of Vengeance \(p.135\)](#) showing three parallel or synchronized accounts derived from Revelation 11, 12, and 13, each with specifically “described” and “implied” details of events in a transition period that must be about a week long, and these three accounts run chronologically from top to bottom in the three columns giving parallel outlines of this week. You should notice that there are specifically “described events” running continually from top to bottom because these events are taken directly from these chapters and they present the different perspectives within the same time period. The “implied events” that are inserted come from adjacent chapters or elsewhere in The Bible. One 'distant' reference is where the “Beast’s armies surround Jerusalem” inserted in Chapter 12. This event is described to take place before The Abomination of Desolation by Jesus in Luke 21 when compared to Matthew 24 and Mark 13. Another 'far flung' reference is the “Dead Jews Rapture” which is described in Ezekiel 37 and also placed near The Abomination of Desolation by Gabriel the Archangel in Daniel 12. We are already in the process of substantiating this graphic representation of God’s Word. And we will **continue** to do so throughout this section.

And since we’re still on The Midtribulation Raptures you should review the [CHART of 7 Distinguishing Features of the Midterm Raptures](#) and the [CHART of Midterm Rapture Positions in the Main Sets of Events of The Great Tribulation \(p.136\)](#) and the [TIMELINE of Raptures to Heaven and Earth in The Great Tribulation \(p.135\)](#) because we are still in the process of proving the accuracy of these graphic representations of God’s Word too. So, on we go.

The Rapture of the 144,000 Jews

Mat 18:10

Rev 7:3-4

CHART of 7 Distinguishing Features of the Rapture of the 144,000							
X=CERTAIN X = UNCERTAIN BLANK = CERTAINLY NOT							
Raptures	From Grave	From Earth	Jews	Gen-tiles	To Earth	To Heaven	Saved
The 144,000		X	X			X	X

CHART of The Rapture of the 144,000 in the Main Sets of Events of The Great Tribulation				
Sets of Events	Beginning of Sorrows	The Abomination of Desolation	The Days of Vengeance	Armageddon
Position				
Near End	The 144,000			

And still there is something else going on throughout the concluding half of The Beginning of Sorrows besides The Trumpet Judgments and the **continuing** Ministry of the Two Witnesses. That would be The Ministry of the 144,000 Jews. We don't get a lot of detail about the ministry of these Jews. They evidently survive the first six Seal Judgments 'on their own', though I would expect they would have the same angelic help that is available to us all, except that I imagine, like children ([Mat 18:10](#)), they get a little extra help too.

But they plainly get exclusive, perceptibly divine help in the second half of The Beginning of Sorrows. John reports,

...I heard the number of them which were sealed: and there were sealed an hundred and forty and four thousand of all the tribes of the children of Israel [Rev 7:4](#).

We are told that The 144,000 are represented by 12,000 from each of the 12 tribes of Israel. We also see from John's perspective that angels...

...sealed the [144,000] servants of our God in their foreheads [Rev 7:3](#).

So evidently their 'seals' will be visibly displayed on each of their foreheads. But again, besides being **the servants of our God**, we **know** little else about them. Still, I expect the Jews will **know** what they need to **know** about them when the time comes.

The 144,000 Jews in The 5th Trumpet Judgment

Rev 9:6

Rev 11:18

And they do 'pop up' again in John's narrative of The Trumpet Judgments. As before, we are not specifically told of any details involving any 'proactive service' on their part. But they are shown to be conspicuously enviable during the period of this judgment. As you may remember, John records,

...in those days [of the five-months-long 5th Trumpet Judgment which is The 1st Woe] **shall men seek death, and shall not find it; and shall desire to die, and death shall flee from them** [Rev 9:6](#).

This makes The 5th Trumpet Judgment about torment, not death. And I see this judgment as an appropriate 'foretaste of hell' and designed by God to provoke the hardest of hearts. Add to that the further provocation that The 144,000 will remain unharmed through it all—which implies nothing can harm them throughout their entire ministry—and I expect a **few** will get the message.

On the other hand, we already **know** that for the most part the presence of The 144,000 will, like The Two Witnesses, just further aggravate worldwide hatred of all things truly Godly. Surely these 144,000 will be a big part of the reason why **the nations were angry** at the end of The Trumpet Judgments ([Rev 11:18](#)). And the fact that all attempts to harm them will fail and that they will likely give all the credit to God should be especially exasperating to those who refuse to acknowledge God's sovereignty. However I should also mention here that there are reasons to believe that these **servants of our God** draw all this 'anger' without even knowing who The Son of God is. Again, be **patient**. The reasons for this 'delayed' **revelation** are coming.

An **angel... king** figuratively represented as a **star**, and some terrible **locusts** literal described as strange creatures that come out of **the bottomless pit** are **given power** by God to **torment** men **five months** and therefore cannot be machines in any way, shape, or form.

Rev 9:1-11
Ezekiel 1
Rev 4:6-9

Rom 12:2
1 Cor 9:22
Mat 24:7

Rev 20:1-3
Eph 4:7-10;
Job 2:1-2;

Heb 13:2
Rev 4-5
2 Cor 12:1-4

1 Cor 13:12
1 Cor 15:52-53

The 5th Trumpet Judgment starts when John sees **a star fall from heaven unto the earth**, and when, referring to the **star**,

...to him was given the key of the bottomless pit... [with which] he opened the bottomless pit [Rev 9:1-2](#).

We should recognize **him** to be a very bright angel on a mission. And there is another later event where angels are again described as **stars** that will make this angel of The 5th Trumpet hardly a 'twinkling' in comparison. The 'rendering' of this spectacular 'starry night' is 'canvassed' in the next section. Still, the 'meteoric mission' of the **star** of The 5th Trumpet, the one who will 'open' **the bottomless pit**, will certainly be remarkable. His job will be to release the tormenters. John sees that...

...there arose a smoke out of the pit, as the smoke of a great furnace; and the sun and the air were darkened by reason of the smoke of the pit. And there came out of the smoke locusts upon the earth: and unto them was given power, as the scorpions of the earth have power. And it was commanded them that they should not hurt the grass of the earth, neither any green thing, neither any tree; but only... men... And to them it was given that they should not kill them, but that they should be tormented five months: and their torment was as the torment of a scorpion, when he striketh a man [Rev 9:2-5](#).

And we get quite a lot of details as to the appearance of these tormenting **locusts**. John says,

...the shapes of the locusts were like unto horses prepared unto battle; and on their heads were as it were crowns like gold, and their faces were as the faces of men...

And though **they had hair as the hair of women**, we're not talking 'pretty' here, because,

...their teeth were as the teeth of lions. And they had breastplates, as it were breastplates of iron; and the sound of their wings was as the sound of chariots of many horses running to battle. And they had tails like unto scorpions, and there were stings in their tails: and their power was to hurt men five months [Rev 9:6-9](#).

Now these locusts have been popularly presumed to be 'attack helicopters'. But such a view is 'cherry-picked' and not compatible with the full view of what's going on here. There is no way these **locusts** could be any kind of machine or mechanism if you consider the whole picture, including the players involved, as we will.

By-the-way, speaking of strange creatures that are not 'pretty', around The Throne of God—or at other times seen transporting God elsewhere—are the **four living creatures** that by their descriptions don't sound too 'good-looking' either ([Eze 1](#); [Rev 4:6-9](#)). But no one thinks that they are 'helicopters' of some kind. They are plainly awesome and formidable **living creatures**. This tells us that God knows how to make wondrously incredible creatures. And this

reminds me of an insightful comment I heard years ago. It's that we've been programmed in this World to imagine such unusual creatures as monsters and necessarily 'ugly'. But the Apostle Paul encourages you be **transformed by the renewing of your mind** [Rom 12:2](#). So we should consider God's purposes for the **living creatures** He has **created**. From this perspective it makes much more sense to suppose that, though the **four living creatures** must be unimaginably awesome and formidable, they must also be incredibly beautiful, and only to be feared by the enemies of God, while other creatures sent out to literally 'scare the hell out of people' should be, for the best results, extraordinarily frightening in appearance—provoking a kind of fear that even an 'attack helicopter' couldn't pull off. So it all comes down to the question of whether God will want man's participation in making these 'vessels' that John says look like **locusts**. But there is no question that whatever man can make, God can make better, and scarier, and make them **living**. See [The Ages of Creation study](#) for the full 'control-tower view' of the 'crash and burn' of this 'manmade theory' along with the 'bulldozing of the wreckage off the runway'. But we'll sufficiently **prove** this case in the totality of this **study** too.

Now John says these **locusts** appear to have something like women's **hair**, lions' **teeth, wings**, torsos with **breastplates**, and scorpions' **tails**. Again, surely God can make strange **living** 'vessels' like this. And surely His creations are much more formidable than the mechanical variety that, for example, The U.S. Military could ever make. But still there are those advocating a manmade 'whirlybird' theory who say something to the effect that John, as a first century man, could not **understand** 21st Century 'weapons and machinery', and that he could only describe them in 'first century terms'. Suchlike 'mechanized' and otherwise 'technologically focused' misconceptions are commonly applied throughout Revelation, but there is no doubt in most cases that these theories 'won't fly'. And certainly the theory that passes off these **locusts** as some kind of 'bucket of bolts' is one of them. So instead, I say that those who see these creatures as machines are 21st Century men who do not yet fully enough **understand** the **power** of an eternal God who never changes, and therefore attempt to describe His **works** in fundamentally human terms instead of in terms of God's 'past track record' that He makes available to us all through His Word.

And there are no physical mechanics, machines, or electronics made by man that God did not—in a superior living form—invent first, which is really a **study** in itself. But in case this is news to you, listen to an expert in the field. Janine M. Benyus, in her book, **Biomimicry**, says,

We realize that all of our inventions have already appeared in nature in a more

elegant form and at a lot less loss to the planet.

Now besides being apparently ignorant of who should get the credit for this phenomenon, I think she has it right. And all this brings fresh meaning to the worship of The 24 Elders around The Throne of God when they say, **...thou hast created all things**. The fact is that there has never really been any competition between God and men, just as little 'biomimicry', if you will.

As to the leadership of these incredible, God-made, 'locust-like' creatures,

...they had a king over them, which is the angel of the bottomless pit, whose name in the Hebrew tongue is Abaddon, but in the Greek tongue hath his name Apollyon [Rev 9:11](#).

I haven't speculated much on who this ancient 'bad boy' could be, but his credentials are well enough established here in that he is 'the **king** of the **locusts**' and a very bad **angel** at that. And the implication is that the **locusts** are as much alive as this **king... angel** over them. And whatever roles if any this **king** may have played in **other ages**, the day is coming when he will be commissioned as **the angel of the bottomless pit** to oversee the mission of these vicious and horrifying '**living creatures**' that could only be **created** by God. And this coming 'foretaste of hell' should be effective for God's purposes. This would be to finally 'break open', or further 'harden', **the hearts of... men**. And I'm guessing this **king** is already down there in The Bottomless Pit right now, waiting to be released along with all these **locusts** that are with him.

And this brings us to another reason that these **locusts** cannot be machines. Machines would not likely originate from the spiritual realm. And it's true that the **four living creatures**, like the **locusts**, have arguably mechanical qualities from a human perspective. So do humans for that matter. But you could not consider these **locusts** to be 'attack helicopters' if you consider where they come from. You would have to overlook or avoid this point to retain a 'manmade' view.

And not only that, did you notice that these creatures—like their commander, and like The Two Witnesses, and like the Antichrist, and the False Prophet—are **given power**? In this case it's most natural to expect that **power** is something **given** to the **living**. So tell me. Shouldn't we call this compartmentalization? And by that I mean an oversight by applying too little **scripture** due to ignorance and/or forgetfulness. And I mean if you still think that these creatures are just machines, I think you've likely never heard the 'de-compartmentalized' case for machines that would go something like this.

OK, these machines do come from The Bottomless Pit, which must be a spiritual place, and they are commanded by an angel, and God does give them power apparently just like he does The Two Witnesses, the Antichrist, and the False Prophet, but they do sound like they're machines, right? And just because God has made other awesome, flying, living, spiritual creatures that are recorded to have flown around on the Earth, and even though we ourselves have machine-like qualities—or is it the other way around?—never mind—it doesn't mean that these 'locusts' are 'living creatures' too. Does it?

No, the case usually made for 'attack helicopters' is usually much simpler—that they sound like machines so they must be machines. But necessarily connected to such a simple view is that man is the best suited to producing these machines, and that God couldn't do any better. The **truth**, of course, is that man will never do anything 'in the ballpark' of what God can do. These plainly living **locusts** in The 5th Trumpet Judgment are an example. They will use their horrifying, monstrous, God-given **power... to hurt men five months**. And as Paul might add, this is just another of the many ways that God goes out of His way that He **might by all means save some** [1Cor 9:22](#). And again, it's not sophisticated but sophomoric and ridiculous to insist that God

requires the use of man-made physical machines in His judgments. His **living creatures** are so much better. And read [Ezekiel 1](#) if you haven't lately.

And I **know** I'm passed 'beating a dead horse' here, but we do need to wake up to the state of affairs of end times **prophecy** if we're going to reach an **understanding** of the real 'state of the art'. So please endure a little longer here. Let's give the case for machines the hearing it deserves. To do so we need to imagine what kind of machine could inflict the kind of torment that these **locusts** do, where apparently everyone except The 144,000 and The Two Witnesses are tormented, but no one dies, not even any vegetation. It appears that whatever these 'locusts' do to people not only torments them for five months but also sustains them somehow, or leaves them capable of sustaining themselves, so that they don't die. Sure, let's concede that there might eventually be some kind of chemical or electronic 'transmission' that could do that. But could there ever be enough helicopters on the planet to administer or broadcast such a mystery 'irritant'? It would take quite a lot of them to do the job. And even if up to this point there was no disruption to the World's economy, infrastructures, etc., there would still have to be a worldwide coordinated and 'Herculean effort' organized to accomplish something like this on a global scale. But we **know** that among other problems going on in The Beginning of Sorrows, that **nations** won't be getting along too well with each other at this point. Jesus tells us that during this time, generally speaking, **nation shall rise against nation, and kingdom against kingdom** [Mat 24:7](#), so any of them with any power will be defending themselves or attacking others, not coordinating a global campaign to torture people without killing them.

But assuming there is someone with the capability, who is flying these 'aircraft' that are administering this **torment** apparently on all **men**? In other words, what apparently significant faction of **men** gets out of this **torment**—because they are administering it? We will see that the new Russian empire will have already fallen by this point, as well as the entire Southwest Asian and North African Muslim World. But we will also see that the Antichrist Empire will still not have the capability to assimilate either the Russians or the Muslims by this point either. And The U.S. will also be shown to be incapable of any suchlike grand adventures by this time too—not that it's in their character to do so. And China will be seen doing something else too, and at a much later time. So the correct answer is that no **men** will be flying them at all, because no **nation** late in The Beginning of Sorrows will have the capability or resources to carry out such a worldwide assault. And when we finish making this case for these 'international players', it will be further evidence that these **locusts** must be **living creatures** made and empowered by God and released from the spiritual realm known as The Bottomless Pit.

But we've moved beyond our present ability to further 'dismantle' this 'machine theory', because further 'deconstruction' is beyond what we've proven so far. And though what we've covered so far could be considered sufficient, there is more to come. We will further confirm that only God will have the power to accomplish something like this in the chaos of these five months in the latter half of The Beginning of Sorrows. And we will establish that 'conventional war'—and for the most part a much more ancient version of it—will be mankind's only small contribution during The Great Tribulation. And I mean war in The Great Tribulation, for the most part, can only be considered

'conventional' in terms that were common at the time of, say, Alexander the Great, as we will see.

But we should also delve more deeply into what we can **understand** about the spiritual realm here too. Do you believe Satan will be **bound** 1000 years in **the bottomless pit**? John records in [Revelation 20:1-3](#) that he will. There is no question that this is a spiritual place in another 'dimension', like Heaven, Hell, and The Lake of Fire. And these spiritual places are for spiritual beings, like Satan, his angels, and one day when we shed our physical bodies, you and me. But surely neither flesh and blood nor anything else physical can possibly function in the various spiritual localities within the Earth, or even in Heaven, without some kind of transformation. And such transformations are inevitable for the World's inhabitants, most of which will ultimately reside forever within the Earth in The Lake of Fire. Thank God others of us will be transformed to live 'above ground' on the new spiritual Earth forever with God after the present physical one **shall pass away** [Mat 24:35](#). But remember that it's generally true that human beings will make this possibly two step, but one-way transition just **once** while spiritual beings whose origins are in the spiritual realm can, God permitting, make this transition repeatedly and in either direction. John tells us a lot more about all this. And we'll talk more about it in [SECTION 9](#) and in the last section.

The point for now is that these **locusts** really do come out of the Earth, and they could not do so unless they were 'spiritual creatures'. Also we can **understand** that neither man, animal, plant, nor machine of any physical kind could possibly 'survive' in **the bottomless pit**. Anything that comes out of it may be alive or inanimate, but must be of a spiritual nature. Granted, such transitioning 'entities' and 'elements' are able to take on physical characteristics as they leave the spiritual and enter the physical realm, and vice versa. Jesus, Satan, and the angels have been reported to be able to do so ([Eph 4:7-10](#); [Job 2:1-2](#); [Heb 13:2](#), etc.), not to mention again the **four living creatures** of [Ezekiel 1](#) seen with God on the Earth, but later with Him around His Throne in Heaven ([Rev 4-5](#)). And non-living things, like **smoke out of the pit...** [and enough that] **the sun and the air were darkened**, must do the same—transition back and forth from their spiritual to physical manifestations when moving from one 'dimension' to the other. I am not pretending to **understand** how all this works. I just **believe**, for example, that since angels obviously wear clothes in both realms, that both living and nonliving things must make these transitions alike.

The Apostle Paul implies that he, or at least someone he knew, transitioned back and forth between these dimensions once before too, unavoidably leaving behind a dead body and later reviving it when his spirit returned ([2 Cor 12:1-4](#)). Paul also acknowledges this other dimension's existence explaining that we, though spiritual beings, are in our physical form and realm and are therefore outside the purely 'spiritual realm', and as such cannot clearly tell what is going on in the 'spiritual realm'. Of our attempts to look into it he says, **now we see through a glass, darkly**, but he also adds that the time is coming when we will live entirely, body and spirit, in the 'spiritual realm', and will see **then face to face** [1 Cor 13:12](#). Indeed, when Paul speaks of the man who made this trip to **paradise... or the third heaven**, he speaks of a man who left his physical body behind to do so, traveling only in his spirit. But at The Rapture of the Church, physical bodies make the trip too, being instantaneously transformed to a 'spiritual form', and if necessary 'rejoined' by their spirits in

the process. And Paul is the one who tells us that our physical bodies must be **changed** to accomplish this. He says,

In a moment... the dead... shall be changed. For this corruptible [body] must put on incorruption, and this mortal [body] must put on immortality [1 Cor 15:52-53](#).

This will be necessary in order to be able to make the trip. Angels and other spiritual **living creatures** are already in this form. This is what Jesus, Satan, the angels, the 'four living creatures', and the 'locusts' already 'naturally' are. And getting back to the point, you should see by now that you're 'way off base' if you're still talking about 'attack helicopters'.

Now besides being forbidden to kill men, these 'locusts', being 'spiritual creatures' in the physical World, have one more God-imposed limitation, which brings us back to our 144,000 Jews. The **locusts** are not allowed to hurt all men, **but only those men which have not the seal of God in their foreheads**. This will undoubtedly be a glaring provocation to the inhabitants of the Earth. While virtually all men 'writhe in agony' five months, The 144,000—and likely also The Two Witnesses—will look on unharmed. Again, is this all these 144,000 will do during The Trumpet Judgments? It seems unlikely. And general descriptions of their service following their redemption are given. But again, though I can say they are **servants**, I can't say what other specific capacity on Earth they may fill, except that it's implied that they'll be the 'heavenly dam-breakers' of a 'cascading flood' of events that help bring about the end of The Beginning of Sorrows and the start of The Days of Vengeance which we will see all 'wash out' in due course.

The 8 Great Events on Earth show another view of the end of The Beginning of Sorrows seen entirely from Earth and just before The Abomination of Desolation:

- 1) The Slaying of the Antichrist
- 2) The Rapture of the 144,000 Jews
- 3) The Resurrection and Empowering of the Antichrist
- 4) The Slaughter of the Two Witnesses
- 5) The Celebration of the Kingdom of Satan and the Antichrist
- 6) The Resurrection and Rapture of the Two Witnesses
- 7) The Midterm Great Earthquake
- 8) The Rapture of the Dead Jews to Israel

Next, since we have the idea from the last section of how to extract and use information out of the middle chapters of Revelation, let's try to use this **knowledge** to get a better picture of The 144,000 and their rapture. And it's the Jewish perspective in Chapter 12 and the Heavenly perspective in Chapter 14 that both **reveal** The Rapture of The 144,000 as a key event in the conclusion of the first half and transition into the second half of The Great Tribulation. Chapters 11-14 each offer several other key events from their different perspectives that are also involved in this process. And Chapter 13 stages the event that Jesus identifies as the one that starts The Days of Vengeance, The Abomination of Desolation, which again is the story about the Antichrist's opportunity to 'act out' his 'blasphemous boasting' in The Temple in

Jerusalem at the beginning of his 42 months of an evidently 'wild-screaming-in-the-streets' rampage, that we'll 'shout out' in the next section. The initiation of this 42-months-long 'nightmare' is what I call [The 8 Great Events on Earth](#). These events are all seen in these middle chapters. They are all viewable from Earth. They all happen in the week or so before The Abomination of Desolation. And they are apparently in the exact following order, including 1) The Slaying of the Antichrist, 2) The Rapture of the 144,000 Jews, 3) The Resurrection and Empowering of the Antichrist, 4) The Slaughter of the Two Witnesses by the Antichrist, 5) the worldwide, 3 ½-day-long celebration of the death of the Two Witnesses while their **dead bodies shall lie dead in the street of the great city**, Jerusalem—which we'll call The Celebration of the Kingdom of Satan and the Antichrist, 6) The Resurrection and Rapture of the Two Witnesses, 7) a second, worldwide **great earthquake** that this time destroys **the tenth part of the city** of Jerusalem, and 8) The Rapture of the Dead Jews to that same general area.

And I see this itemization of eight events as all occurring in the last week or so of The Beginning of Sorrows because a couple of these events are implied to be separated from each other by 2 or 3 days immediately followed by two others that are separated by 3 ½ days. The remaining events appear to go on in between the others or immediately follow them in **the same hour**, or at least rather **quickly** thereafter. So all of them are reasonably placed within about a week. And besides this, it's clear that some of these events must occur just before the end of the 1260 days of ministry of the Two Witnesses is over, and the rest must occur just after this period, but before The Abomination of Desolation, which again is the clear marker of both the end of The Beginning of Sorrows and the start of The Days of Vengeance. And any way you look at it, at The Abomination of Desolation, the time available for these eight events will be up.

And for the same kind of reasons that the raptures of The Two Witnesses and The 144,000 Jews don't actually occur in the order they are presented in Revelation, some of these other midterm events don't either. Still, we'll **continue** to **handle** them in pretty much the same order that they appear in John's record. One exception is that since The Rapture of the 144,000 Jews is mentioned twice, and since the account of it in Chapter 14 is not at all ambiguous, while the account of it in Chapter 12 is at first glance a mysterious **allegory**, then we'll start with the second account in Chapter 14 before we **continue** in Chapter 12.

[The 'exemplary' 144,000 Jews in their clearly identified rapture from Earth to The Temple on Mount Zion before The Throne of God in Heaven sing **a new song** and are designated 'administrators' of the Lamb, and **the firstfruits unto God and unto the Lamb**.](#)

Rev 7:15;
Rev 11:19;
Rev 14:15-17;

Rev 15:5-8;
Rev 16:1,17
Rev 4:6;

Rev 15:2-5
Rev 14:3
Rev 7:9-11

Rev 14:1-4
Lev 23:10-14
1 Thes 4:16

The first thing John shows us in Chapter 14 is The 144,000 Jews standing with Jesus on Mount Zion (or **mount Sion**) in Heaven. And we hear mention of **the temple of the tabernacle of the testimony in heaven** several times in Revelation including in Chapter 14. (See [Rev 7:15](#); [11:19](#); [14:15-17](#); [15:5-8](#); [16:1,17](#).) This **temple** must be on the Mount Zion in Heaven and apparently is a structure that has a floor like a **sea of glass** that is **before the throne, and before the four beasts, and** after The Rapture of the Church, before The 24 **elders** too ([Rev 4:6](#); [14:3](#); [15:2](#)). And it evidently has room enough inside to hold quite **a great multitude, which no man could number, of all nations, and kindreds, and people, and tongues... before the throne, and with all the angels... round about the throne** too ([Rev 7:9-11](#)). So this **temple** must be beyond huge. However it's probably not as big as New Jerusalem will be as we will see in the last section. And again, later in this section we'll **prove** that this **sea of glass** is only a metaphor for a very large floor, **clear as crystal, to stand on**.

The first thing The 144,000 do with Jesus on Mount Zion is sing **a new song before the throne**. John informs us that,

...no man could learn that song but the hundred and forty and four thousand, which were redeemed from the earth [Rev 14:1-3](#).

And this **song** may be mysterious, but this description removes all ambiguity about who they are and where they just came from, and clearly distinguishes theirs from the other eight group raptures.

We also **learn** some more about their 'exemplary behavior' during their ministry on Earth, and we get a clue as to their eternal ministry from the time of their rapture on. John explains,

These are they which were not defiled with women; for they are virgins. These are they which follow the Lamb whithersoever he goeth. These were redeemed from among men, being the firstfruits unto God and to the Lamb. And in their mouth was found no guile: for they are without fault before the throne of God [Rev 14:4](#).

This gives us a vague idea of their behavior and ministry on Earth in the later half of The Beginning of Sorrows. But it also gives us their eternal position beyond the general job description of **servants**. They are apparently Jesus' permanent 'entourage'. We might also expect from this designation that they will be His 'administrators', and that whatever business He has to accomplish is their business, and that their work is in these details.

Another detail worth considering here is that they are **the firstfruits unto God and to the Lamb**. This must be the **firstfruits** of the Jewish people themselves implying that it's the first group of 'real Jews' to be raptured. If you assume that The Rapture of the Church takes place on a Feast of

Trumpets or just after the middle of the Jewish calendar year, then this Rapture of the 144,000 Jews could occur 3 ½ years later on a Festival of Firstfruits, near the beginning of a new Jewish calendar year. Whatever the case, The Festival or Feast of **firstfruits** [Lev 23:10-14](#) is a Biblical **holyday** required by Jewish Law and observed by offerings that are given to the temple priests who in turn offer them to God. It's **the firstfruits** of someone's harvest or flock, etc., specially prepared and sacrificed by the priests to God. Jesus is also symbolized as the **firstfruits** unto God, but The 144,000 are **the firstfruits unto God and unto the Lamb**. They are the first redeemed Jews for Jesus, and their service will be their sacrificial dedication to God and Jesus forever.

And this is also evidence that these 144,000 must be raptured even before The Two Witnesses. Besides, all the possible candidates we listed for The Two Witnesses must have been in **Abraham's bosom** and must have been 'visited' and 'escorted' from there to Heaven by Jesus, making them no longer in the plan for 'real Jews' anyway, and more likely prominent future members of The Bride of Christ. Right? Not necessarily. Remember that Moses and Elijah were seen 'out and about' working with Jesus before The Resurrection, on the Mount of Transfiguration ([Mark 9:2-4](#)). And I'm guessing that Enoch must still be in Heaven with God too. So I'm guessing The Two Witnesses haven't been to **Abraham's Bosom** yet. But really I'm just checking to see if you're keeping up and still paying attention. If you are, you'll remember that The Two Witnesses, if they are to be 'reincarnated', are exceptions to the rule, and likely in more ways than one. So sometime before The Rapture of the Church, The Two Witnesses—assuming that they will not be born for the first time but instead return to Earth from **heaven**—must be 'reincarnated' like we **know** Elijah already once was. But whatever the case, The Two Witnesses must be alive on the Earth at the time of The Rapture of the Church and miss this rapture so that they can later die in the middle of The Great Tribulation and be raptured then. And somewhere along the way they evidently 'recognize', or 'remember', or simply 'acknowledge' their Messiah and apparently just after the **firstfruits** do. Complicated, huh? And worse than that, all this should remind you that Paul warns us that we don't have a 'clear view' of these things yet. And apparently a brief 'visit' to the 'spiritual realm' wasn't enough to 'straighten it all out' either. So you should see by now why you should avoid 'etching **doctrine** in stone' with some of these topics. But we'll talk about all this some more anyway in [SECTION 9](#), because you should **continue** to try to better **understand** it all, knowing that this kind of **diligence** leads to new **revelations**. And you should always have your 'best guesses' in the works and be searching out their **proofs**, much like we have been doing so far. Because only then should you expect that The Holy Spirit will consider you ready and interested enough to **shew you things to come**.

And by-the-way, The Witnesses, whoever they are, could already be born by now. Though if they are, I'm guessing they're not yet old men. And the fact that they must miss The Rapture not only indicates that they don't 'recognize' their Messiah until later in their ministry, but it also implies that their ministry, probably like The 144,000's, is mostly to recall Jews back to Israel and to Judaism, because these are necessary 'first steps' in completing the salvation of the Jews. And I think that it's unlikely that the bulk of their

mission will be to convict the Gentiles of their sin, neither to **provoke** anyone to seek Jesus. But the World will nonetheless hate them because they will torment the nations of the World by **plagues** because of their hostile intentions and actions against Jews in Israel. So I expect that The Two Witnesses won't be trying to convert the Gentiles of the World to Christianity or Judaism. Instead their focus should be to draw Jews to Israel and back to Judaism, and to defend themselves and Israel, because apparently everyone will be trying to kill them and trying to attack Israel. And we **know** this because God decrees that anyone that tries to kill the Two Witnesses **must in this [same] manner be killed**. And this is no surprise because they will be infamous as the ones who **smite the earth with all plagues**. And this is why I think that their torments are primarily a defense of Israel for the purpose of buying time for Jews to repent and come back to God, not to mention to get the attention of the Jews and remind them of their 'awesomely powerful' God.

But whoever The Two Witnesses are and whatever their agenda, since The 144,000 are designated **firstfruits**, this scene at the beginning of Chapter 14 must be the first rapture of 'real Jews', even before that of The Two Witnesses. And this is about all I can 'glean and offer' about The 144,000 Jews from Chapter 14, but there is more to their rapture and service to be 'reaped' back in Chapter 12.

The allegorical account of The Rapture of the 144,000 Jews is depicted by the **labor** of the **woman** and the **birth** of her **man child**, and they are identifiable through Joseph's dreams, and God's commissioning and protection of them in The Beginning of Sorrows, and by the fact that they **shall rule**, like Jesus, **with a rod of iron** in The Millennium, and finally by God's plan that they must be the first to be 'born again' of the Jews

Rev 12:1-5
Gen 12:1-3
2 Pet 1:19
Rev 7:1-8
Gen 37:3-21

Rev 14:3-4
Rev 19:15
Luke 2:6-7
John 3:5-7

Eze 37:12
Dan 12:1-2
Eze 38:8
Zech 12:10-11

John 6:44
Rev 12:17
Rev 13:7
Mat 24: 9-13
Mark 13:9-13

Luke 21:12-17
Mark 9:2-4

In Chapter 12 we see what at first glance seems to be a mysterious **allegory**, though we have already deciphered in it who **the woman** is. The problem is that since John only gives us misleading transitional indicators in this chapter, there is no clear sequence, and we'll have to place the position of these events by some other means. The idea is that we're looking for these midterm events from different perspectives. In the heavenly perspective of Chapter 14, we find a midterm rapture of the 144,000 Jews that is presented as apparently 'the first rapture of Jews'. And in Chapter 12 this event is seen too, but among several other events and in a perspective of Satan's interactions with the Jews. So to 'unravel' this mystery and place the events in order we need to decipher who the **child** is. And we must do this with 'mixed up' clues and out of order transitional indicators.

But with all we've done so far, the **interpretation** of who the **child** is should be easily enough deduced. Who is the **child of the woman**? The identity of the **child** must be consistent with who the **woman** is. So we should expect to find the symbolic representation of the Jewish people as a **woman** associated with a 'naturally gestated and born' subset of the Jewish people who are appropriately represented as a **child**, and who each have distinguishably different fates. Again, we're not doing the Calvinism v. Arminianism argument here either—this is an allegorical **prophecy** of literal groups of Jews that God **promises** will exist, including the future events He reveals involving them that therefore must happen. That's all I'm saying about destiny at this juncture. But we are expecting to be able to identify these two groups of Jews. And as their identities are connected, it will help here to review and then further develop the identity of **the woman** before we identify **her child**.

So again, as John witnessed it,

...there appeared a great wonder in heaven; a woman clothed with the sun, and the moon under her feet, and upon her head a crown of twelve stars [Rev 12:1](#).

Now this is depicted as **a great wonder in heaven** though we will observe that the Jews this **woman** represents must at all times in this chapter be on Earth. And **her** identity is **revealed** back in Genesis, in a story about one of the dreams of Joseph.

We have all heard of Joseph, the son of Jacob, also called Israel, who was the son of Isaac, who was the son of Abraham, who was promised by God that He would make of his offspring...

...a great nation... And I will bless them that bless thee, and curse him that curseth thee: and in thee shall all families of the earth be blessed [Gen 12:1-3](#).

This **prophecy** of blessing that God speaks of here, without doubt, was fulfilled, is being fulfilled, and is still to be fulfilled in the person of Jesus Christ. Indeed, He has already fulfilled hundreds of **prophecies** in this ongoing process. And as a results of all these **prophecies** being fulfilled by Jesus, Peter concludes about the **prophecy** still yet to be fulfilled that,

We have also a more sure word of prophecy; whereunto ye do well that ye take heed, as unto a light that shineth in a dark place, until the day dawn, and the day star arise in your hearts
[2 Pet 1:19](#).

And this is exactly what we're doing.

Joseph, in the line of Abraham, is not just a Jew, but one of the 12 Jewish Patriarchs, one of the 12 sons of Jacob. We have also already identified them in [Revelation 7:1-8](#) when 12,000 from each of these **tribes**, the 144,000, were **sealed** just before The Rapture of the Tribulation Gentiles in the middle of The Beginning of Sorrows. The 12 Tribes are named after The 12 Patriarchs and are listed there including Joseph's tribe second to last in the list. These patriarchs are mentioned throughout The Bible as they are chosen by God to play a major role in the past and future of us all. Look for their names inscribed above the gates of the eternal city, New Jerusalem, when you go in, God-willing you do. We'll talk more about who gets in and who doesn't in the final section.

You may also remember that Joseph, through the attempts of his brothers and others to harm him, and through his gift to interpret his and other dreams or visions, became a ruler over his family as well as over all of Egypt. To God be the glory because He showed Joseph these outcomes while he was still a child through his dreams. You might even say that by showing Joseph these dreams God instigated the foretold outcome, because when Joseph told the dreams to his brothers, **...they hated him yet the more for his dreams, and for his words** [Gen 37:8](#), which could be construed as necessary to set in motion the chain of events that led to him ending up where he did. This is another aspect of the Calvinism v. Arminianism argument that we're going to pass by too because it should be addressed in no less than a **study** of its own, though I won't completely avoid a discussion of it in due course.

One of these dreams identifies Joseph as the ultimate ruler over his family including his parents, and in turn identifies the Jews as the literal **interpretation** of the symbolic reference of **the woman** in Revelation 12. He dreams,

...the sun and the moon and the eleven stars made obeisance [bow down] to me. And he told it to his father, and to his brethren: and his father rebuked him, and said unto him, What is this dream that thou hast dreamed? Shall I and thy mother and thy brethren indeed come to bow down ourselves to thee to the earth? [Gen 37:9-10](#).

So **Jacob** or **Israel**—he goes by both names in this chapter—believes his son Joseph's **dream** is telling him that **the sun** represents him, and **the moon** represents his wife Rachel, and **the eleven stars** represent Joseph's 11 brothers that will all **come to bow down** themselves to Joseph, who is obviously the preeminent 'twelfth star'. And as fate would have it, they all eventually do so in Egypt. So when we see in Chapter 12 of Revelation **a woman clothed with the sun, and the moon under her feet, and upon**

her head a crown of twelve stars, she is easily identified as an allegorical representation of the Jewish people.

But in Revelation this **woman** is shown to us at the point where she is about to deliver **her child**. Is there anything else in Joseph's **experience** that can help us here? Joseph's **prophesied** future 'preeminence' and Jacob's 'favoritism' of him caused his brothers to be jealous of him. Moses records that these are the reasons that his brothers **hated him**, and that **his brethren envied him** [Gen 37:3-10](#), which led them to say, **let us slay him** [Gen 37:20-21](#). Thank God **Reuben** talked them out of it. And by-the-way, we will see that Joseph gets a double portion of land in Israel in The Millennium. So He obviously remains one of God's favorites too.

Satan, on the other hand, hates all Jews, especially 'preeminent' ones. So his motives and intentions **to devour** this **child** can be seen to be similar to the ones Joseph's brothers had who **hated him** and wanted to **slay him**. Surely Satan's **hatred** of Jews as well as their worldwide infamy will intensify as a result of God's 'favoritism' of this **child of the woman**. And considering all this, the only likely 'subset' of Jews in The Beginning of Sorrows who could surely aggravate Satan and the World as much as The Two Witnesses is this band of 144,000 Jews. They will be envied and hated because God will specially mark and protect these ministers of His, and because this subset of Jews must inevitably have even greater 'preeminence' than Satan himself. So just like The Two Witnesses, Satan and the Antichrist will want them dead. But God will protect and rescue The 144,000 Jews by a war and a rapture, but not necessarily in that order. So by deduction and the process of elimination, this **child** about to be **brought forth of the woman** must be The 144,000 Jews [Rev 12:1-5](#). But there's more to the **proof** than this.

Again, knowing that **the woman** is a symbolic representation of the Jewish people leads us to assume that **her child** is a special 'subset' of Jews. The only reasonable candidate to fill this newborn's 'booties' is The 144,000 Jews. They are sealed, sanctified, and exceptional Jews in every way. And the 'child of the woman' would be an appropriate metaphor to identify them—they are from **the woman**, but separated from **her** for a special purpose, and different than all other Jews. And their separation evidently comes when The 144,000 finish their ministry on Earth and are raptured and redeemed to Heaven. We **know** this because we have already seen them...

...before the throne... redeemed from the earth... redeemed from among men, being [metaphorically 'the fruit of the womb of the woman', and also] **the firstfruits unto God and to the Lamb** [Rev 14:3-4](#).

In Chapter 12 the **child** is first seen on the Earth, then in Heaven, whereas the **woman** at her point of separation from the **child** stays on the Earth because, as John viewed it,

...the woman fled into the wilderness, where she hath a place prepared of God, that they should feed her there a thousand two hundred and threescore [1260] **days** [Rev 12:6](#).

We already **know** that this flight to a place of 'refuge' is God's planned 'sanctuary' for protecting 'real Jews' from the trials and perils of The Days of Vengeance, and this 'sanctuary' will be occupied by such Jews during a period of time that defines possibly all of the second half of The Great Tribulation—though we still have that 1290-day issue to deal with in [SECTION 7](#) and [10](#). And when we're through combining all the different 'second-half summary' accounts we'll be able to distinguish that there are some events taking place between the **birth** of the **child** and its rapture, and others between the rapture and the 'flight' of **the woman**. So let's first consider the **birth** of this **child**.

But what is the **birth** of the **child**? Is it simply the completion of ministry, and the point of separation from the **woman** including redemption by rapture? John says,

...she brought forth a man child, who was to rule all nations with a rod of iron: and her child was caught up unto God, and to his throne [Rev 12:5](#).

One thing we can immediately see here is that the office of this **man child** is the same as the one described for Jesus in The Millennium when, ***...he shall rule them [the nations] with a rod of iron [Rev 19:15](#)***, implying The 144,000 will not just ***follow the Lamb whithersoever he goeth***, but that they will also directly support Jesus in his leadership role in The Millennium. And we'll deal with this more thoroughly in [SECTION 11](#). But beyond this observation, the rest is more speculative because it is not clear whether this **birth** involves two events or really just one. Specifically, we could interpret the time when ***she brought forth a man child*** and when ***her child was caught up*** as two separate events, or we could instead assume that the passage could be condensed to, ***'she brought forth a man child... [meaning] her child was caught up unto God, and to his throne'***. Looking at it as two separate events is more problematic in that we would need to find a significant action taking place that signifies this **birth** as separate from the rapture. And the problem becomes insurmountable if you attempt to separate the **birth** and the rapture by too much time. The **birth**, if different from when the **child** is **caught up**, must be something that happens not too long before this rapture.

There is no question about what happens when the child is **caught up**, or that it takes place near the end of The Beginning of Sorrows. But if the **birth** is not their rapture or simply the completion of their time of the ministry marked by their rapture, then what else could it be? Could there be some other event that signals 'the completion of the gestation of the child', and thereby signifies the time of its **birth**? First, we should acknowledge that the sealing of The 144,000 back in Chapter 7 does not really lend itself to a reasonable metaphor for this **birth**, because in this case the **child** would be **caught up** at a much later time than the **birth**. It doesn't fit. A fitting scenario places the **birth** at the end of The Beginning of Sorrows too, because it will be necessary very shortly thereafter for **the woman**, according to Jesus, to **flee from Judea... into the mountains** or, as John puts it, **into the wilderness**.

This also must be the time when **the woman** is in **labor**. And **she** is in 'distress'. John tells us...

...she... cried, travailing in birth, and pained to be delivered [Rev 12:2](#).

This would fit when tensions are peaking in Israel because the Antichrist is in the process of surrounding Jerusalem with **armies**, and is finally about to directly confront The 144,000 and The Two Witnesses. So to expand the metaphor, the 'sealing' of The 144,000 at the start of their ministry is more fittingly 'the conception of the child in the woman's womb', and, to borrow from Luke, when **'the days were accomplished that she should be delivered'** The 144,000 are **'brought forth'** [Luke 2:6-7](#) and just afterward 'delivered' again up to **heaven** to the inaugural ceremony of their permanent ministry.

So what does the **birth** signify? I say it represents the point when The 144,000 Jews finally have their **revelation of Jesus Christ**. And it's appropriate to assume that the **birth** represents the **salvation** of the **child** because this must happen sometime before the **child** is **caught up**. We have all heard that Jesus uses this metaphor saying that we must be **born again** in order to **enter into the kingdom of God** [John 3:5-7](#). And The 144,000 cannot be exempt from this requirement—the recognition that Jesus is The Messiah must at some point be **understood** by these 144,000 Jews. We should also remember that none of the 'real Jews' who die during this Church Age have yet accepted His true identity. Because any that do, who accept Him as The Messiah, will be raptured as part of The Church and The Bride of Christ, and there will be some that do. And no 'real Jews' will be raptured half way through The Beginning of Sorrows with The Tribulation Gentiles either without first accepting The Lord's true identity, and there must be some that do then too. But apparently all these 'prematurely raptured' Jews are 'technically' no longer 'real Jews' because they will be redeemed from the Earth as other Gentiles are. And this implies that most Jews remaining alive in Israel, and the dead ones described in Ezekiel 37 who are resurrected and transported there, will not come to recognize the true identity of their Messiah until late in The Beginning of Sorrows or they would no longer remain 'real Jews'. Considering all these things, it fits that most 'real Jews', including The 144,000, and probably also The Two Witnesses, aren't **born again** until very late in The Beginning of Sorrows.

And we already **know** of one event connected to this late **revelation**. It's The Rapture of the Dead Jews. And we **know** that only **some** of these resurrected Jews come to **the revelation of Jesus Christ**. Ezekiel tells the Jews it will happen when...

...the Lord GOD [will] ...cause you [Jews] to come up out of your graves, and bring you into the land of Israel [Eze 37:12](#).

And remember that Daniel's record places this event at the midpoint of The Great Tribulation ([Dan 12:1-2](#)). But how could any of these resurrected Jews have a clue to Jesus' true identity being resurrected into such chaos. I think this implies that **some** of these resurrected Jews get their clue from The Two

Witnesses. And I'm guessing that these **prophets** finally acknowledge that they're 'ambassadors of Christ' just in time to do this. And I'm guessing this happens when their two spirits have the opportunity to visit **Abraham's bosom** for 3½ days while their bodies lie dead in the streets of Jerusalem. And that this 'visitation' happens just before these Dead Jews are raptured to Israel. This way the Jews waiting in **Abraham's Bosom** will have an equally fair 'heads up' as the ones who have gone through The Beginning of Sorrows on Earth.

Of course, seeing how Abraham talked across the **great gulf** to the **rich man** in **hell** freely enough, and evidently even more so to the **beggar** beside him, I'm sure there will be a lot of testimony 'coming down' to the Jews who die during The Beginning of Sorrows too. Still somehow, Gabriel assures us that at least **some** of these resurrected Jews will arrive in Israel who either don't **know** or don't believe or become confused as to the true identity of Jesus ([Dan 12:1-2](#)). And surely most Jews arriving in Israel today by natural means—though arguably no less miraculously **gathered** by God ([Eze 38:8](#))—don't really **know** Jesus yet either. And it fits that **some** of these Jews will finally acknowledge **the truth** because of The 144,000, and just after these **firstfruits** become the first to be '**born again**' near the middle of The Great Tribulation, followed next by The Two Witnesses very shortly thereafter, and fortunately for **some**, just in time for them to **flee**.

Again, apparently all 'real Jews' that die before the midpoint of The Great Tribulation will be resurrected from **Abraham's Bosom** back to Israel. And before they're returned they should hear various perspectives of what's going on in The Beginning of Sorrows from the ones 'trickling down'. And if any of them can reason like Abraham they shouldn't be clueless—though evidently 'divided'. And I'm guessing the debate will get pretty lively down there, especially for dead people. But if The Two Witnesses visit them just before they are raptured to Israel, they'll surely hear the 'rightly divided' **truth** in time. And also certainly **some** of the Jews who live through The Beginning of Sorrows in Israel, when they see that The 144,000 recognize Jesus and are raptured, and when they see the death of The Two Witnesses, will also recognize Jesus for who He is and will be about ready to **flee** along with **some** of the resurrected ones when they arrive shortly thereafter.

And I say 'about ready to **flee**' because, fittingly, the same 3½ days that the World uses to rejoice over the death of The Two Witnesses, and evidently also over the just 'disappeared' 144,000 Jews, would be available and timely for all the Jews in Israel, who have just recognized Jesus, to **mourn for him**. This would be the time that the Prophet Zechariah speaks of when, **...they shall look upon me whom they have pierced, and... mourn for him**. And that would be Jesus. And beyond this Zechariah shows us that it's God's 'instigation' that brings about this mass **revelation of Jesus Christ**.

Revealing this 'climax of providence', God says,

I will pour upon the house of David, and upon the inhabitants of Jerusalem, the spirit of grace and of supplications: and they shall look upon me whom they have pierced [Jesus], and they shall mourn for him, as one mourneth for his only son, and shall be in bitterness for him, as one that is in bitterness

for his firstborn. In that day shall there be a great mourning in Jerusalem... [Zech 12:10-11](#)

And isn't this just one of God's 'standard operating procedures'? As Jesus says,

No man can come to me, except the Father which hath sent me draw him: and I will raise him up at the last day [John 6:44](#).

So all this shows us that God finally finishes 'drawing' Israel to Himself at the time His **firstfruits** have their **revelation of Jesus Christ**. And I expect that The Two Witnesses follow with their **revelation** and death—or maybe instead with their 'disclosure' and death—I mean maybe these **prophets** are under orders to hold back for the right time to reveal the **good news**, kind of like Jesus was during His ministry. However I expect that The Two Witnesses and The 144,000 will grow up as 'real Jews'. And it would not be inappropriate for them to come to this **revelation** at this time because this would not really interfere with their ministries. And the **revelations** provided by The 144,000 and The Two Witnesses at this time would naturally lead the rest of the Jews, generally speaking, to follow with their **revelations**. So I expect that these events mark the time when the Jews in Israel will **mourn for him**. And that this time of **great mourning in Jerusalem** would most conveniently occur during the 3 ½ days that the rest of the World is busy exchanging gifts because of their joy over the 'disappearance' of The 144,000 and the 'slaughter' of The Two Witnesses. We could also speculate further about which **holyday** or **days** this week of events might fall on, but I'll leave that to you for now.

And the 'ramifications' and 'rebuttals' indicated in the Calvinism v. Arminianism argument I'll pass by again here too. But a point we don't want to miss is that this picture is far from complete, because there must be a lot of Jews in Israel at this time who must be rejoicing along with the rest of the World. And we will see that this is not happenstance. Satan will surely be doing some 'instigation' of his own by rallying a formidable rebellion in Israel of Jews against God in the later part of The Beginning of Sorrows that culminates in a 'double-cross' at The Abomination of Desolation as we will see in the next section. And we will also **continue** to follow Satan's **war with the remnant of her seed [Rev 12:17](#)**, that is the seed of **the woman**, otherwise known as the Antichrist's **war with the saints [Rev 13:7](#)**. But next, in His account of The Beginning of Sorrows, Jesus reveals one of mankind's 'standard operating procedures', namely rebellion. And we will see that this timely rebellion 'instigated' by Satan leads to the **everlasting destruction of some**, but also that as a result there will be timely repentance 'instigated' by God that leads to the **eternal salvation** of others.

Jesus' account of the situation with the Jews in Israel in The Beginning of Sorrows in [Matthew 24:9-14](#), [Mark 13:9-13](#) and [Luke 21:12-17](#) seems to show that 'faithful Jews' are in the minority. This is implied when He says that most Jews **shall wax** [or become] **cold** and will turn against the 'faithful ones'. But instead, this minority of 'faithful Jews' must be the ones who acknowledge Jesus first, even long before The 144,000 and The Two Witnesses do. And it's because they do that they are so severely persecuted and in some cases even

put **to death**. Read the passages. These 'faithful Jews' are **hated** and **afflicted** and put **into prisons** and sometimes put **to death** by their Jewish families, and Jewish **councils** and **synagogues**, and **kings and rulers**, according to Jesus, all **for my name's sake**. It also appears that these new Christian Jews in Israel that are persecuted by Jews must, by **the gospel**, 'exit' God's plan for 'real Jews' because they come to this **revelation** before God's plan for the rest of the Jews comes to 'fruition'. Jesus implies that this particular minority of Jews will either be incarcerated or be killed in Israel throughout The Beginning of Sorrows at the hands of other Jews precisely because of their faith in Him. And there is already a name for these Jewish-persecuted Jews. We call them Messianic Jews. And there is already a growing number of them in Israel.

And certainly one of the major motivations for otherwise 'good Jews' resorting to such **cold** persecution of Christian Jews in their country—against their otherwise more peaceful national character—is that they will perceive an unprecedented amount of worldwide animosity against them in The Beginning of Sorrows. I expect this burden will provoke an unwillingness to suffer the additional burden of accommodating any form of Christianity in Israel. And this is why Jesus is telling us that 'real Jews' will 'weed out' Christian Jews from among themselves in The Beginning of Sorrows. But this will only add to their **bitterness** and **great mourning** when they finally recognize their Messiah, likely just after The 144,000 and then The Two Witnesses do. I also expect that these Messianic Jews in The Beginning of Sorrows, without a little 'Paul-and-Silas style', 'ground-shaking' intervention, will eventually be beheaded in The Days of Vengeance as we will see. Of course the end of The Beginning of Sorrows brings such a 'Paul-and-Silas style' event in the form of a **great earthquake**. And I expect that by this means many of these early persecuted Christian Jews will escape and **flee** along with the later converted ones at The Abomination of Desolation. For this reason I expect Jews like these may be able to join other Jews in God's refuge for them during The Days of Vengeance, and get back 'on track' with the 'real Jews'. But it seems more likely to me that the ones who die 'prematurely' move on to a 'Gentiles' track'. And remember it's even more likely that anyone converted before The Rapture of the Church will disappear with the Church. And that there is a number of other God-planned 'exits' from all this turmoil to consider. But no matter how big this 'mess' gets, Jesus **promises** that it cannot stop the 'circulation' of the **gospel of the kingdom**—that Jesus is the Messiah—which **some** will suffer much persecution to expose, and which we will further expose in [SECTION 9](#).

Another point I should reinforce here is that **some** of the Jews involved with incarcerating or executing Christian Jews in Israel during The Beginning of Sorrows must be kind of like the Apostle Paul was before his conversion—just overzealous and overprotective of Israel. But others of these Jewish persecutors of Jews must be part of the rebellion against God 'instigated' by Satan and the Antichrist also going on at this time, as we will see. But whether for good motives or bad, all this persecution of these Christian Jews, which should go on until the end of The Beginning of Sorrows, is more evidence that most 'real Jews' come to **the revelation of Jesus Christ** very late in The Beginning of Sorrows. And that this 'turning point' must come when The 144,000 Jews become ready to be redeemed as the **firstfruits** of

this **revelation**. And this must be when the rest of God's **chosen** people **find it** too, after which they will be ready **to mourn** Jesus while the rest of the World, including **some** still **rebellious** Jews, **rejoice**.

And I should also reinforce that I don't find it necessary or even expected that The 144,000 or The Two Witnesses must be aware that Jesus is the Messiah for them to accomplish the bulk of their ministry on Earth, because they would be expected to be, if preaching at all, calling Jews back to Judaism. However, I don't expect them to be involved or to encourage the persecution of the relatively few Jews who recognize Jesus in The Beginning of Sorrows, and they won't be around for the 3 ½ days of mourning either.

By-the-way, if Moses and Elijah are The Two Witnesses, we **know** that they knew Jesus' true identity from their earlier **transfigured** meeting with Him before His death and resurrection ([Mark 9:2-4](#)). But I expect that whoever The Witnesses are that they must either come to **know** Jesus, or come to **know** Him again, or that they are forbidden by God to **reveal** Him until after The 144,000 get it, leaving them evidently very little time to spread The Word before they're gone. And I guess it's possible that The Two Witnesses could **know** first, but that they just can't tell first, and that they must be raptured second by this reasoning. Of course, I expect them to have the **revelation** at least before they die and likely thereafter spend 3 ½ days in **Abraham's Bosom** to give the 'heads up' to the Jews waiting down there. But it fits for me that it's The 144,000 who give The Two Witnesses their 'heads up', because I expect that the first mission of The Two Witnesses, being in Jerusalem, is all about calling Jews back to a faithful, Tribulation-Temple-centered Judaism too. And this would be sufficient reason alone for them to be wearing **sackcloth** because **prophets** in the past have done so for the same reason. And since they are obviously **hated** by the whole World, their job must be to protect Israel by punishing the World with **plagues** for their attempts to assault Israel, but also likely to 'shake up' some of the 'hardhearted Jews' who need a little more 'encouragement' to 'get the message'.

Also, we are talking The 70th Week of Daniel here, where God evidently continues His plan and ministry to His people in much the same way He did in the first 69 weeks before The Church Age. In The Beginning of Sorrows, calling Jews back to 'faithful Judaism' would be the 'first step' necessary to save 'real Jews'. And when we see what Jews will be doing in Jerusalem in The Millennium, this will make even more sense. So the mission of God's designated **prophets**, The Two Witnesses, and of His **sealed** 144,000 Jews, must be part of this 70 Weeks Plan, and part of the 'retraining' of His people for The Millennium. The second necessary 'step' in this plan is for Jews to acknowledge Jesus as The Messiah. So the **revelation** of The 144,000 Jews—their **birth**—would not have to happen till the very end of their ministry, at which point they are appropriately identified as being the first to be **born again**. Certainly, these must be the first 'real Jews' on the 'Jewish calendar plan' to get it—that Jesus is The Savior of the World and their Messiah. As such they are indeed **the firstfruits unto God and to the Lamb**, and are **born** into The Kingdom of God when they realize that Jesus is The One. Their **revelation** and rapture at this point would also likely be a persuasive 'heads up' for the rest of the Jews in Israel too—the beginning of a mass Jewish

revelation of Jesus Christ. And we'll keep building on top of all this as we go.

The death of the Antichrist, likely because he tries to kill The Two Witnesses in the process of breaking the 7-year peace treaty **in the midst of the week of great tribulation**, is the 'trigger' of several events that culminate in The Abomination of Desolation, and these events begin to throw everything into question for the Jews

Mark 13:13; Luke 21:17 Rev 12:1-14 Rev 10:3-4 Rev 13:3-14
Mat 10:22; Rev 6:9-11 Dan 9:27 Rev 11:15

The event that would have just taken place and could finally 'bring forth' this **revelation of Jesus Christ** to The 144,000 could easily be the death of the Antichrist. During the two or three days **he** lies dead should be a time of great distress for Israel when **she** will likely be taking the blame for his death from the whole World. And the Antichrist will surely be in Israel in the process of breaking **his** 7-year peace treaty when **he** is killed. This is why the time just before the Jews **flee** will be such a terrible period of distress for Israel. And it will likely be during this 'vigil' over the Antichrist that The 144,000 will get their **revelation** of The Messiah. It should also be their time, before they're raptured, to 'get The Word out'.

Again, The 144,000 must be gone or going when Satan is confined to the Earth. And Satan, we would expect, must arrive to 'revive' the Antichrist within two or three days after his death. This would mean that very near the time when The 144,000 are **born**, Satan and his angels must be engaged by Michael and his angels in The War in Heaven so that his expulsion prevents him from being able to get at The 144,000, and so that when he is confined to the Earth he can 'resurrect' and 'empower' the Antichrist so that the Antichrist can then **kill** The Two Witnesses. And 3½ days later, after The Resurrection and Rapture of the Two Witnesses, and a **great earthquake**, and a rapture of formerly dead but likely just 'Witnesses-briefed' Jews to Israel, the Antichrist can then—since he is obviously in Jerusalem 'puffing up' with the praise and worship for rising from the dead and ridding the World of The 144,000 and The Two Witnesses anyway—enter The Temple to claim the absolute authority needed to go after the remaining Jews and Christians, all of which by then should have enough warning to get out of there.

And many Jews won't need to wait for 'engraved invitations' to their own beheading in order to **know** that the Antichrist and the rest of the World hate them and want to kill them. And the worldwide rejoicing over the death of The Two Witnesses is just one of the clues. Surely the response of the World to **rejoice** once The Two Witnesses are dead must be equal and opposite to the response that comes from the death of the Antichrist. But the fact that the whole World generally hates the Jews in Israel is already common knowledge, so we are talking about degrees here. The Beginning of Sorrows level of worldwide hatred of Jews evidently provokes the Jews to incarcerate and kill the Christians among them, and I expect that most Israelis will believe this is necessary as a 'release of steam', for national preservation, if not for some internal hatred too. But The Days of Vengeance level,

provoked by The Slaying of the Antichrist, will be much worse all around, except for those who escape on cue.

So this time of terrible distress for Israel when **the beast** lies **dead** must be associated with the time when **the woman** is **travailing in birth** and **her child** is **brought forth**. This must be when **Jerusalem is compassed with armies**, the Antichrist's armies. And this **travailing in birth** is exacerbated by the fact that Israel is harboring those daunting worldwide 'trouble-makers' The Two Witnesses and those equally 'impervious' and at least 'psychologically tormenting' 144,000 Jews. All the pressure caused by these circumstances in this transition period from The Beginning of Sorrows to The Days of Vengeance must maximize the number and intensify the passion of those who really hate the Jews.

But Jesus tells us that the Jewish converts to Christianity will get the worst of the 'heat', saying about them,

...ye shall be hated of all men for my name's sake ([Mat 10:22](#); [Mark 13:13](#); [Luke 21:17](#)).

Surely the martyrs **under the altar** of The Temple in Heaven are waiting for such as these ([Rev 6:9-11](#)). And I expect that all Jews and Christians wherever they live at this time will be vehemently **hated** by the World in general. And the consequences worldwide will be severe too, as we will see. By-the-way and generally speaking, 'real Christians' in this case cannot include Catholics, because the vast majority of them will still be **lost** or **castaway**, and they will be the ones who will be leading the drive to persecute and kill 'real Christians', especially in Europe. But we will better define these severe consequences and the 'real' and 'not real' Christians in the next few sections.

Another big clue for the Jews is the fact that the Antichrist is in Jerusalem, backed by his **armies**. Yes, at this point it's clear that he'll have left his former home in Europe, and go to Israel in the process of 'breaking' his **covenant with many for one week... in the midst of the week** [Dan 9:27](#). And there are several ways we can tell he's in Jerusalem at this time. One is that The Two Witnesses lie dead in the streets of Jerusalem when they are killed by the Antichrist. Another is that his **armies** are surrounding Jerusalem around this time. And he desecrates and destroys The Temple in Jerusalem near this time too. Also we'll see how he must have been 'mopping up' in Egypt just before he comes to do the same thing in Israel. In the first 3 ½ years of The Great Tribulation he will have been building the greatest World kingdom known to man and will be 'talked up' by everyone that he is the best thing since, no, even better than Jesus Christ Himself. And this 'world-conquering', 'half-week-long' journey will take him from his 'explosive start' in one country in Europe to the midpoint declaration in The Temple in Jerusalem of his 'absolute authority' and 'godhood'. These are all topics we will develop further in the next few sections.

But he will eventually be seen by 'real Jews' to have failed to keep his promised seven-year **covenant** with them as well as with the rest of the World. Covenants are very important to the Jews. And surely 'the buzz' among the Jews must include this debate, though this will not discourage

some of them to believe that this emerging 'world ruler' must be the 'real Messiah'. His death, however, must at least provoke some serious 'soul-searching' among the Jews, if not also among all the peoples of the World. But surely all this 'covenant breaking' will help wake up The 144,000 Jews and, if necessary, The Two Witnesses.

And the death of the Antichrist must be accompanied by the intense hatred of Jews by the whole World, because we **know** that the later killing of the Jewish Witnesses brings unprecedented, spontaneous, and widespread joy. At least some Jews should see that this scenario is all wrong, and that they are being set up by a deceiver. Indeed it is a 'setup', and the Jews who begin to see it as such should then be ready for **the revelation** of Jesus Christ's true identity.

And maybe, to speculate vainly, the biggest clue for both Jews and potential Christians alike will come when **the seven thunders** have **uttered their voices** [Rev 10:3-4](#). I mean maybe these **voices** proclaim and specifically identify that Jesus is The King of Kings and Lord of Lords, or not. But whatever this **uttered** proclamation may be, it's surely an important announcement and evidently concerning this time. And I can't think of a more important **truth** that needs to be **understood** at this time than this. And we **know** that there will be an angel in the sky 'orbiting' the Earth proclaiming this very same **truth** not too long after this time anyway. Or instead, the **revelation** for Jews in Israel could come simply because they are thinking, 'Well, it can't be that covenant breaker who just brought the hate of the whole World down on us, so who is it then?' And maybe **the seven thunders** will not be needed to answer this question but will speak to something else. Besides, Jesus assures us at this time that the unstoppable **gospel of the kingdom** is ongoing—surely aided by all those incarcerated and martyred Jews for Jesus in Israel—so **the seven thunders** could just as easily have another **mystery** message.

But how does the Antichrist get himself killed in Israel when what he really wants the most is to kill The Two Witnesses and all of the rest of the Jews for that matter? Well, we just need to realize that he has to die before he can possibly accomplish this. And that before he dies he should be more or less just as physically vulnerable as the rest of us, not to mention not nearly as powerful. And this is when we should remember that anyone who tries to kill The Two Witnesses during their 1260 days of their ministry **must in...** [like] **manner be killed** [Rev 11:5](#). And it's more than reasonable to assume that the Antichrist is just as 'hell-bent' on killing The Two Witnesses a few days before he is resurrected as after, and that he comes to Israel for this very purpose in the first place. And the results are also just as predictable. So it seems very likely that the source of the Antichrist's **deadly wound** [Rev 13:3,12](#) is The Two Witnesses. And I mean that on his first attempt to kill them he will die trying.

And by-the-way, I just want us to notice here again that it's a **wound by a sword** [Rev 13:14](#)—not a gun—and that by now this fact should be no surprise since this event must occur near the midpoint of The Great Tribulation with almost thirteen of the fourteen Seal and Trumpet Judgments done—many of these involving lots of earthshaking, infrastructure-obliterating, extra-planetary assistance, and at a point when there is no longer any reason do the '1st to 21st Century shuffle' anymore. And I mean

that the judgments of The Beginning of Sorrows should 'knock us back', technology-wise, more than a couple millennia—back before the time of ' Roman roads', and back to the use of swords as a primary weapon of war. And we will address this issue further in the next few sections too.

Now this theory that The Two Witnesses first kill the Antichrist before the Antichrist is resurrected to kill The Two Witnesses is speculative, as other more popular theories about how he dies are—like for example that it's a political assassination. The difference with this theory from all the others I've heard is that it's connected to a lot more **scripture**, and uses a much broader picture of all that is going on at the time. Some might even agree that sufficient **proof** for the case has been given here already. But we have even more to connect to these circumstances in the next section, so there is no need to 'jump the gun' at this point. But certainly, it should become more and more apparent—again in part because of the 'Scripture-interconnectivity', and in part for the lack of any 'better-scripturally-supported' scenarios—that after the Antichrist is resurrected and empowered he will no longer be just a **man**, and that with his new power he will finally be able to kill The Two Witnesses like he has wanted to all along.

The Dozen Nails in the Antichrist's Coffin that are clues for the Jews to **flee**

- 1) The Midterm Covenant Violations
- 2) The Slaying of the Antichrist (because he attacks the Two Witnesses)
- 3) The Mourning of the Antichrist
- 4) The Peak of Anti-Semitism
- 5) The Birth and Rapture of the 144,000 Jews
- 6) The Resurrection and Empowering of the Antichrist
- 7) The Slaughter of the Two Witnesses
- 8) The Celebration of the Kingdom of Satan and the Antichrist
- 9) The Resurrection and Rapture the Two Witnesses
- 10) The Midterm Great Earthquake (that destabilizes the Antichrist's forces)
- 11) The Rapture of the Dead Jews to Israel
- 12) The Abomination of Desolation

These [Dozen Nails in the Antichrist's Coffin](#) are the proverbial 'nails' from the perspective of 'real Jews' that should help to bring **some** of them to **the revelation of Jesus Christ**. These events should also help 'birth' Christians worldwide. And the brief period that contains all these events begins with the successful attempt of the Antichrist to finally conquer Egypt, and exposes the obviously broken 7-year peace treaty just before the midpoint. I call this beginning hostile action by the Antichrist **1) The Midterm Covenant Violations**. And this reckless and dishonorable behavior results in **2) The Slaying of the Antichrist** when he arrives in Israel and attacks The Two Witnesses but in the process gets himself killed, and **3) The Mourning of the Antichrist** which leads to **4) The Peak of Anti-Semitism**, a climax of worldwide hatred for Jews. These events should 'tip off' The 144,000 resulting in **5) The Birth and Rapture of The 144,000 Jews** which should result in many other Jews being **born again** too. Next, we should have

6) The Resurrection of the Antichrist, and immediately thereafter 7) The Slaughter of The Two Witnesses followed by 8) 3 ½ days that are either very happy or very sad depending on your perspective, then 9) The Resurrection and Rapture of the Two Witnesses, and 10) The Midterm Great Earthquake in Israel which should buy some time for the Jews, including some distraction for 11) The Rapture of the Dead Jews to Israel which is the last thing that needs to happen on Earth before 12) the Antichrist can then enter, desecrate, and ultimately destroy The Jerusalem Temple giving the final alert to the Jew to escape before it's too late. Undoubtedly, relatively many Jews and Gentiles all over the World will be newly **born again** with the help of these spectacles, some of whom will find places and ways to hide because some of these must survive to repopulate the Earth in The Millennium, but others must be caught and executed throughout the rest of The Days of Vengeance to await upcoming raptures. But of course, many more won't get it at all, because John tells us that, generally speaking,

...that old serpent, called the Devil, and Satan... deceiveth the whole world [Rev 12:9](#)

The Baker's Dozen Midterm Events in the transition from The Beginning of Sorrows to The Days of Vengeance from both earthly and heavenly perspectives.

- 1) The Slaying and Mourning of the Antichrist
- 2) The Rapture of the 144,000 Jews
- 3) The War in Heaven
- 4) The Resurrection of the Antichrist
- 5) The Slaughter of the Two Witnesses
- 6) The Celebration of the Kingdom of Satan and the Antichrist on Earth
- 7) The Great Mourning of the Jews in the Revelation of Jesus Christ
- 8) The Resurrection and Rapture of the Two Witnesses
- 9) The Midterm Great Earthquake
- 10) The Rapture of the Dead Jews to Israel
- 11) The Celebration of The Eternal Kingdom of God and of Christ in Heaven
- 12) The Abomination of Desolation
- 13) The Flight of the Jews

Now let's review our 'pumped-up' collection of crucial midterm transition events that I'll call [The Baker's Dozen](#). And by-the-way, all these names are mainly mnemonics (memory devices) for exercising in these topics. The same is true for the titles and names that I've given to all the prophetic events, characters, places, and things—capitalized when appropriate because they'll surely turn out to be among the most significant events, people, places, and things of all history, all of which should not be left without 'proper names'. Yes, pun intended. The point is that consistent terms can be helpful, and I am endeavoring to provide them. And again, I have used as many of the already popular terms as I could. And if there are some in use that I haven't heard of, then they're not likely that popular anyway, at least anymore, or not yet, or I may have found some of them too 'academic' or 'misleading'. No 'slighting' otherwise intended. Of course as our perspective is corrected and

improved, some of my terms may need adjusting too.

Now some of these events in this list happen at the same time as the others described as early as the end of Chapter 9, and others connect all the way into Chapter 18. But they are all events happening during the week or two at the close of The Beginning of Sorrows to the start of The Days of Vengeance. And still more events within this transition period can be found throughout these chapters and throughout The Bible too. The more you look, the more you can find. And this is one way to see that it's impossible to totally finish this analysis, just like it's impossible to finish growing in The Word of God. And this is also why in time it's natural for those who **continue** to come across the 'shortcomings' of those who think they've finished their analysis on any topic.

So in time, and for as much time as we have before these events actually transpire, there is really no limit to what we can discover connected to these 'overlapping accounts'. And I guess you could say that the job would really begin after the events transpire—so we could then check our work so to speak and really start to see the meaning of it all. But let's say we could narrow down the transition period from The Beginning of Sorrows to The Days of Vengeance to just 13 main events occurring in Heaven and on Earth. My incomplete list is arguably the most important of these events, most of which we've already seen in a list or two already.

Again, the 'overlapping accounts' in Chapters 11-18 may each tell us about one or more of these events, but none of these 'summaries' from their different perspectives will cover anywhere near all 13. And it's the events common to more than one account that help us begin to piece together the actual order. At the same time we have to be aware that events that follow one another in any given account may not actually immediately follow one another because other events from other accounts may fit in between. Further complicating the 'layering' of these accounts is the 'layering' of events within some of these chapters themselves. And on top of that, the 'layering' of accounts in both individual and different accounts can **reveal** different aspects of the same events, which altogether makes it seemingly impossible to establish the exact order of all the events for sure. Still, I **know** God wants us to **work** for it, and from the **exercise** answers will come, unendingly. But I also **know** that He sometimes must hide things from us for our own good. So I intend to use these continuing lists of mine, along with these and other observations on God's 'presentation', to establish, in this 'state-of-the-art style', the most likely order of all these events, but also to show why I've got a 'sneaking suspicion' that God planned it so that we can't yet precisely order all of them.

[God's common method of the 'layering' of information along with the mysteries He is hiding makes the order of events difficult to impossible to discern in Revelation 12](#)

[Rev 12:9](#)

[Gen 10:5](#)

[Gen 10:18-20](#)

[Rev 13:3](#)

[Rev 11:7](#)

Revelation 12 offers me continual encouragement for my 'sneaking suspicion' that God really doesn't want anyone to **know** for sure in advance exactly the order of all the events during the transition from The Beginning of Sorrows to The Days of Vengeance. I don't get this idea from the **allegory**, but because the events are presented in one order and then presented again in a different order within this same chapter. And it's confusing because every verse but one in this chapter, in the KJV, starts with the conjunction, **And**—and you thought it was just me that has this obsession! The problem with all these conjunctions in this case is that this repetition at first glance seems to imply consecutive events. However since some of the descriptions of the events are repeated and appear in the process to change from their originally stated order, this cannot be the case. Instead, it must be that the story is told in non-chronological 'layers' with only the order within the 'layers' being chronological. This would allow for an overall out-of-order presentation of events. But the actual order would then depend on how you 'cut it' and 'shuffle it back together'.

This kind of 'layering' method is found throughout The Old Testament. See Genesis 10 and 11 for example. In Genesis 10, commonly referred to as The Table of Nations, we are told that...

...the Gentiles [were] divided in their lands; every one after his tongue, after their families, in their nations [Gen 10:5](#).

And we are told how these nations are **spread abroad... after their tongues [Gen 10:18-20](#)**. But it's not until the next chapter that we find out that all this 'dividing' and 'spreading abroad' was made necessary in the first place because of a little incident at the Tower of Babel where God **created** all the languages. And in the same way we can see that the first two chapters in Genesis 'layer' the story of Creation. So anyone who fails to recognize this technique God uses to 'divide up' His Word will make **errors**. And I mean that this is part of what God means when He says to those who will **not hear**, that His Word nonetheless remains **precept upon precept... line upon line... here a little, and there a little**, so that those who are not willing or expecting to search both far and wide for answers He will not **teach** 'meaty' **knowledge** nor **make to understand [deep] doctrine** ([Isa 28:9-13](#), [1Cor 2:9-10](#)). And some especially 'meaty precept building' is required within the middle chapters of Revelation. These several accounts are meant to be 'layered' and 'connected together' because they all cover nearly the same time frame. This creates confusion initially because each account may or may not present events in order while each leaves some of the events out that are found in neighboring accounts. And a more complete **understanding** really requires support from all **scripture**.

But to make matters worse, Chapter 12 has 'multiple layering' going on within a single account. And though 'layering' within the same chapter or passage is not uncommon in **scripture**—it happens in Chapter 13 too—the 'extra layering' in Chapter 12 makes it suspicious because it stands out from the others in this way. Why in this chapter? Again, I think it is because, as in Chapter 10 when the **seven thunders uttered**, God is **hiding** something from us.

So in our case in point in Chapter 12, this degree of 'layering' leaves me

uncertain as to the actual order of a few of the events. And what specifically is uncertain is where Satan is standing while he is awaiting the **birth** of the **child**. It is either in Heaven or on Earth, but there may not be a provable answer for this. Any speculation should, however, include consideration of what is going on in Heaven and on the Earth around the time Satan 'positions himself' to **devour** the **child**. This must include the Antichrist's midterm death which is implied in Chapter 11 to have previously occurred because he is seen there already having come **out of the bottomless pit** [Rev 11:7](#). And this resurrection is also implied to have previously occurred in Chapter 13 because we are told there that **his deadly wound was** [already] **healed** [Rev 13:3](#). And the circumstances in these chapters must be connected to The War in Heaven, and also to the Antichrist's conquest of The Two Witnesses in Jerusalem, and all at the end of The 6th Trumpet/ 2nd Woe. And there is also the consideration that **armies** are already surrounding Jerusalem to help **kill** The Two Witnesses before the Antichrist enters The Temple, which can also be connected to an earlier failed attempt at killing The Two Witnesses, and also to the Antichrist's earlier victory over Egypt.

And expanding the picture still wider, the participation of these **armies** in all these events must somehow be facilitated by the 'vacuum' created by God through the undoubtedly most horrific slaughter of all time of $\frac{1}{3}$ of the Earth's remaining population by the 'spiritual creatures' described back in Chapter 9 who are really the main event of The 6th Trumpet/ 2nd Woe. And surely all these events and more will play a part in when and where Satan chooses to lie in wait to **devour** the **child**.

'Ambiguous layering' in Revelation 12 hides the order of the events

- 1) The woman travails in labor and birth
- 2) Satan 'drags' $\frac{1}{3}$ of the angels from Heaven to Earth
- 3) Satan awaits the birth of the child to devour it
- 4) The child is born
- 5) The child is raptured
- 6) The woman flees
- 7) Satan and his angels are cast out of Heaven as a result of a war in Heaven
- 8) Satan pursues the woman seeing he is cast to the Earth
- 9) The woman flees and escapes Satan with help from the Earth

[Rev 12:1-13](#)

[Rev 9:1-2](#)

Let me show you more specifically some of what I mean about the confusion created by the 'layering' in Chapter 12. First we are shown...

...a great wonder in heaven of a woman... with child [who] **1) cried, travailing in birth, and pained to be delivered** [Verses 1-2](#).

Next,

...there appeared another wonder in heaven; and behold a great red dragon, having seven heads and ten horns, and seven crowns upon his heads [which Verse 9 verifies is *Satan*]. And 2) his tail drew the third part of the stars of heaven, and did cast them to the earth; and 3) the dragon stood before the woman which was ready to be delivered, for to devour her child as soon as it was born [Verses 3-4](#).

So, the second event presented in this account seems to involve the defeat of Satan, with his angels symbolized as **the stars of heaven** in the same way that the angel of The 5th Trumpet Judgment is symbolized as **a star** in [Revelation 9:1-2](#). But here we see an apparent 'firestorm' as **the third part of the stars of heaven** are **cast... to the earth** obviously indicating the angels' defeat and expulsion from Heaven along with Satan. And the third event presented is Satan lying in wait **before the woman... to devour her child as soon as it was born**. But I expect that both this 'star shower' and this planned 'ambush' of the **child** by **the dragon** are only 'visible' in the 'spiritual realm'.

Next John relates a few more events about **the woman** and **her child**. He adds that 4) the **child** is **born**, and 5) the **child** is raptured, and then that 6) **the woman** flees, seemingly all in this order. Or so we would think. Because next, confusion arises when the second event, when Satan's **tail drew the third part of the stars of heaven, and did cast them to the earth**, is retold as, 7) the **war in heaven** where Satan **...and his angels were cast out with him [Verses 4-9](#)**. And there is no clear context to help us place this repeated event.

Naturally, Satan and his angels, who seem to be cast out together, cannot be **both cast... to the earth before** and **cast out with him after** the time Satan lies in wait **before the woman**. It's got to be one or the other. Either Satan is waiting in Heaven **before the woman**—evidently in this case watching over **her** from Heaven, hoping to get The 144,000 as they are raptured to Heaven just after they are **born**, and is prevented when they arrive by being **cast out** in the **war in heaven**, or he is already **cast down** to Earth to wait **before the woman** where he ultimately fails because God redeems **her child** after **she** is **delivered** and before he can 'pounce'. Of course it makes sense that Satan, his angels, and The 144,000 could all be in Heaven at the same time as long as Michael and his angels have the rebel angels occupied with The War in Heaven as soon as The 144,000 arrive. This could be why **the war** starts in the first place. But it's not so clear what could give Satan pause if he's already with The 144,000 on Earth. Maybe if he 'devours' The 144,000 before they have their **revelation**, they will just 'pop right back up', 'whack-a-mole' style, in the shortly following Rapture of the Dead Jews—which wouldn't do him any good—and if this idea is correct it also helps place this rapture after their **revelation** as already suspected. But the fact that there is a **war of angels** specifically mentioned to be taking place **in heaven** and not one like it on Earth leads me to think that this is where Satan is waiting, but I should say that I am certainly not sure about it.

To complicate matters further, in Verse 13 we are told that 8) **when the dragon saw that he was cast unto the earth, he persecuted the woman which brought forth the man child [Verse 13](#)** which seems to

imply that the first thing he does after 'landing' on Earth is to search for **the woman** which evidently he still thinks he has a chance to attack, but not anymore **her child**. Of course, this also seems to imply that the **child** is already gone from the Earth when he arrives, and that his missed chance at The 144,000 takes place in Heaven because of **the war in heaven**. But we have already seen how a lot of other things must be happening between when Satan is **cast down** and when he pursues **the woman**. So Satan may be on Earth waiting to **devour** The 144,000 after they are **born again**, but they are nonetheless raptured before he can get them, which then diverts him to go after all the other Jews and Christians.

And if all this isn't confusing enough, a little further on John launches into a second, more detailed account of 9) the escape of **the woman**—the second account in this chapter of The Flight of the Jews. So how can we be sure of the order? There are obviously 'layered accounts' in this chapter because two of the events are recounted, or elaborated upon, after they are originally mentioned. So how can we tell when each 'layers' starts and ends, and what, if anything, does each skip over, and what happens just before and after each 'layered account'? But hey, you've come a long way if you just **understand** these questions. By them we can **understand** that God may not want us to know all the answers for sure. But it's only by them that we can hope to eventually figure it all out. And there's no doubt God constructed this passage this way on purpose.

The Ten Fast Flurry Flight Events happen between the start of woman's labor and her flight and result in The Abomination of Desolation and The War with the Saints

- 1) The Rapture of the 144,000 Jews
- 2) The War in Heaven
- 3) The Resurrection and Empowering of the Antichrist
- 4) The Slaughter of the Two Witnesses
- 5) The Celebration of the Kingdom of Satan and the Antichrist on Earth
- 6) The Great Mourning of the Jews in the Revelation of Jesus Christ
- 7) The Resurrection and Rapture of the Two Witnesses
- 8) The Midterm Great Earthquake
- 9) The Rapture of the Dead Jews to Israel
- 10) The Celebration of The Eternal Kingdom of God and of Christ in Heaven

We can further illustrate the uncertainties in this **allegory** by considering the actions of **the woman**. Her account can be summed up in three events. She is in 'labor'. She 'gives birth'. And she 'flees' to **the wilderness**. But this list of events only concerns **the woman**. So I believe, for reasons we have already covered and for those we are about to, that though the three events in the account of **the woman** must occur in this order, that there are undoubtedly other events that fit in between them, and obviously events taking place just before and after them. Yes, the 'birth' must immediately follow the 'labor', but something else is doubtless going on in the World between the time the 'labor' begins and the child is 'born', such as the surrounding of Jerusalem with the armies of the Antichrist, and the worldwide mourning and outrage over the death of the Antichrist when he first attacks

The Two Witnesses.

And surely The Flight of the Jews must follow the 'labor' and 'delivery' of the **child**, but some other 'business' that is very likely going on in between is 1) The Rapture of The 144,000 that is somehow associated with 2) the triumph of Michael and his angels over Satan and his angels leading to their expulsion from Heaven, and 3) The Resurrection of the Antichrist, followed by 4) The Slaughter of the Two Witnesses, followed by 5) 3 ½ days of worldwide rejoicing for Satan and the Antichrist likely synchronized with 6) the **great mourning** of the Jews because of their **revelation of Jesus Christ**, ending with 7) The Resurrection and Rapture of the Two Witnesses, followed immediately by 8) a midterm **great earthquake**, and **quickly** thereafter by 9) The Rapture of the Dead Jews to Israel, along with 10) a celebration of the beginning of The Eternal Kingdom of God and of Christ in Heaven, and finally comes The Abomination of Desolation as The Jews **flee**. And we will **continue** to confirm that this is also the 'official' beginning of The War with the Saints.

And the main event leading up to these three events involving **the woman** and **her child** would be the worldwide massacre of $\frac{1}{3}$ of the remaining population of Earth by the 200 million creatures—yes, living creatures—of The 6th Trumpet/ 2nd Woe described in Revelation 9. And no, it's not China since God's creatures will be much more lethal, God-controlled, and God-targeted, not to mention scarier and more powerful than all of the World's forces combined could ever be. And I mean God's creatures will be efficiently killing only the God-selected, billion-plus people in the about 100 prescribed days, and somehow not significantly interfering—if not aiding—with what the Antichrist will be doing in Egypt and Israel.

Another campaign that will be 'winding up' at the time of the woman's distress is The Ministry of the Two Witnesses. And Satan's access to Heaven will be 'winding down'. And again, following The Flight of the Jews would be the start of The War with the Saints—another worldwide massacre led by another 'ministry' we will account for in the next couple sections.

The midterm events cannot all be exactly ordered, probably by design to mislead Satan, but connections can be made throughout the several 'layered accounts' that will establish some parameters that with further exercise may lead us to further proved and tested **revelations**

2 Peter
1:19

Daniel
12:9
Jer 17:9

Rev 13:7
Rev 11:7
Rev 12:9

Rev 12:17
1 Cor 2:8
Rev 12:10

Rev 11:15
Rev 13:2-3
Rev 12:13

So this is how the 'layering' works in the middle chapters of Revelation. Each account provides a list (or lists) of events that may or may not present the events in consecutive order, and invariably these presentations naturally omit events that are described in the perspectives of neighboring accounts that are taking place around the same time. And dealing with all these chapters is like shuffling a deck of cards. Even if you knew the order of the cards in each half of the deck before they are shuffled together, it's impossible to exactly predict their order after shuffling, though you could be sure that they would all end up very close together. So we must endeavor to keep clear about the things we are sure of and the things we are not. And it's only in the maintenance of this kind of **integrity** before God that you should expect that He will **continue** to show you new **revelations** in His time and in yours. Your **integrity** before God requires that new **revelations** need to be tested, even when **gifts** of The Spirit are involved. And any of you who have been doing this for a while should also **know** that we cannot always even be sure of the things we think we are sure of because **revelations** by nature are surprising. So when you reach junctures of confusion, be **patient** and remind yourself that you **do well that ye take heed** [2 Pet 1:19](#). And remember it's the **continuing** process itself that keeps us on the right track, and spiritually safe, and close to God.

I've been exercising in these precepts for more than two decades, but I should make clear that some of the **revelations** I am sharing with you in this **study** God has given me very recently through the writing of it. So we are dealing with some really new **revelations**—and not so much the kind beginners start with. And this requires caution. But we should expect that new **revelations** will come in their God-appointed times. An example of this is **the revelation of Jesus Christ** still to come to the Jews and evidently not until shortly before the Antichrist enters The Temple in Jerusalem. We **know** they haven't come to this **revelation** yet, and that they will have to wait on God's timing to receive it. And surely God has His timing for **revelations** for the Church too. And surely the time for us is now. And this is why I believe that some of the **revelations** that have been recently **revealed** to me from the **prophecies** of Daniel **prove** that they are no longer **closed up and sealed till the time of the end** [Dan 12:9](#). But I also believe this 'opening' started a while ago, and that we were given the beginnings of this **understanding** in a series of lectures in 1840, without which I would have never come to my **understanding**. Some of this story of 'the opening of end times prophecy' is in the next section. And we will see that many wretched sinners went before us and made it possible for me—another prime example of a wretched sinner—and anyone else who will **take heed**, to now be able to fully **understand** end times prophecy, as much as God will allow, that is. And I **continue** in the **faith** and the **experience** that the limits of **knowledge** by **revelation** will remain forever boundless. Oh, and in **the faith** that my **desperately wicked** sins ([Jer 17:9](#)) are covered by **the blood of Christ**.

So go figure. Sure, we will speculate further, and we will even do so in this **study**. And so far I have placed these events in an order that seems reasonable, but I still don't see, at least yet, how anyone can tell for sure the exact order of all of these midterm events, especially The Rapture of the

144,000 in relation to The War in Heaven. And that's probably the way God wants it. The cases for the placement of The Great Mourning of the Jews in The Revelation of Jesus Christ and The Rapture of the Dead Jews are also a little too 'scripturally thin' to get all 'doctrinal' about. But I do like the fit of the order that I have presented. Though surely I'm missing something yet to be discovered, or pieces of the puzzle others may have already found, or, as I expect, both.

And it will have to be enough for me for now to **know** that Satan will be prevented from 'devouring' The 144,000 because of The War in Heaven and by their rapture, one way or the other. And that some of the other events could certainly 'slide' or 'overlap' a little. And maybe the exact order and details needs to remain a secret for the protection of The 144,000, because surely the events will work together to accomplish just that. Satan will hope to attack them, whether during their last moments on Earth or their first in Heaven, but he will obviously be prevented from carrying out this attack. Either way, this is too much provocation for Satan to just 'crawl off and sulk' because **that old serpent** will undoubtedly and immediately 'coil up and strike back' as 'venomously' as he can, and apparently he does by 'reviving' and 'empowering' the Antichrist **to make war with the saints** [Rev 13:7](#), and likely first of all, to **make war against... and kill** The Two Witnesses ([Rev 11:7](#)), and when Satan gets **the whole world** on his side ([Rev 12:9](#)), he will go after **the woman**, but fail again to catch many of these escaping Jews. This of course will only further enrage him **to make war with the remnant of her seed, which keep the commandments of God, and have the testimony of Jesus Christ** even more 'venomously' ([Rev 12:17](#)).

And Satan is certainly a force that even God needs to reckon with. One way to see this is that in the past God has taken measures to mislead Satan due to the cosmological level of danger that could result from giving him too much information. Paul tells us of the cost to Satan of crucifying Jesus about which...

...none of the [human or angelic] **princes of this world knew: for had they known it, they would not have crucified the Lord of glory** [1Cor 2:8](#).

God successfully **hid** this consequence from Satan and his **princes** then, and it **saved** us all. And we already **know** that God is **hiding** what the **seven thunders uttered**. This and other **mysteries** are probably in play here in the same way. Still, having clearly identified this and other 'obstacles' to our **understanding**, we nonetheless have some order-establishing connections within this 'three-ring circus' of events that give us at least a 'fair' idea of the order of things.

In the middle of the 'layering' in Chapter 12, at the end of the second, more detailed account of The War in Heaven and the casting **down** of Satan and his angels, the next thing John hears is...

...a loud voice saying in heaven, Now is come salvation, and strength, and the kingdom of our God, and the power of his Christ: for the accuser of our brethren is cast down, which accused them before our God day and night [Rev 12:10](#).

And this victorious proclamation clearly follows this 'purge' of Heaven. And this proclamation should sound familiar to you. It sounds a lot like the one 'back' in Chapter 11 in The 7th Trumpet/ 3rd Woe where John records,

...there were great voices in heaven, saying, The kingdoms of this world are become the kingdoms of our Lord, and of his Christ [Rev 11:15](#).

And remember that this happens **quickly** after the **great earthquake** in Jerusalem concluding The 6th Trumpet/ 2nd Woe. These angelic proclamations must be the same or made at the same time and about the same Beginning-of-Sorrows ending event from two different perspectives. And putting them together we can back up the premise that this places all other events in Chapter 11 before it, and all the events described in Chapter 12 too, except for The Flight of the Jews and the **war with the remnant**, which must be the last events in Chapter 12 not just in presentation but also chronologically.

And the implied 'assassination' of The Antichrist in both these chapters must also come before The War in Heaven and again probably near the same time as The Rapture of the 144,000 Jews. And this further implies that the first thing Satan really does when he arrives on Earth to **persecute** the Jews is to 'resurrect' the Antichrist to use him for the stated and implied tasks described in Chapters 11 and 13. And this is really nearly the same chunk of time—of about a week—as in the beginning of Chapter 12 between the **birth** of the **child** and when **the woman** is seen to **fly into the wilderness**.

So my perspective remains that Chapter 12 contains a small but indeterminable number of layered accounts because we don't **know** for sure where they all start or end, but because two events are repeated, there must be at least two, and that however you 'cut' them these accounts are plainly full of gaps due to perspective. And there is really a mix of several perspectives in this chapter, which is probably the key to ultimately determining the true order. But again, this uncertainty forces us to leave the precise order of a few events—including The Rapture of the 144,000 Jews, The War in Heaven, The Great Mourning of the Jews in The Revelation of Jesus Christ, and The Rapture of the Dead Jews—in the realm of speculation.

But there is also the observation that the 'revived' Antichrist, fresh **out of the bottomless pit**, helps us further substantiate the order of some of the midterm events. He is seen and identified by combining the descriptions of him in Chapter 11 and 13. And in Chapter 17 we see him being 'ridden' by a clearly different **woman** which is a **city** and 'institutional headquarters'—which we'll 'saddle' ourselves with in the section after next. These are order-establishing connections because a 'revived', 'empowered' Antichrist is needed to be able to kill The Two Witnesses, and this must occur at least 3 ½ days and a **great earthquake** before The Celebration of The Eternal Kingdom of God and of Christ in Heaven. And we should see that these 3 ½ days of 'exuberance' over the perceived triumphs of Satan and the Antichrist are also needed to gain the worldwide support necessary to 'pull off' The Abomination of Desolation, and force the Jews to **flee**. And we should see that if The Rapture of the 144,000 Jews and Satan's 'plummet' to Earth are inexorably intertwined and necessary before Satan will even want to 'revive'

and 'empower' the Antichrist in order to kill the Two Witnesses, then The Rapture of the 144,000 must be before the death of The Two Witnesses, etc.

We will also further confirm that John offers additional support for these conclusions speaking of **the beast** in Chapter 13, reporting that Satan **gave him his power, and his seat, and great authority**, and that this is at a time when **his deadly wound was healed: and all the world wondered after the beast** [Rev 13:2-3](#). The World 'wonders' **after the beast** not just because he rises from the dead but also because he uses some of his new 'satanic power' to kill The Two Witnesses, and probably because he takes the credit for getting rid of The 144,000 too.

The Satanic 6-Step Shuffle

And none of these observations contradict that **when the dragon saw that he was cast unto the earth, he persecuted the woman** [Rev 12:13](#) if we recognize that these are consecutive events in terms of the relationship between **the dragon** and **the woman** only. So here's another subset of the above lists that I'll call [The Satanic 6-Step Shuffle](#). It includes the events transpiring on Earth between the time Satan arrives on Earth and the time he pursues the escaping Jews, including...

- 1) The Resurrection of the Antichrist, then
- 2) The Slaughter of the Two Witnesses by the Antichrist, followed by
- 3) The Celebration of the Kingdom of Satan and the Antichrist on Earth, then
- 4) The Resurrection and Rapture of The Two Witnesses, and
- 5) The Midterm Great Earthquake (likely **quickly** followed by The Rapture of the Dead Jews), then
- 6) The Abomination of Desolation where...

...the Antichrist declares himself to be '**God**', giving himself all authority to go after **believers** wherever they may be, starting with the escaping ones destined—or **prophesied**—to get away.

The Weeklong Transition from The Beginning of Sorrows to The Days of Vengeance

So besides all the 'excessive' repetition for the sake of beginners—who are likely still somewhat confused as previously forewarned, that is if they haven't added to my repetition some of their own—and regardless of whether you're a beginner or not, I expect all this is a 'new and better' perspective of these midterm events than you've ever seen before. I've never seen anything like it anywhere anyway. But again, I also expect this perspective must be improved upon over time. As new developments in the World take place, and for as long as The Lord tarries in His return, and as far as God is willing, I'm counting on it. Besides, this **study** raises as many questions as answers, as any mature **study** should. And every time a new insight comes along it will change things, including possibly the order of events I have preferred in this **study**, not to mention the veritable 'paradigm shifts' that take place when

God's 'hidden mysteries' are **revealed**. Still, whatever the case or topic, you better think you're bringing the whole Word of God with you if you think that you have found new **revelations** that are worth testing. But this **study** is really just a primer for those who Paul would call, the more **dull of hearing**, because surely some have not really endured this **study** even this far—though the best is yet to come.

And by now we should see that a purely sequential analysis in these middle chapters of Revelation is certainly no where near enough. So enough with the lists—at least for now. Because you should now be ready to review the following 'state of the art' [CHART of the Transition from The Beginning of Sorrows to The Days of Vengeance \(p.167\)](#). Again and naturally, any 'art' or 'science' can be improved upon over time. In this case, this chart is my best attempt to sort out the transition between The Beginning of Sorrows and The Days of Vengeance so far. But we're not through substantiating this chart yet. The work should **continue** through the rest of this **study** and beyond. And in case you haven't got it yet, there can be no such thing as an 'end all' **study**. And it's time you got used to the repetition too, because that is where the best **revelations** come from—well, other than when they come directly from God to his **prophets** or through other ministries of The Spirit.

CHART of the Transition from The Beginning of Sorrows to The Days of Vengeance

< > = SIMULTANEOUS OR POSSIBLE OUT OF ORDER EVENTS

Described Events		Implied Events
Revelation 11 The Two Witnesses & The Beast	Revelation 12 The Woman, The Child & The Dragon	Revelation 13 The First & Second Beasts
The end of the massacre of 1/3 of Earth's population (from Ch. 9) and of The Ministry of the Two Witnesses at the end of The Second Woe or 6th Trumpet Judgment	Woman in labor Child born then raptured to Heaven < > Satan & angels lose war & cast to Earth	Beast's armies surround Jerusalem Beast killed by 'sword wound'
Witnesses killed in War with the Beast	Satan revives & empowers the Antichrist to plot to annihilate Jews & Christians & to rule the World & empowers the False Prophet to institute worldwide worship during 3 ½ days of worldwide rejoicing	Beast dead about 3 days
Witnesses dead 3 ½ days in Jerusalem while World celebrates		Beast rises from the dead
Resurrection and Rapture of Witnesses		Worldwide celebration of the Dragon and Beast prepares the way for 42 months of World rule, the mark & worship of the Image of the Beast controlled by the Second Beast
2nd Great Global Earthquake		
7th Trumpet < Dead Jews Rapture >	God's kingdom begins in Heaven	God's kingdom begins in Heaven
God's kingdom begins in Heaven	Satan chases fleeing Woman but she escapes to 1260-days sanctuary	Beast commits The Abomination of Desolation
Jews flee, or get caught and killed, or side with the Beast	War on remnant Jews & Christians by Satan unleashed	Beast World rule begins & his War with the Saints peaks
Decapitation of dissenters & war-kills by beast escalate		

So again, the chart shows three parallel or synchronized accounts from Chapters 11, 12, and 13, each with specifically “described” and “implied” details of events in a transition period that is less than two weeks but maybe no longer than about a week, and runs chronologically from top to bottom in the three perspectives. You should notice that there are specifically **described events** running continually from top to bottom because these events are taken directly from these chapters, and they present the different perspectives within the same time period. And only a couple of the **implied events** are not described in any of the three chapters but are found elsewhere in The Bible. This includes the reference to when the “Beast’s armies surround Jerusalem”, which is explained and placed with The Abomination of Desolation by Jesus in Luke 21 when compared to Matthew 24 and Mark 13. Also, there is the “Dead Jews Rapture” which is described in Ezekiel 37 and placed near The Abomination of Desolation by Gabriel the Archangel in Daniel 12. The Rapture of the 144,000 Jews, The War in Heaven, and The Rapture of the Dead Jews are the most questionable placements on the chart at this time. Also questionably placed is The Great Mourning of the Jews in The Revelation of Jesus Christ which I suspect happens simultaneously with the 3½ days of worldwide rejoicing when the World celebrates The Slaughter of the Two Witnesses.

[A summary and some additional provable and speculative perspectives about the woman, her child, the dragon who would devour them, and the beasts who would too](#)

[Rev 9:14-19](#)
[Rev 11-13](#)

[Mat 24:15-21](#)
[Mark 13:14-19](#)

[Luke 21:20-23](#)
[2 Tim 3:16](#)

[John 4:22](#)
[Rev 14:12-13](#)

I see this midterm transition week as an amazing 'rollercoaster ride' of worldwide spectacles. It begins amidst the conclusion of the most bizarre and deadly event of all time, The Massacre of The 6th Trumpet Judgment, which is The 2nd Woe, where 200 million 'lion-headed' and 'fire-breathing' **horsemen** kill $\frac{1}{3}$ the population of the planet ([Rev 9:14-19](#)). While this is 'wrapping up', and while The Ministry of the Two Witnesses is 'wrapping up' too, this about weeklong clock starts when the Antichrist dies, probably trying to kill The Two Witnesses as he and most everyone else in the World will certainly want to do at this time. And remember that **any man** who tries to kill The Two Witnesses **must in this manner be killed** [Rev 11:5](#). But I expect that 'on the third day' thereafter the Antichrist will be 'resurrected', and likely just after Satan is **cast out** of Heaven ([Rev 12:9](#)), and when he has **great wrath** [Rev 12:12](#) because he's been defeated in Heaven and confined to **earth** [Rev 12:13](#), and because he wants vengeance having just found himself one way or another 'displaced' out of reach from his 'hell-bent' obsession to kill The 144,000 when they are transported to a 'defensible position' in Heaven ([Rev 12:5](#)).

And this is when Satan must recognize that his 'next-best' option will be to kill The Two Witnesses, and that the best means to accomplish that, and win even more praise and adoration from **the whole world**, will be to 'revive' and 'empower' the conveniently dead body of the Antichrist and let him do it. And we are apparently told by John in Chapter 11 that this is exactly what happens, that **the beast that ascendeth out of the bottomless pit shall... kill them** [Rev 11:7](#), presumably the same **beast** that **the dragon gave... his power, and his seat, and great authority** [Rev 13:2](#). And that way Satan not only finally gets what he sees as revenge, 3 $\frac{1}{2}$ days of celebration later he also gets the worldwide support and authority to do whatever he wants to a degree he never had before, and without which he would not be able to go after **the remnant... which keep the commandments of God, and have the testimony of Jesus Christ** so effectively ([Rev 12:17](#)). We will evaluate just how 'effectively' in the next subsection. In the meantime we can anticipate that through all these events the Jews somehow get a clue, and then they are able to **mourn** their **revelation** while the World celebrates, and this appears to be the only time they'll get a chance to do so.

But for now, where Satan stands **before the woman which was ready to be delivered, for to devour her child as soon as it was born** [Rev 12:4](#) will have to remain uncertain. We'll have to accept that we're still missing something or that God is **hiding** something. Satan may wait on Earth to attack them after their 'salvation experience', after their realization that Jesus is The Messiah. But since they're already identified by marks on their foreheads, and since Satan should **know** this, I find a delayed attack on Earth less likely, except that he would want to hold off killing them until after their **revelation** to avoid 'dumping' them into **Abraham's Bosom** to be very shortly thereafter 'returned' to Israel. And he would surely want to immediately quell any acknowledgement of Jesus as The Messiah. And we **know** he'll be planning to 'bamboozle' **the whole World** into worshipping him. And he'll try to kill anyone who won't.

Or maybe it's more likely that he'll be waiting for their rapture and arrival in Heaven before he starts a **war in heaven** to destroy them, though it seems contradictory that, being in Heaven, he could be standing **before the woman**

when **she** must actually be on Earth when **she** 'delivers', except that **she** is also shown as a **wonder in heaven** when **she** must really be on the Earth, implying that these allegorical descriptions of **the woman, her child, and the dragon** must be interpreted within both spiritual and physical realities. Why not?

But I can only conclude for sure that near the time that The 144,000 are delivered to their place of honor in Heaven, Satan, who naturally hates and envies them, will prepare to destroy them. No specific account of Satan's failure to do so is given or necessary because the afterward described Rapture of the 144,000 and the repeatedly described War in Heaven make this fact obvious. And this failure of Satan and triumph of God is obvious even if some details are purposely **hidden** or omitted for the understandable purpose of misdirection. It's also obvious that all this will make Satan very, very angry. And we **know** when John sees that...

...the woman fled into the wilderness, where she hath a place prepared of God, that they should feed her there a thousand two hundred and threescore days... [Rev 12:6](#)

...we can **understand** that this period should pretty much span the whole 3 ½ years of The Days of Vengeance. It's the period starting when the Jews in **Judea**, the ones who have recognized that Jesus is The Messiah, **flee into the wilderness** on cue from The Abomination of Desolation and find safety and provision in **a place prepared of God** for most of the remainder of The Great Tribulation. And since the time the Jews spend in this 'sanctuary' frames most all of the second half of The Great Tribulation, and since, according to Jesus, the Jews don't **flee** until they **see the abomination of desolation** defile their Temple in Jerusalem ([Mat 24:15-16](#); [Mark 13:14-19](#)), this is further incontrovertible **proof** that not only must this **woman** and **her child** be Jews, but also that this period must begin very closely synchronized with the **forty and two months** John sees that **power was given** to the Antichrist ([Rev 13:5](#)).

Again for more clarity, the starting point of the Antichrist's 42 months of power must be very near to the time when **there was given unto him a mouth speaking... blasphemies against God... and his tabernacle** [Rev 13:5-6](#), or very near to the time of The Abomination of Desolation. And I say, "very near to the time," because the actual start of these 42 months may be a few days earlier at The Resurrection and Empowering of the Antichrist, while The Abomination of Desolation is immovably synchronized with the starting point of the 1260 days of The Sanctuary of the Jews, because Jesus says of these two events respectively, when you **see** you **flee**.

This is further evidence too that The Rapture of the 144,000 and The War in Heaven are before The Abomination of Desolation so that Satan can be on Earth to conduct his business with the Antichrist that leads to The Abomination of Desolation, and so that the Jews can recognize Jesus through it all and escape. And remember we're deducing that that the **firstfruits** 144,000, by definition, must be first to get **the revelation of Jesus**. And their **revelation** that Jesus is the Messiah, and their rapture, should be among the biggest clues to the rest of the Jews that they all need to get out of there too.

However, this **'see'** and **'flee'** perspective comes by adding only Matthew

and Mark's account of The Flight of the Jews. Luke tells us something they leave out, that...

...when ye shall see Jerusalem compassed [or "surrounded"] with armies, then know that the desolation thereof is nigh. Then let them which are in Judaea flee to the mountains [Luke 21:20-21](#).

This changes everything because it's a different sign that could take place days or even weeks before The Abomination of Desolation. And it should take place at least days before, not just because armies need time to move and fully assemble, but because the Antichrist's **armies** may originally be there and be defeated in their first attempted attack on The Two Witnesses that results in the death of the Antichrist. An event of this kind implies that Jerusalem will have been already "surrounded" **with armies** some time before the Antichrist rises from the dead and kills The Two Witnesses, which is still at least 3 ½ days before The Abomination of Desolation. And such a 'deployment' would have to be sufficiently 'completed' at least a full week before The Abomination of Desolation. Of course, this would give a chance for slower moving but wiser Jews to be able to use this time for a 'head start' out of town. And this means that from the time The 144,000 recognize Jesus on, possibly even before the time of the death of the Antichrist on, we could expect Jews will be getting the clue from the Antichrist's surrounding armies that they need to 'skedaddle'. And indeed if all Jews wait until they **see the abomination of desolation** they won't have time to do anything else but drop what they are doing and run, not to mention how many more would be caught in the inevitable 'traffic jam'. But we can now expect that this should not be as big a problem because some should get the hint earlier and leave earlier.

So in the accounts of Matthew and Mark, we are only hearing Jesus' **instruction** that expresses the urgency to the Jews of their 'last chance' to get out, when He says,

Let him which is on the housetop not come down to take any thing out of his house. Neither let him which is in the field return back to take his clothes [etc.]... [Mat 24:17-20](#)

But the 'surrounding' of Jerusalem with **armies** must start days or even weeks before this moment in time. And this 'encompassing' must be sufficiently complete 3 ½ days before The Abomination of Desolation because this is when **the beast that ascendeth out of the bottomless pit shall make war against [The Two Witnesses], and shall overcome them, and kill them in Jerusalem ([Rev 11:7](#))**. And if these same **armies** are already there during their first failed attempt to kill The Two Witnesses when the Antichrist somehow receives his **deadly wound**—as they very likely are—then we're talking at least the whole week or more.

So with Jerusalem "surrounded" probably a week or more before Satan walks (or 'floats') into The Temple, and with both The 144,000 and The Two Witnesses raptured just before he does, some Jews should get Luke's clue a little earlier than Matthew and Mark's and beat the 'last minute rush'. Yes, some of the fleeing Jews may, according to Jesus and Luke, begin their flight hours or days or possibly even a week or more before anyone will be able to

see the abomination of desolation [Mat 24:15](#). And this may be necessary to evacuate a relatively large number of people to a protected location anyway. Luke also points out that those who are not 'in the region' at this time should not try to get back to Jerusalem, saying,

...let not them that are in the countries enter thereinto [Luke 21:21](#).

We'll talk more about the Jews in this situation in the next subsection.

And by-the-way, please don't think I'm getting down on Matthew and Mark for missing something. To do that I'd have to get down on God Himself. I haven't forgotten that,

All scripture is given by inspiration of God, and is profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for instruction in righteousness: That the man of God may be perfect, thoroughly furnished unto all good works [2 Tim 3:16](#).

And neither should you forget that **scripture** must be **handled** God's way, **precept upon precept** from both **here** and **there** all over The Bible if we are to be His **disciples indeed** and **approved unto God...** [and] **workman that needeth not to be ashamed, rightly dividing the word of truth**. And I mean you should see that this is another example of how God has constructed His Word to make this process necessary. And I mean that there should be no surprise that Luke records some details Matthew and Mark miss, and vice versa. It's certainly no mistake. This is God's doing and for the purpose of separating His **disciples** and His **approved** from those to whom He will say, **depart from me**, and then **cast into outer darkness**, the blood of Jesus always withstanding.

Also it's worth remembering again here that as we have found 'leeway' in time periods numbered in days or over a day—like in the '3 days' The Lord was in the tomb, so we might also expect 'leeway' in periods numbered in months exceeding even a month. But the periods measured in years or **a time, times and half a time** when also elsewhere described by periods of days or months can only vary by days or months, but only if so defined in other places. Otherwise periods of years may also vary by over a year. Then there are the 1000-year **days** that God describes from His perspective, some of which really only cover part of a 1000 years. But the case here is clear because **the woman** is said to be **there a thousand two hundred and threescore days** [Rev 12:6](#) and is further said to **fly into the wilderness, into her place, where she is nourished for a time, and times, and half a time, from the face of the serpent** [Rev 12:14](#). So this is 1260 regular days, give or take a day or so. And by-the-way, this is the only reason we have so far for God to number some periods in days and others in months—months and years give more latitude as appropriate. Of course God's 1000-year **days** give even more. And I mean the only reason besides just to 'keep us on our toes'. But we will see another reason next section.

One of the remaining 'loose-ends' in Chapter 12 is the woman's **remnant of her seed**. This is a different 'child' altogether. This **remnant** probably

represents both Jew and Gentile **believers** as their identity is fairly well spelled out. They are that...

...remnant... which keep the commandments of God, and have the testimony of Jesus Christ [Rev 12:17](#).

Now you might think that anyone at this point still trying to **keep the commandments of God** must be only Jews. And this is possibly what is intended here. And it might be safer to assume that the focus is on the Jews. We will see, for example, that 'temple sacrifices' will resume in The Millennial Temple in the presence of Jesus and continue throughout The Millennium in [SECTION 11](#), so ready or not, the time is coming when we'll have to get to **know** the Biblical lifestyle of the Jews much better. But we must also remember that whatever Jesus may require of the Jews in The Millennium, these **believers** also **have the testimony of Jesus Christ** and must therefore **know** that Jesus has made The Old Testament Law of God unnecessary for salvation by His blood sacrifice. And besides, don't Christians in The Age of Grace, generally speaking, **keep the commandments of God** too? Still I can't be dogmatic about this because The 70th Week is for the Jews and I don't **know** if 'baby' Gentile Christians qualify for this particular **remnant** since they all had their chance a few years earlier in The Age of Grace anyway. Except surely some 'baby' Gentile Christians will survive to The Millennium or at least die with their **faith** intact and be redeemed at some point. So the question here is whether they rate 'direct mention' alongside the newly scattering Christian Jews in Israel in this otherwise plainly Jewish-focused chapter.

But again, and on the other hand, both Jews and Gentiles have multiple opportunities to find redemption in The Great Tribulation and there are certainly some mixed raptures that remain, so it would be appropriate at this point to be referring to a mixed group. And isn't everyone who has **the testimony of Jesus Christ** necessarily **of her seed**? After all, John and others declare that all **salvation is of the Jews** anyway (e.g., [John 4:22](#)). But what I really want to know is if I have I turned you around in enough circles on this subject yet. Personally, I would not feel offended if this whole chapter is only about the Jews. I'll already be in Heaven at this point anyway. And I **know** believing Gentiles in The Great Tribulation will get opportunities to be redeemed even if they are no longer the focus of attention. I should warn you though that there are other arguments on both sides that will eventually come in to play. But I'll stop for now at the risk that some of you are getting dizzy, or that you are having difficulty seeing passed your own Christianity.

So whichever the case, surely this plainly indicated Jewish and possibly also Gentile **remnant** represents those who do not **flee** to that special **place prepared of God**, though they have not missed 'recognizing' The Messiah. We **know** that a few of the possible reasons for this—in the case of Jews—is because, as Jesus indicates, they may be women who are pregnant, or travelers overcome by the hardships of winter weather, or people that go back toward Jerusalem, or even just back into their own houses to get something or someone before they try to get away ([Mat 24:15-21](#); [Mark 13:14-19](#); [Luke 21:20-23](#)). But there must be a multitude of other reasons. We also **know** that any Christian who is not part of these select 'escapees' are in a 'tough spot'

because they will no longer have a trustworthy place to hide anywhere, though some of them must survive the entire Great Tribulation somehow.

So it's not just the Jews. Anyone who has 'missed their flight' up to this time is in a shameful and desperate situation. This includes any Gentile who fails to acknowledge Jesus as their Savior in time to make The Rapture of the Church just before The Great Tribulation starts. And it continues with those that don't get **out of great tribulation** a year or two later at The Rapture of the Tribulation Gentiles by the same 'hardheartedness', though this one probably requires dying during The Seal Judgments. And as for Jews—and all the 'real ones' must make it to Israel as we will see—it continues with those that don't **flee** at either one of the two cues to escape to the 'safe haven' provided by God. These Jews will miss their best chance to escape alive from their time of **great tribulation** too. But all survivors will get other chances later in The Days of Vengeance and in The Millennium. We'll also see that 'real Jews' can expect to be kept physically safe by God throughout The Beginning of Sorrows just by being in Israel—as long as they don't recognize Jesus too early. We'll see this better in [SECTION 9](#).

However, the whole seven years must be **great tribulation** for surviving Gentiles. The same thing would apply to any Jew not in Israel, while only really the second half, The Days of Vengeance, will be **great tribulation** for Jews who are in Israel but don't **flee** to God's 'sanctuary' in **the mountains** on cue. So you could say that any believer, Jew or Gentile, who miss their first and best opportunities to escape The Great Tribulation, could be considered part of this **remnant**. And whoever God is focusing on here, it's certain that all surviving **believers** who do not make it safely to God's Sanctuary in the Wilderness will be stuck trying to avoid Satan and the Antichrist at their worst, not to mention enduring God at His most severe.

And while the focus seems to be on 'real Jews' that are protected by God in Israel in Revelation 12, in Chapter 13 John has some bad news that must instead apply to everyone but protected Jews. And He speaks of their 'defenselessness', warning,

He that leadeth into captivity shall go into captivity: he that killeth with the sword must be killed with the sword. Here is the patience and the faith of the saints [Rev 13:10](#).

And this nearly identical sentence is repeated by John in the next chapter where he instead offers them some good news. He tells 'enduring' **believers** that they are **blessed**, and consoles them saying,

Here is the patience of the saints: here are they that keep the commandments of God, and the faith of Jesus... Blessed are the dead which die in the Lord from henceforth... [Rev 14:12-13](#).

So though **believers** in The Days of Vengeance are evidently 'defenseless'—because God promises them that any defense attempted will fail, and that they will often end up **dead** anyway—they are also apparently **blessed**, 'commandment-keeping', **believers in Jesus** who will nonetheless at some point be redeemed. And these proclamations seem to apply worldwide. But we will need all the remaining sections for explanation before we are done with

this issue.

Still there's one more review we should do. Most cannot choose to be part of Jesus' special 144,000 member 'entourage', nor are likely to be one of God's **two candlesticks standing before the God of the earth**. But any Gentile alive today should **understand** that either the 'tribulation-free' station of **the wife** of Jesus, or the 'minimally traumatic' path to the station of those who **serve** God **day and night in his temple** in Heaven are both immeasurably preferable to holding out and trying to make it through Satan's...

...war with the saints... [where the Antichrist will generally] **overcome them: and** [at a time when] **power was given him over all kindreds, and tongues, and nations** [Rev 13:7](#).

Still,

Blessed are the dead which die in the Lord from henceforth: Yea, saith the Spirit, that they may rest from their labours; and their works do follow them [Rev 14:13](#).

This '**henceforth**' will be covered in the remaining sections too. But it begins with what must be yet another group of 'real Jews' who escape by slaughter and rapture from Satan's newly established, what I will coin, 'demonarchy'.

The Rapture of the Tribulation Jews

CHART of 7 Distinguishing Features of The Rapture of the Tribulation Jews							
X = CERTAIN ? = UNCERTAIN BLANK = CERTAINLY NOT							
Raptures	From Grave	From Earth	Jews	Gen- tiles	To Earth	To Heaven	Saved
Tribulation Jews	X		X			X	X

CHART Of Rapture Positions in the Main Sets of Events of the Great Tribulation				
Sets of Events	Beginning of Sorrows	Abomination of Desolation	The Days of Vengeance	Armageddon
Position				
Beginning			Tribulation Jews	

The beginning of Satan's 42-month 'demonarchy' on Earth is a story of both frustration and triumph for Satan. And one of the results of this tumultuous start is The Rapture of the Tribulation Jews. We have already grappled with some of his midterm frustrations, including the 'escape' by rapture of The 144,000 involving the **war in heaven** that ends in his expulsion from Heaven to Earth, and the 'escape' of surviving Jews **into the wilderness**. We have also seen some of his midterm triumphs including the 'resurrection' of the Antichrist, the worldwide celebration following The Slaughter of The Two

Witnesses, and the worldwide supreme authority and worship that both he and the Antichrist win at The Abomination of Desolation. But I see that Satan has more triumphs, with only hidden frustrations, immediately following these midterm events to achieve, the foremost of these being that He will rally an unhindered 'killing spree' of Jews and Christians that will make the Holocaust of World War II seem like a park picnic.

The raptured Tribulation Jews literally stand on **the sea of glass** in The Temple in Heaven having received **victory over the beast** by not worshipping **the beast** or **his image** and by not taking **his mark**, and sing the victors' **song of Moses** that proclaims God's **vengeance** on the enemies of the Jews

Dan 7:19-22;11:31-Rev 15:1-7

2 Peter 1

Exo 14:22-26

35

Rom 7:24

Rev 4:1-8

Deut 31-32

Rev 12:17; 13:7

Psalms 19:12

Exo 15:1-18

The greatest apparent 'victory' for Satan, which is really a hidden **victory** for God, follows just after the weeklong 'rollercoaster' of spectacles that end with The Abomination of Desolation. I estimate this apparent victory of Satan's at the beginning of The Days of Vengeance will be the third most terrifying and horrible slaughter on Earth of all time. But unfortunately, this will only be from the perspective of **believers**. And I expect the most terrifying and horrible slaughter will be Armageddon, though only from the perspective of **unbelievers**, which we will get to later. The second worst slaughter, evidently horrifying to everyone, I expect will be the massacre of $\frac{1}{3}$ of the Earth's population by the creatures of The 6th Trumpet Judgment. And I rate this Satan-led slaughter following The Abomination of Desolation third on the 'horror/torture scale' even though not nearly so many will die in it as in the other more slowly 'churned-out' slaughters caused by God's judgments. Of course the five months span of The 5th Trumpet Judgment is arguably the worst period of 'torture', but it's not a period of slaughter. And the number of deaths in The 4th Seal Judgment make it a close fourth, but I'm guessing the creatures of The 6th Trumpet will be the most terrifying, outside of the experience of Armageddon. These are some of the reasons why I think the third worst slaughter on the 'horror/torture scale' will be the initial explosive outbreak of Satan's, the Antichrist's, and the False Prophet's **war with the saints** ([Dan 7:19-22](#); [11:31-35](#); [Rev 12:17](#); [13:7](#)).

But those of us in Heaven will see one of the results of this horrible spectacle as God's **victory** when it's celebrated around The Throne of God in Heaven. In Chapter 15 John records,

...I saw as it were a sea of glass mingled with fire: and them that had gotten the victory over the beast, and over his image, and over his mark, and over the number of his name, stand on the sea of glass, having the harps of God [Rev 15:2](#).

It's indeed a **victory** celebration in Heaven that must be at the cost of Satan's 'victorious' slaughter on Earth just after The Abomination of Desolation.

And now it's time to dispense with a misconception from back in Revelation 4 that this passage clears up. It's that since these 'victors' **stand on the sea of glass**, then this **sea of glass** cannot be an allegorical representation of a group of people as some suppose. In Chapter 4, some have understandably enough speculated that this same **sea of glass** serves to hide the Church. But it's clearly just a floor that these redeemed immortals are standing on here in Chapter 15, so this must be the case in Chapter 4 too.

However The Bible, especially in Revelation, is nonetheless full of fantastic both literal and figurative descriptions that we must remain ever **vigilant** to distinguish between, and trust that if we are **diligent** we can—that The Holy Spirit will be faithful to **guide us into all truth**. This time we have a metaphorical description of a literally very big floor space—a **sea of glass**.

But in the next section we will confirm another case of an allegorical description where a 'body of water' does indeed represent a group of people—which is likely where the idea for the misconception in Chapter 4 comes from.

The point that is worth a pause here is that this is another way God makes us work for it. I think God mixes it up in this way to keep us honest and on our toes, and to expose the slackers. Ok, I admit it. I was taught and used to believe that the Church was **the sea of glass** too. But it doesn't make all of us who fall for it necessarily slackers. Only failing to **continue** to test and retest your **understanding** of The Word of God makes you a slacker. And only **if you do these things** do you have supernatural **promises** that you are really safe. And yes, those that don't **continue** to pursue the source of **life and godliness** I would call slackers. You certainly can't expect this type to be a lot of help nor avoid being somewhat harmful too. And God can't call them **approved** because their **understanding** at best is full of undetected **errors** that they aren't doing anything about—or not doing anything about it God's way—The Holy Spirit always withstanding. And fortunately, and despite this kind of **shame**, the blood of Christ is nonetheless sufficient for all. I **know** I need it to keep me—**O wretched man that I am!**—so that I can **continue** until God will finally **...deliver me from the body of this death...** ([Rom 7:24](#)). But again, (and I'm sure the Apostle Peter would be cheering my repetition here), what I consider the most important **revelation** of this **study**, is that it's not as much **the knowledge of God** that keeps you safe, it's the continuing commitment to pursue God through His Word that keeps you safe. And **errors**? (See [Psalms 19:12](#).) Everyone is making them. And everyone will forever continue to do so. Only God never makes mistakes. So we can only make a commitment to **continue** to find them. It's our eternal duty, though some will not wake up to this duty until they have experienced some more **shame**. But also I mean that someone that has 'a lot' of **the knowledge of God** but who no longer pursues Him, is not as safe as a baby Christian who has a sincere desire to seek God. After all, no matter how much we **grow** and **learn**, we are still not omniscient, and remain forever capable of **error**. And **error** can destroy. But God **promises** we will **never fall** if we reach a certain level, right? NO!—He promises we will **never fall** if we **continue** in our commitment to **know** Him and His Word better and better forever—and the **fruits** of all this will become unavoidably evident. So it's when we **continue** to **grow** or **abound**—not when we reach any given level of **the knowledge of God**—that keeps us safe. Of course **continuing** naturally results in more **knowledge** about God, forever. But we will never reach Him and have all the **knowledge** we need to keep ourselves safe. And this is why we must **continually** pursue Him. And this is just one of the **revelations** from the Apostle Peter in [2 Peter 1](#). And I'm sure he was speaking for God.

Also in Chapter 15 we should notice that none of the other previously raptured groups are mentioned to be still around The Throne of God. They may or may not still be nearby, but they are not mentioned. Even The 24 Elders are not mentioned here. But they all must still be around somewhere because John implies a little later in Revelation that they are all there participating in a 'big temple wedding'. So they may be busy 'making themselves ready' for that ceremony and the following 'reception' too. Of

course, since we **know** that The Elders have **seats** that are **round about the throne** [Rev 4:4](#), I expect that they are actually still there, just unmentioned. And since the **altar** is likely still there The Martyrs are probably still be there too. And by-the-way, at least **one of the four beasts** [Rev 15:7](#) is shown to be involved in Chapter 15. And we **know** that they should be otherwise on task worshipping The **Lord God Almighty** before The Throne of God continually **day and night** [Rev 4:8](#).

But who are these new 'victors'? Again, as other groups, they are identified by their voiced praise of God. In this case...

...they sing the song of Moses the servant of God, and the song of the Lamb [Rev 15:3](#).

This would definitely make them Jews but **believers** in the Jesus too.

Now I used to think **the song of Moses** is the one that starts with that famous verse,

I will sing unto the LORD, for he hath triumphed gloriously: the horse and his rider hath he thrown into the sea...

It's recorded in [Exodus 15:1-18](#) and is sung when **the children of Israel** escape **Pharaoh's chariots** by crossing...

...the sea upon the dry ground... [when] the waters were a wall unto them on their right hand, and on their left... [after which] the waters... come again upon the Egyptians, upon their chariots, and upon their horsemen [Ex 14:22-26](#).

This is indeed an occasion of a song Moses sang, and it was a 'glorious' one, but it's not likely **the song of Moses** from The Throne scene in Revelation 15. The song for this occasion more likely comes from [Deuteronomy 32](#), which is a song given to Moses by God for a future occasion. It's a song Moses wrote the **selfsame day** the Lord told him,

Get thee up... unto mount Nebo... And die [Deut 32:48-50](#).

But before he died, **the LORD** instructed Moses to...

...write ye this song for you, and teach it the children of Israel: put it in their mouths, that this song may be a witness for me against the children of Israel... [and again] that this song shall testify against them as a witness; for it shall not be forgotten out of the mouths of their seed... Moses therefore wrote this song the same day, and taught it the children of Israel [Deut 31:19-22](#).

This song is a doubly proclaimed **witness... against the children of Israel, a foolish people**, who are nonetheless **the LORD'S portion** and **the apple of his eye**, and, **As an eagle stirreth up her nest, fluttereth over her young, spreadeth abroad her wings, taketh them, [and] beareth them**

on her wings... So the LORD alone did lead Israel.

But the song also makes clear that Israel **provoked him to jealousy**, and **sacrificed to devils**, and became **a nation void of counsel**, [where] **neither is there any understanding in them**. So, in **anger, ...the LORD shall judge his people...**, but then **repent**, to the end that He proclaims to the whole World,

Rejoice, O ye nations, with his people: for he will avenge the blood of his servants, and will render vengeance to his adversaries, and will be merciful unto his land, and to his people [Deuteronomy 32](#).

The 'wrapping up' of all these things is what The 70th Week of Daniel is all about. And **the LORD'S portion**, the Jews, is the focus. And another 'helping' of Jews will eventually find themselves **before the throne... on the sea of glass** as 'previewed' in [Revelation 15](#).

So these Jews that are seen here on 'center stage' getting **the victory over the beast, and over his image, and over his mark...** [Rev 15:2](#) undoubtedly get this **victory** as a result of Satan's apparent 'triumph', and hidden frustration, just like with the death and resurrection of Jesus. And I mean that to get **victory over the beast** at this stage of the game, these Jews have to die. Apparently in most cases they'll have to give up their heads too. But I'm sure this will be a 'bloodbath' of both Jewish and Gentile **believers** worldwide.

But this 'absolute enforcement' of the worship of the Antichrist and of **his image**, and the 'absolute enforcement' of the taking of **his mark** will not be possible until after the Antichrist leaves The Temple in Jerusalem having declared himself to be God, because it is this act that finally gives him the **authority** and **power** to more or less universally enforce this threefold satanic law. And those who think the worldwide 'absolute enforcement' of **the mark of the beast** stretches across the whole seven years have an over-generalized view of these years at best as we will **continue** to see.

So this 'bloodbath' that immediately follows The Abomination of Desolation must be a 'blitzkrieg' of casualties and executions of Jews and Christians of an incredible scope and magnitude. All over the World **believers** will be able to be speedily killed because they will be able to be quickly identified as refusing to worship the Antichrist and/or **his image** and/or take **his mark** at a time when the Antichrist finally has 'absolute authority' to avenge his previous frustrations. And the Jews in Israel who are among these slain should shortly thereafter find themselves before The Throne of God. And other believers who die by these means at this time will be redeemed later as we will see. And the end of this story—really whether for Jew or Gentile—is in the song of these Jews who are the first to have **gotten the victory over the beast, and over his image, and over his mark, and over the number of his name**. This **song of Moses** tells us that God will **avenge the blood of his servants, and will render vengeance to his adversaries** evidently throughout but especially at the end of these Days of Vengeance.

With Jerusalem surrounded by **armies** at The Abomination of Desolation just after The Two Witnesses and The 144,000 are taken out of the way, and just after the Antichrist and the False Prophet are newly 'empowered' by Satan, along with a pre-prepared, necessarily improved 'Nazi-style' system of genocide, there will be so many deaths of Jews and Christians so quickly that all the Jewish corpses will not be able to be disposed of before some of them are raptured to The Throne of God just before the 'pouring out' of The 1st Plague Judgment in The Days of Vengeance

Luke 21:20
Rev 13:15-16
Mat 24:21

Dan 12:1
Rev 13:7
Rev 12:17

Rev 15
Rev 11:14
Dan 9:26

This perspective, that the 'absolute enforcement' of the three forms of Satan and Antichrist worship begins at The Abomination of Desolation and facilitates the immediate mass slaughter of Jews and Christians not only in Israel but worldwide should still be considered speculation at this point only because it is in some aspects relatively new to me and should be tested further. But it appears to be a legitimate **revelation**. So let the testing begin. The most obvious reason that I come to these conclusions about The Rapture of the Tribulation Jews is that at the time of The Abomination of Desolation

...ye shall see Jerusalem compassed with armies [Luke 21:20](#). Nothing enforces like **armies**. This is the best indication we have that this is the time when the Antichrist is finally positioned to be able to carry out mass executions of 'dissenters', especially in Israel, but not just in Israel, likely throughout his kingdom too, and probably by cooperation with most other regions of the World as well.

To accomplish this, the Antichrist will also have to have the help of the False Prophet. This must be a man heading a global religious institution capable of being able to...

...cause that as many as would not worship the image of the beast should be killed. And he causeth all, both small and great, rich and poor, free and bond, to receive a mark in their right hand, or in their foreheads
[Rev 13:15-16](#).

This is indeed 'far-flung' influence that is also not likely to be fully positioned until The Abomination of Desolation either. So we should also not expect Satan or the Antichrist to be 'universally worshipped' until The Abomination of Desolation. Loved, praised, adored, yes, but not worshipped worldwide until he is also 'resurrected' and 'empowered'. And remember that the False Prophet isn't 'empowered' by Satan until then either. And we will also determine conclusively that Jerusalem is significantly 'far-flung' from the original Antichrist Kingdom, and we will deduce and **prove** who this global religious leader must be in the next sections.

Another reason it's likely that worship of the Antichrist, **his image**, and **his mark** are not mandatory or even widespread until after The Abomination of Desolation is the presence of The Two Witnesses. Until they are killed by **the beast**, everyone is impotent before them. Until then, their very presence will bring into question anyone who would attempt to unilaterally control the whole World in any way. Still another reason is The 144,000 Jews. They will obviously also be impervious to attack or control all the way up to the time they are taken away to Heaven very near the time of The Abomination of Desolation. And the Antichrist, even with the acclaim he will receive by 'rising from the dead', will likely also need to broker the credit for killing The Two Witnesses and 'disposing of' The 144,000 in order to gain the authority necessary to institute his **worship** and **mark**. Only then will he finally be positioned not only to control his worshippers, but also to exterminate God's.

And this is a good time to remember Jesus' general summation of the matter, that,

...then shall be great tribulation, such as was not since the beginning of the world to this time, no, nor ever shall be [Mat 24:21](#).

And Daniel's, especially concerning the Jews, that,

...there shall be a time of trouble, such as never was since there was a nation even to that same time [Dan 12:1](#).

Since there can only be one **time** for the Jews—and the rest of the World—that is worst of all, which begins just after The Abomination of Desolation, and which must also be closely associated with this rapture where these who have **gotten the victory over the beast** appear in Heaven, the question arises as to just how fast the Antichrist's **war with the saints** [Rev 13:7](#) can kill Jews. Or putting it another way, how many could be initially very quickly exterminated in Satan's **war with the remnant... which keep the commandments of God, and have the testimony of Jesus Christ** [Rev 12:17](#) if he is sufficiently pre-prepared? I propose that all those who **stand on the sea of glass... [who] sing the song of Moses** around The Throne of God ([Rev 15:2-3](#)) are evidence of how fast. And I expect that there are even more Gentile martyrs for this cause that get 'scheduled' at this time for a later rapture.

One way to see how bad it should get, or to gauge the minimum number of who must die at this time, is to look at the worst past atrocities against the Jews and Christians and use those events as benchmarks that, by definitin, can't compare. We **know** that in the few short years of WW II, of the 20 to 30 million people killed, around 6 million of them were Jews systematically exterminated by the 'Nazi war machine'. In a true story about this 'system' by Elie Wiesel in his book, **Night**, this Nobel Peace Prize winner's personal account describes how Jews are methodically corralled into "ghettoes" within cities and towns throughout Europe, and then transported to "death camps" in remote locations also throughout Europe to be executed, or worked to death or near death then executed. But in The Days of Vengeance the World

won't see a system operating just in Europe, it will see a worldwide systematic extermination of Jews and Christians operating under the authority of the Antichrist and the False Prophet, and necessarily involving many more millions but over a much shorter time. With the Antichrist's armies fully deployed, and his authority newly self-proclaimed to be absolute to the jubilant rejoicing of all the World, surely the Antichrist will put Hitler's efforts to shame, possibly executing significantly more people in a few days than Hitler did in a few years. But I believe many of them that are 'real Jews' with a new faith in Christ will find themselves shortly thereafter redeemed and in Heaven, yes, singing ***the song of Moses***.

We should also recognize that the Antichrist actually has 3 ½ years to prepare this 'greatest of all holocausts'—not that it's not already being prepared to some extent now. So it should be no surprise that by the time of The Abomination of Desolation the Antichrist already has those identified as 'Jews' and even some denominations of 'Christians' already segregated, if not incarcerated, within his empire before he walks into The Temple in Jerusalem. And it's likely that other pre-prepared Jewish and/or Gentile 'ghettoes' or 'death camps' will spring up and fill up worldwide and very quickly during the events that precede The Abomination of Desolation. And the 'collection procedures' and 'camps' in the Antichrist Kingdom should be models for countries that have not been as quick to 'jump on this bandwagon'. And I expect the kind of worldwide approval for the slaughter of Jews and Christians to be the same as the outpouring of joy and support after the slaughter of The Two Witnesses. Though certainly Jews in Israel and the Antichrist Kingdom will be the first to die and in the greatest numbers.

Again, we will confirm in [SECTION 9](#) that God makes clear that only the Jews that are in Israel can make this midterm rapture, and that it follows the time when...

...the people of the prince that shall come [the Antichrist] shall destroy the city and the sanctuary [Dan 9:26](#).

And this would only be those who are not able to escape ***Judea*** in time. But certainly many more who call themselves Jews and Christians from around the World will follow these Jews to their death at this time, especially in places such as China and Russia who have a history of persecuting Jews and Christians, but this slaughter should really be going on just about everywhere. Again, we're talking the ***war with the saints*** here.

Of course The Midterm Great Earthquake should allow believing survivors all over the World a chance to both get away and to try to hide. Still, Jerusalem is surrounded. So I expect that there will be a '***multitude***' of Jews killed in the initial massacre and all within a few days and weeks after The Abomination of Desolation. I mean there appears to be only a small window of unhindered time available for this slaughter as we will see.

But though I see this initial 'bloodbath' as the worst of the slaughter, it's clear that the ***war with the saints*** will be carried on throughout The Days of Vengeance, probably mostly because of all those that get the chance to get away in The Midterm Great Earthquake. Newly-converted Jews that escape both the early 'bloodbath' and also all forms of Satan worship but are killed later in Days of Vengeance, along with other Gentile Christians killed since

The Rapture of the Tribulation Gentiles, will be raptured near the end of The Great Tribulation as we will see. And other converted Jews and Christians must survive, likely by hiding somehow, all the way through The Great Tribulation, making it to The Millennium. They must be relatively few, but they are specifically mentioned by Jesus, which we'll get to later too.

And apparently God accommodates this early Days-of-Vengeance slaughter in a way. I say this because the judgments from Heaven that might otherwise interfere with this initial slaughter appear to be 'on hold' until it's all over. This is evidenced by the first clear sequential indicator since **The second woe is past; and, behold, the third woe cometh quickly** [Rev 11:14](#). It occurs just after The Throne scene and ceremony with The Tribulation Jews when John records that...

...after that I looked, and... the seven angels came out of the temple, having the seven plagues [Rev 15:5-6](#).

So during a short period that I expect is less than a month, between when The 7th Trumpet is '**past**' and when The 1st Plague is **poured out**, Satan, the Antichrist, and the False Prophet are finally fully prepared, unhindered, and apparently initially very successful in their campaign of genocide against all **believers** in Jesus.

And again, this shows the repeating pattern in The Great Tribulation where a redemptive rapture precedes ceremonies and dedications in Heaven and is followed by the release of judgments from Heaven, including repeated cycles of slaughter that produce souls ready to be raptured. And these numbered, sequential Plague Judgments that follow this ceremony, where this time we see the opening of **the temple of the tabernacle of the testimony in heaven** [Rev 15:5](#), apparently signify God's and Jesus' worthiness and power to **continue** to judge the Earth even more severely than in the first half.

And there is one more likely striking phenomenon that should result from such a 'blitzkrieg-bloodbath' at this time. It's the disappearance of a lot of dead bodies before they can be buried or otherwise disposed of. I envision that so many people will be killed so quickly, especially in Jerusalem, that they will not have the time to dispose of their **bodies** before they disappear as they are **changed** and **caught up** to Heaven. But Satan and the Antichrist will probably take the credit for this phenomenon too, 'spinning' it to promote their further worship and authority. But this should be a phenomenon common to all the raptures. I mean hopefully when The Rapture of the Church happens there will be, for example, some 'open casket' funerals going on where the 'dearly departed', along with some of the 'mourners', will disappear too.

The month-long Sweet and Sour 16 Midterm Events of The Great Tribulation on Earth

- 1) The conclusion of The Massacre of The 6th Trumpet/ 2nd Woe
- 2) The Death and Mourning of the Antichrist and The Peak of Anti-Semitism
- 3) The Rapture of the 144,000 Jews

- 4) The Resurrection of The Antichrist
- 5) The Slaughter of The Two Witnesses
- 6) The Celebration of the Kingdom of Satan and the Antichrist
- 7) The Great Mourning of the Jews in the Revelation of Jesus Christ
- 8) The Resurrection and Rapture of the Two Witnesses
- 9) The Midterm Great Earthquake
- 10) The Rapture of the Dead Jews to Israel
- 11) The Abomination of Desolation
- 12) The Flight of the Jews.
- 13) The Absolute Enforcement of the Worship of Satan and the Antichrist (begins)
- 14) The War with the Saints (begins)
- 15) The Rapture of the Tribulation Jews
- 16) The 1st Plague Judgment of The Days of Vengeance (is poured out)

I'm afraid it's already time for another recap in the form of a new list. [The Baker's Dozen Midterm Events](#) listed crucial midterm events that take place both in Heaven and on Earth. They are the so-called middle 13 events in the transition from The Beginning of Sorrow to The Days of Vengeance which are described or implied from Chapters 9-18. These are also the basis for my 'cooking up' of [The Sweet and Sour 16 Midterm Events](#) except this new list only includes 'earthbound' views of midtribulation action. And [The Baker's Dozen](#) occurs in what I see to be about the last week or so before The Abomination of Desolation, but [The Sweet and Sour 16 Midterm Events](#) continue probably about a month beyond The Abomination of Desolation into The Days of Vengeance concluding with The Rapture of the Tribulation Jews and the start of The 7 Plague Judgments. Chapter 16 describes The Plague Judgments one at a time, showing that John is back on a sequential clock just like with The Seal and Trumpet Judgments in Chapters 6-9. But this also reinforces the fact that the midterm events, all the ones found in my repetitive lists, are all either past or begun. Two events that can only be seen in Heaven that take place during this period are The War in Heaven and The Celebration of The Eternal Kingdom of God and of Christ. Can you see where they should fit in this new list?

Connections to The Rapture of the Tribulation Jews seen in the mindset of the **saints**, and in the messages of the Herald Angels

Rev 13:7-10
Rev 14:6-13

2 Cor 4:4
Rom 2:5

1 Tim 4:2
Rev 20:4
2 Thes 2:10

Though The Rapture of the Tribulation Jews isn't described until Chapter 15, there are implied connections to it in Chapters 12-14. We have already considered the **war with the saints** mentioned in both Chapters 12 and 13. One of the results of the initial 'blow out' of this one-sided war must be The Rapture of the Tribulation Jews. Another connection can be seen in the mindset that is necessary in order to get **victory over the beast**, and in order to make this rapture. In Chapter 13 we **learn** of the 'Satan-empowered' Antichrist in an overview of his reign on Earth during The Days of Vengeance. We **learn** that he's been raised from the dead. We **learn** he blasphemes God in The Temple in Jerusalem. We **learn** that it's **given unto him** to kill Jews and Christians, and that **power was given him** to rule the whole World ([Rev 13:7](#)). We are then informed that defending yourself from any of this is useless because John warns **the saints** that, **He that leadeth into captivity shall go into captivity: he that killeth with the sword must be killed with the sword**. These are the things that **the saints** must 'patiently and faithfully' **endure unto the end**. And this is what John means when he writes, **Here is the patience and the faith of the saints** [Rev 13:10](#).

The same mindset is explained to be required in Chapter 14. In this chapter, just after the description of The Rapture of the 144,000 Jews, John tells us about the three 'herald angels' which **fly in the midst of heaven... to preach unto them that dwell on the earth** [Rev 14:6](#). And though the description of the 'overhead preaching' of these 'herald angels' immediately follows the description of The Rapture of the 144,000 Jews in this account of 'heavenly events', no clear sequential terminology is used to assure us that other events from other perspectives don't fit in between. Still, I would guess these angels begin their 'low-orbit ministries' around the Earth immediately after The Abomination of Desolation and possibly continue throughout The Days of Vengeance.

And the first angel does make plain that with his 'flight', **the hour of his** [or God's] **judgment is come** [Rev 14:7](#), indicating the beginning of the 'worst-time-ever' period Daniel and Jesus speak about that follows The Abomination of Desolation, and which is also indicated by The 7th Trumpet Judgment. So this angel must **fly** very early in the second half. He also preaches **the everlasting gospel** [Rev 14:6](#). Considering that everyone on Earth hears this 'supernatural preaching', it should make you wonder how Satan nonetheless gets away with deceiving **the whole world**. But the reason is not that hard to find. It's because **the god of this world** [Satan] **hath blinded the minds of them which believe not** [2 Cor 4:4](#) because of their **hardness and impenitent heart[s]** [Rom 2:5](#) including **having their conscience[s] seared with a hot iron** [1 Tim 4:2](#). And these are the ones that will **perish; because they received not the love of the truth, that**

they might be saved [2Thes 2:10](#). From this we can imagine that most people will not even respond to 'an angel in the sky' telling them what's what. But despite this 'mass insanity', this angel should provide an immeasurable source of courage and comfort for the **few** who need it to **endure unto the end**.

The Second Herald Angel is either informing the Earth after the fact or 'predicting' that **Babylon is fallen** [Rev 14:8](#), which again must be the 'spiritual name' and not likely the literal location of the home of the False Prophet. And I say that he must be 'predicting' this event if the angel flies early because this 'fall of Babylon'—which is further described in Chapters 17 and 18—must occur late in The Days of Vengeance as we will see. And if he is really informing us of a past event then this angel must be flying late in The Days of Vengeance. But the message of The Third Herald Angel implies that the second one is more likely an 'early forecaster' of the fall of the False Prophet and his **city**, because the Earth needs the message of this third angel as close to the beginning of The Days of Vengeance as possible. And the second herald's 'early forecast' would also provide the necessary courage for the ones that will later need to renounce **Babylon** and help provide some of the strength they will need to **come out of her** as we will see.

And it's this third orbiting Herald Angel that by his message again shows us the required mindset needed by **the saints** in order to get **victory over the beast**. His message is about the consequences of failing to win this **victory**, and should help provide **believers** the **patience** and **faith** required to **endure** the **temptations** to give in to the Antichrist. The angel proclaims,

If any man worship the beast and his image, and receive his mark in his forehead, or in his hand, The same shall drink of the wine of the wrath of God, which is poured out without mixture into the cup of his indignation; and he shall be tormented with fire and brimstone in the presence of the holy angels, and in the presence of the Lamb: And the smoke of their torment ascendeth up for ever and ever: and they have no rest day nor night, who worship the beast and his image, and whosoever receiveth the mark of his name. [Again,] Here is the patience of the saints: here are they that keep the commandments of God, and the faith of Jesus [Rev 14:9-12](#).

Now we can see here that this message is not specifically for Jews but for **any man**. In this context we can also **understand** the next **...voice from heaven saying,**

...Write, Blessed are the dead which die in the Lord from henceforth: Yea, saith the Spirit, that they may rest from their labours; and their works do follow them [Rev 14:13](#).

And the Jews around The Throne of God who are among the first to have **gotten victory over the beast** are also among these **dead which die in the Lord**. And therefore this is a strong indication that all three Herald Angels must **fly** very early in The Days of Vengeance, if not throughout, to

best accomplish their ministries. And that their encouraging ministry will help Jews and Gentiles the World over **endure unto the end**.

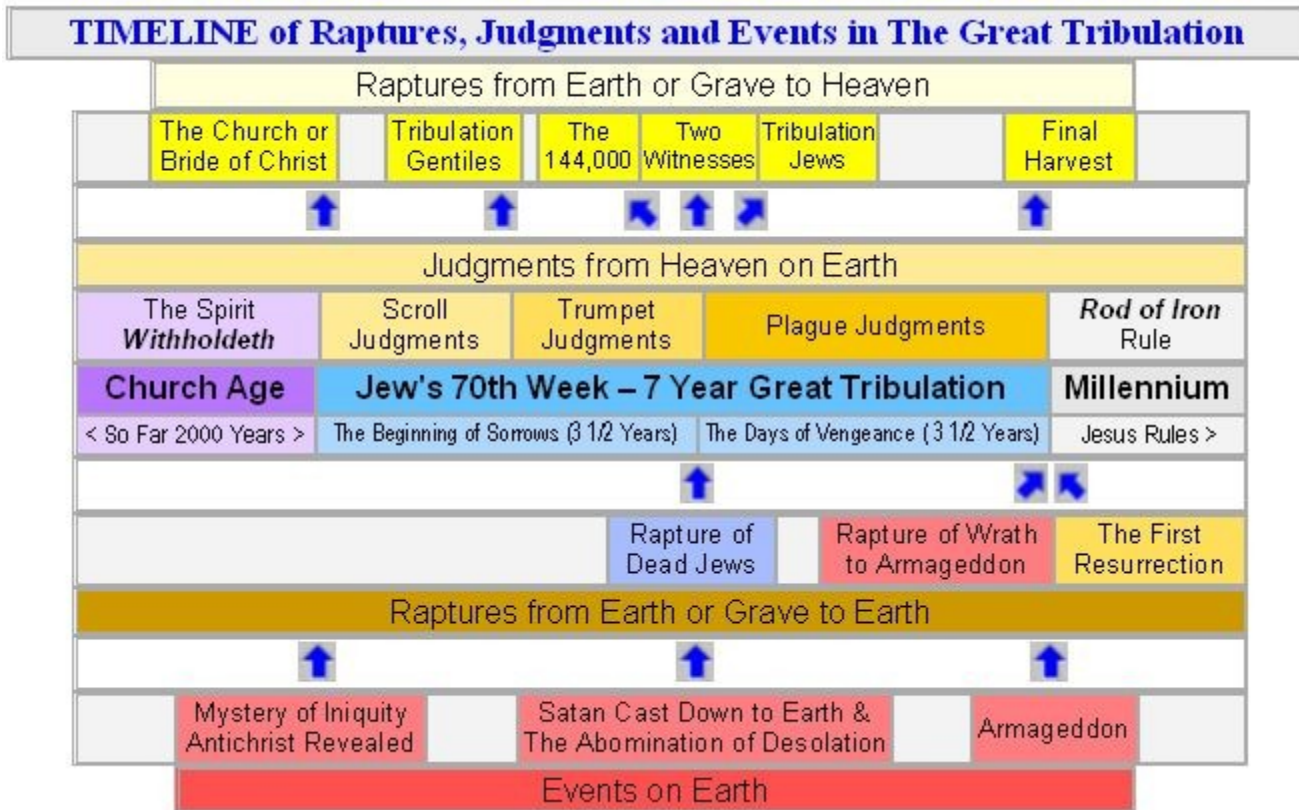
And we can expect that many others both before and after The Rapture of the Tribulation Jews will get **victory over the beast** because they are seen at the end of The Great Tribulation. John sees them then as...

...them that were beheaded for the witness of Jesus, and for the word of God, and which had not worshipped the beast, neither his image, neither had received his mark upon their foreheads, or in their hands [Rev 20:4](#).

We'll talk more about these **blessed** ones in [SECTION 11](#).

So evidently the Antichrist will prepare a way to kill Jews and Christians extremely fast and efficiently with a system build around one or more applications involving 'a swift blade to the neck'. Heads will likely be removed by guillotine, axes, and other blades, but undoubtedly, 'a thundering host of heads will roll'. This will be by the decree of the Antichrist after **he as God** leaves The Temple in Jerusalem which he will shortly thereafter **destroy**, probably making room on that site for his new **palace**. The activities of God, Satan, and the Antichrist in The Great Tribulation are topics of the next section.

SECTION 7 God, Satan, and the Antichrist in The Great Tribulation



God in The Great Tribulation

Responsibility for The Great Tribulation falls predominantly on The Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. Clearly, all the judgments from Heaven are administered by Jesus and the angels from before The Father's Throne inside The Temple in Heaven. Besides these judgments, we **know** that They is responsible for all of the other horrible events because They creates all things and allows all things that come to pass. And these are intentional singular verb 'errors' on my part because they read just like the Hebrew. For example, in [Genesis 1](#) **Elohim** is translated there as **God** and it's a plural noun meaning 'more than two'. But **bara**, translated there as **created**, is a singular verb. Plural **Elohim** is used in this way--with singular verbs or adjectives--over 2000 times in The Old Testament. And in The New Testament our Triune God is seen jointly presiding at Jesus' baptism by John the Baptist ([Mat 3:16-17](#)). The point is that They does all things, and that in all things, They acts as **one God**. This is God's original presentation of Himself to us.

Now I'm not pretending to have solved the ages-old mystery of The Trinity here. I'm simply accepting it when God says,

...my thoughts are not your thoughts, neither are your ways my ways, saith the LORD. For as the heavens are higher than the earth, so are my ways higher than your ways, and my thoughts than your thoughts [Isa 55:8-9](#).

His presentation of Himself must be connected to this. And I expect He must put things in terms I can **understand**, I mean at least eventually, but that these are things that are actually nowhere near that simple. I also **understand** at the same time that **the LORD** is not trying to distance Himself from us, because His title used here (**Yahweh**) is His more personable one, implying always His endeavors to maintain a relationship with His people. Indeed in this passage **the LORD** is all but pleading for His people to get to **know** Him better. Still, we must always acknowledge that there will be supernatural limits to this.

Jesus also gives us another angle of God's presentation of Himself by acknowledging His own limitations, though obviously on a whole other level from us. He admits,

...my Father is greater than I [John 14:28](#).

This brings us to one of the central themes of this **study**, and certainly to this section. It's that Jesus implies that He is part of some kind of 'hierarchy' of Three, known as The Holy Trinity. And this will help us **understand** its counterfeit. The imposters to the real Trinity are Satan in the place of The Father, the Antichrist in the place of Jesus, and the False Prophet in the place of The Spirit of God. Yeah, these pretenders will think that they are all that. But imitation is the highest form of flattery, and in this case it's more likely full-blown jealousy. After all, we should all **know** that Satan's stated goal is to be...

...like the most High [Isa 14:12-14](#).

We'll deal more specifically with the False Prophet in the next section. In this one we'll concentrate more on this would-be 'Father and Son'.

It will also help us at this point not to overlook some of the more unpleasant implications of the fact that God...

...created all things [Rev 4:11](#).

The Father, as Jesus calls Him, admits as much through the Prophet Isaiah, saying,

I form the light, and create darkness: I make peace, and create evil: I the LORD do all these things [Isa 45:7](#).

So really God gets all the credit for the **evil** of The Great Tribulation, and there is no competition, double meaning intended. And we can **understand**

that '**He**' (as commonly translated) creates and allows agents that play some big parts in disseminating **evil**, the worst being this phony threesome, also commonly known as 'the Unholy Trinity'. It is God who empowers them to do their **evil**, including in The Days of Vengeance, when they will instigate on God's behalf some unimaginable **evil**. This 'God-empowered triple counterfeit' will presume to usurp, nonsensically, the dominion of The Real One. But the whole World will believe them. And we **know** that this is also God's doing. Between John and Paul we **know** that Satan will be able to 'deceive' **the whole world** [Rev 12:9](#) because **God shall send them strong delusion, that they should believe a lie...** [2 Thes 2:11](#). And we should **understand** that God has good reason for not only being involved but also for taking responsibility for the **evil** that takes place in The Great Tribulation. When we remember that all along He has been hiding things from us for our own good, and Satan's frustration, we should **understand** that He not only deceives Satan, but he **promises** to deceive and punish anyone who will not use His Word His way, and all other types of evildoers, only the blood of Jesus withstanding. Those who misuse his Word He specifically **promises** that they will **fall backward, and be broken, and snared, and taken** [Isa 28:13](#). This is and will be God's doing whatever witting or unwitting agents He may employ in the process.

And it's my perspective that too many evangelicals really don't **understand** how wimpy Satan's contribution is compared to God's. Oh, they say they do. But what I mean is that there is a pervasive lack of perspective about the awesome power of God as opposed to Satan's. Humanity's contribution is also similarly erroneously elevated, especially when it comes to The Great Tribulation. This brings us to another central theme of this **study**—that though we must accept that there are limitations to our ability to see how awesome God really is, too many evangelicals seem to strive in the opposite direction. They try to make a man out of God. They seem to depend on human struggle and capability to account for the horrible events of The Great Tribulation. Human struggles play a minor role. But these games are not in God's 'league'. I hope you will have a much 'bigger picture' of Him before we're through. He is awesome. He is mind-blowing. And if this is not your picture of His involvement in The Great Tribulation, you don't **know** Him yet as well as you could. This is also the central theme of my next **study**, [The Ages of Creation](#). But an awesome introduction to this aspect of our God who is both The Destroyer of Mankind and The Protector of His People can be seen in this **study** too.

Revelation 12 and 13 give us the Apostle John's 'second-half summary accounts' of Satan's deadly and self-destructive but ultimately futile endeavors. Chapter 13 also outlines this period's scope of the "thrashing about" of the Antichrist, and could very well be the source of the old saying, misery loves company. Chapters 13, 17 and 18 further 'stoke up' the **vengeance** exposing The Ministry of the False Prophet. And it's there we'll see the details of probably the most glaring difference between the true and false trinities. When it comes to the Unholy Trinity, they clearly don't get their acts together, plural verbs matching plural pronouns, contraction, and variation on the cliché all intended. This will be made plain enough in this section and reinforced in later ones. And as usual we'll stay in touch with

Jesus' mountain-top end-times outline to help us keep things in order, and check in with the Prophet Daniel, as Jesus suggests, to get additional help in sorting out all the details.

God's Word being so 'preceptually interconnected', it's unavoidable that we have covered many of the particulars of the events surrounding Satan's midtribulation 'tumble' from Heaven already in previous sections. Such is the stuff we are working with. Still, there's a significant number of precepts to add, misconceptions to subtract, divisions to define, and understandings to multiply together in order to derive further clarity in the total model.

But I don't want to mislead you. You had better not call Satan 'wimpy' unless, speaking for God, you can properly explain what you mean. And I mean James' brother Jude, Michael the Archangel, and I are in perfect agreement on this point. Jude writes,

...Michael the archangel, when contending with the devil he disputed about the body of Moses, durst not bring against him a railing accusation, but said, The Lord rebuke thee [Jude 1:9](#).

So ***the devil*** is not a subject or entity to be messed with, especially by the 'spiritually immature'. You'd better be speaking for God when you speak about him. And you should consider whether you're ready for this or not. So before we 'mess' with Satan or the Antichrist any further, here is a solemn warning to test your readiness...

Again and again, ever unavoidably, necessarily, and preferably we have covered some the following ground on Satan and the Antichrist already. If the repetition bothers you, check again if you're bothered by a ***teaching*** of the Apostle Paul where he identifies the...

...dull of hearing. For when for the time ye ought to be teachers, ye have need that one teach you again which be the first principles of the oracles of God; and are become such as have need of milk, and not of strong meat. For every one that useth milk is unskilful in the word of righteousness: for he is a babe. But strong meat belongeth to them that are of full age, even those who by reason of use have their senses exercised to discern both good and evil [Heb 5:11-14](#).

Paul goes on to define these ***first principles*** in the next chapter. They are 'the basics' of Christianity—whether you agree they are or not. But he implores the mature and immature alike to leave them behind. The point is that they are by definition ***milk***, and anyone who knows little more than these ***first principles... is a babe***. The question is, are you sure at this point that Paul wouldn't call you lazy and ignorant when it comes to God's Word too? Someone oblivious to being in such a condition should not 'mess' with Satan.

By-the-way, ***error*** doesn't count for anything. So if a clear ***understanding*** of how to ***handle*** the 'preceptually interconnected' Word of God is new to you, not to mention God's 'dark side', you are riddled with

erroneous ideas about God's Word, and Paul has to be talking to you to some extent. 'Familiarity' with The Word of God may give you a head start over others who don't have that, and you may have stumbled onto lots of correct connections, but if 'precept interconnectivity' is not the main focus of your plan of growth in The Word of God, you're still a big cause of, or at least little overall help with, the struggles of the Church of Jesus Christ. Insulted? That would be good. Many of us need to start right there—acknowledging our comfort level with our ignorance. But if you really don't **know** what I am talking about you should probably stop here and reread from the beginning a time or two. What? Does that sound like that would take the **patience** of Job? But that would be a good thing, right?

The thing is, that it's more likely that you're far from the place in your 'spiritual walk' where you can boast that you have Job's **patience** or **understanding**. But I'm talking about a starting point of **understanding** that could be new to you, or maybe that has finally just come into focus. What if someone who's had this focus for decades, saying that he was speaking for God, told you that the best thing to do in your situation would be to suffer what you may perceive to be too much useless repetition until, somewhere along the way, (it's just one book after all), you begin to see how it's **use** takes you to an **understanding** of God that's otherwise unreachable, and that this seemingly tedious process is actually accompanied by the **rest** and **refreshing** Isaiah is talking about. It's also the escape from 'spiritual infancy' Paul is talking about. It's the **precept upon precept... line upon line... here a little, and there a little** scriptural **exercise** that leads to gained **knowledge, wisdom**, and the ability to **discern both good and evil** so that you won't **fall backward, and be broken, and snared, and taken**.

And hey, if you're already fully on board with all of this, you shouldn't mind hearing it all again. But doesn't it come into better focus every time you do—whatever your resistance level? This is what a gifted **teacher** should somehow do for you. But if all of this just insults you, (I can't expect everyone to **hear** me), God may still have other means to help you get to this place of **understanding**. I mean He doesn't need me. But I also mean that He's a God that gives lots of chances to get to **know** Him better. Sure, I'm trying to scare you. I'm also trying to get you **blessed**. Do you remember [Psalms 1](#)? Who really meditates in The Word of God **day and night**? I think I do, but one thing is sure. All you have to do to be **ungodly** is to make a habit of refusing opportunities to **grow** in **the knowledge of God**, the blood of Jesus always withstanding.

And I'm saying that there is, including to some degree in you and me, a pervasive immaturity in the Church of Jesus Christ. This includes regular 'Bible readers' and 'meeting goers' because too little attention is given in any of this activity to 'precept interconnectivity'. And if you attend regular meetings, one of the words you have probably heard, but surely experienced, is 'compartmentalization'. This is the opposite of 'precept interconnectivity'. It's a kind of amnesia about most of the rest of The Word of God while you're looking at any particular verse. I see Satan using this technique quite effectively to divide us with **error**. And some of this division is created by misinterpreted **prophecy**. So this **study** is an attempt to unite the Church by exposing some of these **errors**. But exposing deeply entrenched **error** is

a necessarily unpleasant business. And one of the major impediments to this **hope** and **faith** of mine is that **prophecy** itself seems to indicate that **ignorance** of The Word of God must increase for **prophecy** to be fulfilled. And from the time 'the day star dawned in my heart' I have feared that this is true. But I proceed in the **faith** and **hope** that all these **revelations** cannot be just for me. And I am encouraged in that He has **prepared** me [2 Tim 2:21](#) and **thoroughly furnished** me ([2 Tim 3:17](#); [Heb 13:20](#)) to expose these **errors**. So I keep the **faith** and **hope** to **continue** this **good fight of faith** ([1 Tim 6:12](#); [2 Tim 4:7](#)) that I might see a revival of this unity before the end of this **age**, because if it comes in the next one, it must be under much more humbling circumstances.

One of the most fundamental problems we are dealing with is that though most **teachers** already **know** about compartmentalization, they too often proceed as if 'ignorant of this devise' when 'meatier matters' are 'on the table'. And with this resulting 'pervasive immaturity' comes an 'unhealthy dependency' on 'poorly equipped teachers' —'the blind leading the blind' you might say. And I say me too, because I've only been growing in 'percept interconnectivity' for a couple decades now, and I don't see any **elders** with vision as clear as needed, who can sufficiently **equip** others to be able to **understand** how to **grow** 'independently' before they start to 'slip away' into 'complacency' or worse, The Spirit of God always withstanding.

And I see plenty of **elders** offering 'dependency' well enough, and this keeps many, thank God. But there's way too little help available for **babes** to reach an **approved** 'independence' in The Word of God. And I see most continuing under a 'not-completely-trustworthy leadership' and, at best, a 'coddled ignorance' in their **perilous** struggles for eternal life ([2 Tim 3:1-7](#)). And I mean I see plenty of **teachers** who **teach** through The Bible, but everywhere I look the compartmentalization that leads to **error** is excruciating. And this is a sign of the general immaturity of the Church. Certainly we all need fellowship, but we also all eventually need to **understand** how the **continuing** proper **use** of The Word of God is essential for making our **senses exercised to discern both good and evil** [Heb 5:11-6:3](#). And this **study** is a call for such a 'reformation' to anyone in the Church who can hear me. And yes, unavoidably, and in this **day** and **age**, I speak this to our **shame** [1 Cor 15:34](#).

But no matter what I think, you shouldn't take my word for what I **teach** without expecting to eventually make it your own and **handle** it for yourself. The reality is that Christians that depend on others for what they believe are in a dangerous spiritual condition. There's just too much **error** out there. Paul warns mature Christians to...

**...Take heed unto thyself, and unto the doctrine; continue in them:
for in doing this thou shalt both save thyself, and them that hear thee**
[1 Tim 4:16](#).

Listening? You must **study** and **work** if you are to be **sure** that you will **save thyself** and others that hear you according to Paul and Peter, not to mention

James. And new ***babes in Christ*** don't have this 'skill'. But early on, God willing, you should at least be able to ***hear*** someone who—in this context—is able to help ***save*** you. And God will not leave you unanswered if you ***ask, seek, and knock*** for Him, even if He has to answer you directly Himself. This is my ***experience***.

No, I'm not so smart, except that I have personally experienced ***the truth*** that ***the testimony of the LORD is sure, making wise the simple*** [or ignorant] [Psalms 19:7](#). And except that I can ***trust*** that my ***calling and election*** are ***sure*** because I ***do these things*** [2 Pet 1:10](#). And what we—the ***LORD*** and I—are asking you to ***do*** is not so hard either, except for the required ***patience and faith***. And God can really do this stuff Peter, Paul, Isaiah, and the psalmist are talking about. The fact is that any idiot starting with just a little ***patience and faith*** can be made ***wise*** by God. Of course most idiots aren't very ***patient***. But it doesn't take much to start. And as you ***continue*** He ***promises*** it will ***grow*** and ***grow***. Again, as Jesus puts it,

If ye continue [patiently] in my word, then are ye my disciples indeed; And ye shall know the truth, and the truth shall make you free [and sure]
[John 8:31-32](#).

Having ***continued*** His way for decades now, well, like I said, any idiot can eventually qualify as having been made ***wise*** by God. I also share Paul's...

...desire that every one of you do shew the same diligence to the full assurance of hope unto the end [Heb 6:11](#).

And again Peter's, that you...

...give diligence to make your calling and election sure: for if ye do these things, ye shall never fall [2 Pet 1:10](#).

In this ***study*** we don't really fully address the scriptural ***exercise*** of 'spiritual stability' or even more controversial topics. Here I'm mostly ***teaching*** how to ***handle*** The Word of God through the ***study*** of end times ***prophecy***. But there's no other way to correctly identify the Antichrist Kingdom than by handling God's Word God's way. And I expect by its proper ***use*** we can identify this kingdom beyond the realm of speculation and, as all topics of ***scripture***, as a growing ***revelation*** of God. Peter speaks of the legitimate end to this kind of ***study***, besides the new ***light*** it brings, which we will finally see in the conclusion to this ***study***. But have ***patience*** if you don't already ***know***. Wait for it.

Remember the 'wild goose chase'? Certainly extrapolating too far with too little ***scripture*** can be more than just erroneous; it can be dangerous. And just one false precept along with no matter how many good ones can be just as dangerous. And it doesn't matter so much if it's simply a misunderstanding or a planned deception of the enemy. Whatever the case, in ***the good fight of faith***, and in the following subsections, we'll need to 'wrestle' with all kinds of ***error***. The Apostle Paul speaks of this danger repeatedly, warning, ***a little leaven leaveneth the whole lump*** ([Gal 5:9](#); [1](#)

[Cor 5:6](#)). And Jesus also uses this same image comparing 'a little yeast in the dough' to 'The Kingdom of Heaven', where His is a simile about the proliferation of The Kingdom of God. A little of The Spirit of God brings **the truth** and **life and godliness**, but a little **error** or deception can bring **death, destruction, damnation, and perdition**.

The point is that if you think you're invulnerable to being **cut off** [Rom 11:22](#) or **castaway** [1Cor 9:27](#) or just 'left behind' where you will more than likely **fall** ([2Pet 1:10](#); [3:17](#)) or **fall away** ([Luke 8:11-15](#); [Heb 6:4-6](#)) you could be in for a big surprise. And not a good one. And even the Apostle Paul didn't think himself invulnerable to this possibility. And remember Peter was talking to Christians when he said,

Be sober, be vigilant; because your adversary the devil, as a roaring lion, walketh about, seeking whom he may devour: Whom [you must] resist stedfast in the faith... [1Pet 5:8-9](#).

And just what do you think happens to 'believers' who do not **resist stedfast in the faith** and are 'devoured'? Read the passages—whole chapters even better—around **cut off** and **castaway** and notice how easy it must be to **lose** your salvation, and **hear** what you're reading! Paul even speaks of his desire to **cut off** those who lead **believers** into gross error ([Gal 5:12](#)). But by now you should **know** that one good way to **resist** this **roaring lion** is with the **knowledge, understanding, and wisdom** of God acquired through **patience and faith** His way. I mean, if you really want to **make your calling and election sure**, and have **the full assurance** that you won't **fall away** and **burn** in **the lake of fire** forever, this is what you have to **learn** to do.

By-the-way, in **light** of Romans 11, and when it comes to interpreting **prophecy, teachers** who believe anything like what is commonly called Replacement Theology—that the Church has taken the place of Israel in **prophecy**—are 'prophetically lost' and 'blind' at least concerning the **understanding of prophecy**. The **day star** has not risen in those who believe in such 'name it—claim it' or 'take-over-the-World-for-Jesus' doctrines. And God surely won't need anyone's help to take over the World. But God will save many of these 'blind-led-by-the-blind' by **the blood of Jesus**. Though I'd say it's a little more 'iffy' for those who **teach** such things. And several parts of this **study** standing alone offer sufficient **proof** of all this.

And in case you haven't noticed, I'm not too concerned if you think I'm getting a little too 'preachy' here. If it's possible that this is the first time that you've ever considered really scrutinizing Satan and the Antichrist, and you're thinking you're to some degree offended, I'd rather you quit now. Please. I'll be handing some **fire**, and you'll be forced, if you come along, to **handle** it too. This is no trick of mine to get you to read further. Jesus says,

For unto whomsoever much is given, of him shall be much required.

But to get the fuller context, and closer to the point you need to see, we should also notice that just before speaking of these 'requirements', He explains the levels of 'consequences' saying,

But he that knew not, and did commit things worthy of stripes, shall be beaten with few stripes [Luke 12:48](#).

This means it would be better for some to remain **ignorant** than gain **knowledge** which will only result in their greater responsibility and therefore greater negative eternal consequences. And this is not so much about the saved, but the lost, because **the blood of Jesus** removes the necessity of any punishment for those who are redeemed by it. But that's all it does. So what Jesus is getting at here is that you might as well be lazy and ignorant if you're going to lose your soul anyway, because that way you'll be less responsible and get a lighter punishment in The Lake of Fire. Of course this is not what I would call a good deal either way, just the lesser and greater of two evils. But this is part of God's mercy. And this is part of why it takes **diligence, patience, and faith** to get to **know the truth**. With **the truth** comes responsibility. Thank God for some this means **great reward**. And **reward** is beyond **the blood of Jesus**. It's part of the **things that accompany salvation [Heb 6:9](#)**. And when Jesus has **come** again He will **give [to] every man according as his work shall be [Rev 22:12](#)**. And He also plainly says,

For the Son of man shall come in the glory of his Father with his angels; and then he shall reward every man according to his works [Mat 16:27](#).

And Paul outlines 'the whole deal' for the Corinthians when he says,

According to the grace of God which is given unto me, as a wise masterbuilder, I have laid the foundation, and another buildeth thereon. But let every man take heed how he buildeth thereupon. For other foundation can no man lay than that is laid, which is Jesus Christ. Now if any man build upon this foundation gold, silver, precious stones, wood, hay, stubble; Every man's work shall be made manifest: for the day shall declare it, because it shall be revealed by fire; and the fire shall try every man's work of what sort it is. If any man's work abide which he hath built thereupon, he shall receive a reward. If any man's work shall be burned, he shall suffer loss: but he himself shall be saved; yet so as by fire [1Cor 3:10-15](#).

So if all you **build upon** your **foundation** is **wood, hay, and stubble... it shall be revealed by fire**. And I mean it shall be **revealed** that you have **no reward**, but only that you yourself are **saved**. Sounds kind of embarrassing, huh? And do you think this will be uncommon among the ranks of the redeemed? Do a KJV concordance search of **reward** for yourself, and find all the verses you can that confirm and clarify all of this.

So it's undeniable, and cannot rightly be considered an option. Unless you now see the importance to **make every effort** and **give all diligence** to not only remain **exercised** but to **abound** and **grow** in **the knowledge of The**

Lord Jesus Christ from now on, you will remain in a constant and ever-increasingly spiritually **perilous** situation—forget the physical dangers—if you **continue** reading on from here.

And after all, what do you think Satan will be able to do to you if you can hardly tell **good** from **evil**, **right** from **wrong**, or **the truth** from **a lie** beyond the ability of a **babe** not yet **weaned from the milk, and drawn from the breasts**? If you **sin** and don't **know** you have and don't **repent** and are **lost**, the best comfort I have for you is the fact that you'll get a 'lighter punishment'. The **blood of Jesus**, nonetheless, can **cleanse you from all unrighteousness** even in your ignorance. It is sufficient to keep you **saved; yet so as by fire**. But if you're not really 'building on your foundation', I highly recommend that you at least regularly visit one of King David's prayers. He prays,

Who can understand his errors? cleanse thou me from secret faults [Psalms 19:12](#).

So if you aren't serious about **continuing**, you need to make sure you add this one to your prayers frequently. But even so, it will be a **shame** if David's prayer and **the blood of Christ** is all you are able to apply to keep yourself **safe**. And still this is no guarantee. And it's no wonder Paul tells you to **work out your own salvation with fear and trembling** [Phil 2:12](#). Sure, he's trying to scare you too. This journey is appropriately seen as a 'terrifying adventure', unless perhaps you still have no more than an innocent child's perspective of **scripture**. And Peter's, Paul's, and Isaiah's warnings about these things are not idle threats. They are **promises** of doom as **sure** as the **promises** of growth to maturity, the ability to discern truth, and abounding **rest** and **refreshing**. Peter calls the 'spiritually immature' **blind, and cannot see afar off** [2 Pet 1:9](#), literally pleading with them that they **give diligence** in order to overcome their condition. Jesus' **counsel** to a 'milk-sucking', '**unskilful**', '**babe**' is to, figuratively,

....buy of me gold tried in the fire [see also [Psalms 12:6](#)]... [and] **anoint thine eyes with eyesalve, that thou mayest see** [Rev 3:18](#).

Of course, I'm only talking to you if this applies to you. And those that already **know** these things should not be offended, but cheering—maybe a few of you have gotten up and are dancing around your chairs right now. You certainly don't often—if ever—see this many 'admonishing' **scriptures** so close together.

And to those who acknowledge their 'spiritual immaturity', I say everything is fine now, and you are **safe**. I mean if you **understand** that without **diligence** you will remain **a babe** and in spiritual **danger** which will bring '**sure**' consequence to both you and those around you, and you are now willing to **continue** as Jesus means it, you'll be just fine. You're **safe** as long as you keep growing. He **promises** it. And none of this has to be scary anymore. It only need be if you have no intention to **continue**. And all these consequences are part of God's necessary motivation to keep the **godly**—who **meditate** in His Word—**godly**. It is thrice repeated in **scripture** that...

The fear of the LORD is the beginning of wisdom [Psa 111:10](#); [Pro 1:7](#); [9:10](#)

And in each of these verses God adds something to the effect that ***the knowledge of the holy*** [One] ***is understanding***. So God wants you to let this appropriate ***fear*** become motivation until ***perfect love casteth out fear*** [1John 4:18](#). And don't be afraid to let ***fear*** be your motivation that gets and keeps you going His way.

And there are ways to gauge the progress. One way is as King Solomon puts it. He says,

For in much wisdom is much grief: and he that increaseth knowledge increaseth sorrow [Ecc 1:18](#).

Can this be motivation? Yes, because 'ignorance is bliss' while it lasts, but it only gets you 'minimum punishment' at best depending on whether David's prayer does the trick for you or not. But 'increased' ***sorrow*** must mean you see the ***danger*** all around you and are better able to avoid it, and to help others to do the same. The good news implied here is that some will be saved that hear you. The bad news more directly stated here is that few apparently do. But in the end you will ***rejoice*** together with those that hear you. And when you give ***diligence*** to ***grow***, God ***promises*** that you are ***safe***. The ***sorrow*** then cannot be so much for yourself but for all those you see around you. But if you really want to 'hang back with the pack', God can still save you, but you shouldn't ***continue*** with this ***study***. It's for those who have ***vehement desire*** [2Cor 7:8-12](#) to mature in The Word of God. And God will only ***surely... bless*** and ***keep*** those who remain sincerely ***diligent*** to ***know him*** better and better, the ***light affliction*** of this physical life ***which is but for a moment*** notwithstanding ([2 Cor 4:17](#)).

Of course, there is also ***the rest*** for ***the weary*** from this relatively ***light affliction*** that is ***promised*** to 'continuers' so that you can have ***faith*** that you will not be 'drained' or 'depleted'. And what do you expect from what you're now doing otherwise? Isaiah makes plain the ***delight*** awaiting 'continuers', saying,

Ho, every one that thirsteth, come ye to the waters, and he that hath no money; come ye, buy, and eat; yea, come, buy wine and milk without money and without price. Wherefore do ye spend money for that which is not bread? and your labour for that which satisfieth not? hearken diligently unto me, and eat ye that which is good, and let your soul delight itself in fatness [Isa 55:1-2](#).

Of course, he's not talking about food and drink, but about The Word of God, which is the best way to really get 'fat and happy'. And remember that Peter, besides his intent on constantly ***...putting you in remembrance of these things...***, and besides 'assuring' us that ***...if ye do these things, ye shall never fall...***, also encourages us further, adding,

For so an entrance shall be ministered unto you abundantly into the everlasting kingdom of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ.

Talk about your 'grand entrance'. But expecting such ***an entrance*** if you don't ***do these things*** is an ***error*** and a ***shame*** waiting to happen, which in no way necessarily hinders your ***salvation*** by ***grace***. Lots who 'hang back with the pack' will nonetheless experience this ***shame***. They will not get their ***crown***, or at least the one they were hoping for, but instead, much like 'the thief on the cross', they will get in only by the ***grace*** of God, and by ***the blood of Jesus***, having done little or nothing else to be ***rewarded*** for.

And you can believe Jesus' ***promises*** of ***rest*** and a ***burden*** that's ***light*** compared to being otherwise ***heavy laden***, but only ***if ye do these things***. So by all means, 'take a load off' and 'put a crown on'. And ***do*** that concordance search of ***crown*** in the KJV (at blbclassic.org for example) to see several examples of how you can try one on for size. And when you get time, ***do*** concordance searches of all the KJV ***bold italics*** reference we just covered. Use a modern translation too if it helps you. And start with just New Testament verses to make it easier where appropriate. This kind of ***use of the word of God*** will help you ***grow*** in your ***understanding*** of all these things.

Again, we're talking mostly about ***prophecy*** in this ***study***. But these precepts apply to ***all scripture*** [2Tim 3:14-17](#), and ***all things*** [1Tim 4:8](#). These admonitions and encouragements have helped me identify the Antichrist and his kingdom, and it's the same process that you will be able to use to identify all kinds of ***good*** or ***evil***, ***truth*** or ***lies***, and ***right*** or ***wrong*** with ***scripture***. Sorry for the 'crash course', but we really are in ***the time of the end***, and time is running out for you to get busy.

And by-the-way, I did say there were tests involved. Since you're still reading, you passed this test and can go on.

Satan in The Great Tribulation

CHART of the Symbolism of the 7 Empires of Satan and the Antichrist					
Symbolism of 7 Empires	Daniel 2	Daniel 7	Daniel 8	Revelation 13	Revelation 17
Egypt	none	none	none	1 st head of the beast	1 st head of the beast
Assyria	none	none	none	2 nd head	2 nd head
Babylon	gold head	lion	none	3 rd head – mouth like a lion	3 rd head
Medo-Persia	silver chest & arms	bear	2-horned ram	4 th head -- feet like a bear	4 th head
Greece	bronze belly & thighs	leopard	1 & 4-horned goat	5 th head – body like a leopard	5 th head
Rome	iron legs...	terrible beast with iron teeth...	V	6 th head	6 th head
Antichrist	with iron & clay feet & 10 toes	with 10 horns & 11 th little horn	great horn from 1 of 4 of the goat	7 th head with 10 horns	7 th head & resurrected 8 th

The above [CHART of the Symbolism of the 7 Empires of Satan and the Antichrist \(p.194\)](#) is easily enough deciphered. God makes plain that one of the ways to identify Satan and the Antichrist in the future is to identify Satan's empires of the past. And John makes plain in his day that, during the Roman Empire, **five are fallen, and one is, and the other is not yet come**. So with Moses, Daniel, Paul, and John's help we can really get a full **understanding** of the nature of this **beast**.

In Revelation 12, **Satan** is called **the dragon** or...

...the red dragon, having seven heads and ten horns, and seven crowns upon his heads... [Rev 12:3](#)

or...

...the great dragon [that] was cast out, that old serpent, called the Devil, [and Lucifer] and [among other infamous titles] Satan, which deceiveth the whole world [Rev 12:9](#).

These descriptions especially apply after he is barred from Heaven and is given literally 'free reign' over the Earth during the second half of The Great Tribulation. But a lot of Christians believe that Satan was 'thrown out of Heaven' a long time ago. This is a misconception we will **continue** to sort out. The **truth** is that he still regularly goes both up to Heaven and down to Earth, but may rarely if ever go to **hell**. I mean I don't **know** of any reliable

evidence that he's even ever gone down there yet.

His allegorical descriptions here are nearly identical to that of the Antichrist's in the next chapter, except instead of a **dragon**, the subordinate Antichrist is designated simply as a **beast**. But they both symbolize, at this future time, the literal seventh 'world-ruling' kingdom, the one John tells us **is not yet come**, commonly called the Antichrist Kingdom or Empire. And they also both emphasize, in the way they are symbolized, that this seventh kingdom originates from real 'cultural endowments' of the previous six. And as the Antichrist appears to be only directly involved with the formation of this last kingdom, we will save most of the comparisons and discussion of him and his kingdom, including his **crowns** and **horns**, for the following subsection about him. And I mean we will attempt as much as possible to work from this 'pinnacle of evil' downward. But it will be necessary in this section to identify the Antichrist so we can distinguish him from and not confuse him with Satan.

Let's start with some of the more likely misconceptions relating to Satan in the middle of The Great Tribulation. And I say misconceptions because it's **error** to maintain a position you cannot **prove**—especially if an opposing position has more **scripture** to support it. One popular but unproven position is that Satan will possess the Antichrist in The Days of Vengeance. One reason for this position, besides Satan being recently confined to the Earth, is that John tells us that **the dragon gave him** [the Antichrist] **his power, and his seat, and great authority**. Possession could certainly accomplish this. Of course this could just as well imply that they will remain separate entities. Another reason for this position is that the Antichrist will die, right at the midpoint, obviously just before The Abomination of Desolation. And that he apparently will need 'reviving'.

But not to worry, his 'resurrection' from the dead is timely. It wins **him** the authority to go into The Temple in Jerusalem and identify himself as someone...

...Who opposeth and exalteth himself above all that is called God, or that is worshipped; so that he as God sitteth in the temple of God, shewing himself that he is God [2 Thes 2:4](#)

In other words,

...there was given unto him a mouth speaking great things and blasphemies... against God, to blaspheme his name, and his tabernacle, and them that dwell in heaven [Rev 13:5-6](#).

And how can this character get away with all of this? Is it the **power** of Satan in him that does it? Yes, but does Satan remain a separate entity? Whoever he really is, he brings with him the 'clout that comes with being the leader for the last 3 ½ years of his own world-dominating kingdom, the 'build-up' of which we will see in the next subsection. But again, the real reason he is able to pull it off, the clincher, is **revealed** to us by John when he...

...saw one of his heads as it were wounded to death; and his deadly wound was healed: and all the world wondered after

the beast... and they worshipped the beast, saying, Who is like unto the beast? who is able to make war with him? ...whose deadly wound was healed... [because he] had the wound by a sword, and did live [Rev 13:3,14](#).

So the reason that he can pull off The Abomination of Desolation is that he rises from the dead as if he's Jesus Christ. No wonder. But again, is it Satan that possesses him at this point?

Remembering the general rule that some erroneously count as 'hard and fast', that ***...it is appointed unto men once to die, but after this the judgment [Heb 9:27](#)***, it is assumed by some that another spirit must reoccupy his body in order to 'revive' him. Since Satan and his angels, some of whom are identified as ***princes***, are in the business of possessing people, at least temporarily anyway, and since we'll see that Satan is newly available for the job—committed to the Earth, if you will—it's believed by some that his availability and this 'once-to-die rule' constrain him to occupy the Antichrist's body.

But we have already found a 'multitude' of exceptions to the 'once-to-die rule', which simply leaves the fact that he's available and he's a liar, so that it would be like him to pull off a false 'resurrection' like this. All things considered, I find this to be a weak case. It makes more sense to me that he will want to keep his 'unholy trinity' in tact as long as he can because of his jealousy of God and his own pride. So I am more for the argument, and will make the case stronger as we go, that Satan will not replace the Antichrist, nor will any other 'replacement spirit'. Instead, I believe that the Antichrist's dead body will be 'revived' with the same spirit of the Antichrist that leaves his body, the same one he's born with.

But there's also talk of this ***prince of Persia [Dan 10:20](#)***. So I should say at this point that just as people see The Rapture of the Church virtually everywhere in ***scripture*** there is an apparent rapture of souls, no matter what clues exist to identify it as a different group and time, so some see exclusively Satan or the Antichrist anywhere they see the description or ***allegory*** of an evil entity at work, though there are obviously many other major 'purveyors' of ***evil*** than these two, however subordinate.

This ***prince of Persia*** is one case in point. Some think he is or becomes the Antichrist because another ***one of the chief princes... Michael the archangel ([Dan 10:13, 20; Jude 1:9](#))*** has a struggle with him. But in this struggle I see no more of a case for ***the prince of Persia*** 'becoming' the Antichrist than for the case that could be made for a number of other spiritual ***princes of this world*** taking his place, including ***the prince of Grecia***, or the ***princes*** of Egypt, Assyria, Babylon, or Rome. And the reason is that Chief Prince Michael's conflict with the Prince of Persia happened when the Medo-Persian Empire ruled the World and when Daniel the Prophet walked the Earth. That struggle was the result of the fact that ***the prince of Persia*** was Satan's appointed subordinate spiritual ruler over that empire at that time—separate from the many human kings 'influenced' by such spiritual ***princes*** over these empires. And Satan has surely appointed one of these spiritual ***princes*** over each of his 'world-ruling' empires so far.

Michael further indicates that the struggle with ***the prince of Persia*** ends as the Medo-Persian Empire falls, giving rise to not only the Greek

Empire, but to a new struggle 'influenced' by **the prince of Grecia**, etc. ([Dan 10:20](#)). But there's more talk of this **prince of Persia** we'll get to later. For now we should **understand** that there are other spiritual beings, who are **princes** beneath Satan, himself being the supreme **prince of the power of the air** [Eph 2:2](#), who all have, among other duties, ruled under Satan as the real **heads** of each of the so-called 'world-ruling' kingdoms. And of course, there are spiritual **princes** who serve under God as well, such as **Michael** and **Gabriel**. But whether serving under God or Satan, a spiritual **prince**—sometimes called an **archangel**—and their subordinate **angels** operate for the most part from the spiritual realm. But there are obviously also human kings or princes such as the Antichrist, **the prince that shall come** [Dan 9:26](#), obviously operating, at least predominantly, from the physical realm.

Naturally it's important not to confuse these human and spiritual beings as some do, because it's the spiritual ones that we really have to contend with. This, as Paul famously teaches, should not be news. He says,

...we [in the physical realm] **wrestle not against flesh and blood** [or with ourselves], **but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this world, against spiritual wickedness in high places** [including the spiritual **princes** in the spiritual realm] [Eph 6:12](#).

So this is the general rule that more likely applies when trying to decide what spirit 'revives' the dead body of the Antichrist. Spiritual **princes** include **Satan, the angel [or king] of the bottomless pit, the prince of Persia, the prince of Grecia**, etc. Again, these generally do their work from the spiritual realm which we don't see. However I do expect many more exceptions to this rule in The Great Tribulation and especially in The Days of Vengeance than are happening in this **age**.

Some spiritual entities are fully able to manifest themselves in pretty much any form they like in the physical world, and will surely do so without restriction in The Days of Vengeance. These 'masquerades' are likely to include, for example, 'superior alien beings' from other planets complete with 'spaceships' and apparently 'superior technology'. And these 'super-evolved', 'spiritually-ascended masters', who claim that through millions of years of 'evolution' and/or 'reincarnation' are worthy to be our 'spirit guides', will convince many to believe they are here to help us out. And they may offer to protect us from other spiritual beings playing the role instead of 'bad guys', but nonetheless 'spiritually ascended' and/or 'technologically advanced'. And these 'false stereotypes' did not arise by accident. They are part of a plan to 'deceive the whole World'. And they are becoming more and more popular.

And if these angels can do all this, why would Satan or any angel possess a limited human form—except temporarily when advantageous—when they can appear any way they like otherwise? To answer this it would help to **understand** the confused difference between the relatively limited abilities of "demons"—such as the kind Jesus **cast out**—and the comparatively unlimited power of **angels**. And this begs a 'demonology' **study** far and beyond the reach of this one. I do hope to offer additional **understanding** on this subject beyond what we will see in this **study** in [The Ages of Creation study](#). Still, this **study** will give a good look at this 'spiritual war' we're all

involved in that ends at Armageddon. But for now I can only restate our question based on realities that remain to be **proven**. Again and more specifically, if Satan or any other **angel** can manifest in any form they like without the need of a human body, and if they can also go in and out of 'receptive' people for the purpose of controlling them whenever they desire, then why would they permanently confine themselves in a human body for no good reason. I don't see one. It would be better for them to reside wherever they want since they would still be fully able to manipulate a human spirit from inside or out. And it would allow them to leave when they have something better to do someplace else. And the human could 'mind the store' for them when they're not around. This would seem to be the obvious preference, and this is the reason that it's more likely that a human spirit occupies the body of the Antichrist, both before and after his 'resurrection', regardless of the number of visitors that could take up 'temporary residence' anytime along the way. And the Antichrist would not likely resist occasional 'cameo possessions' within his body from time to time by any number of spiritual **princes**, including Satan, if circumstances warranted.

Now the spirit of the Antichrist must originally come from inside the Earth, from the same place the rest of us come from, as King David explains, saying,

I was made in secret, and curiously wrought in the lowest parts of the earth [before being] ***covered*** [or "knit"]... ***in my mother's womb*** [Psalms 139:13-15](#).

So when the Antichrist is born, just like you and me, he will come from ***the lowest parts of the earth***, and this probably has already happened. But as for the Antichrist's second stay in the Earth, I think that when he is 'revived' from the dead, his spirit will likely return from a three day trip to ***the bottomless pit***, also in ***the lower parts of the earth***, where he will wait while dead until he is 'resurrected' by Satan. And we will 'dig deeper' into these 'underground' topics in the section after next.

So again, the general rule that I think really applies here is that there are corresponding 'hierarchies' where the spiritual ones manipulate and run the physical ones. And I expect that the Unholy Trinity will remain intact throughout the death and resurrection of the Antichrist and continue 'lording over all'. But can this general rule of the domination of the spiritual realm over the physical one be broken? It is every time a Christian prays. Surely, ***the effectual fervent prayer of a righteous man availeth much*** [James 5:16](#). And this would be both in the physical but especially in the spiritual realm, and contrary to the intentions of Satan and his **princes**. But I generally see the three persons of the Unholy Trinity remaining individually distinct, and mostly unhindered in causing 'a hell of a lot of trouble', except by The Holy Trinity and Their **princes**.

But still there remains the question of what the human spirit of the Antichrist would be doing in the same 'holding tank' that ***the angel of the bottomless pit*** is in. And I presume that this angel and his creatures must go back there after finishing their 'rampage' in The 5th Trumpet Judgment because I don't I expect them to be able to behave themselves otherwise. This observation seems to push the argument back the other way somewhat,

but not convincingly by any means, and we will debate it further in the next subsection. By-the-way, The 6th Trumpet doesn't end until after the Antichrist is already resurrected, so it appears that his spirit, if human, won't have to share The Bottomless Pit with the 200 million 'lion-headed' **horsemen** of that judgment. They should still be on the Earth while he's in the **pit**.

And pushing back the other way, I don't see that any of the human **kings** of any of the past 'world monarchies' as permanently possessed—just controlled and manipulated by their spiritual counterparts, though obviously also dealt with by God and his **princes** too. And I do not consider Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon to be an exception in [Daniel 4](#). So I also expect that the human leader of the seventh and final 'world-ruling' empire, the Antichrist, should in this respect be no different.

Another observation is a general impression I get from descriptions of the Antichrist and Satan throughout **scripture**. It's that everywhere I see them, and as far as I can tell, they maintain their own distinct identities, even as Jesus and The Father do. So I expect that Satan—by pride—will position himself to **be like the most High** and above everyone else, including the Antichrist, as much and as long as possible. And there is a reference from Paul that stands out for me. He speaks of the 'post-resurrection' Antichrist...

...whose coming is after the working of Satan with all power and signs and lying wonders [2Thes 2:9](#).

This indicates to me their continued distinctiveness, that Satan does supply the **power**, but that the Antichrist uses it, however coerced, to do the work. And the both 'pre- and post-resurrection' events described in Revelation 12 and 13 seem to show this 'father and son' as distinct individuals too. Though obviously working together, this **dragon** and **beast** are seen in these two chapters to have distinct agendas and activities requiring them to be in different places at the same time both before and after the 'resurrection'. There is more to say on this subject that pertains more to the Antichrist we will save for the next subsection, but every time these two are considered throughout the rest of this section, you should notice they always appear to be acting separately, both before and after the 'resurrection'.

My conclusion, however, is that the only thing that's wrong to say on a legitimately debatable subject is not so much what you reasonably suppose, but what you **preach** beyond your ability to reasonably substantiate. Again, **truth** is best established in the totality of The Bible. And it should be tried and tested over time to make sure it stands up. That reviewed, what would Satan otherwise be doing confined on Earth during The Days of Vengeance? I expect he will insulate himself to a comfortable extent from the surrounding physical torments by whatever conditions he may fashion in his spiritual reality. I see him, after he is cast out of Heaven, as the 'prime power broker' of The Days of Vengeance, whose best perspective and opportunities are 'managed' from his own spiritual 'sphere of influence', and whose primary 'occupation' is to 'produce', 'account for', and 'cash in on' all the **worship** he can 'generate' for himself, and 'rally this market' to the extent that he makes the biggest 'killing' of all time. And we are talking some 'bull market' here. He gives the Antichrist **his power, and his seat, and great authority**, and

everyone knows that **his deadly wound was healed** because **the dragon... gave power unto the beast**. The implication here is that...

...all that dwell upon the earth [both] worshipped the dragon which gave power unto the beast: and they worshipped the beast [Rev 13:2-4](#).

Are the people **that dwell upon the earth** thinking here that these two become one and the same? I don't think so. I think they'll believe it's Satan's **power** that's behind the Antichrist and that Satan enables him to accomplish all the natural and miraculous exploits that he will apparently perform. Of course, Satan also **deceiveth the whole world** to believe that his goal is not to see them all eventually **destroyed**.

And it's Satan who gives the Antichrist **power... to continue forty and two months** [Rev 13:5](#). And he gives him **a mouth speaking great things and blasphemies** [Rev 13:6](#). And he gives him **power to make war with the saints, and to overcome them**, plus **power over the whole World—over all kindreds, and tongues, and nations** [Rev 13:7](#). Satan also passes **power** down to the False Prophet described as **another beast**, who...

...exerciseth all the power of the first beast before him, and causeth the earth and them which dwell therein to worship the first beast, whose deadly wound was healed [Rev 13:11-12](#).

And does anyone think that Satan possesses the False Prophet too? No, and this should be one of those 'decompartmentalizing moments' for those who thought they were sure that Satan takes up permanent residence in the body of the Antichrist. However I'm sure Satan will at least have some of his 'spiritual subordinates' 'watchdogging' the human Antichrist—both before or after his 'resurrection'—as well as the human False Prophet too.

So **power** is Satan's ultimate 'venture investment capital' for his ultimate 'return on investment', **worship**, and so much so that **all the world... worshipped the dragon which gave power unto the beast: and worshipped the beast...** And **all the world** will be even more 'encouraged' to **worship** Satan and the Antichrist because of the **power** Satan gives to the **second beast**, the False Prophet, because **he** will be able to...

...cause that as many as would not worship the image of the beast should be killed [Rev 13:3-4,15](#)

But we'll wait to take this 'sabbatical' in the next section.

The bottom line is that these are no 'rash investments' on Satan's part, but all designed to **prosper** his spiritual 'portfolio' as we will **continue** to see. And I can only think that if God keeps **the prayers of the saints** in "golden bowls" and uses them literally as offerings poured out **upon the golden altar which was before the throne** ([Rev 5:8](#); [8:3-4](#)), then Satan can probably also derive some spiritually powerful use of his **worship** that translates somehow into the physical World, and enough of it that he will

deceive even himself to believe that he can **gain the whole world**. But this hope of Satan's must all come 'tumbling down' after a **war in heaven** that he loses, so that when he arrives on Earth he will certainly be 'in a fighting mood', and will be all about 'gaining reinforcements', and all the most effective 'weapons' that he can get his hands on, to make his last stand. And I expect that his 'primary weapon' will be **worship**.

And when Satan is **cast out** of Heaven he will be free like never before to 'fight fang and claw' for the **worship** he will get in The Days of Vengeance. Surely he will 'deploy his forces' with a 'supernatural strategy' beyond human comprehension. And he will be 'strictly business'. There will be a 'bona fide worldwide run on the market', that is, for those unwittingly 'in the market' for 'lake front property' in **hell**. Isaiah puts it this way.

Therefore hell hath enlarged herself, and opened her mouth without measure: and their glory, and their multitude, and their pomp, and he that rejoiceth, shall descend into it [Isa 5:14](#).

And a warning from Jesus is appropriate for this 'hell-bent' **multitude**. He warns,

For what is a man advantaged, if he gain the whole world, and lose himself, or be cast away? [Mat 16:26](#); [Mark 8:36-37](#); [Luke 9:25](#)

But Satan will knowingly 'pay this price' to **gain the whole world**, and will deceive **all the world** into following him. To those who follow him Jesus says,

Ye are of your father the devil, and the lusts of your father ye will do. He was a murderer from the beginning, and abode not in the truth, because there is no truth in him. When he speaketh a lie, he speaketh of his own: for he is a liar, and the father of it [John 8:44](#).

And speaking of the 'father of all liars' brings to mind his first and biggest 'father of all lies'. This is the infamous **lie** he told Eve that, **ye shall be as gods** [Gen 3:5](#). This is his 'principle lie' which he still continues to employ extremely persuasively. And he will convince **all the world** to suffer what must be otherwise unthinkable for the 'hope' that they will ultimately become **as gods** on the other side of it all. And it's not necessary that he's lying about 'resurrecting' the Antichrist, because he 'fathers' plenty of other 'doozies'.

For example, one way or another—and obviously allowed by God—he will enable this **beast that ascends out of the bottomless pit** to kill The Two Witnesses. In the process he will obviously misrepresent them, as well as The 144,000 Jews, as heretical and evil, using them as notorious focal points for the rising widespread anti-Semitism that will be even more eagerly supported by those who already hate the Jews in the first place. He will also repeatedly take undeserved credit for 'getting rid' of Christians and Jews throughout The Great Tribulation, including at the raptures of The Church, and of The 144,000 Jews, and even, I suspect, for 'getting rid' of the large number of not yet disposed of dead bodies which disappear in the raptures of The Tribulation

Gentiles and Tribulation Jews. Certainly **all the world** will be deceived to 'believe' that those disappearing or being executed are the ones that are too 'fundamental' or 'unevolved' (read, Protestant or Jewish) to be 'ready' for what will be mistaken as a 'pilgrimage of ascent to godhood'. Because of these and other lies, survivors, as long as they survive, will 'jump through any hoop', as 'trained dogs', believing that those who die, but especially that those who disappear, are being 'purged', not redeemed, and 'for the good of all'.

Accidental or otherwise, deaths of non-Protestant or non-Jewish people (including the ones whose bodies don't disappear) will be thought to be souls that need 'another turn or two around the karmic wheel' where they will be 'born again to try again', or thought to be serving time for their sins in purgatory, or some other such ultimately 'redeeming' process based on one false religion or another, which includes the Theory of Evolution. But whether dead or alive, those raptured will necessarily be thought of differently, though theories about them will undoubtedly come from a variety of sources too.

Those more 'scientifically-minded' will likely view those who disappear as those who 'couldn't make the cut' in the next 'evolutionary step' of "punctuated equilibrium", where "punctuated" means a quick evolutionary change—in this case evidenced by the disappearance of the 'unevolved' and the gloating of the 'survivors'—followed by "equilibrium" or the 'new higher evolved level of stability of the species'—in this case, a presumed 'step toward godhood'. And don't laugh, this is 'real evolutionary science' thought-up, well, really stolen and popularized by a 'well-respected' Harvard professor who is now likely **tormented in... hell**—unless he was converted on his death bed. I'll talk more about him and his 'usurped theory' in [The Ages of Creation study](#). The point for now is that those left behind on the Earth with this perspective will flatter themselves to believe they have experienced a sudden 'step up' in evolution, and that they have experienced a spontaneous change of species from man to god, while those who disappear will be believed to have not been sufficiently 'fit to survive'.

And just as it's said that the reason dinosaurs 'disappear' in the fossil record is because they could not adapt to survive, so will it be said of those who disappear in The Great Tribulation. Another more recent and related **so called** scientific theory also likely to be used to 'explain' this phenomenon would be "rapid evolutionary diversification", where it's now 'admitted'—at least in some high school text books—that there was a 'sudden explosive diversification' of 'higher-evolved life' in the lowest level of the "geological column". The 'creation science' magazine, **Impact**, offers an explanation of this new theory, reporting,

This sudden appearance in the geological record of most of the major animal groups is exactly contrary to what Darwin predicts [namely, 'the tree of life']. **Impact**, August 2005, p.5

And this "Cambrian Explosion" of fossils in the lowest level of the "fossil record" will surely be offered as evidence of a precursor to man's 'leap to godhood'. And stop laughing; this is serious **science**, however **falsely so called** [1 Tim 6:20](#).

And by-the-way, some 'creation scientist' argue that '**science**' in this **scripture** really means 'philosophy' and that it doesn't therefore apply to

science. Excuse me, but in the case of 'evolutionary science', what's the significant difference between calling it a 'false science' and a 'false philosophy'? And for a lot more along these lines see [The Ages of Creation study](#).

Then there are those inclined to think more 'outside the box', who will prefer to believe that 'higher life forms' are 'running the show'. They will be deceived to think that the angels who take the form of (read, masquerade as) 'superior aliens' and land in 'real spaceships' are really 'super-evolved', 'extraterrestrial life-forms'. And these angels have been practicing this kind of 'masquerade' for some time now. But in The Great Tribulation I'm expecting that such 'extraterrestrial activity' will pick up quite a bit. And many such likeminded, who are 'rooting' for the creation of a 'united federation of planets', especially the millions of 'sci-fi junkies' who listen to the likes of Art Bell, George Noory, and Whitley Strieber, etc., will naturally think that raptures are 'mass abductions' by 'superior alien beings' to keep 'inferior life forms' from ruining the World for the rest. But others will expect a 'war of the worlds' and fear such things as the harvesting of DNA by aliens to bolster and repair their failing gene pool. Yeah, these are more prime topics for [The Ages of Creation study](#) too. And, by-the-way, I've been tuning in to the Coast to Coast AM radio broadcasts since 1991. It's one of the ways I **watch** the end coming.

And still there's the largest group, the more 'religious-minded', who will simply give all the credit to Satan through the Antichrist. They'll think the 'disappeared' have been removed to some 'oblivion' or another, and also that this 'father and son' can resist or pacify any 'alien force', and that they are even ascended above natural law. And I imagine that Satan must ultimately provide some kind of unifying explanation that will somehow consolidate his power and authority. But whatever one's perspective, it will surely be thought by all those deceived by Satan that those who disappear do so for 'the good of the World'. And survivors will 'soldier on' encouraged by Satan's **lies** that those who persevere will ultimately become **as gods**. And by this means Satan will succeed in condemning to **eternal damnation**, generally speaking, **all the world**.

And remember that Paul confirms that the World's fate involves cooperation with Satan and the Antichrist. Specifically, he says this cooperation is with the Antichrist...

...whose coming [including his 'resurrection'] is after the working of Satan with all power and signs and lying wonders, And with all deceivableness of unrighteousness in them that perish; because they received not the love of the truth, that they might be saved [2Thes 2:9-10](#).

More plainly, the people of the World share the blame that they **perish** because of their own **deceivableness of unrighteousness in them...** [and] **because they received not the love of the truth, that they might be saved**. It's a cooperation of guilt where apparently **the god of this world hath blinded the minds of them which believe not [2Cor 4:4](#)** because they allow him to. And I guess it shouldn't be too hard to **understand** that 'unrighteous people' who are 'not really interested in the

truth' are easily enough **deceived** by Satan, especially since God supports it all by sending **strong delusion** [2Thes 2:11](#).

But I'm also guessing that there should be some new Christians on Earth at this time. And there should be even more 'resaved', 'former backsliders'—the ones that are left behind and immediately get what's going on. And surely any that **find** and **keep** an 'unshakable faith' will not be part of **them that perish**, and they will be immune to this delusion and deception. And this is that '**great gulf**' between the **deceived** and any particular **new babe in Christ**.

So we have considered to some extent the **power of the working of Satan**. He 'raises' the Antichrist from the dead, and he empowers the Antichrist and the False Prophet to do their **working**. And we have seen some of his **lies**, and how he will spin **the truth** to take credit and exalt himself simply by misrepresentation and by taking credit for God's power on display. But Satan must exhibit his own **signs and lying wonders** beyond 'resurrecting' the Antichrist. And Satan's **signs** are certainly different than God's that Jesus outlines on the Mount of Olives. At the end of Jesus' list of God's judgments in The Beginning of Sorrows, He speaks of **great signs... from heaven** [Luke 21:11](#). And we will attempt to explain these further in [SECTION 9](#). But I will not attempt to peer though the 'dark glass' into the spiritual World to attempt to discern Satan's activities in that realm any further here. What we can examine more clearly though are the **signs** he administers through the Antichrist and the False Prophet.

So what are **signs and lying wonders**? Plainly enough, they are real miracles—no 'sight-of-hand' would do—performed with the **power** of Satan by the Antichrist and the False Prophet, or by any of their ministers, that lead those who witness them or hear of them to believe **lies**. As such, and as far as I can tell, it might be difficult to distinguish **signs** from **lying wonders**. Their definitions in many cases may be interchangeable. For example, the 'resurrection' of the Antichrist would seem to qualify for either even without a 'change of entities' in the process, because either way it could mislead Jews and new Christians to believe that the Antichrist is the 'real Messiah'. But being dead and then resurrected 'on the third day' is certainly one of the more classic **signs**. So says even Jesus. The killing of The Two Witnesses also seems to qualify for either because it will take supernatural power to accomplish it, and be sold to the World as a miraculous emancipation from a 'scourge of evil', but also as a sign that the World is as a result 'blessed' with the 'right' leader for the job, and also the 'right' **god of this world**.

From observations like these we could conclude that the difference is that **signs** help establish a new **lie**, while **lying wonders** simply help to perpetuate existing ones, so that all new **signs** by the **power** of Satan are also **lying wonders**, but not all **lying wonders** are necessarily new **signs**. But it's not safe to limit these terms to just this definition. Because I expect that just when you think you have Satan's **devices** figured out is when he will be able to deceive you by other unexpected uses of them. And I expect that there is no limit to his ability to deceive us. And more than anything else, I expect nothing from Satan but 'foul play' in this regard, and to be continually shocked and appalled at how far and unfairly he is willing to cheat trying to win this game. Talk about being a 'bad sport', Satan's use of **all power and signs and lying wonders** will become the new standard of really 'fighting

dirty'. And only some of the **few** will get it.

And what I mean by "some of the **few**" is that according to Jesus only a **few** will find salvation altogether. So at the middle of The Great Tribulation when Satan has empowered the Antichrist and False Prophet, and they're performing all kinds of **signs and lying wonders**, and when those taken in The Rapture of the Church are already gone, and when a lot of the 'resaved', 'former backsliders' are already gone in The Rapture of the Tribulation Gentiles, only a faction of the **few** will be left to redeem.

I also mean that these **signs and lying wonders** are miracles—true supernatural events that people will naturally believe point to 'the truth'. Therein lies the treachery of the **power** of Satan. He can make any fantasy materialize as real to the touch. So who has a chance against an enemy like this? And who could resist such **power**? That would be The One who stood at the door of your heart knocking until you finally let Him in, thank God. Anyway, I don't expect we'll even scratch the surface of revealing all the **power and signs and lying wonders** used in this 'ambush of humanity' known The Great Tribulation where only some of the **few** can be saved, and God will otherwise **make a man more precious than fine gold**.

But to give you an idea anyway, I have been reading **Discover**, a science digest, cover to cover for the last few years. It's one of the ways I **watch** the end coming. In October 2008 they build their issue around the theme, "**REINVENTING THE WORLD**", subtitled, "**A Better Future Is Waiting. We Just Have To Make It Happen**". The collection of articles is mostly about our energy future, but along the way they report on 'cutting edge' science going on right now that should shortly lead to **Star Trek** style 'replicator' devices and other technologies that can 'manufacture matter' in many forms on demand, both inorganic and organic, including applications for 'teleportation'. My point is that if humans are that close to being able to do what angels can do, then imagine how incredible—but believable—the manifested **power** of Satan will be. And by-the-way, the military applications are potentially horrifying. So is just about every other possible application. But like the Tower of Babel, this implies that it can't be that much longer before God will have to intercede before things get out of control. Though I think He will wait till things get a lot more out of control than they are now, and that from this perspective we can see that there's still some time left.

Of course, **signs and lying wonders** have always been the basis for the existence and propagation of many false religions. And they have always been connected to their origins or major transformations throughout the **ages**. The only difference in The Great Tribulation, and especially in The Days of Vengeance, is that the **rulers of the darkness of this world...** [and the] **spiritual wickedness in high places Eph 6:12**—all led by Satan—will be allowed by God to 'step things up' like never before. In this present age we see occasional key 'disciples' being supernaturally misled to advance one particular false religious or another with the opportunity for slow, steady enlistment over much more available time. Such false religions also grow with the occasional help from real healings that hoodwink followers here, or a life threatening curse that bamboozles conformity there, or possessions with or without the subsequent exorcisms here and there, and other 'sparsely scattered' miracles that deceive. But in The Days of Vengeance I expect these kinds of **lying wonders** will become much more powerful, widespread,

and common in order to most effectively deceive **all the world** rather quickly. And you should now be noticing many ways that the World is already being prepared to accept such **signs and lying wonders**.

But besides other reasons we will get to in due course, I think we need another generation or two to pass before The Rapture will be ready to take place. A big reason is that too many people now alive would think, 'OMG, I missed The Rapture!'. And I'm guessing that this still too popular 'awareness' needs to diminish another generation or so. And Satan must still need more time to prepare the false religious system that he'll need to use in The Great Tribulation. And **scripture** will identify this institution for us as we go. But we should expect from the start that there will be much less 'competition' among false religions in The Great Tribulation, but especially in The Days of Vengeance, because then Satan and the Antichrist **worship** will 'reign supreme' whichever system winds up getting the job of supporting him through his False Prophet.

And Chapter 11 of The Book of Daniel, which we will break down in the next subsection, and Revelation 17 and 18, which we'll **handle** some in this section but more in the next, make clear that Satan still has some division in his ranks to deal with, and that this will be the case throughout The Days of Vengeance. And God's omnipotent and miraculous power must show a major 'resurgence'. Because without The Spirit 'in play', it will be the 'world-renowned, awesome, earthshaking, destructive, and supremely-respect-building' spectacles of God that will help bring this fraction of the **few to the saving knowledge of The Lord Jesus Christ** in The Great Tribulation. And as we go, we'll improve our perspective of these 'incredible displays' of God's **power**. But surely all God's 'displays' of **power**, not to mention some of Satan's, will be used to **deceive** the World and convince them that these 'spectacular displays' are the work of the 'forces of evil', unless Satan and the Antichrist can 'spin them' to take credit for them themselves.

But let's not forget to give credit where credit is due. Satan will only be able to accomplish all that he accomplishes because God creates, empowers, and lets him, but also because God makes him and **all the world** do what they do. God is the cause that **...the great dragon was cast out, that old serpent, called the Devil, and Satan...** [that really by God's empowering] **deceiveth the whole world...** [and not without the help of Satan's] **angels** [who] **were cast out with him** [Rev 12:9](#). So without question it's God who forces Satan and his angels to be contained on the Earth, and instigates the following...

...Woe to the inhabitants of the earth and of the sea! for the devil is [forcibly] **come down unto you, having great wrath, because he knoweth that he hath but a short time** [given to him by God] [Rev 12:12](#).

And remember that more startling than this, God will send something that will be the cause of many to be **lost**. The problem is that **the inhabitants of the earth**, as Paul explains, will not receive...

...the love of the truth, that they might be saved [and]... **for this cause God shall send them strong delusion, that they**

should believe a lie: That they all might be damned who believed not the truth, but had pleasure in unrighteousness [2 Thes 2:10-12](#).

So God sends both ***Satan*** and ***strong delusion*** so that ***the inhabitants of the earth*** will want to ***believe*** his ***lies***. And I'm expecting there will be some 'whoppers' beyond what can possibly be fully predetermined by any ***study***. Still, some of these 'fish stories', such as 'punctuated equilibrium evolution' or 'superior alien mass abduction', we'll be able to 'reel in and land' in [The Ages of Creation study](#).

By-the-way, I said there are 9 recorded raptures for The Great Tribulation. But you could just as easily say there are 10. And if you count the ***harvest*** at the end of The Millennium, 11. And since this postmillennial rapture is really a 'split harvest', you could also say there are 12. But this 10th one—actually occurring probably 4th—lacks one qualification that the others have. It doesn't involve a group; it's just for one person, the Antichrist. This rapture—or 'resurrection', which I also consider a rapture—also leads to no possibility of redemption, but so do other raptures in these 12, including one that is technically neither for redemption or damnation in and of itself. So when I speak of only 9 raptures I mean that there are 9 recorded group raptures in and around The Great Tribulation, 10 if you count the solo, and 12 if you add and itemize the postmillennial rapture. And these are just the raptures of record. Like ***Phillip Acts 8:39***, I guess there could be others that aren't 'pre-recorded'.

In the next subsection you can count on ***learning*** things about the Antichrist and his kingdom you've never heard before. This is because, among other reasons, that a certain ***prophecy*** that was ***closed up and sealed till the time of the end*** is no longer. And I mean that it's my ***understanding*** that only part of the ***prophecy*** in Daniel 10-12 has been 'open' until now. And this should mean that ***the time of the end*** could not have fully come until now. Indeed we will confirm that the whole ***prophecy***, all of Daniel 10-12, must be fully opened before ***the time of the end*** can be considered fully here. And I ***know*** God finished opening it for me on May 6, 2007. So prepare to see that we can now ***prove*** that ***the time of the end*** has now finally and just fully come, so help me God, and so God has helped me.

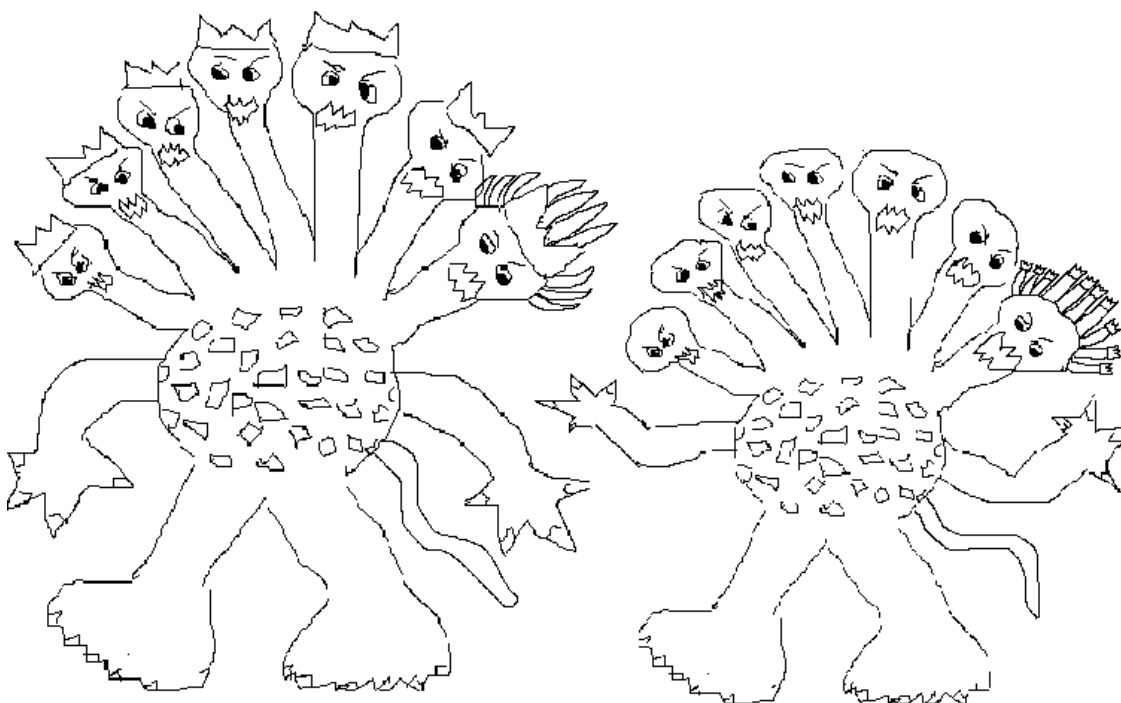
The Antichrist in The Great Tribulation

CHART of 45 Attributes of the Antichrist and his Kingdom

Attributes of the Antichrist	2Th 2:	Dan 2:	Dan 7:	Dan 8:	Dan 11:	Dan 12:	Rev 13:	Rev 17:	other
Brings Apostasy	3								
From Alexander's Empire				9					
An Assyrian from Nineveh									Is 14:25 ; Mic 5:5-8 ; Nah 1:11
Revealed by a 7 year covenant	6-8				21-23				Dan 9:27
Peacemaker				25	21-24				Dan 9:27
Flatterer					21				
Overthrows Three Kings			8, 20		22				Dan 7:24
Ruthless		41-3	7, 19	23-5	21	10-11		3-7	Dan 7:23
Rules 10 Horns or Kingdoms		41-3	7, 20				1	3	Dan 7:24 ; Rev 17:12-13
Over Disunified Confederation		41-3							
Lives Richly in His Empire					24				
Death Camps & Oppression					24				Luke 21:22-24
Starts Egyptian Civil War					25				
Conspirator				25	21-28				
Deceiver	9-10			12, 25	21-28				
Negotiator				25	21-28				
Strong & Charismatic			20	23-25	23,28				Daniel 7:8-9 ; 11:36-37
Not Attracted to Woman					37				
Backs Down from U.S.					29-30				
Hates Jews, Protestants & Muslims			21, 25		24-43		7		(Rev 17:6,14; 18:24)
Divides Israel				11-12	31-32			14	
Expands Toward Israel				9					
Conquers Islamic World					40-43				
Goes to Israel at Midtribulation	3-4		25	12; 25	41	11			Mt 24:15 ; Mk 13:14 ; Lk 21:20
Likely Killed by 2 Witnesses								8, 11	Rev 11:3-5
Resurrected from the Dead							3, 12	8, 11	Rev 13:14
Comes from Bottomless Pit								8	Rev 11:7
Empowered by Satan	9			10,24			3-7	8, 11	
Kills 2 Witnesses									Rev 11:7
Adored by the World							3-4, 8	8	Rev 11:10
Abomination of Desolation	4		8, 25	11, 25	31,36	11	5-6		Dan 9:27
Boastful, Blasphemous god	4		8, 11	11, 25	36-37	11	1, 5-6	3	Dan 7:20, 25
Destroys Jerusalem Temple				11					Dan 9:26

Pope Shares His Rule & Power							11-18		Rev 17 ; Rev 18
Can't Touch Jordan / Petra					41				Rev 12:13-17
Protestant & Jewish Genocide			21, 25		33-35	1, 7	7	14	Dan 9:26, 12:10-11
Overthrows Many Nations					40-44	1, 7	7		Dan 12::10-11
Attributes of the Antichrist (cont.)	2 Th 2:	Dan 2:	Dan 7:	Dan 8:	Dan 11:	Dan 12:	Rev 13:	Rev 17:	other
Sets Up Palace in Jerusalem					45				
Prosper			25	12, 24	24,28				Dan 11:36,43
His Supporters Prosper					36-9			12-13	Rev 17:16-17
World Economic Controller					36-9		4-5		Rev 13:16-17
World Religion Controller					36-9		4, 8		Rev 13:14
Becomes Unorthodox			23-25	23	24			16-17	Dan 11:36-39
Subjugates Catholic Church					36-39			15-18	(Rev 17 ; Rev 18)
Defeated at Armageddon	8	34-5	9-11	25	36,45	7	5	14	Dan 9:26-7 ; 11:44-45 , etc.
Damned to The Lake of Fire			11, 26		36			8, 11	Dan 9:27 ; Rev 19:19-20 , etc.

The [CHART of the 45 Attributes of the Antichrist and his Kingdom \(p.206-7\)](#) is also easily enough deciphered. We will cover most of these references in this subsection. And there is very likely more here than you've ever seen before, but it can by no means be considered exhaustive. All the chapters that reference the Antichrist are found on the top bar and the verses in the descending columns [with [links](#) to [blbclassic.org](#)—again, the site address has changed], except some **other** chapter and verse references are found in the far right column too. And really there are 46 'attributes' on the chart. But you'll see even more of them than this the more you **study** them.



In Revelation 13 the Antichrist and his kingdom go by an allegorical description similar to the one used for Satan, **the dragon**, except that the Antichrist is symbolized as simply **the beast**, or...

...the beast having seven heads and ten horns, and upon his horns ten crowns, and upon his heads the name of blasphemy
[Rev 13:1](#).

And we should notice there are some other important differences. In the previous chapter we see that Satan, the...

...great red dragon, [is instead shown] having seven heads and ten horns, and seven crowns [not ten] upon his heads [not upon his horns] [Rev 12:3](#)

So the difference in the numbers of **crowns** and where they're worn in these two allegorical 'monsters' represents the main differences between Satan and the Antichrist. See my 'artistically challenged' depictions of these 'monsters' on the previous page ([p.207](#)). I'm trying to show in these 'composite representations' most of the characteristics mentioned in Daniel 7, Revelation 13 and 17 as I imagine them. And please, it's not the art; it's the symbolism that's important. But you can laugh if you want to.

CHART of the Symbolism of the 7 Empires of Satan and the Antichrist					
Symbolism of 7 Empires	Daniel 2	Daniel 7	Daniel 8	Revelation 13	Revelation 17
Egypt	none	none	none	1 st head of the beast	1 st head of the beast
Assyria	none	none	none	2 nd head	2 nd head
Babylon	gold head	lion	none	3 rd head – mouth like a lion	3 rd head
Medo-Persia	silver chest & arms	bear	2-horned ram	4 th head -- feet like a bear	4 th head
Greece	bronze belly & thighs	leopard	1 & 4-horned goat	5 th head – body like a leopard	5 th head
Rome	iron legs...	terrible beast with iron teeth...	V	6 th head	6 th head
Antichrist	with iron & clay feet & 10 toes	with 10 horns & 11 th little horn	great horn from 1 of 4 of the goat	7 th head with 10 horns	7 th head & resurrected 8 th

And take another look at the [CHART of the Symbolism of the 7 Empires of Satan and the Antichrist](#). It collects all the characteristics and symbolism that went into the above 'drawings' of the monsters representing these seven kingdoms, as we will see.

Satan's authority is represented by **seven crowns** on each of the **seven heads** of what should be appropriately imagined as the 'most detestable monster' ever. (Sorry if the drawing doesn't help much with that aspect). The **crowns** on these **seven heads** confirm him to be the supreme king of history's seven 'world-ruling' kingdoms that follow after Nimrod's dominion was lost at the Tower of Babel recorded in Genesis 11. Later in Genesis, Moses records the rise of the first of the seven 'world-ruling' kingdoms in Egypt, which grew to dominance with the help of Joseph, son of Jacob. In Exodus he records God's annihilation of this first empire and the rise of the Assyrian Empire that followed. So the first two heads of these 'monsters' are, **1) Egypt**, and **2) Assyria**. The change of power between these two is complicated by the Pharaoh of Egypt's refusal at the repeated request of the Prophet Moses to 'let God's people go'. But as you **know** he finally does, but only after it causes Egypt's downfall and Assyria's rise. And a panoramic picture of God's handiwork in this transition will be portrayed in [The Ages of Creation study](#).

And it's primarily the Prophet Daniel that partly allegorizes, partly interprets, and partly literally depicts the last five of these seven kingdoms, though from his perspective he sees them instead as just four kingdoms. He includes a lot of information about their both human **kings** and spiritual

princes and also about their general characteristics. Daniel lives in the time of the 'world-ruling' Babylonian and Medo-Persian Empires. He is taken captive by the Babylonian Empire's greatest king, **Nebuchadnezzar**, and not long after Assyria falls under Babylon's control. So this **Babylon**, and there are others, is the third of these seven empires, and Medo-Persia is fourth. And we will find some historians to more or less agree with us about all of this a little later on.

So Daniel clearly identifies **Nebuchadnezzar** of **Babylon**, as recorded in [Daniel 2](#), as the **king** of his 'world-ruling' empire, and to the degree that Daniel tells him that...

...whosoever the children of men dwell, the beasts of the field and the fowls of the heaven hath he [God] given into thine hand, and hath made thee ruler over them all [Dan 2:38](#).

This allegorical dream given to **Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon** by God that Daniel interprets here also represents Nebuchadnezzar as a **head of gold** [Dan 2:37](#) on a body whose remaining parts represent the remaining future 'world-dominating' monarchies.

Daniel distinguishes the next two kingdoms in Nebuchadnezzar's dream, explaining,

And after thee [the head of gold] shall arise another kingdom [with breast and his arms of silver] inferior to thee, and another third kingdom [with a belly and his thighs] of brass, which shall bear rule over all the earth ([Dan 2:32, 39](#)).

So Daniel gives us a clue here that these 'world-ruling' kingdoms must be more of the **heads** on John's 'monsters', and that they will arise one after another fitting their descriptions, and contrary if necessary to the quibblings and ignorance of some secular historians. And whoever these kingdoms are, there can obviously only be one of them that can **bear rule over all the earth** at a time.

Daniel next distinguishes...

...the fourth kingdom [His legs of iron... his feet part of iron and part of clay... as one that] shall be strong as iron: forasmuch as iron breaketh in pieces and subdueth all things ([Dan 2:32-33, 36-44](#)).

But contrary to what could be **understood** by Daniel, this allegorical **image** that distinguishes 'four parts' of a man actually shows 'five parts' and really represent the last five of the seven 'world monarchies'—corresponding to the last five of the seven heads of John's 'monsters'.

So God shows Daniel the symbolism and identities of these **kingdoms** as follows:

3) a **head of gold—Babylon**, 4) **his breast and his arms of silver—the Medes and the Persians**, 5) **his belly and his thighs of brass—Grecia**, and 6) **His legs of iron**, [with] **his feet part of iron and part of clay**—a

future kingdom unidentified to Daniel. Again, though Daniel clearly sees these body parts as symbolic of only four kingdoms, three of which are specifically identified to him as Babylon, Medo-Persia, and Greece, in 'New Testament hindsight' we can now see they correspond to five kingdoms. This is because we can now see two kingdoms in **6) His legs of iron**, and **7) his feet [and toes Verse 41] part of iron and part of clay**, and that they represent both the Roman and Antichrist Empires. So hang on, because there's a lot more to go before we fully **prove** this. And as usual, the best **proof** of any topic covered in this **study** is in the totality of the **study**. But on this topic, minimum **proof** won't be complete until we reach the end of this section. And it's a long one. So hold off on a 'yea or nay' until then, OK?

Another place we can see 5 kingdoms from 4 in Daniel's **interpretation** of the Nebuchadnezzar's dream is where he takes us all the way to the end of the story, to Armageddon, where we can plainly begin to see the growth of Jesus' eternal kingdom in The Millennium. Daniel interprets the conclusion of Nebuchadnezzar's dream, **prophesying**,

Thou sawest till that a stone was cut out without hands, which smote the image [of the man] upon his feet that were of iron and clay, and brake them to pieces. Then was the iron, the clay, the brass, the silver, and the gold, broken to pieces together, and became like the chaff of the summer threshingfloors; and the wind carried them away, that no place was found for them: and the stone that smote the image became a great mountain, and filled the whole earth [Dan 2:34-35](#).

Obviously Jesus is this **stone** that **smote** or hit **the image upon his feet** and destroys the last of these 'world-ruling' kingdoms. And this last kingdom must represent the seventh head of John's two 'monsters'—not the sixth. The fact that **the stone** hits the **feet** instead of the **legs** is a hidden clue that these are really two distinguishable parts representing two different 'world-ruling' kingdoms. And this must also mean that the destruction of the whole **image** must come at the end of the seventh 'world-ruling' kingdom.

And the whole **image** of the man together—as well as each of John's whole 'monsters'—gives the idea that all the social, political, economic, and cultural 'endowments' of each kingdom are to some extent adopted by each following kingdom, and finally by the most powerful last kingdom that **breaketh in pieces and subdueth all things**. But we can see that they will altogether, however **terrible**, come too nothing.

Daniel also shows what **a great mountain** Christ's eternal kingdom will be by comparison. He confirms this in his **interpretation** of the dream, saying,

And in the days of these kings shall the God of heaven set up a kingdom, which shall never be destroyed: and the kingdom shall not be left to other people, but it shall break in pieces and consume all these kingdoms [at Armageddon], and it shall stand for ever [Dan 2:44](#).

Now here Daniel says this destructive event, which by deduction can be none other than Jesus' second coming to **Armageddon**, happens **in the days of these kings**. And since by definition these **kings** empire's can **bear rule over all the earth** only one at a time, they must all be gone but the last one when this takes place. This is clearly why the **stone** strikes **the feet**, as opposed to any other part of the body.

Of course, this **interpretation** by Daniel that there are **four kingdoms** instead of five is not his fault. It's because of the fact that these last two kingdoms were indeed **hid in God** as one. They were hidden as one because The Mystery Church Age of Grace can now be seen to fit between these two kingdoms that Daniel was only allowed to see merged together as one. The kingdom of the **legs of iron**, the Roman Empire, is past. The Church Age of Grace is ongoing. And the kingdom of the **feet and toes... part of iron and part of clay**, the Antichrist Kingdom, has **not yet come**. This coming kingdom will be the seventh head on each of John's 'monstrous representations', with the Roman Empire represented by the sixth. And the entire seven-headed **dragon** is the consolidated representation of Satan's control over all the seven 'world-ruling' **kingdoms**, while the entire seven-headed **beast** is the Antichrist's completed consolidation of all of these **kingdoms** in the form of the seventh and last 'world-ruling' **kingdom** that he controls under Satan in The Great Tribulation.

And the reason why we can only derive five kingdoms from Daniel's **image** of a man instead of seven is because Moses in his lifetime records for us the first two kingdoms which transpire before Daniel's lifetime. So God only needs to show Daniel the last five kingdoms during and following his lifetime, though he could understandably then only see four. But of course God knows that John will later make clear that there are really seven altogether and that Jesus will point us to Daniel so that with the help of The Spirit we can eventually figure it all out, and that Satan wouldn't until it was too late.

And Daniel plainly reveals the identity of some of these 'world-ruling' **kingdoms**. So when we add his clear identifications to Moses' record before his, and John's record thereafter, and enough history in between, we can now indisputably identify all seven of the 'world-ruling' empires. They are 1) Egypt, 2) Assyria, 3) Babylon, 4) Medo-Persia, 5) Greece, 6) Rome, and 7) The Antichrist Empire that is **not yet come**. And each of these kingdoms unmistakably represents one of the **seven heads** of each of John's 'monsters'. And now that **the time of the end** has finally fully come, we can now also see greater detail in Daniel's previously only partially interpreted allegorical **prophecies**, because we can now fully **understand** his longest, most puzzling, literal **prophecy** in Chapters 10-12, as we will see before we're through with this section.

So again, hang on for the rest of this ride. There's still a lot more to go. On this adventure we'll confirm that Satan has conformed and will conform all of these empires into his image within the limits God allows. And we'll be able to see that the rise of each of these kingdoms represents him, and that each adds to the increasingly 'socially decadent', 'politically dictatorial', 'economically materialistic', and 'spiritually twisted' amalgamation that is the **great red dragon, having seven heads... [and] seven crowns upon his heads**, which will not be fully formed until the rise of the seventh head, the Antichrist Kingdom.

And we haven't really finished establishing the identity of some of these 'world-ruling' empires from Daniel's record. We will shortly. But already you should be able to see the reason why Satan's authority is shown by **a dragon... having... seven crowns upon his [seven] heads**. And if that's not enough, we also have John's **revelation** that...

...there are seven kings: five are fallen, and one is [in John's day], **and the other is** [still] **not yet come** [Rev 17:10](#).

And this surely solves the **mystery**. The 'world-ruling' kingdoms of Egypt, Assyria, Babylon, Medo-Persia, and Greece are **fallen**. And the **one** from John's lifetime, Rome, is now **fallen** too. But **the other**, the seventh kingdom, already commonly known in advance as the Antichrist Kingdom, is still **not yet come**.

And some questions remain about the symbolism of **the beast**. First and foremost, why is the authority of the Antichrist shown with **ten crowns on ten horns**? We'll be able to answer this when we can deduce exactly where the **horns** grow and exactly where the **crowns** are worn on each of these two 'monsters'. What we'll discover is that all of these **ten horns** must be only on the seventh head of each of these formidable seven-headed 'monsters'. And I say they are both formidable, but as should be expected, **the beast** cannot be as **terrible** as **the dragon**. But the seventh head of this **beast** should stand out from the rest of the **heads** because this last **head** signifies the most powerful kingdom by far, even if just because it's the most ruthless and deceiving of the seven 'world-ruling' monarchies. And as with the **dragon**, the seventh head of **the beast** is depicted as just part of the collective emblematic picture. So it's the manner of the beast's coronation that implies its different authority. With all its **crowns** residing on just the seventh head's **ten horns**, this implies that the Antichrist will have power only over the last kingdom, though his origins and backing visibly come from Satan himself, and from all of Satan's kingdoms that went before him. This also implies to me that the Antichrist is just a man with authority only over the last kingdom, while Satan's authority, symbolized with a **crown** on each of the **seven heads**, is over them all.

We can also see that the crowned **ten horns** must only connect to the seventh head when we connect this allegorical vision of John's to the allegorical dream of Nebuchadnezzar in Daniel 2 that describes the ten **toes of the feet** [Dan 2:42](#). In this **prophecy** the **ten toes** [Dan 2:31](#) are obviously attached to the last body segment of **the great image** of a man, **the feet**, which implies that both in Revelation 13 and 17 the **ten horns** are also only attached to the last head of this seven-headed **beast**. In a similar 'beastly' prophetic **allegory** in Daniel 7 we can also see that the 'world-ruling' **four great beasts** [Verse 3](#) and the **ten horns** [Verse 7](#) of **the fourth beast** [Verses 19-23](#) are plainly only attached to the head of **the fourth beast**—which again we can assume really represent two kingdoms that are divided by The Age of Grace that God hides by merging them into one. And I mean these **four great beasts** are really five. And the appropriate resemblances between John's 'composite monsters' and Daniel's **four great beasts** are not too hard to identify, as we will see. And both John and Daniel make perfectly clear that the **ten horns**—and therefore the **ten toes**—

represent **ten kings** and that they **receive power as kings... with the beast** ([Dan 7:24](#); [Rev 17:12](#)). Clearly then the seventh head of **the beast** whereon resides the **ten horns**, as well as **the feet and toes** on **the great image** of the man, are both analogies that represent the Antichrist and his kingdom. John, Daniel, and, as we will see, the Archangel Gabriel all interpret this to be the case.

Another important reference point we can compare in these allegories is how this last kingdom, along with the collective seven, are destroyed. We've already heard from Daniel about the...

...stone... which smote the image [of the man] **upon his feet... and brake them to pieces...** [the **interpretation** according to Daniel being that] **the kingdom** [that this **stone** represents becomes **a great mountain** and] **shall... break in pieces and consume all these** [seven] **kingdoms** [by striking the last 'ten-toed' or 'ten-horned' Antichrist Kingdom], **and it** [God's eternal kingdom] **shall stand for ever** [Dan 2](#).

John tells us more simply that...

...the Lamb [Jesus] **shall** [in the end] **overcome them** [including the **ten kings** of the Antichrist Kingdom]: **for he is Lord of lords, and King of kings** [Rev 17:14](#).

Putting them together, as we should, we get that Jesus, obviously at Armageddon, destroys the Antichrist Kingdom, which is the amalgamation of these seven 'world-ruling' empires, and then inaugurates The Eternal Kingdom of God and of Christ that **shall stand for ever**. But these are just some of the reference points within these allegories and interpretations that can be put together. And we will not run short of them as we **continue**.

One of the most prominent connecting reference points within these partially interpreted allegories are the many symbolized characteristics of the Antichrist Kingdom. One of the more detailed characteristics is found in Daniel's **interpretation** of the symbolically mixed content of **the feet and toes, part of potters' clay, and part of iron** [Dan 2:41](#). Daniel explains that this means...

...the kingdom shall be divided; but there shall be in it of the strength of the iron, forasmuch as thou sawest the iron mixed with miry clay. And as the toes of the feet were part of iron, and part of clay, so the kingdom shall be partly strong, and partly broken [or not fully unified]. **And whereas thou sawest iron mixed with miry clay, they shall mingle themselves with the seed of men: but they shall not cleave one to another, even as iron is not mixed with clay** [Dan 2:36,41-43](#).

Rifts, divisions, disunification? Are we talking ten Islamic nations with a mix of Shia and Sunni Muslims here, or the result of the cultural differences in, say,

ten predominantly Catholic European countries? Some also think that this identifies the eventual social structure now developing in the American 'melting pot', and that we should expect to see The United States divided into '10 districts', with '10 kings', sort of. But even if circumstances like these surface in all of these regions, as it's argued they already have, it will simply mean that two of them are 'decoys'—unfortunate distractions to the real picture. And I would not put this passed Satan. And anyone not checking out all options thoroughly is deceived, even if they by chance pick the right one. Of course putting it in these terms more or less exposes my point of view, but I've really only just started. Let's **continue** our way through Daniel's **revelations** looking for more of these identifying characteristics, and comparing them with what John has to add as we go, and in this process we should expect to find out just who and what in fact Jesus wants us to **watch**, and why. We will at least discover much of what **scripture** has to **reveal** about the nature of the Antichrist and his kingdom. Also, as promised, we will finish identifying the seven 'world-ruling' empires as they embody characteristics of the Antichrist Empire too. And along the way we must keep in mind that in the time following Nimrod's post-flood kingdom ([Gen 11](#)) that there can be only **seven** 'world-ruling' kingdoms—appearing one at a time—and all before the beginning of The Eternal Kingdom of God and of Christ, and that the last of the **seven** must be The Antichrist Kingdom that has **not yet come**. This makes it easier, to some extent, to sort out Daniel and John's allegories and interpretations as long as we keep in mind what was **hid** from Daniel but **revealed** to John. Another deep breath would be in order.

John recounts that the seven-headed...

...beast... was like unto a leopard, and his feet were as feet of a bear, and his mouth as the mouth of a lion... [Rev 13:2](#).

These three **beasts, a leopard, a bear, and a lion**, though embodied within one 'seven-headed beast', compare to Daniel's **four great beasts** in [Daniel 7](#). These three 'animals' are representations of the 5th, 4th, and 3rd kingdoms, respectively, of the **seven** kingdoms **which shall bear rule over all the earth**. Again, Moses makes plain that Egypt and Assyria are the first two. Then Daniel is alive to mark Babylon as the third 'world-ruling' empire in [Daniel 2](#), and later identifies, in [Daniel 5](#), **the Medes and Persians** as the kingdom that **after... [Babylon] shall arise**. Next, in [Daniel 8](#), he names **the king of Grecia** as the one that will **cast [the kings of Media and Persia] down to the ground**.

By-the-way, I shouldn't ignore that you can see here, in my mixing of **scripture**, a mixing of the description of human **kings** with spiritual **princes** over these empires, because we will see, for example, that there were several human **kings of Media and Persia** who had control **over all the earth**, while there was only one spiritual **prince** over the entire period of this empire. This particular spiritual **prince**, represented also by just one of the seven heads on each of John's 'monsters', would be **the prince of Persia**. And he's the one, under Satan, who really ruled over the Medo-Persian Empire until he was finally put down by Michael. I haven't troubled you too much yet with keeping track of the distinctions between human **kings** and

spiritual **princes**, and have really **handled** it for you so far. But you must eventually **learn** to sort this out for yourself or it can lead to misinterpretations, just as God planned it would.

Another unavoidable perspective we'll have to **handle** extremely cautiously is 'recorded history'. I mean it's mostly 'recorded' by men uninspired by God and highly prone to error or worse. Still, if we keep our eyes sharp, and expect to have to sort through some 'garbage', we'll see its value in helping to confirm the Scriptural record. And of course I believe, in case you haven't already suspected, that the record of **scripture** is not flawed. How could I speak for God otherwise? The point is that though historians may argue the facts of **scripture**, their contributions are easily enough eventually conformed to it, including the accounts in Genesis and Exodus, and the accounts in Daniel and Revelation too. From **scripture** alone we have confirmed so far that six of the seven 'world-ruling' kingdoms are now specifically identified as past **fallen** empires. And now that we have identified these kingdoms by name, we can compare and further identify them by their representations in the various allegorical and literal **prophecies** of John and Daniel, and even **learn** more about them from history as long as it doesn't contradict **scripture**. And before we're through with this section, by this process we will be able to identify the Antichrist Kingdom. It's a matter of deduction and time.

So next, since Daniel tells Nebuchadnezzar that he is the **head of gold**, we should now **understand** that Medo-Persia is symbolized by a **breast and... arms of silver**, and Greece by a **belly and... thighs of brass**. And Daniel's says in his vision of the **four great beasts** that, **The first was like a lion**, and the **second, like to a bear**, and the third **like a leopard**. This confirms that Babylon is also symbolized by **a lion**, Medo-Persia by **a bear**, and Greece by **a leopard**. And remember that John uses these same three animals as body parts for **the beast** too.

We then can recognize here that each kingdom is represented by a progressively 'baser' metal, or a lower body part, or a decreasingly formidable animal. I mean I'm guessing a leopard in his prime wouldn't presume to hunt a bear in his prime, and so forth. The logical and fitting conclusion about this is that these **kingdoms** become more and more base or corrupt. In the same way the metals transition down in value, but up in strength. And the body parts of **the image** descend down the body.

And it must be the Roman Empire that is repeatedly symbolized by **iron legs** and **iron teeth**. But in the **allegory of the image** of a man in Daniel 2 we see **iron** that is ultimately somewhat weakened with **clay** in the transition from the **legs** to the **feet**. However it could be argued that the **feet** could be considered best able to deliver the strongest blows. So I see the addition of the weakening **clay** to the mix as representing the change over the centuries caused by the influence of Europe's diverse cultures since the time of the Roman Empire that will result in the coming Antichrist Kingdom. And today, the nations of Europe are still mostly individually autonomous—or weakened by disunity—though they are now in the process of renewing elements of the former strength of **iron** that existed in the more centrally controlled Roman Empire. And surely the government of The E.U. must become further centralized if it is to have enough **iron** in it to satisfy the

Antichrist. But I anticipate, as does **scripture**, that other factors will materialize that will further strengthen Europe's unification that we'll get to later on. And anyway you look at it, we can expect that the last two **iron**-based, 'world-ruling' kingdoms will be the strongest as they're the most ruthless and corrupt. And that the weakening **clay** in this last kingdom will be more than compensated for by its leader's apparent 'divinity', including his astonishingly 'god-like' leadership abilities.

By-the-way, the Sunni and Shia Muslims, from my perspective, and even from theirs, will never satisfactorily resolve their differences. There's just way too much 'clay' and never enough 'iron' for them to get their act together. Neither do they really have any strong connection to the Roman Empire. And this should be sufficient evidence to disqualify them from hosting the Antichrist Kingdom, though there is plenty more scriptural **proof** of this to come. Daniel shows us that the Antichrist and his kingdom will only further divide and ultimately conquer the Muslim World. The U.S. will pull it together though, just not how and why you might expect. We will see that The U.S. stands up to the Antichrist, but not for long.

So again, to see that there are really two kingdoms within **the fourth kingdom** ([Dan 2:40](#); [7:23](#)) we must **understand** that God has purposefully disguised them as one. In Daniel 2 it's now easy for us by The Spirit to see two kingdoms within **the fourth kingdom** because they are represented by the differently composed **legs** and **feet** of **the image** of the man. But in the **allegory** of the **four great beasts** in Chapter 7 we have to look a little closer to see the dual nature of **the fourth kingdom** within the description of the **fourth beast**. Daniel tells us that the...

...fourth beast, dreadful and terrible, and strong exceedingly... had great iron teeth: it devoured and brake in pieces, and stamped the residue with the feet of it: and it was diverse from all the beasts that were before it; and it had ten horns [Dan 7:3-7](#).

So within this description we should expect to find an evolution from past to future of the beast's symbolically described characteristics, but also an abrupt transition of characteristics on either side of The Church Age of Grace. This is because this age must be missing from the description of this beast's characteristics. From this perspective, we can assume that the final and completing **diverse** characteristics of this **beast** will not fully emerge until after The Rapture of the Church when this **fourth beast** that must originally **lack ten horns** will finally become a **beast with ten horns**, which will then also be the seventh of John's **seven heads** and **kings**. And this dual-natured **fourth beast** or **fourth kingdom** in Daniel 7 must be the very same **fourth kingdom** symbolized by the **great image** of the man's **iron legs** with **feet part of iron and part of clay** of Daniel 2. And in this symbolism of a man we also have two kingdoms hidden as one, where the final characteristics represented by the 'iron and clay feet with ten toes' will not fully emerge until after The Rapture of the Church at the close of The Age of Grace.

So putting the two **prophecies** together we can separate within the descriptions of this **fourth kingdom** really two kingdoms. We can see a description of the Roman Empire, a **dreadful and terrible** beast that

crushes dissenters characteristically with **iron**, whether with **teeth** or **legs**—but also with claws of **brass** [Dan 7:19](#), an attribute obviously originating with Greece. And we can see a description of the Antichrist Empire too, represented by nearly the same symbolism and interpretations except at such a time when it reemerges as a ten-kingdom confederacy that is somewhat less unified but nonetheless ruthlessly and powerfully controlled by **ten kings** under the Antichrist.

But Daniel also plainly interprets these **four beasts** as **four kings**, saying,

These great beasts, which are four, are four kings, which shall arise out of the earth [Dan 7:17](#).

And there is no doubt that these must be the very same **kings** of the four **kingdoms ...which shall bear rule over all the earth** from Daniel 2. But we now **know** by comparing the rest of the **prophecies** in Daniel, and adding the first two kingdoms recognized by Moses, and a little help from Jesus, John, Paul, and The Spirit, and also a little history, that these **four kings** cannot be just four individual human kings, but must really represent five of the **seven** 'multiple human-kinged' empires, each empire under one of five of the **seven** spiritual **princes** or **kings**, all under Satan. And we now **know**, according to Daniel, and besides Egypt and Assyria that Moses identifies, that three of these empires are Babylon, Medo-Persia, and Greece, because these three of the **seven** Daniel positively identifies and records in his day. And we really don't even have to rely on secular history to identify Rome as the sixth kingdom either, because John not only makes plain that the sixth is the Roman Empire, he does so in way that gives us a 'progress report' on all **seven** of the 'world-ruling' kingdoms and their **seven** spiritual **princes** or **kings**. He says that in his lifetime that **five are fallen, and one is, and the other is not yet come**. So now we **know** that there are six **fallen** and that it's only the seventh spiritual **prince** or **king** and the Antichrist Kingdom that **is not yet come**.

Again, there is one spiritual **prince** or **king** over each of the **seven** empires, but multiple human **kings** over each one. The exception is that the last of these **seven** kingdoms will instead see only one supreme human **king** over the entire seven year length of the empire, the Antichrist himself, and that he will have a confederation of **ten** human **kings** under him. But as usual I expect the Antichrist Kingdom will have just one spiritual **prince** over it, like **the prince of Persia**, who is under Satan, who is over all—except for God and his **princes**, of course.

Now you should see that lots of confusion can result if you don't keep your **'kings'** straight. So I should reemphasize that these **four kings** that are simply part of the **seven kings** are really five of the **seven** individual spiritual **kings** who evidently all carry out most of their administrations in **spiritual... places** [Eph 6:12](#). This should be assumed because the wording in [Daniel 7:17](#) and [Revelation 17:10](#) speak in terms allowing for only 'one king per kingdom' and therefore must be referring to the individual spiritual **kings** or **princes** over each of these empires as opposed to any of their multiple human kings. In other words, this must then be speaking of spiritual **principalities** and **powers** controlled by spiritual **kings** like **the prince of**

Persia and **the prince of Grecia** as opposed to the physical kingdoms controlled by human **kings** like **Nebuchadnezzar**, Alexander the Great, and the Antichrist. Again, you have to keep an eye out for this.

And this suggests to me an important reason why Satan and even his final spiritual **prince** over the Antichrist Kingdom should remain for the most part separate from the body occupied by the human spirit of the Antichrist. It's the order of things we see in these **prophecies**. And I mean it's the order of the 'hierarchy' under both The Holy Trinity and the Unholy Trinity. So even though some suppose that Satan or one of his angel-princes will possess the Antichrist when he is resurrected, I instead expect the usual 'middle-man' arrangement—that this seventh angel-prince will be the one to **wrestle** more directly with humanity and will operate between Satan and the human **prince that shall come**, in this case the Antichrist, preserving the same 'hierarchical order' as in all the previous 'world-ruling' empires. And again, this seems more likely to me because Satan can be expected to want and need all the freedom and help he can get to direct 'global harmony', or the lack thereof. But more than anything else, I expect some angel-prince will be installed in this secondary position, like **the prince of Persia** or **the prince of Grecia**, because it will maintain Satan's position above and over all, **like the most high**, at the top of the Unholy Trinity. And of course I don't mean to imply that Satan's subordinate angel-princes lack exceptionally obsessive egos. No, I expect that they will desire control over **principalities... in high places** too. And that again, Satan will need the help. I mean, I don't see Satan in anywhere near the same 'league' as our **omnipotent** God. But whatever the case, I'm sure he'll get the help of **the whole world** however he sees fit to use it.

We should also recognize that John's prophetic allegories are no longer hiding The Church Age of Grace that was **hid** from Daniel, nor is there seen in them any 'clumping together' at all of the sixth and seventh kingdoms, because **seven kings** are plainly exposed by him. The spiritual **king** or **prince** of Rome that must have '**withstood**' Michael ([Dan 10:13](#)) in John's day obviously no longer has a 'world-ruling' empire to control, though I expect that this spiritual '**fight**' ([Dan 10:20](#)) must in one way or another still be ongoing. And this **other** [spiritual **prince** that] **is not yet come**, who should be controlled by Satan too, has **not yet** taken control of his 'world-ruling' empire, because that empire has **not yet** fully emerged, and will not until after The Rapture of the Church.

And you should **know** by now the reason why that so far it is impossible that it has emerged. Remember that Paul makes clear that the Antichrist,

...the man of sin, the son of perdition [or eternal punishment];
Who opposeth and exalteth himself above all that is called God, or that is worshipped; so that he as God sitteth in the temple of God, shewing himself that he is God... [must] **be revealed in his time...**

And we **know** that The Holy Spirit—evidently along with the help of Michael and his angels' ongoing '**fight**'—now **withholdeth that he might be revealed in his time**. His time is the seven-year Great Tribulation. Because at the time when The Holy Spirit is...

...taken out of the way... then shall that Wicked be revealed, whom [seven years later] the Lord shall consume with the spirit of his mouth, and shall destroy with the brightness of his coming [at Armageddon]: Even him, whose coming is after the working of Satan with all power and signs and lying wonders... [2Thes 2](#).

And it's impossible that the Antichrist has been **revealed** because of a **promise** to The Church in this Age of Grace. Paul makes clear that the...

...holy Spirit of promise... is the earnest of our inheritance until the redemption of the purchased possession... [Eph 1:13-14](#).

So the Antichrist can't come until The Spirit goes, and when The Spirit goes we'll **know** it because **he** will have to take us with **him**. This is God's **promise**.

One of the modern translations of The Bible tells us here that **earnest** means "deposit guaranteeing". And remember that some people still use this KJV term in the same way today. Some real estate agents still refer to 'putting down a deposit promising to buy property' as 'earnest money'. In the same way God is now promising to buy **us**. And The Spirit in **us** is His **earnest** deposit for **us**. And The Spirit is guaranteed to be with us **until the redemption of the purchased possession**. And the Church, which is also referred to as **the body of Christ**, is that **purchased possession**, purchased by **the blood of Jesus**. And this **redemption** event is The Rapture of the Church when the Church will be **raised incorruptible to immortality [1Cor 15:51-55](#)**. This is when all danger that you might **fall** ends, when **Death is swallowed up in victory**. But for the rest of the World this is when, with The Spirit **taken out of the way**, the Antichrist will **be revealed... [finally exposing] the mystery of iniquity**. Remember?

Another characteristic of the Antichrist in Revelation 17 is that of...

...the beast that was, and is not, even he is the eighth, and is of the seven, and goeth [after Armageddon] into perdition [Rev 17:11](#).

And we also **know** that both Daniel and John describe the **ten kings** that **receive power with the beast [Rev 17:12](#)**. But Verse 11 seems to imply that the human Antichrist himself, after his resurrection and until he is finally destroyed, will be distinguished as **the eighth** spiritual head or king—a force to be reckoned with beyond that of the **ten kings** and their **kingdoms** combined. At this point he will apparently rise to a new level equal to **the seven** angel-princes. Now sometimes the lines between Satan, His princes, the Antichrist and his kingdom are blurred in both Daniel and John's allegories. But emphasis on one or another of these players or parts is other times clearly distinguishable. In Verse 11, the person of the Antichrist is clearly distinguished because **he is the eighth**. And this seems to mean that the Antichrist becomes 'elevated' enough to be called the **eighth... of the seven**

after being 'empowered' by Satan. So I see the Antichrist here separated from his kingdom in order to show his unique new power and authority unlike any previous human king—an 'empowerment' that puts him on the same level as the **seven kings** who are the **seven** spiritual **princes** that ruled before him.

And from this perspective some will understandably expect that when the Antichrist is 'resurrected'—when he becomes **the eighth** head, say, like **the prince of Persia**—that this is when Satan or some other angel-prince will possess the dead body of the Antichrist. And looking at it this way should mean that the seventh spiritual prince would be put out of a job, or at least demoted, at this transition. Because clearly 'The Antichrist' is distinguished here from the previous seven spiritual princes, the seventh of which apparently loses his position, or at least some control, when the human Antichrist dies and is 'revived' by some new spiritual prince as opposed to the original human spirit of the Antichrist. These are some of the possibilities anyway if you like the 'false resurrection' theory. And we are looking through a rather 'dark glass', aren't we.

But again, I don't see that past spiritual princes over past 'world-ruling' empires as wanting or needing to possess their respective human counterparts, at least permanently, as this would be inefficient, unnecessary, and degrading to their egos. I mean if they could otherwise come and go as they pleased from their human counterparts, and in the case of the Antichrist if a human spirit could be restored to his dead body instead—preferably his original human spirit waiting in the Bottomless Pit who already has his 'head in the game'—then they would surely prefer it over tedious permanent confinement or even over sustaining a long-term 'manifestation' in the form of his physical body.

So I still see [Revelation 17:11](#) as more likely a convention to appropriately distinguish a spiritually empowered human-born spirit from his earthly kingdom and **kings**, and from the **seven** fully spiritual **kings** that are his predecessors, which would allow the seventh spiritual prince to remain fully active over this kingdom too. Also supporting this idea is the implication from John's record that the Antichrist doesn't essentially change other than becoming more powerful after he rises from the dead. I mean a distinction clearly takes effect just after he is 'resurrected' and 'empowered' by Satan, but his former 'unempowered' self is included in the description, because John tells us that **the beast that was... is** [or becomes] **the eighth**. Again, this doesn't appear consistent with a theory that would distinguish two different entities occupying—or 'manifesting'—the same body. And I mean that just as the Antichrist is most likely human in The Beginning of Sorrows when he **was**, he will just as likely still be human in The Days of Vengeance when he becomes the 'satanically-empowered' **eighth**.

It took me a while bouncing back and forth to settle on this conclusion. Agree to disagree if you will, but be careful, especially if this is the first time you've seen so many sides to this argument. And besides, there's more against the 'false resurrection' theory because I think my above conclusions are supported by other precepts about the Antichrist and his kingdom found elsewhere in Daniel and Revelation.

In Daniel 7 for example, in his **vision** and in the angel's **interpretation** we can now see, sometime since Pentecost, all the jurisdictions and characteristics of the third through seventh 'world-ruling' kingdoms. And the

angel interprets that these **beasts** are general representations of **four**—that we now see as five—of the **seven** spiritual **kings** and their **kingdoms** ([Dan 7:17](#); [23](#)), which we can now see correspond to five of the **seven heads** on John's 'monsters'. The whole picture can be seen in Daniel's **vision** when he says,

I beheld then because of the voice of the great words which the horn spake [the Antichrist at The Abomination of Desolation]: I beheld even till the beast was slain, and his body destroyed, and given to the burning flame [The Lake of Fire after Armageddon]. As concerning the rest of the beasts [the other seven 'world-ruling' angel-princes], they had their dominion taken away: yet their lives were prolonged for a season and time [for a season of 1000 years 'chained' in the Bottomless Pit, and for the time when they again are loosed to provoke another worldwide rebellion [Rev 20:1-2,7-8](#)] [Dan 7:11](#).

A lot of this we'll deal with later this section and in later sections. What we want to notice now is that the Antichrist is described here both as an additional **horn**—like one of the **ten horns** that are interpreted in this **prophecy** to represent **ten** human **kings** and their **kingdoms** [Dan 7:24](#)—and as one of the **beasts**—like one of the **seven** spiritual **kings** who are all destined to be **bound** and **cast into the bottomless pit... the thousand years**, after which they will be ultimately **devoured** by God and...

...cast into the lake of fire and brimstone, where the beast and the false prophet are, and... tormented day and night for ever and ever
[Rev 20:9-10](#).

This distinguishes the Antichrist and **the rest of the beasts** in that the Antichrist, along with the False Prophet, have a special previous engagement with The Lake of Fire a 1000 years earlier.

And at the time when the **ten horns** or **ten kings** of the **fourth beast** appear, when it actually becomes the fifth or really the seventh beast, Daniel reveals the Antichrist as...

...another little horn, before whom there were three of the first [ten] horns plucked up by the roots: and, behold, in this horn were eyes like the eyes of man, and a mouth speaking great things [Dan 7:8](#).

This **little horn** that 'uproots' three of the **ten horns**—an apparent military coup—is said to have **eyes like the eyes of man, and a mouth speaking great things**. And the last part of this description we can plainly recognize as a characteristic of the Antichrist at The Abomination of Desolation which makes it all about him. So he must be this 'eleventh' **little horn**. And we will also be able to place this 'uprooting' event very close to The Mystery of Iniquity **revelation**—when the Antichrist brokers his 7-year international peace treaty. So this verse is a picture of the Antichrist during The Beginning

of Sorrows when he **was** not yet 'empowered', but it ends with the 'empowered' Antichrist at The Abomination of Desolation.

But remember in Revelation 13 that this **mouth speaking great things** is instead represented by the whole seventh **head**—not just by an extra **horn** on the **head**. There John...

...saw one of his heads [and there are only seven here] **as it were wounded to death; and his deadly wound was healed... And there was given unto him** [presumably to the last **one of his heads**] **a mouth speaking great things and blasphemies; and power was given unto him to continue forty and two months. And he opened his mouth in blasphemy against God, to blaspheme his name, and his tabernacle, and them that dwell in heaven** [Rev 13:1-6](#).

Again, we are familiar with these Days of Vengeance 'ground-breaking' events, yet this description of John's focuses on the **heads** while again referencing The Abomination of Desolation and evidently showing the Antichrist with human characteristics too. So an important difference in these two passages, between Daniel 7:8 and Revelation 13:1-6, is that one focuses on the Antichrist as a **little horn**, or as human, and the other focuses on him as a **head** or a 'spiritually-empowered entity'. And this is one way to see the Antichrist's transformation at his 'resurrection' and 'empowerment'. And not that he becomes any less human, but that he's a human that becomes the most spiritually powerful man ever. So much so that it becomes appropriate—from The Abomination of Desolation on—to no longer refer to him as the 'eleventh' **little horn**, but to refer to him as **the eighth** spiritual prince ruling along with the seventh angel-prince under Satan.

And another similarity I see in these two passages is that the focus seems to drift from a more broad composite view of all the aspects of The Antichrist Kingdom—including the human Antichrist 'all clumped together' with his 'overlording' angel-prince, the ten kings, the kingdom itself, and all symbolically depicted under Satan—to a narrower view of the person of the Antichrist—the human 'eleventh' **little horn**, or the still human but 'empowered' **eighth [head]**. Yes, in both these passages all these associations seem to all merge together, except the focuses on the simply human v. the spiritually empowered Antichrist are distinct.

And I mean Daniel shows the Antichrist as merely an additionally grown **little horn** apparently on the 'seventh head' while John represents him by the whole 'seventh head' with a **deadly wound** that **was healed**. And in a later passage John represents him as an additionally grown 'eighth head'. In other words, we can view the metamorphosis of the Antichrist and His kingdom by first 'zooming in' on the 'seventh head' of **the beast** and its 'eleven horns' and then 'panning back to widescreen' and taking in all 'eight heads' of **the dragon**. In this 'camera work' we see 'focuses' on the different halves of The Great Tribulation. But in all these cases I see that the Antichrist retains his own unique identity, destiny, and human characteristics. And though the associations sometimes 'blur', God still expects us to develop an ability to **understand** His varied perspectives. Remember I told you that I could not make this easy for you. This is part of what I mean. And this is God's doing.

He has designed and constructed His Word so that even a subtle misunderstanding of the perspective is enough to misunderstand the **scripture**, and expose a potential slacker—I mean the kind who too easily becomes satisfied that they have nothing more to discover by further reexamination.

By-the way, we should not pass by this 'uprooting' of the **three... horns**. This allegorical summary of a major starting event of The Great Tribulation is presented in respect to the person of the Antichrist and is interpreted by an angel who removes all doubt as to the meaning. The angel—probably Gabriel as in Chapters 8 and 10-12—says,

...the ten horns... are ten kings that shall arise: and another shall rise after them [The Antichrist—another little horn]; and he shall be diverse [politically, ethnically, and religiously?] from the first [from who?—the ten kings], and he shall subdue three kings [of the ten kings—by which he will be able to gain control of the rest of this 'ten-kinged kingdom']. And he shall [3½ years later] speak great words against the most High [at The Abomination of Desolation], and shall wear out the saints of the most High [in the following war with the saints in The Days of Vengeance], and think to change times and laws: and they shall be given into his hand until a time and times and the dividing of time [the 3½ years or 42 months of The Days of Vengeance] [Dan 7:24-25](#).

The person of the Antichrist is undeniably distinguished here as that 11th **little horn** seen operating near the 'ribbon-cutting ceremonies' of The Beginning of Sorrows where he is involved in a 'power-grab' to **subdue three kings** and thereby gain control of his 'ten-kinged kingdom'.

This leads us to try to further distinguish this **little** [kingdom-establishing] **horn** from **the eighth** ['resurrected', 'empowered' and 'world-controlling'] **head**. The implication is that at the start of The Beginning of Sorrows, as the Antichrist gains control of his kingdom, he is just this **little horn, diverse from** [the **ten kings**]. And this indicates several things about the Antichrist. It implies that he 'comes out of nowhere', and that he is not from the culture or cultures he takes over, or at least, as we'll also see evidenced elsewhere, that he has entirely different values than the cultural norm. He is a strange nobody that becomes a somebody. But from John's perspective, by the middle of The Great Tribulation, when he declares himself to be God, he becomes the 'eighth head'— a person who is comparably as powerful in himself as any of the previous 'world-ruling' angel-princes. So apparently we must keep an eye out for the early, 'kingdom-establishing' views of the Antichrist in The Beginning of Sorrows and distinguish these from the later, 'satanically-empowered' views of him in The Days of Vengeance. In these later views we would expect that the Antichrist will be identified as not only associated with, but greater than or equal to the powerful kingdom that he represents, and also greater than or equal to any of his **seven** angel-prince predecessors, the last and probably all of which may continue to play a leadership role in The Days of Vengeance too. And all this seems to show that the Antichrist starts as a human **little horn** among the **ten** human 'big horns', but ends up a **beast** or kingdom **head** in his own right, and

comparable to the other **seven heads** or **beasts** or angel-princes in their **power**. But I don't see how you positively confirm different human and spiritual entities exchanging places along the way, unless you exclude or are ignorant of certain **scriptures** that seem to spoil the idea. And it's a bit of a stretch for me. I see the same man in both halves of The Great Tribulation.

But I avoided a debatable issue I should now clear up. When the Antichrist is spoken of as having **a mouth speaking great things** in both [Daniel 7:8-9](#) and [Revelation 13:1-6](#), this may be referring to two different time periods in The Great Tribulation. Daniel's angel may be referring to the Antichrist's general demeanor throughout The Beginning of Sorrows to The Abomination of Desolation, while John's reference more clearly refers specifically to The Abomination of Desolation event and beyond. This is because Daniel's angel seems to show the Antichrist as having **a mouth speaking great things** when he is a **little horn** 'uprooting' three others, presumably from the start of The Beginning of Sorrows. But instead the angel could be taken to mean that the Antichrist's boastfulness is the last, midtribulational part of a three point summary of The Beginning of Sorrows. But there is no ambiguity in John's reference when the Antichrist is seen to have **a mouth speaking great things and blasphemies...** when **his deadly wound was healed...** and when **he opened his mouth in blasphemy against God, to blaspheme his name, and his tabernacle** obviously at The Abomination of Desolation. The point is that instead of both these references referring directly to The Abomination of Desolation, Daniel's **vision** might be indicating that the Antichrist is quite a 'motivational speaker' from the start of The Great Tribulation on—his original worldwide forum surely arising through the establishment of the 7-year international peace treaty. So it may be incorrect to say that everywhere you see the Antichrist **speaking great things** it must always be a strict reference to The Abomination of Desolation. But in Daniel 7 there is at least one clear reference to the Antichrist's boasting at The Abomination of Desolation ([Dan 7:25](#)). So am I being overcautious? Probably. But this additional insight seems to indicate that the Antichrist must be quite a 'charismatic speaker and leader' from the very start of The Great Tribulation, but must be an equally great **blasphemer** by the midpoint.

And besides this possible reference to the general 'charismatic character' of the Antichrist, we have distinguished another event that must take place in harmony with the revealing of The Mystery of Iniquity at the beginning of The Great Tribulation, which is perpetrated by this **little horn**, and that is this 'uprooting of three kingdoms' in the process of establishing the Antichrist Kingdom. And it should occur to you to consider whether this event takes place just before **he shall confirm the covenant with many for one week**, or just after. I mean the Antichrist, just before he makes this worldwide treaty, must be doing 'something' to prepare to eventually take over the World. Still, the main theme of **the mystery of iniquity** implies he won't be doing anything that could clearly identify him until he is **revealed** in a particular event at a particular time. And it must be just after we're gone, so we won't be able to witness it—at least directly. And I expect that something as earthshaking as the disappearance of a noticeable number of people—though it certainly won't be as many people as we could hope for—must somehow influence the revealing of this **mystery of iniquity**. A rapture will surely get everyone's attention whether the World is more or less

at peace or on the verge of World War III. But either way, a rapture would certainly give some pause for 'reevaluation', especially with the 'right man' available to lead this 'reevaluation'. A **man of sin** like this, with superior diplomatic skills that would enable him to negotiate an international peace treaty, would just as easily enable him to unexpectedly 'pluck up' authority in three kingdoms. So which comes first? Is pretribulation chaos transformed into peace and then back into chaos with the opening of The First Seal? Or does worldwide peace prevail when the Antichrist brokers his treaty, with the World then plunged into war? But more importantly for us at this point, this is another **exercise** using a few precepts more than we used last time. I mean we're really just working on one small part of the puzzle here. So for now we'll have to let our new questions stand. And you can expect we'll find many more pieces to fit together making many more perceptual connections about the Antichrist before we'll be able to see how these pieces fit in the whole picture.

For example, some think Paul, who originally provides us the expression **the mystery of iniquity** [2Thes 2:7](#), assures us that something else must happen before **that Wicked** Antichrist will **be revealed**. He says,

...that day shall not come, except there come a falling away first [2Thes 2:3](#).

This event is commonly called The Great Apostasy, and is believed by some to be a time just before The Rapture of the Church when many Christians will lose their faith. But Paul's wording here is confusing. So you have to 'keep your eye on the ball', and ask yourself the question, 'what day?' There is more than one mentioned here and it makes a difference what he means depending on what day he's talking about. We have already confirmed that The Spirit must be taken out of the way first and that this is what now "restrains" the Antichrist from being **revealed**, and that this necessitates The Rapture of the Church first because God promises he won't take out The Spirit without taking out the Church along with it.

One understandable mistake here is thinking that *that day* Paul is talking about is **the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ, and... our gathering together unto him** [2Thes 2:1](#), as if this is all just one day. But they are not. These are two days separated by seven years on either side of The Great Tribulation. Undoubtedly, **our gathering together unto him** is the pretribulation Rapture of the Church, and it's one of the days he's bringing to mind. But *that day* he is doing more explaining about in this chapter is **the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ** when indeed, before it, there must **come a falling away first**. Primarily, Paul is trying to comfort the Thessalonians that **the day of Christ** is not yet **at hand** [2Thes 2:2](#). But again, which **day of Christ**? To sort this out and reconcile Paul's statements with the rest of **scripture**, especially with the fact that Jesus will not return to Earth again until the end of The Great Tribulation, and thereafter establish his eternal kingdom on Earth beginning in The Millennium, I read here that **the day of Christ** is **the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ**, commonly called The Second Coming of Christ. This is when He will come, first of all, to destroy His enemies on Earth at Armageddon. And Paul confirms here what Jesus will do at His **coming** on *that day*. And it's not to meet the Church **in the air**.

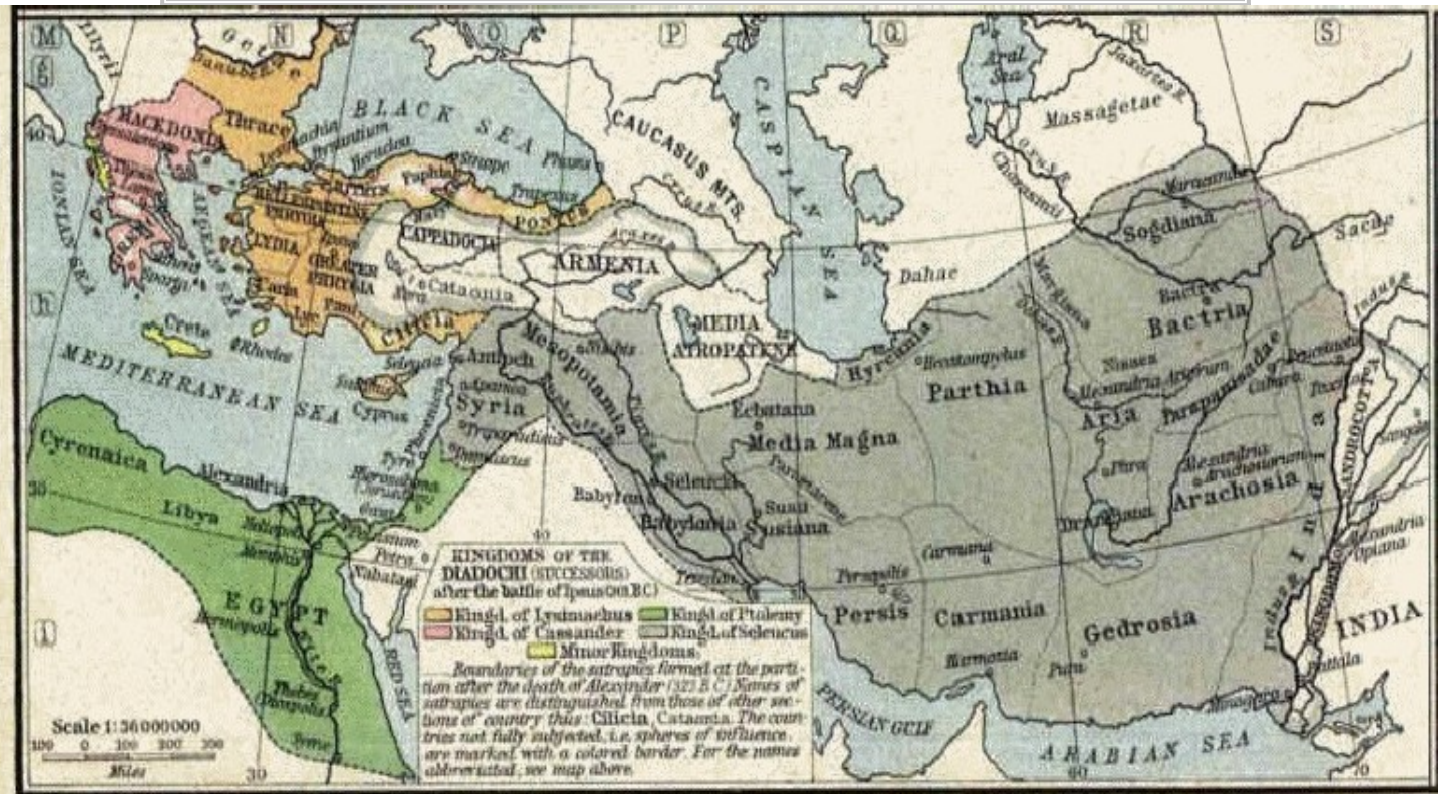
Evidently this doesn't count as His **coming** because He doesn't come down to Earth then. Instead, Paul explains that what The Lord will do at his second **coming** has to do with the Antichrist **whom the Lord shall consume with the spirit of his mouth, and shall destroy with the brightness of his coming** [2Thes 2:8](#). This is a clear reference to Armageddon.

So, *that day*, which is **the day of Christ**, must be The Second Coming of Christ to Armageddon, and this is therefore at the end of The Great Tribulation. So when Paul tells us that *that day shall not come, except there come a falling away first, and that man of sin be revealed, the son of perdition*, he is simply giving a general description of The Great Tribulation along with what starts it all off. When the Church disappears guess what will happen? Yes, this is the time of the greatest apostasy imaginable. This is when all true **believers**, including the most regular 'Church-going' Christians, will have disappeared, and only 'Church-players' who miss The Rapture will be left, however 'rededicated' a **few** of these **few** become after the fact. And this apostasy will certainly include a disheartening number of the 'candlestickless', 'mouth-sword-attacked', 'night-thief-robbed', 'tribulation-cast', and 'spewed-out' so-called 'Christians'. And if you don't recognize all these characters, you can read about them all in [Revelation 2-3](#). But what I mean is that with mostly only 'Church-players' remaining after The Rapture, the regular operations of **the churches** will fold overnight. But surely some of these former 'Church-players' will get it, because they will more or less **understand** what is happening and by that **revelation** immediately 'get right' with God again, but just a little too late to make The Rapture of the Church. But this is one of the bigger reasons why God will bring The Great Tribulation in the first place, to wake up those who will 'eternally benefit' from a 'firm shaking' of their World.

And this is what Paul is telling the Thessalonians in this passage. He's saying, 'Hey relax, the Church hasn't collapsed yet, has it?' More specifically, he's telling them that they haven't missed The Rapture because The Great Tribulation includes a great spiritual **falling away** due to The Spirit and the Church being **taken out of** Satan and the Antichrist's **way**, adding that this **falling away** starts when **that man of sin is revealed**. And Paul would **know** if The Spirit was gone, hence his confidence here to **comfort** the Thessalonians.

Sure, The Great Tribulation may begin with two 'apostasies'—one just before The Rapture and one just after. But the undeniably worse of the two will be after The Spirit and true Christians are gone, when **the mystery of iniquity is revealed**. And this **falling away** will last until *that day* when The Lord will **destroy** the Antichrist **with the brightness of his coming**. By-the-way, this is more evidence for a pretribulation rapture. And multiple **proofs** on important topics should be expected to be found along the way, like the **many infallible proofs** of The Lord's Resurrection. And as Paul has done in this case, and as he has previously told the Thessalonians, we should **prove all things** and **hold fast to that which is good** [1Thes 5:21](#).

MAP of Alexander the Great's Quartered Greek Empire



So it's time to 'signpost' again. Remember I said methodology is important. But it's more than important, isn't it. It's essential for reaching a mature **understanding of the truth**. And I mean studying God's Word must be done God's way. I also **believe** this means that you should not only **know** where you're coming from, but continually check where you're going, why you're going there, and how you're going to get there, at least as much you can. Up to this point we have distinguished many events and attributes of the Antichrist that must be **revealed** in harmony with the start of The Beginning of Sorrows, and more with the midpoint Abomination of Desolation at the outset of The Days of Vengeance. But most of our discussions of the events that signal the end of The Days of Vengeance, including Armageddon, are coming a few sections later. In the rest of this section, Daniel and John still have many more attributes of the Antichrist—both associated with The Beginning of Sorrows and The Days of Vengeance—that we will attempt to let them **reveal** and **interpret** for us. Others we'll do our best with ourselves—or with The Spirit's help, I should say.

And we **know** that clues to the character and origins of the Antichrist and his kingdom are **revealed** in the descriptions of the now **fallen** six spiritual **kings** and their kingdoms. And that, especially from the end of the Medo-Persian Empire on, the more recent 'secular historical record' is of some value

since The Old Testament record ends before the start of the Greek Empire, while The New Testament is recorded entirely within the period of the Roman Empire. So guided by **prophecy**, we will look into this period between The Old and New Testaments in order to see more clearly what we have to look forward to in the future. We will begin with a look at the [MAP of Alexander the Great's Quartered Greek Empire \(p.224\)](#). And we, including Gabriel the Archangel, various secular historians, and I, have much to say about the history of this region of the World that takes place between The Testaments. Take another deep breath. Here we go.

According to Daniel's **vision** and the **interpretation** of it given by Gabriel the Archangel in Daniel 8, the Antichrist will come from one of the four parts of the **broken** Greek Empire. This **vision** is also full of scripturally repeated attributes of both the Antichrist and of the Greek Empire's supreme human ruler, Alexander the Great. Daniel is shown that...

...the he goat [Greece] waxed [or became] very great: and when he was strong, the great horn [Alexander the Great] was broken; and for it came up four notable ones [Alexander's successors] toward the four winds of heaven. And out of one of them came forth a little horn [the Antichrist], which waxed exceeding great, toward the south, and toward the east, and toward the pleasant land [Israel]. And it waxed great, even to the host of heaven; and it cast down some of the host and of the stars to the ground, and stamped upon them [as a result of The War in Heaven?]. Yea, he [the Antichrist] magnified himself even to the prince of the host [Jesus], and by him the daily sacrifice was taken away, and the place of his [Jesus'] sanctuary was cast down [at The Abomination of Desolation]. And an host [or an army of 'covenant-breaking' Israelis and other Antichrist supporters] was given him against the daily sacrifice by reason of transgression, and it cast down the truth to the ground [—no 'lovers of the truth' here]; and it practised, and prospered [Dan 8:8-12](#).

This passage describes a period extending beyond the historical record of The Old Testament, where we'll find it helpful to consult the secular historical record to confirm fulfilled **prophecy**, except that the conclusion of it jumps to a time still to come, where our only option is to **rightly** interpret still unfulfilled **prophecy**. This jump in time, as expected, is where The Age of Grace fits. And our task is to further **prove** all this. But again the whole **study** is better **proof** than just the evidence of this section. And it will take the rest of this section and beyond, and lots more precepts, to adequately **prove** all those insertions I put into this **prophecy**. Read the passage one more time slowly to get better acquainted with it and we'll get started.

So with the help of prophetic **interpretation** and both Biblical and secular history we expect to find where a great **hidden** 'gap of time' would fit in this passage, say about the size of the ongoing Church Age, which should divide past and future periods. But in this case there appears to be more missing than just The Age of Grace. And of course this is no accident. What we will find is that the Roman Empire is also missing, because there's a jump from

Alexander's fifth 'world-ruling' kingdom to the Antichrist's seventh. We can deduce this because Daniel interprets for us that the...

...goat is the king of Grecia: and the great horn that is between his eyes is the first king [Alexander the Great, and that] **being broken** [or killed]... **four kingdoms shall stand up out of the nation, but not in his power**
[Dan 8:21-22](#).

It is historically uncontested that the empire that defeated the Persians, becoming one of the greatest empires of all time, was Alexander the Great's Greek Empire, and that after Alexander died (323 BC), his kingdom was eventually, in The Four Diadochi (or Successor) Wars (323-301), divided into **four kingdoms**. This division is shown in the [MAP of Alexander the Great's Quartered Greek Empire](#). And though Daniel **understood none of it** [Dan 8:27](#), he also prophesies about a **mighty** Antichrist, that **not by his own power** [Dan 8:24](#), but by Satan's of course, will arise **out of one of them**, or out of one of Alexander the Great's **four kingdoms**. This **little horn** is identified by overwhelming associations to be the Antichrist. But as usual I suspect that there may be some out-of-order 'layering' of the exploits of the Antichrist in this account, and there must be if God is hiding something according to plan.

As Daniel saw it, the Antichrist **cast down some of the host and of the stars to the ground, and stamped upon them** [Dan 8:10](#). This appears to be an event similar to one described in Revelation 12. This metaphor may be implying that that some of God's angels are going to be counted, at least temporarily, as 'missing in action' in The War in Heaven. And it seems to show that the human Antichrist gets powers that angel-princes have, who likely would be involved in The War in Heaven. But this seems also to indicate that the 'resurrection' and 'empowering' of the Antichrist comes even before The War in Heaven, before Satan is **cast out** of Heaven and **cast down** to Earth. We **know** that before this point Satan is able to 'go' **to and fro** and 'walk' **up and down** on the Earth and also **present** himself directly to God in Heaven before His Throne, all in order to 'accuse the brethren' ([Job 1:6-7](#); [2:1-3](#); [Rev 12:9-10](#)). But after this war he will no longer be able to accuse us before God—not to mention I expect he will lose all kinds of other 'privileges' that come with 'direct access to God'. So does this imply that God allows the 'resurrection' of the Antichrist before he throws Satan out of Heaven? Or are we seeing less a chronological description of an event and more a perspective that is stressing by metaphor that both Satan's activities in Heaven and the Antichrist's on Earth work together to wage The War in Heaven? The latter makes more sense to me, and leaves things in the order of [The Sweet and Sour 16 Midterm Events](#) too. But you should see here how the **interpretation** of one little detail can throw everything out of the order that you thought you had 'neatly tied up with a bow'. But whatever the case, we should notice that this 'rough and tumble' of the Antichrist's with the forces of God is accomplished **not by his own power**, as corroborated by Revelation 13. The idea seems to be that the Antichrist can do almost anything Satan can do, having access to Satan's **power**. Then again, a **righteous** human Christian can accomplish **much** along these lines by **faith** and **effectual**

fervent prayer too. So we should expect to some extent that this works for both sides, and in both cases with the help of angels as appropriate, as it's really all God's doing anyway.

And the case for a human Antichrist in both halves of The Great Tribulation seems to get more backing here when we notice that both the Antichrist and the obviously human Alexander the Great are identified in similar terms. They are each referred to as a **horn**. So they are both apparently mortal men. And this seems to hold even when descriptions of the Antichrist suggest his 'spiritually-empowered' activities of The Days of Vengeance where he and his supporters 'practice and prosper'. And we can also reinforce something else about the Antichrist here. Alexander is depicted as **the great horn**, while the Antichrist is shown as **a little horn**. This seems to again indicate that 'out-of-nowhere' perspective of his origins.

Also notice that Daniel sees this four-part Greek Empire directly followed by the Antichrist and his rule. No descriptions that could refer solely to the Roman Empire are seen in this **prophecy**. So we do not see the Antichrist here operating directly connected to and following the Roman Empire as in Chapters 2 and 7, and as we will see again in Chapter 11. Here in Chapter 8 we see instead a direct connection between the Greek and Antichrist Empires. And clearly there is one. The Antichrist is shown in this **vision** operating **in the latter time of their** [four-part Greek] **kingdom** [Dan 8:23](#). This must be precisely to emphasize the clear connection from the Antichrist Kingdom back to the divided Greek Empire. And the link is more specific. It is specifically between **one** of the **four** parts of the original Greek Empire and the Antichrist Kingdom.

But let's be careful, there may or may not be a connection here to the Antichrist's kingdom, but instead just to the Antichrist himself, because Daniel tells us simply that **out of one of them** the Antichrist **came forth**. I mean Hosea **prophesied** that Jesus is **called... out of Egypt**. And indeed He does come **out of Egypt** because He escapes there fleeing from Herod, and later returns after Herod is dead ([Mat 2:15](#); [Hosea 11:1](#)). But His Kingdom is never meant to be established in Egypt. The same may be true of the Antichrist here, or not. But we should keep our eyes and minds open to the possibility that the country that the Antichrist comes **out of** may or may not be where he establishes his kingdom.

And are there any other clues here? We **know**, as Daniel foresaw it, that apparently after The Antichrist came...

...out of one of them... [he] **waxed** [or became] **exceeding great, toward the south, and toward the east, and toward the pleasant land** [Israel] [Dan 8:9](#).

The **pleasant land** in God's perspective and by numerous references is Israel. A KJV concordance search of 'pleasant land' is sufficient **proof**. And from this we can deduce something quite startling. You might need to look at a World map to follow my reasoning here. This verse appears to confirm that whenever and wherever the Antichrist establishes his kingdom, it will expand **exceeding great** southward and eastward, **toward** Israel. This eliminates for me the possibility of The U.S. hosting the Antichrist Kingdom as some believe. Instead, it must be someplace more or less connectable to Israel.

Another popular candidate is the general area of ancient Babylon or Persia. But expanding **south** of this general region—or **south** of, say, present day Iran, Iraq, and Syria—you would only pick up Saudi Arabia and North Africa before you hit the Sahara Desert. And expanding **east** I guess if you could grab India, but the Antichrist will certainly not make it all the way to China because we will eventually see that China plays a late role in The Great Tribulation and will remain 'out of reach' and mostly 'out of sight' until then. No, a better direction to go from ancient Babylon or Persia would be north and west into Europe and Russia, wouldn't it? That would be the case if you expected to dominate the World starting from Southwest Asia.

But if you start from Europe—if you assume that the Antichrist gains his foothold in 10 European nations—he would naturally expand **south** and **east**, ultimately arriving in Israel with his armies to attack The Two Witnesses by the midpoint of The Great Tribulation. And this is really the only perspective that fits and makes sense if the intention is to gain control of **all the World**. In this way the Antichrist would pick up Israel in due course, due southeast of Europe, that is. And we'll see in [SECTION 9](#) that God pretty much takes care of Russia and the whole Muslim World so that the Antichrist will only have to mop up afterward at the midpoint. And we'll also see later the role The U.S. plays in this drama that keeps them, after a certain point, more or less 'out of this theater'. But the Antichrist himself may not originally come **out of** Europe, unless he comes from one of the European countries that was also part of the four-part Greek Empire, of which there are a few. But it appears that his original kingdom must begin with 10 European nations, because once he is seen to **subdue** these **ten**, Daniel's **vision** tells us that the Antichrist will most naturally expand his kingdom **toward the south, and toward the east, and toward the pleasant land** of Israel.

But because a few **kings in Persia** are mentioned in Daniel 10 and at the beginning of Chapter 11 too, some jump to the conclusion, with the encouragement of other debatable support we will cover eventually, that it is 'the Seleucid quarter', or **the Persians**, that will host the rise of the Antichrist. But the complete **understanding** of Daniel 10-12 you'll get from this **study** leaves this conclusion still to be accounted for at best. To start with, in Daniel 11 there are several kings of Greece and Rome equally identifiable. And their mention no more indicates that their empires will host the Antichrist Kingdom than the mention of **the Persians** do. Also the only king of the seventh 'world-ruling' empire, the Antichrist, gets most of the attention in this **prophecy**. And what we **learn** about him in this chapter won't really steer us toward seeing Persia as the host for his kingdom either. Also I will be able to satisfactorily **prove** that the Antichrist is **revealed** much earlier in the chapter than is more commonly 'taught'.

So this conclusion that the Antichrist and his kingdom will arise in 'Persia' that is somehow drawn from Daniel 8, 10, and 11—drawn from the fact that the Antichrist must come from **one** of the **four** Greek kingdoms, and drawn from Prince Michael's contention with the spiritual **prince of Persia** in Chapter 10, and drawn from the mention of the last four human **kings of Persia** in Chapter 11, or from any other supposed connection to it—we are about to completely dispel. There is no conclusive basis for this assumption, even considering current World affairs, that I can account for. But we will do some accounting. And I expect that this accounting—if you have ever

considered these chapters before—has far more 'basis' than you have ever considered before.

And you will then be able to recognize those who are 'in a fog' when interpreting these chapters, who mistakenly think they **understand** a few details in them and from them try to 'construct the whole'—while often sporting an embarrassing amount of confidence in their conclusions besides—and who come to their conclusions, embarrassingly enough, really only because 'representatives' of the Medo-Persian Empire, both spiritual and human, are identifiable in a passage where they are also able to identify the Antichrist. This is similar to and as embarrassing as how different Christians see by too few details The Rapture of the Church before, or in the middle of, or at the end of The Great Tribulation, or even believe that we are already somehow 2000 years into 'the middle' of Jesus' 1000-year reign. And I have more respect for those that cannot at all identify The Rapture of the Church in **scripture** and believe it's more likely a myth than I do for those who with too few precepts 'etch doctrine in stone', and as if speaking for God.

And I should disclose that I have only recently come to an arguably complete **understanding** of Chapter 11. But if I haven't really come to the correct one, then I should bring to everyone's attention the still-standing **instruction** given to Daniel to **shut up the words, and seal the book, even to the time of the end** [Dan 12:4](#). I mean if I'm wrong, as far as I can see this order must still be in effect, because the time of the end, however close, cannot yet fully be here until Daniel 11 is 'opened'. This is because this verse in Daniel 12 refers directly back to all of Daniel 10-11. So if any part of Daniel 10-12 isn't open, we've not yet fully come **to the time of the end**. But you are about to see why I think we've finally arrived.

Nonetheless and whatever the case, this **study** has shown itself to be on a **path to prove** that there is just one Rapture of the Church, and that it can be proven that it will take place before the start of a coming 7-year Tribulation by identifying all the other raptures too, along with many other precepts necessary to fully **prove** it. And there are a lot of them. So this **study** moves beyond the level of maturity, at least in **prophecy**, of those who can't—or shouldn't—confidently place The Rapture. These are good qualifications to have when trying to identify the Antichrist, or 'open' a passage God has heretofore 'sealed' **to the time of the end**.

Still, the only credit due me is that by **patience** and **faith** I climbed upon the shoulders of those that went before me and **continued** to look wherever and whenever I was directed by The Spirit. That's all. And I say this for those who already appreciate the significance of this **revelation**—I mean the **revelation** of seeing Chapter 11 fully 'opened'—because I **know** that men of God have sought it for many generations now. But don't worry if like some of us you haven't been puzzling over this your whole life. I have and I will be working to get you ready to **understand** it all as we go, not that some of you won't need to review the previous sections, and this one too a few times, before you get up to speed with the more regular 'handlers' of The Word. And I mean that the rest of this section will be among the most difficult sections to 'swallow' for beginners. And you may have noticed that I am no longer babysitting you anymore with those subsection summaries that simply outline what I'm about to tell you. But we should all be regularly reviewing our **knowledge** in The Word of God in order to **grow** in it, shouldn't we? We

should. And it's intentional that the style of this **study** may continue to provoke you, because I am just as interested in trying to give you an **experience** that simulates growing in The Word as I am **teaching** it to you. And I mean that beginners won't get it all without being able to 'swallow' a 'full course' of **patience, faith, and diligence**, and all with a 'heavy portion' of 'repetitious continuance'. So **eat** up! And as for you **teachers**, you should **know** that you will not be able to retain it all without these things either. Or maybe this has been a **revelation** to some of you too.

In the rest of this section we will also find that the insights that have helped us situate the raptures we have placed so far will also be helpful in unraveling the identity of the Antichrist and his kingdom, and Daniel 11 too. And we will **continue** not only expecting to expose misconceptions about the Antichrist, neither just to find more attributes of his, but also to find attributes few at best have yet recognized are his. This is because misconceptions and oversights have caused these attributes to be supposed to belong to someone else. (However 'supposed' is too kind a word in some cases.) There are indeed a lot of misconceptions, misidentifications, and misunderstandings to sort out. This will involve a process wherein we must identify the Antichrist by distinguishing him from all of the other characters in this chapter. Yes, I said all. Any less leaves **the book** still at least somewhat **shut up**. And yes, time for another deep breath.

Daniel 10 sets the scene for Daniel 11. We find in Chapter 10 that Daniel's **revelations** come by an angel that I presume to be Prince Gabriel. **Gabriel** [Dan 8:15-16](#), [9:21](#) is specifically identified two other times to Daniel serving the similar function of the one who shows Daniel prophetic **truth** [Dan 10:21](#). And though he's referred to in one place as **the man Gabriel**, he is referred to repeatedly by Luke doing the same work as **the angel Gabriel** [Luke 1:19](#), [26](#), and in all circumstances, including when in a **vision**, he is much more likely **the appearance of a man** only. And sorry, he's not described in any of these appearances as 'sporting wings'. And I **believe** one unidentified description of him—again apparently without 'wings'—is found in [Dan 10:5-6](#). I believe it's **Gabriel** here because this angel tells Daniel that his only support comes from **Michael your prince** ([Dan 10:12-21](#)) who apparently has freed Gabriel—with the help of Daniel's 3 weeks of fasting and '**effectual fervent prayer**'—to deliver this **truth**. This **truth** about the remainder of the 'world-ruling' kingdoms starting with the decline of Medo-Persia, though purposefully mysterious in presentation, and though **Satan** and his **princes** really fought hard to keep it from being delivered, is Gabriel's most abundant in supply, and begins in Chapter 11 and continues through Chapter 12.

The first misconception-misidentification-misunderstanding we need to dispense with concerns **Darius the Mede** [Dan 11:1](#), and it's a mess. And so much so that a little more than your usual **patience** may be required to unravel it. Secular historians should be considered unable to fully resolve these kinds of issues without Daniel and Gabriel's **truth** to help them, as secular sources surely are biased, contain misunderstandings, and a variety of other kinds or errors—some of which are just as surely part of Satan's **devices** to mislead us. And Christians are sometimes little better, as I was when I first read this **prophecy** decades ago.

According to Daniel, this king **Darius the Median took the** [Babylonian] **kingdom, being about threescore and two** [62] **years old** [Dan 5:31](#) in

order to become the first Medo-Persian ruler. Daniel says he is responsible for killing **king Belshazzar**. And we **know** that the father of **Belshazzar** is **Nebuchadnezzar** [II] [Dan 5:1-2](#). Historians not only generally get this wrong, they argue over their different popular versions of their errors. The most popular identification for 'Belshazzar' is the son of Nabonidus and the second most popular is Nabonidus himself, but both of these are the wrong guys.

By-the-way, if you think that Christians lose their faith by going to 'Bible colleges' that offer the 'study' of psychology or evolution—let alone schools in general—I think you're right. But you may not have considered that Christians can lose their faith by the 'study' of 'popular history' just as easily, because in this discipline The Bible is also commonly portrayed as 'irrelevant', or at least frequently 'erroneous'. But of course it's the other way around with all of man's 'disciplines'. So here's a version of the story that is certainly no more ridiculous than the popular ones which are admittedly full of contradictions and disagreements, except my version conforms to the **truth** as Daniel and Gabriel present it.

It is **Nebuchadnezzar's** father, Nebopolazzar, in an alliance with King Cyaxares of the Medes, an alliance formalized when his daughter Amytis marries **Nebuchadnezzar**, that sacks the great city Nineveh of the Assyrians (612 BC) that effectively ends the already failing Assyrian World domination and marks the beginning of Babylonian domination that would continue only through the lives of Nebopolazzar's son, **Nebuchadnezzar**, and his grandson, **Belshazzar**. After a war with Lydia (present day Turkey), another alliance is formalized when Cyaxares' son **Darius** marries King Croesus of Lydia's sister Aryenis. But because of Cyaxares' earlier death, Nebopolazzar becomes the supreme ruler of this three way alliance, and **Nebuchadnezzar** after him. And this **Darius** of Daniel 5 and 11, son of Cyaxares the Median, married to Aryenis of Lydia, originally an ally of Babylon through his sister Amytis' marriage to **Nebuchadnezzar** (who, by-the-way, is said to have built for Amytis the famous 'hanging gardens'), and referred to in my encyclopedia as Astyages (and several other names in different languages, etc., as most these characters are), yes, this **Darius** ultimately takes control of the empire from Nebuchadnezzar's son **Belshazzar** (560 BC) as described in [Dan 5:30-31](#). Did you get all that? Go through this paragraph as many times as you need to until you do.

My encyclopedia adds that it was Nebuchadnezzar's son-in-law, Neriglissar, who actually kills **Belshazzar** and is given 'governorship' of Babylon, but Daniel's record makes clear that Neriglissar must be, from this point, under **Darius** (or Astyages). And Neriglissar being Nebuchadnezzar's son-in-law probably means that he is a son of **Darius** (or Astyages), making it also likely he is under his father's control at this point.

It can also be calculated and inferred by combining information from my encyclopedia and Daniel's account that **Darius** is about 37 when his rule begins over the Medes when his father Cyaxares dies, because **Daniel** records that **Darius** is 62 when he has **Belshazzar** killed. Now I say his rule over the Medes begins when he is 37, but this would be during the time of Nebuchadnezzar's father's rule, so I presume at this time **Darius** would be made 'the second ruler in the kingdom', and that he still is when Belshazzar's supreme rule begins, at least until **Darius** finally has him killed.

And I would guess that this is why when Daniel interprets 'the hand writing on the wall', that Belshazzar can only show his appreciation to Daniel by offering him the title of **the third ruler in the kingdom** [Dan 5:7](#), because the second position is still being spoken for by **Darius** (or Astyages). But even this may have been a snub to both **Darius** and to Croesus of Lydia because of **Darius'** royal Lydian wife, Aryenis. I mean that Croesus should have been considered **third ruler** and Daniel no better than fourth. Still, some argue that this title Daniel is given is because of the 'Nabonidus/Belshazzar co-regency', and that the king of Lydia is not a consideration at all. Let's talk next about why this is a non-issue.

So my encyclopedia has it all wrong on the one important character in this story, and probably so does yours, whichever one it is. The historical character that I identify as **Belshazzar**, that fits this story and Daniel and Gabriel's account, is Evil-merodach or Amel-Marduk, the immediate successor of Nebuchadnezzar who rules less than three years, and was said to be killed by Nebuchadnezzar's son-in-law, likely **Darius'** son too, Neriglissar. But our two more popular candidates—both identified as 'Belshazzar'—'ruled' after Neriglissar. This would be in a period when these two 'Belshazzars' are only over 'Babylon' because they are also at this time still under the control of the Medo-Persian Empire. They are the provincial rulers of Babylon during the transition from the initial period of Median dominance under **Darius** (or Astyages) to the following period of Persian dominance under **Cyrus**.

And again yes, there is a disagreement as to which of these two 'Belshazzars' is actually 'the right one', Nabonidus or his son 'Belshazzar'. My encyclopedia identifies the father, Nabonidus, as possibly the Biblical 'Belshazzar', and his son 'Belshazzar' as 'a possibly more likely candidate'. This father and son were admittedly "co-regents" over Babylon at the time they are 'arrested' by **Cyrus the Persian**, and at a time when **Cyrus** had already deposed his grandfather **Darius the Median** (or Astyages) a decade earlier. This 'arrest' of these 'Belshazzar's' is popularly considered the end of the Babylonian Empire. But really it should be considered the conclusion of the decade-long shift of dominance in the Medo-Persian Empire from Median to Persian.

And this historically misplaced Nabonidus and his son are not even necessarily killed when they are caught, as **Cyrus** is famous for not killing the 'kings' he conquers. By-the-way, King Croesus of Lydia by this time, by some accounts, would have still been an advisor to **Cyrus**, or he may have already died by others, as **Cyrus** also earlier defeats Croesus in his war of retribution against **Cyrus** for defeating his brother-in-law **Darius**. So whether or not this is a real case of **Cyrus'** benevolence with Nabonidus and his son, it shows that Croesus remained strongly allied with **Darius** through his sister's marriage to him, and according to Daniel also necessarily subservient to him, as **Cyrus** had been until he deposed **Darius** in 550 BC.

This all goes to show that it must instead have been **Darius the Median** [who] **took the kingdom** of Babylon at age 62 and in 560 BC, and who, with the help of his subservient son or ally Neriglissar, had **Belshazzar** (or Amel-Marduk) **slain** [Dan 5:30-31](#). It's a decade later that **Darius** is deposed by his grandson **Cyrus** (in 550), and another decade after that when most historians would say the other two 'Belshazzars' are removed from power (in 539). So neither Nabonidus nor his son 'Belshazzar' could be Daniel's **Belshazzar**.

Daniel's man must be the one historians refer to as Amel-Marduk.

I should clarify that the reason my encyclopedia and historians in general think that either Nabonidus or his son is the Biblical Belshazzar is because they think that they're the last rulers of Babylon, not Amel-Marduk. In a sense they are right because **Cyrus** arrests these "co-regents" ending any further disobedient 'Babylonian rule'. But these disobedient Babylonians are also likely relatives and allies of **Darius**. They ascend to power in a short line following **Darius'** man or son Neriglissar. So **Cyrus the Persian** may never have had to bring them into line if they had freely allied themselves with him after he deposes **Darius**.

And most convincing of all, Daniel makes clear that it's **Darius the Median** that is responsible for **Belshazzar's** assassination, not **Cyrus the Persian**. Considering all this, **Cyrus** should be seen to be chastening his disobedient Babylon province in 539 BC—not conquering Babylon. And he should be seen to be finishing the 'shifting' of the Medo-Person Empire from Median to Persian control that began when he defeated **Darius** in 550. And **Darius** should be seen as the one who originally establishes the Median-controlled period of this empire when he has **Belshazzar** (or Amel-Marduk) killed in 560. And all this should be interpreted this way because it matches God's perspective of the **truth** recorded by **Daniel**. Draw your own timeline to help you **understand** this chain of events if it will help you.

And it's true that **Belshazzar's** (or Amel-Marduk's) rule over the end of the Babylonian Empire is followed by Neriglissar's rule over the 'Babylonian province' of the new Medo-Persian Empire under **Darius**. And when Neriglissar dies after a 6-year 'rule', and when his son is too young to hold onto this 'sub-kingdom', this son's assassination leads to the provincial reign of Nabonidus. My encyclopedia tells me Nabonidus' origins are unknown, but it does report that he marries Nitocris, who was also the daughter of **Nebuchadnezzar** and the widow of Neriglissar, in order to substantiate his 'rule'. This widow of Neriglissar, I suppose, is chosen by **Darius** for Neriglissar, whoever she is, to strengthen his control over Babylon or over his Medo-Persian Empire in general. Fifth century BC historian, Herodotus, however, tells a story of a Babylonian queen named Nitocris who makes a fool of **Darius**. The story goes that she builds her tomb with an inscription on it that provokes **Darius** to open it, wherein he is chastised by an interior inscription about his greed. If this story is true, it's not inconsistent with Daniel's account, but is evidence that Nitocris is obviously not what Darius had hoped for in a wife for Neriglissar. By-the-way, most of these stories I am telling so far are originally derived from Herodotus if not **scripture**, and if not the 'misunderstandings' of more modern, 'Bible-ignoring' historians.

So, Amel-Marduk is the Biblical **Belshazzar**. And Astyages is our **Darius**. Daniel assures us of it. And by-the-way, these are only some of the types of problems that make the 'classic chronology' of history so untrustworthy, especially further back in the Egyptian Empire. And hey, if 'popular history' offers us such horrendous mistakes as these, and mainly because 'historians' won't take the Biblical account seriously—and by-the-way, this too often includes 'historians' at 'Bible Colleges'—you would think that they've made some other major mistakes. And you'd be right. This is why I like the largely unpopular work of a Jew who helped found Hebrew University in Jerusalem, the late Immanuel Velikovsky. His first works revealing some major 'historical

reinterpretation' began coming out in about 1950. And this work is part of the background for this **study**. And I hope to incorporate a lot of his work in *The Ages of Creation study* too. All he did was treat The Bible as fairly as any other historical record. The point for now is that you might now better appreciate that the dates in this **study** are used for the purposes of discussion. They are useful for sequence and 'ballpark relativity' for the most part. But they come from a popularly-agreed-upon chronology that is provably increasingly inaccurate the further back you go, because the majority of its 'backers' ignore or discount The Bible

So again, contrary to some 'facts of history', Daniel establishes that **Belshazzar** (or Amel-Marduk) was **that night... slain** when **Darius the Median** (or Astyages) is **about threescore and two years old** or 62. But there's more we can deduce from this, because there is both further historical evidence in favor of the Biblical case and further contrary 'facts of history' to expose. We can establish that **Cyrus** could not be the one who 'deposes' the Biblical **Belshazzar** because **Cyrus** is born in either 576 or 590 BC—they're not sure which—and since **Cyrus** is said to have 'deposed' Nabonidus and his son in 539. [Audio error in last sentence - **Cyrus** mistakenly read **Darius**.] I mean we can calculate that **Cyrus** punishes the disobedient Babylonian province, and removes from power the two 'Belshazzars', either at the age of 37 or 51, not 62.

Again, the reason why 'historians' have made these 'mistakes' is that they do not **know** or accept Daniels' contribution to history who tells us that the **kingdom** that **the most high God gave Nebuchadnezzar** is the **kingdom** that He later decrees by a 'hand writing on the wall' to be **divided, and given to the Medes and Persians**, and that it's **Darius the Median** who is to be the one who takes control of this new 'world-ruling' Medo-Persian Empire at age 62 in about 560 BC by having **Nebuchadnezzar's** son **Belshazzar** (or Amel-Marduk) killed, so that in the 10 years that follow—up to 550 BC—when **Darius** falls to **Cyrus the Persian**, 'historians' also 'misunderstand', as Daniel assures us, that there has been Median-dominated Medo-Persian control over the World—not Babylonian—until **Cyrus** 'shifts' that domination into the hands of the Persians. And you should **know** by now I'm repeating these details so many times for the **exercise**, and so you'll be ready to **handle** even more, because there is a lot more to the story than this. So let's do this part of the story one more time another way. And you'll need to prepare yourself to finally have to 'choose sides' too.

Compartmentalization is not allowed in this **study**. Still, it nonetheless happens when conflicting 'compartments' of information from different areas, whether from **scripture** or secular history, are overlooked or forgotten. And sometimes in this **study** it will happen on purpose for your **exercise** and **experience**, and I call this a 'wild goose chase'. But I don't mean to let you off the hook, especially now when you're at a point where you must either discount The Bible as full of errors, or do the same with secular history. I mean either The Bible is so bad it can't even get a king's name, nationality, or even his age right when he takes over an empire, or the problem lies with secular history. And you must 'shrug off' my so far relatively fully resolved version of history that requires a little help from The Bible, and you must follow the crowd and the popular version, though admittedly full of

contradiction, if you're ever going to trust popular history over **scripture** again. And I mean this is a big step out of the World. Remember I said, "follow me as long as you will"? This should be a turning point for some. My encyclopedia sees the Median and Persian Empires as separate. Daniel speaks of them as one Empire together. The age of **Darius the Median** when he kills **Belshazzar** in Daniel 5 fits the reign of Astyages the Median when he has Amel-Marduk killed, the real last ruler of the Babylonian Empire. And the 'deposal' of Astyages by his Persian grandson, Cyrus II the Great, about ten years later, who continues the Medo-Persian Empire under Persian control, also fits what we find in Daniel 10 and 11. But my encyclopedia insists that the end of the Babylonian Empire occurs even another ten year later and under one of a couple of other guys who were likely arrested and probably never executed, and their arrests are made by a Persian named **Cyrus** instead of a Mede named **Darius**. So you can't put your faith in popular history anymore if you're going to go any further with me in your **understanding** of God's Word.

Still, by cautious examination we have extracted some useful information from the 'secular record' to help us better **understand** the meaning of **scripture**, and we can have other use for it if we are careful not to let it contradict **scripture**. In other words, we must 'pick and choose' in all sources and disciplines except God's **pure words** [Psa 12:6](#). And **scripture** is indeed helpful for correcting secular history as Immanuel Velikovsky painstakingly proves. Velikovsky also show us—though less wittingly—how history can clarify **scripture**. But again, though we can allow history to clarify **scripture**, we must be very careful never to allow history to correct **scripture**. I'll show you more of what I mean by this a little later.

And by-the-way, **Cyrus** and **Darius'** story is an interesting one in itself. It's kind of like 'Oedipus meets Titus Andronicus'—Oedipus being that king who gains his throne by 'deposing' his father who had originally tried to kill him in his infancy, and Titus being that Roman who feeds his enemy his son. But I'll spare you those gory details.

Finally then—and thanks for that extra **patience**—we **know** that **Darius** is Astyages, and we are ready to ask why this **Median** king is mentioned again in [Daniel 11](#), supposedly during the reign of **Cyrus**, and at a time when Daniel is about to tell us about the four last **kings in Persia**. Inattentive Christians, as I used to be, do not notice that **Darius** is only mentioned here by Gabriel because he wants us to **understand** that just as **Darius** had received Gabriel's 'support' from his **first year** [Daniel 11:1](#), so **Cyrus king of Persia** [Dan 10:1](#) receives his support from his first year too, and is still receiving it at the time of this **prophecy**. This simply gives a 'glimpse' through the 'dark glass' at God's side of this ongoing spiritual battle. Gabriel testifies and implies at the beginning of the chapter simply that he will, **Also** ['stand to confirm and strengthen' **Cyrus king of Persia** as he with] **Darius the Mede... stood to confirm and to strengthen him**. Still the mention of **Darius** at the beginning of Chapter 11 can be misleading. I mean you will be immediately off course if you think that this **prophecy** is from his reign. And this mistake is easy to make because it's back at the beginning of Chapter 10 where we confirm that this **prophecy** we are about to interpret is given, **In the third year of Cyrus king of Persia**. So please **understand** that **Darius** is only mentioned at the beginning of Chapter 11 because he got

the same 'angelic support' that **Cyrus** is also getting at the time of this **prophecy**. And **understand** that it's **Cyrus**, surely Cyrus II the Great, who is ruling at the time of this particularly 'very hard-fought' visitation from Gabriel.

And it's this **Cyrus king of Persia** who 'finagles' domination away from his grandfather, **Darius the Median** or Astyages, who is the brother-in-law to both King Croesus of Lydia and **Nebuchadnezzar** of Babylon. And this fits because Gabriel speaks of **Darius** in the past tense here as having **stood...** [with] **...him**, indicating that he was the 'world-ruling' Medo-Persian king that preceded **Cyrus**. So Gabriel's 'angelic support' of **Darius the Median** and later his equal support of **Cyrus king of Persia** show us from God's perspective his treatment of the Medo-Persian Empire as a single 'world-dominating monarchy'.

But we can also **understand** here that we can only **now see** [Gabriel's spiritual world] **though a glass, darkly** [1Cor 13:12](#). So no wonder 'scholars' who reject The Bible out of hand are completely blind to this perspective. Most historians don't see the 'world-ruling' influence of Babylon and Medo-Persia as portrayed by Daniel. That's their problem. But we're not done with their errors and confusion yet either. Next we'll unravel some confusion and mystery added by Darius I the Great. He's a king of the same name as **Darius the Median**, except Darius I the Great is a different later Persian king that reigned at the height of the Medo-Persian Empire—or as popular historians divide it, the Achaemenid Persian Empire. 'Darius I' is one of the four **kings of Persia** following **Cyrus**, whose dominions we will get to **know** better next.

So moving on in Chapter 11, the first thing Gabriel prophesies to Daniel is that there are **yet** four remaining obviously human **kings of Persia** still to come to power over the Medo-Persian Empire following **Cyrus**. This shouldn't be too startling for **Cyrus** assuming he actually pays any attention to it at all. All he really has to do if he wants his empire to last longer is make sure the information is passed on to future kings **yet** to arise that they may take on **Cyrus'** title of 'Shah of Persia', and they may aspire also to add 'Pharaoh of Egypt', or even the then popular title, 'King of the Countries', but that whatever they do they must not aim to add to those titles, 'King of Greece'. The reason being that this prophet **Daniel**, who with God's help interprets people's dreams even before they tell them to him (Chapter 2), prophesies here that the dominance of the Medo-Persian Empire would officially end when the **fourth** of the **yet** remaining **kings of Persia** was in power, and when...

...by his strength through his riches he shall stir up all against the realm of Grecia [Dan 11:2](#).

In other words, the warning that **Cyrus** should see getting to this **fourth** king of Persia should be, 'whatever you do, don't attack Greece'. But this **fourth** king, evidently Xerxes I the Great—the one portrayed with all his elephants and armies attacking Greece in the movie, **300**—who is the first to have any success at all in attacking mainland Greece, obviously 'doesn't get the memo', or ignores it, because eventually this is exactly what happens—The Medo-Persian Empire ultimately falls because they attack Greece.

And it's historically accurate to say of Xerxes that **by his strength**

through his riches he [does] **stir up all against the realm of Grecia.**

And that the fall of the Persians begins after **his** initial success in attacking the Greeks. Maybe Xerxes exhaustive and extraordinary preparations for the conquest of Greece indicate that he does **know** of the **prophecy**, or maybe there is some record of his knowledge of it I am unaware of. Whatever the case, the failed efforts of both Darius I and his son Xerxes are said to have encouraged the Greeks to believe that the Persians aren't all that, well, great. And though they are clearly, as portrayed by Daniel, the unrivaled 'world-ruling' kingdom at least up through Xerxes' reign, by the time Alexander comes on the scene, they grow comparatively weak and corrupt.

By-the-way, Xerxes is believed to be **king Ahasuerus**, Esther's husband from The Book of [Esther](#). But **Darius** is also identified as **the son of Ahasuerus** in [Daniel 9:1](#). This is the kind of confusion Velikovsky was good at sorting out. I mean whether this is just one person or really two people from two different generations. And I'm not sure, but I am sure that Velikovsky proved that popular historians are often pretty lousy at sorting out this kind of confusion. And I'm sure about the identities of all of these, according to Gabriel, last four **kings of Persia**, including about Darius I and his son Xerxes I, as they are undoubtedly the third and **the fourth** of these 'following four kings'.

The reign of **Cyrus**, who 'reconsolidates' Media, Lydia, and Babylon under Persia, is followed by the short 6-to-7-year reign of his son Cambyses II, who naturally turns south and conquers Egypt. And besides this 'claim to fame', Cambyses also has a 'claim to infamy' in that he is said to have lost a 50,000 man army in a desert sandstorm on one of his failed attempts to conquer deeper into Egypt. And on his way back to kill his brother Smerdis (or Bardiya), because he is afraid Smerdis is trying to usurp the throne while he is gone, Cambyses dies, maybe killing himself over his despair over losing his kingdom to his more popular brother, or possibly by accident as also reported. Then again, how could Cambyses who is thought to be a tyrant compete with his brother Smerdis who suspends taxes?

Anyway, Smerdis reigns only 6 or 7 months and is killed by Darius I the Great. This new Darius says, conveniently enough, that the real Smerdis had been killed by Cambyses three years earlier and that the sitting king was an imposter—a magician named Gaumata. However some admit, as with many of these 'historical facts', that this might be a lie on Darius' part in order to usurp power. My vote is that Darius is a liar.

This is to avoid even more confusion about whether we're really one king short. But the question comes again, who are you going to believe, Darius I or Gabriel? Of course it could be argued, imposter or not, he was still the king for a short time. And after all, Darius I had to marry **Cyrus'** daughter to legitimize his reign as he unquestionably was not **Cyrus'** son, though possibly a nephew.

Darius I pushed further north beyond Lydia into Asia but eventually got lost in present day Ukraine. Then a revolt broke out in Ionia (Eastern Turkey), and the



Greeks helped the Ionian insurgents being connected to them from across the [Aegean Sea](#) (satellite photo, [p.236](#)), which led to, after the revolt was put down by Darius I, a punitive attack by him on the Greeks. This first attack was immediately stopped at Marathon (490 BC), made famous by the long run of the messenger who ran from there to Athens to give them the news. Darius died in the preparation for another campaign against Greece, leaving the job to his son, Xerxes, **the fourth** king since **Cyrus**.

So later, just following the events at Thermopylae—that famous narrow pass in Greece portrayed in the movie **300**—Xerxes continues on to sack a largely deserted Athens. It was empty because when the Athenian Navy is near the same time fighting Persia's at Artemisium, a cape of Greece's western province of Euboea on the Aegean Sea—an indecisive battle due to bad weather—they got news of the Spartans' heroic but doomed three day stand against Xerxes' vastly overwhelming army at Thermopylae, causing the Athenian Navy to retreat around to the Isthmus of Corinth in Greece's southern Saronic Gulf to assist in the evacuation of Athens and establish a last line of defense with the Spartans.

The next month, on September 29, 480 BC, the Greeks defeated the Persian navy at the Battle of Salamis, a small island in the Saronic Gulf near Athens, and less than a year later they defeated the Persians at Plataea in the province of Boeotia on the Gulf of Corinth, and at Mycale on the eastern shores of present day Turkey across the Aegean Sea, both victories over Xerxes coming on the same day, which Daniel implies marks the beginning of the decline and fall of The Medo-Persian Empire, and the rise of Greece. However it would be almost a century and a half later until the Athenians, who never really thereafter got along with the Spartans, would be able to consolidate **Grecia** and conquer **Persia** under Alexander. And I see this version agreeing with **Gabriel** anyway, and for the most part in this case with my encyclopedia too.

Gabriel follows the description of this **fourth** of the Persian **kings** with a clear description of Alexander the Great's Greek Empire, with its subsequent four divided kingdoms his 'generals' establish after his death, and their subsequent lesser dominions, **prophesying**,

...a mighty king shall stand up, that shall rule with great dominion, and do according to his will. And when he shall stand up, his kingdom shall be broken, and shall be divided toward the four winds of heaven [as similarly described in [Dan 8:21-22](#)]; and not to his posterity, nor according to his dominion which he ruled: for his kingdom shall be plucked up, even for others beside those [Dan 11:3-4](#).

And my encyclopedia, and more importantly Daniel, tell us next that one of these 'generals' and his kingdom, for over the next nearly 300 years, dominates this broken Greek Empire until it's finally totally overrun by Rome. This would be **the king of the south... and the land of Egypt**.

So here's how I see it. God has designed Verses 5-35 to be the most difficult and disputable passage of prophetic **scripture** to **interpret** of all. But as with the last four **kings of Persia** above, I see my version as the least disputable and likely by far the most complete of any other version you've

heard before because every verse will be reconciled not only with this studies broad view of all **scripture**, but also appropriately connected to a reasonable version of history in the process. And I am talking about the reconciliation of all **scripture**—Genesis to Revelation—though such a thorough treatment will require additional **study** beyond this one.

Nonetheless and however abbreviated, this handing of the remainder of Daniel 11 and 12 will be complete enough to stand as proof of the **interpretation** I shall render here, so God has helped me. My contradiction-free, verse-by-verse-resolved **interpretation**, and the decades of **exercise** that led to it, are the foundations of my confidence that I speak for God. Still and again, whoever **rightly** reconciles the most precepts should have the best, and still growing, version of the **truth**. Yes, this **interpretation** of mine, because it was given to me by God, will still **grow**, because corrections will still be needed to refine it, and finer insights added as time goes by. In point of fact, part of my **interpretation** is due to recent archeological discovery. But predominantly, this **interpretation** comes from **disciples** who have taught me, whose earlier **interpretation** I have **learned**, making it possible for me to expose some more errors, and making possible the further refined **interpretation** that I am now by God able to present. But since all **scripture** must ultimately be brought into the **understanding** of each **precept**, this is not a task we will quickly complete. This is simply a more advanced **exercise** in point, but nonetheless a complete **interpretation** of Daniel 10-12, and the 'opening', as far as I **know**, of heretofore 'closed' portions of this **prophecy**.

By my reckoning it has taken a little more than a century and a half altogether to completely 'open' this **prophecy**, or about the same amount of time that it took for the transition from the height of the Medo-Persian Empire to the height of the Greek Empire. But Gabriel seems to repeatedly imply that the 150-year transition he speaks of is a rather 'immediate' transition. So I expect that from God's perspective that both of these transitions are really equally 'immediate'. We'll talk more about this now finished transition period to **the time of the end** before we close this section.

Continuing then, **precept upon precept**, we **know** at this point we are talking about 'world-ruling' kingdoms. We skipped that 'mess' where Egypt gives way to Assyria, but I will, God willing, cover it in [The Ages of Creation study](#). But we did overview how Assyria falls to Babylon, Babylon to Medo-Persia, and we just covered in the first few verses of Daniel 11 (and in Chapter 8) how Medo-Persia gives way to Greece. So we should expect to see next in Chapter 11 how Greece gives way to Rome, and then the place where The Age of Grace fits before the Antichrist Kingdom appears.

And we should also expect a different particular focus than in Chapter 8. This focus will no longer be on a connection between the divided Greek and Antichrist Empires, nor even so much that he will come out of one of the four kingdoms of Alexander's generals. We should instead expect new and additional connections, this time probably directly to Rome. In Chapter 11 we will see that the post-Alexander divided Greek Empire initiates an international struggle that continues throughout this empire. And we will also see that after this empire is finally 'quelled' by Rome, and lies dormant throughout most of The Age of Grace, the same struggle resumes again 'under new management' during the Antichrist Empire. This multi-age

struggle is described by Gabriel to be a conflict between the kings **of the north** and the kings **of the south**. So any particular **king of the north** from this point on could be Macedonian, Thracian, or Lydian (roughly including present day Greece, Macedonia, Bulgaria, and Western Turkey), or possibly Persian, but eventually Roman, and ultimately clearly the Antichrist himself, while every **king of the south** is, as repeatedly identified in the chapter, of **Egypt**, who will ultimately contend again with our final **king of the north**, the Antichrist. But a lot of you won't fully **understand** this paragraph until your second or third time through this section.

The general story line **revealed** by Gabriel from this point on requires that the kings **of the south** must first subjugate the kings **of the north** until finally the kings **of the north** end up dominating. Again, this is not only what Gabriel tells us, but also what my encyclopedia tells me happens between the death of Alexander and the rise of the Roman Empire. This period of the divided Greek Empire is commonly referred to as The Hellenistic Period or Civilization. And another look at the [MAP of Alexander the Great's Quartered Greek Empire \(p.224\)](#) would be in order.

Now the specific identities of each '**king**', '**kingdom**', '**dominion**', '**agreement**', '**daughter**', '**army**', '**multitude**', and all the '**sons**', '**forces**', '**captives**', '**robbers**', etc., in [Verses 5-20](#), existing apparently before and up to the beginning of the Roman Empire, are identifications I am now confident enough to make for God. And equipped with all the 'skills' that we've **learned** so far, we are ready to proceed. I see Verses 5 and 6 as a layered summary of the significant kings of the beginning, middle, and end of The Hellenistic Period, and Verses 7-12 as 'layering' more detail of this story about the eventful beginning and middle part of this period introduced in Verse 5, while Verses 13-20 show the fall of Hellenistic Civilization and the rise of the Roman Republic and the Roman Empire, adding to Verse 6. And between Verses 20 and 21 fits the remainder of the hidden period of the Roman Empire, part of the hidden ongoing Age of Grace. And Verse 21 begins the descriptions of the Antichrist and his kingdom. But I will be more specific.

Jesus told us to **watch** the **end** coming. It therefore stands to reason that if we're **diligent** about it we can then begin to trust that we **understand** what we see. This is one of the steps to **interpretation**. I have been using it all along, but I expect we need it more in Daniel 11 than anywhere else. One possible exception is that we will also depend on it greatly to ultimately identify the Antichrist and the False Prophet and their 'kingdom'. And you would think that looking back to identify fulfilled **prophecy** should be easier than looking ahead to the yet unfulfilled, but often this is not the case because of the hidden gaps in The Old Testament, and because of the layering that is so common in **scripture**, but especially because of the scattering of important 'connecting details' all over The Bible, all consistent with God's purpose to hide or disguise 'meatier' **truth** from 'plain view' because of those who would otherwise more readily misuse it. Of course this is another way we can also confirm that there is just **one God** behind it all. You **know**, the **one** who have their act together.

And surely this is part of the reason why Jesus says, **continue in my word...** [in order to]... **know the truth**. And this is why I couldn't help from trying—if you haven't noticed—to discourage the insincere from following me

up to this point, using **exercise, precept upon precept, line upon line, here a little, and there a little**, to wear them down, because, according to Isaiah, there is no question that in doing so, **they would not hear**, even though, **This is the rest [for] the weary... and the refreshing** [Isa 28:9-13](#). And I can also not help trying to build you up in this same way so that you will be able to **hear**. And so that when we sort through this 'layering' and 'scattering' of precepts we will be able to find the 'gap', if we are also simultaneously ready to receive and connect necessary clarifying **scripture** from all over The Bible, and as long as we keep an eye on the character changes and other transitions. Ready? Deep breath. And by-the way, you're on your own for the deep breaths from now on.

In [Verse 5](#), I **believe** we see the Greek Ptolemaic Dynasty of Egypt that rose after the division of Alexander's kingdom in the beginning of The Hellenistic Period. Here Gabriel tells us,

And the king of the south shall be strong, and one of his princes; and he shall be strong above him, and have dominion; his dominion shall be a great dominion [Dan 11:5](#).

So, following Alexander we should expect that his general who gains control over the southern kingdom of Egypt **shall be strong**, or become notably the strongest of the four, but further that **one of his princes** [likely one of his sons]... **shall be strong above him, and have dominion...** [and that] **his dominion shall be a great dominion**.

Nevertheless, we would not expect this dominion to last beyond the establishment of Rome's. Neither would we expect that it's quite the 'world-ruling' variety, and not just because as promised in Verse 4 that it's **not... according to** [Alexander's] **dominion**, but also because, in and of itself, it should not be counted as one of the **seven heads** and **kingdoms**, because it is, however dominant, only part of this four-part 'world-ruling' kingdom.

Still, it is apparently one of the Greek general's sons that is characterized to have this **great dominion** while ruling from Egypt. His is not a kingdom so much of Egypt, but simply in Egypt, being the strongest of the **four** Greek **kingdoms** that arise out of Alexander's Empire. And the other Greek generals of The Diadochi Wars (or 'successor wars'), and their sons, will have their parts in the remaining three lesser Greek kingdoms. So what follows Alexander, and presumably the events of Verse 4, is a period when the Greek Empire is dominated from Alexandria, Egypt in a time when the Great Library of Alexandria is built, and Greek culture dominates Egypt. And this culture also dominates in the other three kingdoms, and, according to Daniel and Gabriel, the rest of the World. But Daniel is only shown the Greek Empire comprised of **four kingdoms** in Chapter 8. In Chapter 11 he is about to show us that the southern king in Egypt—who, again, is 'Greek'—will ultimately dominate the other three, though not quite rule this empire. But we will also see that there are really only two contenders to power out of these **four kingdoms**. They are repeatedly identified in Daniel 11 as **the king of the north** and **the king of the south**. But there are many of these kings and different kingdoms involved, though all occurring in generally the same geographical areas. Our task is to identify them all. We can also determine

that **the king of the south** was last 'subjugated' by Rome. And this is when **the king of the north** begins to dominate **the king of the south**. And we will see that the Antichrist cannot 'come forth' from the southern kingdom, as he will ultimately be seen to contend with it. And it now seems unlikely, viewing the current state of affairs, that the future and last **king of the south** will still be 'Greek'. But we will be able to see strong clues supporting the current state of affairs late in Chapter 11 and elsewhere in **scripture**.

It also remains to be determined which of the three eligible 'Greek' kingdoms the Antichrist will come **out of** [Dan 8:9](#). And it remains to be determined if this is the same kingdom from which he will **subdue** [the first] **three kings** of his ten-kinged kingdom [Dan 7:24](#), or if he simply comes **out of** one of these 'Greek' kingdoms in order to establish his empire in another region. And hey, if these questions have never occurred to you before, believe me, you're not that close to being able to **understand** God's **truth** about this subject (see [Dan 9:13](#)). But be **patient**, we'll get there.

And this brings us to one more important reemphasis. It should not be considered strange that the Greek Empire is dominated, for the most part, from Egypt, any more than it will be strange for the Antichrist to repeatedly shift his headquarters during The Great Tribulation, and possibly seize power in a country not of his own origin. Whatever the case, we will see that he 'camps' many **places** to rule from, but will ultimately **plant** himself and his **palace** in Jerusalem.

So this first **king of the south** who 'plants himself' in Egypt would be Alexander's former 'general' Ptolemy, who becomes Ptolemy I Soter (The Savior), Pharaoh of Egypt, self-declared in 304 BC, nearly two decades after Alexander's Death in 323 BC. These two decades contained most of the Four Diadochi Wars that culminate in The Battle of Ipsus in 301 BC. After this battle and the defeat of Antigonus I Monophthalmus (The One-eyed, because he lost an eye), the remaining **diadochi** (or 'generals') agree to a partition of Alexander's holdings into four kingdoms. This is to include the kingdom of 'general' Cassander of (western) Macedon including present day Greece and Macedonia, and the kingdom of Lysimachus of (eastern) Macedon, Thrace, and Lydia including present day Bulgaria and Western Turkey, and the kingdom of Seleucus I Nicator (The Victor) over what becomes known as the Seleucid Kingdom that includes roughly Eastern Turkey, Syria, Iraq, Iran, Afghanistan, and Pakistan, and finally the kingdom of Ptolemy I Soter of Egypt.

Ptolemy I and **his prince** would be this former 'general' and his grandson, Ptolemy III Euergetes (The Benefactor), who is the second to succeed him. These two are the ones mentioned by Gabriel in [Verse 5](#) who begin the dominance from Egypt that lasts for the most part of the next nearly 300 years starting after Alexander and continuing to the death of Antony and Cleopatra. Historians would probably quibble over Ptolemy I's dominance. Indeed, he did not so much hold the kingdomwide dominance that he repeatedly gains and loses throughout his reign, but he more sets the stage by establishing a strong, prosperous, and most importantly, stable kingdom, which his son maintains and improves, so his grandson can use it to increase his dominance over the other three. And Ptolemy I often stays out of the ongoing early struggles of the other three kings, allowing them to fight it out,

which weakens them, while he grows stronger.

Ptolemy I's son, Ptolemy II Philadelphus (The Loving Brother), who rules next is said to have been no warrior, though he gains control of the entire Eastern Mediterranean region, and then loses some of it, in The First and Second Syrian Wars (in the 270's and 250's). And indeed he is more interested in the improvements he makes to the Great Library in Alexandria his father had founded, and his court is sometimes compared with Versailles during the rule of Louis XIV (the 14th) of France. Ptolemy II is known for strengthening and improving compatibility between the then 'cohabitating' Hellenic and Egyptian cultures during his reign. This would prove an important contribution to the long term strength and stability of the kingdom, but eventually factor into its demise.

But the **great dominion** over the rest of the Greek Empire was reached by his son Ptolemy III Euergetes (The Benefactor). He pressed the coastline of the Greek Macedon Kingdom (present day Greece) to its northern coasts on the Aegean Sea, and similarly pressed the Greek Seleucid Kingdom (formerly Medo-Persia), briefly occupying their seat of power at Antioch and advancing as far inland as Babylon. The evidence that supports that Ptolemy III's campaign reached as far inland as Nebuchadnezzar's former city comes from the 'newly discovered' archeological evidence I mentioned earlier. According to my encyclopedia, the evidence was relatively recently discovered in some cuneiform writing. And this campaign of Ptolemy III against the then newly in power Seleucus II, and known as The Third Syrian War (or The Laodicean War - 246-241 BC), is apparently described by Gabriel in [Daniel 11:7-9](#). And there is no more details given from this point on about Ptolemy I, but Gabriel does give further details of the exploits of **his sons**, but he gets to these details after he finishes summarizing the concluding details of this dominant southern kingdom in Verse 6.

We can see we are jumping ahead in time in [Verse 6](#), though continuing the summary started in Verse 5. It begins with, **And in the end of years...** This seems to be an important marker, but it's not as important as it appears, as we can now **understand** what Gabriel means. But certainly everyone before The Age of Grace and even up to **the time of the end** are sure to be misled—which in Satan's case, because it's part of what causes him to 'orchestrate' the crucifixion of Christ, is a good thing. Being unable to see the missing gap of time due to The Age of Grace which includes most of the period that the Roman Empire will '**bear rule over all the earth**', this **end of years** is easily mistaken as the same or very near the same period as **the time of the end** which is mentioned repeatedly in Daniel 8, 11, and 12. But it is not.

Up until now, we have been tempted here by Gabriel to draw a close connection from these **end of years** to **the time of the end**, and assume that they both speak of a time just before the emergence of the Antichrist Empire and so on. But this we can now see would be a mistake. Even though we've jumped to **the end** of this story of the Greek Empire here, it merely appears to be near **the time of the end** because of what Daniel is allowed to be shown. I mean he cannot be shown very much of the Roman Empire, because not much of it transpires before the start of The Age of Grace. And as he can only see Rome directly connected to the Antichrist Kingdom, **the end of years** of the Greek Empire must appear here to be very close **to the**

end of time to him, and to anyone else not seeing this missing 'gap' in time. We indeed must hold to the **understanding** that Gabriel is showing Daniel a future story as if The Age of Grace will not exist if we are to **understand** this **prophecy** at all.

So we should expect to see here, as Daniel does, **the end** of Greek dominance and the rise of Rome as both unavoidably close to **the time of the end**. Without this **understanding** we are no better off than someone who is 'poking around in the dark'. And even this **light of understanding** does not make it easy to find one's way around in this 'puzzling maze' of **scripture**. This is because, besides the hiding of The Age of Grace, Gabriel has so frequently 'layered' the events in this passage—or mixed up the events contained in it—so that sorting them out is even more difficult than finding the 'gap', but at the same time dependant upon doing just that. These problems are compounded by the fact that God has well **hidden** from us the bulk of the missing time that the Roman Empire **'shall bear rule over all the earth'**, and all the rest of this for that matter, until relatively recently. And unfortunately, this is not the end of the problems. There are also serious 'differences' in the modern translations, some of which can lead you in the wrong direction. But we will sort all of this out. The important thing we need to **understand to continue** is that we can now **know** for sure that Gabriel is really just talking about **the end** of the Greek Empire in Verse 6. We can tell this is the case because those events have now been history for over two millennia. And some have already recognized Antony and Cleopatra in this verse, which is part of the story told in it. However even this is a misidentification as far as I've seen. I mean I see the need for 'dramatic corrections' to the way I have heard this story told. And hopefully you'll at least eventually see how this pun is intended.

So getting back on track with Gabriel, we're about to be shown here the summary of the fall of the Greek Empire, the central figure in this 'collapse' being Cleopatra VII Thea Philopator (The Goddess of Fatherly Love). Other key players evidently identified here are Julius Caesar, Mark Antony, and more indirectly, Octavian, who becomes Caesar Augustus. Gabriel summarizes their future relationships saying,

...in the end of years [of the Greek Empire] they shall join themselves together; for the king's daughter of the south shall come to the king of the north to make an agreement: but she shall not retain the power of the arm; neither shall he stand, nor his arm: but she shall be given up, and they that brought her, and he that begat her, and he that strengthened her in these times [Dan 11:6](#).

Again, I should make clear that I am probably about to interpret this verse differently than you've heard it before. This passage is often said to be talking about 'Antony and Cleopatra', but I see that perspective as 'out of focus' because the **agreement** here, when **they shall join themselves together** [and] **the king's daughter of the south shall come to the king of the north**, is not between Antony and Cleopatra, nor does this **agreement** even indirectly involve Octavian, ultimately Caesar Augustus, but it instead must be between Julius Caesar and Cleopatra if the rest is to tie

together.

As Julius Caesar brings the Roman Republic to its height and prepares the way for the start of the Roman Empire as arguably its first Caesar, he chases one of his final adversaries, Pompey Magnus (The Great), a member of the First Triumvirate (meaning, 'the rule of three men'), to Egypt where it's rumored that somehow Cleopatra helps him kill Pompey to leverage her control of Egypt. But more popularly, she is said to be in exile at this time over her rivalry for power with her younger brother and his regent—the senior statesman, and usually a relative, that really runs things. And it's this little brother, Ptolemy XIII Theos Philopator (The God of Fatherly Love), with the assistance of his acting regent Pothinus, who get the direct credit for killing arguably the greatest conqueror in Rome ever, Pompey.

But Ptolemy XIII and his regent's intended act of support for Julius is said to only upset Julius and bring him to tears. They present to Julius what he must see as less the decapitated head of an enemy and more the murdered remains of his son-in-law by his only beloved daughter Julia, and an assassinated consul of Rome besides. And however Pompey dies, when Cleopatra thereafter presents herself to Julius by having herself rolled up in a Persian rug that is rolled out for him, nine months later she has a child that she says is his. At this point Julius Caesar defeats Cleopatra's brother's forces and establishes her as supreme ruler over Egypt (along with her even younger brother), and thereafter she visits Julius in Rome repeatedly, until he is assassinated. Thereafter she allies herself with Mark Antony. Then, Antony and Octavian (later Caesar Augustus) are the two chief rivals of the Second Triumvirate that arise in the struggle for power after Julius Caesar's death.

So in [Verse 6](#) it fits in harmony with Gabriel's account that,

...in the end of years [at the end of The Greek Empire] ***they*** [Julius Caesar and Cleopatra] ***shall join themselves together; for the king's daughter of the south*** [Cleopatra] ***shall come to the king of the north*** [Julius Caesar] ***to make an agreement...***

And it also follows that even though this ***king's daughter***, Cleopatra, is given control of Egypt by ***the king of the north***, Julius Caesar, ***she shall not retain the power of the arm***, nor will she ***retain*** ultimate control. It can be ***understood*** that she doesn't ***retain the power*** because Julius Caesar really keeps that, but she surely doesn't when she ultimately loses power after Julius' death, when despite Antony's help, Octavian's forces defeat both Antony's and Cleopatra's. But it also fits concerning Julius that ***neither shall he stand, nor his arm*** as he is assassinated, and Rome reverts again to a republic under a new triumvirate for a short time.

This is followed by a list of those that ***shall be given up*** in this process starting with Cleopatra herself. Her realization of the lost of support from Antony causes her to kill herself. Connected to this are ***they that brought her***, which in this case must be Cleopatra's two constantly attending handmaidens, who famously 'give themselves up'



or commit suicide at the same time she does. Also in agreement is the fact that Cleopatra's reign actually begins, though later interrupted by her little brother, when **he that begat her**, her father Ptolemy XII Auletes (The Flute Player), makes her coregent with him in the last years of his reign. But his support of her ends when he falls sick and dies.

And finally we get to the only possible direct mention of Mark Antony in this verse as **he that strengthened her**. Antony does 'strengthen her' until his defeat by Octavian at The Battle of Actium on the **Ionian Sea** (map, [p.243](#)), between Southern Italy and Greece, in 31 BC. She and Antony are then chased to Egypt where he loses all hope when he is misinformed of Cleopatra's death and kills himself, her hope and life surrendered

shortly thereafter. And this pretty much clears the table of Julius Caesar, Mark Antony, and Cleopatra. Julius Caesar's assassination leads to a chain of events where the rest are **given up** in Octavian's, or thereafter Caesar Augustus', rise to power. And these same events precipitate the fall of the fourth and last part of Alexander's Greek Empire, and the unrivaled dominance of the Roman Empire. But all this is not derived from just the summary in Verses 5 and 6. Gabriel backtracks in Verses 7-20 to give us much more detail of this story, starting again with Ptolemy III. But first let's consider some more supporting background.

By the 270's BC, the struggles between the three other Greek kingdoms—other than Ptolemy I's—lead to the disappearance of one of the kingdoms. This would be the kingdom of Lysimachus of Macedon, Thrace, and Lydia (present day Bulgaria and Western Turkey). His kingdom is split up and comes under the finally stabilized control of the united Macedon Kingdom (present day Greece and Macedonia which picks up Bulgaria) and the Seleucid Kingdom (of Persia, etc., which picks up the remainder of Turkey) leaving, including the southern Ptolemaic Kingdom, only three remaining competing Greek kingdoms.

And the period before 270 BC makes sense of the additional tidbit of Gabriel's generalization in Verse 4 about the disposition of Alexander's Empire, that...

...his kingdom shall be plucked up, even for others beside those [four kings] [Dan 11:4](#).

This may include the marauding Gauls from present day France, but more surely the successes of Pyrrhus, king of Epirus, a kingdom that occupies a small portion of present day western Greece and Albania, and maybe also even some early struggles with Rome herself because she indeed provides regular aggravation, especially with the neighboring Macedon Empire as long as it lasts. These outside antagonists also add to the ongoing intrigue and struggles among the three remaining dynasties of the Hellenistic kingdoms

themselves. And it's interesting to note that General Lysimachus and his kingdom, though it failed first, could be considered responsible before it did for insuring that Alexander's kingdom is not reunited under Antigonus I Monophthalmus (The One-Eyed) because Lysimachus is instrumental in Antigonus' defeat in The Battle of Ipsus in 301 BC, and Antigonus' descendents in turn are transplanted to serve as kings (The Antigonid Dynasty) in the Macedon Kingdom for the better part of that empire. Remember, these Hellenistic dynasties are all to some degree interrelated 'Greek-ruled' kingdoms, and there is a good degree of intermarrying by the royal families to make alliances, and 'kingdom-hopping' by royal family members in search of 'greener pastures' especially early on.

In the 240's, Ptolemy III wins the farthest reaching war—all the way to Babylon—of the Hellenistic Period, The Third Syrian War, and the period of the Ptolemaic Kingdom's clear dominance begins.

In 168 BC, the Macedon Kingdom falls to Rome in the Battle of Pydna leaving two Greek kingdoms. But this is also the year Antiochus IV Epiphanes (The Shining One) of the Seleucid Kingdom all but conquers Egypt for a second time in The Sixth Syrian War in 171-168 BC. But the kingdom of Antiochus is the next to go because by 64 BC, at a time when The Seleucid Dynasty is confined to little more than their seat at Antioch, finally Pompey converts the remainder of their holdings to Roman provinces, except for some regions that are allowed to become Roman client nations, like Judea, who continue under local Roman-appointed kings.

It could be said, however, that the decline of the Seleucid Kingdom begins in 168 BC when the Romans 'draw a line in the sand' that Antiochus IV cannot cross during his second campaign in Egypt. The story goes that when he successfully reinvades and again pushes back Ptolemy VI and his brother all the way to Alexandria, a consul and envoy sent from Rome famously draws a circle around him in the sand and tells him he has to decide whether he will withdraw from Egypt before leaving the circle. Antiochus predictably decides to withdraw. And a few years later he sacrifices a pig in The Jerusalem Temple to insult the Jews and is as a result defeated by them in the beginnings of The Maccabean Revolt. Antiochus dies either on his way to attack and reconquer the Jews, or possibly on a concurrent campaign against the Parthians to the north of the Seleucid Kingdom. Whatever the case, he fails in both endeavors.

And it's also noteworthy that as early as The Fifth Syrian War, 202-198 BC, though in it the Ptolemaic Kingdom loses all its northern holdings, Rome is already then strong enough to 'forbid' both Antiochus III and Philip V of Macedon from conspiring further against Egypt as it is Rome's source of grain. So the fall of the Seleucid Kingdom leaves only the Ptolemaic Kingdom remaining to stand against Rome. Mostly this 'strongest' Greek kingdom in these late stages of The Hellenistic Period outlasts the others by cooperating with, submitting to, and paying off Rome. But they do make a last defiant stand after all the others are already gone. It ends with Cleopatra's death in 30 BC, leaving Rome as the unrivaled hegemonic power for the next several hundred years into The Age of Grace.

This background is meant to help us see that it must be Ptolemy III reappearing in this next more detailed account of the story in Verses 7-9

which will help to illuminate some finer points of his **great dominion** introduced in Verse 5. And He would qualify as **out of a branch of her roots**, if Gabriel in this case means he is an ancestor of Cleopatra VII. And besides, which other **king of the south** accomplishes all this? I mean Gabriel says he...

...shall come with an army, and shall enter into the fortress of the king of the north, and shall deal against them, and shall prevail: And shall also carry captives into Egypt their gods, with their princes, and with their precious vessels of silver and of gold; and he shall continue more years than the king of the north [Dan 11:7-8](#).

This **king of the south** here is confirmed to be in **Egypt**. So the question restated is, when if ever does any **king of... Egypt** trounce so successfully any **king of the north**? This could only be The Third Syrian War won by Ptolemy III Euergetes, (The Benefactor). Again, Ptolemy III is reported to have penetrated all the way to the City of Babylon while retaining a longstanding foothold in the port of Antioch, Seleucia Pieria, and for the most part successfully sweeping the majority of the coasts of Asia Minor (Turkey) and Greece from the Aegean Sea. And he would surely have brought home with him quite a booty including **their gods** [or the 'statues' thereof], **with their princes** [some of them probably his relatives], and **with their precious vessels of silver and of gold**.

Ptolemy III's attack was the result of competition over ascension to the Seleucid throne after Antiochus II's death that resulted in the murder of Ptolemy III's sister and his nephew—a couple of those 'kingdom-hoppers'—who are one of the parties competing in the line for the Seleucid throne. The other party, Seleucid II and his mother, get the throne by killing their rivals, and they manage to evade Ptolemy III during his rampage of revenge, and escape deep into the eastern part of his kingdom (beyond Babylon), where Seleucid II dies in 225 BC. Still, Gabriel assures us that Ptolemy III was able to capture other **princes** of the Seleucid Kingdom and bring them home with him, along with the riches still there in a region that once contained the glory of Solomon's Jerusalem, Sennacherib's Nineveh, and Nebuchadnezzar's Babylon, not to mention the considerable confiscations of Seleucid I Nicator who greatly expanded the original Seleucid Kingdom. And Ptolemy III is indeed seen to **continue more years than the king of the north**. He lives about four years longer dying in 221.

[Verse 9](#) is the conclusion of Ptolemy III's story. It makes sense too because after The Third Syrian War, early in his reign, he is said to **return to his own land** and have no more inclination to engage actively in war, nor any need. At this point, the Ptolemaic Kingdom is at its height, and higher than any other Hellenistic kingdom reaches, fulfilling Verses 5 and 7-9.

The next layer of the story in [Verse 10](#) again reverts to another overview that appropriately and generally describes Ptolemy I's **sons** and their exploits in the first four Syrian Wars. In these wars these **sons** are described as being **stirred up** [to] **assemble a multitude of great forces**. But of the six wars between the Ptolemaic and Seleucid Kingdoms—known as The Syrian Wars—this verse particularly characterizes the biggest battle of them all, The Fourth

Syrian War (219-217 BC), involving Ptolemy III's son, Ptolemy IV Philopater (The Loving Father), and Seleucus II's grandson, Antiochus III The Great.

Certainly Ptolemy II, victor of The First Syrian War, and Ptolemy III, victor of The Third Syrian or Laodicean War, and Ptolemy IV, victor of The Fourth Syrian War easily fit the description of the **sons** of Ptolemy I who **stirred up** such **great forces** to such great victories. But it's only *one* of these **sons** that...

...shall certainly come, and overflow, and pass through: then shall he return, and be stirred up, even to his fortress... [Dan 11:10](#)

This most fittingly refers to Ptolemy IV. Here's why. Although the Ptolemaic Kingdom is said to begin its decline under Ptolemy IV's reign, and though his overly youthful contributions are considered inconsequential to detrimental, his minister Sosibius recruits for him an army that for the first time includes a large faction of Egyptian natives added to the usual local Greeks. And this army is able to defeat Antiochus III allowing Ptolemy IV to retain most of what his father had won.

Ptolemy IV's victory comes in the epic Battle of Raphia near present day Rafah in the Gaza Strip, also known as The Battle of Gaza. It's the biggest battle since The Battle of Ipsus that creates the four Greek kingdoms almost a century before. In this concluding battle of The Fourth Syrian War, Ptolemy IV has 70,000 infantry, 6,000 cavalry, and 73 probably African war elephants. Antiochus III has 62,000 infantry, 6,000 cavalry, and 103 probably larger Asian elephants. Historians record that it was Ptolemy who was the one to **overflow, and pass through**, largely due to the tens of thousands of Egyptian native soldiers in his service, who in their rectangular 'phalanx' formation break or **pass through** Antiochus' infantry and win the day. But there later develops an apparent consequence to this 'unconventionally-manned' force. Historians speculate that these same native Egyptians are responsible for The Egyptian Revolt in Egypt that follows The Fourth Syrian War. And Ptolemy IV isn't able to quickly put it down. It takes him decades (until around 185 BC), and obviously at the cost of tens of thousands in Egypt. This is why it is accurate to say that Ptolemy IV first successfully **stirred up** his forces against the Seleucid Kingdom, but **then shall he return, and be stirred up, even to his fortress**.

After this general overview we would again expect more specific details, this time about Ptolemy IV's reign and The Fourth Syrian War, which is exactly what I see in [Verses 11-12](#)...

And the king of the south [now Ptolemy IV] shall be moved with choler [angry], and shall come forth and fight with him, even with the king of the north [now Antiochus III]; and he [Antiochus] shall set forth a great multitude [62,000 infantry, 6,000 cavalry and 103 war elephants]; but the multitude shall be given into his [Ptolemy's 70,000 infantry, 6,000 cavalry and 73 war elephant fortified] hand. And when he [Ptolemy] hath taken away the multitude [of Antiochus], his heart shall be lifted up; and he

shall cast down many ten thousands: but he shall not be strengthened by it.

Again, this appears to be another round of more detailed elaboration following the overview from Verse 10. We **know** whose multitude **shall be given into** whose hand. It's Antiochus' **into** Ptolemy's. And we **know** whose **heart shall be lifted up**—Ptolemy's. And it's even easy to see that after Ptolemy has **taken away** a multitude, and after **he shall cast down many ten thousands**, why he would **not be strengthened by it**. It's because these **many ten thousands** are rebels in his own kingdom that must be **cast down**. And once more my encyclopedia seems to explain and corroborate these events that Gabriel predicts. And historians also verify that it's 'all downhill' from here on for both The Seleucid and Ptolemaic Kingdoms because of the rise of Rome, as we will see Gabriel also makes clear.

By-the-way, Antiochus III outlives Ptolemy IV—distinguishing these two from Ptolemy III who is **prophesied** to outlive Seleucus II and does. And Antiochus III's longevity gives him the time he needs to recover from The Fourth Syrian War. So much so that he ultimately gains the title Antiochus III The Great, because he is able, after the death of Ptolemy IV, to recover most of the original territory of the Seleucid Kingdom held by its original ruler, Seleucus I Nicator, before losing some of it again to the rising Roman Republic, fulfilling the **prophecy** in [Verses 13-15](#).

Next, I admit that I expect to squeeze, however good the fit, the remaining two of The Six Syrian Wars and the rise of Rome into Verses 13-20. In case you haven't noticed, every **king of the north** so far has been from the Greek Seleucid Dynasty of the Greek Seleucid Kingdom. But somewhere in Verses 13-20 I might expect **the king of the north** to become Roman, possibly starting right in Verse 13—which could imply the omission of any description of The Fifth or Sixth Syrian War. But instead I expect that if any **king of the north** is found at all in Verses 16-20, he is Roman, and that there is no more mention of a Seleucid **king of the north** after Verse 15. In fact there is only one more specific use of the terms **the king of the north** remaining, and that's in Verse 40, which we will confirm, as already popularly believed, is the Antichrist.

And this brings us to one of our translation problems that we'll need to sort out. If it's appropriate to translate, (as only a few modern translations do), this "**he**" in Verse 16 as "the king of the north", then **he** represents a different kingdom in the north, and obviously Rome. But I see this transition of kingdoms as beginning after the description of the Seleucid Kingdom's final campaigns against Egypt including at least the two successful campaigns in The Sixth Syrian War, if not also implying The Fifth Syrian War. But I also expect that these Seleucid Kingdom triumphs are rendered moot because of **he that cometh against him**, evidently some human Roman **prince**. And this is how we see that **the king of the north** changes kingdoms.

And this means that all the conflicts between any particular **king of the north** with any particular **king of the south** up to Verse 16 are between the Hellenistic Seleucid and Ptolemaic Dynasties, while beyond this point I see a shorter but eventful history of the conflicts between Rome and the Ptolemaic Kingdom that finally expands the original overview of these events from Verse 6, including a brief 'ruler-based' description of the rise of The Roman

Empire that is interrupted where The Age of Grace fits, leaving after that—to finish out the chapter—only the descriptions of the final **north-south** conflict during The Great Tribulation between the Antichrist Kingdom somewhere in the north, and a new Egypt-based kingdom in the south—presently mostly under Sunni Muslim influence.

And there's a couple more things before we go on. 'Keep your eye on the ball'. God does. God must always have his eye on his **glorious land** and on his **glorious holy mountains** [Dan 11:16, 41, 45](#) which are in Israel. And what else in the World would God be focused on during this period of history than the 'world-ruling-class tug-of-war' centered over Israel, which are The Six Syrian Wars. So in this **prophecy**, Gabriel is adding to our perspective of the **four kingdoms** of Greece from Chapter 8, that two of these 'sub-kingdoms' are really the center of the battle for the control of this kingdom as a whole. I mean he tells us that the Antichrist comes **out of** one of these **four**, but in Chapter 11 he seems also to be hinting that it's really **out of** just one of these two, and that it cannot be Egypt, because Egypt is clearly destined to fight against the Antichrist's 'northern kingdom'. But there are other questions still standing. Does the Antichrist originate from and take over the same former Greek 'sub-kingdom', or does he originate from one of them and take over some other kingdom altogether? Before we're done we'll **know** the answers to these questions.

But some of you have been misled about Antiochus IV Epiphanes (The Shining One). And it's OK with me if you imagine him covered with pig grease, because the popular misinterpretation about him is that this **prophecy** predicts his historical role as 'The Temple pig-sacrificer'. And if this is what you think, you should prepare yourself for serious embarrassment. And the worst of this embarrassment will come when you find out who started this rumor and why. But you will also have to come to accept that this Jerusalem Temple defiler has a much more limited role and deserves much less attention in this **prophecy** than he's been getting. And hopefully you don't have any of those unreasonable attachments to such interpretations, because the verses he's implicated in are by no means about him being a damned Temple pig-sacrificer. And sorry, the pun was unavoidable... OK, OK, I'm not really sorry. We'll find Mr. Grease-ball's place in Verses 13 and 15, but certainly not in Verse 31, etc.

So how do I squeeze The Fifth and Sixth Syrian Wars in Verses 13-15? It's not so hard. Gabriel tells us that Verse 13 takes place a little later in time, **after certain years**. And he tells us that at this time...

...the king of the north shall return with a great army and with much riches [Verse 13](#)

So **after certain years** he **shall return** to retaliate against **the king of the south** because of the outcome of The Fourth Syrian War. The fact that he has **a great army... with much riches** probably speaks to the successes of Antiochus IV's father, Antiochus III The Great, both in the Fifth Syrian War (around 200 BC) when he captures all of Ptolemy V's northern possessions, and to his successful re-expansion of his own kingdom, except near the end when he loses some back to Rome. And opportunities against Egypt become ripe after Ptolemy IV dies, when the child Ptolemy V assumes the throne amid

the chaos of the power struggle to control him [Verse 14](#)—which I'll elaborate on some more in a little bit. But Antiochus III dies in the backlash to his late Roman losses when he fails to hold onto the rebelling outer reaches of his kingdom. However one of his sons, Mr. Greaseball, I mean Antiochus IV, obviously this **king of the north** in Verse 13, sees the opportunities that are possible **with a great army and with much riches** left behind by his father Antiochus III. And he acquires these resources because he is able to usurp control of the kingdom following the death of his older brother, Seleucus IV Philopator, while the rightful heir, Seleucus' son, is being detained in Rome. By-the-way, this nephew of Antiochus IV [\[audio error! - read, Seleucus IV\]](#), Antiochus, ultimately escapes from Rome and returns to murder Antiochus IV's son to regain the throne later on—just thought some of you might like to **know** that. I mean it kind of reminds me of why **the LORD** 'laughs' in [Psalm 2](#).

Anyway, Antiochus IV routs Egypt twice so thoroughly in The Sixth Syrian War (171-168 BC) that it would be appropriate to say,

So the king of the north shall come, and cast up a mount, and take the most fenced cities: and the arms of the south shall not withstand, neither his chosen people, neither shall there be any strength to withstand [Verse 15](#).

Of course this is when Rome 'draws the line'.

And by-the-way, if you like riddles, or especially if you're a big fan of those "Jumbles" puzzles, where all the letters are all mixed-up and you have to simultaneously sort out and solve crossword-style riddles, then use all your solutions to solve the also scrambled 'big picture' riddle, then by now you must be in 'hog heaven'—no reference to Antiochus IV possible this time because he'd be in 'hog hell'—OK, OK, so I can't help poking fun at this pig—but wouldn't that make him a 'pig in a poke'? Anyway, back to the our tangent, you should see by now that God is sometimes quite a puzzle maker when it comes to His Word, and you should **know** some good reasons for this by now too.

So this last great victory of the Seleucid **king of the north** over the Ptolemaic **king of the south** is the last we'll see of any Seleucid **king** because this victory is immediately rendered meaningless with the next two words at the beginning of [Verse 16](#),

But he...

Or, as I see it, 'But a Roman consul'... In the events that must follow The Sixth Syrian War, these two words cannot be referring anymore to the then Ptolemaic **king of the south**, nor any longer to a Seleucid **king of the north** either. In fact, there's good reason why we don't even see the term **king of the north** again (in the KJV) until it refers to the Antichrist in The Great Tribulation in Verse 40. This is because the burgeoning Roman Republic, when it's rising to dominate both the Seleucid and Ptolemaic Kingdoms of this time, didn't have kings. They had elected 'warlords' called consuls, and other elected officials in other capacities, all more or less regulated by a legislature not too much unlike the 'Western-style' legislatures

we have today that we have more or less copied from them. Hence, this **he** here who apparently **cometh against him** who has just sacked Egypt, must be a Roman consul that **cometh against** the Seleucid Kingdom. But I don't think this is referring to Gaius Popillius Laenus—yeah, never hear of him have you, but he's that Roman consul who 'draws the line in the sand' around Antiochus IV, turning him back from his campaign against Egypt in The Sixth Syrian War just when Antiochus has Egypt's forces pushed all the way into Alexandria and is about to finish them off. Of course, this story fits the first line of Verse 16, but not the whole verse. What fits better here is another short jump in time to the arguably greatest Roman consul of all time, to the campaigns of Pompey Magnus (The Great), who personally finishes off the Seleucid Kingdom.

Indeed, **he**, Pompey, has 'Alexander-like' power to **do according to his own will** such that **none shall stand before him**. But does Pompey also **stand in the glorious land, which by his hand shall be consumed**? Who is it that 'stands in' and 'consumes' Israel around this time? We will see that the only mighty conqueror around this time who could fit this description is Pompey The Great. And it's a very good fit. As for Julius Caesar, the rising ally of Pompey's exploits, which eventually make him Pompey's rival, his exploits fit very well into this picture too. And from this we will see we have reached the end of any further discussion of a Seleucid **king of the north**, and the end of the Seleucid Kingdom.

We will also see that we have reached the end of the Ptolemaic Kingdom, except that in this case we'll see it even more indirectly, couched in the descriptions of Julius Caesar, who rises above the designation of simply a 'high official' of Rome to "Caesar", who all the way back in [Verse 6](#) is described by Gabriel as a **king of the north**, and who will be seen again (in [Verse 19](#)) as unable to **stand**. And we'll also see Egypt's complete end in their implied subjugation by Caesar Augustus (originally Octavian) through **taxes**, at which point we'll see the Ptolemaic Dynasty of Egypt no more. But finally we'll see that yet another **king of the south**, or really two of them, will rise again in the future to contend with the ultimate **king of the north**, the Antichrist and his kingdom, during The Great Tribulation.

But before we go on, you may have noticed that I passed Verse 14 without giving it the attention it deserves. In it we get more detail about what is going on **in those times** late in the Ptolemaic Dynasty. It's similar to circumstances already described in both the Seleucid and Ptolemaic Dynasties, but especially from the time of Ptolemy V on. It's that these two remaining dynasties have become more and more prone to suffer from chaotic transitions of power due very often to older relatives or controlling ministers attempting to usurp authority from sometimes multiple younger 'coregents'. One of these related **robbers** over Ptolemy V, his uncle Agathocles, kills one of his rival minister **robbers**, Sosibius—who besides managing The Fourth Syrian War is responsible for killing several relatives of Ptolemy IV and V. Agathocles is finally famously killed in the streets of Alexandria by a mob for his atrocities. The point is that the Ptolemaic Dynasty, despite these **robbers**, and the killing off of all 'the peripheral relatives', remains intact, as Gabriel promises in advance, saying,

...in those times there shall many stand up against the king of the south: also the robbers of thy people shall exalt themselves to establish the vision; but they shall fall [Verse 14](#).

And these **robbers** are obviously not the only ones **in those times** that **stand up against the king of the south**, because Gabriel tells us here that besides these **robbers** there are **many** others. Still Gabriel also assures us that **in those times** of The Fourth Syrian War on that anyone that **shall... stand up against the king of the south... shall fall**, be it **robbers**, or internal native Egyptian rebels, or even an alliance of the Macedon and Seleucid Kingdoms. Indeed we see that **in those times** that even Philip V of Macedon allied with Antiochus III, and later Antiochus IV, are all turned back from finishing off Egypt by Rome, and are each eventually brought down by this rising 'world-dominating power'. And for clarification, besides the fact that Verse 14 follows the description of The Fourth Syrian War, we can also tell that **those times** start with Antiochus III's failed attack on Ptolemy IV's kingdom in The Fourth Syrian War because in The Third Syrian War it's backward—then it's a **king of the south**, Ptolemy III, who 'stands up against' a **king of the north**, Seleucus II. We also **know** this period must finally end when the one that 'falls' is also backward—when the **king's daughter**, Cleopatra VII, along with her 'strengtheners', Roman Triumvir Mark Antony, **shall fall**, marking the end of **those times**. And I don't see any real problems with this story in my encyclopedia either.

So, on to Pompey The Great and Julius Caesar. Let's start again with some history. Pompey has nothing but massively successful military campaigns to the west, south, and east of Rome. He is the one that deposes the Seleucid Kingdom in 64-63 BC, including Judea, after a successful siege of Jerusalem in 63 BC. Julius' contemporary but later campaigns are, initially, to the west to Hispania (present day Spain), and also to the north as far as Germania and Britain. Although when Julius leaves Egypt, after the death of Pompey, and after establishing Cleopatra on the throne in 47 BC, he does pass through Syria and defeats Pharnaces II of Pontus (in present day Turkey). This swift victory inspires his famous writing, "I came, I saw, I conquered...", and mocks Pompey's earlier performance in this region. But Julius doesn't necessarily even set foot in Israel as far as I can tell.

Pompey however, in his earlier campaigns in this region, is reported to go, out of curiosity, all the way into "the holy of holies" inside The Jerusalem Temple. And it's reported that Jerusalem is indeed **consumed** around this time as it is really twice sieged—first in Judea's own civil war, and immediately afterward falling again in another siege by Pompey's forces that arrive to take sides in the conflict. Pompey at this time surely does **according to his own will** where **none** [can] **stand before him** on the battlefield, and again, he would be the one who **cometh against** the Seleucid Dynasty and ends it, and he does **stand** in Israel at a time when **by his hand** it is **consumed**. So all this fits as an explanation for [Verse 16](#), and leaves nothing wanting.

But though Pompey has popularity, he never rises to Julius' level of political success. Julius' success is renowned on both the battlefield and also as the popular undisputed dictator of Rome. He even ultimately tracks down Pompey's supporters in Africa, and chases those who escape to Hispania, and

finishes them off, returning triumphant to Rome in 45 BC. So it would be appropriate for Gabriel to avoid referring to Pompey, Julius' eventually outmaneuvered rival, as an undisputed 'king of the north'.

And Julius by this reasoning is easily confused with this description of one who does **according to his own will** where **none** [can] **stand before him**. And Octavian could be too for that matter. But Julius has already been honored with the title of **king of the north** by Gabriel in [Verse 6](#), so he must be the one who will again get most of the attention in these later references too. But Pompey is a big part of Julius story and is appropriately included, but we will see how **he** is ultimately outmaneuvered and does not outlast Julius. But within a year of Julius' triumphant return to Rome, he is assassinated by a conspiracy of mostly senators, at least partially motivated by the fact that he is so greatly loved, and therefore so 'unacceptably' greatly empowered by the people. In this way the 'reign' of this first Roman **king of the north** is 'cut short'.

But did I mention Julia, Julius' only child and daughter? Julius gives Julia to Pompey to be his wife to help cement the bond they create to gain the political control over Rome known as the First Triumvirate in 59 BC, after which Julius is elected consul—one of the usually two guys who get elected with limited power to make and run the current wars and their related affairs. By-the-way, the third member of the First Triumvirate I haven't yet mentioned mostly because he just provides the money and is eventually killed trying to establish his own military prowess against those pesky Parthians in Southwest Asia.

So with his daughter married to Pompey Magnus, and after his, by all accounts, 'politically dirty' but customary single-year term of office as consul ends, and with some further political maneuvering again with Pompey's help, he sets out as proconsul (an appointed regional governor) for conquests in his appointed region to the north and advances even beyond Europe's northern coasts on the Atlantic Ocean. Of course we can just as easily suppose Julius' rational for wanting great conquests under his belt—Pompey already has his by this time—as we can his rational for giving Julia to Pompey. Both are steps not just to gain some power, but to gain all the power.

There is a famous story about him, consistent with his reputation, that takes place where he first ruled and achieved his first conquests. It's about the time he sees a statue of Alexander The Great in Hispania. The story goes that at the statue he laments that he is already older than Alexander but has not yet accomplished as much.

So Julius must have also been somewhat disappointed with Julia, because Julia becomes Pompey's faithful, loving wife. She is said to deliver a child prematurely because she mistakenly thinks her husband has just been killed in a riot in 55 BC. And Pompey is accused of losing his interest in government due to wanting to spend more time with her. So much for any plans Julius likely had for his daughter's use for himself and against Pompey. She is evidently, and famously, just too virtuous for such use. She dies in 54 BC in childbirth with her next child possibly because of the harm caused from the earlier trauma during the riot. This is when Julius has reached the shores of Britain.

So by the time Julius is ready to come home from his indeed great conquests in the north, Pompey is Consul and has changed from ally to

someone demanding Julius' submission. Julia's memory is no longer even any good to keep Pompey as his ally. But with a smaller force than available to Pompey, Julius chases him out of Rome. Then, gathering forces, pursues him and, on the second try, defeats him in a sea battle near Greece, where Pompey flees to Egypt and is killed, etc.

This history goes to show that between Verses 15 and 16 that there has been roughly about a century's jump in time. The **he** in **he that cometh against him** has to have jumped to Pompey, and this **him** could obviously no longer be Antiochus IV. Besides, it's the Maccabean Jews in Judea and their 'guerrilla warfare', and those pesky Parthians to the north, who successfully 'come against' Antiochus IV. So Gabriel must also have jumped to Antiochus XIII, the one deposed by the great conqueror Pompey in 64 BC. And all this is also because only Pompey The Great sees Israel **by his hand... consumed**.

But in [Verse 17](#)—especially with the several completely different translations of the verse—the first half of the verse could go either way. It could be referring directly to either Pompey or Julius, and indirectly to the other. The second half is clearly Julius though. And I am bent to the **interpretation** that the whole verse is about a decade's jump in time directly referring to Julius but, as expected, in relation to his actions concerning Pompey. I see Julius making up his mind at this point to take over the whole empire, but that he will attempt to do so 'peacefully and fairly', because he is sure that he will at least outlive Pompey if he can't outmaneuver or talk him out of the control of Rome.

A part of their story I left out is when Julius is returning to Rome amid Pompey's new accusations against him of 'insubordination and treason'. During these exchanges Julius repeatedly sends offers to Pompey that he will lay down his arms if Pompey will do the same. But Pompey, at the time more popular with the people of Rome, insists on getting all the authority. As Julius approaches, Pompey obviously loses confidence and famously declares, "Rome cannot be defended," and flees south to Capua, and later to Brundisium to await ships to take him to Greece where he expects to rally support in a region he is still very popular.

In the meantime, Julius takes a side trip to Hispania to wipe out Pompey's support there before returning back to Rome where he just misses catching Pompey at Brundisium. Again, it is noted that on his way back from Hispania Julius is still offering Pompey the same "equitable conditions" or "agreement" or "terms of peace" or "a proposal of peace"—these being all modern Bible translations—but he will not otherwise back down.

And there is one more little detail to this story that I think pretty much resolves a longstanding small historical disagreement that in the process helps us with the **interpretation** of this verse. When Julius is originally on his way back to Rome from the north, he breaks the law as he crosses into Roman territory. This is because a new law had been passed that forbade any Roman general from crossing into Roman territory with his army—a measure supposedly to protect Rome's stability. But all these new and arguably unfair restrictions imposed upon Julius by Pompey could be said to have given Julius no choice. And this little detail is that when Julius 'crosses the Rubicon' River into Roman territory—a phrase that has become synonymous with the phrase, 'there's no turning back now', Julius is reported

to have said, "the die is cast", which is also synonymous. The minor disagreement is that he is also reported to have said instead, "Let the dice fly high", implying his confrontation with Pompey was a gamble. But given Gabriel's account, and if indeed the opening **line** is referring more directly to Julius, does he not in all our reports of him, including in this detail, **set his face to enter with the strength of his whole kingdom** (call it [Verse 17a](#)), despite the risks and conflict with Pompey? He is also seen to **turn his face** and finally again **set his face** toward home. In other words, Julius is repeatedly described by Gabriel to be the kind of resolute character whose mindset is to **set his face** rather than 'throw the dice'. So surely Julius says, "The die is cast," as fitting his resolute character to rule Rome. We must then see this opening **line** of Verse 17 as exposing Julius' grand design to control Rome, which solves this little controversy for me anyway.

And this brings us to one of those unexpected turns I warned you about in the introduction to this **study**. In the middle of Verse 17, or what I'll call Verse 17b, we find a KJV translation that doesn't work as well as most of the modern ones. The KJV reads,

...and upright ones with him; thus shall he do... [Verse 17b](#).

Now I 'grew up' **in the Lord** on a KJV / NIV parallel Bible, with some earlier exposure in the RSV. So I'm used to keeping an eye on the translations. And I'm not against going to other translations, especially to help out with the Old English. And I could 'squeeze' the KJV translation here, but I would still be left wondering what or who these '**upright ones**' are. And this translation does not work like several modern ones, including, "...and he shall bring terms of agreement and perform them..." or "...bringing with him a proposal of peace which he will put into effect..." or "...and with him equitable conditions; and he will perform them..." You must see the difference and **understand** the preference here. Julius makes every effort, likely sincerely, to offer a fair and peaceful resolution to Pompey for their conflict. His sincerity is further evidenced when he is both angry and visibly shaken when he is surprised by Pompey's decapitated head being handed to him in Egypt. Julius would not give up Rome, but he evidently didn't want to lose his son-in-law Pompey over it either.

Now the opposite **interpretation** in the first half of the verse, with instead Pompey directly referenced and Julius indirectly referenced could fit here too using the same story, but as it doesn't fit as well for me, I'll leave it to you. This brings us to the last parts of Verse 17, which reads,

...and he shall give him the daughter of woman, corrupting her: but she shall not stand on his side, neither be for him [Verse 17c-d](#).

This has to be Julia, where **he** is Julius and the first **him** must be Pompey. And in case there is any historical doubt, Gabriel is making clear here that Julius originally gives Julia to Pompey to use her against him. But Julia proves not to be cut out for the part, and becomes faithful to Pompey until her death.

Like that 'interpretation' of Verse 17a-d? Sorry, because now I can't go on to Verse 18 and make much sense of it. See how gullible you are. And to

think I had just about gotten your trust back since that last 'wild goose chase' I took you on. But I had to go on this little trip myself before I could see it didn't work. So I took you on it too. But this time I will let you **handle** the preaching—to yourself that is—about how you better be careful, before God Almighty, about what you presume to call true from now on. It's really your call anyway isn't it? But still, all the stories I just told you about Julius and Pompey are true, at least according to my encyclopedia, and even most of the **interpretation** stays more or less in the same ball park, give or take a decade or so. Indeed, it's a chronological problem that will show us how to detect the **error**.

According to [Verse 18](#), I just described the wrong period of time. I should have been focusing the **interpretation** to events occurring just before this Roman civil war, because the end of Verse 18 really tells us about that. And Verse 17 cannot be, because it must be the sequential set-up to the events in Verse 18. Remember I told you we have to keep our eyes open for the transitions? This is one of the easier ones right out in plain sight. So besides missing the transition, there is only really one fatal flaw left in place in the above 'interpretation' that has led us astray. That's when you thought I decided not to trust the KJV. Oops. Let me show you what I mean.

What we should **understand** here is that none of the translators whose versions you likely have available to you right now really **understood** what they were translating when they translated Daniel 11. How could they? It was still **closed up and sealed till the time of the end**. Nonetheless, some of them, more often than some others, made some assumptions, and some of them obviously made some translation 'choices' or 'adjustments' that were really only based on those assumptions. I get the idea that some of them even made some of their translation 'choices' in view of certain 'facts of history' that had recently become available. But in this way they could have only at best been no more than guessing what applied to the particular verses that they applied them to, all in order to try and make sense of them, when a more direct translation made no sense to them at all. Maybe the translators of these modern translations I quoted above—all newer than the KJV—thought they had more 'historical insight' available to them than earlier translators. Whatever the case, I now see their translations in this verse as flawed. But most of the older translations and even some of the newer ones agree with the KJV anyway.

The moral of this story in advance is that you shouldn't 'mess' with the translation to make it make more sense to you just because you don't **understand** it without these 'adjustments'. And if you will take the time to compare a dozen or so translations of this verse, (at blbclassic.org, for example), not to mention several other verses in this chapter, you'll begin to see what I mean, and especially when we're all done. By-the way, none of these 'off-base' translations in Verse 17 are from the NIV. But in this case the NIV is 'not even in the ballpark', reading, "...and will make an alliance with the king of the South..." Hey, it's a reasonable guess to try to make some sense of it, but such 'scholars' shouldn't be guessing when it comes to The Word of God, should they. Unfortunately, you will be able to see here how the modern translations are really just frequently erroneous Bible commentaries masquerading as the infallible Word of God. But at least they only remain counterproductive to dangerous when you're not aware of this.

Otherwise they can sometimes be as helpful as a Bible commentary.

So on to the salvage work we go, back to Verse 17, and back to the KJV translation that reads,

...and upright ones with him; thus shall he do...

Well, Gabriel must really be talking about ***upright ones*** here, not any kind of "equitable conditions" or "terms" or "agreements". The ***upright ones*** Gabriel has to be talking about here are 'constantly virtuous' Julia who cannot be turned to treachery though still useful to Julius for obtaining Pompey's allegiance while she is still alive, and 'originally loyal' Pompey who comes to Julius' political rescue again and again before their final falling out, and possibly 'generously resourceful' Crassus, that third triumvirate member with all the money who is always ready to bail Julius out of trouble again and again, and probably also 'faithful and noble' Mark Antony, Julius' man in the senate and later faithful right-hand man, a man that ultimately prefers suicide over the loss of his love Cleopatra.

But Pompey and Crassus didn't get along. Julius, nevertheless, sees he will need them both to control Rome and get elected Consul, so he reconciles them so that with their help as The First Triumvirate, he can and does,

...set his face to enter with the strength of his whole kingdom; and [all the while knowing it will never happen without] the upright ones with him... [Verse 17a-b](#)

In other words, Julius uses ***the upright ones with him*** to get elected consul and set in motion his plans to gain control of Rome. So it follows naturally here that Gabriel next explains that a key factor in this grand scheme will be that Julius will expect to rely upon ***his upright... daughter*** Julia to influence Pompey in his favor. Gabriel says,

...and he [Julius] shall give him [Pompey] the daughter of women [Julia], corrupting [or misusing] her: but she shall not stand on his [Julius'] side, neither be for him [Verse 17c-d](#).

So Julia is only a help to Julius in that her faithfulness to Pompey makes him inclined to support Julius. Gabriel makes clear that Julius' intentions are to use Julia against Pompey, but he also makes clear this strategy fails. Still, though Julius doesn't have the kind of 'success' that he had planned upon with Julia, she does win for him Pompey's allegiance when it counts. And he overwhelmingly succeeds in his following military campaigns to the north, amidst reports of his continual scandalous battlefield atrocities that without Pompey's and the other moral, financial, and political support of his ***upright ones with him*** then at home in Rome, would not have been possible.

And the civil war we previously erroneously set as the context of this verse must necessarily take place instead marked by the transitional phrase, ***After this***, after Julius sets up his triumvirate and they help him become consul for a year, and after he gets Pompey and the others to help him get his proconsulship to the north—that they also help him renew making two 5-year terms—all of which allows him to establish his military prowess. So this

simple sequential indicator at the beginning of Verse 18 will prove that the KJV *interpretation* of Verse 17 is the only one of these last two that really makes sense.

And another insight is helpful here. I believe Julius was indeed sincere about wanting to patch things up with Pompey rather than go to war with him. And I don't think he would have ever killed his son-in-law; he would have just subjugated him. But this kind of 'merciful' behavior was not typical of Julius except with people like Pompey and Julia and, of course, the other **upright ones with him**, which must also have included his niece Atia and her son Octavian—the future Caesar Augustus—who Julius records before his death as his chosen heir to his empire. But surely those outside these close relationships he had no qualms against attacking in the most ruthless fashion if they were found anywhere in his way to obtaining power. When he is elected consul for a year it is said to be, because of him, one of the 'dirtiest' elections in Roman history. And he is said to have hounded the other consul that got elected with him, (remember they were usually elected in pairs), to the point that the poor man cowers in his mansion for most of the term. And Julius is always just one step ahead of scandal, including on the battlefield. The point is that when it comes to his adversaries he does not generally 'bring terms of agreement' or 'a proposal of peace', or even provide 'equitable conditions'. He is certainly not known for that, but the contrary. And this is especially the case given the timeframe we are confined to in Verse 17. His 'generosity' in his dispute with Pompey does not take place during this time, but again, **After this...**

And yes, Verse 18 begins with that undeniable sequential phrase, **After this...** So what we see that Julius has to be doing at this point is heading off to his conquests in the north, necessarily still before his little civil war and before these presumed 'terms of agreement' with Pompey. Gabriel says,

After this shall he turn his face [in a direction I deceptively left out the last time, which is] **unto the isles** [or "the coastlands" including as far as Germania and Britain], **and shall take many** [including killing 3 million and enslaving 1 million in his northern campaigns]: **but a prince** [Pompey] **for his own behalf** [who at this point is still Julius' ally and fellow triumvir] **shall cause the reproach offered by him to cease** [getting him reelected proconsul amidst scandalous controversy]; [then] **without his own reproach** [or with the scandals exonerated or abated] **he** [Julius] **shall cause it** [the help that Pompey gives Julius] **to turn upon him** [upon Pompey] [Verse 18](#).

So the support of Pompey and the other **upright ones with** Julius help him get into his second term as proconsul and therefore get the extensive military victories to the north where Julius gains the power he can use to defeat Pompey. And all this must be already irreversibly set in motion very near the time that Julia dies (in 54 BC—near the beginning of Julius' second term as proconsul) and just before Pompey's support of Julius begins to wane. And we can see that Julius is not described here by Gabriel to bring "a proposal of peace" to Pompey, but instead to **turn upon** him, alluding to when he crosses the Rubicon River starting their one-sided civil war. This is when

Julius successfully defeats Pompey, chasing him and his forces literally from one end of the Mediterranean Sea to the other and back again. This is all historically accurate according to my encyclopedia, and this must be exactly what Gabriel is foretelling in Verse 18.

Finally Julius, in [Verse 19](#), after mopping up Pompey's scattered rebel forces, **sets his face** toward home, but being blinded by his relatively new popularity with the people, and underestimating the jealousy of his subordinates, is seen to **stumble and fall** in 44 BC, within a year after he returns home to Rome.

It all fits the KJV, and most the others except, again, in places where certain modern 'translators' (read, 'commentators') place "the king of the north" and "the king of the south" into the 'hes' and 'hims' of these verses where they really don't belong, or when they otherwise try too hard to make sense of something that they should not be afraid to admit, through no fault of their own, that they could not possibly **understand** in the first place, still being before the fully revealed **time of the end**. But maybe this evaluation of them is too kind.

Indeed, all the 'hes' and 'hims' packed in Verses 16-20 of the KJV are hard to keep up with as the persons connected to these pronouns are constantly changing, sometimes without notice, sometimes jumping in time, and where the only way to tell what is happening is by the descriptions of the events themselves. But we have established that there is not a **'king of the north'** that is Roman until Julius, because until him and in this general time period no one really had that much control over the Roman Republic. And this includes Julius until just before his death. And there is no **'king of the south'** mentioned or implied in Verses 17-19 either because none of the people or events described in these verses really have anything to do with Egypt, unless we want to try to count Cleopatra as one of the **upright ones with him** in Verse 17, which we shouldn't because Julius would not have even met her yet at that point. He meets her even after the civil war that is only implied in Verse 18. So she can only be implied to begin to 'come into the picture' again—rolling out of that Persian rug after the death of Pompey—between Verses 18 and 19 where she remains at best behind the scenes until she must shortly thereafter disappear even from implication in Verse 20 where we will see that Octavian **shall stand up**.

So though sometimes only the described events are available to indicate that the characters and the time has changed, we can now **understand** why in Verses 16-18 there is no **king of the north** or **south** mentioned. The last implication of a Seleucid **king of the north** is in Verse 16, but this is when Pompey ends the Seleucid Dynasty, when Antiochus IV is already long gone. And the last implication of a **daughter** of a Ptolemaic **king of the south**, Cleopatra, is in Verse 20, but this is when she is already gone too. And the first Roman **king of the north**, Julius, identified as such in Verse 6, doesn't really reach this position in the later more detailed descriptions of his rise to power until Verse 19, where we also see that he 'stumbles and falls'.

Still, some 'translators' find ways to portray a relationship between 'the kings of the north and south' in these verses, or they make guesses based on what they think is 'scholarship' backed by history that is really just ignorance backed by **pride**, and worst of all, they don't just put it in a commentary, they presume to offer it as God's **pure words**. I mean, remember that this is the

Archangel Gabriel talking here, and at some great cost to himself, **Michael**, **Daniel**, and likely many, many others. So the 'mess' these modern 'translators' have made here has and will continue to cost us all. And surely this reveals some 'translators' as unfit and untrustworthy at **handling the word of God** [2 Cor 4:2](#) or at **rightly dividing the word of truth** [2 Tim 2:15](#). And I can't help but speak this to their **shame**.

But in spite of this 'mess', and as you probably gathered, I deciphered this confusion with the help of my favorite encyclopedia together with [blbclassic.org](#) [the site address has changed]. This website allows me to compare over a dozen translations simultaneously by verse. I don't read Hebrew or Greek, but I suppose I shouldn't need to when I have, within a dozen translations, the help of dozens of 'scholars' who are probably better at it than I will ever be—in this life anyway—I mean even given how frequently presumptuous some of them obviously are in 'handling' the task—and especially since I can always take it back to the KJV. And yes, we'll unavoidably see some more of this humiliation before we're done. We've also passed up a lot of it already, some of which you may have already noticed if you're still stuck on your 'modern translation', whichever one it is. But the advantage in continuing to use them is that I get so many perspectives to choose from and compare without the disadvantage of my own bias. The Lord knows I **know** what kinds of problems this causes. You could say that using the original language 'scholarship' of dozens of 'scholars' in this way, with myself the 'blind judge' of the results, makes it a more 'controlled' scientific experiment so to speak. So when there are obviously differences in the versions, like when some of these 'scholars' obviously adjust their translations, for example, to make theirs fit a continued discussion of "the kings of the north and south", even inserting these terms when the majority of earlier translators—again obviously—instead leave the direct translations of unidentified pronouns, then a 'blind judge' can tell.

In fact, by making these presumptuous mistakes they even gave me some clues in the process. I mean the way they steered me from **the truth** by misinterpreting **scripture** helped me navigate back toward **the truth** and to possibly our first look at the 'rightly divided' **interpretation** God intended. And maybe I wouldn't have figured it all out without their 'help'. Yeah, it reminds me of that time Paul speaks of the people who **preach Christ of contention**—not to evangelize but in order to injure, concluding it's all good because that way and in **every way, whether in pretence, or in truth, Christ is preached** [Phil 1:16-19](#), and that in this way and **by all means** [he **might**] **save some** [1 Cor 9:22](#). Of course I wouldn't recommend you make a practice of leading someone to **the truth** though error, especially through a book you're passing off as only containing God's **pure words**. But do you think I've **handled** this issue seriously enough yet? Bless your hearts you ministers of **compassion** who are passed thinking, yes! And the same to those of you who God has molded to minister by **fear** and **fire**, who think I should barely be started yet. See [Jude 1:22-23](#) for what I mean.

And still, you should **know** by now that these 'eventually-to-be-humiliated scholars' are not the only obstacles to **understanding** this **prophecy**. God and Gabriel admit even more of the responsibility because in another about 20 verses further on he instructs Daniel to...

...shut up the words, and seal the book, even to the time of the end [Dan 12:4](#).

And this makes clear that it's God who has allowed these mistranslations in order to delay the 'opening' or 'unsealing' of this **prophecy**. But whatever the case, the reason I'm telling you that this **time of the end** has finally and actually just fully arrived, is because it appears we are now able to overcome all these obstacles. It appears we have just 'opened' a section of this **prophecy** that, as far as I **know** and for 'understandable' reasons, has not ever been 'fully' **understood** before now, making this **prophecy** before now still at least somewhat **shut up**—all qualifications mandatory. And by the time we're done I expect that we'll be able to **understand** the entire Book of Daniel and Revelation, (except that '**mystery**' still '**hid**' in Revelation 10), and that this **study** will be ready to be tested, improved, expanded, corrected, etc., by the Church at large, as it should be.

By-the-way, are you over all your resistance to the repetition yet? Don't you see how we're basically taking increasingly growing groups of **precepts**, then adding one or two more to get the next **revelation** of **understanding**, and thereby getting into higher and higher levels of **exercise**? Sometimes we even merge groups of precepts. Those are a rush. You may even feel 'tingles' with the addition of a single precept to a group you have already worked with repeatedly before. Haven't you yet? If not, or not something similar, you're probably not getting it and you should probably start over because the **knowledge** is cumulative in this **study**.

And any of you who see this as boasting, let me tell you how I see it. I seek God. He shows me Himself. He's awesome. I get tingles. So I seek Him even more. And He shows me even more. And I see that He is even more awesome than before. And I get more tingles. So I seek Him even more... And what is it that I can help you through these steps too if I can only do so because he is assisting me every step of the way. Paul tell us that God gives us varying **gifts** including to some the **gift of teaching** [Rom 12:6-7](#). So if I'm ministering my **gift** properly, you should get 'tingles' too. And where in this process should I take any credit? Again, only in that I'm smart enough to persist in believing and seeking after him. And I expect every one of His **sons** will eventually 'get on board this train'—it's a matter of time, but unfortunately for some, also **shame**.

And by-the-way, and as I said, where the KJV is hard to **understand**, modern translations are often a help to me, but I find that this is about all modern translations are good for, because I have found that once I **understand** what the KJV is saying, I can count on it to be right, like here in Daniel 11 for example. Of course when the modern 'translations' disagree with the KJV the **work** can be harder, like how modern 'translators' are arguably responsible for prolonging the 'opening' of Daniel 11 by replacing God's **pure words** with erroneous commentary. And I could tell you about too many other mistranslations in the modern versions. And regrettably, we won't be able to avoid running into this kind of problem again and again and again. Call me biased, but it wasn't just 'blind faith' that led me to the **understanding** of these verses that you can now **understand** for yourself too. Had I not learned to trust the KJV—that it contained only God's **pure words** in the English language—I mean especially over disagreeing newer '

translations', I would not have had nearly so many of these 'tingles'. And for me, it's all about the tingles because they are signs that I'm getting to **know** our awesome God better and better.

And I **know** of the KJV's 'minor flaws'. Did you **know** that The Book of James should have been called the Book of Joshua, but King James wanted his name in The Bible? Minor flaw. And I do know of one case where it appears that the wrong pronoun is used by mistake, but this isolated incident, and even if I were to run across a few others, is not worth mentioning by comparison. Instead I should mention Josh Mc Dowell's, **Evidence that Demands a Verdict**, and his **New Evidence that Demands a Verdict**, as well as Barry Burton's, **Let's Weigh the Evidence** as good introductions to further **study**. But then there's, well, not really anything else of any significance I know of but misleading attacks, or other such minor flaws made out to be major. And let's be clear. What these modern 'translations' do with Daniel 11 are examples of major flaws—the kind of flaws that make these versions untrustworthy wherever they disagree with the KJV. And of course I expect attacks against God's Word, and the accompanying minor flaws in translations because of the men responsible for translating and printing it. But again, I have not found flaws in the KJV anything like the flaws we were just dealing with in the modern versions. Oh, and they all keep calling it The Book of James too.

So in the absence of the scholarship necessary to **understand** the original languages that The Bible is written in—and there are further issues in the original languages you can learn about in the sources I just mentioned—trusting the KJV when it disagrees with other, especially newer translations, is the closest thing to God's **pure words**. And I have proven this time and again without fail. Of course I still have a few unanswered questions—what theologians like to call 'apparent contradictions'—that I haven't resolved yet. But I'm reasonably and faithfully waiting on God for those answers. Reasonably, because so many confirming answers resolving suchlike issues have come to me over time that I would be stupid to trust otherwise, and faithfully, because I still have questions that God hasn't answered me on yet. And that's yet. From my **experience** with KJV's newer competitors, there's no contest which one I should trust when there is disagreement on the **line** (PAMD).

And here's the real point. Is God unable to keep His Word '**pure**' just because it's translated into another language? I don't think God has left all of us English-speaking believers to 'pick and choose'. I think we have provable certainty what His Word says and what it does not. And I mean that if you can **understand** the KJV, you can trust it. But as the KJV is Old English, and often hard for many to **understand**, abandoning it for more modern versions is now common practice. So keep your modern translation, but keep a KJV too. I bought a new KJV/NIV parallel large print for my older eyes recently. But I don't use it much because I'm always using my KJV/NKJV/NLT/NIV/ESV/RVR/NASV/RSV/ASV/YNG/DBY/WEB/HNV/VUL/WLC/LXX parallel **Blue Letter Bible** online—dangerous versions shown in **red** and in **SMALL CAPS**.

And you can try this quick test for a start. Go to blbclassic.org [the site address has changed] and try the "Available Translations and Versions" for Psalms 12:7. Just type in "ps12" in a Bible "Search" box and click—not the

"Search the BLB" box though because it's a lexicon. Then once in the chapter click the blocked "V" next to Verse 7. Scroll up a little from there and you can also see King David's declaration in [Verse 6](#) that,

The words of the LORD are pure words: as silver tried in a furnace of earth, purified seven times...

And in [Verse 7](#), the KJV—and a minority of the English translations on blbclassic.org—also promise us that God...

...shalt keep them and preserve them from this generation for ever.

Notice the word ***them*** is used twice. Reliable translations must have them both. Each of these pronouns refers to, ***The [pure] words of the LORD***. These translations promise that God will ***keep*** and ***preserve*** His ***pure words... for ever***—though a couple 'translations that have this promise haven't kept it. And most the others promise instead that God will keep "us". And one that is totally lost—and seems to be most often—tries to 'make sense' of it by directing this promise to "the oppressed". And don't overlook the ones that first use "them" then "us", because this is the same as using "us" twice. The point is that these versions do not promise to ***keep*** and ***preserve*** the ***[pure] words of the Lord... for ever***. But I already told you that. So don't you ever ***trust*** a version that does not promise, as God does, to ***keep*** and ***preserve*** His ***pure words... for ever***.

The KJV is translated from the **Textus Receptus**—Latin for "received text" (read the text 'kept' and 'preserved' by God); it's a collection of the copies of the original Greek texts from which the New Testament was translated into the European languages, including the KJV, and from them, many others since then. But most 'Bible studiers' don't ***study*** enough for any of this to make much difference anyway. And I hear the difference between the **Textus Receptus** and any given 20th century modern 'translation' is only about 5%. And you should be aware that the 20th century 'translators' had available to them some manuscripts that were physically older though certainly perverted—surely produced by ancient 'scholars' who evidently did the same kind of things our modern ones are guilty of. And so, using for their guide the work of some misguided ancient 'scholars', the modern translators 'ganged up' on the Textus Receptus—and I mean that evidently both these ancient and modern 'scholars' thought that their superior 'scholarship' and 'understanding' gave them greater insight into God's Word, and greater 'license' with it. And I've showed you the results of some of that ignorance and pride already. So the reasons for this 5% of difference are damnable reasons if you ask me, but God will be the judge of that. And this is also some of the information you'll find in the studies done by Mc Dowell and Burton.

But how could I ever assume God condones the kind of disagreements tolerated just among the modern 'translations' themselves—let alone with the KJV. So I'm just saying, whenever in doubt, make the effort to figure out what the KJV is saying. It's the most commonly available version that does

not fail to **keep** and **preserve** the **pure words** of God **for ever**. And certainly that's a chore. And I believe God is doing this through the **Textus Receptus** not just in English but in most all other languages too. And maybe someone someday will come up with a **pure** modern translation in English one of these days. And maybe someone has that I am unaware of. But sooner or later, if you haven't already, and whether you even **know** it or not, you'll have to choose. And if this never becomes an issue for you, it's because you still really don't **know** what it means to be **diligent** about your Bible **study**. Again, waiting till the next **age** will be a **shame** because this is one of the ways God will separate out one of His **diligent** and **approved... workman** from among the slackers—I mean **the least in the kingdom of heaven** from the **great in the kingdom of heaven** [Mat 5:19](#).

Now the next 16 verses of Daniel 11 are going to be a chore too, but also a new adventure for most of you. But as you have probably noticed I love a good adventure, and I'll try not to include any more of those 'wild goose chases'. And talking about being 'misled', at this point it's time to remind ourselves that Gabriel must be under orders to be careful to hide The Church Age of Grace, because we must be getting close. And it would be expected that he will not repeat the details of the close of the Greek Empire that would make it too easy to connect to the start of the Roman Empire as already given in [Verse 6](#). Remember? There we see first that Julius will not be able to **stand**, and that Cleopatra will not be able to **retain the power**, and that she will **be given up** along with her handmaidens, and her father, and Antony, and that all this transpires **in the end of years** of the Greek Empire. Yes, you can expect that these connections will not jump right out at you. In fact I think, as in other places where the gap is hidden, Gabriel not only has something to hide, he's out to downright mislead us. Again, I think he plans our misunderstanding of **the end of years** because without The Age of Grace this point is very near the beginning of The Great Tribulation.

Still, paying attention as we have, we can tell that we have found ourselves again in these same **years** when Julius, the one that is originally described as not being able to **stand** in Verse 6, is further described to **stumble and fall** in Verse 19. The point is that Gabriel's separation of the descriptions of the close of the Greek Empire (mostly in Greek perspective) and the rise of Rome (in Roman perspective) only helps hide The Church Age even better. It allows Gabriel to continue in Verse 20 with the remaining brief history of the Roman Empire before The Age of Grace providing only the additional clues from Verse 19 that we have arrived there. So please keep in mind that the 'organization' here is not mine, nor any translator's, nor any historian's, nor is it haphazard, but divinely planned, as are the **revealed** details in any **prophecy** of God. The point is that God is The Definer of history. And we can only come to a full **understanding** of this **prophecy** by recognizing the real **time of the end** [Dan 12:4](#), but also only if we are willing to **understand** it in His terms, while at the same time **understanding** what He is hiding, and how He is hiding it.

So, after the time Julius is described to **stumble and fall** in [Verse 19](#), the question becomes, who are Antony and Cleopatra then **given up** to, and who gets control of Rome? Or as I also see it, who...

Then shall stand up in his [Julius'] estate [to be] a raiser of taxes in the glory of the [Roman] kingdom[?] [Verse 20a](#).

This would be Julius' designated heir, Octavian, who defeats the other two triumvirs of the Second Triumvirate—including Marc Antony and the other rich guy who again at this point is really not worth mentioning. In this way Octavian becomes Caesar Augustus (The Revered One or The Increaser). Certainly some historians would appropriately refer to Caesar Augustus as ***a raiser of taxes in the glory of the kingdom***. Indeed he is able to subjugate North Africa, most of Europe, and the eastern coastal regions of the Mediterranean Sea. And even though Parthia (roughly present day Iran and Iraq) remains for centuries a nemesis to Rome, the stability Augustus brings to Rome lasts far beyond her conflicts with Parthia. And this period becomes commonly known as **Pax Romana** or **Pax Augusta**—Roman or Augustus' Peace. So Augustus indisputably brings Rome to ***the glory of the kingdom***.

And maybe you remember that part in Luke's 'nativity story' about ***Caesar Augustus***. Luke records,

And it came to pass in those days, that there went out a decree from Caesar Augustus, that all the world should be taxed [Luke 2:1](#).

It is argued by some historians that the reason why the Roman Empire enjoyed such a long period of peace and stability is specifically because of the revenue reforms Augustus institutes. These reforms include bringing consistent, direct taxation to Rome from each local province, instead of the previous 'system' of 'exacting' often indirect, varying, arbitrary, and often economically damaging tributes seemingly at random. Augustus' system increases, stabilizes, and makes fairer and more reasonable the taxes collected by Rome, whereas the previous non-system had simply provoked fresh resentments, sometimes accompanied by death and destruction, with each new forced confiscation. And Augustus, having defeated Antony and Cleopatra, is the one to finally fully subjugate Egypt. He is able to establish a system of taxation of Egyptian farmland that is able to finance Rome for centuries to come. And some historians say that Egypt actually benefits economically too, because the organization and infrastructure provided by Rome is an improvement over what previous Greek pharaoh's had ever done. Of course, the 'standing up' of this ***raiser of taxes*** is also a marker that the Ptolemaic Kingdom has become a thing of the past.

Now we ***know*** when this ***decree of Caesar Augustus, that all the world should be taxed***, happens. It happens just before Jesus is born, apparently '***within few days***' of Jesus' birth. So these could very well be the ***few days*** spoken of by Gabriel about ***Caesar Augustus*** in the second half of Verse 20 when he says,

...but within few days he shall be destroyed, neither in anger, nor in battle [Verse 20b](#).

And from this it appears God is leading us to look for a ruler that is **destroyed** near the time Jesus is born. And this is extremely misleading. But however misleading, this must be the case for several reasons.

The first is that we should be expecting God's best hiding of all time right about right here. This is the **prophecy** that God said to **seal... to the time of the end**, and obviously for good reasons, and for reasons that we're supposed to eventually discover. Second, we have already proven that God is up for some big-time obfuscation—a big word in this case meaning deception. Remember that He has misdirected us about **'the end'** back in Verse 6. And throughout this chapter He moves from summary to details and back again to try to throw us off course. He also often doesn't identify pronouns while changing characters and times in the process. I mean it's all one big riddle, isn't it?

And don't forget that He has also outright lied to us in Daniel 2 and 7 as to the correct number of 'world-ruling' kingdoms for the same purpose—all to hide The Church Age. In these chapters, five kingdoms are repeatedly declared, no, not just implied, but stated and interpreted to be only four kingdoms, while John, who doesn't have to hide The Age of Grace anymore, is able to tell us the whole truth, making clear there are actually five kingdoms allegorized and **revealed** within each of these chapters.

This brings to mind another 'general rule' that either does not apply in this case or that God on occasion breaks. Balaam the Prophet who is speaking for God says,

God is not a man, that he should lie; neither the son of man, that he should repent: hath he said, and shall he not do it? or hath he spoken, and shall he not make it good? [Num 23:19](#)

The context here is that if God says it, He won't withdraw it and He will follow through as He said He would. But Paul makes clear that God also hides **mysteries** from us—The Age of Grace, for example. And we see in Daniel 2 and 7 as compared to Revelation 12, 13, and 17 how He withholds the truth and misleads us by giving incomplete if not incorrect information. It arguably involves misrepresentation or lying anyway. But you could argue that 'hiding the truth' in this way doesn't apply to what Balaam the Prophet says about God's trustworthiness. Or you must accept that God's does make exceptions and lies sometimes too—not that this should change His reputation as being generally **not** like **a man... that he should lie**.

But another question comes up from what we have already studied. What's the difference between lying and misleading someone so that they believe a lie? We **know** that God definitely deceives, that he successfully misled Satan and his angels to crucify Jesus, and that He will **send... strong delusion** in The Great Tribulation to the **damned who believed not the truth, but had pleasure in unrighteousness**. And for this specific **cause** **God shall send them strong delusion, that they should believe a lie** [2 Thes 2:9-12](#). So evidently for a good enough **cause**—to protect the righteous or to punish disobedient people and angels—God will make people **believe a lie**.

And wasn't Isaiah speaking for God when he said that if you fail to use God's Word God's way you're going down?—the blood of Christ withstanding.

The very way God puts together His Word is one way He deceives the so-called **damned** who neither really 'believe' nor 'receive' **the love of the truth, that they might be saved**. Hey, the Apostle Paul, speaking for God, said God will make them **believe a lie**. And this is also why Paul tells Christians that **have not the knowledge of God** that it's a **shame** [1Cor 15:34](#). He's not saying they're not saved; he's saying it's a **shame** that they remain so ignorant about God's Word. And this of course puts them in danger of being eventually eternally lost—the blood of Christ forgotten and rejected, God forbid. But as the 'rules' go, and despite the responsibility that our human perspective gives us, God also takes responsibility for our choices either way.

And at least another couple of 'general rules' apply here. We **know** that our God who 'makes the disobedient believe lies' never changes because, **Jesus Christ [is] the same yesterday, and to day, and for ever** [Heb 13:8](#). And we **know** that **The LORD our God is one LORD** [Deut 6:4](#); [Mark 12:29](#), which means that They never contradicts each other, even when they're misleading us. But we can also see how...

...all things work together for good to them that love God, to them who are the called according to his purpose [Rom 8:28](#).

So when it comes to whether God is misleading us or not in [Verse 20](#), remember that there is likely a lot on the **line** here, (PAMD). Again, the main reason **the princes of this world** originally thought they were getting away with murder when they helped instigate Jesus' crucifixion is because they were successfully misled as God purposed. And indeed, God has much more formidable adversaries than the likes of you or me that He sometimes needs to hide things from.

Remember also that Daniel's **vision** in Chapter 8 connects the Greek Empire directly to the Antichrist Kingdom totally bypassing Rome. But in Chapter 11 we can see that there is really not that much to bypass. Very little of the Roman Empire—when it's ruled by Caesars or 'full-on' kings of the north—transpires before the birth of Christ or before Pentecost. So we should therefore expect little direct mention of it in Old Testament **prophecy**, and especially here in Daniel 11, because here we are not dealing with any allegories that are able to hide Rome in metaphorical imagery that merges it with the Antichrist Kingdom. But we would expect in all these **prophecies**, to help with the distraction, relatively complete accounts of the Greek Empire because it exists entirely before The Age of Grace. Verses 4-19 of Chapter 11 give us this relatively detailed summary of the entire Greek Empire including The Six Syrian Wars between the Ptolemaic and Seleucid Kingdoms, and descriptions of many of their most significant rulers, as well as the period when these last two Greek kingdoms succumb to Rome. So the question arises in Verse 20. Is Gabriel 'hiding' part of Caesar Augustus' reign in order to hide The Church Age?

We can deduce that Augustus is a **'king of the north'** too because he **shall stand up in his** [Julius'] **estate**, and because we **know** that Julius is referred to as a **king of the north** back in Verse 6. And since Augustus dies in 14 AD, years before Pentecost, we might expect that we will get a complete description of his reign before the start of The Age of Grace too. But

instead Gabriel must be hiding all the events from the birth of Christ on, not just from Pentecost on. And I see him hiding even more here than this. He tells us that from the point where Rome apparently reaches its **glory...** [that] **within few days he [Augustus] shall be destroyed, neither in anger, nor in battle.** Now this is the one **interpretation** in this whole chapter that I am not fully comfortable with, but it does fit given the weighty expectation right here for God and Gabriel's exceptionally deceptive concealment of The Church Age of Grace. In fact this time we should expect that it's so well **hid** that we won't be able to figure it out till near the end of The Age of Grace **at the time of the end**—which is now. And how well everything else fits around this hidden focal point is further confirmation that this **interpretation** is God's, not mine.

So here, **at the time of the end**, God means us to finally **understand** Verse 20 this way. Jesus' birth is the first marker of the beginning of The Age of Grace which is 'within a few days' of the start of the tax reformation that begins Rome's **Pax Romana** or **Pax Augusta**. In other words, Gabriel means that at the point Rome reaches its **glory**, this being when Augustus' tax reformation starts, Gabriel can account for only a few days more before he must mislead us that this **king of the north** 'disappears' from the scene. And this is obviously because **within few days** Jesus is born and the kingdom of God and The Church Age are **at hand**. But Augustus isn't really **'destroyed'**—or in other translations "broken" or "shattered"—as most would define the word. So I see it as a term used to hide the existence of the remainder of his reign. In this view he is **destroyed, neither in anger, nor in battle**, but by 'omission' due to the birth of the founder of The Age of Grace.

Click the blocked "C" next to the [Verse 20](#) in [blbclassic.org](#) [the site address has changed] for the various definitions in the concordance-lexicon for "**be destroyed**". This entry allows me to see that they need to add "vanish" or "be erased", or maybe "be obliterated" (in a figurative sense) to the list of definitions. And this is nothing anyone would have supposed until **the time of the end**. Of course I am more than open to additional insight here. But obviously a literal, 'non-deceptive' **interpretation** fails here, but only here. This 'literal' failure, which is how The Age of Grace is successfully hidden, is that Augustus is one of the longest reigning Caesars of all. He reigned 41 years. He is given the title "Augustus" in 27 BC and dies **neither in anger, nor in battle**, but in 14AD when he passes his titles to Tiberius Caesar, certainly not literally **'within few days'**. So Gabriel can't mean 'he shall die' when he says, **'he shall be destroyed'**, but instead he must mean something more like 'he shall be omitted from **prophecy**' because of the beginning of The Age of Grace at this point. And in this **understanding** this can certainly be **within few days**.

And what a sneaky misdirection this is! But like I said, we're looking for the biggest and most deceptive concealment of The Age of Grace of all time right here. So as there is good hidden reason for this **interpretation**, I will lean to it. Gabriel makes us think he is talking about the untimely end of some ruler's reign when he is really telling us that the reign 'disappears from view' because of the start of The Age of Grace. And since the start of The Age of Grace here is marked by Jesus' birth, this is why there is no mention at all of Augustus' successor, Tiberius Caesar, who reigns at the time of Pentecost.

And surely the bigger reason God so thoroughly concealed this transition is because of Satan rather than for us. And He could **reveal** more details about the two kingdoms in Chapters 2 and 7 because he was misrepresenting these kingdoms as just one kingdom. But God had to be much more careful with the literal descriptions in Daniel 11 to prevent Satan from being able to catch on. Indeed, disguising suchlike transitions in Daniels **prophecies** have proven to be of paramount importance. And no wonder Satan thought his time had come, and that by killing Jesus he could foil God's plans.

By-the-way, it may have occurred to you by now that this layering of accounts throughout Verses 4-20 is exactly what is going on in Revelation 12, though we don't have the elusive Age of Grace 'gap' to find there, and except I don't have a full resolution of the breaks in the accounts there, nor should I necessarily expect this yet either, as God may still be doing some hiding in Revelation we're not supposed to figure out till sometime after The Abomination of Desolation. But this kind of **exercise** will not cease to be helpful to further revise, refine, correct, and improve our **interpretations** of these chapters, and more besides. And other than **exercise**, we've also traversed through history from the fall of Nineveh of the Assyrians in 612 BC to the 'omission' of Augustus from history at Jesus' birth. All this is necessary to **understanding** what comes next. And that would be the same period popularly called The 70th Week of Daniel.

And again, though it's certainly worth adding to your **study**, we won't cover Daniel 9 in this one, because the rest of Daniel 11 and 12 cover this 70th Week in much more detail. Besides, we're really already outlining God's plan like Daniel 9 does, but we're doing it a much longer and harder way. So maybe another time. And as I said there are already a lot of good studies on it out there. You can even find some on blbclassic.org (the site address has changed)—click the blocked "L" next to any verse to "List Available Commentaries". This is a good resource with good **teachers** to choose from. Just remember you are responsible to **understand, prove, and test** everything they **teach** yourself. And when we're finished with this **study**, you should be able to distinguish between a good one and a bad one for yourself, and find the **errors** that we **teachers** make too. I **know** I never cease finding them—both mine and those of others. But this is The Natural Progression of The Word of God. And this is the way we're supposed to **grow in grace, and in the knowledge of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ**.

So, this is where we jump into the future—beyond The Age of Grace to the description of the Antichrist and his kingdom in the time of The Great Tribulation. But many see the Antichrist's début in Verse 36 instead of Verse 21 for two similar reasons. The first is attributed to Porphyry of Tyros, a third century Greek pagan whose 'religion' originated with Plato. This religion is identified by some as Neo-Platonism, a subset of Gnosticism (read, 'know-it-all-ism'), and he likely didn't even believe in angels—while he lived, that is. He would have been among the kind who would have produced the self-aggrandizing, perverted 'copies' of 'scripture', some of which are unfortunately still available on older manuscripts than the copies of the faithfully reproduced **Textus Receptus**. I mean authenticity is not best determined by which manuscript is older, but by who is 'handling' the 'copies'—and a more often 'handled' manuscript will naturally wear out faster and need to be faithfully recopied more often, wouldn't it. And guys like

Porphyry of Tyros—hereafter referred to as Mr. Pompous-ass—were archenemies of true Christianity. And unfortunately, because of him there are those that continue to maintain that The Book of Daniel is a fabrication written by Maccabean Jews who were still gloating over defeating Mr. Greaseball, Antiochus IV. Yes, it's this Pompous-ass that first taught that the last prophecy of Daniel focused on that Greaseball from 164 BC. It's true that the Jews did start their celebration of Hanukkah over this successful revolt. But we have already seen that Gabriel has considerably less to say about Mr. Greaseball than Mr. Pompous-ass was somehow able to imagine.

The second reason why the Antichrist is not seen until later in Chapter 11 is attributable to anyone, not unlike Mr. Pompous-ass, who simply draws way too many conclusions from way too little **understanding** of the passage. These 'handle' **scripture** like **babes**, or worse, like **wolves in sheep's clothing**, either not knowing or maybe not even caring about the consequences of their proclaimed ignorance. The most disturbing fact here, however, is that some of my **teachers** still side with Mr. Pompous-ass—hopefully not knowing where the teaching came from. But if they were 'approvably' mature they would instead **teach** that they have no acceptable **interpretation** for much of the **prophecy**. And they would be much more helpful admitting that they are still waiting on answers here. But despite **babes**—and I mean even despite the immaturity of some of our best **teachers**, and despite **wolves**—our **understanding** of The Word of God is supposed to improve over time.

But there is another reason why many think the Antichrist doesn't appear until Verse 36. This would be that some of Satan's strength resides in our ignorance about him and his plans. It's not hard to imagine why he prefers as little of his true identity exposed as possible. You can guess how much less he wants his future plans for the Antichrist exposed. It's all about using our ignorance against us. But get ready, he is about to be further exposed.

I suppose the [MAP of Alexander the Great's Quartered Greek Empire \(p.224\)](#) might mean a little more to you by now. We **know** the origin of the Antichrist cannot come from Egypt (the green area), and that he must come from one of the other three of these kingdoms (the pink, gold, or gray areas). Still, there seems to be a strong connection to the Seleucid Kingdom (the gray one). But how can we be sure whether he simply comes from one of these kingdoms and establishes his empire elsewhere, or does both in one of them. But we do **know** that neither of these scenarios can change the fact that he will end up in Israel at the mid-point either way.

Having gone this far through Daniel 11, we can see that God focuses a lot of his attention in this **prophecy** on the conflicts between the Ptolemaic and Seleucid Kingdoms in The Six Syrian Wars. And there are a lot of people pulling for the Antichrist and his kingdom being established in this region of the former Seleucid Kingdom, also home of the former Babylonian and Medo-Persian Empires. But we have really seen nothing conclusively in favor of this case. And we have already seen that, geographically, there is a strong case against it. But there are a couple more references that seem to support it that we'll eventually get to. And the resolution of all this must involve all of these details and more. The strongest case must be made without any visible contradiction or compartmentalization. And when we're done, we'll be able to confirm that the Antichrist will establish his kingdom in a region mostly

missing from this map. So since we've come all this way to identify more attributes of the Antichrist and his kingdom, let's get to it. And the richest source of essential information about the Antichrist, now that we're ready to **understand** it, is in the remainder of Daniel 11, starting in Verse 21.

Still, I should reemphasize about now that this is a newly discovered view of this transition in Daniel's **prophecy**—at least for me. It's also appropriate to make clear that for these last about 20 years since 'the day star dawned in my heart', I remained mostly lost in this chapter. But I remember wanting to **know** who this guy in Verse 20 was from the very beginning, and I asked repeatedly over the years. I tried to find possibilities in his time zone. But I had nothing that I thought really fit. And it's hard to identify anyone in this chapter when distracted with trying to figure out who everyone else is. I ruled out Augustus as a possibility for this verse early on, while at the same time trying to squeeze him into some of the others. So this guy in Verse 20 was always messing things up. But then again, it all kept coming back to this one guy. And one day not long ago everyone else finally fell into place, and when they did, and when I could see that The Age of Grace was part of the equation, I could finally see how the guy I had long ago ruled out really was a perfect fit. And I believe this was all God's doing and timing.

But again, most the **understanding** in the first 20 verses of this chapter is new to at least me. And this figurative, as opposed to literal, concealed presentation of Augustus—that **hid** who he was by his connection to the start of The Age of Grace—is the **revelation** that God showed me most recently. And it's funny, because God showed me very early on that I was supposed be careful about figurative versus literal interpretations. On the other hand, early on I could tell that everyone else I was aware of—and I have listened to lots of 'teachers of prophecy'—were at least as lost as I was in this chapter, and as far as I **know** still are.

The point is that these new **revelations** must be refineable over time, which is and should be the case with all 'new revelations'. But it's also fair to say that I have waited in **patience** and **faith** for a long time for this, and that **the time** for it has come. All these considerations make me confident that we have something new here from God that is at least worth **continuing to prove**. But I am also confident because most of what's left in Chapters 11 and 12 has been already long ago **revealed** to me by my **teachers**. And because I **believed** God would finish opening this **prophecy** for us eventually—as if waiting was a choice.

But I misunderstood something else until very recently. I thought that **the time of the end** had already fully come because I **understood** most of Daniel's **prophecies** except for this annoying little—OK, huge—section in Daniel 11. Somehow I overlooked the fact that Gabriel's **instruction** to Daniel that he **shut up the words, and seal the book, even to the time of the end** applied just as much to Daniel 11 as 12, and not really so much to the rest of his **prophecies**. And **teachers** aren't allowed to use the excuse that other **teachers** were overlooking this too. So I believed that it was **'the time of the end'** even though no one I knew could anywhere near fully **understand** this chapter—though too many acted as if they could. I mean an embarrassing number were going along with Mr. Pompous-ass—however ignorantly—and unfortunately still are. But in fact, one of the characteristics of a living **faith** should be that you are in a perpetual process

of waiting on God for answers that he hasn't given to you yet. My ongoing relationship with God proves to me again and again he will eventually answer me. Sometimes He's very fast—like when he answers so fast that it occurs to me that He must have known what I was going to ask beforehand. But also in my **experience**, sometimes, He takes decades or more. And I'm still waiting on some of my decades-old questions too, but not on nearly as many as I used to be, though there is no shortage of new ones.

So by **faith** it is my testimony before God that this **prophecy** is now 'open', meaning that **the time of the end** has now finally fully come, which I see as a great **revelation** indeed. And I mean that God has shown me the 'rightly divided' **interpretation** or the **prophecy** is still at least somewhat 'closed'. But don't get too excited. That doesn't mean I think The Rapture of the Church could happen any moment. Actually, I will **continue** making the case that it's still going to be a while, at least from our perspective anyway. Some of the **proof** of this will be coming directly from **scripture**, and some by **watching** scripturally indicated current events ([Luke 12:37](#); [21:34-37](#); [Mat 24:42-44](#); [25:13](#); [Mar 13:33-37](#); [1Pe 4:7](#); [Act 20:28-31](#); [Rev 3:3](#)). But I can't say often enough that the better **proof** of all this is in the entire **interpretation** of this **prophecy** altogether, which we are still in the process of, and that even better is this entire **study** and beyond.

Moving on then, we can next notice that from this point to the end of the chapter, the apparent complete lack of character changes in the person of **the king of the north** becomes the best clues to help us decipher what is happening. And this must be discerned from the descriptions of the events themselves that we will see naturally support this conclusion because of what we already **know** about the Antichrist. And this is how we will at the same time identify additional heretofore unknown attributes of his. But again, 'everyone' already recognizes him in Verse 36 on. He has been made famous by these verses. But you should prepare yourself to **learn** a lot more about the Antichrist's behavior in The Great Tribulation than you've heard before. That is, if you think you're 'mature' enough for it.

So the first thing we should notice in Verse 21 is that we are dealing with a new **'king of the north'**. Remember there is reason to believe that it's no accident that the terms 'king' or 'kingdom' are not used in Verses 16-19 because it's during the days of the 'Caesar-less' Roman Republic. And Julius would be the next **'king of the north'** because he is referred to in these terms in Verse 6, and because he is seen rising to and falling from this position in Verses 17-19. And we can now see that it's the reign of Caesar Augustus' that follows in Verse 20—specifically referred to as over a **kingdom**. And the authority that he attains over his **kingdom** implies that he is the next **'king of the north'**.

And it's clearly a new character introduced in Verse 21 that will **...obtain the kingdom...** And **he** appears to be the same character who is specifically called **the king of the north** in Verse 40, who 'everyone' identifies as the Antichrist. So again, it is appearances—that there appear to be no more character changes in **the king of the north** from here on—which is our first clue that we should at least suspect that the Antichrist first appears in Verse 21. I mean besides that The Age of Grace is **hidden** in Verse 20. But this alone is not conclusive, especially because there have been so many character changes in **the king of the north** in previous

verses seen only by the events and without much other notice. So this will require us to **understand** all the future events too—at least to a certain extent.

But we do **know** that the entire 7-year Antichrist Kingdom will have just one supreme king, and that this king's reign begins when he gains controls of 10 others. We also **know** he dies and is resurrected along the way. And because of what we now **know** about the preceding 16-verse description of the rise and fall of the entirely 'unhidden' Greek Empire, we should at least guess that the arguably most important Antichrist Kingdom—that should also be entirely 'unhidden'—should get the most detailed description of all—if it all fits. And it does, double meaning intended as usual. I mean I see by far the identifiably longest description in this chapter to be about the Antichrist and his **kingdom** starting in Verse 21. I see the initial covenant, and the takeover, and rise to power of the Antichrist over his kingdom. I see his Beginning-of-Sorrows armed conflicts and the negotiations with Egypt. I even see the World powers in conflict with the Antichrist that at one point force his retreat. I also see the Antichrist's '**devises**' against Israel that lead to The Abomination of Desolation. Beyond this I see the ones who are persecuted, suffering and dying for their faith in Christ much like we have already seen portrayed by John in his vision, and by Jesus in His end times Discourse on The Mount of Olives. And I see all of this and more before Verse 36, where the Antichrist is more popularly believed to appear, at least to those who are like I used to be—lost in Daniel 11.

We are also 'navigating on a course' that assumes that whoever 'stands up' in Verse 21, **shall stand up in** Caesar Augustus' **estate** or "in his place" or "in his station". So we are no longer seeing this **king of the north** as 'Persian', or in the line of the Greek Seleucid Dynasty, and we **understand** that those who do are 'way off course'. Yes, we started in the third year of **Cyrus the Persian**, but the 'kings of the north' have changed from Persian to Greek to Roman while the 'kings of the south' have all been Greeks in **Egypt**. So if indeed this '**king of the north**' in Verse 20 is Augustus, and if the **vile person** in [Verse 21](#) that **in his estate shall stand up** is the Antichrist, then the **estate** of the Antichrist here is the former Roman Empire, certainly not the Medo-Persian or any other part of the Greek Empire. And this need not conflict with the fact that **he**, the Antichrist, must come **out of**, in one way or another, one of the divisions of the Greek Empire. And all this seems to be a clue that though **he** may come **out of** one of three Greek Kingdoms—Egypt being already excluded—his **estate** appears to be Augustus' Roman Empire. And the **estate** of Rome under Augustus is quite vast, covering most all of Satan's former kingdoms and much more throughout Europe and North Africa except, because of those pesky Parthians, most of Persia.

So, bringing with us our expectation from Chapter 8 that this new '**king of the north**' is a king somehow coming **out of one of** the **four notable** kingdoms of Alexander the Great's quartered empire, we now add a new expectation from Daniel 11—that he establishes himself in the same **kingdom** of the **estate** of Caesar Augustus. And this implies that only the former kingdoms of Cassander (pink) and Lysimachus (gold) can be considered eligible regions that fall fully within Augustus' **estate**. I mean if the Antichrist is to originate and rise in the same country—both in one of

Alexander's kingdoms and also fully within Augustus's **estate**, it looks like we're talking about someone from present day Greece, Macedonia, or Bulgaria.

But the coastal regions of Lysimachus' kingdom in present day Turkey which were also in Augustus' realm shared the rest of present day Turkey with the former Seleucid Kingdom, a region not controlled by Augustus. Again, it's the Parthians that hold most of the former Seleucid Kingdom, including a good part of present day Turkey, during Augustus' reign. In this perspective, Lysimachus' kingdom is a more debatable candidate for the origin for the Antichrist Kingdom because it implies the splitting of Turkey again. Still, you could say that these choices all more or less fit everything except, if you've been **watching**, that a 'world-ruling', 10-nation confederacy doesn't pop right out at you that could arise from any of these nations.

But, if the Antichrist's **estate** is established in Augustus' **estate** but **he** himself does not originate within that region, then **he** could very well 'originate' anywhere in 'Persia'. And certainly we will see that he must rise to power in one of 10 European countries—not necessarily including Greece, Macedonia, or Bulgaria—and that an original **estate** in 'Persia'—including Turkey, Syria, Iraq and Iran, etc.—is out of the question. And I mean that we will **prove** that the Antichrist must come out of Persia but will establish his **kingdom** first in Europe.

But many nowadays are predicting the fall of 'Westernized' Europe because of the growing Muslim factions within, and of the fall of The United States too. But **prophecy** does not predict this. It will not be so. But again, Muslim extremists, with the help of the Muslim moderates who fear them, will cause lots more trouble in Southwest Asia, Europe, North Africa, America, and beyond. But 'original' Europeans will eventually rise and rally around their strongest cultural bond which is their shared religious culture. This same religious culture is going to be the real 'mover and shaker' in the Americas too. And the Antichrist will be behind it all. This we will **prove** too which we are already in the process of doing.

Our **understanding** so far tells us that the Antichrist, appearing in one of the three eligible Greek dynasties, is repeatedly transplanted, probably settling in locations all over Europe, but ultimately in Israel. And all this fits with current events—most of which we will come to **understand** that Gabriel predicts right here in the remainder of Chapter 11. And don't worry that you don't see all this yet. Top evangelical **teachers** of **prophecy** don't either. But repeated review of the parts that you're not sure you **understood** is always in order.

So we're looking for the Antichrist—either him or the successor of Augustus, Tiberius Caesar—in the next...

...vile person, to whom they shall not give the honour of the kingdom: but he shall come in peaceably, and obtain the kingdom by flatteries. And with the arms of a flood shall they be overflown from before him, and shall be broken; yea, also the prince of the covenant [Verse 21-22](#).

I see these two verses doing a similar job as Verses 5 and 6—they give a summary that will be followed up with layered detail. And the first thing we

learn is to be expected. The Antichrist is popularly believed to be **revealed** when **he shall confirm the covenant with many for one week** [Dan 9:27](#). He is the ultimate negotiator, as well as the ultimate flatterer. So that by peaceful negotiations and some later confirmed 'dishonorable' and 'deceitful' political maneuvering, **he shall come in peaceably, and obtain the kingdom by flatteries**. This must be when **he shall... obtain** the first of the 10 kingdoms that he will use to 'uproot three' and thereby gain control of them all.

This 'uprooting' must be what we see in [Verse 22](#), where Gabriel records,

And with the arms of a flood shall they be overflowed from before him, and shall be broken...

This **flood** must be a metaphor for a swift and powerful army in action. And this implies that **he** initially peacefully commandeers the army of just one kingdom and with it shortly thereafter violently overcomes three—or possibly three more—with which **he** forces the issue with the remainder. These are the **three kings** that **he shall subdue** from [Daniel 7:24](#). And logically, since **also the prince of the covenant** is **overflowed** and **broken** in this 'blitzkrieg', I don't take it that Gabriel is talking about Jesus. I instead take it to mean that the original king he outmaneuvers also becomes a causality of this **flood**. And I also take it to mean that this same first king, into whose kingdom the Antichrist **shall come in peaceably**, will also be the key player along with the Antichrist in establishing the 7-year **covenant with many** that the Antichrist **confirms** [Dan 9:27](#).

So again, this violent overthrow of **three kings** must include the original **prince of the covenant**, who is involved with, and most responsible for, helping to **reveal the mystery of iniquity**—the Antichrist—by the far-reaching peace treaty they evidently brokered together. And apparently we also see here that the signing of this treaty is pretty much the signing of the death warrant of **the prince of the covenant**. It will be his undoing, and also apparently 'starts the clock' on The Great Tribulation.

[Verse 23](#) elaborates upon this story that begins in Verses 21 and 22 with more detail, restarting again with the Antichrist's 'peaceful entrance' into the first of the 10 kingdoms. Right away we can see a similar pattern to how Gabriel unfolds the story of the Greek Empire. And we now **know** that for the Roman Empire there simply wasn't enough 'exposable detail', along with a plan to avoid calling much attention to this limited detail, to see much of a pattern at all in the descriptions of that kingdom. And this is how we can see that the descriptions of Rome are more or less hidden in and merged into the descriptions of the Greek and Antichrist Kingdoms. But there is clearly a 'pattern restart' here that helps those of us with New Testament hindsight to see that a new story of a new kingdom is beginning.

The fact that the Antichrist will usurp authority **peaceably** is established elsewhere by Gabriel. In Chapter 8, he explains to Daniel that the Antichrist **by peace shall destroy many** [Dan 8:25](#). In Chapter 11 [Verse 23](#), he adds that...

...after the league [or 'peace treaty'] made with him he shall work deceitfully: for he shall come up, and shall become strong with a small people.

So here we have elaboration on how he 'gets his foot in the door' with **a small people** through his **league** or **covenant** with a number of nations—a treaty possibly involving **many** more nations than the **ten** he'll take over. We also see here that he'll **deceitfully** use it to leverage control of his **ten**. Seems clear enough.

By-the way, up to this point there should be some uncertainty as to whether **the league** or the 'uprooting' comes first. The confirmation that **the league** or **the covenant** must come first is finally seen in this verse. I mean maybe you thought that since **the covenant** itself is defined to be for seven years that it must in turn define The Great Tribulation and therefore must be the only event that can mark The Mystery of Iniquity. This is the popular version that we have all been lead to believe anyway. Well, there is more evidence for that conclusion now because we can confirm here that the Antichrist must 'uproot three kings' **after the league** by 'working' **deceitfully**. This also goes with the idea that the **flatteries** that allow the Antichrist to **obtain the kingdom** from **the prince of the covenant** must happen during the negotiation of **the league**. But more importantly, this is another reminder to be careful about what you think is proven about things that haven't happened yet. Because in spite of everything we should be expecting that things will actually go down in a way we did not really fully foresee. I mean it's still the 'unrevealed' **mystery of iniquity** after all, isn't it? And by-the-way, The Rapture must come just before The Mystery of Iniquity is **revealed**, so it could be considered a marker of it too—a marker that must precede it. And we will see other markers that must precede it before we're done. And one more thing, it's obvious that none of this account from Verse 20 on fits Tiberius Caesar at all.

So next we must be seeing the Antichrist settling into his newly won kingdom. Gabriel says,

He shall enter peaceably even upon the fattest places of the province; and he shall do that which his fathers have not done, nor his fathers' fathers; he shall scatter among them the prey, and spoil, and riches: yea, and he shall forecast his devices against the strong holds, even for a time [Verse 24](#).

If a **'time, times and half a time'** is 3½ years, then **a time** may very likely be about 1 year. And we can assume here that we are talking about the Antichrist's focus in the first year of his kingdom which is the first year of The Beginning of Sorrows. And the 'unconventional' approach spoken of here is really no mystery either because it's directly explained as a specific policy that has not gone on for generations. I mean I expect the presently longstanding operations of modern civil government that will then have been going on since **his fathers' fathers** will degenerate to, probably, a more Roman-Republic style of operations. I mean instead of the modern 'one man, one vote' egalitarian democracy that Western Europeans have become used

to, we should expect a regression from universal civil rights and liberties to a system where the Antichrist will clearly be seen to ally with one 'majority group in order to **scatter** and make **prey** of all the minority ones. I see him reverting back to the pre-Augustus 'confiscation method' of revenue raising, otherwise known as **spoil**, but in a way that only victimizes these 'minority, outcast factions'.

But the implication is that this "plot" or "plan" will take **time** because the last line of this verse seems to be a summary of this 'mini-campaign' that includes a timetable. Gabriel concludes,

...yea [or to make a long story short]... he shall forecast his devices against the strong holds, even for a time.

So he will need evidently about a year to defeat, round up and/or eradicate certain of these 'undesirable factions' within his kingdom. This **interpretation** will receive more support and clarification as we go, but Verse 24 is the first example we've come to so far that really begs a question. And the question is, which 'faction' or 'factions' will the Antichrist find desirable, and which ones will he **scatter** and make **prey** of and **spoil**? We've already talked about how I expect the Antichrist will be rounding up and/or exterminating Jews and Christians during The Beginning of Sorrows. This is a no-brainer. I mean we're talking about the Antichrist here—in his kingdom. He will not do any less to Jews than Hitler did to them. We'll also see it makes sense that he will be rounding up Muslims somewhere along the way too. But who will be doing all this 'rounding up'? In Europe, the strongest dominating 'cultural faction' would be the Catholics. I see them 'rounding up' and/or 'exterminating' Jews and Muslims, but also the 'new' Protestants—the 'old' ones having left in The Rapture.

But aren't Catholics Christians? Yes and No. They certainly haven't always gotten along with Protestants. But that story is told in the next section. So I'm going to ask you at this point to just go along with me for a while on this one until we get through it all, sometime next section. Then you'll at least see my point of view. Of course, I also maintain that it's God's point of view because **scripture** leaves us no other reasonable alternative.

And whatever the case, we can already tell here that the Antichrist will use the strongest 'cultural faction' as his ally to gain control, his specific strategy being to bring down **the strong holds** of the 'enemy factions', including surely the synagogues of Jews, but likely also the churches of Protestants, and finally the mosques of Muslims. And in order to accomplish all this he will evidently have to **forecast** or "plot" **against the strong holds** of his enemies **for a time**. The Jews should be easily enough overcome first because of their small numbers. And the Protestants should also be easily enough overcome next because of The Rapture. The Muslims could be a little tougher, and I don't expect the Antichrist's conflict with them to remain entirely inside his borders as we will see. But I'm sure the Antichrist's strategy will be impeccably effective. Once again, we will strengthen this case as we go. And on this same course, other cases for the rise of the Antichrist Kingdom among the Muslim tribes of Southwest Asia or in 'the melting pot' known as The United States will, in due course, be rejected. But here we can only tell for sure that the Antichrist will initially **peaceably** and

deceitfully, and ultimately ruthlessly, **come in** and **spoil** part of his own kingdom for the benefit of another part. But this also seems to imply that in order for him to **come in**, he will first have to come **out of** someplace else.

We should likewise recognize that the beginning of [Verse 24](#) implies that the Antichrist changes his original 'camp' in his new kingdom evidently repeatedly. We see here that he resides in multiple **places**. So after completing his original 'bait and switch' campaign—'baiting' with peace and 'switching' to all out war that gains him control of his empire—he evidently goes 'upscale'. In other words,

He shall enter peaceably even upon the fattest places of the province.

Where his original headquarters is and where he originally comes from before that we

still don't **know** for sure. But the progression so far probably goes something like this. He gets famous from wherever he's originally from for his work on **the league**, and he then lands by his expertise in **flattery** and his talent to **work deceitfully** with enough control over a **small** European country to exploit this power to take over most of Europe, after which he makes himself welcome in the 'richest' **places** of the kingdom, probably **places** like Versailles, or Buckingham Palace, and some other of the **fattest places** in Europe. I mean I'm assuming he will be changing 'camps' frequently during The Beginning of Sorrows. And again, the idea is that the 'camps' will be more like Camp David than anything the U.S. Forest Service has available.

Naturally, having created such a **stir** in his new kingdom, the Antichrist will **stir up** his neighbors too. To the south of the Antichrist's new empire, across the Mediterranean Sea, I expect will probably still be what is now Sunni Muslim Egypt. The Muslims there will necessarily be among the nations more than upset by the way the Antichrist is running things in his new empire. And we should see that by the start of The Beginning of Sorrows that **'Egypt'** will again be the chief of all the Muslim nations in the Muslim World as they have been before. This dominance existed as recently as during the Six Day War against Israel in 1967 when they mustered 100,000 Egyptian troops on the Sinai Peninsula but were nonetheless handily defeated by Israel. I don't really **know** the condition of their army today, but it's certainly not now any real threat to Israel. And I doubt it's **a very great and mighty army** yet. But I do **know** that in the aftermath of The Six Day War they vowed to rebuild their defeated forces. And I **know** that, at least eventually, they will because I see Gabriel telling us in [Verse 25](#) that **the king of the south**, plainly still in **Egypt**, will again have **a very great and mighty army** which will contend with the Antichrist's lesser but nonetheless **great army** in that day.

This, by-the-way, is one of the ways **scripture** shows us that The Rapture of the Church—or the start of The Great Tribulation—is not likely to happen anytime real soon. **Egypt** evidently needs more time to fit this description again. And there are still other reasons from **scripture** that The Great Tribulation is 'not imminent' that we will get to further on. Still, most of the indicators seem to be already in place, many of which we will also **continue** to establish along the way. But I find it ironic that the coming of **the time of**

the end makes it possible for us to see that **time** cannot be quite up yet. [Verses 25-28](#) describe the first of three major conflicts between the Antichrist **king of the north** and this future Egyptian **king of the south** in The Beginning of Sorrows. These wars involving the Antichrist are allegorized in The First Seal Judgment by John. In this opening judgment we see the 'rider' on...

...a white horse... [who] had a bow; and [who had] a crown... given unto him: and [who]... went forth conquering, and to conquer [Rev 6:2](#).

This summary of the Antichrist and his wars in The Beginning of Sorrows must include his original Catholic Revolutionary War to take over his kingdom, and the three conflicts with Egypt too. But the only successful **conquering** he accomplishes early on applies to his own kingdom, at least until the end of The Beginning of Sorrows. This is because we will see in his first conflict with Egypt that though they are all **stirred up**, and though the Antichrist nonetheless makes some 'gains', these two kingdoms don't really come to blows. And we'll see that he is 'backed down' from a fight by the participating 'superpowers' in the second Egyptian conflict. But he does ultimately **conquer** Egypt by the end of The Beginning of Sorrows, and **many** others beyond the midpoint of The Great Tribulation.

In [Verse 25](#) Gabriel tells us that the Antichrist seems to be the one with the better **courage** and **forecast** to get in the 'first strike' against the Egyptians. This apparently includes the best intelligence, espionage, and strategic planning. And apparently, since he's the guy with the smaller army, instead of directly attacking them, his first plans involve dividing and weakening Egypt without really having to fight them. So this future originally **very great and mighty army** of Egypt's will in the whole process be twice whipped by the Antichrist's comparatively merely **great army**, but not conquered until the last of their three 'confrontations'.

In the first 'confrontation', the Antichrist definitely **shall stir up** his **great army**. And **the king of the south** will plainly **be stirred up to battle with a very great and mighty army** too. But this Egyptian king will not get the chance to engage, because...

...they [the Antichrist and his Egyptian insider-conspirator] shall forecast devices ["plots" or "schemes"] against him.

Here **they** must be the Antichrist and his 'conspiring-on-the-inside' Egyptian usurper, and **him** must be the sitting Egyptian **king of the south**. The conspiratorial **devices** would apparently involve some kind of Antichrist-supported Egyptian coup d'état. This is further suggested in [Verse 26](#)—which adds to the description of this war that it's indeed ultimately won by espionage—that the Antichrist exploits an 'insider' to **destroy** the Egyptian king from within while in the process causing **many** Egyptians to **fall down slain**. The picture given is that the Egyptian army seems to **overflow** on itself.

So this First Egyptian War may be better described as a civil war in Egypt that the Antichrist instigates and orchestrates. He simply gets the Egyptians

to fight among themselves. He only feigns war with them as a distraction to the sitting king so a usurper can catch him off guard. This civil war could easily be a Shia versus Sunni Muslim thing that the Antichrist simply takes advantage of. But more likely the Antichrist just plays on the jealousy of a general or official and/or relative of the Egyptian king by offering support for the overthrow. And it will be a successful "plan" where again the victors are seen to 'divide the spoils'.

[Verse 26](#) also suggest that the Antichrist may have in advance a connection into the highest circles of the Egyptian government—that he may have an existing relationship with someone who is close enough to **the king of the south** to 'eat at his table' or **feed of the portion of his meat**. Did he establish this connection working on **the league**? Or maybe he grew up in an intersecting circle of Muslims? Whatever the case, at first glance this appears to be an unlikely connection, unless all this implies that the Antichrist is that unique character that is accepted in both European Catholic and in at least some high Muslim circles. He at least seems to be accepted as an ally of sorts in a certain top circle of the Egyptian government early in his empire. So we'll have to keep our eye on this possibility as we go.

And this point compartmentalized by itself might lead you to think the Antichrist's kingdom must be in Southwest Asia. But Gabriel has already oriented us to the Antichrist's apparently European geo-political 'outlook'. And we'll see more of this same perspective later on. But the ultimate **proof** that the Antichrist operates originally from Europe is the ineligibility of Southwest Asia and the U.S. to host his kingdom due to their clear involvements in other capacities, or incapacities, as the case may be. In any event, the final result of this conspiratorial first conflict with **Egypt**, besides that **many** [Egyptians] **fall down slain** in a surprise attack from the rear by their own countrymen, is that this insider-conspirator and the Antichrist will finally openly negotiate and 'divide the spoils' of **Egypt**.

And in [Verse 27](#) the final resolution of The First Egyptian War is seen at the 'bargaining table' where...

...both these kings' hearts [the Antichrist's and the new usurping Egyptian's] **shall be to do mischief, and they shall speak lies at one table; but it shall not prosper: for yet the end shall be at the time appointed.**

Here we are informed that the new **king of the south** and the Antichrist come to an 'agreement' that neither of them intends to keep. It's also made clear here that this is not **yet the end** of the conflict, and that it's not really even started, but that it's being '**forecast**' as they **speak lies at one table** [read, 'negotiate'], and that it will undoubtedly come **at the time appointed**. So the outcome of this first round of **mischief** and **lies** is plainly just the first step in the Antichrist's plan to divide and weaken **Egypt** so that in the next war he can **conquer** them. Still, there are other 'encouragements' for the Antichrist's participation in this Egyptian civil war that he will take home with him, but also some 'disappointments' that will also come 'sailing' his way that will 'blockade' his next attempt to attack Egypt, as we will see.

[Verse 28](#) further clarifies that it must have been a planned conspiracy against the first **king of the south** to unseat **him**. This is seen in the

postwar showcasing of the Antichrist's 'bargaining prowess' following the conflict. The Antichrist is shown here to take home a 'big chunk of change' for his troubles, to **return into his land with great riches**. It's also shown to be when his '**mischief**' and '**lies**' really get going **against** the Jews in Israel, and probably **against** Protestants worldwide too. We can tell this because **his heart shall be against the holy covenant**. And the center of this **holy covenant** would be in Israel.

Now **the holy covenant** in question here must be the covenant between God and his people the Jews. And being **against** such a **holy covenant** must be referring to the Antichrist's actions that he takes because of his hatred of the Jews. I also expect this 'hostility' must be supported by his politically and economically motivated 'religious affiliation', which will also dictate his both internal and international contempt for Muslims. And this contempt for Muslims—besides their being generally uncooperative—is mostly because they are in the way between him and the Jews. But the ultimate expression of the Antichrist's contempt for both Muslims and Jews will not be seen until The Third Egyptian War near the end of The Beginning of Sorrows. This is the war that will finally throw open the door for the overthrow of Israel. But when it comes to the Antichrist's widespread problem with Muslims, God will take care of most of that for him—which the Antichrist will undoubtedly take the credit for. And as for the other *exploits* of the Antichrist mentioned in Verse 28 I have nothing specific to add, except that a few verses later we **learn** that **the people that do know their God shall be strong, and do exploits** at this time too.

The next major conflict involving the Antichrist Kingdom in The Beginning of Sorrows, apparently near the halfway point of the first 3 ½ years, probably doesn't significantly involve the Antichrist Kingdom at all, but surely involves the new Muslim **king of the south**. We can see by the earlier 'negotiations' that this new Egyptian king can't wait to get at the Antichrist, but we can also deduce that there must be someone else he wants to get at even more. And that would be Israel. But instead of this new **king of the south** leading the attack on such a campaign, he finds someone even bigger and stronger to lead this one. And that would be a king in an empire to the **far north** presently called Russia. But **the king of the south** will also get help from a lot of his neighbors too. These neighbors will surely include Turkey, Syria, Iran, Iraq, and Libya—assuming these all remain separate countries. And these may even get help from still other North African or Southwest Asian Muslim countries. This 'horde' of Muslim countries will inevitably join in an attack coordinated by Russia on Israel. And of course, it will be a wipeout, because God will be doing all the fighting. The now **more sure word of prophecy** makes clear that no coalition of nations will have a chance against Israel in The Beginning of Sorrows. But again, it also makes clear that Israel will fall to the Antichrist at the midpoint. We will also confirm that this mid-Beginning-of-Sorrows 'wipeout' of the Russians and Muslims in Southwest Asia is probably the best reason why the Antichrist Kingdom cannot be established anywhere in this region. But for now suffice it to say that this Russian and Muslim 'earthshaking' war against Israel must be a major factor in the Antichrist's ultimate success in his third war with **the king of the south**. Russia, Egypt and the rest of the Muslim World will necessarily be significantly weakened as a result of joining this attack on Israel. And the

Antichrist will undoubtedly try to take advantage of and credit for this unimaginably awesome defense of Israel by God. But the full confirmation of this 'wipeout' won't be completed until [SECTION 9](#).

In [Verse 29](#) we find Gabriel's comparison of the three campaigns of the Antichrist against Egypt where he explains how the middle campaign is different from the first and last. This also proves there are three of them altogether. And without this verse we might assume otherwise, and we would not **know** that Verse 30 is about this 'different' middle campaign that somehow **shall not be as the former, or as the latter**. And in Verse 30 we should expect to see how it's different too.

By-the way, we are also seeing as we go, as surmised earlier, that this still all appears to be the same **king of the north** since Verse 21. The obviousness of this is again seen in the fact that all three of these campaigns must be carried out by the same **king of the north**, namely, the Antichrist. And I think this observation alone is sufficient enough to **prove** the case that there is only one **king of the north** in Verses 21-45, though we have already confirmed two different kings of **Egypt** so far.

In [Verse 30](#) we see why the Antichrist's middle campaign is different. This would be because the Antichrist loses this one. And this would be because **Egypt**—and I expect anyone else in the region who needs it—will have different help in this second 'war' with the Antichrist Kingdom. And this different help will successfully frustrate the Antichrist to the end that, **therefore he shall be grieved, and return** home. Who will 'grieve' the Antichrist and send him home? And how? Verse 30 tells us it's because the **ships of Chittim shall come against him**.

If the Muslim World and Russia are already crippled by God in their attack on Israel by this time—and they probably are—the remainder of the World, except the Catholics, will be understandably concerned about the Antichrist's aspirations given these new opportunities. [Verses 29-30](#) show that when the **time appointed** appears to have come for the Antichrist to again **return** and attack a newly vulnerable Egypt, it's instead the time when his new empire is confronted by **the ships of Chittim**. The Easton Bible Dictionary definition of **Chittim** is as follows:

Kittim [or Chittim], a plural form ([Gen 10:4](#)), the name of a branch of the descendants of Javan, the "son" of Japheth [son of Noah]. Balaam foretold ([Num 24:24](#)) "that ships shall come from the coast of Chittim, and afflict Eber." Daniel prophesied ([Dan 11:30](#)) that the ships of Chittim would come against the king of the north. It probably denotes Cyprus, whose ancient capital was called Kition by the Greeks. The references elsewhere made to Chittim ([Isa 23:1,12](#); [Jer 2:10](#); [Ezek 27:6](#)) are to be explained on the ground that while the name originally designated the Phoenicians only, it came latterly to be used of all the islands and various settlements on the sea-coasts which they had occupied, and then of the people who succeeded them when the Phoenician power decayed. Hence it designates generally the islands and coasts of the Mediterranean and the races that inhabit them.

And it's the last designation in this definition, that **Chittim** refers to 'the

successors of Phoenician naval power' and to "generally the islands and coasts of the Mediterranean", that makes the most sense in [Verse 30](#). And what better term is available to Gabriel if he wants to allude to the great naval powers in existence at this future time, no matter where they came from? **Tarshish** (or **Tharshish**), the brother of **Kittim**, has become a term that is nearly synonymous, also defined by Eaton:

It appears that this name [**Tarshish**] also is [as **Chittim**] used without reference to any locality. "Ships of Tarshish" is an expression sometimes denoting simply ships intended for a long voyage ([Isa 23:14](#)), ships of a large size (sea-going ships), whatever might be the port to which they sailed. Solomon's ships were so styled ([1Ki 10:22; 22:49](#)).

So evidently Gabriel did not choose **ships of Tarshish** here because they are, though large and possibly warships too, more commonly identified as merchant cargo ships traveling on long voyages, often beyond the mouth of the Mediterranean Sea, whereas **ships of Chittim** are also big but more characteristically hanging out in the Mediterranean and apparently more likely warships than merchant ships. Having said that, I don't see the distinctions between them as being very significant. Gabriel may have tossed a coin on this one—they seem more or less interchangeable to me. Still, I gather that if you wanted to emphasize that a ship was in the process of traveling a long way or was a merchant ship you would more likely think **Tarshish**—originally located at the mouth of the Mediterranean Sea. But if you wanted to emphasize that its operation was focused in the Mediterranean or that it was a warship, you would think **Chittim**.

Of course the **ships** in [Verse 30](#) would logically be best placed in the Mediterranean to discourage this upcoming 'confrontation' between Europe and newly vulnerable Egypt. And I think that whoever was still able to float the biggest boats, and think they could get away with floating them in the Mediterranean Sea in The Beginning of Sorrows, and whoever might be inclined to try to do so in order to keep the peace, and whoever could and would threaten a preemptive strike in a situation deemed out of control between Europe and the Muslim World, and whoever could and would make the Antichrist **return** home 'with his tail between his legs', **grieved**, they must be the owners of these particular **ships of Chittim**. So who could they be? The biggest 'boat-floaters', besides the major European countries already controlled by the Antichrist, would be China, Russia, and The United States

Since we'll clearly see China's involvement coming late in The Days of Vengeance and in a completely different way, I see their participation at this time as less likely. Besides, they would be more inclined to let Europe and the Muslims fight it out so they could come 'mop up' afterward. I also expect that early in The Beginning of Sorrows that China—just like the Antichrist Kingdom and Russia—will be fully occupied with consolidating power in her own region. In China's case this should involve expansion from North Korea to Australia and out into the Pacific. But somewhere in this process China should also expect that there will be someone else who will stand in her way. And I expect that it will be the same 'someone' who obstructs the Antichrist in his first attempt at 'mopping up' the vulnerable Muslims. This kind of

obstruction must be from The United States.

And I'm expecting that like in WWII, The U.S. will be stretched between both hemispheres dealing with all these conflicts. I mean unless the U.S. beforehand withdraws their troops from the Asian Pacific theatre, they must somehow be engaged with China early on. And apparently this kind of worldwide conflict is promised in The 4th Seal Judgment, possibly also implying that the U.S.-China conflict may reach The U.S. mainland early on, or it may take place mostly in the Eastern Pacific, or both. But evidently all this conflict remains mostly outside God's focus of attention around Israel, as we will **continue** to confirm.

I also expect that it's China who will be attracting the Antichrist's attention early in The Days of Vengeance, but again, only in 'theaters' far-removed from Israel. And all this is why I doubt that they provide any of the **ships of Chittim** described in Verse 30. I expect instead that in The Beginning of Sorrows China's ships will be busy about their already expressed intentions to expand control in her own region, The U.S. likely withstanding.

And again, the reason deduction should be expected to play such a big part in **interpretation** when it comes to China and The U.S. is that God's attention is always centered on Israel. We will **continue** to deduce that some contenders to World power in The Great Tribulation get very little or no mention in **prophecy** except at times when directly involved with Israel or at least with the Antichrist's Kingdom. But by the process of elimination we can deduce the 'peripheral activities' of all the major players even from an Israel-focused perspective. Specifically, that The U.S. and China must at least be somewhat occupied with each other early on, and nowhere near Israel. And notice that this perspective is also seen in the way God defines all of the **seven** 'world-ruling' kingdoms. Israel and what's going on around her is always the focus of God's designs. It's 'The God Zone'. So China does not likely move 'into the picture' in The Beginning of Sorrows. But I think that the U.S. and possibly some others will reach The God Zone in The Beginning of Sorrows, as we will see.

As for Russia, it may be more likely, but not expected, that she will provide some of these **ships of Chittim**. The reason being that I expect Russia's ground forces will be seriously depleted by this time because of her attack on Israel. But it could be that she may still have a navy that is able to play a role in the events described Verse 30. Still, we should also remember that **a third part of the ships** of the sea by this time may also already be **destroyed** due to The Second Trumpet Judgment ([Rev 8:9](#)), but maybe not yet. Surely though, countries that have had a history of having trouble feeding themselves, like Russia, will be having more than ever before early in The Beginning of Sorrows, having already suffered through the famines and pandemics caused by the first four Seal Judgments. And by The 6th Seal Judgment, suchlike countries must certainly be looking for **spoil** [Eze 38:13](#) just to feed themselves. And Russia at the time of their attack on Israel must instead become that **spoil** for Israel ([Eze 39:10](#)), as we will **prove** in due course.

So in [Verse 30](#), at the time of The Second Egyptian War, we are likely somewhere just over halfway through The Beginning of Sorrows, and likely passed The Seal Judgments anyway, and possibly even passed the 'ship-sinking' 2nd Trumpet Judgment too. So at this point God will have likely

already targeted and crushed the Russians along with the rest of the Muslim World because of their transgression of targeting Israel for **spoil**. Still, it could also be this attack on Israel that will bring Russian ships into the Mediterranean. But if most of their army is already destroyed by God, I'm guessing that their navy won't be doing so good either. And all this is likely the case or the Antichrist would not yet see his way clear to attempt a 'mop-up' the Muslim World. It must be this devastation of the Russians and Muslims by God that tempts the Antichrist to wage this Second Egyptian War. And he would probably get away with it at this time except that the U.S., as they are known to do, must still be able to get into his way in time with their **ships of Chittim**, and turn him around, and send him back home.

Again, it's The U.S. that is the most likely to be inclined to use their ships in this way. They have been the 'World's policeman' maintaining world stability for the last century or more and would likely come to the defense of the Muslim World again for this reason. Of course they may suffer the loss of a third of their navy by this time too—possibly more than a third because they will probably have more boats afloat in the sea to lose—not to mention that they are likely already 'quarreling' with China and others. But remember that God is doing the 'targeting' in all these judgments. So The U.S. may suffer fewer losses if God is not 'targeting' her ships, and if He has a purpose for her ships to fulfill. My guess is that this last scenario is more likely because I expect God has prepared and is still preparing The U.S. for this assignment—to back down the Antichrist in the middle of The Beginning of Sorrows.

So the Antichrist will be forced to change his mind when unnamed new forces 'sail into the picture'. He will bring out his armies to attack Egypt, but the show of force of the **ships of Chittim** will cause him to **return** home **grieved**. And if not likely China or Russia, then who besides the U.S. could float such ships in the Mediterranean? And who could and would stand up to the united forces of Europe and be willing and able to force the Antichrist to back down by this kind of show of force? There will certainly be no more NATO at this time. But I'm rooting for Great Britain too. Yes, I **know** they're somewhat associated with The E.U. now, but I have reasons to believe she will evade the Antichrist Kingdom—at least early on—and participate in this blockade. We'll get to those reasons more in the next section when we rehash and expand these deductions. For now it appears that The U.S. will be the best qualified, most inclined, and still able to make the Antichrist back down with a bunch of big boats, and is most likely to still have 'the right stuff' to do it with too.

The Antichrist's **grieved** condition because of being 'backed down' forces him to redirect his attention to an evidently more covert conspiracy against Israel. And this is a horrifying **revelation**. We **learn** at the end of [Verse 30](#) that when the Antichrist shall **return** home, he will...

...have intelligence with them that forsake the holy covenant.

Now Gabriel is not likely speaking so much here about worldwide anti-Semitism. He must instead be speaking of how the Antichrist will infiltrate groups and organizations within Israel, conspiring to use one faction against another inside the Holy Land. In this case he will somehow enlist the help of

Israelites who will voluntarily **forsake the holy covenant** and use them to try to defeat...

...the people that do know their God.

I guess I shouldn't be surprised that there will be those in Israel who will be tired of being the 'bad guys' and will naturally 'scapegoat' the 'covenant keepers' as the source of all the problems for Israel, and will naturally accept the help of anyone who could help rid Israel of these nuisances while restoring the hope of peace. These kinds of sentiments will make the Antichrist their man. But until I **understood** this verse it never really occurred to me that these same 'covenant-forsaking' Israelites are **they** who Jesus is also plainly describing on the Mount of Olives. Go ahead, read [Matthew 24:9-14](#), [Mark 13:9-13](#), and [Luke 21:12-19](#) and recognize these Israelite 'turncoats' for who **they** really are. Surely **they** are the ones whom the Antichrist will 'stoke up' with the **indignation against the holy covenant** in Israel. And we can now **understand**, as the Antichrist apparently will, that this will be the only way to defeat Israel—to turn Israel **against** herself. And though Jesus is more general on the timing of this behavior in his account, Gabriel specifically indicates that with the Antichrist's help this 'fiendish campaign' in Israel will 'gain steam' in the second half of The Beginning of Sorrows just after the pre-empted Second Egyptian War. And all this will be more fully developed as we go.

By-the way, this picture so far of the Beginning of Sorrows makes clear that the Antichrist doesn't have his 'global **mark of the beast** thing' really going on yet, though it may be quite common in Europe and other Catholic-dominated regions by this time. The Beginning of Sorrows is apparently about the development of the Antichrist Kingdom and its rise to dominancy. So we are seeing and will further see that he doesn't reach the capability to 'absolutely enforce' the worship of the Antichrist, or **his image**, or to 'absolutely enforce' **his mark** until after the Antichrist leaves The Temple in Jerusalem having declared himself to be God. By then his only remaining concern should be China as we will also see.

Now [Verse 31](#) advances us to the end of The Beginning of Sorrows, passed the bulk of the Antichrist's conspiratorial campaign to bring down the 'covenant keepers' in Israel, to the execution of it, because here we have come to the first description of The Abomination of Desolation, and in exactly the terms that Jesus uses when He directs us to Daniel for these details. Here the archangel tells us of when...

...they [them that forsake the holy covenant] shall pollute the sanctuary of strength, and shall take away the daily sacrifice, and they shall place the abomination that maketh desolate.

And now we can **understand** here that **they**, Israelite 'covenant-breakers', provide **the arms** [or armed forces that] **shall stand on his part**, that is, with the Antichrist. So this verse is also speaking of the Israeli 'turncoats' or 'covenant-breakers' who are happy to see the Antichrist at this his triumphant entrance into Jerusalem. And they will evidently be so happy that **they shall place** this newly resurrected 'savior of the World' on **the mercy**

seat on top of **the ark of the covenant** in the **holiest** place in The Temple in Jerusalem. By then, having taken as much credit as possible for what God has done so far, and with his new powers to do **signs and lying wonders** from Satan, and with the support of the World's now unrivaled religious system—the Roman Catholic Church which is under its equally newly 'supernaturally-empowered' pope, the False Prophet—and having just been raised from the dead, **they** will surely think that he's all that. So tragically, we can see here that the forces that surround Jerusalem at The Abomination of Desolation must be welcomed by and include some Israelis. In other words, by this point the Antichrist will have all **the arms** he needs on his side, though a double cross is surely in the making.

This also implies that the Antichrist's finally successful Third Egyptian War is already won, **Egypt** being finally totally 'overrun', and that things are no longer going so well for the owners those **ships of Chittim** either. I would say we can deduce here that The U.S. is by now too engaged on its own mainland, probably by China, and just as likely also with some of her neighbors to the south. Have you heard about what Venezuela's Hugo Chavez is up to in Bolivia—and how he's getting along with China because of all that oil he controls? And I wouldn't be surprised if all of this is facilitated by a 'non-aggression pact' between the Antichrist and China, and with their other partners—especially the predominantly Catholic countries south of The U.S. This would be kind of like Hitler and Stalin's treaty in WW II, where lies of 'non-aggression' are exchanged to buy time for their later attacks against each other. So yes, just like Hitler with Stalin, and just like the Antichrist with the future usurping **king of the south in Egypt**, I would expect that all **these kings' hearts shall be to do mischief, and they shall speak lies** about their 'non-aggression' in all their 'negotiations', though some of these 'agreements' may be handled more secretly than others.

In any case, I do expect the Antichrist to be somehow plotting to undermine U.S. power because of their earlier interference into his plans. The U.S. may not be completely 'overrun', but there will come a point in the latter part of The Beginning of Sorrows that The U.S. will no longer be able to be a player in 'The God Zone'. Then the Antichrist will be unhindered in bringing the **indignation against the holy covenant** to 'full steam'. And by the time the **image of the beast** is ready to come online, the bloodbath of unrelenting Jews, Protestants, and Muslims will be unstoppable.

But before Gabriel tells us about Egypt's final demise in this process, he next backtracks in [Verses 32-35](#) and tells us more about **the [Jewish] people that do know their God**, and about the Jews who **do wickedly against the covenant** in Israel. These verses also read like they are from Jesus' outline of The Great Tribulation on the Mount of Olives, or like from John's descriptions of **the patience and faith of the saints** in [Revelation 13:10](#) and [14:12](#). But it's Gabriel who originally tells us that during The Beginning of Sorrows...

...the people [Jews in Israel] that do know their God shall be strong, and do exploits... [and] they that understand among the people shall instruct many [who obviously include those who help to spread the Gospel and probably also help lead others to escape Israel on cue]: yet they [or some of them [Verse 35](#)] shall fall by the

sword, and by flame [at the stake?], ***by captivity, and by spoil,***
many days [to try them, and to purge, and to make them white]
[Verses 32-33](#).

But also these special Jews are promised...

...they shall be holpen [or helped] ***with a little help*** [which Jesus explains comes from Him and The Spirit]... [though] ***many shall cleave to them with flatteries*** [Verse 34](#).

So this Antichrist-initiated conspiratorial 'uprising' among 'covenant-breaking' Jews against the 'covenant-keeping' ones in Israel goes on ***many days*** according to Verse 33. And from Jesus' discussion about it we can deduce that it should go on for about a ***time, times, and an half***, or throughout The Beginning of Sorrows. But from Gabriel's contribution we can see that the worst of it is in the second half of The Beginning of Sorrows. And the action that provokes the initiation of the worst of it is the presence of U.S. and possibly other warships in the Mediterranean Sea. This action necessarily forces the peace by sending the Antichrist, who is out to conquer ***Egypt***, 'packing home'. So it must be during this 'lull' in The God Zone—if you can call a period that must also include all The Trumpet Judgments a 'lull'—that the Antichrist's probably covert but intensified campaign ***against the holy covenant*** takes place. This campaign of ***many days*** must reach its peak at the end of The Beginning of Sorrow just after the Antichrist's appearance at The Abomination of Desolation, all this providing a first rate example that 'idle hands are the Devil's workshop'.

So we now come to [Verse 36](#) which most evangelicals already acknowledge refers to the Antichrist anyway. For us, however, it is just the continuation of the story, including more detail about the third campaign against Egypt that was already implied and promised, and an account of the rest of the events beyond The Abomination of Desolation in The Days of Vengeance that we've seen none of yet. At this point we will see more commonly accepted attributes of The Antichrist that begin at The Abomination of Desolation including the many times repeated characteristic of the Antichrist that,

...he shall exalt himself, and magnify himself above every god, and shall speak marvellous things against the God of gods.

We also confirm here that the Antichrist's rallied ***indignation against the holy covenant*** should peak just after The Abomination of Desolation, but that it will also be the theme of the entire Days of Vengeance, diminishing only because there will be fewer and fewer 'dissidents' to catch and deprive of their heads. Gabriel explains it here, saying that the Antichrist...

...shall prosper till the indignation be accomplished: for that that is determined shall be done.

And besides the events that transpire throughout The Days of Vengeance, including the ***forty and two months*** of ***power*** where the Antichrist

'exterminates' uncooperative Jews, Protestants, and Muslims, and including God's final set of judgments from Heaven, we should **understand** that '**that that is determined**' is **Armageddon**. And if you think the Muslims are the only ones that will take your head if you won't accept their faith—let alone burn you at the stake—then you really don't **know** the Catholics very well. And we shouldn't be fooled by the fact that both camps excel in using strategies of temporary moderation of aggression in times of weakness until they can gain the upper hand and attack. So the real question is which religion will get the upper hand in The God Zone in The Beginning of Sorrows. The answer should already be coming into focus. And it will only get clearer and clearer as we **continue**.

But on the other hand I don't expect that the Antichrist will have a majority influence within the religions based in China or India. I do however expect they will choose for their own benefit to participate in the new World monetary system which will require **a mark**. And those that do in these eastern religions must eventually be 'rounded up' and dealt with by God too. This is another ongoing case that will get clearer and clearer.

On par with the rest of the chapter, I don't see the remaining verses telling a strictly linear story either. I instead see all the events from here on, really from Verse 31 on, as near or **at the time of the end** [Verse 40](#). And **the time of the end** in this case must include all the midterm events that lead up to The Days of Vengeance, plus the entire period of The Days of Vengeance too. This becomes evident because the continuation of this **prophecy** in the first verse of the next chapter confirms that this **time of the end** starts...

...at that time... [when] **there shall be a time of trouble, such as never was since there was a nation even to that same time: and at that time thy people** [the Jews] **shall be delivered** [the ones that **flee to the wilderness**, that is] [Dan 12:1](#).

This we also **know** from Jesus to be the event that begins The Days of Vengeance.

So in [Verses 36-39](#) we are getting an overview picture of the Antichrist's 'Days-of-Vengeance self'. He is shown to be an absolutely 'self-absorbed', 'fame-seeking', 'tradition-breaking', freak really, who will **prosper** because he will for a second time **divide the land for gain**. This time however, since he has already 'spoiled' everyone else, I believe we are being told here that he has found a way to **divide** and **spoil** his remaining faithful Catholics. This appears to be the case because in Verses 38 and 39 we see circumstances where the Antichrist must be turning against the False Prophet, circumstances also elaborated upon by John in Revelation 17. This is probably at the point when committed Jews, Protestants, and Muslim's are getting harder to find, and when their **spoil** is running out. I mean the ongoing need for **spoil** will be necessitated by God's almost relentless, 'productivity-interrupting' **judgments** from Heaven. So the Antichrist will need a new group to pick on and **divide... for spoil**. This is why I think we see here in these verses that the Antichrist has apparently started his own new religion somewhere along the way, and that he will use this new religion to **divide**

out 'staunch traditional Catholics' and pit them against his new followers late in The Days of Vengeance.

I can't say how long the False Prophet makes it into The Days of Vengeance before he outlives his original usefulness to the Antichrist, but it looks like by Verse 39, when the Antichrist **shall cause them to rule over many**, he is then no longer talking about his former buddies in the Catholic Church, but his new followers from this new **God of forces** church. Of course this would be the natural result of Satan ultimately refusing to share worship anymore. And I expect that there must come a point when he will become especially frustrated that his worship is connected to a corrupted version of the Church of Jesus Christ. By-the-way, am I saying that the Catholic Church has already gone astray? At least. But again, we'll get more into that in the next section, and more into their downfall in [SECTION 9](#).

In [Verse 40](#), Gabriel is elaborating on the details of The Third Egyptian War. And though it must be a brief war that apparently immediately precedes The Abomination of Desolation, it is nonetheless identified here as a marker for **the time of the end** too. Gabriel explains that...

...at the time of the end shall the king of the south [of Egypt] push at him [at the Antichrist]: and the king of the north [the Antichrist] shall come against him [the king of the south] like a whirlwind, with chariots, and with horsemen, and with many ships; and he shall enter into the countries, and shall overflow and pass over.

This implies that those U.S. warships must give **Egypt** time to recover somewhat and to prepare her final—probably desperate—**push** against the Antichrist. And we also see here the Antichrist succeeding in an 'overflowing' retaliation. And we can assume that this crushing victory initiates all the other midterm events that lead to The Abomination of Desolation because after this 'wipeout' there will be no one left in the way between the Antichrist and Israel anymore. So I would place The Rapture of the 144,000 Jews just after this war because this aggression should finally convince everyone that the Antichrist has no respect for the seven-year **covenant with many**. But their rapture should also be just after the Antichrist arrives in Israel to attack The Two Witnesses. Remember that both of these clues fit as 'nails' in his Antichrist's 'coffin' that should help bring the 144,000 to the **revelation** of Jesus Christ.

And in [Verse 41](#) we confirm that he Antichrist goes to **the glorious land**, obviously Israel, just after this **whirlwind, overflow** war. And this is where we find out that he arrives in Israel shortly before The Abomination of Desolation. And this is further evidence that he has come for The Two Witnesses because we already **know** that **his heart** is **against the holy covenant**, and that he must be in Israel to do whatever he can to undermine it. And attempting to kill The Two Witnesses would be the first thing to do along these lines. But without the satanic empowerment that comes with his resurrection, the Antichrist must fail and die in this first attempt because John assures us that **if any man will hurt them, he must in this manner be killed** [Rev 11:5](#).

And besides, who else could as likely kill the Antichrist? And who else would think he could get away with attacking The Two Witnesses at this time but the Antichrist? Plus we **know** he'll die somehow, sometime just before The Abomination of Desolation. We also **know** that he's not only interested in increasing his own fame but also adding to the defamation of the Jews. So how could he better simultaneously accomplish both of these goals? It's almost a no-brainer when you look at it this way. This way he will gain greater support from the 'covenant-breakers' and from anti-Semites in general, let alone that 'jump in the polls' he'll get when the World sees him resurrected. Clearly his best plan by far is to force The Two Witnesses to kill him so that he can then rise from the dead and kill them.

So yes, once finally in Israel after his great victory in Egypt, my bet would be that the father of the **indignation against the holy covenant**, the Antichrist, will not resist trying to kill **the two olive trees, and the two candlesticks standing before the God of the earth**, who are the chief ambassadors of His **holy covenant**. And probably within a week thereafter we will have a false messiah, a false prophet, two dead then resurrected Witnesses, and a hell of a lot of—well, really, an across-the-fixed-gulf-from-hell of a lot of Jews in Israel popping up out of nowhere. And then, **they that understand among the people** will be 'off to the races' before the bloodbath begins.

We also **learn** in [Verse 41](#) that in the process of all this momentum started by The Third Egyptian War,

...many countries shall be overthrown [by the Antichrist's armies], **but these shall escape out of his hand, even Edom, and Moab, and...Ammon.**

Edom, and Moab, and... Ammon are roughly present day Jordan wherein the rock fortress, Petra, can be found. So what fits here is that this region will be spared by the same event that spares the fleeing Jews. I mean John sees that **the earth** [or really God] **helped** the fleeing Jews escape the **flood** sent after them by Satan ([Rev 12:16](#)). So when it comes to the Antichrist 'overthrowing' the *countries* surrounding Israel, this **flood** is probably directly related to how **Edom, and Moab, and... Ammon** will **escape out of his hand**.

By-the-way, Petra, the hard-to-access, mountain-buttressed basin with plentiful rock-carved architecture within the mountains of Jordan, is in a region that used to be part of **Edom**, and evidently close enough to the border of southern Israel. Today Petra is uninhabited by government enforcement, but it's Jordan's biggest tourist attraction. And I expect that a lot of water commanded by Satan and an earthquake in response by God will turn this natural fortress into a 'sanctuary' for the Jews exactly like John describes near the end of Revelation 12. And I don't expect their journey there will be too dissimilar from how their ancestors in **faith pass through the Red sea** [Heb 11:29](#). And I'm not talking so much about the Cecil B. DeMille version of this story either. It should be a **much** more world-renowned, awesome, earthshaking, destructive, and supremely-respect-building spectacle of God than portrayed in the movie **The Ten Commandments**. We'll talk about this some more in [SECTION 10](#).

But there is something else we should notice here. The Antichrist goes after Egypt **with chariots, and with horsemen, and with many ships**. And this is actually more evidence that most modern technology, including electronics-dependant vehicles, high-tech **ships**, and modern weapons of all kinds, including all satellites and their corresponding GPS systems, etc., will no longer be available. And remember this is just before The Midterm Great Earthquake that knocks down again everything that's been rebuilt since the first one.

Did you see that scene in the movie, **Independence Day**, when the satellite traveling in orbit explodes when it hits that huge alien spaceship 'parked' in its way? I'm guessing it'll be kind of like that except the satellites will be hitting or be disrupted by a planet, and except that the planet will likely be much bigger than that spaceship in the movie, and maybe not quite so close to the Earth. So all the satellites should be long gone before the midpoint, say possibly as early as around the **pestilences** of The 4th Seal Judgment, maybe earlier. The point is that the resources we now take for granted in this modern age must no longer be available for the bulk of The Great Tribulation, at least generally, and even to the Antichrist.

And if modern technology is scarce to non-existent before The Midterm Great Earthquake, it must be even more so after this second **great earthquake**. And it wouldn't make sense otherwise. If the Antichrist still had some modern technology available to him, he would use it get at the Jews in their 'sanctuary'. But he clearly won't be able to, so this is a clue of how 'primitive' it will get. Evidently in The Days of Vengeance it will be bad enough that even a 'search and destroy' mission on the Jews in their somehow 'naturally protected sanctuary' will be out of the question. And this also implies not only repeatedly and entirely 'earthquake-wrecked infrastructures' worldwide, but also repeated 'planetary-scale' EMP's in the course of these 'interactions', all of which of course are precisely controlled by God. And you should at least **know** by now that He could do this if He wanted to—just as he has before. And I'm sure that those who **experience**—or just come to **understand**—this awesome power and control of His would never think any less of Him for doing it, but the contrary.

And the point again is that, in The Days of Vengeance, regions an army can't get to on foot, **with chariots** or **with horsemen** or **with many ships**—because these regions are inaccessible by land and sea—they will have no way to attack. So if God somehow uses the water Satan sends, and the existing or renovated terrain around Petra to isolate the Jews, then they should be quite safe there even if everyone knows they're there. I mean it will certainly be much more difficult to get at the Jews in such a situation than it was for the Romans to get at the Jews at Masada. (Look it up). I mean the Antichrist's forces should have no more to work with than the Romans did. Even less really. Given modern technology, clear skies, and full 24-hour days, the Antichrist surely would eventually be able to get to these 'sequestered' Jews. But he will evidently have the benefit of none of this. And he will have only 42 months to try to get them, which with $\frac{1}{3}$ shorter days translates to more like 24 months of '12-hours-of-daylight' days. I mean this would give the Antichrist only a little more time than the Romans had to reach the Jew at Masada. And they were doing it under generally clear skies and mostly

uninterrupted '12-hours-of-daylight' days. This will not be the case in The Days of Vengeance as we will further envision especially in the next section.

So **understanding** all this makes it no mystery at all that the Antichrist will not be able to get to these Jews. And the power and shaking necessary to accomplish all this we also further envision especially in [SECTION 9](#). But don't you dare think God couldn't or wouldn't do things like this, even if you're not ready to believe that He will.

And it should be no surprise that next Gabriel clarifies that **the land of Egypt shall not escape**. [Verses 42-43](#) cover the price **Egypt** pays for its final war with the Antichrist. Gabriel tells us that...

...he [the Antichrist] shall have power over the treasures of gold and of silver, and over all the precious things of Egypt.

But is **Egypt** really now all that rich? Apparently it will be by then. And this apparently offers another clue that The Great Tribulation, and therefore The Rapture, is not really that imminent. Because not only is Egypt's army not yet sufficiently **very great and mighty**, I don't think it yet has these **'treasures of gold and silver, and... precious things'** either. But by the will of God Israel came out of nowhere and became a great nation in a short period. So it looks like **Egypt** is due for a 'meteoric rise' too. It must necessarily become the greatest of the Muslim nations again. **Egypt** must become worthy to be the first formidable contender with the Antichrist. And with a little help from The U.S., it must become sufficiently strong enough to remain in the Antichrist's way to get at Israel till the end of The Beginning of Sorrows. And **Egypt** must also become rich enough to be coveted by the Antichrist. Maybe they'll find some more oil there or some new vast **gold and silver** mines. Or maybe they'll just find some of that hidden 'loot' that Ptolemy III brought back to **Egypt** from as far away as Nebuchadnezzar's Babylon.

In [Verse 44](#), now obviously during the 'power days' of the Antichrist Empire in The Days of Vengeance, and happening along with The Plague Judgments, we next want to **know** who is threatening the Antichrist **out of the east and out of the north** [and] **shall trouble him** [?]. First, we must remember that the Antichrist will resettle in Jerusalem following The Abomination of Desolation, as also confirmed in the next verse. With this new geographical orientation, the question becomes, does Russia have anything left to **the north**? Not likely. Again, modern technology including nuclear or other types of ICBM's (intercontinental ballistic missiles) should be all out of order and unusable as we will **continue** to establish. So we're not looking for big nuclear threats, just big armies. And Russia's will have already been wiped out, as we will see.

But this would also be the time, evidently still early in The Days of Vengeance, when China is getting further **'stirred up'** to the point that she finally 'makes waves' that are unavoidably felt by the Antichrist Kingdom. Maybe China somehow breaks that 'non-aggression pact' they make with the Antichrist earlier on because they think The U.S. is finally sufficiently subdued. But we will ultimately confirm that China will be coming all the way to Israel at the end of The Days of Vengeance. So it would make sense that they also attempt earlier advances more or less westward into helpless

Russia and India beforehand. So whether or not there is really any early 'cooperation' between the Antichrist Empire and China, or any direct struggle between China and The U.S., or The U.S. and their possibly Chinese-and-Antichrist-supported Catholic neighbors to the south, if China at this time sees the way clear to attack helpless Russia and India, this could indeed be the 'Great-Tribulation-sized' **trouble** that is seen by the Antichrist from Jerusalem to be **out of the east and out of the north**. Check a World map to see what I mean if you need to.

And who else but the Antichrist could 'rescue' Russia and India from an attack by China at this time? This could easily be what the timing and geographical clues point to anyway. China is certainly the most likely suspect at this time to be able to cause the most **trouble**, unless there will be other countries besides **Egypt** quickly coming to the foreground between now and then. And I mean countries that are not already otherwise accounted for.

But whoever causes this **trouble** that is **out of the east and out of the north** from Jerusalem at this time—evidently early in The Days of Vengeance—it's pretty clear that the Antichrist is not going to let them 'rain on his parade', because his response will be that...

...he shall go forth with great fury to destroy, and utterly to make away many [Verse 44](#).

And remember, it is **determined** that the Antichrist will **prosper** in this too, and that whoever is making these threats at this time will at least 'back down and run home'. Of course if it's China then it will only be for a while. Still, this could mean that the Antichrist will assimilate all of Russia and India gaining a territory over twice the size of any previous 'world-ruling' empire before him, and in a fraction of the time. Of course he won't control the area roughly comprising the present state of Jordan which would be in the middle of it all. Yet despite this little blemish in the middle of his kingdom, such a territory would be worthy of the Antichrist's 'world-ruling' empire. He should then directly control all the land north of the Sahara Desert, east of the Atlantic Ocean, south of the Arctic Ocean, and west of China—not to mention, he should 'hold sway' over the Catholic-dominated Americas. But in spite of all his gains, we **know** he will never make it to China, because, according to John, **the kings of the east** still have a role to play at the end of The Days of Vengeance which we will be clarifying further between here and [SECTION 10](#).

And though Verse 44 describes a war that takes place during The Days of Vengeance, the next and last verse in this chapter, [Verse 45](#), is another summary overview of the Antichrist's story that goes back to a midterm event before revealing a perspective of his final end. Gabriel tells us here that the Antichrist sets up his final encampment or headquarters in Jerusalem. He describes it as **his palace between the seas in the glorious holy mountain**. This **palace** must be established just after The Abomination of Desolation. And this will likely be on Mount Zion in Jerusalem since the Antichrist will come there to **destroy the city and the sanctuary** [Dan 9:26](#). This 'temple mount' that will be newly leveled by the Antichrist is where, by then, two previous Jerusalem temples will have sat. So the third Jerusalem Temple which has not been built yet is the one **prophesied** to be '

leveled' by the Antichrist. And it's fourth if you count ***the tabernacle in the wilderness***, the first 'mobile tent version' of these temples. And its destruction will likely make room for the Antichrist's Jerusalem ***palace*** in The Days of Vengeance.

The end of [Verse 45](#) is another place where we see that it advances to the end of the story. [Verse 36](#) gives the first marker and foreshadowing of this ending. It's when ***that that is determined shall be done***. This is a lot like [Daniel 9:27](#) when Gabriel speaks of this end as ***...the consummation...*** [when] ***that determined shall be poured upon the desolate***. This is another clear marker and reference to the Antichrist's end at ***Armageddon***. In [Daniel 8:25](#) Gabriel describes and marks the Antichrist's end at Armageddon saying, ***he shall be broken without hand***. And recall that in [Daniel 2:34](#) Jesus is allegorized to destroy the Antichrist and his kingdom as ***a stone [that] was cut out without hands, which smote the image upon his feet that were of iron and clay, and brake them to pieces***. Remember? And since we didn't take the time to cover it earlier, it's time you try to find this event—and all the other things going on in Heaven—described in [Daniel 7](#). But back in Chapter 11, in [Verse 45](#), Gabriel yet again and finally alludes to the Antichrist's end at ***Armageddon***, saying, ***he shall come to his end, and none shall help him***. The circumstances of his demise on Earth are also covered in some detail in Revelation 19, some of which we've already covered, but which we'll expand in [SECTION 10](#).

But this is not the end of Gabriel's ***prophecy***. And even ***other*** angels will get involved revealing this message from God before it's over. What remains is in Chapter 12, and it's mostly an account of exactly ***How long*** it will take until ***all these things shall be finished***—the things that Gabriel has been telling us about in Chapter 11—starting...

...from the time that the daily sacrifice shall be taken away, and the abomination that maketh desolate [is] set up.

And you already ***know*** this. It's ***a time, times, and an half***. Still, there's apparently an extra month added into these 3 ½ years this time, making it ***a thousand two hundred and ninety days***. So we'll need to account for this. Let's see why.

This time in [Chapter 12](#) we'll skip passed the three markers of the start of The Days of Vengeance in the first two verses, and passed the 'brilliant' conditional promise of God in the third, and passed the fact that this ***prophecy*** until now has been at least somewhat ***sealed*** in the fourth verse—these last two verses being more or less 'reemphasized' again in Verses 9 and 10 anyway—and all because we've already thoroughly covered most of this, or because we'll cover it more later this section or in the next one. And we won't dwell on the fact that the Archangel Gabriel is shown to be joined in Verses 5 and 6 by still ***other*** angels sent from God to deliver the words of this ***prophecy***. We'll just go on to one of the new angel's questions in [Verse 6](#) where he is seen asking,

How long shall it be to the end of these wonders?

You should recognize by now that this would be a period of **wonders** starting at The Abomination of Desolation which starts a **time of trouble... such as never was, or starting when many of them that sleep in the dust of the earth shall awake, or at the time** Daniel's **people** the Jews **shall be delivered** by their flight into **the wilderness**—all of these markers evidently happening close enough together to qualify as markers of the start of The Days of Vengeance.

But the **end of these wonders** come when, as it's put in [Verse 7](#), **all these things shall be finished**, which is after **a time, times, and an half**. This 3 ½ year period therefore must include all the events Gabriel describes involving that **vile person**, that **king of the north**, from the time he commits **the abomination that maketh desolate** all the way back in Verse 31 of the previous chapter, and of course also must include any other people and events we find described elsewhere in **scripture** that fit into this 3 ½ year period that Jesus describes as **the days of vengeance**. It's also clarified in [Verse 11](#) that this period lasts **for a thousand two hundred and ninety days**, which implies that there is an extra month or so in this period beyond the 42 given to the Antichrist. We'll get to that next. But before that, there is something else in Verse 7 we are now ready to **understand**.

We should remind ourselves at this point that Chapters 10-12 of The Book of Daniel is the set up and delivery of just one **prophecy**. We **learned** back in Chapter 11, [Verse 36](#), that the Antichrist **shall prosper till the indignation be accomplished**, and we can now **understand** this to be another marker of the whole period of The Days of Vengeance. The angel in [Verse 7](#) gives us another description of this mission of the Antichrist in The Days of Vengeance. The angel assures us that,

...when he [the Antichrist] shall have accomplished to scatter the power of the holy people, all these things shall be finished.

This again tells us where God's focus is, that when the Antichrist has been able to track down, decapitate, or otherwise kill all the Jews and Christians possible—the ones that haven't fled to 'Petra' or haven't otherwise hidden themselves well enough 'off the grid' — then time's up, but it's apparently not quite all over yet. And I mean there are some 'dark consequences' to these 'dark deeds' to follow.

I believe Jesus explains why it will be 1290 days and therefore possibly nearly 44 months instead of just 42—a 42-month period being as little as about 1240 days on the Jewish calendar. This difference in time must be for the additional peak of torment scheduled to 'cap off' all the building torments of The Plague Judgments. I mean that these 1290 days, by Jesus' definition, extend just beyond the end of **the tribulation**, maybe nearly two months beyond the time that the Antichrist's campaign of **indignation against the holy covenant** is over. So **the end of these wonders** when **all these things shall be finished** is after the **indignation is accomplished**, but also after an additional period of **darkened** days. Jesus says,

Immediately after the tribulation of those days [after the indignation against the holy covenant is accomplished] shall the sun be darkened, and the moon shall not give her light,

and the stars shall fall from heaven, and the powers of the heavens shall be shaken: And then [evidently after this additional time of 'darkness'] ***shall appear the sign of the Son of man in heaven: and then shall all the tribes of the earth mourn, and they shall see the Son of man coming in the clouds of heaven with power and great glory*** [Mat 24:29:30](#).

From this we can ***understand*** that the Antichrist's time to ***prosper*** is scheduled to end with the start of this period of ***darkened*** days that must go on for some time afterward.

And remember that 3½ years which include a Jewish calendar leap month actually add up to 43 months and around 1270 days. But since the Antichrist is given only 42 months, there is really no need for a leap month, because Jesus tells us that the period of ***darkened*** days happens ***after the tribulation of those days***. So if about 1240 days will suffice for ***the tribulation***, there would need to be an additional about 50 ***darkened*** days following to reach our total of 1290 days.

And all this implies that at least half the planet—a side including Israel's Valley of Megiddo—will wait in total '***thick darkness***' like in one of The Plagues of Egypt, and for possibly somewhere around 50 days before all the survivors on Earth...

...shall see the Son of man coming in the clouds of heaven with power and great glory.

This is Jesus' Second Coming where He arrives to destroy his enemies and set up his eternal kingdom on Earth. And these conditions and parameters imply that about 50 days before He arrives there must be another, but longer term, planetary axis shift where again people half the way around the World from Israel will experience an extended period of dusk, and on the far side, extended day. Either that or we're talking about way too much smoke in Earth's entire atmosphere, making light scarcely available anywhere, but especially in Israel's hemisphere. But more likely we're talking a little of both. And I guess it depends on whether Jesus is only focusing on what is happening in Israel in this verse or is instead giving a more global account. But He does report here of a clear worldwide reaction to His appearance. So I'm expecting that most of the smoke and the least amount of light are centered over Israel making it possible for some survivors elsewhere as we will further speculate.

But whatever the case, the torment that must be going on in the Valley of Megiddo during these ***darkened*** days must be excruciatingly slow torture. I expect that the degree of particulate matter in the air throughout The God Zone will make movement almost completely futile, again, much like it must have been in The Egyptian Plague of Darkness. Still, and though these armies should have some provisions with them, I'm guessing that they will generally have just enough water to barely survive these ***darkened*** days. So that if the darkness lasts as long as 50 days, I'm guessing that any who survive should be severely dehydrated and nearly starved to death by the time Jesus arrives. And I'm guessing that this is His plan.

So if I see these circumstances correctly or somewhere near correctly, no

one will be on their feet or even able to stand in the general vicinity where and when Jesus comes, nor should any still surviving **horses**. But it's not like these armies have anywhere better to go, because when they leave these conditions it must only be for worse ones **in hell**, and eventually still worse accommodations after that. So I see this as God's final act of ultimate humiliation of **the proud** and **the terrible**, when the Lord **will punish the world for their evil, and the wicked for their iniquity...** and where He will **...cause the arrogance of the proud to cease, and will lay low the haughtiness of the terrible**. And the passage around this verse should make even more sense to you now than the last time you saw it.

Behold, the day of the LORD cometh, cruel both with wrath and fierce anger, to lay the land desolate: and he shall destroy the sinners thereof out of it. For the stars of heaven and the constellations thereof shall not give their light: the sun shall be darkened in his going forth, and the moon shall not cause her light to shine. And I will punish the world for their evil, and the wicked for their iniquity; and I will cause the arrogance of the proud to cease, and will lay low the haughtiness of the terrible. I will make a man more precious than fine gold; even a man than the golden wedge of Ophir. Therefore I will shake the heavens, and the earth shall remove out of her place, in the wrath of the LORD of hosts, and in the day of his fierce anger [Isaiah 13:9-13](#).

But I should remind you that these 'haughty' **sinners** deserve to be 'laid low', and everything else they get. And I should add something I promised I'd get back to. Remember that there is likely a delayed start to The Plague Judgments in The Days of Vengeance to accommodate the 'blitzkrieg massacre' of Jews in Israel at the beginning of The Absolute Enforcement of the Worship of Satan and the Antichrist which produces The Rapture of the Tribulation Jews. And this must be time taken away from the administration of The Plague Judgments. Also the 42 months of power **given** to the Antichrist likely starts at his resurrection, probably about week before The Abomination of Desolation. This is no problem, just an observation, that God likely gives the Antichrist weeks of clear skies to massacre the bulk of His people, but ultimately tortures him and his armies for even longer in **'thick darkness'** before He massacres them where He has 'gathered' them all at **Armageddon**.

Again, all this implies that the armies of the Antichrist and China, and whoever else still wants to 'play war' at the end of The Great Tribulation, may be caught waiting and wasting away, trapped by a 'gripping' darkness and tortured by hunger and thirst in a valley in northern Israel during this whole period, having been gathered there during The 6th Plague Judgment as we will later see, and while we in Heaven at the same time must be celebrating at **the marriage supper of the Lamb** as we will also later confirm. So even if they bring with them some very tough and very long-lasting 'lanterns', or even some other means to provide a lot of continual artificial light, I don't expect this will help much. And I bet that whatever provisions they bring won't outlast the conditions, because these conditions will be caused by God

specifically to **lay low the haughtiness of the terrible** armies that He by His own **judgment** has **gathered** there.

And again, I'm thinking that this same kind of thing must have been going on—but for a much shorter period—during one of The Plagues of Egypt in the time of Moses. And all this must have to do with what Jesus means when he says, **the powers of the heavens shall be shaken**. I mean that The Egyptian Plague Judgments surely involved no nuclear holocaust, and God will not need one in The Great Tribulation either to recreate similar but evidently more long-lasting conditions. We can also deduce that darkness like this must indicate that all the armies that come to Armageddon must do so before this darkness begins. And they certainly won't be going anywhere once the darkness starts, any more than those in Egypt could move around during their plague of **thick darkness**. Still, we will see that many others will get a free, 'all expense paid', rapture trip to Armageddon that we'll talk about in [SECTION 10](#). And we have more to say about the cause of all these 'plague conditions' in [SECTION 9](#).

Finally, let's talk about a couple of other time periods mentioned at the end of this chapter and back in Chapter 8. Both these time periods have the same starting markers as The Days of Vengeance, but are not about either the Antichrist's 42-months campaign **against the holy covenant**, nor about the nearly 44 months it will take to get to **Armageddon**. They both span The Days of Vengeance but also both contain additional events that extend beyond **Armageddon**. One of these periods is found in [Verses 13-14](#) of Chapter 8, where we find its starting point, the definition for the period, and its duration. It's a period something near 77 months long, or specifically, **two thousand and three hundred days**. And it's the time **to give both the sanctuary and the host** [everyone that supports the Antichrist—see [Verse 12](#)] **to be trodden under foot**, plus the extra time needed for **the sanctuary [to] be cleansed**, all starting at the **transgression of desolation** or The Abomination of Desolation.

Naturally, **the sanctuary**, The Temple in Jerusalem, is **trodden under foot** first. We see in [Verse 11](#) that **the daily sacrifice was taken away, and the... sanctuary was cast down**, and probably **cast down** very quickly after the Antichrist's boasting inside. And we should expect that these 'trampers', the Antichrist and his **host** who are described in [Verse 12](#), will have another 1240 days, plus 50 days of 'downtime', before their time is up. But be careful not to be confuse the Antichrist's **host** with Jesus' **host** mentioned in Verses 10, 11 and 13. This **host** that is said to be **given** to the Antichrist in [Verse 12](#)—his army of supporters—Daniel saw,

...cast down the truth to the ground; and it practised, and prospered.

But Gabriel finally assures Daniel that, along with the Antichrist, they are **broken without hand** [Verse 25](#), obviously 1290 days after The Abomination of Desolation at **Armageddon**. Then evidently another 1110 days later, bringing us to 2300 days, and bringing us also to about 3 years into The Millennium, we apparently reach 'the inauguration' or 'opening ceremonies' for the next or fourth Temple in Jerusalem—or the fifth if you count the 'tent version'. And we will see that this temple will be in service throughout The

Millennium. So here we are promised, again by Gabriel, that at this time, 2300 days from The Abomination of Desolation, The Jerusalem Temple will again not only be rebuilt, but **cleansed** and back in operation.

Now since this 2300-day time period also uses the starting marker of the destruction of The Great Tribulation Temple, we may confirm here that this event also qualifies as a marker of the beginning of The Days of Vengeance too. This implies that the destruction of The Great Tribulation Temple must follow so quickly after The Abomination of Desolation that the echoes made by the Antichrist 'magnifying himself' inside may scarcely have died down before it's destroyed. So it's going to be quite a busy day that I see beginning with The Resurrection and Rapture of the Two Witnesses, followed by The Midterm Great Earthquake and The Rapture of the Dead Jews, followed by The Flight of the Jews—with some surely noticeable 'heavenly displays' connected to The Celebration of the Kingdom of God and of Christ in Heaven in between. Whatever the case, it will certainly be the conclusion to quite a 'wild', week or two long, 'rollercoaster ride'.

The other period's duration is found at the end of Daniel 12 [\[audio error!\]](#) in [Verse 12](#). The starting point and definition for this period are implied to be pretty much the same as the 1290-day period **revealed** earlier in the chapter, except it's instead 45 days longer, or 1335 days, and leads to some kind of a reward, as opposed to the judgment at Armageddon. What could this 'blessing' be? We'll have to get back to this question in the remaining sections, and I'm hoping my next **study** can shed more light on all these circumstances too. But suffice it for now to say that this should be when the smoke clears and the time will have come for a special 'inauguration ceremony', maybe a bunch of them. But I'm sure that by this time those who have survived The Great Tribulation alive will recognize themselves to be living in the initial 'physical period' of The Eternal Kingdom of Jesus Christ—The Millennium. And this may be the day for the inauguration of this kingdom, and even a good day for a resurrection of saints. What other great events will take place on this day? Another guess would be that it might also be a good day for 'groundbreaking ceremonies' for the new Temple in Jerusalem.

And another thing, don't you think by now that God gave us all these time periods and markers and details that are so scattered about His Word because he expects the **sincere** and **diligent** should eventually be able to 'approve' themselves by becoming able to gather and put them all together and figure all this out, but also because He knew that most others wouldn't bother 'handling' these details His way and that as a result never could? I mean didn't Jesus promise us that The Holy Spirit would **shew us things to come**? So it's no surprise that Jesus Himself directs us to **Daniel the prophet** for these answers. But unfortunately this **revelation** also demonstrates why, as Isaiah assures us, that there will always be those who refuse to **hear** God's Word God's way.

And still there's a couple of things I promised we would talk about before we concluded this section. The first is about the concept of the 'gap' of detail found—or not found—in Old Testament **prophecies** because of the 'omission' of The Church Age of Grace. I went out of my way to make clear that **the time of the end** could have only just arrived based on the fact that Daniel

11 has never yet been fully explained before, at least to my knowledge. Not to mention we have already seen some evidence that time's not quite up yet anyway. And we will expose more evidence of this—evidence that has not been well hidden at all—before we're done. But it takes all the skills and insights that are used in this **study** put together to even have a chance to fully **understand** Daniel 11. And that's only if God is willing. And I admit that it was in the writing of this **study** that God finally put in my path the multiple **revelations** I had to 'stumble over' in order to come to a full **understanding** of this **prophecy**. So my perspective is that He is now finally willing.

But it's also clear that the time of the end 'cracked open' over a century and a half ago, because I certainly wasn't the one to first 'get my foot in the door'. Again, I simply stand on the shoulders of faithful disciples that have gone before me, and was simply in the right place at the right time to push the door the rest of the way open. But if one man should get the credit for making it all possible, it would be easy for me to choose. Who is he and what kind of man was he?

Well, remember that King David was a treacherous, murdering sinner, if you **know** his story, but is still held by God to be **a man after his own heart** [1Sam 13:14](#). So go figure. What I mean is that when were talking about a man we should not forget what God tells us about the **heart** of man. He told the Prophet Jeremiah,

The heart is deceitful above all things, and desperately wicked: who can know it? [Jer 17:9](#)

And how you doing, by-the-way? Fairing any better than David, are you? Never done anything monstrous? Come to think of it, the Apostle Paul himself made some errors about **prophecy** and is arguably a 'hot head', but Peter said you'd better not mess with Paul's **teaching**. And let's not go into Peter. So before we get carried away into the character and beliefs of one particular man, we should **understand** that most all faithful Christians error with **scripture** and in life. As for J. Vernon McGee, Jack Van Impe, Hal Lindsey, Tim LaHaye, Chuck Smith, Dave Hunt, Chuck Missler, John Hagee, etc., I could write a book about their errors. Hey wait! I am aren't I. But I would not be able to do so without what they taught me. God willing, someone will write a book or two correcting me and improving this perspective some day soon.

And easily worse than all these folks are 'teachers' or 'churches' with reputations for repeated false **prophecy**, or exclusivism based on anything other than openly unrepentant sin. These would-be 'teachers' show by their 'doctrine' that they can't tell the difference between **blasphemy against the Holy Ghost** ([Mark 3:28-30](#)) and **error**, because they consider all 'transgressors' lost. I have brought strong indictments against the Catholic Church so far too, though much of the scriptural **proof** of their longstanding apostasy is still forthcoming. But I tell you now that Jesus doesn't finish calling his faithful **out of her** until very late in The Great Tribulation, as we will see, which means some Catholics must 'wake up' in this 'church' even after The Rapture—when they finally hear the call to, **Come out of her**. This also must mean that there are some now 'in her' who are already awake and

will make The Rapture of the Church. Surely then, if there are and will be at least some of God's people found in **her** of all churches, then I tell you that some of God's people will be found in most any 'Christian denomination'. But we'll cover the Catholic Church more next section.

So before we get carried away picking on any particular 'denomination', we should **understand** that most all **churches** carry on as if they think that they are the only ones getting it all right, even sometimes thinking they're the only group that will be saved—expecting shame and/or damnation on everyone else. The Catholic Church is not an exception to this, but there are also Protestant churches that fit this description. In fact, the guy I think that deserves the **honor** for 'cracking open the door' to being able to **understand** Daniel's **prophecies** was a leader in one of these extremely exclusivist Protestant groups. But it's not his conceptions or misconceptions about **prophecy**, or even his exclusivist beliefs that really make the difference in his ultimate redemption. Only **continued** acknowledgement and repentance to Jesus for the sins that continue to **war against** us in this incarnation will ultimately **save** us from this ongoing dilemma. Indeed, everyone that is part of this group gets **saved**. Of course, growing in spiritual maturity makes this battle easier and easier, at least in some ways, and has some really nice rewards too.

But we also now **know** that we will not all be **saved** together, nor by the same 'plan', nor even by the same '**means**', but **by any** and **by all means** that are made possible by the **sacrifice** of Christ for our **sins** ([Rom 11:14](#); [1 Cor 9:22](#)). And as you may have noticed, I'm an exclusivist too who believes that we will end up in many different exclusive groups as I will **continue** to show. But I also believe that we are all nevertheless unified by the blood of Christ. And that all this is God's doing.

Still, one way God will divide us up is through a number of 'plans' of His that occur in a number of what Paul calls **ages**. He also refers to the present ongoing 'age' as a **dispensation**. This is obviously a specific plan for the salvation of only a part of mankind that God works out in a particular period of time. And it's only one of several ways He will get people to accept His Son's sacrifice for them. And these periods eventually lead to raptures to eternal redemption—most of them happening in and around The Great Tribulation. And Paul specifically uses these terms interchangeably, asking,

...have you not heard of the dispensation of grace?... [a] revelation... [a] mystery...Which in other ages [or dispensations] was not made known unto the sons of men, as it is now revealed unto his holy apostles and prophets by the Spirit; That the Gentiles should be fellowheirs [with the Jews], and of the same body [or bride of Christ], and partakers of his promise in Christ by the gospel... which from the beginning of the world hath been hid in God [Eph 3](#).

And even Christians who don't believe in all this stuff about different 'dispensations' are exclusivists too. They reject others who believe that God might bring some to a faith in Christ by different means than they came to **know** Him. And this is mainly because they are missing something. And what they are often missing is that something is missing.

Some of these Christians, by this understandable oversight of nothing at all, think we're in The Millennium already. They are commonly and generally called Postmillennialists, because they think—unless just ignorantly following along—that Jesus will finally come again after the present and ongoing Millennium. The 'rank and file' in this movement are also often told that it's their job therefore to personally 'prosper' as Christians, and that they should now be helping to 'take over the World for Christ'. One of the popular divisions of this movement is the Christian Reconstructionists, (not to be confused with Reconstructionist Judaism). Many Christian Reconstructionists think that The U.S. is the vehicle 'destined' to usher in Christ's eternal kingdom, and that things must get better and better until Christians eventually take over the whole World for Christ so that He can then come again. With this perspective they understandably believe that The Great Tribulation is already past, and Antiochus IV, Mr. Greaseball, gets a lot of the blame from them for that.

Other Postmillennialists believe that the descriptions of The Great Tribulation in **scripture** are allegories representing the struggles between good and evil and between the physical and spiritual Worlds, and that they were never really meant to be taken literally, which gives them the additional name of Amillennialist. But all Postmillennialists believe Jesus will come again after the now supposed ongoing 'Millennium', and they also believe that no raptures are necessary to accomplish this.

Then there are Christians that think that the Church has 'replaced' the Jews altogether in what they see as God's 'single plan of salvation'. Amazingly enough, they don't recognize the rebirth of Israel as God's doing, even given what's gone on since then. Those with this point of view generally call themselves Calvinist, though, as with all groups, certainly not all Calvinist realize that so many in their ranks hold such a view. John Calvin surely did not in his original Covenant Theology—though He clearly had a very limited view of **dispensations** back then (in the 1500's). Anyway, this 'branch' of Calvinists calls their rejection of the Jews, Replacement Theology. And remember earlier in this section I call these particular Christians 'prophetically lost'—eschatologically 'lights out'—considering what we all should know from Romans 11 alone. They are the ones who think that the Church is now the 'new Israel' because the Jews missed their chance when they failed to recognize Jesus the first time around. Any of these that are also Postmillennialists, as all Postmillennialists, don't see a Great Tribulation coming at all, but only that things must get better and better as they take over the World for Christ. And I see them as in a very dangerous spiritual condition indeed. But such 'off base' perspectives are common in eschatology because too many—not really **understanding** how to 'handle' **prophecy**—tend to 'shop' for all the ideas that 'rub them the right way' and 'add them to their cart—preferring ones that get them on the 'top of the heap' by The Second Coming of Christ—and whether they want this to happen before The Millennium (Premillennialists), or after The Millennium (Postmillennialists).

In fact some of these Replacement Theologians are also known to support a midtribulation rapture of the Church 'out of' The Great Tribulation that they identify in Revelation 12. Remember, they think they've 'replaced' the Jews—I mean those of them that really **understand** their 'theology'. So they

naturally see themselves as the **woman** in this chapter. But at least they're still waiting for The Great Tribulation—believing that Jesus will come again before The Millennium starts at Armageddon.

But none of these groups really think in terms of Dispensationalism, though it's really impossible to be a Premillennialist and not a Dispensationalist without suffering from a good degree of ignorance and/or acute compartmentalization. I mean if you think you're going to be redeemed by the end of The Great Tribulation, and that you'll be in that 'one and only group', what about all those that will be born in The Millennium? This is a simple but common and glaring oversight showing the general immaturity and self centeredness of the Church as a whole. Such ignorance is rampant and the compartmentalization is frequently that bad, and worse. The point is—as with most misconceptions concerning eschatologies—that even Premillennialist are able to tailor their own doctrine as they see fit because they are able to ignore the parts of **prophecy** that they do not **understand** in favor of the parts they think they do. But I don't mean that they're not particular. Surely they are because they are plainly able to 'shop out' the 'theologies' they like best.

For example, still other Premillennialists groups put The Rapture of the Church at the end of The Great Tribulation, understandably seeing it described by Jesus in Matthew 24 and John in Revelation 14. This misunderstanding uses these very same 'blind shopping techniques'. And some of them also manage to miss seeing different dispensations in their 'selectively misconstrued' eschatologies too.

So any imaginable eschatology is possible by this method, and it's a big reason why there are so many conflicting doctrines. But you can blame all this on God. I mean the Books of Daniel and Revelation alone provide an abundance of seemingly disconnected **scripture** for would-be 'teachers' to 'shop through' for ideas. And surely if they are ignorant of how to 'handle' God's Word God's way, they are readily lost in **prophecy** no matter what they think they see. And I'm here to say for God that He made His Word this way precisely for this purpose, among others. Again, many accept any story imaginable as proven if it can be consistently enough argued with a sufficiently limited amount of **scripture**, especially if it flatters them. But none of this 'eschatological blindness' or confusion necessarily dooms a person to eternal judgment. It is a sign however of 'spiritual immaturity', and possibly worse.

Premillennialists and Dispensationalists like myself (and that list of **teachers** above) believe that Jesus will come before the coming Millennium at Armageddon, but they also see God's multiple plans of salvation in action both now and as **prophesied** for the future, although this **study** reveals a few new ones heretofore unknown as far as I **know**. The fact that Dispensationalists could not adequately **understand** Daniel 11 has hurt their cause up to now. But besides this understandable ignorance, there are some grievously erroneous **teachings** and oversights that have been hampering Dispensationalists too. This **study** is meant to rectify that. Yes rectify, because in **the time of the end** our debate should be on the structural details, not on the overall structure of God's plan. And I expect that this is the **promise** of The Spirit of God.

It's therefore now time to **understand** that with the coming of **the time**

of the end all doubt as to the overall structure of God's plan is past because it is now finally, fully, and forevermore proven and established in the unrivaled **doctrine** of Dispensationalism. This **doctrine** makes it possible for man to **understand** and further **grow** in the **understanding** of God's various plans for the salvation for mankind. And this **study** is meant to strike down the now undoubtedly and provably false doctrine of Postmillennialism once and for all. And this **study** will surely **prove** all this to anyone who is able to give it a fair chance. Indeed, the best proven perspective should be everyone's goal. And those who do not consistently maintain the **integrity** of this goal as their motive cannot really expect to participate in the growth of **the knowledge of God**—at least not on a mature level anyway. But may God nonetheless **save** and **keep our souls**.

And finally, all other variations of Premillennialism—distinguished mostly by when The Rapture of the Church occurs—must necessary fail too when we complete our eschatological goal in this **study** which is to establish an unshakable defense of the pretribulation Rapture of the Church which we are in the process of doing. And in case you were wondering, I'm speaking for God.

So how have we gotten here? This brings us back to the guy that 'cracked open the door' of **the time of the end**. It's by virtue of his **work**. And by virtue of the fact that his 'followers' **continue** to find what others continue to miss. What he was able to find—that no one else was really even looking for—is commonly called a 'gap' which is the basis of 'gap theory'. This is the idea that God has hidden or even completely removed the mention of the period of The Age of Grace from all Old Testament **scripture**, mainly to make it possible to complete all His plans of salvation in Jesus. Dispensationalists find where these missing gaps fit in Old Testament **scripture** thereby making sense of what no one could make sense of before. But we should now call it 'Gap Doctrine' because I no longer have any doubt as to its proper application in The Word of God. And we have already seen it repeatedly correctly applied in this **study**, not that I'm sure I've recognized all of God's applications of it so far though. The Old Testament is mostly **prophecy** after all.

But those who still think that this so-called 'gap theory' is 'far-fetched' should ask themselves this question. Who said that **the dispensation of the grace of God** for **Gentiles** was in **other ages** and **from the foundation of the world a mystery** that was **hid in God** until finally **revealed** to **the holy apostles and prophets** of the Church **by the Spirit**? Yes, that would be the Apostle Paul and by **revelation** from God. This is one of those **teachings** of Paul you don't want to mess with. And how else do you think God **hid** this now already 2000 year-old period from his Old Testament **prophets** but still was able to tell them about the last two of the **seven** 'world-ruling' kingdoms that are separated by this period? Rome is gone. No 'world-ruling' kingdom has yet emerged since. And another won't until The Rapture of the Church ends this former **mystery** now **revealed** as The Church Age of Grace. Then, The Mystery of Iniquity and Satan's seventh 'World hegemony' may be **revealed** too, which we already now **know** must originate somewhere northwest of Israel before it's finally transplanted to Jerusalem.

Still, even **sincere** and **diligent** students who recognize that they have erred in interpreting **prophecy** should be aware that they are in good

company. The Apostle Paul himself, who evidently believed that The Rapture of the Church was most likely coming in his lifetime, was obviously mistaken, and based doctrine on his **interpretation** of the signs of the times, concluding that because of the supposed **present distress** [1Cor 7:26](#), or on his assumption that time was short, that Christians would do better to put all plans on hold, not commanding but recommending, **Let every man abide in the same calling wherein he was called** [1Cor 7:20](#). Now this was at the time when the **mystery** Church Age was newly **revealed**, so I recommend cutting Paul some slack on this one, even as I cut John Calvin some slack 1500 years later. To them the **mystery** was **revealed**, but much of Daniel's **prophecies** were [**not**] **understood** by anyone until very recently, remaining just **words... closed up and sealed till the time of the end** [Dan 12:8-9](#), even long after Calvin's time. But now those days are provably over. So let me give you a brief report of some of the 'who's and when's' involved in the 'opening' of **understanding** of Daniel's **words**. And of course, along the way, it will become obvious who I think deserves the credit for being the first to 'get his foot in the door'. Still, we can only expect that this information and the timing of it comes from God. But it can only come to fallible sinners who are hanging around where they should be, and who happen to find themselves there at the right time. Of course, these would be the same sinners for whom we could write whole books about their sins and errors, as no one is really always hanging around in the right place. As King David, who according to the Biblical record has done things far worse than any of these men I am about to honor, God has forgiven them, and loves them. And you should too.

The 'bright star' of the early-1800's Premillennial Movement, also called the British Millenarian Movement—that Jesus will come again before the coming Millennium—in London, is Edward Irving, who is persuaded of the Church's impending decline and demise but also of his own potential 'new Pentecost', and is encouraged in that direction by Samuel Coleridge (during 1822-25). Irving is discipled in Premillennialism by James Hatley Frere (1825), who is inspired to publish his own Millenarian views (now Premillennialism) by the writing of Manuel Lacunza (1826), who is also later convinced to believe in miraculous gifts, healing, and tongues by A. J. Scott (1828), and who is popularized by Henry Drummond in the Albury Conferences (1826-28) which Drummond summarized and publishes in 1829 which gives structure to the ongoing British Millenarian Revival.

Distinguishing himself in this premillennial movement is the hotly contested, but by report, more hotly contesting, John Nelson Darby. His doctrines are still commonly referred to as Dispensationalism, and he is originally associated with The Brethren Movement—that taught only the select 'holy' would be saved (1829). He is the real inspiration behind the first Powerscourt Conference on **prophecy** in Dublin that is attended by Irving (1831), and at the 1833 Powerscourt Conference Darby first proposes what is called today "gap theory"—that The Church Age fits between the 69th and 70th week of Daniel's Chapter 9 **prophecy**, etc. He also maintains that there is still to come a pretribulation rapture of the Church which, along with his attacks on the apostasy of the Church, brings him in sharp contention with other obviously more liberal Premillennialist.

In 1840 Darby delivers a series of lectures at Lausanne, Switzerland, finally giving a complete dissertation of his doctrines for the first time, these being 1) Premillennialism—that Christ comes again before The Millennium at Armageddon, 2) Pretribulationism—that The Rapture of the Church precedes The Great Tribulation, and 3) Dispensationalism —that must include the first two but also that there are separate 'plans of salvation' for Gentiles and Jews through Jesus.

In the following years, a couple of proven false prophecies and prophets from both sides of the Atlantic Ocean [audio error] severely dampen the Millenarian Movement in the mid-nineteenth century, but it nonetheless benefits from the new Dispensationalist Movement. The 1859 revival in England also helps the Dispensationalists, being led for the most part by The Brethren Movement, but the revival also sparks an Interdenominationalist Movement that benefits Dispensationalism, especially in America, including help from the ministry of Dwight L. Moody in both England and America. The later-dubbed Niagara Bible Conferences (1868-97) feature the biggest annual assembly of Dispensationalists, or at least Premillennialists, and is arguably the origin of Fundamentalism—'strict adherence to the fundamental tenets of Christianity'.

Over time most American Dispensationalists abandon some of Darby's doctrines including his overly exclusive sectarian tenets—including that 'true Church members' could only include those from the time of Pentecost on, (oops), but keeps most of his dispensational doctrines, as do I. So we should **understand** that it's not until the mid to late 1800's that the 'door' to this **doctrine** 'cracks open' through both the help and encumbrances provided by men like Irving, Darby, and Moody, but that the first real peek is had by John Darby who made it available to us all.

Actually, the biggest 'boost' to the **doctrine** is provided later by a disciple of Darby's **doctrines**, Cyrus I. Scofield, with the first three published versions of his Scofield Reference Bible starting in 1909. His **study** Bible provides the verse by verse 'study notes' that explain Dispensationalism to those that want to **learn** about it. And his work is **continued** under the supervision of a committee of reputable Christian men who ultimately produce The New Scofield Reference Bible in 1967, now called The New Scofield Study Bible. Through these years and beyond Dispensationalism has grown and developed to the present day.

But it would be fair to admit that Scofield could be accused, and is once convicted, of 'questionable character', even of swindling his own family. See the 'tunnel-vision attack' documented in, [Scofield: The Man Behind The Myth](#). This attack proves nothing more than that relationships other than with **the truth** will mislead you. But speaking of being misled, I heard about this king who arranges for one of his soldiers to be killed in battle so he can steal his wife. And still this king remains to God, nonetheless, **a man after his own heart**. And if this isn't enough grace, **the LORD God of Israel gave the kingdom over Israel to [this king] David for ever, even to him and to his sons** ([1 Sam 13:14](#); [2 Chron 13:5](#)).

But is this any excuse to consider forgiveness for men who cheat their own family, or who, possibly even worse, insist on your 'holiness' for your own good and salvation. Of course it is. Certainly David, John, Cyrus, and I are sinners saved by grace at best— not to place myself on the same level of the

one who will sit on the throne **over Israel... for ever**.

And come to think of it, we should all probably give a lot more thought to 'holiness'. After all the Apostle Paul does seem to imply that it's a 'requirement' for all Christians, warning of dire consequences otherwise. He says,

Follow peace with all men, and holiness, without which no man shall see the Lord: Looking diligently lest any man fail of the grace of God...

[Heb 12:14](#)

Did you catch those 'requirements' and 'consequences'? In a nutshell he's agreeing with Peter that we must be 'diligent' to 'follow **peace** and **holiness**' or we might 'fall'. Maybe Darby was overselling the issue, not seeing so much the 'might' in verses like this. Still and evidently, his **heart** was in the right place because he certainly had good reason to be serious about it. But we **know** the blood of Jesus alone can **cleanse us from all unrighteousness** [1John 1:9](#). So as Paul warns, the only remaining 'consequences', assuming **the blood** is appropriately applied as needed, 'might' just be the **shame** of having all your **works** 'burn up', not necessarily **eternal damnation**.

By-the-way, some "Replacement Theology" and "Covenant Theology" advocates, and probably some "Christian Reconstructionists" too, claim that this throne of David was established at The Ascension of Christ—before Pentecost—believing that 'The Millennium' started about 2000 years ago, and is still ongoing, and that Jesus comes after Christians are finished 'taking over the World' for Him. We dispense with such postmillennial stances most convincingly in the totality of this **study**. David and Jesus will get their **thrones** on the Earth after Armageddon at the end of the still future Great Tribulation at the beginning of the following Millennium. And we will see a better picture of all this in the form of their new millennial city in [SECTION 11](#). And when we get there we will plainly see that this City of David has not yet come. I have another speculation on the subject though. I'm guessing that David will be presiding over 'groundbreaking ceremonies' for the new millennial Temple. And he may not 'strip off his clothes' this time, but I bet he does some dancing.

So since at least the 1967 version of Scofield's reference Bible bearing his name that was extensively revised by nine respectable scholars over 14 years—and they were by no means 'at war' with the previous revision—and since it did not include Scofield's participation—as he died in 1921—and even if you don't want to consider the scrutiny it survived in the over half a century previously, Schofield's character, and therefore Darby's character, is a 'dead issue'. And anyone still stuck on suchlike issues should not be considered part of the conversation. But it's OK to familiarize yourself with history. See [Notes on C. I. Scofield and the Scofield Bible](#) for one version of the facts presented here. There is also good information about Darby and others at this site too.

But let's be clear, Dispensationalists like myself, though acknowledging various plans of God, expect salvation can only come by Christ's blood sacrifice whether for Jews or Gentiles and regardless of how God 'pushes the

issue', as He **by any** and **all means** does. Jesus assures us of both these 'preconditions', saying,

No man can come to me, except the Father which hath sent me draw him [John 6:44](#).

And **Jesus saith...**

I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me [John 14:6](#)

So we recognize that God will **by any means** [Rom 11:14](#) and **by all means save some** [1Cor 9:22](#), and not just in this **dispensation of the grace of God**, but obviously also in all **other ages** too ([Eph 3](#)).

Again, this alone is a major revision from Darby's Dispensationalism, who saw salvation plans only for post-Pentecost Gentiles and Tribulation Jews. But you should **know** by now that Peter speaks of the **spirits in prison**, both Jews and Gentiles, that Paul and Jesus assure us were with **Abraham** in the Earth. And that these 'pre-redeemed' are the ones who died in all the **other ages** prior to Christ's death and resurrection—who are personally **preached to** by Jesus' spirit while He is with them in the Earth after he leaves his dead body behind on the cross. And these are the first to get the opportunity to accept Jesus as their Savior. At that point they are **led... captive** from these **lower parts of the earth** and follow him when he is resurrected from the dead. They follow him to **the third heaven** or **paradise** where they are now waiting for The Rapture of the Church as other Christians in this age are, whether dead or alive.

And Jesus' spirit, at the point of His resurrection, is the first to join with his apparently **changed, incorruptible, immortal** body. But the rest of **the spirits** who are now waiting in the Third Heaven or Paradise remain separate from their bodies that are still **in the grave**, and await the same **trump of God** that we do. When it sounds, these **dead** bodies, along with all the ones who have died believing **in Christ** since The Resurrection...

...shall rise first: Then we which are alive and remain shall be caught up together with them in the clouds, to meet the Lord in the air: and so shall we [all] ever be with the Lord.

This is when the rest of us will become **like** Jesus too ([1John 3:2](#)). And this is when all the dead and living **corruptible** bodies of the saved **must put on incorruption**. And this is an instantaneous process that will happen **in the twinkling of an eye** where our spirits and **mortal** dead or living bodies also **must put on immortality**. And this whole 'puzzle' Darby obviously did not fully put together. Do you blame him? Do you even **understand** it all yet yourself having been walked through it repeatedly? But he made it possible for those who followed behind to be able to do so.

And he found The Church Age of Grace in [Daniel 9:26](#), between the 69th and 70th week, proving that, though Daniel **heard, but... understood not... the words** because they were **closed and sealed**, Darby had begun to **understand**, which means that the **prophecies** of Daniel were beginning to

be 'unsealed and opened', and that at least a transition to ***the time of the end*** had begun ([Dan 12:8-9](#)). I mark this transition starting close to two centuries ago, starting from Darby's original lectures in Switzerland in 1840. But with The Age of Grace getting close to the beginning of its third millennia, what's a couple of centuries to finish things off?

I also have good reasons to believe that The Age of Grace might be exactly two full millennia—or 2 ***days*** to God—and will not go on into the third. This would mean, if correct, that The Rapture of the Church must be coming soon but still could be a couple decades away, depending on where you mark the beginning of The Age of Grace, and assuming you could sort out all of the historical and calendar confusion around the birth of Christ. I haven't really even been trying much up till now because I've had little faith that it could all be sorted out. I think one of the promises of Jesus related to this topic implies that we will not be able to, at least precisely. He promises,

But of that day and that hour knoweth no man, no, not the angels which are in heaven, neither the Son, but the Father
[Mat 24:36](#); [Mark 13:32](#).

I mean not even Jesus knows when this ***day*** is, only The Father. However this ***day*** Jesus is talking about here is His Second Coming, not The Rapture. And we already ***know*** that The Second Coming is seven years after at The Rapture. But still this will evidently not tell us the exact day. And I expect this means that we should remain cautious with our accounting in Revelation. I mean we should expect to do some good 'ballparking', but no 'exact science'.

By-the-way, I've seen some incredible star charting computer software recently that gives me some hope that we can deduce at least a little more on this subject. Maybe we can narrow down the coming Rapture of the Church as much as we can The Second Coming. I mean I expect it may be possible to narrow it down to the year and maybe even the month—just not the ***day***. But this is another topic better considered in [The Ages of Creation study](#).

But this ***study*** reveals several ***revelations*** never before seen—at least by me—coming from Dispensationalism. And that there should be other things still to ***learn*** by myself and others before time is up. Here again you can see that ***the truth*** is not only in the totality of this ***study***, but beyond.

And by-the-way, I should emphasize here the issue that some confuse The Rapture of the Church with The Second Coming of Jesus. And probably the biggest reason for this is that they confuse Jesus' description of the rapture in Matthew 24 with The Rapture of the Church. We will correct this error in [SECTION 10](#). Still and even without this correction, we ***know*** that at The Rapture of the Church Jesus does not ***come in like manner as...*** [the disciples] ***have seen him go into heaven*** [Acts 1:11](#), which is the ***true*** definition of The Second Coming of Christ. He certainly doesn't come all the way to Earth at The Rapture. He meets us ***in the air***. But when He comes at the end of The Great Tribulation He will come all the way down to the Earth. According to Zechariah the Prophet, He will return again to the very spot where he left from, evidently landing ***upon the mount of Olives*** where he will create ***a very great valley*** by splitting the ***mountain*** in ***half*** [Zech 14:4](#).

This is apparently His first act on Earth in establishing His new Millennial Kingdom, though maybe he'll go to Jerusalem second after **Armageddon**—not that those 'laid-low', 'shadows of their former **terrible** selves' will be going anywhere in the meantime. So whether He goes to Armageddon first or to the Mount of Olives first is debatable, but it's surely one after the other either way. And He will end up in Jerusalem one way or another to continue to establish and **rule** His Millennial Kingdom from then on.

We have already established that Dispensationalism is scriptural in this **study**, and that this **doctrine** is really originally espoused by Paul who assures us that there were **other ages** before this one ([Eph 3:5](#)), and who assures us further that there are future **ages** to come, declaring,

Unto him [God] be glory in the church by Christ Jesus throughout all ages, world without end. Amen [Eph 3:21](#).

Still, with all the corrections and perversions, (including "Progressive Dispensationalism" or "Neo-dispensationalism"—you don't want to know), and with all the new developments in dispensational doctrine such as they are, I am more comfortable to coin a new word for what I **teach**. The term I have chosen is Stationism, because it adds to Dispensationalism the new **revelations** God is now showing us. Of course you might prefer 'Station Dispensationalism', but it would seem a pity to make a 'way-too-big' word even bigger. And not only that, the bigger choice opens the door for 'Neo-station Dispensationalism'. And a shorter term constructed with the word 'age' in it would come with too much 'unwanted baggage'. Oh well, such is the growth I expect to take place in **knowledge** of The Word of God. Praise God.

And in coming to this 'expanded doctrine' I have evaluated many lesser constructions of eschatology from across the board. And the result is not so much selective but more inclusive of all reasonable interpretations leading to a bigger construction that compatibly interconnects them all, while at the same time reconciles all contradictions. And I mean that this is a much 'grandier construction' than the smaller, flawed, postmillennial or premillennial 'frameworks' I have outlined above. And it can be so judged, because this doctrine is arrived at using all **scripture**—nothing 'swept under the rug'—and by the consideration of all these 'lesser structures', which is the best way to test the **truth** of it.

But the point is that these 'lesser constructions' or perspectives, usually being neither all right nor wrong, helped me in one way or another to construct the greater one. For example, opposing pretribulational, midtribulational, and posttribulational doctrines— that The Rapture of the Church happens either before, or in the middle of, or at the end of The Great Tribulation period—helped me find and identify most of the raptures and distinguish a lot of the players and events. Again, the point is that there is **truth** to be extracted or derived from most all of these seemingly reasonable but contradictory doctrines. But they are only helpful if they are ultimately used for an even 'bigger picture'. The same will be **true** of this **study**.

Incidentally, most of the information I gave you about the history of Dispensationalism is supported by part of a 'study' called *Dispensationalism* by an author who seeks to lead us out of this "error" of **interpretation**.

Nevertheless, Dispensationalism remains widely popular among evangelicals today, though I would not be surprised at all to see it decline before The Rapture. And since Stationism requires an even broader, more detailed 'framework' of scriptural support, as demonstrated by this **study**, detractors of it will be come by even easier.

One of the most elusive keys to being able to **understand** Stationism should be obvious, but it's not. The key is **understanding** that the erroneous tendency of some toward 'legalism', (a lot of rules added to the Gospel), and of others toward 'liberalism', (few additions if any), both result in 'counterfeit exclusivism', (erroneously thinking others are missing the mark for what they add or don't add to the Gospel). I mean it's easily enough established that God discourages 'exclusivism', but a deeper **understanding** of **prophecy** makes clear that He is nonetheless planning for a variety of it—and not just in the way the Church is presently 'dividing' itself. No, coming to an **understanding** of these God-ordained 'divisions' is part of The Natural Progression of The Word of God. In this sense, 'exclusivism' helps us to identify the different groups that get saved, with only the 'simple Gospel' necessarily common to all the redeemed. Of course it also helps us identify different groups that don't get saved too. And in the same way their lack of acceptance of the Gospel is their only common factor.

At this point an oversimplified definition of the **doctrine** of Stationism would be helpful. Stationism expands Dispensationalism by adding the **understanding** that the different raptured groups in and around The Great Tribulation, and the survivors of The Great Tribulation and their **offspring** that are redeemed at the end of The Millennium, are placed by God in different and exclusive 'stations' in eternity. And for the redeemed, the 'stations' they end up in, and their 'levels' in that station, depend on what **age** they die in or survive, and on many other factors not excluding what they add and don't add to the Gospel while alive. The damned, however, all end up in just one 'station', in The Lake of Fire, but evidently there are many 'levels' in it too. We have covered some of what I mean by all this already, but there's much more to come.

This **understanding** seen in the totality of this **study**, built on the foundation of Dispensationalism, **reveals** a point of view that is 1) premillennial—indicating when Jesus comes back, 2) pretribulational—indicating when the Church is raptured, 3) dispensational—indicating that there are multiple 'plans' of salvation in multiple ages, and 4) stational—indicating that there are multiple different 'stations of service' in eternity, and many more 'levels of service' within those 'stations' related to each individual's exclusive use—or lack of use—of The Word of God.

In simpler terms and still speaking for God, I mean that 1) Jesus will come again before the start of The Millennium to the Mount of Olives and Armageddon, that 2) He will receive the rapture of His Church in the sky at the end of this age before the start of The Great Tribulation, that 3) though all must be saved by the sacrifice of Christ or suffer eternal punishment, there have been, are, and are still to come **other ages**, or 'dispensations', or ways God dealt, deals, and will deal with man's eternal redemption and eternal damnation, and that 4) this judgment of God includes 'higher and lower stations of service' in eternity, and within each of these 'stations' a range of 'higher and lower levels of service', including varying degrees of

reward, if any, and **shame** that will certainly be appropriate to how each soul has 'handled' The Gospel and The Word of God.

And it must be altogether quite a 'sliding scale'—going from the...

...wise [that] **shall shine as the brightness of the firmament** [like the Sun]; **and they that turn many to righteousness as the stars for ever and ever...** [Dan 12:3](#)

...to those who...

...shall receive greater damnation [than most others] [Mat 23:14](#); [Mark 12:40](#); [Luke 20:47](#).

And these would be the 'bottom feeders' **in the lake of fire**, evidently deeper down than most everyone else.

And the greatest tragedies, as I see it, are experienced by those that somehow just miss getting through **the door** of salvation, while it could be argued that the greatest **shame** is experienced by those who only just make it through. Jesus and Satan are obviously at the opposite ends of this whole 'scale' from the greatest **reward** to the greatest **punishment**. But this **study** does not really dwell on the many degrees of **reward, shame, and punishment** within the various 'stations'. We will only really endeavor to identify and distinguish these several higher and lower stations to be filled by the redeemed in various raptures or by survivors of The Great Tribulation and their children in The Millennium, and everyone else who ends up **in hell**.

And we have so far covered 5 of the 9 group raptures in and around The Great Tribulation, so far all to redemption, so with the couple of stations that will be divided out at the end of The Millennium, we still really have 6 more to go before we're finished with the **study**. And remember that there are 12 raptures altogether if you include The Resurrection of the Antichrist. A foundational **revelation** in this **study** is that identifying these raptures will help us identify the different 'stations' these exclusive groups will fill in eternity, in addition to some other views that expand Dispensationalism, which we'll further address especially in [SECTION 9](#) and [12](#). And by-the-way, the [TIMELINE of The Ages of Creation](#) at the beginning of [SECTION 2 \(p.22\)](#) should make much more sense to you by now. So it would be a good time to review it.

This brings us to the last topic I promised we would consider before moving on to the next section. We can't forget all those people, but hopefully fewer by now, still pulling for the Antichrist's kingdom being established in the 'gray zone' (if you're viewing a color map), home of the former Babylonian, Medo-Persian, and Greek Seleucid Kingdoms. But sorry, we have seen no real case for that so far. But could we be missing something? We should always suspect that this is the case, because always being on the lookout for new precepts is part of the 'spiritually healthy natural progression' of The Word of God.

And we did see that there is reason to believe that the Antichrist may have some unusual connections to the Muslim World, which even the

strongest proponents of a 'Persian Antichrist Kingdom' are likely unaware of because this connection is seen in Daniel 11. There we see the Antichrist's presumably 'close inside relationship' to a Muslim who in turn is also 'very close', likely a relative, to the sitting, probably Sunni Muslim king of Egypt. This may indicate that the Antichrist is at least raised among Muslims, and that this allows him to develop ties to persons close to the king of that coming **very great and mighty army** in Egypt. Of course it could also be that the Antichrist may not really be so personally close to this Muslim insider at all. I mean the Antichrist may just have good spies and this Egyptian insider may just be his power-thirsty 'mark'.

But I say 'Sunni Muslim king' because Egypt is presently overwhelmingly Sunni. There are only more Shiites Muslims, their rivals, in Iran. Sunnis are in the overwhelming majority in most every other Muslim country. But except for the backing of The U.S. and The U.K., the 'tactical advantage' is presently with the Shiites because oil-rich Iran sees to it that Shiites around the World are generally better supplied militarily than the Sunnis. Naturally, the Sunni nations are a bit nervous at the time of this writing about Iran, not to mention about the potentially unstable situation in Iraq despite the U.S. presence there. This is because, in case you've been 'living under a rock', the Shiites and Sunnis hate each other arguably even more than they hate us, which thankfully keeps them more at each others throats and less at ours. But we have already seen in Daniel 11 that a **king of the south**, or really two of them, take turns controlling the **great and mighty** apparently Sunni Egyptian **army** in The Beginning of Sorrows. And at this time I would expect that these Egyptian kings will also command the **Libyans** and **Ethiopians** too ([Dan 11:43](#)). And this implies things will not go so well for Iran sometime between here and there. If Iran continues to grow in strength, their ongoing conflict with the surrounding Sunni nations, not to mention with Israel, should 'come to blows', and before the start of The Great Tribulation. And this should result in Iran and the Shiites becoming subordinate to **Egypt** and the Sunnis before The Beginning of Sorrows starts.

And all these are important reasons why I don't think predominantly Iran-supported Shiite extremists, or even any Sunni faction or coalition of Sunni nations, will become an overwhelming threat to either The U.S. or Europe—just a continuing 'motivational irritant'. I mean it doesn't look like anyone will ever be able to unify just all the Sunni, or just all the Shiites, let alone all Muslims, between here and The Great Tribulation. And there will need to be a more powerful and more unified coalition to have any success in completely overwhelming The U.S.—like China and our predominantly Catholic neighbors to the south. And there is no one in sight to '**overflow**' the unity of Catholic Europe. It's just not going to happen.

But recently, Sunni Egypt and Sunni Saudi Arabia 'threatened' to each start their own nuclear weapons programs to counter Iran's if it becomes apparent that the U.S. cannot contain Iran and keep the region stable. But I'm seeing that Israel alone must eventually finish the job herself. And I expect that some kind of 'overwhelming display of force' by Israel will be necessary in this region before things quiet down again. And things won't just quiet down. Before the start of The Great Tribulation, an amazing period of peace and safety must come to the entire Middle East. We'll get to more specific details about this in the next couple of sections. And by-the-way, all

this news about Muslims is in a **Time** magazine article, March 5, 2007, p.28-40, except the prophetic analysis, of course.

So maybe the Antichrist's 'closeness' to this coming king of a Sunni-dominated Muslim World is telling us a few things. First, as already suspected, it could be telling us that the Antichrist could be originally Muslim or just from the old Seleucid Kingdom that is now a Muslim dominated area. Second, it tells us that if he grew up close to Muslims, he knows how to make a **prey** and a **spoil** of them. And third, it tells us that Shiite Iran and its Shiite revolution that started in the late 70's with the Iranian U.S. Embassy hostage crisis, will ultimately collapse, or will at least become subordinated under the Sunni majority, because Sunni Egypt will be the one who the Antichrist has his eye on, not Shiite Iran. I mean barring the much less likely possibility that Shiites gain control of this entire region.

And since the Sunni nations are presently only becoming increasingly helpless in the face of an increasingly militarily superior Shiite Iran, it's more likely that Israel will be forced to step up again and put at least Iran down before The Great Tribulation will be ready to start. Of course The U.S. could put down Iran too, but we'll see that it's really Israel that needs to do it, and do it in an even more spectacular fashion than they have done in the recent past. In fact **scripture** requires that it will be done so convincingly that it will initiate a period of dependable peace and security that will take us to the start of The Great Tribulation. But again, there's a lot more to this story left to tell in the next couple of sections.

Finally there are those other **scripture** references I told you about that seem to support the idea of a 'Persian Antichrist Kingdom'. Again, there's more scriptural **proof** to come why the Antichrist Empire cannot possibly be established anywhere in 'Persia', but it could be possible that the Antichrist himself somehow comes **out of** that region—like Jesus did from Egypt—before he starts his short reign in Europe. And clearly both the Antichrist and Jesus ultimately end up in Jerusalem. So these other **scriptures** that some believe 'prove' that the Antichrist Kingdom arises in 'Persia' actually, with a broader view, just offer support for the idea that the Antichrist himself comes **out of** Persia.

[Isaiah 14:25](#) is a verse in a well known **prophecy** about the fate of **Babylon, Lucifer**, and **the house of Israel** which evidently contains a reference to the Antichrist. Here God says,

I will break the Assyrian [the Antichrist] in my land [Israel], and upon my mountains tread him under foot: then shall his yoke depart from off them [the house of Israel], and his burden depart from off their shoulders.

Remember those 2300 days in Daniel 8 that start at The Abomination of Desolation when God will **give... the sanctuary... to be trodden under foot** ([Daniel 8:13-14,25](#))? At the end of the first 1290 days of this same period God will in turn **give** the Antichrist and his **host to be trodden under foot**, or as revealed elsewhere, **broken without hand**, etc. And both Isaiah and John make clear that Jesus Himself will **tread** this **great winepress** of **the fury** and **of the fierceness and wrath of Almighty God** ([Isa 63:3](#); [Rev 14:19-20](#); [Rev 19:15](#)).

But the Prophet Isaiah seems to see more than just this one severe 'trouncing' of the Antichrist and his forces. Jesus is obviously speaking in Isaiah 14 when he says that He will **break the Assyrian** and **tread him under foot both upon His mountains** in Jerusalem—the Antichrist's **palace** will be there—and **in His land** too, apparently at **Armageddon** where all the 'low-lives' will be waiting in a valley not too far away. This could imply that



the Antichrist will not be at Armageddon, but he will be in Jerusalem at the time Jesus arrives. No problem. Remember that we already have it on good authority, [Zechariah 14:4](#), that Jesus certainly will come to Jerusalem, splitting the Mount of Olives when he arrives, making in the process **a very great valley** where **half of the mountain shall remove toward the north, and half of it toward the south**. So Jesus will obviously 'stomp' the Antichrist and his supporters wherever they are and in whatever the order.

And we cannot overlook this apparent reference to the Antichrist as **the Assyrian**. The ancient seat of the great **Sennacherib king of Assyria** was at **Nineveh** ([2 Kings 19:36](#); [Isa 37:37](#)). It was the capital city of the Assyrian Empire. And it was in northern [Iraq](#), very near present

day [Mosul](#), a city on the Tigris River. Mosul is 250 miles northwest of Baghdad, also in Iraq on the Tigris. And **Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon** (many KJV references) had his capital city about 55 miles south of [Baghdad](#) (map, [p.305](#)). So an **Assyrian** could come from anywhere in southwest Asia, but Iraq would seem to be the best fit. And the Antichrist fits the part because he is expected to be in Israel when God **...will break the Assyrian** [both] **in my land** [at Armageddon], **and upon my mountains** [including on the Mount of Olives in Jerusalem]... And it fits that this is sometime after **the Assyrian** arrives to **burden** God's people. All this together is a strong case. So I'm assuming that this **Assyrian** is the Antichrist.

And this conclusion is also supported by the next **line** ([Verse 26](#)) that shows God is not talking about some 'local skirmish'—because the Israelites did have some serious 'local skirmishes' with the Assyrians. But God instead makes clear that He is talking about the main event and main villain of all time, saying,

This is the purpose that is purposed upon the whole earth: and this is the hand that is stretched out upon all the nations.

It doesn't get any more 'wide-angle' than this. It all implies that sometime after **the Assyrian** gains control of **all the nations** while ruling from Israel, God **will break** him. And I see how conditions are becoming ripe for the Antichrist to emerge from northern Iraq, in the Kurdish region around [Mosul](#), even now. But this story is better told in the next sections too.

By-the-way, we should **know** that The 70th Week of Daniel, including the Antichrist's entire reign, was not **hid in God** but 'plainly' **revealed** to His **prophets** in Old Testament times, except how it also pertains in some ways to the Gentiles, though there are even a few fairly blatant references along these lines too, especially in hindsight, some of which we will examine later. The point is that we should rightly expect to be able to find lots more details right on the surface concerning the Antichrist and his kingdom throughout Old Testament **prophecy**, though this is not the focus of this **study**, just a part of it. However we have extracted a good chunk of these details already, and we're not done yet.

Also, we are expecting that the Antichrist will come **out of** one of the former post-Alexander Greek sub-kingdoms, except not the Ptolemaic Kingdom. And we seem to be seeing strong evidence in [Isaiah 14:25-26](#) that he does indeed come **out of** the Seleucid quarter, and probably Iraq, as he is described as **the Assyrian** whose **hand... is stretched out upon all the nations**, who God **will** ultimately **break** in Israel.

But though at first glance it appears that this **Assyrian** will set up His Kingdom in 'Assyria' too, and expand it to '**overflow**' Israel, this same **prophecy** of Isaiah seems to **prove** that the Antichrist Kingdom will **never** be centered in '**Babylon**', and that no other kingdom can ever be. The evidence of this is found earlier in the **prophecy**, in [Isaiah 13:17-22](#), where it seems to be fairly plainly established that after God...

...stirs up the Medes against them [Babylon]... [then] it shall be as when God overthrew Sodom and Gomorrah. It shall never be inhabited, neither shall it be dwelt in from generation to generation [Isa 13:17-20](#).

Indeed, after **Darius the Median** (Astyages) was stirred up by 'tactless' **Belshazzar**, it was all downhill for **Babylon** from then on. Now I don't see Babylon's demise as being as fast as Sodom and Gomorrah's, as **Darius** did not really need to bring that serious of an attack to gain control. So this must be talking about the results—that the area as a result eventually becomes no longer **inhabited**. Surely the pillaging over time must have been devastating, everyone wanting a piece of **the golden city** [Isa 14:4](#)—the worst and last culprit being maybe Ptolemy III on his rampage when he was upset that Seleucus II's mother had killed his sister and his nephew. So I'm sure if there was anything left in or from the City of Babylon at that time, he took it. And so in time the former **golden city** came to fit the description of **Sodom and Gomorrah**, and it has certainly fit that description now for a long, long time. And despite even the recent efforts of Saddam Hussein, we are promised that it will never arise again in any form. But of course God's promise is likely just referring to the area of **the golden city** itself, and not to the entire Babylonian Empire, as kingdoms did follow in the region.

So now that I've lead you through this popular argument, I'm ready to tell you that it cannot be as simple as that. It's a good place to start, but there is some confusion here that we're not really ready to deal with yet. The above '**interpretation**' of [Isaiah 13:17-22](#) only works with a 'tight view' of these verses. We **know** that later in this **prophecy** God speaks of the demise of the Antichrist, **the Assyrian**, and at what appears to be a much later time.

So what we need is a view of the whole **prophecy** in God's perspective. Only that will show the confusion that is common on this subject, but only if you're ready to take it all in and catch all the clues, including looking for the 'gap'. But we're not ready because we need more perspective. We'll be a lot closer by the end of the next section.

But before we're done with this section, another reference that 'Persian Antichrist Kingdom' advocates depend on will give us a good warm-up for the next section and for the perspective we're looking for. It's not as easy to unravel as the last reference to **the Assyrian**, but if you'll again take my word for a few things that you can check out on your own later, it won't be that hard either. It's in The Book of Micah. Micah has been called "Isaiah in miniature" because they were contemporaries and they have such a similar message. The main difference can be identified in the fact that the Jews at this point are divided into two kingdoms. They are the kingdom made up of the two tribes of Judah centered in Jerusalem, and the kingdom made up of the ten tribes of Israel centered in Samaria. Isaiah gets the job of trying to 'straighten out' the Kingdom of Judah and Micah gets the job of trying to 'straighten out' the Kingdom of Israel. But neither is ultimately 'successful'. As promised and predicted by Micah, the ten-tribed Kingdom of Israel falls into captivity to Assyria. And as promised and predicted by Isaiah, the two-tribed Kingdom of Judah later also falls into captivity to **Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon**, who has already at this point conquered Assyria, taking their Israelite captives to Babylon too. Finally, both the Judean and Israelite captives are released by **Cyrus the Persian**.

In Chapter 4 Micah begins to **prophecy** about **...the last days Micah 4:1**. And in this chapter he 'digresses' in **Verses 9-11** to explain exactly how this process gets started, telling the tribes of Israel,

Now... shalt thou go forth out of the city [of Samaria], and thou shalt dwell in the field [in Assyria], and thou shalt go even to Babylon [where they are joined by Judah, including the Prophet Daniel]; there shalt thou be delivered [by Cyrus]; there the LORD shall redeem thee from the hand of thine enemies...

So Micah tells the ten tribes of Israel that they will go from **Samaria** to **Assyria** to **Babylon** and finally back home again.

But this, as I said, is the only a 'digression' in this chapter. The remainder of it and the next is about **the last days Micah 4:1** except for one more 'digression' in **Micah 5:1-3**. There we find a 'summary' of the earthly ministry of Jesus including his first coming to **Bethlehem**, and his second coming **to be ruler in Israel**, then back to how **they shall smite the judge of Israel with a rod upon the cheek** which is another 'first-coming' **prophecy** fulfilled by Jesus in **Matthew 27:30**. And it's also explained in Verse 3 that this is why He **will give them up, until the time that she which travaileth** (or 'labors in childbirth') **hath brought forth...** This is a direct connection to **the woman** of Revelation 12 and therefore to Israel, obviously **in the last days**. And there is a further connection to The Days of Vengeance in the reference. It's about Jesus' 'sequestered' Jews, who are **the remnant of his brethren** [that] **shall [then] return unto the children of Israel**, evidently for the beginning of The Millennial Kingdom. And this appears to account for

just about everyone as we will further establish in the remaining sections.

I go through all this to show that we are making sure that the references to **the Assyrian...** [of] **the land of Nimrod** in [Verses 5-8](#) is not about one of the 'local skirmishes' at the time of the Assyrian Empire. The Assyrians did indeed conquer and subjugate the Kingdom of Israel—the ten tribes—but here Micah foretells of a time...

...when the Assyrian shall come into our land: and when he shall tread in our palaces... then shall we [Jesus and Israel] raise against him seven shepherds, and eight principal men. And they shall waste the land of Assyria with the sword, and the land of Nimrod in the entrances thereof: thus shall he [Jesus] deliver us from the Assyrian, when he cometh into our land, and when he treadeth within our borders.

I don't have much to say about the **seven shepherds, and eight principal men** that the Israelites will **raise against** the Antichrist, and that God will use to help **deliver** Israel, except that certainly this hasn't happened yet. But you should remember that we expect about 1290 days or so between the time this **Assyrian shall come into** Israel to when Jesus and Israel **shall waste the land of Assyria**. And you should notice that this sounds like we're talking more about the 'follow up' to **Armageddon**—when Jesus and **the children of Israel... shall waste the** [surrounding] **land of Assyria with the sword**. And we should expect that included among these 'recruits' should be the **armies** John tells us will ride down from Heaven on **white horses** with Jesus.

This **scripture** in Micah is also evidence that Israel can never be expected to get along with the Muslims. Nevertheless, there is going to be a negotiator of a successful 'Middle East Peace Plan'. His name is Jesus. Micah tells us so in Verses 5-6, saying,

...this man [Jesus] shall be the peace... [and] thus shall he deliver us from the Assyrian, when he cometh into our land, and when he treadeth within our borders.

But again, if you didn't **know** that the Antichrist Kingdom originally expands in a southeast direction toward Israel, you would think that these verses about **the Assyrian** in Isaiah and Micah prove a 'Persian Antichrist Kingdom'. But **knowing** what we **know**, they can at best only **prove** an Antichrist of **Assyrian** origin, who is from **the land of Nimrod**—the original Babylon—which is also the same area as the Seleucid quarter of the divided Greek Empire. And such typical misidentifications—typical because God sets us up to make them—only require sustaining a narrow view. And what those with this narrow view are missing—besides a complete **understanding** of Daniel 11 and The Book of Revelation—is that neither the regions of former **Assyria** nor **Babylon** nor **Persia** nor the former Seleucid Empire can possibly host the Antichrist Kingdom in The Beginning of Sorrows. And this is not only because these former kingdoms are 'geographically misplaced' for this assignment. We will also confirm in [SECTION 9](#) that this region, except Israel, will be entirely 'wiped out' by God halfway through The Beginning of

Sorrows. So the Antichrist could come **out of** the former Seleucid Kingdom, but he must first establish his kingdom in Europe, and then a while after his homeland is 'wiped out' by God he can finally return, though not really to '**Assyria**', but to Israel, and with the intention to thoroughly **break the covenant with many** that he made 3½ years before, and to commit The Abomination of Desolation. But again, there is more to come to **prove** all this.

By-the way, you may remember that I led you to believe that all the evidence about **the Assyrian** was bogus. I did that for two reasons. One is that you can now see that it is bogus, but only in the way it's commonly used. It's used to say that the Antichrist's Empire will be established in The Middle East, but it should instead be used only to show that the Antichrist will come **out of** Assyria, and that he will be an **Assyrian**—not that he will first establish his kingdom in **Assyria**. The other reason is that I wanted you to **experience** what it was like to be influenced by your bias, but later break **free** of it and **grow** beyond it. And hopefully this is not the first time this has happened to you in this **study**. And it certainly won't be the last if you **continue** in this **study** and in **the Word of truth**. And it's OK if you're not convinced yet, because, again, there is more **proof** to come, but if you don't fully understand the issues, some review is in order.

And to 'throw another log on the fire', there's the three-chapter **vision** of the Prophet Nahum about **Nineveh** in **the land of Assyria**. This **prophecy** seems to add that the Antichrist will **come out of** the **city** of **Nineveh**. And referring mostly to the ancient city of **Nineveh** in this **vision**, God repeatedly says, **I am against thee**, and once, **Woe to the bloody city!** ([Nah 2:13](#); [3:5](#); [3:1](#)) So it's pretty obvious that God really did not like **Nineveh** even though He had earlier spared it when its **people** repented—if you remember the story of the Prophet Jonah. Naturally then, we would expect the **prophecy** to be mostly about ancient **Nineveh** and its evils, and its destruction, and its 'local skirmishes' during the Assyrian Empire. And it is. But in this **prophecy** God also occasionally 'digresses', but in the opposite direction timewise than in Micah's account of the downfall of **Babylon**. I mean in Nahum's account God only occasionally 'digresses' from ancient days to '**the last days**'. And surprisingly enough, He refers to the **city** of **Nineveh** in '**the last days**' too.

But you should always be on the lookout for God's 'digressions' if you remember that from His perspective the whole Creation has only been going on for a few **days** now. And it's only with this perspective that can you start to **understand** God's continual 'digressions' through this 'grand week' regardless of what the focus is on. And with this perspective you will be ready to start **understanding** a lot more—including the places where the 'gap' fits. Though, as I admitted earlier, I'm sure I've haven't found all the references to the Antichrist nor all the 'gap placements' either. In Nahum's **prophecy**, for example, I'm not completely sure where the gap fits because it may fit in more than one place. This is because some of the descriptions of the destruction of **Nineveh** I could see happening to either ancient Assyria or Iraq in the near future. But maybe this is how it's supposed to be too.

But I clearly see a 'digression' to the future that apparently refers to the Antichrist in [Nahum 1:11](#). Here he is appropriately enough identified as someone that **imagineth evil against the LORD** and is **a wicked**

counsellor—just the right man for the job to help establish a dishonest international peace treaty. And this additional 'geographical marker' seems to further narrow down the Antichrist's origins to the Kurdish Region of Northern Iraq. Remember that the city of Mosul, Iraq is about where **Nineveh** used to be. See again the map on [page 305](#). So like Jesus came **out of Egypt**, I expect that the Antichrist will come **out of** The Seleucid Kingdom, but more specifically from the predominantly Kurdish region including the city of Mosul in Northern Iraq. And like Jesus was **prophesied to be called a Nazarene** [Mat 2:23](#), I'm guessing that the Antichrist will hail from **Nineveh**, its modern day counterpart presently called Mosul.

And we **know** that from the time of The Abomination of Desolation on that the Antichrist will 'resettle' within these former Assyrian and Babylonian and Persian and Greek Seleucid kingdoms by 'settling' in Israel, but he must first leave this region to set up his kingdom in Europe so that he will escape the destruction of his homeland that must occur while he is gone. Only after that he can return and continue with his **purpose that is purposed upon the whole earth...** [to become] **the hand that is stretched out upon all the nations**.

Also we are beginning to see that it must be 10 predominantly Catholic countries northwest of Israel, in Europe, that will be his original kingdom and haven while he's away from his homeland. But how do we finally convince those who are sure that the Muslims will eventually overthrow Europe that this is impossible? **Knowing** that Muslims hate Catholics probably nearly as much as they hate Jews, how can we anticipate otherwise? But we will, though it will take the next two sections to really 'nail it all down'.

And I would hope that you would review all the timelines, charts, and maps before you go on to the next section, especially the [CHART of the 45 Attributes of the Antichrist and his Kingdom](#) on [pages 206-207](#). Such **patience** and **diligence** would indicate that you're ready to **continue**.

SECTION 8 The False Prophet and The Days of Vengeance.

The Ministry of the False Prophet

It's about time to explain some of those outrageous statements I've made about Catholics. I've meant every word I've said so far. And there'll be no backing down here—no more or less than **scripture** does. And hopefully, I won't be 'burned at the stake'. Seriously, I'll be 'calling a spade a spade', and it's nothing personal. I've never been a Catholic, only been to an 'ecumenical Catholic service' once as far as I remember. So there's really nothing about me to judge here but my **handling** of **scripture** and whether it has given me enough **knowledge** and **wisdom** to overcome what you might otherwise consider **ignorance**.

The question of where the False Prophet will originate from is a most uncomfortable issue. Understandably, no one wants **him** to have any present or future relationship with their 'church'. But everyone that wants to **know the truth** is going to have to face the fact that exposing the institution that will eventually support **him** is not going to be popular, and possibly even dangerous. The clues available in **scripture** alone go a long way in identifying **him** and his institution. And by deduction, just like we are doing with the raptures and the Antichrist Kingdom, we can narrow things down quite a bit further.

And when it comes to judging the False Prophet and the religious institution he represents, we'll see mass executions by bloody butchery including the most successful campaign of genocide ever. And this institution must be the one that's had some major successes in this field already. And remember we talked about the mass executions of Jews and Christians just after The Abomination of Desolation. Well, it's time to 'unhood the headsmen'.

We **know** that Satan wants to be **like the most high**. And though The Real **most high** should have control of the biggest 'church' in the World, it could be argued that this is not the case, because the largest denomination of what is popularly thought to be 'God's Church' is really not part of God's Church at all. And this 'denomination' is the only part Satan wants, or can use, because it will be the only part the Antichrist will be able to fully get on his side.

And I'm not talking about any of the so-called 'cults', nor am I really even going to address that issue in this **study**, except that I have already made clear how too many churches consider too many other churches 'cults', who have **beams** in their own eyes. And we're not going to focus on the Buddhist or Hindu religions because they stay mostly out of 'The God Zone' during The Great Tribulation so that **scripture** only pays them, at best, 'peripheral attention'. And we're not focusing on the Muslim religion either because we'll see that the bulk of its followers are going to get 'crushed' fairly early in The Great Tribulation, and later entirely subjugated by the Antichrist's expanding kingdom. And though some of these religions might help with the 'infrastructure' that Satan will need to deceive **all the world**, none of them fit

all the 'scriptural criteria' for the institution of the False Prophet. So by simple deduction, and simple 'Protestant reasoning', we will see there's really no other suitable contender to fulfill this role than the Catholic Church. It's undoubtedly the richest and by far the most internationally influential, especially in the Western World, and most of all in Europe.

But remember I said that there are many that predict Europe's inevitable 'conversion' to Islam. The implication is that Catholics will give up without much of a fight. But **scripture** simply doesn't agree. The clues instead make clear that it's not the Muslims that will really 'get the rowdiest' and 'subdue the other guys'. It's the Catholics that will finally do it and with the help of the Antichrist. But right now I see Satan disguising this perspective by a presently successful 'P.R. campaign' that allows many to think that Muslims will eventually successfully take over Europe, making everyone overlook the alternative—that Catholics will instead take over Southwest Asia and North Africa. I mean we at least should think that it could go either way. After all, they've played that 'shuffleboard game' before. It's what the Crusades were all about. Look it up.

But as should also be expected, I am sure the Catholics won't be able to pull it off without the Antichrist. So in 2009, with Iran now rising and Egypt apparently not yet even started in her rise to again rally the Muslims, and with it being unlikely that a sufficiently charismatic interim leader to rally the Catholics in Europe will arise in the meantime, the prognosticators of Europe's doom may continue to hold the majority opinion for a while. But we will see that the time is coming when Israel will stand in the way of most all of this—kind of like the U.S. has in the past—until after the Antichrist is **revealed**.

And however it unfolds, wars between the Catholics of Europe and the Muslims of The Middle East are a brewin'. But we now **know** from Gabriel the Archangel exactly how the last three will turn out—in detail. And if the Muslim World is to collapse not long after 'the Protestant Church' disappears, who else could rise in Europe in The Beginning of Sorrows that could ultimately 'harness' Satan's power by supporting the Antichrist? Who else but the Catholics? Again, this case is not finished until the next section because we still need to see how **scripture** makes clear that the Muslim World's role in The Great Tribulation makes them and their religion absolutely ineligible to host the origins of the Antichrist Kingdom, and makes clear that the Antichrist's early battles will be against the Muslim World. So from this point, the case continues with some of that 'Protestant reasoning' I mentioned a few paragraphs back.

First, it makes sense that Satan is not just thinking about who would be the best institution to support his religious leader in The Great Tribulation, but he must also be already preparing this institution to be ready for him when the time comes. So by now it should be recognizable. But really it's been recognized for nearly a millennium now. And you may have heard that all of the early 'Protestant Church Fathers' either believed or at least suspected that the Pope's office is held by the Antichrist. And certainly these Protestant Reformation Leaders did not agree on everything. But according to my encyclopedia, all the 'big ones' pretty much all agree on this point.

The Protestant Reformation, really the beginning of significant opposition to the Pope and the Catholic Church, could be said to start with John Wycliffe

of England whose books are eventually burned by the Catholic Church. And though he dies before they can burn him at the stake, they dig up his bones years later and burn them. Wycliffe's work is carried on by Jan Hus (John Huss), a Czech, who is burned at the stake. Martin Luther, German, follows them and is the Lutheran Church founder who is also popularly considered the overall Protestant Reformation leader. Others include Menno Simons, Dutch, a Radical Reformation Leader, (means he abandoned liturgy, the Holy Eucharist and 'Visible Church' organization—basically keeping none of the Catholic Church's practices), and he is the father of the Anabaptists and the Mennonite Church. There is also John Calvin, French, father of 'Calvinism', and Thomas Cranmer, the Anglican Church founder who is also burned at the stake. And John Wesley, the Anglican offshoot Methodist Church founder, becomes a champion of 'Arminian' theology. Yes, these Protestant Church Fathers—dare I call them apostles?—are the ones who start the still unfinished arguments over whether liturgy is mandatory, whether it's really a 'Holy Eucharist' or just 'symbolic communion', whether organization should be by 'Church visible' or 'invisible' (which means by a 'learned-elite' over the entire Church v. 'autonomous small communities' of believers), and over whether 'Calvinism' or 'Arminianism' best describes our reality. Of course Pentecostals have come along in the last century 'reheating' things up quite nicely too. But all these Protestant groups at least used to agree that the Pope is either the Antichrist or his forerunner, and that his 'Church' is apostate at best.

More recently, the Catholic Church has combated the Protestant Reformation with its false-fronted 'Ecumenical Movement' (read, 'can't we just all get along until we outmaneuver you pesky Protestants'). This deceptive movement has allayed a lot of this discord between Protestants and Catholics. But despite the effectiveness of this current but surely temporary 'Trojan-horse' policy of the Catholic Church, it's still widely held by many Protestants that the Pope is the Antichrist.

And this is technically true, but only because all popes of the Catholic Church can be classified this way. This is because the Apostle John would define such types as among the **many antichrists**. He says,

Little children [meaning, of course, those regardless of age who are scripturally and therefore 'spiritually immature' and vulnerable] ***it is the last time: and as ye have heard that antichrist shall come, even now are there many antichrists; whereby we know that it is the last time*** [1John 2:18](#).

John, like Paul, and probably because of Paul, sounds like he gets a little understandably overexcited about the current 'signs of the times' in his day too—kind of like some people do today. I've certainly been there and done that myself. And I think God designed His Word to work this way to keep us all 'on our toes'. So the Apostle John also needs some 'slack' for his apparent misunderstanding that the time of the end was then very close—though the whole Age of Grace is correctly identified as **the last time** before Christ comes. The important point though is the spiritual insight he gives us here. That suchlike as the popes of the Catholic Church should be considered **antichrists**.

And John adds to this clear reference about the **antichrist** what he means by who the other **antichrists** are, saying,

They went out from us, but they were not of us; for if they had been of us, they would no doubt have continued with us: but they went out, that they might be made manifest that they were not all of us [1John 2:19](#).

This general rule can be applied to anyone who abandons or denies **the truth of the gospel**. But the Protestant Reformation is an appropriate kind of reversal of this rule. This is when there was a mass exodus from an apostate institution because of **the truth of the gospel**. Sure, 'exclusivism' can be dangerous no matter what the reason. But in this case, various groups of believers—later to be called Protestants—are among the first groups to escape the apostasy of the Catholic Church. And we will see how others in The Great Tribulation must also eventually do the same. But John is really only implying that pretty much anyone that is 'sufficiently exposed' to the Gospel and then rejects it in order to subvert it is an **antichrist**. So all the popes of the Catholic Church could qualify for this classification, as we'll **prove** before we're done.

However the Protestant Church Fathers were thinking that the popes they contended with were or could have been 'the one and only' **antichrist** that John also plainly acknowledges. But hey, I no more blame the early Protestant Church Fathers for coming to this conclusion than I do Paul or John for having an eye out for him in their day. And since John clarifies that every 'subverter' of **the truth** may not be the **antichrist** because there are **many** such 'subverters'—some obviously more effective at it than others—this confusion is even more understandable. And remember that Paul, John, and all of these Protestant Church Fathers live before The Book of Daniel even starts to be opened. This suggests that the Protestant Church Fathers should at least suspect that the pope is the Antichrist, since they **understood** and **believed** that they were dealing with **a devil**.

But rather recently some of us modern Protestants have finally figured out that there's a much more appropriate 'office' in **scripture** for the Pope of the Catholic Church to fill, namely, that of the False Prophet. There are only four passages in **scripture**—counting Revelation 17-18 as just one—that I am aware of that specifically mention **the false prophet** or his ministry or his institution. I mean if he's visible in the Old Testament—and I would expect he should be—I haven't found him there yet. So his role in **scripture** is easy to overlook if recognized at all. And this has evidently contributed to making any given pope an easily mistakable early candidate for the Antichrist by Protestant Leaders.

To make matters even more difficult to decipher, all four of the passages about him that I'm aware of are 'buried' in The Book of Revelation. Two of them are slim references really, and they are all at least as allegorical as literal. And it's the last one in Revelation 19 which identifies his destruction along with the allegorically represented Antichrist—**the beast**. But the two much more detailed references are completely 'locked' in 'puzzling' allegories that as far as I know remained 'mysteries' until rather recently. To see these 'puzzles' solved we'll need to use the last brief reference of him to 'unlock'

the more detailed ones. The other brief reference comes up later in this section and again in [SECTION 10](#).

So this last reference in Revelation 19 is the 'key' to 'unlocking' the others. We have already talked about ***the marriage supper of the lamb*** near the beginning of this chapter. And we'll talk about it again—as well as the rest of the chapter—in the sections to follow. This time we're only interested in the conclusion to the chapter. So all we need to ***know*** at this point is that Chapter 19 is a description of Armageddon and about the events that immediately precede and follow it. From this we can ***understand*** that the end of the chapter is about Armageddon's aftermath. During this time,

...the beast was taken, and with him the false prophet that wrought miracles before him, with which he deceived them that had received the mark of the beast, and them that worshipped his image. These both were cast alive into a lake of fire burning with brimstone [Rev 19:20](#).

Here we have an allegorically portrayed character described alongside one portrayed literally. But we ***know*** who ***the beast*** is here. It's obviously the one Jesus defeats when he returns—the Antichrist. And there is ***with him the false prophet*** that is here worthy to be mentioned as apparently just as responsible and punishable as the Antichrist, their punishment being that they will be the first to be ***both... cast alive into a lake of fire burning with brimstone***.

Just who is it that's 'worthy' to accompany the Antichrist in this dubious honor? We get a brief literal description of who he is right here. He is the one...

...that wrought miracles before him, with which he deceived them that had received the mark of the beast, and them that worshipped his image.

The details of this mass deception by ***miracles*** accomplished by the False Prophet, and the power he wields using ***the mark of the beast... and his image*** are elaborated upon in the two more detailed but mysterious allegorical passages about him and his institution. But we already see here that he is one of the major workers of 'deceiving' ***miracles***, surely both in the ***signs*** and ***lying wonders*** categories. This 'monster' who is responsible for having ***deceived*** those who take ***the mark of the beast*** and worship ***his image*** and who therefore is ***cast alive into a lake of fire burning with brimstone*** along with the Antichrist can by these criteria be identified in the first mysterious ***allegory*** about him in Revelation 13. We will now therefore be able to see that Revelation 13 is a more detailed account of the Antichrist and his False Prophet, there identified as ***the first beast*** and ***another beast***.

We have covered some of the first part of Revelation 13 already too. It's about ***the first beast*** whose 'big mouth' gives him away as the Antichrist at The Abomination of Desolation, the one that John's 'immature disciples' were looking for and evidently misidentifying. I call him ***the first beast*** because John identifies him this way repeatedly in the second part of the chapter.

After John is through with his identifications of **the dragon** and **the beast**, in [Verse 11](#) he begins to identify **another beast**, comparing it specifically to **the first beast before him**, this same **first beast... whose deadly wound was healed**. And John tells us that this 'second beast'...

...exerciseth all the power of the first beast before him, and causeth the earth and them which dwell therein to worship the first beast...

And we **know** where this **power** comes from because in Chapter 12 **Satan** is identified as **the dragon**, and in Chapter 13 we see that **...the dragon... gave power unto the beast**. So the False Prophet is described to be 'as powerful' as the Antichrist. And we're not just talking about religious institutional power, but also about 'miraculous' spiritual power.

John also shows us in [Verse 8](#) the **allegory** of **the Lamb slain from the foundation of the world**—who is obviously Jesus. And along with this **allegory** there is the one about Satan being the **worshipped... dragon** which is repeatedly in play in this chapter. Putting them together we can **interpret** what kind of 'second beast' we are talking about. He is someone who is acting as the 'stand-in' representative for Jesus, and as if he speaks directly for God, yet he is a deceiver. This plainly fits the **allegory** about the False Prophet in [Verse 11](#) where we are told...

...he had two horns like a lamb, and he spake as a dragon.

Again, in terms of **a lamb** and **a dragon** this 'second beast' is portrayed as 'masquerading' as the literal representative of Jesus and God, who is really speaking for Satan. And this would be one way to describe the Pope of the Catholic Church.

By-the-way, the reason that **the first beast** will **rise up out of the sea** and the second **beast** will be **coming up out of the earth** may be a metaphor meaning that they operate in different types of institutions, one political, the other religious. But there might just as well be another reason. I mean you should remember that we've dealt with the misconception that **the sea of glass** is a metaphor for 'a multitude of people' by combining references in Revelation 4 and 15. And I should add here that we still have yet to deal with the correct and appropriate use of the **many waters** metaphor in the next allegorical reference to the False Prophet. The point is that we must always be careful to discern the literal from the figurative. And conclusions should remain under examination long beyond the point you think you are sure of them. And sometimes it's unavoidable. I mean I certainly can't confirm that I see a metaphor in this case in Revelation 13, because it very well may be a literal reference. Maybe in these allegorical descriptions of these 'beasts' we are also seeing the simple literal differences in their geographical origins. The Antichrist, if he comes from, say, Iraq, and establishes his kingdom in Europe, can be said to 'come ashore'. And John may have this 'beach view' in the beginning of the chapter in order to witness this event. And I expect that the False Prophet will already have been long established in The Antichrist's domain when he acquires the power given him. So it makes sense from this perspective that John **stood upon the sand of**

the sea, and saw [first] a beast rise up out of the sea, and then beheld another beast coming up out of the earth.

However, the **four great beasts** of Daniel 7 also come **up from the sea**, these being elsewhere allegorized as some of the **heads of the dragon**. We **know** they specifically represent Babylon, Medo-Persia, Greece, and the combined Roman and Antichrist Kingdoms. And in this case I don't see them all as needing to come ashore to establish their kingdoms, just maybe to expand them. So, maybe it's just a metaphor for the differentiation between political and religious institutions after all. But remember Jesus and Paul use the same metaphor about **'a little leaven'** for different purposes and meanings, remember? Anyhow, this is all I got, and either **interpretation** seems to fit for me. And maybe both, or maybe neither. But pretty much any given Pope of the Catholic Church is the perfect fit for someone who would presume to represent Jesus Himself, but who is really speaking for Satan. And don't worry if you don't **know** what I mean that the Pope speaks for Satan. We're getting to that.

[Verses 12-18](#) give a detailed description of the False Prophets duties and responsibilities throughout The Days of Vengeance. And though I'm sure the Pope and his Church are instrumental in the Antichrist's rise to power by providing the infrastructure he can use to make **prey** and **spoil** of all other religious institutions in his kingdom in The Beginning of Sorrows, it's not until The Abomination of Desolation that the Pope and the Antichrist receive **all the power** to enforce the details **revealed** here. And the first thing this particular pope does upon receiving this **power**, evidently, is to display some 'whopper' **signs and lying wonders**, some 'hot' **great wonders**, and likely other incredibly deceiving **miracles** to 'prove' he is God's spokesman, and by this deception, win the World's worship of Satan and the Antichrist. John exposes him as...

...he [that] doeth great wonders, so that he maketh fire come down from heaven on the earth in the sight of men, And deceiveth them that dwell on the earth by the means of those miracles which he had power to do in the sight of the beast; saying to them that dwell on the earth, that they should make an image to the beast, which had the wound by a sword, and did live. And he had power to give life unto the image of the beast, that the image of the beast should both speak, and cause that as many as would not worship the image of the beast should be killed [Verses 13-15](#).

And we can tell what this **image of the beast** is for. It's the Catholic Church's 'loyalty test' for the Antichrist. Those made to submit to this 'test' who do not 'pass' will die, but not necessarily spiritually, unless they're stubborn hold-outs to Islam, Buddhism, Hinduism, etc. Such 'religious hold-outs' will be real tragedies. And from this we see that the **image of the beast** will be necessary for the motivation of people that would not otherwise accept their membership in this 'newly restructured' Catholic Church so easily.

But something else will be required for the general control of the population. The False Prophet will institute this control by issuing the means

by which every single financial transaction will be permitted or denied, **the mark of the beast**. John explains how it works, saying,

...he [the false prophet] causeth all, both small and great, rich and poor, free and bond, to receive a mark in their right hand, or in their foreheads: And that no man might buy or sell, save he that had the mark, or the name of the beast, or the number of his name [Verses 16-17](#).

So the Antichrist can be seen here to be using a preexisting 'religious network' and its leader to organize and control his 'financial network'.

Now we've all heard of technologies, and see new ones surfacing seemingly every day, that could be incorporated into such a '666-style' economic control of society. But you should not be surprised when I tell you that I am more than skeptical about technology's role in **the mark of the beast**. I don't see it as necessary at all. Remember, the regularity and severity of worldwide earthquakes alone in The Great Tribulation should limit the operation of international infrastructures to that of 'ancient times'. But an international religious network that has run by 'personal interaction' and 'word-of-mouth' for centuries, organized through interconnected local parishes, could do the job very well, and without the need of any modern technology. And I mean the Catholics should be the best organized worldwide network of any kind come The Great Tribulation. And despite all the 'withholding' still going on by The Spirit and the real Church, they arguably are even now. And we'll break this all down some more as we go. Next let's **learn** some more about the False Prophet in the remaining more detailed passage that's more focused on his institution, and the **multitudes** that make it up.

And speaking of the metaphor of the **many waters**, we're finally there. It's in Chapters 17 and 18, and it's part of a larger **allegory** involving the False Prophet's institution and headquarters **city**. And this account is like the account of the Two Witnesses in Chapter 11 which comes after most all of the first half's judgments are presented and concludes with events that mark the end of the first half, implying their ministry covers only the first half. The same can be said for the False Prophet seen in Chapter 17 and 18. This account occurs after the account of the second half's judgments and concludes with events that mark the end of the second half, implying his 'empowered ministry' covers only the second half—though in his case he must also be indispensably partnered with the Antichrist's success in the first half too.

The first part of this prophetic **allegory** in Chapter 17 is the most difficult to decipher, but a straightforward interpretation is finally provided by the Chapter's end. It's delivered by a 'team of angels' within the **vision**. And the lead angel is **...one of the seven angels which had the seven vials** of The Seven Plague Judgments. This angel tells John,

I will shew unto thee the judgment of the great whore that sitteth upon many waters. With whom the kings of the earth have committed fornication, and the inhabitants of the earth have been made drunk with the wine of her fornication [Verses 1-2](#).

Without a doubt the prophetic **allegory** in Chapter 13 covers **'the principalities and powers'** of Satan, the Antichrist, and the False Prophet in The Days of Vengeance, but this one instead focuses more on **the judgment** or end of The Ministry of the False Prophet, or really more on the end of his institution as a whole, and in terms of this institution's relationships with the various 'top players' in the Antichrist's kingdom and with the rest of the World. These 'top players' include the Antichrist, the spiritual **prince** over him—evidently not Satan—and the human **ten kings** under the Antichrist in 'his' empire. And since one or more of these 'players' may be involved in any part of the **allegory** or **interpretation** at any point, misinterpretations and incomplete interpretations are easily come by.

But we'll see that all these 'players' are depicted as various authorities that are controlled by **the woman**, who should be **interpreted** here as the 'overlording hierarchy' of the Catholic Church. We can see this partly because in Chapter 18 we can deduce that **her** 'headquarters' is Vatican City, and partly because this 'hierarchy' is over **many waters** which late in Chapter 17 is **interpreted** to be **peoples, and multitudes, and nations, and tongues**. So the person of the False Prophet, the particular pope in The Great Tribulation, is certainly a part of all this, but not as much in focus here as the institution as a whole. And we will see this in more ways than one.

To start with, in the previous references to the False Prophet in Chapters 13 and 19, which refer more specifically to the Pope himself, we see **him** depicted with male characteristics. But this time we will see the depictions of a **woman**. It becomes apparent that this is because we are talking less specifically about the person of the Pope and more specifically about the 'headquarters' **city** from which he 'ministers' and about the institution as a whole. This is **she** who is shown to be able to make the whole World gladly cooperate with **her** conspiracies, because **she** is a...

...whore... With whom [not just] the kings of the earth have committed fornication...[but also 'all'] the inhabitants of the earth have been made drunk with the wine of her fornication.

We should not miss the far-reaching influence described here and ponder who could have such influence at this time. And what does it mean that 'the whole World' is **drunk with the wine of her fornication**? It is later finally **interpreted** that **the wine of her fornication** is **the blood of prophets, and of saints, and of all that were slain upon the earth**. The fact that she is **made drunk** shows that **she** greatly 'overindulges' in this **'wine'**. In other words, 'all' the surviving **inhabitants of the earth** will participate to some degree in **her** schemes to make **prey** and **spoil** of members of competing religious institutions—especially Jew and Protestants—as well as participate in **her** other surely heinous 'mass atrocities', pun personally unavoidable.

Now like Daniel's **'all'** in Chapter 7, when he speaks of the four kingdoms **...which shall bear rule over all the earth**, again, we should be aware that God is obviously only focused on The God Zone, and that there are good reasons for that. And I mean that we can recognize that all the previous 'world-ruling' kingdoms had their limits. Even Alexander couldn't get through

India, let alone to China, nor could Julius get through present day England to Scotland, and none of them as far as I **know** made any 'significant excursions' across the Sahara Desert, or the Pacific Ocean, other than possibly a little curious exploration and trade. And the same standards will apply here in the Antichrist's future kingdom. The Antichrist will obviously not reach China; neither will China likely persecute their own Buddhists, except for maybe minority factions of them or other minorities as they already commonly do. But China will also likely offer to help eradicate all the Protestants and Jews—and probably Muslims too—as a strategically-timed 'show of good faith' to the Antichrist that could be used to their advantage to advance on other fronts—like on The U.S. mainland, for example. And for the same reason China is not likely to provoke the Antichrist with the persecution of the Oriental branches of the Catholic Church—at least during The Beginning of Sorrows. So Catholic branches throughout the World during this time should experience astronomical growth, even in China. But China's eventual 'clampdown' on her Catholics could be part of the **trouble** Gabriel mentions in The Days of Vengeance that develops **out of the east and out of the north** of the Antichrist Empire ([Dan 11:44](#)). And however China does it, surely she will make some 'political hay' in the spirit of Hitler and Stalin in the process of doing what she's going to do anyway—expand. The same kind of treatment of Christians, Jews, Muslims, and Catholics should be expected in India too—unless and until the Antichrist comes to the rescue of India's Catholics in The Days of Vengeance. And we'll speak more about China and India's Catholics a little later on.

As for the rest of the World, we'll see in the next section how Russia, Southwest Asia, and North Africa get wiped out in the middle of The Beginning of Sorrows with **fire and brimstone** 'sent from Heaven'. And I'm guessing **plague** will pretty much finish off the rest of Africa south of the Sahara Desert as there are already signs of this inevitability in sight. And the existing trend toward 'Catholic-supported communism' in South and Central America could easily fully engage The U.S. from sometime in The Beginning of Sorrows on.

So considering that China will have work to do to consolidate her own region first—because The U.S. is still in the way—and considering she will need to make sure that The U.S. becomes bound on her own mainland, becoming at least too 'preoccupied' with her own problems to try to protect anyone else, I expect China will more or less wait on a 'mop-up-at-the-end' strategy, which would mean she would avoid too much direct involvement with the Antichrist Kingdom until, as we will see, she finally makes a 'resolute showing' in The God Zone at Armageddon. However we have seen in Daniel 11 a strong implication that China's final and farthest push to Armageddon is not her first attempt in that direction. A first attempt may be stopped by the Antichrist as she begins to intrude into central Asia toward the periphery of The God Zone.

And in Chapter 17, God's focus is in The God Zone, including in the **allegory** starting in [Verses 3-6](#) about this **MOTHER OF HARLOTS**. This **woman** is described to be...

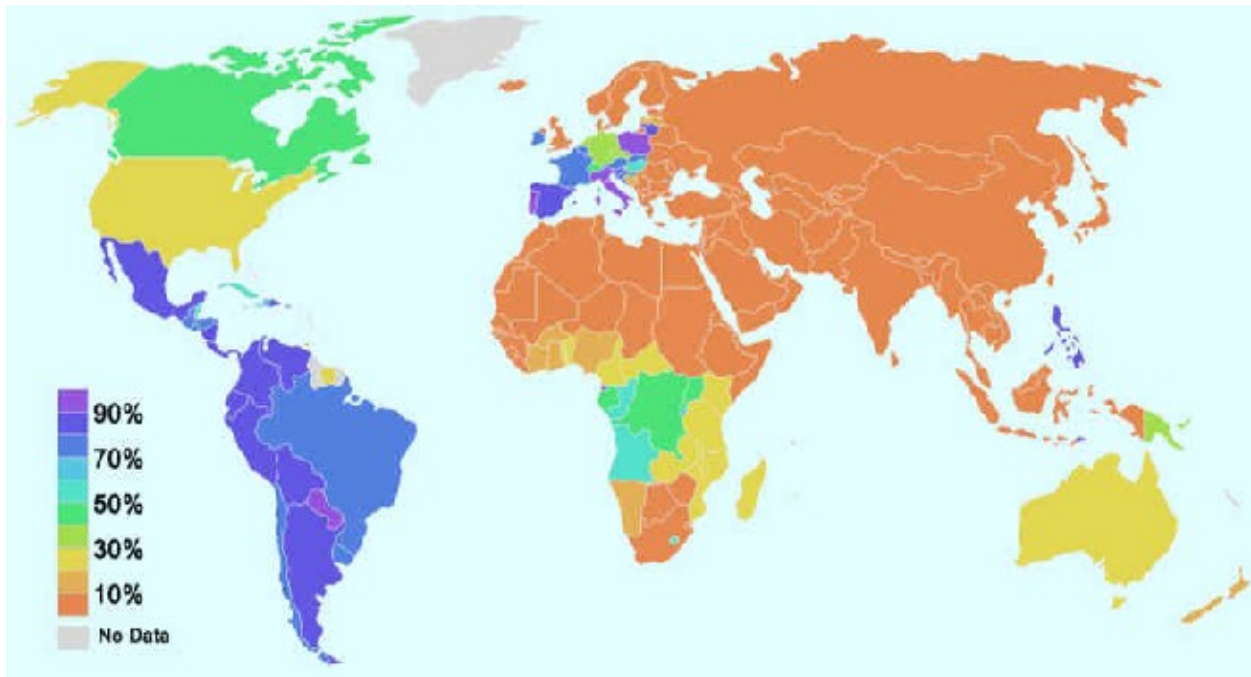
...arrayed in purple and scarlet colour, and decked with gold and precious stones and pearls, having a golden cup in her hand full

of abominations and filthiness of her fornication: And upon her forehead was a name written, MYSTERY, BABYLON THE GREAT, THE MOTHER OF HARLOTS AND ABOMINATIONS OF THE EARTH. And I saw the woman drunken with the blood of the saints, and with the blood of the martyrs of Jesus: and when I saw her, I wondered with great admiration (or "amazement" or 'astonishment').

This **woman** is portrayed as conspicuously, excessively, and shamelessly rich as the Vatican is even now. This is obviously because it's supported by the worldwide Catholic Church. It's the largest centrally organized religious institution in the World (see Adherents.com: Catholics). According to the 2008 edition of the Vatican yearbook, known as the **Annuario Pontificio**, which catalogs the church's presence in all diocese, the Catholic Church's worldwide recorded membership at the end of 2007 was 1.131 billion, up 1.4% from 2006 (Catholic News Service, Feb. 29, 2008). This is approximately one-sixth of the World's population. So there may be a few more Muslims than this, but they are certainly not nearly so well organized. And they don't stand a chance against this 'blood sucker'.

Take a look at the [MAP of Worldwide Catholic Church Membership \(p.319\)](#). Only one continent has 4 countries with over 90% Catholics. That would be Europe. The smallest is Luxembourg on the northeast border of France. But a couple of Mediterranean island nations could be added to this total too. Look for the blue, bluish purple, and especially reddish purple countries for the highest concentrations of Catholics. Light blue and green countries are around half Catholic. Yellow and especially orange countries have the least Catholics. The yellow ones are most likely to be dominated by Protestants. Understanding this you can see that most of Europe is dominated by Catholics. Most of the orange countries are dominated by Muslims, Hindus, or Buddhists. England, Scotland, and Northern Ireland are notable exceptions to this. They are obviously overwhelmingly Protestant countries with few Catholics. And this is one of the reasons why I'm pulling for The U.K. to oppose the Antichrist Kingdom at least in The Beginning of Sorrows, even though they are already so strongly connected with all of these other Catholic countries of The E.U.

MAP of Worldwide Catholic Church Membership



So the best candidates for the ten kingdoms that participate in the coming Beginning-of-Sorrows, Antichrist-led, 'Catholic Revolutionary War' in Europe are plainly visible on this map. They are, in a clockwise fashion, Italy, Spain, Portugal, France, Ireland, Belgium, Luxembourg, Poland, Slovakia, Hungary, Austria, and Slovenia. Germany and Switzerland are also likely to succumb to the literally surrounding and internal Catholic pressure too. Scandinavia may stay out of the picture in the cold north being less accessible across the Baltic Sea, though they must eventually acquiesce to the Antichrist. But it already looks like this will be about 10 Catholic counties kingdomwide, given that there will likely be a little 'consolidation' here and there, and that surely some of these countries will simply be willingly dominated by but not included in **the ten**. The countries in the region of former Yugoslavia, for example, will probably remain too unstable to be other than ultimately assimilated. I'll address the region of Romania, Bulgaria, Greece, etc. a little later.

And there's another thing that seems obvious by looking at this map. Current events tell us that The U.S. is likely to eventually have China-supported trouble with its neighbors to the south. But to make matters worse, we can also see that The U.S. is even more likely to have Antichrist-supported trouble with these same neighbors—'triple-teamed' you might say. And these apparently 'natural alliances' could result in 'Hitler-and-Stalin-like' treaties between China and the Antichrist Kingdom at least in The Beginning of Sorrows. And what do you think will happen when The U.S. 'floats her boats' in the Mediterranean Sea and sends the Antichrist home **grieved** fairly early on in The Great Tribulation? ([Dan 11:30](#)) I'm guessing that it will no longer be only China that's motivated to bring the U.S. down. And you can

'graphically' easily see why The U.S.'s neighbors to the south—and even to the north—would likely rise in widespread Catholic unified 'indignation' against any actions The U.S. might take in The Beginning of Sorrows to hinder the expansion of their 'religion' by the Antichrist. And China would at least provide support, much of it likely made available before the start of The Great Tribulation, and likely paid for with the increasingly abundant supply of Latin American oil.

By-the-way, have you heard the reports of the vast oil reserves recently found off the coast of Brazil? Not to mention their growing economy. And if Venezuelan 'dictator' Hugo Chavez or one of his successors could get a hold of all that along with the rest of South and Central America—as I'm guessing he's already planning to do, starting with Bolivia's help—the seemingly unlimited manpower of Catholic Latin America could do the rest to overwhelm the U.S. And you should realize that the later you go in The Great Tribulation, the more it becomes a numbers game—the armies with the biggest numbers win because modern technology becomes an insignificant part of the equation. So The U.S. should have its hands full and no longer be able to stand in the way of the Antichrist and the Catholic Church's expansion into the full scope of The God Zone by the end of The Beginning of Sorrows.

But I'm also guessing that even after the true Church leaves in The Rapture, The U.S., probably with the supernatural help and courage of its 'left behind' but newly 'awake' Protestants, will hold the line somewhere, but no thanks to the surely over 100 million Canadian and U.S. Catholics I expect will be 'left behind' too. Still, the 'heartland' or 'Bible Belt' may at least start comparatively free of Catholics and full of 'Protestants in heritage only' (PIHO's—pun again personally unavoidable). And they should be forewarned by the fact that a Catholic 'confederacy' takes over Europe. So some of them will **know** that this Catholic 'revolution' must also be coming for them too.

And one of the leaders of this 'revolution', this **MOTHER OF HARLOTS**, is most identifiable by what's written **upon her forehead**. First, we should recognize that **she** is another **Mystery**. And it should occur to you at this point that this **woman** is connected to The Mystery of Iniquity. So in the same way that the Antichrist can't be **known** for sure until after The Rapture, so the particular pope who is actually going to be the False Prophet cannot be **known** until then either. But I **believe** we can **know** each of their origins, offices, and jurisdictions now. And we can **understand** that **BABYLON THE GREAT** must refer to the kind of religious institution that this **MOTHER OF HARLOTS** 'overlords' —not to her geographical location.

Explaining how **BABYLON THE GREAT** identifies this particular 'religion' is not so easy. This reference misdirects many to place the establishment of the Antichrist Kingdom in Southwest Asia which, again, we will eventually fully confirm cannot be. The best way I've found that this **great whore** can be identified was first published in 1916 in a book by the Reverend Alexander Hislop, called, **THE TWO BABYLONS OR THE PAPAL WORSHIP PROVED TO BE THE WORSHIP OF NIMROD AND HIS WIFE**. And the long subtitle of this book tells the story. Reverend Hislop proves that the central practices of Catholicism —primarily mother and child worship added to confession and penance—are the same practices used by Nimrod and his wife in their time. And by these practices both of these 'Babylons' are able to gain control of

most the whole World. And I mean that today the Catholic Church draws in the whole World through this preexisting universal cultural connection.

It goes like this. The whole World worshipped Nimrod, and after his death, his wife Semiramis. Finally they worshipped the mother Semiramis and her child Tamuz because it was believed that Tamuz was Nimrod 'reincarnated'. And at the point it all got out of control God had to intervene for our sakes and scatter this false one world religion from the Tower of Babel. The Catholic Church uses a variation on this same 'mother and God-child' theme that appeals to the very roots of every culture on Earth, all of which were once split from Nimrod's Babylon. Nimrod and Semiramis also used confession and penance to control and manipulate their subjects. By these admissions of guilt to a 'centrally supervised religious authority' they had complete control over their members just as the Catholic Church does today.

I should add that the Reverend Hislop, like earlier Protestants, and some still today, believed that a pope would eventually become the Antichrist. This is a minor popular error. His work has nonetheless solved the 'mystery' of why a 'church' in Rome is called **BABYLON THE GREAT**. Again, it's the character—not the location—that identifies *her*. I mean it's just like the way John earlier refers to *...the street of the great city, which spiritually is called Sodom and Egypt, where also our Lord was crucified*. This cannot be about these locations, but about the character of Jerusalem. And it must be the same way with **BABYLON THE GREAT** in Revelation 17. And it's now unmistakable that the preeminent institution that employs these 'Babylonian' practices is the Church of Rome. By-the-way, a shorter, more recent version of this information (1966), though still calling the pope the Antichrist, is Ralph Woodrow's, **BABYLON MYSTERY RELIGION ANCIENT AND MODERN**.

Now it's first *interpreted* in [Verse 6](#) that this *woman* [is] **drunken with the blood of the saints, and with the blood of the martyrs of Jesus**. And it's no wonder either that John is so astonished at her appearance. She evidently represents many both past and still future murderous Catholic campaigns involving mass torture, employing extraordinary cruelty, and resulting in record-breaking carnage mostly of Jews and Protestants. Much of this past astonishing cruelty is recorded in **Foxe's Book of Martyrs**, especially the later editions published in the late 1500's. An expanded, more up to date version (1985) of these past atrocities against Protestants through the horribly brutal reign of Queen Mary in England and the Spanish Inquisition—John Foxe himself was contemporary to these massacres—is in **Foxe's Christian Martyrs of the World** published by Barbour and Company, Inc.

But John gives us very little description of this brutal 'bloodsucker'. He only tells us she is a...

...great whore that sitteth upon many waters: With whom the kings of the earth have committed fornication, and the inhabitants of the earth have been made drunk with the wine of her fornication... [sitting] upon a scarlet coloured beast, full of names of blasphemy, having seven heads and ten horns...

But this is really a lot. From these clues there's very little **mystery** left who **she** is, and who **she** is riding. Only the identities of this Antichrist and False

Prophet remain to be **revealed** as we will **continue** to show. But it's curious that we see the **woman sit upon** this **beast**, implying that the Antichrist Kingdom is dominated by this Pope and his 'church' like a rider controls the horse **she** rides. And we'll see that this is the case up to some point in The Days of Vengeance.

The angel begins in [Verses 7-8](#) to **interpret** this relationship, telling us things we already **know** about the Antichrist, saying,

The beast that thou sawest was, and is not; and shall ascend out of the bottomless pit, and go into perdition: and they that dwell on the earth shall wonder, whose names were not written in the book of life from the foundation of the world, when they behold the beast that was, and is not, and yet is.

This is a reference where we see that Satan will not deceive literally **all the world**, because it's clear here that only those **not written in the book of life from the foundation of the world** will be so deceived. Unfortunately however, this must surely be the majority of **the inhabitants of the earth**. And as you might expect, this is where I would want to harp again about the apparent evidence here that there is just one human spirit of the Antichrist. But I'll try to save the remainder of that discussion for times that I find it personally unavoidable. Now it's time to harp about the fact that most of the angel's interpretations in the middle of this chapter are probably better described as riddles than explanations.

The first of these 'riddles' is in [Verses 9-10](#) where the angel says,

And here is the mind which hath wisdom. The seven heads are seven mountains, on which the woman sitteth. And there are seven kings: five are fallen, and one is, and the other is not yet come; and when he cometh, he must continue a short space.

But this one doesn't look too tough for us. The **seven heads** are not directly **interpreted** here, but we have already deduced who they are. Or have we? What we must deduce is whether the focus is on the seven spiritual **princes**, or on the many human kings, or instead on the seven 'world-ruling' kingdoms themselves. What makes most sense here is that these **mountains** must be a similar metaphor to the **great mountain** in Daniel 2 that Nebuchadnezzar dreams **filled the whole earth** after destroying the **great image**. Daniel interprets this **mountain** to be Christ's **kingdom... [that] shall stand forever**. And this tells us that Christ's **mountain** must certainly become a much greater one than any of the **seven** here.

Straightforwardly then, these **seven heads are seven mountains** which are the seven 'world-ruling' kingdoms. Therefore as **the woman sitteth** on the **scarlet beast having seven heads and ten horns**, so she is sitting on these **seven mountains**. Or in terms we have used before, **the woman**, a 'religious institution', 'overlords' a social, political, and economic 'cultural composite' of the six previous **kingdoms** all combined into the seventh, which is the Antichrist Kingdom. And **she** does this by controlling the Antichrist, and most likely by lending the support of the Catholic Church to his endeavors in exchange for that control.

And yes I **know**. This is not really what I told you in [Section 7](#). So this has been another exercise in The Natural Progression of The Word of God. Specifically it should show you two things. First, it's easy to get attached to an 'incomplete picture'. And second, you should regularly **experience** what you had no idea was slightly 'out of focus' coming into 'better focus'. Of course you may have to reread the last paragraph again, and even the last section too, before you **experience** specifically what I mean here.

By-the-way, some have instead 'proposed' that these 'seven mountains' literally represent the 'seven hills' Rome sits on, 'the city on seven hills'. However we're not talking about the geography of the city of Rome, but of the Vatican, which doesn't really conform to this kind of topography at all. So it doesn't fit for me anyway.

And a good rule of thumb you should have picked up by now is that the best way to interpret **scripture** is with **scripture**. First try using similar both metaphorical and literal established scriptural interpretations. And after that, if nothing yet fits, then you can try one that happens to make sense in view of current events—maybe you'll get lucky with God's timing. But this is a common road to error.

Still, all reasonable options should remain open until the case is closed. And if you're stumped for a 'fitting' interpretation, especially without matching scriptural ones, wait for it. It will eventually come. This is The Natural Progression of The Word of God too. You have to **know** God will test your **patience** and **integrity** this way. And what we're ultimately looking for is a total **understanding** that fits 'all' **precepts**—one that holds up when you add new ones and becomes a fitting part of an ever growing 'big picture'. And anyone who hasn't already given a good deal of **diligence** won't be able to see it 'all'. And worse, they will unavoidably misinterpret reality. What do you expect to see without **diligence** anyway? And I'm only talking about the 'all' that God would expect the most **diligent** and **faithful** of His **disciples** to see at any given point.

But surely some **interpretations** will not come until The Great Tribulation, some not until The Millennium, and an endless number in The Eternal Age. The ones that must come later, however, do not exempt us from the **shame** of not having **the knowledge of God** that we are supposed to have now. And time's running out for this age. So as The Spirit intends, we should **know** a good deal about the coming **ages** by now.

Again, God interprets His Word in His Own terms, though His means are as diverse as He is. So nothing reasonable should be rejected out of hand, that is, without testing it through **exercise** and **use**. But 'running' with the first 'reasonable interpretation' is responsible for a 'mess of errors' we'll still be 'cleaning up' for some time into The Millennium and beyond.

In [Verse 10](#), when John adds that, **and there are seven kings**, this is where we can discern a change of focus to the spiritual **princes**. And we **understand** that this must now be referring to the seven angel-princes over the seven 'world-ruling' kingdoms, because **seven** human kings aren't enough to account for the number involved in these **seven** kingdoms. Remember we counted six human kings for Medo-Persia alone, all identified by Gabriel, including Darius, Cyrus, Cambyses, Smerdis, Darius I, and Xerxes. And there were more besides these before Alexander came along. So the **seven kings** here must be spiritual **principalities and powers** in **high** or

heavenly places that can only be seen **through a glass, darkly** ([Eph 3:8-11](#); [6:12](#); [Col 2:15](#); [1Cor 13:12](#)).

This brings us back to the angel's 'progress report' on Satan's seven 'World hegemonies' under these **seven kings**. The angel reports of these angel-princes that **five are fallen, and one is, and the other is not yet come; and when he cometh, he must continue a short space**. The pronoun '**he**' clearly designates the last **prince** over the Antichrist Kingdom and only indirectly refers to the Antichrist and the kingdom itself. And I repeat, this particular **prince** is not likely the Antichrist or Satan, but another 'high prince' in the 'hierarchy' of the Unholy Trinity.

And we should **understand** that the angel's perspective is not redundant here. I mean if he's describing the Antichrist again he would be. Instead he's verifying for the first time that this last angel-prince—like the former **prince of Persia**, etc.—is **not yet come** and that **he** will rule over the Antichrist and his kingdom when he does, though in this perspective, like the Antichrist, **he** also apparently gets 'ridden' by the Catholic 'colossus' too, not to mention by Satan. And it's news here that **he** will also get the same **short space** of power as will be given to the Antichrist. The angel also reports in [Verse 12](#) that the **ten kings**, who are just as obviously earthly kings, will be given the same **one hour** to rule as **the beast**. So this **short space** and **one hour** must be the same time period as the **forty and two months** given to the Antichrist, and very nearly the same as the **time, times, and an half** of the entire Days of Vengeance.

Also you should **understand** that due to compartmentalization—which in this case is the inability to simultaneously see the multiple 'levels' of entities involved here—this **interpretation** of Verses 9-10 probably incorporates a 'level' or two more than you've heard before, that is, if you've ever really considered this passage before at all.

Finally, before we leave these verses, we should want to **know** how we can get this **mind which hath wisdom** that is able to **understand** this 'riddle' ([Verse 9](#)). I've tried to **reveal** many of God's 'signposts' that direct you to this **wisdom** in this **study**. And to the extent that you now **understand** this verse I apparently have. We have seen that we should let **scripture** interpret **scripture**, discern the literal from the metaphorical, be sensitive to perspective, watch for 'layering', character changes, and other transitions, make logical deductions, stay **patient** and **diligent**, and regularly and reasonably **continue** to **exercise** and **study**—which must include speculation and testing—and do it all **precept upon precept, line upon line, here a little, and there a little** while regularly adding new 'precepts' and 'lines' as you go, and while always watching for all manner of 'pitfalls', because we **know** God is out to 'trip up' the inattentive and insincere—to make them **fall backward, and be broken, and snared, and taken**—if they don't 'handle' His Word His way. And you should now see that **if** you do all these things, you will get this **mind which hath wisdom**, and you'll eventually get the 'bigger picture'—which **if** you **continue in** you'll see can be unendingly corrected, improved, and expanded.

I mean do you expect that growth like this at some point ends? Yes, I **know** the time is coming when God will **create new heavens and a new earth: and the former [things] shall not be remembered, nor come into mind** ([Isa 65:17](#); [Rev 21:4](#)) which we'll talk about some more later. But

the chances that this journey could ever really end are the same chances that God is really finite—none. Or look at it another way, at what point do you expect you will **understand** all of God's **thoughts** and **ways**? This is obviously an eternal journey. And the skills you can gain from this **study** will be eternally useful on this journey. And the best part to me is that we're **promised** by God that it's precisely this **use**—or the obedient practice of **scripture** itself—that protects us, sustains us, and helps us eternally **grow** even beyond our ability to **understand**. This is a message in [2 Peter 1](#). Unfortunately, this message also comes with the warning that if we don't continually **grow** this way we are vulnerable to being **lost**. And I mean that this includes obediently practicing **scripture** the way we have been in this **study**, though with **prophecy** the main action God expects of you is that you **continue** to pursue the **more sure word of prophecy** and **grow** in the increasing **light** it gives you to see by.

And if you're looking for mature growth in any topic of **scripture**, it's time to get **weaned from the milk, and drawn from the breasts**. I mean I'm telling you now for God that your annual 'read-though-the-Bible plan' alone won't get you off 'the bottle'. In fact, if that and your regular 'sermon attendance' is all you're doing, then these practices will eventually become a distraction to your growth while habituating your tendency to compartmentalize. This is likely the case because there are unavoidably an overwhelming majority of **babes** in any given congregation. And if this is the case, how can most sermons rightly include **strong meat**? I mean even if for you have **pastors and teachers** who are capable of 'serving it up' in an hour or so, **babes** can't 'swallow' it. But more than that, God's Word 'maturely handled' is increasingly **strong meat**, and increasingly incomprehensible to **babes**, let alone to newer 'meat eaters'. So make sure you're **weaned**, and growing in the **use** of God's Word, or you will one day be ashamed by your immaturity.

Also we have seen a more direct 'signpost' on this road to **wisdom** in **prophecy**. Jesus hints at the way to start such a journey on the Mount of Olives when He directs us to Daniel for clarification. He implies, as Isaiah does, that to **understand** what He is saying we must follow the clues from **here** to **there**. And Daniel's record has indeed helped us, really forced us, to employ all these 'skills' to gain the **wisdom** necessary to figure out what we have so far. But I assure you that the 'gloriously bright day' when you **know** you **understand** the **more sure word of prophecy**, when you have felt **the day star arise**, then you have only just begun. Not to mention that we're not yet done with this riddle in Chapter 17. It goes on until at least the end of the chapter. So we'll get back to more of how to get this **mind which hath wisdom** a little further on.

In [Verse 11](#) we come back to the person of the Antichrist in the next to last stage of his 4 stages of existence. He goes from someone who **was** or 'lived' up to the end of The Beginning of Sorrows to someone who **is not** or is dead, probably because he's killed trying to kill the Two Witnesses, to, in the 3rd stage, someone who **shall ascend out of the bottomless pit** to become **the eighth**. John explains,

...the beast that was, and is not, even he is the eighth, and is of the seven, and goeth into perdition.

So stage 4 is **perdition** or **the lake of fire**, and there are more details about this final transition in Revelation 19. But in stage 3 we see the Antichrist's 'promotion' to a 'higher level' in the 'hierarchy' of the Unholy Trinity. He seems to be moving up from a completely human king to a kind of hybrid human and spiritual king. And we can see at this point that one of the reasons that **the seven** angel-princes were introduced in the previous verse is so that they can be compared with this human prince in this one. Now I still think the Antichrist is human for all the reasons we already talked about. But I could add here that since he goes into **perdition** or **the lake of fire** with **the false prophet** after Armageddon and doesn't join Satan and all his angels in **the bottomless pit** for The Millennium, then this also indicates **he** and the False Prophet remain essentially human throughout The Great Tribulation. But whoever **he** is, he becomes specially 'spiritually empowered' by Satan at the midpoint in a way that I don't think any human king over one of Satan's previous kingdoms ever was. Still this also raises the question of why this would need to be the case if we're not talking about a human. A spiritual prince would not need to be 'spiritually empowered' by Satan because he would already be 'supernaturally empowered' by God.

But I suppose Satan or his representative could nonetheless confine himself inside a human body for reasons that make no sense to me, unless there would be no other way to 'resurrect', 'sustain', and 'empower' him. But the language makes no provision for that here. And again, sometime beyond this 'resurrection', 'someone' goes into The Lake of Fire at the end of The Great Tribulation, and likely a living human because all the angels apparently go into the Bottomless Pit at this time. Ok, I'm harping again. But it's only noteworthy that a human could receive such 'spiritual empowerment' that would make him comparable to the other **seven** spiritual **principalities and powers**. And this mutes for me the questions of whether **he is the eighth** because he is a new human spirit, or because he is ruled or possessed by an 'eighth' spiritual prince. I mean I think it's more likely that the Antichrist's human spirit simply 'takes a vacation' from his body before returning to his newly 'power-assisted' one becoming comparable to the **seven**. In other words, this human Antichrist becomes **the eighth** because he becomes to some extent 'empowered' just like the other **seven** except that what he lacks in the seven's angelic power he gains in the direct physical rule of the greatest human kingdom of all time. And again, putting Verse 11 together with Verse 8, this **beast** is represented as the same one throughout the entire Great Tribulation. I read it that the one that **was, and is not, and yet is**, is the same guy.

And I guess I'm finding it 'personally unavoidable' to continue harping on this topic, but you yourself should start to feel what it's like, when it comes to the review of a topic, especially when there's some uncertainty about it, and especially when a new precept or two pops up about it, just how 'personally unavoidable' it is. And I have it on good authority that this method is extremely effective for **learning** and **understanding** the **knowledge** and **doctrine** of The Word of God. But in the next section we'll dig even deeper on this subject, and I mean all the way down to **the lower parts of the earth**.

Meanwhile, back on the surface of the Earth, we come to [Verse 12](#). And

having come this far through some of the most 'encrypted' **interpretations** in this chapter apparently requiring the most **wisdom** to decipher, things are finally starting to get a little easier because this is when the angel starts to give more straightforward **interpretations**. For one thing, this verse plainly shows that the **ten horns** must be attached only to the seventh head. And this reveals that the **ten kings** must be 'provincial kings' who will be under the 'empowered' human **king**. The angel of the 7th Plague Judgment says,

...the ten horns...are ten kings, which have received no kingdom as yet; but receive power as kings one hour with the beast...

So these **ten kings, which have received no kingdom as yet**, become 'joint chiefs' that are limited to his same **one hour**, or 42 months, **with the beast**.

We **learn** in [Verse 13](#) that these same **ten kings** are united in their devotion to the Antichrist, having **one mind...** [to] **give their power and strength unto the beast**. They are loyal to him. However we have also seen evidence of their 'disunity' from Daniel's **interpretation** of Nebuchadnezzar's dream—the part about **the feet** composed of **iron and clay** in the **great image**. But it must be that Daniel is only indicating their 'general cultural disunity' because if you add this to what the angel of The 7th Plague Judgment says about these **ten kings** it implies that despite their 'disagreements' they are nonetheless held together and focused in matters that advance their Catholic faith as lead by their Pope and the Antichrist. And yes, besides their common 'religious ties', I **believe** they already share a common government, The European Union, and currency, the euro. And it must be that their Catholic 'unity' becomes the basis of the 'rallying cry' of the Antichrist because Catholicism is surely the strongest bond between these ten nations. And Verse 13 implies that their **one mind** in their Catholic faith will be a sufficiently strong enough bond by itself.

In [Verse 14](#) we are told that,

These [Catholics] shall make war with the Lamb, and the Lamb shall overcome them...

Now this is a summary of the entire reign of these **ten kings** and should not be confused with just **Armageddon**. Sure, Jesus will **overcome them** at **Armageddon**, but their **war with the Lamb** begins at The Abomination of Desolation with the **war with the saints**. And it's easily argued that the preparations for this **war** have been a long time ongoing. And from this **understanding** we **learn** two things. It tells us that these Catholics fully cooperate with the Antichrist and the False Prophet to make **prey** and **spoil** of rival religious groups in both The Beginning of Sorrows and The Days of Vengeance, but especially of Jews and Protestants. It also tells us that they will become deceived enough to travel to the ends of the Earth to fight Jesus if they thought they had the chance. But do these that are to become 'the lowest of the low' really expect to be able to attack God? I don't think so. I think that there will be other motivations that draw them all to Armageddon. And I think that whatever the circumstances, it won't be much of a fight at

all. Still, I think they will come expecting the biggest fight of all time. Hang on, because we won't finish with I mean by this until [SECTION 10](#).

In [Verse 15](#) we finally see the direct literal *interpretation* of what the *many waters* represent. The angel tells John that these...

...waters which thou sawest, where the whore sitteth, are peoples, and multitudes, and nations, and tongues.

These diverse *multitudes* must be the worldwide representatives of the False Prophet, namely the worldwide 1.131 billion and growing membership of Catholic Church. But as large and strong as the Catholic Church is, its days are numbered, because in [Verses 16-17](#) the angel explains,

...the ten horns which thou sawest upon the beast, these shall hate the whore, and shall make her desolate and naked, and shall eat her flesh, and burn her with fire. For God hath put in their hearts to fulfil his will, and to agree, and give their kingdom unto the beast, until the words of God shall be fulfilled.

We should notice here that it makes no sense that *the ten* that *hate the whore* would destroy the *peoples, and multitudes, and nations, and tongues* upon whom *the whore sitteth*. This would require killing all the subjects that support their kingdoms. No, *the ten... shall make her desolate and naked, and shall eat her flesh, and burn her with fire*, all metaphors meaning that they will see to it that they 'plunder' *her*—the institution—and usurp *her* authority, including the Pope's and any 'church-loyal' bishops, priests, etc. So it could be that the Vatican and Catholic churches everywhere will literally burn to some extent too, but only to the extent that they are not salvaged for Satan's new '*God of forces*' form of worship. And of course I'm talking about only those buildings that are still standing, most likely rebuilt, because this would be happening sometime into The Days of Vengeance after the first two Great Earthquakes.

In [Daniel 11:36-39](#) we also apparently see *them* (Verse 39)—*the ten loyal kings*—that force the issue to subordinate the Pope under the Antichrist, and set up the *God of forces* Church of the Antichrist sometime into the Days of Vengeance. So the *multitudes* cannot be the target of this attack, but will join it under the *ten kings* and the Antichrist, finally forsaking and subordinating the Pope and his church. To do this they will simply change allegiance, joining *the ten* in rejecting *her* in favor of the more direct worship of the Antichrist and Satan.

And this literally *interpreted* portion of Revelation 17 shows us a description of this transition not in terms of the rise of the Antichrist's new form of worship, nor in terms of the downfall of the person of the False Prophet, but in terms of the usurping of the authority of the Catholic Church in general by the *ten kings*. But the ultimate and complete demise of Vatican City is still to come.

The reason that this must be a transition but not the final end of the 'institution' is that there's another reference to the destruction of *Babylon* in the third and final *great earthquake* in The 7th and Last Plague Judgment

([Rev 16:17-21](#)). So I'm guessing that Vatican City and the Pope must be overcome early enough in second half in order to give the Antichrist and Satan time for this period of their greater 'self-aggrandizement'.

At the same time God instructs these *so-called* Christians that it's still possible—obviously if they're not already 'marked', etc.—to **Come out of her**, and that they can do so beyond this transition all the way to the time of Vatican City's final destruction. Of course, to 'come out' would most likely mean to die. But this would be by far 'the lesser of two evils' because John apparently indicates that those who do not, **Come out of her**, by the time of the final **great earthquake** will then be 'targeted' by God. Again, this is evidently sometime after an earlier 'power grab' organized by the **ten kings**. But for now we'll let all this 'stew on the back burner' for awhile. And be **patient**, because won't be completely through with this topic until [SECTION 10](#) either.

In [Verse 18](#), goodness gracious, the angel finally gets around to telling us that...

...the woman is...that great city, which reigneth over the kings of the earth.

So we're not just looking for a 'religious institution' in the Antichrist Kingdom ruled by the False Prophet, we're looking for one headquartered in **that great city** that he 'pontificates' from that is based in the Antichrist Kingdom. In this case, simple deduction probably works best. Could it be Nebuchadnezzar's **golden city** of Babylon? Never again right? But how about some other Persian or Arab city? Again, we'll finally finish **proving** that anywhere in this region is out of the question in the next section. And we **know** it couldn't be Alexandria or any other **great** or formerly **great city** in Egypt because the Antichrist fights with Egypt. And in the next couple of sections we'll finish **proving** that anywhere in Eastern Asia or Russia is out because God plainly has other plans for these regions too. And we've seen that God seems to have other plans for The U.S. This makes New York and Los Angeles and anywhere in between also out of the question. But there is Mexico City or rising Caracas, Venezuela, except again there's not so much to attack in terms of 'conquering the World' that is 'southeast' of these regions—and even worse 'pickin's' in that direction from Australia. Still, there are many great European cities. But assuming all the **great** cities of the World were still in play, what city could come close to wielding the control **over the kings of the earth** that Vatican City does? Presently I see no rival to the Vatican in its ability to influence World affairs. And I'm sure we don't even see the half of it. Remember that Satan probably works best behind the scenes. And no, the Vatican doesn't 'hold absolute sway' over all nations, but I **believe** they have been working on that for a long time now, and that they'll eventually be much more successful than we could have ever imagined. You wait and see.

By-the-way, John Foxe evidently caught this bloody **whore** off guard and was able to document and widely circulate a lot of the earlier information about **her** atrocities. But **she** evidently learned **her** lesson. So more recent information and informants since Foxe show her to be much more 'stealth' with **her** atrocities. And **she** is now also much more 'systematic', and 'covert'

as necessary, in her suppression and assault on **the truth** about who **she** really is. But information about **her** more recent 'bloody deeds' is available. I recommend Chick Publications for a lot of good research on this topic including authors such as Edmond Paris, Avro Manhattan, and Charles Chiniquy. And yeah, if you've heard anything about this publisher or these authors I'm sure it was bad because **she** has been quite effective for quite a while in the hiding and defamation of **the truth** about her real nature—as you should expect.

And this brings us to the end of the chapter and back to our question of how we get **the mind that hath wisdom**. Do you remember in the first section when I told you, "You can imagine Mr. Magoo here if you want—it often gets that bad" (5th paragraph)? Well, what could be more 'Mr. Magoo-like' than most Christian's perspective of the Catholic Church. And for those of you who haven't heard of this fictional character, he is depicted as near blind but still relentlessly mobile. As a result Mr. Magoo is ignorant that he is continually confronted with extreme peril that is 'right under his nose'. Well, **the woman** which is the worldwide Catholic Church and the **great city** where **she** 'sits', Vatican City, is 'right under our noses' too. Yet too few recognize the extreme peril that **she** is secretly sponsoring. But you should at least be beginning to. And you should expect that most don't have the degree of **wisdom** that the angel of The 7th Plague Judgment is talking about. Our Protestant Church Fathers evidently had some though. And recent Protestant **teachers** have added to that **wisdom** as they should have. But remember I also said that we're supposed to stand on their shoulders so that we can see even more. This **study** proves that we can.

And in case you didn't notice, you should recognize that you are now designated by God as having **wisdom** if you now can 'fully' **understand** what John is talking about in this prophetic 'riddle' in Chapter 17. Of course you should also now see that these verses are not easily **understood**, and that to **understand** them you must **understand** 'everything' we have covered so far. But if you do **understand**, this is indeed an achievement and an honor bestowed upon you by God.

And this is not a designation that can be conferred by any 'institution of higher learning', nor by any mortal scholar of any kind. It comes by the endorsement of God and the pronouncement of the angel of The 7th Plague Judgment. And unless your worldly titles or skills have helped you to come to this **understanding**, then I say again, they remain 'just as likely a hindrance' that prevents you from **understanding**. Unfortunately this is too often the case even for 'institutions of higher learning' that have the word 'Bible' or 'Seminary' or 'Christian' in their names. Indeed only God can exclude you from this designation, because no matter what anyone else thinks, absolutely anyone who comes to 'fully' **understand** this **prophecy** is someone with a **...mind which hath wisdom**. And my personal testimony is that this 'rank' is available to even the **simple**, as long as this 'stupidity' is eventually vanquished by a relentless pursuit of The World of God—just like we are doing in this **study**.

But don't get all **puffed up** just yet, because Paul says, **Knowledge puffeth up**. Remember the real 'approval' we are seeking comes from being a 'studied' **workman** in God's Word. Is this you yet? I mean don't forget that you have been 'led by the hand' to this point where you may now think that

you fully **understand** this prophetic 'riddle'. And this may be the first time you've had the **faith** that you actually can **understand** God's **more sure word of prophecy**. And this is an exceptionally auspicious achievement worthy of rejoicing and giving thanks to God. And I wish I could let you bask in this triumph of **understanding**, but you need to next **understand** that the 'really mature' are also expected to be **apt to teach** stuff like this.

But in case you 'missed the memo', we are also warned that not many should even try, because it's an extremely perilous profession. Metaphorical 'strangulation' by 'getting your foot caught down your throat' would be among the least of these perils. The danger of **greater damnation** in The Lake of Fire, yes, like in the 'deep end', would be the worst. But you can start with some concordance searches on your own to find out, first of all, if all these **bold italics** KJV reference I splice into this **study** actually **prove** that I'm speaking for God. And I mean this as Paul means it when he says,

...let every man prove his own work, and then shall he have rejoicing in himself alone, and not in another [Gal 6:4](#).

In other words, and generally speaking, no **teacher** has succeeded until he is no longer needed. Isn't that at least part of what Paul is saying here? I think he is also saying that anyone can speak for God if he can **prove his own work**. But we will talk more about all this in the next sections too.

Chapter 18 begins with a clear change of messengers. But you should **know** that chapter and verse divisions have been imposed upon **scripture** mostly to aid in communication, but also that these artificial divisions can be misleading. So even though we have a change of chapters and a change of angels at the beginning of Chapter 18, we can see that this **prophecy** unfolds in much the same way as in Daniel 10-12 in that it includes the passing off of tasks to **other** messengers along the way. Specifically, the angel of The 7th Plague Judgment finishes his work at the end of Chapter 17, so that in Chapter 18 this 'relay prophecy' can continue with a second and third heavenly herald, and finish up with another who reveals the final judgment. And Gabriel may be involved in the delivery of this **prophecy** too. Maybe he's the one that shows up to receive the 'pass of the baton' at this point. We'll also be able to see that Jesus is one of these 'heavenly heralds' who delivers most of the remainder of this **prophecy** Himself.

And whoever this new angel is, John saw that he came...

...down from heaven, having great power; and the earth was lightened with his glory. And he cried mightily with a strong voice, saying, Babylon the great is fallen, is fallen, and is become the habitation of devils, and the hold of every foul spirit, and a cage of every unclean and hateful bird. For all nations have drunk of the wine of the wrath of her fornication, and the kings of the earth have committed fornication with her, and the merchants of the earth are waxed rich through the abundance of her delicacies [Verses 1-3](#).

We have come to see that it's common for God in the delivery of a **prophecy** to start with and periodically jump to the end of the story in the process of

revealing it. This is no exception. And we see here that this new city that is 'spiritually called', **Babylon The Great**, appears to have a similar end as Nebuchadnezzar's Babylon, which we should remember will **never be inhabited** again, but it will become the habitation of **wild beasts of the desert** beyond the point when God **will stir up the Medes against them** [Isa 13:17-22](#).

We can also again picture here the continuing 'bloodbaths' including the surely worse future ones that will be instigated by the cooperation of Vatican City and all Catholics with the Antichrist against all outsiders. And we see here that it's a united political, economic, and 'religious conspiracy' where **the kings of the earth** and **the merchants of the earth** and **all nations have drunk of the wine of the wrath of her fornication**, which near the end of this chapter is again confirmed to be **the blood of prophets, and of saints, and of all that were slain upon the earth** [Verse 24](#). And this actually seems to imply that whenever or wherever enemies of the Catholics perish, then it's a good bet that Catholics are somehow behind it all, one way or another, and whether or not it appears that way. Of course things will immediately become much more 'out in the open' when **the mystery of iniquity is revealed**.

This second 'glorious' angel we have just introduced announces in [Verse 2](#) a familiar end for **Babylon**, heralding that,

Babylon the great is fallen, is fallen, and is become the habitation of devils, and the hold of every foul spirit, and a cage of every unclean and hateful bird.

Again, this must be a 'preview announcement' of the general condition of '**Babylon**' that will exist in the timeframe of The Millennium. And the detail in this chapter appears to be directly connected to The 7th Plague Judgment which initiates this period. And it appears that this destruction is all God's doing—not the work of the **ten kings** anymore.

The third 'herald' offering most of the detail of this destruction is evidently Jesus Himself, heard as **another voice from heaven** and on another mission to 'proselytize', who John...

...heard...saying, Come out of her, my people, that ye be not partakers of her sins, and that ye receive not of her plagues [Verse 4](#).

And this verse is **proof** that however brutal the atrocities of this **whore** get, some of God's people manage to sustain a true faith in Jesus 'inside her', but will surely need to **Come out of her** in order to be **saved**—offer evidently expiring at the very end of The Great Tribulation. And though this must be relatively few souls, this shows that God is not willing to lose anyone that He can by any means **save**.

And this also seems to show that you can **understand** the Gospel message, and accept it, and still somehow 'function' as a member within this **abominable** church up to a very late point and still get out in time. I'm not saying I **know** for sure how. But I'm guessing that however it's accomplished it will surely be 'very risky business'.

But some think that you must not only come **out of her** before you die but also before the start of The Great Tribulation because this message is available to us now in The Age of Grace. And I would agree that this is the best choice. And surely this is what the Protestant Reformation was all about, and it probably marked the beginning of this call of Jesus, though evidently it's still ongoing and will be throughout The Great Tribulation.

But once in The Great Tribulation you would assume that all Catholics would be the first to take **the mark**, possibly even in The Beginning of Sorrows, in order to function 'within her' which would seem to leave no possible way **out of her**. But we can now anticipate that there is a way. Jesus seems to imply there is when he says,

And if thy hand offend thee, cut it off: it is better for thee to enter into life maimed, than having two hands to go into hell, into the fire that never shall be quenched: Where their worm dieth not, and the fire is not quenched [Mark 9:43](#).

I mean He's probably implying, among other things, that this is a late way **out of her**. And I don't see why voluntarily giving up your head, if it's the offending member, would be any less of an effective way **out**. Besides, at the point that you cut off your own hand you'd be in a position to lose your head next anyway—unless you could successfully hide. And I guess this could mean that some could survive The Great Tribulation and enter Millennium short a hand. And God willing there will be a whole lot of dismemberment going on for this reason.

And God is evidently not against deceiving people to save some either. Remember those two **midwives** that lied to **the king of Egypt** to save all those Jewish **children** in [Exodus 1:15-21](#). This pharaoh wanted these two **midwives, of which the name of the one was Shiphrah, and the name of the other Puah**, to **kill** all the male Jewish children when they were born.

But the midwives feared God, and did not as the king of Egypt commanded them, but saved the men children alive.

And later they plainly lied to **Pharaoh** about why, which evidently God approved of because, as Moses records,

Therefore God dealt well with the midwives...

So any imaginable way that any of God's people could deceive the Catholic Church into believing that they have a **mark** when they really don't seems fair to me, though again, this must be 'very risky business'. Still, I'm looking forward to hearing some really good stories along these lines. But there are bound to be some real tragedies too. I mean I wouldn't put it passed Satan and the Antichrist to kill or physically restrain those who become 'appendi-cidal' to prevent them from cutting off their appendages. And by that I mean some will be conspicuously 'bent' on cutting off their own hand or head. But God will deliver even these if they are 'His people'. I mean I'm certainly not going to underestimate the **power of the blood of Jesus**

and the **compassion** of our **willing** God to **save** even after what He's said about this **whore**, and even given the especially bad odds for Catholics who **find** God's **straight** and **narrow... way** in The Great Tribulation.

And again, when I'm not plainly speculating, I'm still speaking for God. And most of what I've already said about the Catholic Church I'm saying for Him, because I'm just telling you what He has to say on the matter as I have been instructed by Him. And what I have to say next is absolutely for Him and should finally remove any doubt that the Catholic Church is this **whore**.

We have distinguished up to this point that the problem is not so much with Jesus' **people** that are in **her**, or even so much with other unbelievers in **her**, but with **her**, which is this lavish **city** and the entire institution itself. How can we **prove** that **she** is the real problem? Here's how. If anyone asks a true believer, no matter what their denomination, **what must I do to be saved?**, what will be the answer? A lot of you probably **know** that Paul's answer is,

Believe on the Lord Jesus Christ, and thou shalt be saved [Acts 16:30-31](#).

But many will insist on adding that we must also, **be baptized**. And Paul **that night...baptized** those that asked him this salvation question. Fine. After all, Jesus and Peter also famously preach these 'two steps'. **Believe** Jesus died for your sins, and **be baptized**, and you are **saved**. Of course everyone knows that the thief on the cross next to Jesus was **saved** even though he had no opportunity to **be baptized**. But this implies that acknowledging God **before men** to the extent that you have the opportunity must count for **baptism**—making the 'water part' clearly not always required. And Jesus says,

Whosoever therefore shall confess me before men, him will I confess also before my Father which is in heaven. But whosoever shall deny me before men, him will I also deny before my Father which is in heaven ([Mat 10:32-33](#); [Luke 12:8-9](#)).

So you might say that openly acknowledging God is the **new covenant** maker and denying God is the **new covenant** breaker. And this is one reason it's a much **better covenant** ([Heb 8:6](#); [12:24](#)).

And **baptism** is usually the easy way to publicly acknowledge Jesus before God. I mean this usually only requires standing up before people already on your side. But what the thief on the cross did, and Catholics in The Great Tribulation will have to do, is quite a lot tougher—acknowledge God before an 'extremely hostile audience'.

Now we could further argue that **believing** requires **repentance, confession, faith, love, holiness**, etc., but keeping it simple there's really no problem here. We can say there are two steps to salvation—that the first step is to, **Believe on the Lord Jesus Christ**, and that the easier way to make the second step is to be **baptized with water**. The problem is with the official doctrines of the Catholic Church. This simple 'two step plan of salvation' is found nowhere in **her**, neither are **her** 'spiritual leaders'

authorized to preach or teach it. I'm sure that these two steps nonetheless still occasionally happen within the Catholic Church or no one in **her** could appropriately be called 'God's people'. But the teaching of these two steps must be the hardly tolerated exception to the rule at best. The fact is that the official path to salvation sanctioned by the Catholic Church is 'seven steps'—of which you would usually only need six at most—popularly called 'The Seven Sacraments'. And they really include neither of the **true** Gospel's 'two steps'.

But again I'm not Catholic, and have little **experience** with Catholics, so what could I **know**. I **know** it shouldn't be too tough to get an answer to the question, '**what must I do to be saved?**' Should it? The answer I got is the following 'seven steps' taught as absolutely necessary to being 'saved' in the Catholic Church. Of course I will be guilty of at least oversimplification here too, and you could probably also argue with the order.

Step one—The Sacrament of Baptism: be “baptized”, but preferably just after birth and long before you're able to come to any belief or faith about anything. Step one may also be 'minimally sufficient' if you die before the other steps, but there will normally be at least a very strong suggestion that a 'service donation' is expected in order to shorten the time of torment such 'prematurely departed souls' must spend in 'Purgatory'. This kind of 'donate or suffer prolonged torment' extortion was one of the complaints of our early Protestant Church Fathers.

Step two—The Sacrament of Confirmation: get “confirmation” which includes 'classes' not including any **instruction** about the real 'two steps', but lots on the 'mother and child worship' thing, and on how to pray for help to a multitude of Catholic 'Saints'—anything but appealing directly to Jesus or God—and lots of stern directives about these redemptively useless 'seven steps', etc.

Step three—The Sacrament of The Holy Eucharist: do the work of “Holy Communion” occurring in the “Holy Eucharist” where you eat the “transubstantiated” (read real) body and blood of Christ on a regular basis to 'maintain' your 'salvation'—do not ask forgiveness of you sins, just eat and drink Jesus—do not believe Jesus' blood sacrifice for you saves you, just believe that the drinking of His blood 'saves' you, and that eating his body 'sustains' you. And you may be required to worship the 'communion cracker', that in some places is referred to as “the wafer God”, just as you would if Jesus were present. Kind of creepy, huh. Even creepier when you learn how the Catholics copied the Babylonians in the practice of this 'sacrament'. So this is one of the ways Catholics are identified as the latest form of the **BABYLON MYSTERY RELIGION**. Arguments over this doctrine came to their peak in The Protestant Reformation and some Protestants, including Lutherans and a split of Anglicans, somewhat sided with the Catholics and still do today. The harm remaining especially for Catholics is that it deceives them into believing that they are 'saved' just because they perform this ritual as prescribed.

Step four—The Sacrament of Confession: do regular “confession” of sins to a priest—exposing yourself to manipulation—and get his forgiveness or “absolution” by submitting to his prescribed penalties and/or punishments called “penance” which is the substitute for having to be sorry for your sins. And this copy of ancient Babylonian doctrine makes it clear that simply being sorry for your sins, or going straight to God or Jesus for forgiveness, won’t work anyway. They insist that you’ve got to have the priest do it for you. But going to ‘Mary’ and numerous other ‘Saints’ is encouraged because it might help you with your case. This step is also called The Sacrament of Penance or The Sacrament of Reconciliation.

Steps five or six—The Sacrament of Holy Matrimony or The Sacrament of Holy Orders: choose to get married and procreate more Catholics or get special ministerial ‘powers’ by becoming a celibate priest. The Sacrament of Holy Orders is also called The Sacrament of Ordination.

Step seven—The Sacrament of Extreme Unction: after being established by the getting or doing of all these previous ‘steps’, get “extreme unction” or “filled with the Spirit” by getting anointed with oil and in some cases slapped by your priest. This was also an ancient Babylonian practice. But this is also the sacrament being used any time a priest prays for the sick, etc. In fact this sacrament is more recently also called The Sacrament of Anointing of the Sick. And it applies to the dying too because in order to avoid possible lost time in ‘Purgatory’, you should not die until the priest arrives to render “last rites”. If you die without the assistance of a priest, all of your ‘getting’ and ‘doing’ gives you no guarantee you’ll be saved from a heavy penalty—like there’s really a guarantee otherwise anyway. And all ‘seven steps’ and many other functions within this ‘church’ require the services of your local priest. They will tell you to your face that you cannot get directly into Heaven without a priest, and also that you cannot avoid or shorten your time in ‘Purgatory’ without the help of one every ‘step’ of the way.

And did you see the real ‘two steps’ anywhere in there? Go ahead, ask a Catholic, ***what must I do to be saved?*** And see if you can get a ***straight*** answer. If they give you, somewhere along the way, the ‘two steps’, praise God. But it’s far more likely you’ll get the ‘side step’, and/or some or all of the ‘seven steps’—anything but the ‘two steps’. Prove me wrong if you think you can. But you also must ***understand*** that “repenting of your sins” and “being saved” and “being baptized” mean completely different things to Protestant and Catholics. For Catholics, neither of the real ‘two steps’ are required in their explanations of these terms, and only do with the few that would answer Jesus’ call to ***come out of her***.

By-the-way, just one more little deduction tells us that there would not likely be such a call to ***come out of her, my people***, to Muslims, Hindus, or Buddhists, since these religions don’t pretend to be ‘Christian’, making this another consideration that the Catholic Church ‘best fits the mold’. Hopefully though, the true Church includes some Catholics that stay ‘in step’ and depart in The Rapture. But other Catholics will surely awaken to the true

revelation of Jesus after the start of The Great Tribulation. And these Catholics will have **double** duty ([Verse 6](#)). They will find themselves caught up in the doubly atrocious bloody 'consumption' of their new brothers and sisters. Plus at some point they will have the doubly difficult task of refusing to take **the mark** and worshipping **the image of the beast**, not to mention refusing the other older damned 'sacraments'. They will also have great temptation to remain in one of the safest positions one can be in to 'ride out' most of The Great Tribulation—in the Catholic Church. But some of them will recognize and **understand** that it's really one of the worst positions to be in to 'ride out' eternity.

[Verse 5-7](#) elaborate on the vanity and treachery of Vatican City, and tell us about **her sins** of **double** duty. The results of **her sins** are seen in [Verse 8-11](#) when...

Therefore shall her plagues come in one day, death, and mourning, and famine; and she shall be utterly burned with fire: for strong is the Lord God who judgeth her.

Now this is a much more severe devastation than the **ten kings** inflict on the Catholic Church. And it happens in **one day** or **in one hour** and it's obviously administered by **the Lord God**. And this time it seems to be just the destruction of this **mighty city** as opposed to the entire worldwide institution, except that the severity and timing of this destruction tells us a couple things. First, because all this seems to be entirely the work of God, it implies that the rest of the World may be more generally assaulted by God at this time too. And we'll see this must occur during The Last Plague Judgment, which must mean that there's already been a worldwide 'subjugation' of the institution instigated by the **ten kings**. Of course you should also **understand** that because of the **strong delusion** that God will **send** during The Great Tribulation, it's God who should get the credit for this too.

And this later, complete destruction will be accompanied by worldwide **mourning**. At this time...

...the kings of the earth...shall bewail her, and lament for her... And the merchants of the earth shall weep and mourn over her... [Verses 9-11](#)

And this brings us to [Verses 11-17](#) and a popular place where people mistake The U.S. for this **whore**, which I expect, like in Daniel 11, happens mainly because they become lost in this **prophecy** too. And this is a place where current events are squeezed into a **prophecy** where they seem to fit but don't. But even otherwise good **teachers** make suchlike mistakes as we will **continue** to see.

To start with, we should get it straight that this **MOTHER OF HARLOTS** is 'the buyer' and not 'a seller' of all the merchandise listed here. Jesus says,

The merchants of these things, which were made rich by her, shall stand afar off for the fear of her torment, weeping and wailing [Verse 15](#).

And surely some **merchants** in The U.S. will **weep and mourn over her** too when this **city** is destroyed, as will **merchants** from all over the World. The implication is that Vatican City becomes the chief consumer of the World's goods during The Days of Vengeance. This would be because of the conditions caused by the devastating global **judgments** of God in The Great Tribulation, and because of the vast accumulation of wealth by **spoil** by the Antichrist and the Catholic Church. And all this must be compounded by the fact that all **power** is **given** to the Antichrist **over all kindreds, and tongues, and nations** [Rev 13:7](#). Indeed, it's confirmed in [Daniel 11:36](#) that the Antichrist Kingdom will **prosper** in The Days of Vengeance. No wonder then that **the kings of the earth... bewail her, and lament over her... And the merchants of the earth... weep and mourn over her** because the World's 'chief consumer-city', responsible for sustaining the World economy, will in **one day** and **one hour** be lost.

This also tells us that we have not yet begun to see how **rich** Vatican City will become by the **prey** and **spoil** of her enemies. She will evident become just as filthy **rich** as **the merchants** are greatly disappointed. These **merchants** who are **...Standing afar off** will see that **she... [is] utterly burned with fire**. And the 'pity party' seems to go on and on. Jesus persists in this passage to describe how the whole World continues...

...weeping and wailing... And cried... And they cast dust on their heads, and cried, weeping and wailing, saying, Alas, alas, that great city, wherein were made rich all that had ships in the sea by reason of her costliness! for in one hour is she made desolate [Verses 15-19](#).

But finally we see that not everyone is **mourning**. For some it turns out to be 'payback'.

[Verses 20-24](#) tell the 'payback story' including who wins and how badly Babylon loses. The big winners are **heaven** and the **holy apostles and prophets** who are **avenged**. Of course a fair question is how all the **holy apostles and prophets** can be **avenged** if the Catholic Church doesn't really come into existence until hundreds of years after the start of The Age of Grace? But it's easily enough argued that quite a 'mountain' of martyrs has been 'piled up' just since Roman Emperor Constantine established the Catholic Church in the 4th century. And surely the so-called and various 'inquisitions' running from the 12th through the 18th centuries are rife with atrocities by the Catholic Church against those eventually called Protestants that need to be **avenged**, and these surely include assaults against **apostles and prophets** such as Jan Hus and Thomas Cranmer who are literally burned at the stake for their faith by the Catholic Church—they and their 'mountain' of followers. Some sources (obviously Protestant) estimate that over 60 million were tortured and/or killed in these 'inquisitions' directed at suchlike 'two-step' Protestant 'heretics'. And that would be near Great Tribulation standards for a judgment of God, except of course that the killing of these martyrs takes place over several centuries instead of just several months.

But the real foundation to this 'heap' of martyrs is laid by other travesties that occurred in Nimrod's **Babylon**, and later in Nebuchadnezzar's **Babylon**.

And all these martyrs that 'underlie' in this enormous 'pile' will be 'topped', (double meaning intended), by the 'multitudes' added by the False Prophet's **Babylon**. And by-the-way, it should occur to you that these more ancient martyrs must have waited in **Abraham's Bosom** and presumably are now in Paradise waiting to end up **under** The Altar in The Temple in Heaven. And we can expect that because of the earlier highly 'successful inquisitions' of this **great whore**, and because of today's exponentially larger population, that this **MYSTERY... MOTHER OF HARLOTS** 'religion', now clearly identifiable to those who have **wisdom** as 'restarting' in the Roman Empire under Constantine, will be responsible in The Great Tribulation for many more martyrs than she has 'binged on' so far. And I anticipate that when the Antichrist and the False Prophet start to carry out their **indignation against the holy covenant** in full force, we will see a much greater multitude of martyrs die in one month than in several centuries of previous 'inquisitions' instigated by this **great whore**.

But if it will make you feel any better—and it should, the word is **Rejoice**—the analogy in [Verse 21](#) is that this **great city Babylon** will be destroyed with such sudden **violence** that it will be like throwing **a great millstone...in to the sea**. 'Ker-ploosh!', and it will be over, onomatopoeically speaking. And this is an instance that appears to some to be a nuclear explosion, except those who assert this seem to overlook that in an earlier verse we see that this same destruction apparently establishes a permanent **hateful bird** 'sanctuary' in the area, which would not seem to be possible if a serious dose of radiation had been applied there, and except for the fact that apparently non-radioactive, God-administered **fearful sights and great signs in the heavens** are reported by Jesus to be the cause. Whatever the case, it's clearly 'mega-payback' owned by God.

There is a detailed list in [Verses 21-23](#) provided by the fourth participant in this 'relay' prophecy of just how completely incapacitating this 'ker-ploosh' will be. Long story short...

Thus with violence shall that great city Babylon be thrown down, and shall be found no more at all.

And it's important to notice in [Verses 23-24](#) the reasons given for this severe judgment that falls upon this **abominable** institution, but especially on Vatican City. It's because that by this city's...

...sorceries were all nations deceived. And in her was found the blood of prophets, and of saints, and of all that were slain upon the earth.

Again, this is not just a future description of **her**, but a past and present one too. Inside the Catholic Church is already **found the blood of prophets, and of saints, and of all that were slain upon the earth**. But most would be shocked to see what **she** is really up to today. I mean we're experiencing a worldwide state of affairs such that **all nations** of the World have been **deceived** by **her** for quite some time now. Yes, we're all just like silly ol' Mr. Magoo. And most of **her** members are just as **deceived**—except they are more like programmed 'Manchurian candidates' waiting to

unwittingly be activated to do the Devil's 'dirty work'. And though this will become a much more open campaign at the start of The Great Tribulation, it is going on covertly now. Again, if anything bad happens to enemies of the Catholics, chances are it will not be widely suspected that the Catholic Church had any involvement, though it's even more likely that some number of their both witting and unwitting agents were, with only those in the 'upper echelons' fully aware of this global conspiracy. And it's safe to say that the present institution is patterned after Nimrod's, and also after Nebuchadnezzar's Babylon—though according to Daniel's record Nebuchadnezzar evidently 'came out' of **her** himself ([Dan 4](#)).

Again, the worst of the atrocities of this **whore**—disguised as the Catholic Church—are surely yet to come. So it's at this time that I'll take the opportunity to finally say what needs to be said to counter a commonly believed **lie** I've heard a hundred times before in the public arena. This **lie** goes something like this. 'Christians are responsible for many of the worst atrocities throughout modern history.' And surely you've heard this before and maybe even conceded the point. But now you should see that this is a bunch of 'papal bull'. Protestant Christians and nations have defended themselves from time to time against evil despots. So have God's people the Jews. But be assured that, generally speaking, Protestants are "not guilty" of the charge of committing atrocities anywhere near to what the Catholic Church has perpetrated in the name of Christianity. This charge however does apply to some PIHO's—Protestants in heritage only—who tend to start 'cults', and also to some other non-Christian religions. But it especially applies to Catholics, and mostly to the leadership of the Catholic Church. And this is how we can see Satan's use of **her** throughout most of The Age of Grace, especially against Jews and Protestants.

And when the apostasy of the Church becomes **great** because true Christians disappear, including all true Protestants, and also the precious little 'salt' of the Catholic Church too, and only PIHO's and 'doctrinally-obedient' Catholics remain, other than the relatively few **new babes in Christ** emerging amidst this turmoil, and when the full **power** of Satan, the Antichrist, and the Pope of the Catholic Church are 'unleashed', and when God sends nothing to interfere but His **judgments** while 'promoting' it all with **strong delusion**, then Catholics worldwide will commit atrocities much worse than those committed in their past and present 'inquisitions'.

And Tribulation Catholics will be provoked by the Muslims, true, but Satan will again take full advantage of the fact that Catholic doctrine really calls for the elimination of all 'competitors' as surely and as ruthlessly as Islamic doctrine does. The only thing that now stops either of them is the **power** to do so. (See ***The Secret History of the Jesuits***, by Edmond Paris, ***The Vatican Moscow Washington Alliance***, by Avro Manhattan, and ***Fifty Years in the Church of Rome***, by Charles Chiniquy for plenty of proof of this and much more). And The U.S. will evidently be able to stop the Antichrist up to a point, before he gets his **power** from Satan. But after that point there will be no limit to the bloodshed that will be able to be caused by the Antichrist Kingdom with the help of the Catholic Church. No 'Christian' in The Days of Vengeance will be safe who is not Catholic. Except that, **If God be for us, who can be against us?** Read [Romans 8](#). Of course this implies that you must remain willing to **endure unto the end**.

And it's worth repeating. Inside the Catholic Church is already **found the blood of prophets, and of saints, and of all that were slain upon the earth**. And after this exposé, I'm not really safe anymore either, and it's much more likely that my blood will eventually be **found** in **her** too. But I surely wouldn't be the last Protestant martyr in this presently covert '**war against the saints**'. Don't be surprised anyway. And hey, I'm not volunteering to die or anything, and I didn't create this 'monster'. But the conclusion is horrifyingly clear. This 'Frankenstein-monster-sized', 'butt-kicking shoe' fits, and the Catholic Church is wearing it.

Before we leave this topic, there is, I believe, one more relationship between the False Prophet and the Antichrist worth considering. The **milk of scripture** makes clear that we cannot **know** for sure the specific identities of either of these two characters before The Rapture of the Church. But with the **wisdom** that comes through the **use** of the **strong meat of scripture** we may now be able to **discern** each of their origins, offices, and jurisdictions. In fact it's been long well established that the office of the False Prophet will be The Bishop of Rome, a pope of the Roman Catholic Church. As for the Antichrist, please consider the following newly discovered evidence. This evidence certainly tells us more about the present worldwide jurisdiction of the Catholic Church, but also possibly about which division of this jurisdiction the person of the Antichrist will emerge from, and possibly also exposes his office, and further establishes his geographical origin. And wouldn't you **know**, it again involves those pesky Parthians.

The Holy Apostolic Catholic Assyrian Church of the East, also called the Nestorian Church by Westerners, and related to the Chaldean Syrian Church in India, traces their origins all the way back to the Apostle Thomas. But their real roots are in the former Seleucid Kingdom. And this division of the Catholic Church has recently 'come to terms' again with the Pope of the Holy Roman Catholic Church.

The office of any pope over the Holy Roman Catholic Church is The Bishop of Rome. He is preeminent or "in full communion with" the single Western or Latin Catholic Church in Western Europe and the Americas, and with the 22 Eastern Catholic Churches in Eastern Europe and Western Asia. And he is preeminent over his College of Bishops that represent the approaching 3000 regional jurisdictions in these churches. This preeminent Bishop of Rome is considered the Apostle Peter's successor. But I believe neither Peter nor Thomas founded any of these churches. Still, the circumstances are that the longstanding disputes that have separated this Assyrian Church of the East from the 'mother' Holy Roman Catholic Church have recently ended.

To oversimplify, the preeminence of The Bishop of Rome and the differences in the styles of the ministry of the liturgy and of the sacraments (Latin vs. Chaldean) have been the main contentions between these churches. These kinds of contentions still continue to exist between several more of the so-called 'orthodox churches' around the World including the Eastern Orthodox, Oriental Orthodox, Russian Orthodox, and Greek Orthodox Churches, and others of the Alexandrian, Antiochian, Armenian, Chaldean, and other liturgical traditions.

But these 'disagreements' with Rome are really nothing to speak of, and I expect that they will all eventually fall to **her** like dominos. Because any of

these many 'rebel' orthodox churches who are not presently entirely "in full communion with" the pope, still share basically the same 'liturgical', 'sacramental', and 'Babylonian-style faith', and there is no question who's side they would be on if it came down to it—and it's not on the side of Protestants. And this implies an even more horrifying picture of the potential reach of the Catholic Church when added to the 1.131 billion 'official members' on its 2007 roster. Yep, it's going to be one 'great big scary monster'.

But back to those pesky Parthians, and this Assyrian Church of the East. They are more briefly and simply called the Assyrian Church, and their members, the Assyrians. The church is obviously not the biggest branch of the Catholic Church for obvious reasons. They originally 'set up camp' in what would become the center of the Muslim World. Oops. Pope John Paul II has declared them "the martyrs' church" because no other Catholic Church has suffered so many martyrs, unless you count when Stalin came along in WW II and exterminated an estimated 35 million members of the 'rebellious' Russian Orthodox Church, who obviously picked an even worse 'neighborhood'.

But though Stalin may hold the record for the total number slaughtered by a nation's despot, we need to **understand** that, according to God, the Roman Catholic Church is the last manifestation of the **great whore** who is really the one responsible for the bulk of **all that were slain upon the earth**. In fact there are strong cases made that she was behind Stalin and Hitler's atrocities too. (Check out Chick Publications and the works of Paris, Manhattan, and Chiniquy listed on [page 337](#).) And by-the-way, a faction of Muslims in Turkey may have set a record when they exterminated probably over a million of their Greek and other Muslim but especially Armenian rivals—the Armenian Genocide—during WW I. But the Catholic Church will surely one day openly dwarf all of these efforts in The Great Tribulation. And again, no Protestant faction has ever been in this 'league'.

Anyway, the Assyrian Church surely 'set up' their 'camp' in a questionable 'neighborhood'. They are the original 'Christian' church in what is known at the time as Parthia, in roughly present day Iraq and Iran. They brake from the organization Emperor Constantine helped start a century before. In this case it's a break from the 'western' branch of Bishops in Antioch in 410 AD at one of the Councils of Seleucia-Ctesiphon. At this time the newborn Assyrian Church establishes their own supreme bishop or "Holy See"—or their own version of the Pope.

But a schism in this new church also develops following this period because of a faction preferring to follow the rising church in Rome. This allows the Persian kings in Parthia, who are constantly at war with the Roman Empire, a chance to assure the loyalty of their anti-Roman 'Christian' subjects. In 463 they grant protection to this more popular anti-Roman faction. And in 484 they execute the representative of the pro-Roman Church, and replace him with the anti-Roman one. And the final stroke comes in 489 when, once this new anti-Roman branch gets on its feet and dominates the region, they move the finally abandoned pro-Roman religious school to the Persian city of Nisibis to be taken over by this newly establish Assyrian Church of the East.

To further oversimplify, other schisms would arise, most notably with their

offshoot, the Chaldean Syrian Church that took root in India, including branches "in communion with" and "not in communion with" The Bishop of Rome. In the 15th century it is decreed that the title of the supreme leader of the Assyrian Church, appropriately enough called The Patriarch of Babylon, would be from then on passed on hereditarily, leading to more schisms that are not unlike the ones presently existing between Sunni and Shia Muslims today, except not usually so violent. But these Sunni and Shia Muslims were equally violent against the various branches of the Assyrian Church, killing millions and chasing even more from the region. The present Patriarch of Babylon is now understandably based in Chicago, and less than 1 million of the World's



4.5 million "Assyrians" remain in Iraq, most of these, naturally, in the more peaceful Kurdish Region in the north.

This region includes the former capital of the Assyrian Empire, Nineveh, where today is located the City of Mosul. Now Mosul is presently outside the existing political boundaries of Iraqi Kurdistan, but many Kurds wish the region to be expanded to include the largely Kurdish cities of **Mosul** and **Kirkuk** (map, p.340). Before the present war in Iraq starting in 2003, "the Assyrians" were the largest non-Muslim group in the country, and probably still are. Some had even risen to power in Saddam Hussein's Ba'ath Party Government, the most prominent being Deputy Prime Minister Tariq Aziz.

Mar Dinkha IV, the present Patriarch of Babylon (in 2009) based in Chicago, has unilaterally declared and announced the permanent end of hereditary succession. And he has reached out to the Catholic and other Orthodox 'cousin churches' as well. But though these actions have gone far to repair schisms, a rift between the rival patriarch of his church, Mar Addai, still exists. Addai is now at the head of a rival group called The Ancient Church of the East.

On November 11, 1994, an historic meeting between Mar Dinkha IV and Roman Catholic Pope John Paul II took place in the Vatican and a "Common Christological Declaration" was signed. One side effect of this agreement is that the Assyrian Church's relationship to the Chaldean Catholic Church is improved. It's even determined in this "Declaration" that Roman Catholics in Iraq could receive the Holy Eucharist, (the 'chowing down' on the Lord's body and blood), in an Assyrian Church if unable to attend one of their own churches.

In September 2006, Mar Dinkha IV, the 120th successor in this line to the Apostolic See of Seleucia-Ctesiphon, Patriarch of Babylon, paid an historic visit to Northern Iraq to give oversight to the churches there and to

encourage the Muslim governor of Iraqi Kurdistan to open a 'Christian school' as well as a library in the City of [Arbil](#) (map, [p.340](#)). Have you ever heard of such an 'inroad to peace' like this between Muslims and so-called 'Christians' attempted in The God Zone in recent times?—I mean besides by Protestants, of course. So though Mar Dinkha IV says there will be no more heirs to his office, he nonetheless still could be in the pontifical line of **the Assyrian** spoken of by Isaiah and Micah. He could even be in the office that the Antichrist might eventually hold. Or maybe Mar Addai is.

But it also makes sense that Mar Dinkha IV was elected Patriarch in 1973 by a council of the prelates of his church in the city of London, England, and that his assassinated predecessor, Mar Eshai Shimun XXIII, was educated at Westcott House, University of Cambridge in England. The point is that American or European education has become more and more common among this religion's prelates as it's often the only alternative given the instability in Southwest Asia. And all this makes sense because it shows the Patriarch of Babylon's connection to both Catholic Europe and Muslim Southwest Asia. However Mar Dinkha IV was not educated in Europe but received all his training in Iraq, being born there in 1935, though he now runs the church from Chicago.

Surely this is fantastic speculation, but it all fits hauntingly well. I presume that what we're looking for in the Antichrist is a man who can relate to the highest circles of both the Catholic and Muslim Worlds, but ultimately side with the Catholics. I've **known** for a long time that the False Prophet will be a Bishop of Rome. But I now strongly suspect that the Antichrist will be a Patriarch of Babylon. And I never imagined we could appear to be so 'close on his heels' like we are on the False Prophet's.

And this leads us to another possible **revelation**. In the last section, in the interest of the process of this **study**, and in order to practice the ever-expanding and changing process of growing in **the knowledge** of The Word of God, I again allowed you to be misled by an existing popular theory in end times **prophecy**. I implied that I still suspected that the Antichrist would gain power by first beguiling the leader of a **small** country in Europe. Indeed I used to think that this was the most likely scenario. But now you too should be able to see that we could be talking about the **flattery of the prince** of one of the bigger countries in Europe, because the reference to this **small people** in [Daniel 11:23](#), the one that the Antichrist will use to usurp control of Europe, may be these Assyrians—truly a **small people**, but 'very well connected'. And besides, one of the smaller, less 'militarily endowed' countries in Europe probably couldn't provide the initial resources the Antichrist will need, don't you think?

Certainly the Assyrians are a distinct group of Catholics whose support and influence the Antichrist could use for his rise to power in the process of establishing **the league** [Dan 11:23](#) or **the covenant with many for one week** [Dan 9:27](#). They are a '**small people**' that originated and still partially reside in a region that was a sub-kingdom of Alexander the Great's kingdom—a Greek dynasty known as the Seleucid Kingdom. And it would certainly fit if **the Assyrian**, or the Antichrist, comes **out of** the Seleucid Kingdom. And he could use this same '**small people**' as leverage for further mutually beneficial arrangements with the Bishop of Rome, and to further deceitfully negotiate 'peaceful cooperation' between Catholics and Muslims in The God

Zone, and to further enhance his authority and influence in the region.

The Muslims are already infamous for their inclination to deceitfully negotiate as a guise to gain time and advantage in order to ultimately conquer their enemies. They even have a word for it that comes from a precedent established by Mohammed himself, and they believe this precedent makes it justifiable. The Catholic Church, as far as I **know**, doesn't have a word for it, but they are the same, except they evidently 'cover their tracks' better—you **know**, those 'scary, Frankenstein-monster-sized tracks'.

And it appears that what The Patriarch of Babylon has been up to lately is what a predecessor to the Antichrist would be doing. And I don't see this office as having the clout to fill the 'monstrous shoes' of the False Prophet. But I see it in a unique position to use the pope's influence and at the same time it's own in the Muslim World to be able to 'pull off' all that the Antichrist will need to 'pull off', and appropriately, 'coming out of nowhere' to do it all.

And whether this particular '**small people**' will be the first to see the rise of the Antichrist or not, certainly they're at least a subset of the **multitudes** that the Pope will use to further enhance his authority and influence. And since the Antichrist first commands only a **small people**, there must be more uncertainty about them and their origin than about the False Prophet's. Still, if they are indeed the formerly rebellious branch of the Catholic Church known as the Assyrians, then they've been around almost as long as the revived Babylonian religion that Emperor Constantine helped found.

And I speak for God when I say that we have surely found the **abominable** institution of the **peoples, and multitudes, and nations, and tongues** [Rev 17:15](#) controlled by the False Prophet—the Catholic Church. And after all, how long could such a well-described, excessively powerful, overwhelmingly large group hide from **diligent** seekers of **the truth** anyway? I mean **she** was recognized by John Wycliffe, one of our **brothers** who came **out of her**, over 600 years ago. And the **abominable** behavior of this **great whore** has been continuously exposed by **diligent** Protestants for many centuries now. And if you didn't **know** this already, then you must not **know** any sufficiently **diligent** Protestants—at least in the area of **prophecy**. Certainly a 'multitude' has already died at **her** hands, and **she** really has no rivals in this respect.

Of course this **great whore** is still a **MYSTERY** or secret to most the World, and **her** true character still remains mostly disguised. She does indeed 'hide her tracks' well. Still, it's certain we have found the 'beast-riding' office of the False Prophet—The Bishop of Rome. And I believe that it's likely we've also found the 'suck-up' office of the Antichrist too—The Patriarch of Babylon.

I guess you're ready now to take another look at the [CHART of 45 Attributes of The Antichrist and His Kingdom \(pages 206-207\)](#). Again, there are really 46 different identified and often repeatedly referenced attributes of the Antichrist on it. And it's a **study** in itself. Think a Patriarch of Babylon could one day fit them all. I'll leave that up to you, because I don't plan to cover the Antichrist as much in my next **study**. But maybe I'll catch up with you on line if I get the chance because when I'm not writing or otherwise **teaching** I try to keep **watching** such things. All assuming I don't wind up dead for presuming to expose such things. Nevertheless, God's will be done.

And by-the-way, if you passed up the job to **study** the chart, as Paul might put it, **shame** on you, because you should **know** by now that every time you

go through a collection of **scripture** you should **learn** something new. And this section would have meant more to you this time if you did. Of course, I forgive you if you were planning to do it later. Then again, I guess I have to forgive you whatever the case—admonition, however, not withdrawn to whom it is appropriately administered.

But one more thing. We **know** the Antichrist is by definition diabolical. And Gabriel assures us he will **work deceitfully** [Dan 11:23](#)—or have a hidden agenda—in The Beginning of Sorrows. So though on the surface his proposals will simply be for 'peace' between Christians, Muslims and Jews, I believe that his **league** will really be forged between Catholics and Muslims and sanctioned by the Pope. And this at best can only really be for the purpose of 'disarming' the Protestants and Jews, and misleading the Muslims. And so behind the scenes I again see another Hitler-Stalin-like pact where the Antichrist, somehow representing both Catholics and Muslims, covertly negotiates the joining of their forces under the guise of peace so that they can together secretly plan to eliminate their common enemies, the Jews and Protestants. Again, the Shia hate the Sunni and vice versa. So they'll understand Catholics wanting to kill Protestants, and they'll likely willingly participate in any plan that will severely reduce the number of 'Christians' and 'Jews'.

But by the time of The First Egyptian War that occurs after the Antichrist's initial 'pillaging' **time** of all the Jews and Protestants in his new kingdom—or somewhere around a year into The Beginning of Sorrows [Dan 11:24-28](#)—surely by then the Antichrist will already be starting in on the Muslims in his kingdom in order to **stir up** the 'one-sided' Egyptian civil war. And I'm expecting that there will be an overwhelming slaughter of the unwanted factions of Muslims in both kingdoms in this war, but none of the fighting will need to cross the Mediterranean Sea at this time.

Of course we would also expect that in any case the Antichrist and the False Prophet, early on, will eventually double cross all parties that they consider their enemies. And even some that are not. And of course all this 'behind-the-scenes' negotiation is speculation on my part, except that however it's carried on it will be **deceitfully** done. And surely no one on this side of The Mystery of Iniquity can be sure how all these details will go down. But shouldn't we all **know** something about what should go down? I mean, Jesus isn't kidding when He says The Spirit **will shew you thing to come**. Is He? And I think on that day on the Mount of Olives when Jesus answers his disciples question about **the end of the world**, when He finally says, **...to all, Watch**, He must mean that it's possible to have some idea what we're looking for. Don't you think?

The Judgments of God in The Days of Vengeance

There's a lot of confusion in popular end times **prophecy**. The main confusion we're addressing in this **study** is about when this rapture described in 1 Thessalonians 4 and 1 Corinthians 15 takes place. And we're exposing this confusion because it will help establish **the truth** of the pretribulational, premillennial, dispensational, and stational perspectives of **the more sure word of prophecy 2 Pet 1:19**, and for that matter, **All scripture 2 Tim 3:16**. And I say this confusion is God's doing though nonetheless our responsibility. This is because God must keep Satan under control and at the same time **prove** each man's **integrity** and **reward**. And much of this confusion is not necessarily eternally damning. Protestants, whether or not they truly are 'Protestants', who think The Rapture happens later or not at all, or who think we're already in The Millennium, or who think they're the only ones really getting things right, including those who mistake the False Prophet for the Antichrist—all remain eternally **safe** if they keep their sins 'washed in the blood' of Jesus.

Another not necessarily damning confusion you may have noticed concerns the three different 'Babylons' ruined four different times in three different ages. But popular confusion about these perspectives has the potential to be very dangerous, even to the salvation of souls, as we will see. And there are many other more or less consequential confusions of identity, placement, detail, time, and perspective. We'll try to resolve a 'good chunk' of all this in this subsection.

By-the-way, the main confusion we will address in the next **study** has to do with differentiating the times when God **ariseth to shake terribly the earth** (e.g. **Isa 2:19-21**). The problem, again, is that there are multiple occasions when events somewhat fitting this description occur. And **teachers of prophecy** don't always consider enough **scripture** to distinguish these events, assuming too often that all 'major shakings' must occur in The Great Tribulation, but also—because of God's commonly-used, confusing 'layering' and perspective changes—missing that they do.

See how God is? He will let you think you can make all your conclusions with a narrow perspective and walk away thinking you **understand** something—as most Christians commonly do, and as most are commonly taught. And if you don't think this applies to you then you're overlooking how many popular contradictory beliefs you share with your brothers and sisters in Christ. I mean, do you really think you have all the right answers or just some of them? Of course the meatier the matter the more contradictory the beliefs are about it. And thank God we're all generally 'tighter' on the 'milkier' ones—including the ones essential to salvation. But I'm speaking for God when I tell you that He has so designed His Word that if you don't keep on testing and improving your conclusions, to the degree that you don't, you are being set up by Him for some degree of **shame**—though again, not necessarily to be **lost**. But those who **continue** in His Word His way, to the degree that they do, they are being set up for some degree of **reward** and **honour** and **'greater' eternal glory**. And God will repeatedly **shake** you to get your attention so that you will **have an ear** and **hear** this. But still, too **'few'** will.

And Paul's reference to Haggai's **prophecy** makes clear that God's plan is to repeatedly **shake** the Earth to get our attention. He says,

Whose voice then shook the earth: but now he hath promised, saying, Yet once more I shake not the earth only, but also heaven ([Heb 12:26](#); [Hag 2:1](#)).

The implication here seems to be that God doesn't just **shake** the earth twice, but several times, and that on the last time He will somehow **shake... heaven** too. But again, though we deal with all these 'major shakings' to some extent in this **study**, and especially in this subsection, a better accounting of them all will be in [The Ages of Creation study](#). This subsection really only covers The Days of Vengeance, when God will finally **shake not the earth only, but also heaven**. And this time, as with the rest of this **study**, we're more interested in just getting our bearings. And with what we've **learned** about God so far, you shouldn't expect that even this modest goal will be so easy your first time through.

The Antichrist and the False Prophet's **indignation against the holy covenant** and against the rest of mankind in their campaign of The Absolute Enforcement of the Worship of Satan and the Antichrist is not all that's going on in The Days of Vengeance. There is also, despite herald angels in the sky telling the World what is really going on, the **strong delusion** God sends to those who won't listen anyway because they **love not the truth**. And there are some other 'major distractions', seven of them really, called The Seven Vial or "Bowl" or Plague Judgments from Heaven.

We have talked some about why I don't really see much of man's contributions in the judgments of God in The Beginning of Sorrows that many other **teachers** of **prophecy** think they see. And suchlike misconceptions do not come from 'highly-stacked' **scripture** focused on God's proven and **prophesied** 'capabilities', but from a poorly focused view of prophetic **scripture** along with too strong a focus on man's modern 'capabilities'. Remember that Jesus hints at the real cause of most of The Seal and Trumpet Judgments, the ones that are presumably 'natural' or 'acts of God', saying that along with judgments such as **famines, and pestilences, and earthquakes** there will also be **fearful sights and great signs... from heaven** ([Mat 24:7](#), [Luke 21:11](#)). In modern terms, He must mean that these disasters originate from space. This is what Immanuel Velikovsky discovered that people all over the World had already witnessed and recorded. And I'm pretty much going along with Velikovsky's predictions for the future too—that similar events must inevitably happen again—except that he evidently lacked some respect for God and was really only able to see backward, so he couldn't have seen half of what we will be able to see.

Still, Velikovsky's look backward gives us quite a lot of help. From cultural, archeological, and paleontological evidence he compiled last century, he envisioned multiple visits by planets—identifying specifically the repeated visits from Venus and Mars—where these planets are somehow for a time 'caught' by the Earth and somehow 'balanced' within their gravitational and electromagnetic fields and by their momentums. And while they are 'attached' to the Earth in this way, they evidently 'dump' on Earth lots of [1](#))

iron oxide or rust—red dust that makes water look like **blood**, etc., and 2) gaseous or liquid hydrocarbons—some of which through atmospheric electrolysis is changed into **manna** for the Jews or 'ambrosia' for the Greeks, etc., and some of which burned or just accumulated (naphtha), and 3) meteorites—variously sized but mostly relatively small though lethal and possibly burning and/or 'bloody'. And Velikovsky found records of all manner of various combinations and quantities of iron oxide, and/or ignited or unignited or electrolysized hydrocarbons, and/or hot or cold meteor showers coming down in different areas all over the planet. His finds include records of the ancestors of the Scandinavians who witnessed an accumulation of 'bloody milk', and the ancestors of Latin Americans who witnessed a time when many were drowned in a downpour of a 'gooey' substance. So Velikovsky discovered that these alien materials came from the sky in various combinations and quantities when either Venus or Mars was very close by. And these events were recorded by cultures around the World.

But Velikovsky was not really an orthodox Jew, and he apparently lacked a good **understanding** of Biblical **prophecy**, and also apparently had—like too many Christians—too little **respect** and **understanding** of God. Those additionally necessary perspectives for **understanding** all of this will be in place in *The Ages of Creation study*. But even now we can see that God must have 'targeted' his enemies and saved his people with these supernatural 'defenses' and/or 'provisions' from the Heavens exactly as He intended, and as He will do again.

And what's worth reemphasizing here is that the reason this seems too fantastic or far-fetched is that God is much more fantastic and far-fetched than we can possibly **understand**. I mean I don't ever expect to get to the bottom of all of this, but it's plain to me that He puts on such displays to make it possible for us to get an **understanding** of just how awesome He really is. And I really appreciate His ability to show us that He is mindbogglingly beyond our most fantastic imaginations by giving us a few glimpses of Himself that we can just barely get our minds around. Surely these events have many purposes. But one of them is to amaze and fascinate some of His more attentive children who can only gawk open-mouthed at His finesse in delivering such spectacles. Indeed, **the fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom** ([Psa 111:10](#); [Pro 1:7](#); [9:10](#)), but these spectacles, properly **understood**, must ultimately show us that we are in unimaginably safe hands. I mean He evidently doesn't just have 'the whole World in His hands', because He sometimes masterfully 'juggles it', along with other worlds and the Moon, all at the same time, and all for the benefit of His children, and the destruction of His enemies.

So you should by now have a better **understanding** of what the psalmist means when he says,

Let all the earth fear the LORD: let all the inhabitants of the world stand in awe of him. For he spake, and it [the earth] was done [or "came to be"]; he commanded, and it stood fast [or "appeared"] [Psalms 33:8](#).

I mean if you don't **fear the LORD** and you don't **stand in awe of him** because He created the World with six commands, then you don't **know** Him

as well as you thought you did, nor will you be able to adequately appreciate the unimaginable power God already has and will in the future put on display for the World for the clear purpose, among other purposes, to **reveal** Himself to us—at least to the limits of those of us who are paying attention. But you will eventually get it when you finally witness such displays for yourself should you get the chance. But it will be a **shame** to come to this **revelation** then. Because it's right here. And if this isn't enough for you to get it, please see my next **study**, God willing I get the chance to complete it. In it, if God will give me the chance, we'll **prove** He **created** the World in six commands too, contrary to the constant, malicious, and/or ignorant banter that The Creation of the World cannot be **proven**. Of course it can.

So, fantastically enough, all but possibly one of the judgments in this final round in The Days of Vengeance must originate from outer space too—except, of course, that all the judgments are initiated from **the throne of God**. And these judgments are not much different than the 'acts of God' in The Beginning of Sorrows or in **other ages**, just 'worse'. And only the early **wars** of The Beginning of Sorrows seem to be exceptions to the more obviously 'God-fashioned' judgments of the rest of The Great Tribulation. But God will be the designer even of these early **wars**. They are initiated by his judgments from Heaven after all. And we will see next section how He certainly gets directly involved in at least one of them and therefore likely all of them.

And again, there is really only one **prophecy** that is understandably mistakable as a direct description of the detonation of a nuclear weapon, [Zechariah 14:12](#). But this event does not occur in these opening **wars**, so we won't spend any more time on it here because we'll cover what it really is with sufficient context in the section after next. The point for now is that nuclear weapons certainly play no major role other than deterrence, and then only possibly early on, though I am not against a few small ones going off early here and there out of The God Zone as they have before. And I am expecting some 'super-duper' new weapons and defenses to be developed in Israel before the start of The Great Tribulation as we'll see next section.

However there cannot be any nuclear weapons, or even any kind of globally-networked technology operational—even in Israel—passed The 6th Seal Judgment, nor do I expect any of this to be involved in that judgment because all such technological infrastructure should be pretty much wiped out by this judgment, never to have a chance to recover again. So again, besides possibly the early wars leading up to The 6th Seal Judgment, I don't see any of man's 'modern technology' aiding or contributing significantly in any way to the judgments from Heaven. I instead see that part of God's purpose for The 1st Great Earthquake in The 6th Seal Judgment is to finish 'disarming' mankind of his modern technologies and modern conveniences in order to provoke some serious 'soul-searching'. And any hope of a return to 'modernity' should be finally dashed in The Midterm Great Earthquake at the end of The Beginning of Sorrows.

And these 'natural acts of God' administered from Heaven, including The Seven Plague Judgments, Jesus identifies in His Discourse on the Mount of Olives. Again, Luke records that the cause in The Seal and Trumpet Judgments are the **fearful sights and great signs... from heaven** [Luke](#)

[21:11](#). And it is only Luke again that gives a summary of The Plague Judgments in The Days of Vengeance where Jesus explains,

...there shall be signs in the sun, and in the moon, and in the stars; and upon the earth distress of nations, with perplexity; the sea and the waves roaring; Men's hearts failing them for fear, and for looking after those things which are coming on the earth: for the powers of heaven [including the Sun, Moon, Stars, and planets] ***shall be shaken*** [Luke 21:25-26](#).

Now maybe you can see how Velikovsky helped me come to an improved perspective of **prophecy** despite himself. Because you can see here that God is not just talking about a 'fireworks show in the sky'. And you can **understand** that God is going to give us more of the same kind of thing He's given us in the past. And I mean He's **the same yesterday, and to day, and for ever**, except that in The Great Tribulation, as He **promises**, He will be a schosh more severe than ever before, but along the same lines as before.

This would be along the lines of how **the LORD rained upon Sodom and upon Gomorrah brimstone and fire... out of heaven** [Genesis 19:24](#), and how He administered The Plagues of Egypt recorded by Moses in The Book of Exodus, and how He helped Joshua win his unusually 'long day' of battle half a century later, and how His angels killed overnight the entire 185,000-strong Assyrian army ([Isa 37:36](#), [2 Kings 19:35](#)). And these are the same kind of judgments from Heaven that Jesus is talking about that will happen in The Great Tribulation. And they are the same kind of consequences Velikovsky confirms by the records from previous ages, including from **scripture**, and from survivors worldwide, including **Moses, Joshua, and Elisha**.

Again, these worldwide cataclysmic disasters were not the consequences of modern technology then, and the same will be true in The Great Tribulation. Jesus jumps to the climactic end of this story in this context a few verses later. I don't mean to the end of The Great Tribulation, but to the end of The Millennium, saying,

Heaven and earth shall pass away [Luke 21:33](#), [Mat 24:35](#)

And this foreshadows the fact that escape from God's reach in any **age** is futile.

The account of The Seven Plague Judgments in Revelation is in Chapter 16. In the account, first John...

...heard a great voice out of the temple saying to the seven angels, Go your ways, and pour out the vials of the wrath of God upon the earth [Verse 1](#).

One of these **seven angels** we've already heard from. He is the first in the 'relay team' that delivers the allegorical **prophecy** in Chapters 17 and 18 about the **city** and the **peoples, and multitudes, and nations, and tongues** 'shepherded' by the False Prophet. But we can discern that this **great voice out the temple** must be the proclamation of Jesus Himself, like

in Chapter 18 when He is described as **another voice from heaven**. I mean it should be Jesus giving the command to **pour out the vials of the wrath of God upon the earth** because if He is the only one **worthy to open** the Seal Judgments, then He must also be the only one **worthy** to give this command too. And He must still be in **the temple** at this time.

But some of these **voices** from Heaven are clearly identified as **angels** too. We already **know** about the continuously 'vocal' **four living creatures** or **beasts** around God's **throne**. I'm guessing they're a superior type of 'six-winged' **seraphim** with 'hands' as mentioned in [Isaiah 6:2-6](#). Or maybe they're **cherubims** who apparently come in various sizes and stations. They're mentioned in lots of places. Satan, by-the-way, is called **the anointed cherub** in [Ezekiel 28:14](#)—which I guess identifies him as a king of sorts. Then again, maybe the **four living creatures** are a different kind of **creation** altogether. And does this covers all the bases? Probably not. The point is that with the limited view God has given us though the 'dark glass' between the physical and spiritual Worlds, my best guess for now is that besides Jesus, the Father, and redeemed humans, the rest of these 'vocal' heavenly **creatures** must be various types of **angels** talking, or in some cases 'trumpeting', from their various stations. But we'll consider this **heavenly host** some more before we're done.

Now it may be difficult to imagine that anything could be as bad as what we saw happening in The Seal and Trumpet Judgments. And this last round with only half as many judgments may at first not sound all that bad in comparison. But as usual you have to start with **faith** before you get any **understanding**. The **faith** of it is that Jesus and Gabriel imply that these last seven judgments of The Days of Vengeance must each average 'over twice as bad' as each of the first 14 judgments in The Beginning of Sorrows in order for this period to be appropriately described as 'worse'. In other words, this last set must be unimaginably bad—much worse than they sound. In fact I'm expecting that God will torture **the whole world** to the very limits of human endurance. And I think we're on the right track when we recognize that most of them more involve increasing **pain** than death, and for periods that are generally twice as long as in The Beginning of Sorrows. Still, they can't be so bad that it's impossible for the Antichrist Kingdom to nonetheless **prosper** during this **time, times, and an half**.

And besides being more focused on **pain** for longer durations, The Plague Judgments certainly bare many similarities to previous judgments of God. I see again the emergence of **grievous** ailments, water turning to **blood**, sea life dying, and **hail** or **stones** falling from the sky. And we will see **proof** in both this section and the next that in both halves of The Great Tribulation some of these **stones** will be on **fire**, much like they were for Moses, and later for Joshua, and at other times. Again, this must all happen by the same kind of 'catastrophes' that Velikovsky's investigations show were documented again and again by survivors from all parts of the globe and—if you can **believe** it—with God's usual focus in The God Zone in The Bible too.

And obviously the severity of God's judgments in the past has not completely destroyed the Earth or mankind. He also **promises** that this last round will not completely do so either. Exactly how He will again 'link' two planets so close to each other that they will interact intimately with each other's gravitational and magnetic fields, exchange material-filled

atmospheres, and all without destroying each other and everyone on Earth in the process, I can only try to imagine. But the point is that I believe that we can and should try to imagine it. If Velikovsky, however unwittingly, imagined so much about God's past judgments, why can't we imagine even more—and of future judgments too? And surely God will be able to do stuff like this again, because the evidence that He has already done so time and again is not just Biblical, but universal.

So though God will likely cause another planet to 'accost' the Earth again, He cannot allow one to collide with the home planet of His people. Instead He will show us all again just how **safe** those that trust in Him really are. And in fact, when speaking to the **house of Israel**, He implies that He doesn't want us to be afraid at all—not if we want to be obedient to Him. He says,

...Learn not the way of the heathen, and be not dismayed at the signs of heaven; for the heathen are dismayed at them...

[Jer 10:1-2](#)

Replace **heathen** with **unbelieving** and this **counsel** must still hold true. Because surely God by **the counsel of his own will** [Eph 1:11](#)—and also by **working in** His agents The Two Witnesses **to will** ([Heb 13:20-21](#); [Phil 2:13](#))—He will again use another planet to **'smite the earth with all plagues, as often as they [and He] will'** [Rev 11:6](#), and this time with both Christian Gentiles and Jews alive on the planet. And it's not so much God's intentions to destroy the Earth and its people, but more to protect and defend His own people, and more to repeatedly attempt, in a precisely measured way, to draw the World back to Himself. Yes, this mission won't be that successful numerically, but I believe that by this plan He will redeem as many souls as possible. This is who God is and evidently how 'strong-willed' He has created man to be.

So in perspective, these judgments are primarily the end of a plan designed to save God's people, the Jews. They are also surely the greatest 'measured pressure' God can apply in a brief period of time short of killing everyone and destroying everything whereby He can by this means **save some** who could not otherwise be saved. For this cause The Great Tribulation will be filled with incredible displays on Earth and in the Heavens. And all of these displays will not just **declare**, but **shout** like never before the **glory of God**.

And I will be sorry if I miss these 'displays'. I mean I don't **know** if I'll be allowed to see them or not. I just **know** that **the bride** may need to be 'occupied' making **herself ready**. So we might be 'busy' with other priorities. But one reason we can be separated in this way is because we won't need to see these awesome 'displays' of God's power, provision, and incredible finesse. We will have already gotten enough of this message. And for that matter I already have a good idea what The Great Tribulation is going to be like. And I hope that this **study**, and [The Ages of Creation study](#), will be able to enlarge the view of these events even further before it starts, especially if we will be obliged to miss them. But whatever the case, my hope is that just like we get **comfort** by anticipating The Rapture ([1Thes 4:18](#); [5:11](#)), we can also **experience** even more **comfort** from God's testimony of Himself in The Great Tribulation.

And growth in **the more sure word of prophecy**, as with all **scripture**, should bring **revelations**. And with at least some of these should come 'tingles'. And I certainly won't have done my job—which is to show God's awesomeness—if you don't **experience** some kind of an overwhelming response to at least parts of this **study**. I mean you should see in ways you never have before that He is a mind-bogglingly, breathtakingly, knee-knockingly awesome God. And you should **experience** at least some of what God means when He says, **every one that thirsteth should come... to the waters** of His Word, and that when you **hearken diligently unto God, and eat... that which is good**, then you can expect **your soul** [will] **delight itself in fatness**. And hey, if God tells you He's awesome and you don't get 'tingles' or something like it, then you're really not getting the picture.

And because of the nature of these awesome **wonders** of God, especially in The Days of Vengeance, Satan, the Antichrist, and the False Prophet should have some trouble stealing any credit as we will see. But certainly these characters will be adding to all the trouble as much as they can. And when it comes to people in general in The Days of Vengeance, I expect we'll be left with the worst of the worst and the hardest of hearts. And what we'll be mostly left with is the 'blood-sucking' Catholics and the 'power-hungry' Chinese. But the **trouble** that these two dominating factions will cause won't compare with the **trouble** God will cause. Again, what the judgments of The Days of Vengeance are all about—as much or more than anything else—is God's efforts to 'melt' some of these 'hardest of hearts'. And His judgments will do this **work** better than anything else could. But at the same time we should also **understand** that His judgments will also need to keep these 'evil beasts' occupied, or He will not be able to save the **few** in the midst of it all who are trying to **endure unto the end** [Mat 24:13](#). Remember He also somehow shortens the days probably starting late in The Beginning of Sorrows, and that this will be responsible for saving some of God's remaining **elect**, especially in The Days of Vengeance ([Mat 24:22, 24, 31](#); [Mark 13:20](#)). And His judgments must be just one way God will keep all the troublemakers 'on a leash'.

And by-the-way, I guess it's about time to raise some oversimplified questions that would define that Calvinism vs. Arminianism argument—I mean since we're calling God's redeemed **the elect** on the one hand and 'pressed to choose' on the other. You could put the basic question this way. Are God's people **elect** or **chosen** primarily because they chose Him through **belief of the truth** [2Thes 2:13](#)? This would be Arminianism. Or is it because they really have no choice because they are by God **predestinated** to respond to **the truth** ([Eph 1:5-11](#))? This would be Calvinism. Or could it somehow be both choice and destiny? To start with, Paul makes absolutely clear that God makes us as either **vessels of wrath** [and **dishonour**] **fitted to destruction** or **vessels of mercy** [and **honour**], **which he had afore prepared unto glory** [Rom 9:21-23](#). And Paul concludes that,

...whom he did foreknow, he also did predestinate to be conformed to the image of his Son, that he might be the firstborn among many brethren. Moreover whom he did predestinate, them he also called: and whom he called, them he also justified [cleansed by **the blood of Jesus**]: **and whom he**

justified, them he also glorified [selected for immortality] [Rom 8:29-30](#).

But Jesus says that ***...many are called, but few are chosen*** [Mat 22:14](#). So at least from our perspective this process Paul speaks of is evidently prone to somehow 'break down' somewhere along the way. And for more on the 'choice' side of this argument you could read through the 119 KJV references containing the word ***chosen***. In them you'll see a lot of 'choice' going on by all players. But any way you look at it, surely God knows all outcomes in advance. Still, it's hard to deny in the human ***experience*** the incessant necessity to ***choose***. I mean God's always asking us to ***choose to go, do, get, be, have, give, press***, etc. And clearly come ***choose*** to do so and some don't. In fact God Himself and those representing Him repeatedly ask His people to ***choose***. (See [Deut 30:19](#); [Josh 24:15](#); [2 Sam 24:12](#); [Isa 65:12](#).) However in the 58 KJV verses including the word ***choose*** you'll see more of God's sovereignty than man's choice—but both.

So what we really want to ***know*** is how much 'manipulating' of us God really does. I think I have some answers to that. And they're being woven into this ***study*** in case you haven't already noticed—though I have pretended that they haven't so as not to get bogged down. And this topic deserves a ***study*** of its own, though it's not like I think I'd ever expect to fully ***understand*** all God's ***thoughts*** or ***ways*** regarding this subject. But some people speak as if they think they fully ***understand*** God's thinking on this issue. Examples of these would be staunch Calvinist or Arminianist. And for those of you who think they truly ***understand*** the issue, here's a verse to 'chew on' that speaks of what God will do to the ***abominable***. He says,

...I also will choose their delusions, and will bring their fears upon them; because when I called, none did answer; when I spake, they did not hear: but they did evil before mine eyes, and chose that in which I delighted not... [Isa 66:1-5](#)

So my human ***understanding*** of these 'apparent contradictions' in ***scripture*** is that it's a matter of perspective. As we've seen already in this ***study***, if you're not processing ***scripture*** from the right perspective, you can't rightly ***understand*** it. So first you need to ***understand*** that everything from God's perspective is a done deal. And He makes us how he wants to. Or as Paul says,

Therefore hath he mercy on whom he will have mercy, and whom he will he hardeneth. Thou wilt say then unto me, Why doth he yet find fault? For who hath resisted his will? Nay but, O man, who art thou that repliest against God? Shall the thing formed say to him that formed it, Why hast thou made me thus? Hath not the potter power over the clay, of the same lump to make one vessel unto honour, and another unto dishonour? [Rom 9:18-21](#)

But at the same time you must ***understand*** that from our perspective everything is a 'free will' ***choice***. And that...

...whosoever shall call upon the name of the Lord shall be saved [Rom 10:13](#).

And 'everyone' gets a 'call' from Jesus. He says,

...if I be lifted up from the earth, will draw all men unto me [John 12:32](#).

So evidently **all men** somehow get their **choice** up to some point. However I don't **know** how children who die young get a 'fair chance'.

But if you confuse these perspectives by, for example, presuming you can see things from God's perspective—I mean thinking that you can tell for sure whether any particular person is **predestinated** or not—you are confused indeed, because this is not nor ever should be possible for us—I mean not without specifically expressed **revelation** from God. Or else Paul would have never told you that it's necessary from your perspective to **work out your own salvation with fear and trembling**. This means you can't **know** for sure who will **stand** or **fall**—including yourself. And this should scare you even more than The Great Tribulations should. But with the right perspective we can see the difference between God's **work** and ours—and **tremble** (see [Deut 2:25](#); [Psalms 99:1](#); [Isa 32:11](#), [64:1-3](#); [66:1-5](#); [Jer 5:22](#); [Joel 2:1](#); [James 2:19](#)).

A view of God's perspective along these lines is visible in The Plague Judgments. God must be actively involved in the affairs of men to preoccupy people in general in order to limit the amount of **trouble** they are free to cause. On the other hand, we should remember that the slain but faithful Jews—the ones in Chapter 15 that participate in The Rapture of the Tribulation Jews—are seen in Heaven before The 1st Plague Judgment is **poured out**. This is evidence that God will 'back off' to allow the Antichrist some time after The Abomination of Desolation to begin the execution of his campaign of **indignation against the holy covenant** 'unhindered'. But when the first angel is finally sent to **pour out his vial upon the earth**, because of the nature of these judgments, the execution of this campaign must be increasingly 'hampered' by God thereafter. And these 'strategies' of God—to both 'facilitate' and 'hinder' the death of his people—must both be part of His plan to save His **remnant** [Rev 12:17](#)—these being both Christian Gentiles and Jews. They will be saved and redeemed whether they die and temporarily wait in Heaven to be raptured or whether they survive The Great Tribulation. And we'll get a 'better picture' of the results of these different 'tracks to salvation' in [SECTION 11](#) and [12](#).

And we **know** that The 7 Plague Judgments in Revelation 16 must be happening at the same time as The Reign of the Empowered Antichrist and The Ministry of the Empowered False Prophet. A simple summary of this whole 'mess' is given by Jesus on The Mount of Olives when He is answering His disciples question about a **sign... of the end of the world** [Mat 24:3](#). Remember He tells them that the time following The Abomination of Desolation will be the worst time ever. He says,

...these be the days of vengeance, that all things which are written may be fulfilled [Luke 21:22](#).

And this **line** in Luke's account about **the days of vengeance** comes from the Prophet Isaiah ([Is 61:1-2](#)). And from all this we can tell that Jesus is talking about the second half of the 7-year Great Tribulation, or the same **time, times and an half** which include The 7 Plague Judgments, The 42 Months **given** to the Antichrist and the False Prophet, The 1260 Days of safe haven God provides for the escaping Jews, and The 1290 Days wherein all these events transpire and are concluded apparently at **Armageddon**. And now you should be able to see better than ever why both Jesus (e.g. [Mat 24:21](#)), and Gabriel (in [Dan 12:1](#)) tell us that this period will be the most devastating time ever.

And The Days of Vengeance apparently don't start with God's judgments, but with Satan's **great wrath** [Rev 12:12](#), when the Jews in Israel **flee into the mountains** at The Abomination of Desolation (e.g., [Mat 24:15-16](#)). This implies that this worst time ever starts with the worldwide slaughter of a multitude of new **believers**, some of whom I expect will be strangely calm. And their provocative **patience** and **faith** should foreshadow the 'marked doom' of burning **torment... for ever and ever** of all those who are 'mistakenly self-assured World citizens'. This is what I expect it will be like at the start of The Absolute Enforcement of the Worship of Satan and the Antichrist.

And we can also see the placement of all this turmoil in Jesus' summary in Luke's record. Jesus says,

For these be the days of vengeance, that all things which are written may be fulfilled. But woe unto them that are with child, and to them that give suck, in those days! for there shall be great distress in the land, and wrath upon this people. And they shall fall by the edge of the sword, and shall be led away captive into all nations: and Jerusalem shall be trodden down of the Gentiles, until the times of the Gentiles be fulfilled. And there shall be signs in the sun, and in the moon, and in the stars; and upon the earth distress of nations, with perplexity; the sea and the waves roaring; Men's hearts failing them for fear, and for looking after those things which are coming on the earth: for the powers of heaven shall be shaken. And then shall they see the Son of man coming in a cloud with power and great glory [Luke 21:22-27](#).

Here we see an account of The Days of Vengeance with a Jewish focus on The Absolute Enforcement of the Worship of Satan and the Antichrist ([Verses 23-24](#)). And we can connect the start of all this chaos with the time when Gabriel says the Antichrist...

...shall enter also into the glorious land, and many countries [mostly Muslim] shall be overthrown [Dan 11:41](#).

And this will include **Egypt** [Dan 11:42](#). And following this short but overpowering war in North African and Southwest Asia, we should next expect to see the extremely 'perplexing' effects of the heaven-sent Plague Judgments ([Verses 25-26](#)). And finally we see that The Second Coming of Jesus wraps things up ([Verse 27](#)).

And I expect **the Assyrian** will be a big nuisance in The Days of Vengeance, but that surely God will be a bigger one. I mean this period only starts with the Antichrist's reprisals. And yes, God hasn't hidden **the Assyrian** from His **prophets**, but with some **exercise** in the Old Testament you can't help notice that God gives the Antichrist much less attention for his part in The Great Tribulation than He gives to Himself. Jesus too, on the Mount of Olives, only implies that the Antichrist is a **sign of the end of the world**. And the Antichrist is only indirectly mentioned by The Abomination of Desolation, and he is only implied to be behind a good part of the bloodshed and captivity. But you could argue that this is because the time of the Antichrist's appearance is still a **mystery**. And The Holy Trinity could still be obscuring the role of the Antichrist for this reason. Maybe.

But besides that debate, we should also recognize that the worst of The Days of Vengeance is a matter of perspective. I mean, for example, that this 'clear skies' period before the start of The Plague Judgments must be the worst time for **believers**. And I expect it will be the worst of the **time of Jacob's trouble** ([Jer 30:7](#); [Dan 12:1](#)). But some of them who quickly die in the slaughter are really receiving a blessing in disguise, because the longer any believer survives, the more unpleasant this period must be for them. However the onset of The Plagues Judgments should bring increasing 'distractions' to the Antichrist's forces, making these judgments more of a help than a hindrance to **the remnant**. I mean surviving believers should in some cases actually experience some relief from The Plague Judgments because of all the 'distractions' they cause.

And I'd like to say we're done with the minor **trouble** makers. But their comparatively feeble 'interference' is a big part of the picture from here on out. In fact, they have a big comeback in The 6th Plague Judgment. And **knowing** the roles of these minor players will help us take a closer look at the worst period in The Great Tribulation for **the whole world** [Rev 12:9](#). I mean for all for those **not written in the book of life** [Rev 13:8](#) which should be the vast majority of survivors on the planet. For them, the worst of times happens during The Plague Judgments described in [Revelation 16](#).

John witnesses in [Verse 2](#) that when...

...the first [angel] went, and poured out his vial upon the earth [that] there fell a noisome and grievous sore upon the men which had the mark of the beast, and upon them which worshipped his image.

This again implies there will be enough time for rank and file World citizens to already be marked and worshipping the beast before the start of The 1st Plague, and also that there will be enough time to kill all those who refuse it, that is, those that can be caught. And this also implies that after the start of The 1st Plague it will become more difficult to hide the fact that you don't have **the mark** because of the **grievous sore** that comes with it. And I

suppose this means that if you're going to try to fake **the mark** you'll have to somehow fake the **sore** too. But more importantly, it also implies that if you have held out this far, there is new encouragement to help you continue avoiding **the mark**. I mean so that you can avoid the **grievous sore** too. And this should be a pretty good motivation. I mean after The 1st Plague, who would want to take the mark knowing it would come with a Great-Tribulation-sized, **noisome and grievous sore** if they could somehow avoid it?

And this **noisome and grievous sore** on marked worshippers apparently doesn't go away because we will see after The 5th Plague Judgment that people are still

'blaspheming' **the God of heaven because of their pains and their sores** received throughout these judgments. And here we also see that Satan, the Antichrist, and the False Prophet can have no way to take credit for these **pains** and **sores**, but are forced instead to promote the 'blame game' against God. This also shows the ongoing motivation for those without **the mark**. But it can't be easy to both avoid **the mark** and keep your head, though decapitation would be the more acceptable choice as necessary. And it also occurs to me that these 1st Plague **sores** won't slow down the Antichrist's campaign **against the holy covenant** too much, and it does give him another way to identify those without **a mark**.

But I've heard theories about 'ruptured miniature lithium batteries' powering tiny high-tech 'implanted marks' that could be the cause of these 'sores'. Well, some of the Egyptian cattle in one of The Plagues of Egypt die of **a very grievous murrain** or disease, and finally in the last plague both **the firstborn of Egypt** and the **firstborn of [Egypt's] cattle** all die, while in both cases God promises that **there shall nothing die of all that is the children's of Israel** ([Exodus 9:4](#), [12:29](#)). So I can't say for sure how God again **'shall sever between'** the two, that is, between the ones with **the mark** and the ones without—just like He did between **all that is the children's of Israel** and Egypt's progeny and cattle. But I have some ideas. For one thing, in the case of the ailment acquired only by the Egyptian's cattle, it surely wasn't anything like 'mass lithium battery failure' in their 'implanted electronic cowbells'. Other than that, maybe somehow there was a difference in the diet of Jewish and Egyptian cattle because of where they grazed that made the difference. And God knows that seeds are planted in the direction the wind blows. And maybe there will be something physical about this manmade **mark** that will be part of the equation causing this ailment—I mean the result of adding whatever chemicals are involved in making **the mark** with the ones God 'drops from the sky'. These kinds of considerations must be closer to the right idea anyway.

But whatever the case, it's only safe here to give God the credit, not man. After all, remember that people will 'blaspheme God' because of it. And this is a good place to remind you that no international, '1984-style', computer-networked, satellite-aided surveillance and management system or infrastructure used to control and oppress the population could possibly still be in operation. This is because again, two **great** earthquakes—both before the Antichrist gains his worldwide dominance—will render any such infrastructures and technology useless, at least on a wide scale. And this doesn't consider the other devastating worldwide effects from other judgments of God going on around these **great** earthquakes. And this means

that technology cannot play a significant role in the dissemination and enforcement of **the mark** either. I suppose it's possible that 'spotty' TV and radio transmissions could be resumed to some extent. But new transmission towers would need to be built and later rebuilt again. And of course this assumes enough TV's and radios survive intact, and that fragile transmission equipment can be repaired—not a given—and that the Earth's next red companion in the sky is not causing too much signal interference—not a given either.

As far as **the mark** itself, which the Antichrist will not have the authority to absolutely enforce until after The Abomination of Desolation, and after The Midterm Great Earthquake, think large, plainly visible, and probably even somewhat crude ink tattoos. This could be done rather quickly to billions of people. And I would expect Satan would want his people visibly marked just like God's 144,000 will be. And as far as enforcement, think **horseman** with **swords** and **shields** quite effectively organized and more personally networked throughout the worldwide membership of the Catholic Church. And this is already a highly organized membership that—not yet including the 'orthodox churches'—presently represents about one out of every six people on the planet. But by The 1st Plague Judgment it will surely be a much higher percentage. This worldwide community network of members of the Catholic Church must reach a formidable majority in all regions except in China and the rest of Eastern Asia. There I expect the controlling membership network will be the Chinese Communist Party. But the Philippines, New Guinea, Australia, and New Zealand could go either way depending on whether they are assimilated by China or The Antichrist Kingdom, except that they are all more easily accessible to China. The [MAP of Worldwide Catholic Church Membership \(p.319\)](#) shows that these countries have plenty of Catholics. In fact I expect that the **tidings out of the east and out of the north** [that] **shall trouble** the Antichrist sometime after the midpoint probably come from some of these nations ([Dan 11:44](#)). But even in China-controlled regions, economic ties with the Antichrist Empire should be sufficient to motivate the bulk of these populations to take **the mark** too. This is because they will want access to the World market controlled by Vatican City. But oh, will they pay for it.

Continuing in The Plague Judgments in Chapter 16, in [Verses 3-4](#), the second and third angels send a particular message to the World with their **blood** plagues that must be directed primarily against the Catholic Church. In the first of these two plagues evidently all the exposed water on the Earth becomes...

...as the blood of a dead man: and every living soul died in the sea...

Or generally speaking, the oceans turn red and all sea life dies. And I say 'generally' because we will see that sea life will make a big comeback in The Millennium. In the second of these **blood** plagues apparently all the water inside the Earth—evidenced by spring and well water—becomes like **blood** too. And of course searching for new sources of water should become a 'distraction' for most everyone on Earth at this time.

The message from God about these judgments is **revealed** in [Verse 6](#). It's that since the inhabitants of the World...

...have shed the blood of saints and prophets... [God has] given them blood to drink.

Yes, these angels are implying that the surviving World population must become increasingly Catholic, because they are the ones who will be 'discharging' the mainstream of this bloodletting. But there must also be an even bigger, mostly non-Catholic, Eastern Asian population also left alive as we will see. And this implies that these China-controlled regions will also participate in exterminating both Protestants and Jews—though I don't expect there will be as many to kill in these regions. And any surviving Muslims must eventually be assimilated by either the Catholics or the Chinese. But considering God's focus in The God Zone, and that most Catholics will be there, this implies that the Catholic Church will attain a more or less universal control over **the whole world** in The Days of Vengeance. And I think we can compare the early Trumpet Judgments in The Beginning of Sorrows when God sends **blood** judgments affecting only $\frac{1}{3}$ of the water on the planet with the later **blood** judgments of The Days of Vengeance when all the water is affected. I mean in both cases these judgments must correspond to how the global control of the Catholic Church changes and grows. Makes sense to me anyway.

And [Verse 7](#) shows us a couple of things. This is the wrap-up to The 3rd Plague Judgment when John...

...heard another out of the altar say, Even so, Lord God Almighty, true and righteous are thy judgments...

One thing we **learn** in this verse can be **understood** from the previous verse too. It's that those who **have shed the blood of saints and prophets**—the ones who God will give **blood to drink**—deserve it. But this also has to mean that God is only applying necessary pressure, so that those still to be saved get a chance to get the message. I mean He's not 'wiping out' everyone in these **blood** plagues. And He won't until Armageddon. So this must be the best possible 'incentive' God can apply in his plan to **continue to save some**. And evidently an angel **out of the altar** is acknowledging this. The angel's declaration here not only acknowledges these plagues as appropriate punishment, but also as the 'right' amount of mercy for those that are still able to receive it. And don't forget, Jesus must still have the call out to His people to **come out of** this **great** bloodsucking **whore**.

Also remember that **the altar** is where the Martyrs will wait. And they should be able to see in these **blood** plagues that they are finally getting their revenge. And since these **blood** plagues in The Plague Judgments should be passed the worst of the slaughter of the **saints and prophets**, I'm expecting that most of them will be there to witness it. But this declaration of the angel **out of the altar** also implies that the Martyrs 'melt' at the sight of this perfect mix of God's judgment and mercy. This verse hints that their desire for vengeance at this point will give way to worship as they witness the

judgments of their **true and righteous** God. Of course this also could mean we all get to see 'the show'. But it at least shows that the Martyrs must finally be seeing the Catholics seriously suffering, and that before the start of these **blood** plagues it must be mostly everyone else who is.

These **blood** plagues also fit Immanuel Velikovsky's theory. He deduced from the historical record that past experiences with suddenly appearing large quantities of 'red water' were directly related to the Earth's multiple close encounters with Mars—the red color coming from the high iron oxide or rust content visible on its surface. More recently, the existence of Martian surface iron oxide has been directly verified by successful missions using robotic rovers.

And in even earlier times, before the Earth's encounters with Mars, historical records reveal similar effects during Earth's repeated close encounters with Venus. Assorted probes have confirmed that Venus is now shrouded in a dense and highly reflective, sulfuric acid covered, but mostly carbon dioxide atmosphere which is believed to be a change from its past atmosphere—some thinking its present atmosphere is the result of the planet losing all its hydrogen into space. But those who agree with Velikovsky would say that it lost a significant portion of that hydrogen to the Earth. The dense atmosphere of Venus also makes it difficult to determine its present surface composition. But Velikovsky's evidence helps us see that it could not have been that long since there was still some hydrogen in the atmosphere—for making **manna**, ambrosia, etc.—and that the surface at least used to contain a significant quantity of iron oxide. This is another story that will be much more fully unfolded in the next **study**, God willing.

The 4th Plague Judgment reminds me that there is a way to 'rub two sticks together' to make fire, because in [Verses 8-9](#) we seem to see God 'rub' two planets' atmospheres together to make **great heat** and cause people on Earth to be **scorched**. But this warming effect is not attributed to this companion planet. Instead,

...the fourth angel poured out his vial upon the sun...

So I expect this warming will more likely be caused by one of the **signs in the sun** Jesus speaks of. But however it happens, we'll leave more speculation about this 'heated mission' of **the fourth angel** for the next **study** too.

With the 'pouring out' of God's judgment by **the fifth angel** in [Verses 10-11](#), we can see that the ability of Satan, the Antichrist, the False Prophet, and the Ten Kings to cause **trouble** 'grinds to a halt', because we can see, as John saw it, that the angel...

...poured out his vial upon the seat of the beast [now Jerusalem]; and his kingdom was full of darkness; and they gnawed their tongues for pain, And blasphemed the God of heaven because of their pains and their sores, and repented not of their deeds.

At this time, **the seat of the beast** must be in Jerusalem where his **palace** is, but **his kingdom** by this time should cover all of Europe, North Africa, and Southwest Asia, and maybe even India and Russia too. This means that at

least The God Zone will somehow go dark. And however this happens, it should mostly protect any of God's people still alive and hiding in this region of the World. But I also expect that these 'patient and faithful' fugitives will suffer in this **plague** as much as anyone else—except they will not have **sores** like everyone else.

The next judgment doesn't really sound so bad. In fact, besides 'drying up' **the great river Euphrates**, it seems to bring back clear skies and relatively unhindered activity on the Earth. So this is when I expect the Ten Kings get their chance to subjugate the False Prophet and Vatican City. And this is when they should have sufficient support to do so. But this judgment is more directly God's final 'set up' for **the end**, or in other words, for...

...the day of the LORD... [and His] cruel [plan] both with wrath and fierce anger, to lay the land desolate... [and where] he shall destroy the sinners thereof out of it [Isa 13:9-13](#).

One reason this judgment must be the 'set up' for **the end** is that we're running out of judgments. But more obvious than that, it plainly facilitates the gathering together of the last two 'contenders' to World domination. So this must be when these 'contenders' will see that the time for their 'Hitler-Stalin-like' dealings has passed, because they must be out of other 'fish to fry'. But it's God who brings them to this point and will take advantage of it. He will make one of them desperate for spoil and the other to pretend to be desperate to survive. And He will convince everyone that their best plan is to come together and fight it out. John sees that...

...the sixth angel pours out his vial upon the great river Euphrates; and the water thereof is dried up, that the way of the kings of the east might be prepared. And I saw three unclean spirits like frogs come out of the mouth of the dragon, and out of the mouth of the beast, and out of the mouth of the false prophet. For they are the spirits of devils, working miracles, which go forth unto the kings of the earth and of the whole world, to gather them to the battle of that great day of God Almighty [Verses 12-14](#).

This **battle of the great day of God** is specifically identified as **Armageddon** in [Verse 16](#). I imagine that God 'instigates' this final **battle** by somehow drying up **the great river Euphrates** and thereby opening up the way for these 'contenders' to fight each other at **Armageddon**. And yes I **know**, it's likely you've heard this explained a little differently. Hang on. I'll need the rest of this section and the next couple besides to **prove** this. But we'll start right away by making some 'big dents' toward this 'breakthrough'.

A couple paragraphs back we saw again that because of The 5th Plague [[audio error, not "Seal"](#)] Judgment most everyone still alive will be openly cursing God. And people like this might be insane enough to actually attempt to try to fight Him. And I **know** the...

...devils... go forth unto the kings of the earth and of the whole world, to gather them to the battle of that great day of God Almighty [Verse 14](#).

But here again we need to be careful about the perspective. I mean, how could everyone really be expecting to take a fight to God? So I don't think they will be. We saw how **'the whole World'** will 'cower' before God during The 1st Great Earthquake. People will hide in the 'rocks and caves' acknowledging that God is the one who is 'dumping' on everyone, and that it's hopeless to try to **stand** against Him ([Rev 6:15-17](#)). And remember that about The Days of Vengeance Jesus says,

Men's hearts [will be] failing them for fear, and for looking after those things which are coming on the earth: for the powers of heaven shall be shaken [Luke 21:26](#).

So no, I don't see anyone will be motivated to come out in the open to raise their fists to the sky and openly defy God. No one would expect to be able to win such a fight. So in Verse 14 when we see **the whole world... gather... to the battle of that great day of God Almighty**, we must be seeing God and Satan's perspective, because they will **know** what is really happening, but I expect there will be very few on Earth who really do.

And don't Peter and Paul make clear the World's perspective at The Second Coming of Jesus when they say,

...the Lord will come as a thief in the night ([2 Pet 3:10](#); [1 Thes 5:2](#))

And **the Lord** Himself makes this clear in [Revelation 3:3](#) and [16:15](#). And referring specifically to His Second Coming He says,

But of that day and that hour knoweth no man, no, not the angels which are in heaven, neither the Son, but [only] the Father. Take ye heed, watch and pray: for ye know not when the time is ([Mark 13:32-33](#); [Mat 24:36](#)).

So how can the 'average man on the battlefield' **know... when the time is**—or even be expecting Jesus at all? He surely can't—and won't. And he won't be traveling to that valley to fight Jesus. Instead, he must be deluded by both God and Satan to come for some other reason. And by-the-way, this is another popular case where compartmentalization strikes again.

And what I expect is really happening—remembering it's God's judgment after all—is that God is deluding and drawing the Chinese Empire out to attack the Antichrist Empire by opening this access to Israel to the east. God 'lures' China with an irresistible 'fishhook', much like we will see He does with the Russian Empire in the next section. I expect that China will think that it's finally time for that 'mop up job'. And she will come at this time expecting to conquer and spoil the Antichrist Empire. Don't forget we've seen how previous 'world-ruling' empires had their rivals that always eventually overcame them. This is just the first time one of these rivals will be coming from so far **east** of The God Zone.

And again, since this is God's judgment it must be part of the **strong delusion** He 'sends' to get these rivals to come to their own slaughter. He will make everyone on both sides of this 'clash of superpowers' think that their chance to finally conquer **the whole world** has come. But God must be 'luring' Satan to participate in all of this with another kind of 'fishhook'. Let me tell you what I mean.

In these 'end game' events, one of the two remaining contenders to World domination is collectively referred to as **the kings of the east**. From this description and by the process of elimination, I expect that all of these **kings** will be of East Asian origins and all lead by China. I also expect that since China takes God's 'bait', that she does it because she think that she is the strongest remaining contender to World power, and probably simply by her numbers. And evidently the last thing she sees in the way between this multitude of foot soldiers and the spoil of the Antichrist Empire is **the great river Euphrates** which protects the access to **the seat of the beast**. So when God removes this obstacle, **the kings of the east** must become a believable threat to the Antichrist Kingdom. We can deduce this because the Unholy Trinity will apparently react in desperation by dispatching their evil angelic henchmen to gather the remaining Catholics—or by then just Antichrist worshippers—from among the remaining **kings of the earth** to defend the empire—or at least that's what the Unholy Trinity will want everyone to think is going on.

I expect Sub-Saharan Africa is probably the hardest hit by The 4th Seal's **pestilences**, and probably won't recover to offer much assistance to anyone. So besides the Antichrist's forces in Europe, Western Asia, and North Africa, we must deduce that the next most significant forces for him left to draw on of **the kings of the earth and of the whole world** will be in the Americas. And extrapolating further on my earlier speculations —yes this is perilous, though the new clues here seem to fit—by this point China will have seen the success of their support of the Catholic takeover of the Americas. And I'm guessing that this is mostly China's success because of the diminished population and exhausted forces on both sides of this struggle in the Americas—kind of like the Antichrist's success in The First Egyptian War.

But the evidence that the Catholics technically win in the Americas, and that they are to some degree still able to respond to the Unholy Trinity's call for assistance is threefold. First, the **devils** that will be sent out on this 'round up' will recruit assistance from **the whole world**. Second, the Americas are most likely to offer the Antichrist the strongest 'peripheral support' because they harbor a majority of real Catholics—and I mean not so much of the newly converted kind—although again, they will likely all be newly converted to the God of Forces Church of the Antichrist. And third, where else of any consequence? In other words, it appears we've already identified and eliminated all the significant players around the World.

So by the process of elimination we can see that the Antichrist, probably by some feigned desperation to defend his 'new church and empire', will with the help of **devils** gather his forces from **the kings of the earth and of the whole world**. And this will most likely be from Europe, parts of Asia, Northern Africa, and the Americas, while China will gather hers by the promise of spoil from among **the kings of the east**, including all of East Asia. And this global perspective seems to show that China does not conquer

the Americas. Still, once the way is open, China is evidently encouraged to start its final 'mop up' campaign of all of Asia with the obvious intention of continuing through Europe and then converge on the Americas. So one of the reasons that these Antichrist-converted Catholics—I'll call them Anti-Catholics—will eagerly come to the defense of the Antichrist's 'new church and empire' is that they will perceive China as a real threat. They will believe that if the Antichrist falls they will no longer be in a position to defend themselves anymore.

Transportation of forces across the Atlantic Ocean might be a problem. But when God dries up the Euphrates to open the way for the Chinese, I expect He'll also provide clear sailing and clear skies to facilitate the 'gathering' of the rest of the World too. And He will be expecting quite a turnout. When the stage is finally fully set, He will 'turn out the lights' for the ultimate dramatic entrance. Then His Son will appear like a surprise, explosive, supernatural lightning storm.

And again, I think that this prolonged 'calm before the storm' may be the only opportunity for the Antichrist to spoil the Catholic Church. And I'm guessing the looting of valuable religious paraphernalia will be considered necessary to pay for the preparation of the defense of the empire against the coming Chinese hordes. Remember the Antichrist uses the beginning calm in The Days of Vengeance to do the spoiling of all the Christians, Jews, and Muslims. And Gabriel assures us he will find someone else to spoil in this later period of calm too. And if the Antichrist needs resources late in The Days of Vengeance there would be no one left to spoil except his own False Prophet's city and institutional holdings.

But to really **understand** all of this, we must see that this is when Satan decides that his best plan is to 'cooperate' with God. And this would be because he is aware of what is about to go down. Why would he knowingly participate in this **strong delusion** that he must **know** he can't win? Indeed his participation will not be for what he can win, but for producing the biggest possible number of losers. So the reason he will go along with God's 'ruse' is that he knows it's all over anyway. And he will know that there is no better way for him to maximize the number of the host of the Damned than to participate in God's plan. So Satan will initiate what most must think is a rally to defend his 'new institution and empire' against a potentially overwhelming force from the East not because he is worried about being defeated by them, but because he knows he's about to be defeated by God anyway, and because he knows that this will all result in the biggest possible 'flush of souls' to **hell** than ever before.

And it's really all 'engineered' by God—by the **strong delusion** He will **send** in The 6th Plague Judgment. And Satan will evidently have no better plan than to acquiesce to God's plan. So by giving China the access and the perception that they have the strategic advantage, probably simply by numbers, and by allowing Satan to send out **three** of his **devils** to rally the defense of the Antichrist's threatened empire—God will effectively draw all able supporters of the Antichrist or China to **Armageddon**. And sure, all parties will be looking for a fight, but I don't think they'll expect one with Jesus.

But you're probably aware that the more popular story about **Armageddon** is that **the whole world** will be coming to fight Jesus.

Maybe now you can see that this is probably another error of perspective, because on Earth I expect that only Satan and some of his 'higher-ups'—and some isolated Christians—will **know** that 'the fight' is really with Jesus. And I expect that the general perspective of **the whole world** will be that they are instead fighting for World dominance, and that all this will really be the result of the **strong delusion** 'sent' by God in The 6th Plague Judgment. Again, China's delusion will be that she is getting the chance to spoil the Antichrist Empire, and the Anti-Catholics will think they are getting the chance to finally stop China and remove the last threat to the Antichrist's supreme rule.

And again, this will be nothing new from God. We will see that He's defeated the forces of Satan this way before, and that this is how He normally 'does business' with unrepentant **evildoers**. The general outline of how this 'God-trap' works is described in a Psalm of David. He sings,

He [the evildoer] made a pit, and digged it [to trap someone else for an evil purpose], and is fallen into the ditch which he made. His mischief shall return upon his own head, and his violent dealing shall come down upon his own pate [“the crown of the head”] [Psalms 7:15-16](#).

So one of God's plans for **evildoers** is that they will fall into the traps they lay for others.

But don't forget, this is just part of a tightly woven **interpretation** that relies on the totality of the **study** to really see, which itself is altogether only an oversimplified summary, and only a beginning of the 'cross examinations' that should **continue** on this subject. And I mean two things by this. One is that you may need to go through this **study** a number of times before you can see it all working together. And another is that when you finally start to see all the convincing connections and deductions working together you will start to see that there is no limit to the **interpretation** that could be added in the process of further 'cross examinations'. And if you're 'up to speed' you should also start to **experience** a good **understanding** of exactly what Jesus means when he says to **watch** the end coming.

For example, Turkey now has a dam at the headwaters of **the great river Euphrates** that can literally stop the waters of the river should they so desire. And this is information that some **teachers of prophecy** have a lot of misplaced excitement about. I mean we can now tell that this is meaningless information, because we **know** there are two **great earthquakes** that occur before **the great river Euphrates... is dried up**. And these earthquakes should easily break this dam and foil any hope of

rebuilding it. And we **know** that God will open the Earth to catch a **flood** of water to save His fleeing people ([Rev 12:16](#)). So we should also **know** that God won't need man's help to 'dam' or 'dry up' any river He wants. In the next **study**, God willing I get to it, we will even see how God apparently uses the interacting electromagnetic fields of two planets to do such things. But by now we should already **know** that God's ways, like



the way He stops rivers, are incomparably awesome and altogether glorify Him, and man not at all.

By-the-way, there is a new name for part of the [Euphrates](#). The last segment beyond where the [Tigris](#) joins it is now called the [Shatt al Arab](#) (map, [p.360](#)). It's been called this since a while before the Iranian Revolution of 1978-79. The point is that God will surely dry up the Euphrates to let the Chinese through, and will as necessary include the section nearest to its dumping out point into The Persian Gulf, and we don't have to worry that the Tigris might somehow interfere with His plan either.

And in case you didn't notice, the fact that these **three unclean spirits** are seen to be coming **out of the mouth of the dragon, and out of the mouth of the beast, and out of the mouth of the false prophet** may at first seem to support the idea that **the beast** and **the false prophet** are possessed by these **spirits of devils**. Except that one of them comes **out of the mouth of the dragon**, and it's not reasonable to assume that Satan is 'possessed' by one of these **spirits of devils** too. Considering this, it's more likely that these **spirits of devils** are just more of the angelic **powers** at work in the

'hierarchy' of the Unholy Trinity, and that the 'empowered' human spirits of the Antichrist and the False Prophet do most the 'babysitting' of their own bodies, and that what is meant by **out of the mouth** is simply that Satan, the Antichrist, and the False Prophet have the **power** to give the 'recruiting orders' to be carried out by these 'angelic henchmen'.

And this also gives us an important clue. It shows that the False Prophet has not yet completely outlived his usefulness to Satan and the Antichrist even up to this very late point. He is 'empowered' along with the Antichrist after all. And seeing he survives this long, we have more evidence that the **one day** of total, permanent devastation of Vatican City—the **one hour** 'ker-ploosh' when **she shall be utterly burned with fire** [Rev 18:8](#)—must happen during the third **great earthquake** described in The Last Plague Judgment. So in [Revelation 16:19](#) where John gives us a description of this last **plague**, he includes that **great Babylon came in remembrance before God, to give unto her the cup of the wine of the fierceness of his wrath**, and this must directly connect to the description of Vatican City's complete and permanent destruction in Revelation 18.

And this also tells us that the **'house divided'** moment between the Antichrist and the False Prophet must occur earlier. This is when the Antichrist's Ten Kings **burn**— or mostly just **spoil**—the False Prophet's **city** [Rev 17:16](#). And this probably happens during the 'clear skies' of The 6th Plague Judgment—certainly not in the darkness of The 5th Plague Judgment, and not any earlier because then the False Prophet is still needed the most to make sure everyone either gets **a mark** or loses their head. So if you do the math assuming equally-spaced Plague Judgments over the 42 months—except for a short delayed start for slaughtering **saints**, and except for another very short set-ending judgment—I expect the **'house divided'** moment will be at least 7 months before God's final destruction of the **city**. And it could be even earlier if any of the first 5 **plagues** are a little shorter.

And by-the-way, it occurs to me that the 2nd and 3rd Plague Judgments—the **blood** plagues—will overlap. This is because the angel **out of the altar** apparently makes one pronouncement about them both, not to mention that

it seems likely that the same 'dusting' of the Earth that turns the oceans red will shortly thereafter work its way into the ground water. And how long could God 'fry' the Earth in The 4th Plague Judgment, or 'freeze' it in the darkness of The 5th before everyone dies? So I would not be surprised if the 'clear skies' of The 6th Plague Judgment last a year or more.

In Daniel 11, Gabriel apparently describes the perpetrators who **spoil** the Vatican. He shows us a growing group of 'insiders' that cater to the Antichrist and that all along really...

...honour the god of forces... a god whom... [their Catholic] fathers knew not ... a strange god... and he shall [increasingly over time] cause them [these Anti-Catholic 'insiders'] to rule over many, and [they] shall [eventually] divide [even] the [Catholic] land for gain [too] [Dan 11:38-39](#).

And this must not only be because he has by then nothing left to take as a **spoil** for his 'insiders', but also because he needs resources to fight the perceived coming war with China. To see this clearer reread [Daniel 11:36-39](#) with an awareness of how this passage fits in the chapter.

So I see this assault by the Ten Kings on Vatican City to be kind of like what happened to the Knights Templar. They were the defenders of the pope and his Holy Roman Empire who descended from the famed 12th and 13th Century Crusaders. But near the start of the 14th Century they began to be scattered and spoiled by King Philip IV (the 4th) of France because they had grown rich, and because the king was in debt to them over his ongoing war with England, and because he was desperate for more money to continue the war. Pope Clement V (the 5th) was pressed by Phillip to acquiesce to this plan within a few years, but he must have gotten something out of it for his trouble too. And I think this story is something like what will happen in the latter part of The Days of Vengeance. With the help of his Ten Kings the Antichrist will finally subjugate the False Prophet under him, ending all worship involving the God of their **fathers**, including any mention of Jesus or Mary, and in doing so take great **spoil** of Vatican City and Catholic institutional holdings worldwide. I mean I'm expecting that all the features that identify Vatican City and Catholics Churches around the World as 'Christian' will be expunged—mostly a lot of statues and emblems being torn down and burned while a lot of **gold and precious stones and pearls** are looted in the process.

But I've heard other 'reasonable' stories of how this could all go down. Except they all overlook some of the precepts we're using. And any story missing precepts is at least somewhat misleading. And some of you may have gone on one or more of these 'wild goose chases'. So we must all recognize that all stories are necessarily incomplete, missing precepts, because there is really no limit to the number of them that can be added. Again, this is The Natural Progression of The Word of God. And there's nothing wrong with reasonable speculation and the error that often comes with it **if** you're **continuing** to **grow** in the **knowledge** of God. Such 'erroneous detours' help you **grow**, and all become part of the foundation that will help you **build** even **higher** forevermore. And there's no **shame** in this. If you use your speculations to help you find new questions, precepts, and

connections, and if you use your newer speculations—that come from the addition of newfound **precepts**—to practice adjusting your speculations, then you are on the road to **wisdom**. And there's no better or safer place to be but further down this neverending road. But this **revelation** should also be a clue to the **patience** needed to travel it. And you should see that you must always be asking yourself what other 'connections' there are to make, because there will always be more. So really the only question is this: How much will each of your newfound 'connections' correct or improve your present view? Answers vary.

You should also see here the danger of navigating too tightly within a topic. Without many 'connections' across many topics you really have only a 'happy meal' at best. And God doesn't want us to remain restricted to such a diet. Still, it's for your edification that I walk you through examples of erroneous interpretations of end times **prophecy**, and how to build on earlier speculation, etc., so you can **learn** how to avoid the 'pitfalls' involved and **continue to grow**. And I mean that speculation should remain so until you've had plenty of time to test your conclusions in the whole Word of God, until you see that your new 'connections' aren't 'contradictory misfits' and therefore in need of further evaluation. And we're still in the speculation stage with this story because we're only now just ready to consider the 'downfall' of the False Prophet in view of what John says about The 6th and The 7th Plague Judgments, and in light of what Jesus implies about it on the Mount of Olives, and taking into consideration what Gabriel and other angels in Daniel's prophecies say. All of this will provide a good 'beginning picture' anyway.

By-the-way, [Verses 15-16](#) apparently identify two groups that are to be raptured. The first group is the **Blessed** one. And each of its members fit the description of someone who **watcheth, and keepeth his garments**. So the **Blessed** group must be **believers**. And some of them must survive The Great Tribulation, and others of them must die and be raptured and redeemed otherwise. The second group, however, includes those who **walk naked in shame** and are **gathered to Armageddon**. And some of them will die, and others of them will be raptured alive, but all of these 'garmentless' will end up **in hell**. So 'keeping your garments' as opposed to 'walking naked in shame' must be metaphors for keeping **eternal redemption** through faith in Christ as opposed to refusing it for temporary relief but **everlasting destruction**. But the placement of these raptures is not as easily seen, though I think deducible. The clue from the placement of these groups here is that they apparently exit at the end of The 6th Seal Judgment—after the gathering of the 'global contenders' to **Armageddon**. Beyond this we can expect that the 'rapture pattern' will continue. Remember that so far we have deduced that near the close of each of the last two sets of judgments that one or more raptures occur. So we can again assume that somewhere near the end of The Plague Judgments there will be another couple of raptures. But we'll get a closer look after we finish analyzing the downfall of the False Prophet along with the events of The 7th Plague Judgment, and an even closer look after we cover more specifics on the story about what's going on with the Jews in [SECTION 9](#). But we won't see our best view until we get through a focus on **Armageddon** in [SECTION 10](#).

So we're not through proving this case, but we have already established that the **three... spirits of devils** will **gather** 'garmentless' participants **to the battle of that great day of God Almighty**. And in [Verse 16](#), John says that Jesus will also be involved in gathering **them together into a place called in the Hebrew tongue Armageddon**, and that Jesus will come there **as a thief**. And this 'thief's surprise' means to me that they won't have a clue to what is really happening until it's too late. And we'll confirm that only part of the 'garmentless' gathered to **Armageddon**—probably the smallest part—will be the volunteers gathered by Satan's 'angelic henchmen'. And that another probably bigger part will come from **the east** looking for **spoil**. But we will see that still another part of these 'garmentless'—probably the biggest of all—Jesus will **gather** Himself.

And finally in [Verse 17](#) we get to John's account of The 7th Plague Judgment. There he sees that...

...the seventh angel poured out his vial into the air; and there came a great voice out of the temple of heaven, from the throne, saying, It is done.

I'm guessing that this **great voice out of the temple of heaven, from the throne** must be the voice of The Father Himself. And I'm guessing it's Him instead of Jesus because in the 39 references in 31 different verses to a **throne** in Revelation—though a couple of them apparently refer to thrones Jesus sits on both **at the right hand of the throne of God** and eventually on the Earth too ([Heb 12:2](#); [Rev 3:21](#))—the rest seem to refer to The Father on His **throne**. (Go to blbclassic.org [the site address has changed] and type in "throne" in the [Search the Bible](#) box, then click on [Range Options](#) beneath and type in "rev" in the box that appears, then click the search arrow and you'll see all these references). So with the 'connections' we've already made, we can **understand** what is meant by The Father's proclamation, **It is done**. **'It'** must be that abrupt 'outpouring' of cataclysm that includes in the same **one day** and **one hour** the special attention given to render Vatican City 'uninhabitable'. And **'It'** must be when the 42 months **given** to the Antichrist will be finished, because after a judgment like this there will be nothing more he can do. And of course, **'It'** is also the end of the 21 judgments of God from Heaven. And following this 'crescendo of worldwide ruin' we are also expecting 'incapacitating darkness' that lasts until everyone sees Jesus **coming in the clouds of heaven with power and great glory** to **Armageddon**.

Isaiah too must be speaking of this day when He says,

Every valley shall be exalted, and every mountain and hill shall be made low; and the crooked shall be made straight, and the rough places plain [Isaiah 40:4](#).

Isaiah is speaking of 'a day' when everything will be 'shaken flat'. And this is what we should expect the whole Earth will look like following the greatest earthquake of all time. And we would expect that the only thing that could follow such devastation would be the apparently smoky, **darkened** period that Jesus speaks of. And we would expect that this **darkness** must

eventually be 'pierced' by Him at **Armageddon**.

And this seems to imply that this last judgment is about as short as the previous two set-ending judgments, leaving enough time for the average length of the other plagues in this set to be over seven months or over 210 days each, not counting the delayed start at the beginning. But again, I'm guessing that the conditions created by the 2nd through 5th Plagues will require that they be shorter making The 6th Plague Judgment by far the longest. And I mean long enough so that things will have time to return to something like 'normalcy'.

Another way I get this idea is the way Jesus speaks of the period just before His Second Coming. He says,

And as it was in the days of Noe [Noah], so shall it be also in the days of the Son of man. They did eat, they drank, they married wives, they were given in marriage, until the day that Noe entered into the ark, and the flood came, and destroyed them all. Likewise also as it was in the days of Lot; they did eat, they drank, they bought, they sold, they planted, they builded; But the same day that Lot went out of Sodom it rained fire and brimstone from heaven, and destroyed them all. Even thus shall it be in the day when the Son of man is revealed [Luke 17:26-30](#).

Here Jesus offers us comparisons to the suddenness of the destruction. And the implication is that everything is 'normal' for quite a while before this destruction. But things can't be 'normal' during most of the first 5 Plague Judgments—especially during the **darkness** of The 5th Plague Judgment. So there is apparently enough time during The 6th Plague for things to become relatively 'normal' again. In fact, this must be part of the **delusion** God sends. He uses this time to lull the World into a false sense of security. And remember that John tells us that,

...the sixth angel poured out his vial upon the great river Euphrates; and the water thereof was dried up, that the way of the kings of the east might be prepared [Verse12](#).

But I think this implies that the **sixth... vial** is full of God-sent **delusion** so that survivors will somehow think that the worst is over—except for the inevitable final war that each side thinks they can win.

But there's more to consider here. And another way to approach this issue would be to ask when the Antichrist's 42 months are '**done**'. Unfortunately this really confuses the issue, but it does give us some more ideas. What we **know** is that the Antichrist's time ends **a time, times, and an half** after The Abomination of Desolation, and that this is the allotted time for his **indignation against the holy covenant**, and that the conclusion of this time is **the end of these wonders** when **all these things shall be finished** ([Dan 11:30](#), [12:6-7](#)). But you can see God's intended ambiguity here when you try to determine which event actually brings **the end of these** 1290 days of **wonders**. Read Daniel 12 again. I mean the angel repeatedly answers Daniel's question about **How long shall it be to the end of these**

wonders [Verse 8](#), but not his question about **what shall be the end of these things**, and seems to indicate that this information is **closed up and sealed till the time of the end** [Verse 9](#). But though 'unsealing' this information should not be easy, we should at least have **faith** that we can now figure it out.

So is **the end of these** 1290 days of **wonders** when the Antichrist's time to **'tread under foot'** runs out ([Dan 12:7](#); [Rev 11:2](#)), or is it **Armageddon**, or both. Or from another angle, does **the end of these wonders** come with the end of **the tribulation** that Jesus tells us is 'immediately' followed by a **darkened** period, or is this **darkened** period and Jesus' Second Coming included in **these wonders** too? Jesus says,

Immediately after the tribulation of those days [—does he mean after the **wonders** too?] **the sun [shall] be darkened, and the moon shall not give her light, and the stars shall fall from heaven, and the powers of the heavens shall be shaken...** [and] **then shall all the tribes of the earth... see the Son of man coming in the clouds of heaven with power and great glory** [Mat 24:29-30](#).

More simply put, does the **darkened** period take place entirely on the **one day** of the 7th Plague Judgment or does it last for 'days' afterward? I mean now that we expect that the destruction of The 7th Plague Judgment is quick, we now have the uncertainty as to how long this 'darkness' that follows it goes on—whether all the 'shaking' produces days of 'darkness' that ends when Jesus eventually comes or whether the 'shaking and darkness' all occur more or less together with Jesus' coming being more immediate too.

What we can confirm at this point is that at least some of the specifics of the conclusion of **these wonders** must be seen in the description of The 7th Plague Judgment where John tells us of...

...voices, and thunders, and lightnings; and there was a great earthquake, such as was not since men were upon the earth, so mighty an earthquake, and so great [Verse 18](#).

This must be some 'wonder' indeed and, again, would be an appropriate 'finale' to The Great Tribulation. The idea is that this hardly imaginable cataclysm must have a direct 'connection' to Jesus' statement about when **the heavens shall be shaken** and to the special time suggested by Paul and Haggai when **not the earth only, but also heaven** will be **shaken** too ([Heb 12:26](#); [Hag 2,6](#)). And this must mean that what's going on in **heaven** at this time won't just be another 'optical illusion' created by the 'shaking' Earth. This time we should expect that the Sun, Moon, and all the planets in the Solar System will be literally and visibly 'shaking' too, at least until...

Every valley shall be exalted, and every mountain and hill shall be made low: and the crooked shall be made straight, and the rough places plain... [Isa 40:4](#)

And also until...

...the sun be darkened, and the moon shall not give her light, and the stars shall fall from heaven, and the powers of the heavens shall be shaken... [Mat 24:29](#)

How can we get more specific than this? We'll need more input and more questions.

So let's construct yet another question to help more clearly see what we're looking for. Do **these** 1290 days of **wonders** end in **one day** at The 7th Plague Judgment with **the earth** and **the heavens** apparently being **shaken** then **darkened** and with Jesus **coming in the clouds of heaven with power and great glory** at **Armageddon** that same day, or is there a longer period of 'immobilization by darkness' before He comes. You should remember what I think from my scenario last section, but what I presented there was only speculation. We need to **prove** it.

And by-the-way, if you don't fully **understand** all these questions, as I would expect that even some **teachers** of **prophecy** might not, you should be careful of your conclusions on these topics. And I would say I'm sorry for all the questions but remember this **study** is really more about preparing you to ask the right questions than answering them, because this is what God expects of you if you want answers from Him. God wants us to be able to formulate such questions—to **ask, seek** and **knock**—so that we can show Him and ourselves that we are ready for the answers. And He intends that you will get both the right questions and the right answers eventually as you **continue** with **patience**, and especially now at **the time of the end**.

And I would apologize for the repetition too except that those of you who consider this **study** to have too much of it will never be able to discover God's greater **revelations** in His Word ([2 Cor 12:1](#)). No, and not until you **learn to love** it. I'm speaking to those who think we just wasted too much time 'repeating questions'. To these I speak for God when I say you should instead appreciate the kind of **experience** that God might take you through in the 'building' of better questions. It's indeed your ignorant distaste of repetition's value that stunts your growth—at least in this area. Because the 'spiritually mature' **know** that repetition is the way that God intend for us to **find** and **learn** new things while reinforcing and strengthening our faith in what we already **know**. And you should **understand** that Satan knows this too, or does it suit your **flesh** in this case to remain **ignorant of his devices** ([2 Cor 2:11](#))? Yes, you can expect that **work** in The Word of God should sometimes be tedious and painstaking, but that you should come to **experience** it as a **labour of love** [1Thes 1:3](#). And by this I mean that the first **work** of the **saved** should be to **labor in the word**. Paul tells Timothy to make sure all **elders that rule well be counted worthy of double honour**, [but] **especially they who labour in the word and doctrine** [1 Tim 5:17](#). Want **double honor** when you **enter the kingdom of heaven**? Or just to be doing something **especially** more important than anything else? Then **labor in the word**. And **work the works of [God]... while it is day...** [because] **the night cometh, when no man can work** [John 9:4](#). Besides, whether you like it or not, we still need more input and questions before we'll be able to get our answers 'unsealed'.

Some observations about the 'celestial dynamics' of the situation would be

appropriate about here. One telling deduction is that the Earth would probably not be capable of producing **so mighty an earthquake** all by itself. The 'red companion planet' must be 'assisting' in this event. In the description of The Final Great Earthquake John tells us...

...there was a great earthquake, such as was not since men were upon the earth, so mighty an earthquake, and so great. And the great city [Jerusalem] was divided into three parts, and the cities of the nations fell: and great Babylon came in remembrance before God, to give unto her the cup of the wine of the fierceness of his wrath. And every island fled away, and the mountains were not found. And there fell upon men a great hail out of heaven, every stone about the weight of a talent [75-100 pounds]: and men blasphemed God because of the plague of the hail; for the plague thereof was exceeding great
[Verses18-21.](#)

Again, the Vatican's complete and permanent destruction would fit in quite nicely during such a **great earthquake**. And the **darkened** conditions would seem to naturally follow. And I expect such an earthquake will make most 'normal activity' impossible for a while thereafter. This would especially apply to those 'gathered' in The 6th Plague Judgment that are evidently slated to fill lake Armageddon with their **blood**, having evidently arrived just in time for the lights—the Sun, Moon and Stars—to go out. So you have to imagine here an awesomely intense but restrained 'balancing act' by God. He will by this time have been able to sustain an ongoing 'balance' of the Earth with its new 'red companion planet' for an implausibly long period of years. But this 'finale' must be the most awesome of all. Still, it's just a variation on an 'old family recipe' of The Holy Trinity. And this time it should provide all the necessary 'ingredients' for the most spectacular judgment of The Great Tribulation.

So this last evidently 'companion-planet-assisted' **great earthquake** which results in **great hail out of heaven** must be like all the previous **earthquakes** of The Great Tribulation. And as usual, God's clearest focus is on the effects in the heart of The God Zone outward. So I imagine that the 'companion planet' reaches a position directly over Jerusalem. And this could surely 'split things wide open' as the forces involved impose a subtle 'egg-shaped elongation' of each planet, each 'stretching' along an axis through their closest points during this final **mighty** and **great earthquake**, and much like I imagine they do in the previous two **great** earthquakes, and as in the previous 'close planetary encounters' of history, except that this last time the two planets must get a little closer and a little more 'elongated' than ever before. And the expected effect would be that Jerusalem would 'split open' as if the Earth was being 'squeezed' from the sides. Such a 'squeeze' put on the Earth by God by the various effects of gravity, magnetism, and momentum would indeed be a **wonder** to behold. But surely God can do this, or something like it, as He has before. But there is no doubt that it will be just as John saw it. At a time when Jerusalem is the **seat of the beast**, that **great city** Jerusalem will 'split open' and be **divided into three parts**.

Next, understandably enough, we **learn** that all **the cities of the**

nations fell—not that I expect that there will be any 'skyscrapers' left for God to knock down. And next...

...great Babylon came in remembrance before God, to give unto her the cup of the wine of the fierceness of his wrath.

So again, as **Babylon** seems to go 'ker-ploosh' in **one hour** on **one day**, it would be no 'stretch' to suppose that this same **one day** is when the third and final **great earthquake** happens too. I mean surely Vatican City is one of **the cities of the nations** that fall in this **great earthquake** because all cities 'fall' on this day. The only difference with Vatican City will be that it gets 'special targeting' by God so that it will be permanently ruined so as not to support future repopulation. It should be an 'eyesore' and a 'stench' throughout The Millennium anyway.

This brings us to a few more opportunities to practice one of this **study's** most important lessons. This is that you not only have to keep adding **precepts** that properly 'connect', you also have to make sure you don't leave any behind. And this gets to be quite a chore, but it's especially beneficial in helping you **grow** in **humility**. Yes, this has been another version of a 'wild goose chase'—actually a 'barrage' of 'wild goose chases' — and this time there will be no one to blame but yourself, because I have stated the information openly, repeatedly, and most of it even recently that reveals 'connections' that should already be obvious. And again, the problem is compartmentalization. But just as the 'mature' **love to labour in the word**, so they also **know** that it's unavoidable that we carry around with us many erroneous, popularly-taught, preconceived ideas from a variety of sources. And they **know** that we automatically attach them where they don't belong when trying to expand our **knowledge** of God in order to try to make sense of it. And they **know** that **precepts** that don't seem to fit our present mindset we naturally forget precisely when we need them most. But most importantly, 'mature Bible studiers' **know** that in time with repetitious **exercise** that these false conceptions are exposed and 'swept away'. And that no one can avoid this 'road' and really **grow in grace and the knowledge of the Lord Jesus Christ**.

One way to identify compartmentalized errors is to recognize contradictions in the **precepts**—and not ignore them but pursue them. You must accept that you're missing something, and that you need an answer from God. And this is when you **ask**. Again, **exercise** in the **precepts** with questions in mind—often in the back of your mind— and **exercise** with **patience** while you look for new **precepts**, and you will expose compartmentalizations and get the answers you want. But you must **ask** the **right** questions if you expect to eventually **receive** the **right** answers.

And you should expect this can be a long, drawn-out process not just because humans are fallible, but also because in order to extract the 'meatier portions' of God's **truth** we have to look at God's Word as one big extremely complicated 'puzzle' that you can spend a lifetime 'solving'. Still, we **know** that those who take up such a **work** are **worthy of double honour**. And you should now **know** that redeemed Christians who have the chance but resist this **work** will eventually have to do it anyway, except this will be a **shame**—or call it a lack of **honour** if you will—though there are many other

works worthy of **reward** that you can look forward to if you **do** them ([Mat 16:27](#)). But surely you are not 'growing' in The Word like you should if you're not **doing** it His way. A good **exercise** along these lines would be to find the context of what Jesus means when He says, **Blessed is that servant, whom his lord when he cometh shall find so doing** [Mat 24:46](#); [Luke 12:43](#). Nevertheless and 'Arminianistically' speaking, **labour in the word** shouldn't bring a special **honour** because it's available to even the **simple**—anyone with the opportunity can **choose** to do it! But evidently so few will **choose** to do so on a truly 'meaty level' that it will be an **honour** to those who faithfully **do** it.

But **labour in the word** is full of many tests. Passing them requires you to eventually recognize misunderstandings of perspective as diversions for those who aren't really interested in **the truth**, or very much of it. Again, the fact is that God has designed His Word so that the inexperienced and/or careless are led to view it from an incomplete or completely wrong perspective. And I've been setting you up in this section to show you a few examples of some of the less harmful of these kinds of compartmentalizations— I mean less harmful to believers. Such compartmentalizations are only especially shameful when you're especially 'dogmatic' about them because they won't really directly affect Christians who depart in The Rapture. But I've also set you up for some more dangerous compartmentalized error—more dangerous because of the potential to 'shake' the faith of some before we all—along with The Spirit—are **taken out of the way**.

One 'less harmful' compartmentalization you may keep falling for is seen when you remember that you **know** that 42 months can be as little as 1240 days while you also **know** that there are 1290 days—not to mention the 1335—to consider in the 'wrapping up' of **these wonders... when... all these things shall be finished**. The compartmentalization here is that we tend to revert in our thinking to an oversimplified scenario of **a time, times and half a time** when we think of The Beginning of Sorrows or The Days of Vengeance—even though I have already shown you how there are a lot of variables in these timeframes. What we can see by adding this left-behind information is that the Antichrist's time must end around 50 days before **the end of these wonders**. This is because his 42 months start at The Abomination of Desolation and can run no more than about 1240 days, even if one of these months is a leap month, and **these wonders** also start at The Abomination of Desolation but don't end for 1290 days. And since we naturally place **Armageddon** as the culminating event of **these 1290 days of wonders**, we come to an apparent contradiction or at least an appropriate question, which is, how can the Antichrist's 42 months end around 50 days before **the end of these wonders**?

Well, we should first **understand** that this problem is not easily noticed by God's design. We do not notice this small gap of time in Daniel 12 because we are led to think that **'the end'** of the Antichrist's time—**when he shall have accomplished to scatter the power of the holy people**—is at the same time as **'the end'** of these 1290 days. But again, by deduction there must really be about 50 days between when the Antichrist will finish his 42 months of **power** and when God will finish all **these wonders** at **Armageddon**. And again, we don't even need a leap month during The Days

of Vengeance because this evidently **darkened** 50 days are distinctly, **Immediately after the tribulation of those days**. So we could reach the end of 42 months, and finish a **times, time, and an half**, and also reach the end of **the tribulation of those days** 50 days before **the end of these wonders**.

Or, maybe the fact that the 1290 days is closer to 44 Jewish calendar months means that there will be two leap months during The Days of Vengeance. I mean just how will another planet in close proximity to Earth, and 16 hour days, affect the barley harvest anyway? And remember that the 1290 days plainly begins at The Abomination of Desolation but that the Antichrist's 42 month's may actually start about a week earlier, when he is 'resurrected and empowered'. These factors may work together to make the gap possibly a little greater than 50 days. And this consideration also implies that The Transition from The Beginning of Sorrows to The Days of Vengeance could not be more than two weeks or those 'lowlifes' supposedly trapped at Armageddon wouldn't survive until Jesus got there. But all this at least means that no one should be sure of any of this at this point, especially if some of these considerations are new to you.

Read Daniel 12 as many times as necessary to recognize the disguised 'staggered' conclusion to The Great Tribulation given the constraints on the Antichrist's time of **power** from Revelation 13. It implies that there are two 'finishes'—one when the Antichrist's time of **power** is up and another when the Antichrist's life at **Armageddon** is up—these 'finishes' probably separated by up to two months. And all this would be typical of God's usual disguising of the finer details of His plans. In this case, the main purpose seems to be in order to catch most of the World **as a thief in the night** ([1 Thes 5:2](#); [2 Pet 3:10](#); [Rev 3:3](#); [16:15](#)). And all this certainly brings new emphasis to Jesus' promise that...

...of that day and hour knoweth no man, no, not the angels of heaven, but my Father only. Take ye heed, watch and pray: for ye know not when the time is ([Mat 24:36](#); [Mark 13:32](#)).

But God shouldn't need to keep Satan completely 'in the dark' about this transition because by then Satan should be more than willing to cooperate with the plan.

And we've already guessed the purpose of these 50 or so days last section. And they should 'immediately' follow the 'earthshaking' 7th Plague Judgment, just after God will have gathered the World's most arrogant, obnoxious, and hardy survivors of The Great Tribulation in The 6th Plague Judgment, all to pin them down for a while at **Armageddon**. And I don't think God will 'target' these particularly **haughty people** with that **great hail out of heaven** in the last judgment. No, I instead expect He will have a more humiliating way to **lay** them **low**. I mean I'm guessing He **will cause the arrogance of the proud to cease, and will lay low the haughtiness of the terrible** ([Isa 13:11](#); [24:4](#)) by nearly starving them to death at Armageddon before Jesus finally comes to destroy them altogether.

And whether these are newly-learned or long-known details to you, if you did compartmentalize any of them, you should now expect that this should be a common **experience** in 'handing' The Word of God. But God willing it will

also become a common way that you come to new **revelations**. I mean that many **revelations** should come by identifying compartmentalizations, and these by recognizing 'apparent contradictions'. But no matter how amazing the **revelation**, you are likely to later find yourself having to correct yourself on the matter time and again, especially if the previous erroneous ideas were too well programmed into your thinking. All 'mature Bible studiers' already **know** this. And this is another reason why we need to **continue**. It has been my **experience** that I really have **learned** nothing until I have **learned** it many times over.

Other 'less-harmful', but common compartmentalizations on this subject are the ones that lead to misconceptions about the 'levels' and 'uniformity' of the devastation. When it comes to The Great Tribulation we tend to think globally and uniformly while it's more likely that God 'targets' people and places differently and in varying degrees. And this leads to apparent contradictions. For example, one glaring 'apparent contradiction' is seen when we remember that The 7th Plague Judgment—including the global Final Great Earthquake and the absolute destruction of Vatican City—is followed by a period when **the sun shall be darkened** where we understandably assume that **'the whole world'** falls 'dark'. What we have left behind this time is that this 'darkness' is apparently accompanied by 'worldwide mourning' as those, **...Standing afar off, watch Vatican City burn.**

So you may have overlooked that you thought it was possible that all human activity and atmospheric visibility become uniformly and severely limited while at the same time the whole World 'watches' in hopelessness as the Vatican 'burns'. This doesn't seem possible, does it? To accommodate these conditions the scenario must really be some-what sequential and the consequences to some extent 'irregular' and 'targeted'. Again, the problem is that with no 'visibility' immediately after this 'earthshaking' event, there could be no one to 'see' **the smoke of her burning** and **mourn** the destruction of Vatican City. So the question becomes, how will they be able to **mourn** this complete and final destruction of **that great city Babylon Rev 18** following **so mighty an earthquake, and so great Rev 16:17-21**, that is evidently also 'immediately' followed by a period when **the sun shall be darkened, and the moon shall not give her light, And the stars of heaven shall fall, and the powers that are in heaven shall be shaken (Mat 24:29; Mark 13:25-26)?**

You should **know** by now that God's way for us to get the answer will involve using the 'connections' that helped us form our question to direct us elsewhere to more 'connections' that have the answer, such as in [Isaiah 13](#) and [24](#), [Joel 2-3](#), and [Haggai 2](#). More detail and perspective are available in these passages, and we'll get to them. But this is where I should confess that some of the confusion about this is partly my fault. I diverted you earlier by suggesting that the people of the World would likely be too busy mourning their own problems, not the Vatican's—a reasonable idea if it remains compartmentalized by itself. And we'll sort out this confusion before we're done too. But a 'well-connected' question alone can help us 'decompartmentalize' somewhat, especially here where I've already given you enough of the 'connections' elsewhere to figure it out. So again, how can all **the cities of the nations** fall in the greatest earthquake ever, and then fall into 'darkness', but all the **kings** and **merchants** still see **Babylon** '

burning' and **mourn** it? Can we assume that the whole World becomes 'dark'? Or what other fitting scenario could resolve these 'apparent contradictions'?

But we're really not through with the question itself. There is still another quite 'overcrowded compartmentalization' in it that we should resolve first. I mean just when you thought that we had resolved when **Babylon** falls, it's time to think again, because there's more to **MYSTERY, BABYLON THE GREAT** than meets the eye, because it's a **mystery** that is solved by a riddle. And this riddle is repeated in **scripture**. It reads,

Babylon is fallen, is fallen ([Isa 21:9](#); [Rev 14:8](#); [18:2](#)).

And the solution to this short riddle is as simple as answering the question, when? And with your continued **patience** I'll explain what I mean. And I mean that for the benefit of beginners it will include some **exercise**—often otherwise confused as repetition.

We have seen in Revelation 18 John's record of the total destruction of Vatican City directly by God's hand in just **one day** and **hour**. And in Chapter 17 we have seen the 'spoiling' of Vatican City but not as directly by God's hand as by...

...the ten horns which thou sawest upon the beast, these shall hate the whore, and shall make her desolate and naked, and shall eat her flesh, and burn her with fire. For God hath put in their hearts to fulfil his will, and to agree, and give their kingdom unto the beast, until the words of God shall be fulfilled [Rev 17:16-17](#).

And these 'actions' of the Ten Kings cannot occur at the same time as The 7th Plague Judgment, but must happen before it, or there would be nothing left of **that great city** of the False Prophet for them to attack. But we can also confirm this sequence because there is still one detail we passed by that clearly distinguishes these events as two different 'stages' of the downfall of Vatican City. This detail is a very clear transitional phrase separating these stages. After the description of the attack of the 10 kings in Chapter 17, John says,

And after these things... [Rev 18:1](#)

And what he describes next is God's attack on Vatican City in Chapter 18. This reinforces the idea that the False Prophet must give up his authority over **Babylon** to the Antichrist sometime during The Days of Vengeance but remain a participant in the Antichrist Empire under the Antichrist until the end. And I expect that the False Prophet will 'bow down' and worship the **God of forces** and even the Antichrist too. So I expect that this first downfall of Vatican City is more ideological—it's the end of the misdirected worship of Mary and Jesus and the beginning of the worship of **a god whom** the Antichrist's Catholic **fathers knew not** [Dan 11:38](#). This would be Satan himself.

And this first 'ideological downfall' is metaphorically described in [Rev 17:16](#). It's when the Ten Kings...

...shall make her [this great city and its 'religion'] desolate and naked, and shall eat her flesh, and burn her with fire [or divide the land for gain and 'spoil' her Dan 11:39, but not yet utterly burn her Rev 18:8].

And if you read again from [Daniel 11:36](#) to the end of the chapter, maybe you can now see that the Antichrist starts his 'usurping church' even before the midpoint—even before The Third Egyptian War and before he enters Israel ([Dan 11:40-43](#)). In fact I expect its membership is growing even now. But I also expect that until late in The Great Tribulation that Anti-Catholics will practice behind the scenes—as Satan worshippers do today. Beyond this, Gabriel seems to be describing a slow **increase** where more and more powerful people from the top down join the Antichrist's 'church' in order to get all the 'goodies'. I mean it must be his 'insider underground worshippers'...

...whom he shall acknowledge and increase with glory: and he shall [increasingly] cause them to rule over many, and shall [increasingly] divide the land for gain [among them] [Dan 11:39 b](#).

But originally this worship can't happen among 'rank and file' Catholics. It will take time to turn their full loyalty to the Antichrist as he must originally rely on their loyalty to the Pope and the Catholic Church. And remember I think it's likely the Antichrist will be a bishop among Catholics—The Patriarch of Babylon. But from the start, the Antichrist and his elite will worship **a strange god** which will start a 'trickle-down effect'. And I expect it will grow from **the fattest places** of power in the Antichrist Kingdom ([Dan 11:24](#)), and surely with all the Ten Kings. About this 'top-down' scheme Gabriel says,

Thus shall he [at first secretly] do [with his 'insiders'] in the most [or "greatest"] strong holds with a strange god... [Dan 11:39a](#).

And 'thus shall he increasingly do' until the Ten Kings completely subjugate the Pope and Vatican City to the Antichrist. Then he can finally openly impose the undisguised worship of this **strange god**, Satan, upon his entire World kingdom. Watch out for the modern translations in this verse though.

And surely even today there are those that participate in this 'underground' brand of satanic worship that are deceived by the same kind of false hope of ever-increasing power. The difference in The Great Tribulation will be that Satan, through the Antichrist, will finally gain enough control to completely take over the Catholic Church. And I expect that after his 'resurrection' the Antichrist will never 'bow down' to the Pope again—and maybe never will at all—because Gabriel says,

Neither shall he regard the God of his fathers, nor the desire of women, nor regard any god: for he shall magnify himself above all [Dan 11:37](#).

So some time before the 7th Plague Judgment the Antichrist must gain control over **this great city** and thereby the entire institution and abolish Catholicism—but especially the parts about 'Jesus'. And He will **divide it for gain** for his 'insiders', and likely in preparation for their defense against **the kings of the east**. But this must happen early enough so that the Antichrist can see his new **god of forces** Church **prosper**—again, probably during the clear skies of The 6th Plague Judgment. And this—along with all the 'eating and drinking', 'marrying and giving in marriage', 'buying and selling', and 'building and planting' that also must be going on ([Mat 24:37-38](#); [Luke 17:26-30](#))—make it even more likely that the **strong delusion**-filled 6th Plague Judgment will be the longest of all.

And during this time of relative peace after the False Prophet and his **city** are stripped **naked** of their former 'religion' and authority, this new **god of forces**, Anti-Catholic 'church' will evidently carry on 'business as usual', because **the kings of the earth** and **the merchants of the earth** will not bewail, lament, and weep and mourn over her until sometime **after these things**, when God later destroys Vatican City completely. This occurs on that final **one day** when the **city** is rendered 'uninhabitable' by God in The 7th Plague Judgment. This is when the World will **mourn**, and when all **the cities of the nations** will fall. And this must be when **Babylon is fallen, is fallen**, and **the smoke of her burning** will be seen **afar off**, evidently after which the Sun, Moon, and Stars will all go 'dark'.

What's next? This is a lot to **understand**, so let's recap one more time. First the forces of the **ten kings**, being loyal to the Antichrist, **spoil** the Vatican putting the False Prophet in a subservient position to the Antichrist, and the Antichrist in control to finally institute his own form of Satanic worship that will evidently have been a long time coming. But the economic operations of the **city** should more or less remain in tact. And from then on, it will be **the beast** who is 'riding' **the woman**, or the Antichrist who is controlling the Vatican and the new World 'religion', instead of the False Prophet. And Vatican City will probably get a new name, or maybe an old one, but surely this new 'religion' will be devoid of the mention of Jesus. And since the Antichrist will still need the regular operations of the Catholic Church sometime into The Days of Vengeance, the only time I see that he and the Ten Kings will be ready and unencumbered by God to pull off this 'switcheroo' will be during the relative calm of The 6th Plague Judgment. And when the vast, non-technological, community-driven, and extremely efficient infrastructure of the Catholic Church is usurped for use as the new **god of forces** Church of Satan and the Antichrist, they will use the resources of **that great city**—that is still evidently **clothed in fine linen, and purple, and scarlet, and decked with gold, and precious stones, and pearls**, etc.—to gather the Antichrist forces to **Armageddon** to defend his empire and new 'church' against China and company. And this should be a world-economy-sustaining level of 'business as usual' until God finally brings it all to an end in The 7th Plague Judgment. And all this must somehow maintain the operations of the Unholy Trinity until the end too. I mean the 'empowered' Pope will probably become the new high priest of the Antichrist's **God of forces** 'church'. Though all this really shows is that they don't really have their act together—no grammatical errors required.

And for all this to work I see two downfalls of Babylon in the later part of

The Days of Vengeance. The first probably happens early in The 6th Plague Judgment when the 10 kings 'sack' the Vatican for authority and for **spoil** to fund the coming war. The second is possibly a year later in The 7th Plague Judgment when the city is finally absolutely destroyed and **utterly burned with fire: for strong is the Lord God who judgeth her**. And this is when the **kings** and **merchants** of the World will naturally **mourn** the city's destruction, and when the Sun, Moon and Stars 'fade to black'.

But if you think this solves the '**Babylon is fallen, is fallen**' riddle, you're only part right at best. Because I really think that these two downfalls of **Babylon** in Revelation 17-18 serve better as a diversion than a solution to this 'riddle', which brings us back to the 'overcrowding of compartmentalization' I was talking about. I mean we shouldn't overlook counting Nimrod and Nebuchadnezzar's **Babylon**. Considering these 'downfalls' we have three differently situated cities to account for, and arguably four different 'downfalls' of these different cities to keep track of too. And certainly no one is getting it all right who sees just one city and one 'downfall' of **Babylon**, because what we have left behind is that God often presents His whole plan from His perspective. And in doing so He often describes thousands of years as just days. And I mean He repeatedly describes all the exploits of this **great whore** altogether as one great big satanic conspiracy. This is what Isaiah, Jeremiah, and John together **reveal** about the different occasions when **Babylon is fallen, is fallen** ([Isa 21](#); [Jer 51](#); [Rev 14:8](#); [18:2](#)). Jeremiah, by-the-way, doesn't actually use this short 'riddle' about **Babylon**, but tells quite a 'connectable story'. And Isaiah, Joel, and Jesus (in Matthew's record) give a 'connectable picture' related to this **great whore** by speaking about the accompanying effects, each saying something to the effect that,

...the sun and the moon shall be darkened, and the stars shall withdraw their shining ([Isa 13](#); [24](#); [Joel 2-3](#); [Mat 24:29](#)).

I mean we now **know** that this 'darkness' is a marker of The 7th Plague Judgment and of the final destruction of **Babylon**.

So the repetition of **is fallen** by Isaiah and an angel or two in Revelation is not redundant but a clue. And apparently not just that it falls just twice, but again and again and again. I see God describing these different 'downfalls', some of which are thousands of years apart to us, as only days apart for Him. I mean He describes them as if they're taking place all in the same 'week'. And you will certainly need to begin to recognize how and where this perspective fits in **scripture** in order to **understand** this last 'downfall' of **Babylon**, and not confuse it with previous 'downfalls', and even see where descriptions apply to all the 'downfalls'. Your assignment is to read these chapters referenced in the last paragraph about Babylon's 'demise, demise'—again no redundancy—and about the initiation of this **darkened** period, and begin to try to distinguish our 'point in time' perspectives from God's transcendent ones. This **exercise** should leave you with more questions than answers. But this **exercise** is also meant to bring you to a deeper **understanding** of **Jesus Christ the same yesterday, and to day, and for ever**, and even more so as you repeat it.

But to help you get started you can see that Jeremiah specifically

mentions **Nebuchadrezzar the king of Babylon** [Jer 51:34](#). And those who tend to stay in the human perspective must assume that the whole **prophecy** is only about just ancient Babylon. Indeed there is much evidence that God is at least partially referring specifically to Nebuchadnezzar's kingdom. But there are too many 'similarities' in Jeremiah's prophecy with the obviously future 'downfall and destruction' of **Babylon** that is described in Revelation 18 too, like how it is **suddenly fallen and destroyed** [Jer 51:8](#), and is completely **burnt** [Verse 25](#). And the point is that suchlike 'destruction' does not really happen to either Nimrod or Nebuchadnezzar's **Babylon**. Jeremiah also prophesies of **Babylon's** 'permanent desolation' and 'uninhabitability' except by 'wildlife' ([Verses 26](#) and [37](#)), and of its 'ker-ploosh-like' end ([Verses 63-64](#)), and how people will **howl for her** [Verse 8](#). And all this ties in with Isaiah, Joel, and Jesus' description about when the **sun and the moon shall be darkened, and the stars shall withdraw their shining**, etc. And again, none of this happens with Nimrod and Nebuchadnezzar's **Babylon**. So we need to try to see it God's way. When speaking of the characteristics and 'downfalls' of **Babylon**, you should notice that some of the details focus on **her** at a point in time, but that others show her transcending time. This is God's transcendent perspective. And this brings us to a dangerous popular compartmentalization.

I gave you a flimsy argument earlier that may have led you to believe that one of the reasons that **Babylon** could not be rebuilt in present Iraq is because it was decreed by God that no one could ever live there again—that it could never be inhabited again except by 'wild animals'. Maybe now you can see why I don't really believe this applies to Nebuchadnezzar's Babylon. And a glaring problem we have with this theory is that Saddam Hussein



started 'rebuilding it'. And yes, I've heard that the bricks are already cracking in this 600 room palace which is a reconstruction of and adjacent to the site of the [Palace of King Nebuchadnezzar II](#) (photo, [p.375](#)), and that this incredibly elaborate ziggurat style (stepped pyramid) palace was never really occupied except by American troops, and that it is presently in complete disrepair. But I hear they had to displace about 1,000 Iraqi to build it. And this means that this particular former **golden city** was

not the one that God meant was to remain forever 'uninhabited'—because it now is. And **if** this former location of King Nebuchadnezzar's Babylon should begin to flourish again in the future it will prove nothing except that when God refers to a period when **Babylon** will become 'permanently uninhabited', when it can only be occupied by 'wild animals', He must only be referring to the future condition of the last **Babylon** and the location of Vatican City. After all, the Vatican is the 'fountainhead' from which most of **the blood of saints** 'flows'.

So you should now see that a too-limited perspective of this **prophecy** has led to an incorrect **interpretation**. And that this popular misinterpretation will probably be responsible for 'shaking' the faith of some should this area 55 miles south of Baghdad experience any further resurgence of any kind.

But lately, because of the rise of violent 'Muslim extremism', too many **teachers of prophecy**—with an even more limited perspective of **prophecy**

—are expecting a resurgence of **Babylon** in the Middle East, and that the Antichrist will first establish his kingdom there. And this confusion works to the Antichrist's advantage too. Remember we already talked about how we should expect Satan to invent 'decoys' of his kingdom to divert attention from the real one. But they can only really be 'decoys' for those with 'shamefully limited' or 'immature perspectives'.

And we now **know** that from God's perspective all three **Babylon's** are the same **great whore**, with His plans for **her** carried out from three locations over several thousand years which Peter assures us is like only a few days to Him. And such **revelations** are worthy of a **study** of their own, because now I'm only expecting you to begin to awaken to a 'bigger picture' of God's unchanging transcendency—that what God has done before He will do again and again, but also that He is still in the process of doing it. This is part of what He means when He says,

For I am the LORD, I change not... [Mal 3:6](#)

After all, it's not like He messed things up the first time through, or that He would need to improve on His methods of justice, or defense, or supply. And He naturally speaks across time to **reveal** Himself as 'unchanging'—His 'diversity' notwithstanding. And He is obviously not yet done revealing Himself fully as **prophesied**, or really ever will be. Such an **understanding** from our perspective inevitably goes beyond 'tingles' to what I call 'short circuits'. It's like when David tries but evidently falls short of describing how great God really is and finally exclaims,

O LORD our Lord, how excellent is thy name in all the earth!
[Psalms 8](#)

And I **know** that God's **thoughts** and **ways** are forever 'unreachable', but in the same passage of **scripture** that He tells us this, He also practically begs us to **come** and **learn** as much as we can about Him ([Isaiah 55](#)). So when God declares that He is 'unreachable' He cannot mean that you shouldn't bother trying to **understand** Him more. He instead means to encourage us that there will be no limits forever to what you will be able to **understand** if you **continue** to **ask** Him, **seek** Him, and **knock** at His **door**.

But after all this I expect that at least some of you are still compartmentalizing on how God can wipe out **the cities of the nations**, absolutely finally destroy **Babylon**, and bring on the 'darkness', while at the same time allow the World to watch Vatican City **burn** and **mourn** it. What you may still not be properly integrating into the picture—though I just recently told you again—is how God focuses on Israel and His people. And you should **know** that He has all the **power** and 'finesse' He needs to distribute His justice or mercy down to the very last person still alive on the planet. And Velikovsky has provided plenty of conclusive practical evidence of this. This evidence along with **scripture** helps us recognize and sort out some 'big pictures' and begin to **understand** God's 'unchanging' and 'awe-inspiring' methods of judgment, emancipation, and provision. And if I'm not catching you off balance this time, it's a matter of time before God Himself

does on even 'bigger pictures' as you **continue** this way. But you can expect that during the course of such **labour in the word** that you will find your 'tingles', then 'short circuits'. And in repeated trips through you will get the opportunity to review 'bigger and bigger pictures' before you reach the 'short circuits'. And it's in **exercise** like this that you can really **let your soul delight itself in fatness** [Isa 55:2](#).

And yes, the same God-driven process that causes The Final Great Earthquake and destroys Vatican City must also cause the resulting 'darkness'. But you **know** that in The Final Great Earthquake everyone cannot be totally 'blinded by darkness' nor completely 'incapacitated' because of their response to this cataclysm. John records that **men blasphemed God because of the plague of the hail** that accompanies this **great earthquake** [Rev 16:21](#). And this is evidently not their only response. Their other one is to **mourn** the destruction of Vatican City from **afar off** [Rev 18:9-10](#). So **knowing** God's focus and 'finesse', we should expect that just like **the hail** and the destruction of Vatican City, even the 'darkness' is 'targeted' by God.

This is where you should remember that God will most likely only place **'thick darkness'** strategically when and where He wants it to be—like He will in The 5th Plague Judgment and like he did in ancient Egypt. Velikovsky discovered that when ancient Egypt was experiencing her 'three-day plague' of **thick darkness** [Ex 10:22](#), the ancient Chinese recorded that fires were ignited everywhere because of the prolonged day. This leads us to imagine that God, using a 'companion planet', will again manipulate the Earth into such a motion so that the same side of the Earth will remain toward the Sun for a prolonged period, creating a prolonged period of **'thick darkness'** centered over Israel. This must also create a prolonged, life-sustaining 'ring of dusk' around the center—especially considering that a little 'wobble' ([Isa 24:19-20](#)) could give a dramatic expansion of this 'dusk zone'.

So my guess is that the sun-deprived, smoky **thick darkness** centered over **Armageddon** can begin rather **'immediately after'** The Final Great Earthquake of The 7th Plague Judgment, because this is what Jesus indicates should be seen from an Israelite's perspective—that things will 'go dark' there rather **'immediately after'** the city of Jerusalem is 'shaken in three'—all presumably the consequence of the 'planet-assisted' earthquake that will have just occurred. But Jesus also seems to indicate in Revelation 18 that much of the rest of the World will instead be given quite a 'firestorm' to watch over Southern Europe.

Now there would need to be quite a 'pillar of smoke' rising above Italy for it to be seen from the Americas. But since the Moon can be seen from both America and Italy at the same time, I expect the rising smoke from the destruction of Vatican City will be too. I mean during the **one hour** in The 7th Plague Judgment when Vatican City is destroyed, the rising smoke should be visible from nearly half way around the planet. And we should anticipate that during this 'sunset' on the Antichrist Kingdom that most everyone in 'daylight' and even some who are not should be able to see the outer atmospheric effects of the destruction of Vatican City as widely as the Moon. And for many the spectacle of the destruction of Vatican City should accompany the beginning of prolonged daylight instead of prolonged darkness. And I have imagined various ways God could 'pull all this off'. You should try too, though

you should still expect to be at least somewhat surprised, let alone amazed, by what really happens. Except that being shown such **things to come** by **the Spirit of truth** means that you can never be completely surprised anymore. And if you don't like surprises, my next **study** should be of even more help 'along these lines'.

So most of the God-cursing, Vatican-City-mourning population who are still 'standing' **afar off** will be able to see the destruction of Vatican City as the 50 days of prolonged '**thick darkness**' begin to 'settle' over The God Zone. And the opposite hemisphere should therefore settle into what I'm guessing will be about the same 50 days of sunlight, likely centered over the Pacific Ocean. And this is when we should remember that because of the 2nd and 7th Plague Judgments that this is not so much a problem because by this time there can't be any islands or any sea life left in it to speak of. I mean the Pacific Ocean should be a 'dead zone', and likely considerably bigger than it is now. It should expand when the Earth is **scorched** and presumably at least some of the polar icecaps melt in The 4th Plague Judgment, and it should expand further when The Final Great Earthquake 'shakes' even more coastline underwater.

But we can't ignore that prolonged daylight should soon fry anyone on that half of the planet while those in the prolonged darkness would soon freeze to death. But Velikovsky also found reports that a haze existed planetwide for decades following the Exodus. So I expect again that a planetwide 'haze of smoke' will form soon enough to prevent the planet from reaching lethal temperatures. And I know that Russian probes have successfully landed on Venus and have measured that its thick atmosphere has little range of temperature on the surface despite its relatively slow rotation. So God's perfectly measured 'thickness' of light and dark atmosphere must again in time make Earth a relatively 'evenly temperature-controlled environment'. This and everything else He does will undoubtedly again accomplish His purposes both to **nourish** and **protect** His own people and to **destroy the sinner** at the same time. And we will talk some more about all this in the next couple of sections.

Finally there's still the seemingly 'reasonable contradiction' I brought up earlier to divert your attention that I haven't yet resolved. Why would the World **mourn** Vatican City when their own cities are in ruins? You must remember that this is the third time the World has been 'shaken to pieces'. And sure **the cities of the nations** will be in ruins. But this time there cannot be as many especially 'heavy and lethal' buildings left to fall on people, and we can no longer be talking about the wipeout of 'heavy infrastructures' either. It will only have been 3½ years since most everything had to be 'rebuilt', and also only a couple of years before that too. So just before The Final Great Earthquake, the market must be running largely on the 'twice-salvaged wreckage' of the first two **great** earthquakes. And this economy will likely be powered by horses and oxen because they run on grass. So it must be a relatively 'light infrastructure'—a sort that can be very quickly put back in operation with mostly man and animal power using only what we would now consider 'primitive devices and tools'. So they shouldn't have as much to **mourn** of their own losses as you might first think. And they evidently didn't seriously **mourn** after the first two **great** earthquakes either because in both cases the Vatican will evidently be spared which

leaves something to rebuild for and the financing to do it. But with Vatican City finally gone there is now no more hope in rebuilding because there will evidently really be no one left to buy the World's goods. And this will be utter hopelessness to those who put their faith in the World.

And you shouldn't be surprised either that we're not done 'painting this picture'. Some of the most awesome details still remain to be integrated. In the next section we'll broaden our view of the 'spiritual places' involved. In fact we are going to look inside spiritual Earth. And we will be 'digging really deep', boldly going as deep as any soul has ever gone before, and looking at views throughout the ages of the 'changing occupants' inside **her** (e.g., [Gen 4:11](#)). In the process we will 'unearth' The Rapture of the Dead Jews. But we'll finish up back on the surface and **continue** to expand our appreciation for the transcendent, unchanging, God-Zone focused, and awe-inspiring methods of God's judgments upon the Earth—specifically with His judgment of the 'wild ride' of the **red** horse in the first half of The Beginning of Sorrows. By this we'll be able to better imagine God's 'husbandry' of Israel and the consequences to the rest of the World in the rest of The Great Tribulation.

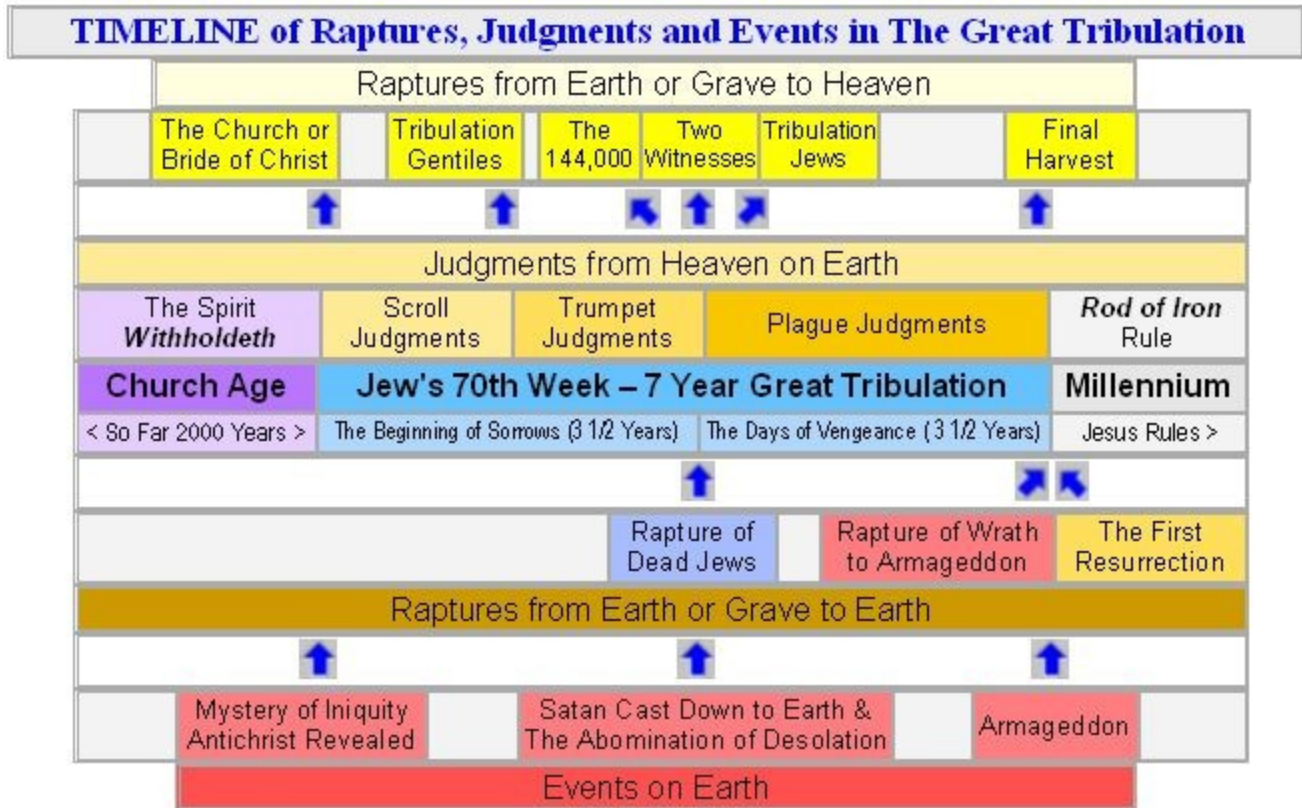
And sorry if I made all this too confusing for you your first time through. But again, if you're like me, it should take you a few times through before you can anywhere near fully **understand** all of this, because this is The Natural Progression of The Word of God. He has designed His Word to require some time and some repetition to **understand** it. But each time through leads to a better **understanding** because you see things you missed or misidentified the last time. And you'll need practice carrying with you all the precepts you gather along the way. It's not easy keeping track of them all when you're adding new ones all the time. And you've got to expect that you're going to make **errors** of all kinds that are only corrected **if ye continue**. And I guess I'm not really that sorry because God never intended this to be easy. And I'm certainly not sorry for the repetition because this is the 'road' to **knowledge, wisdom, and doctrine** that we must **continue** to 'travel on'. Sure, this **study** is just one way to 'travel this road'. But it's His way, because it's more about the **exercise of use** of The Word of God that yields **wisdom and understanding** than anything else. And such **exercise** transforms you from a **babe** and **milk**-drinker to an 'eater' of **strong meat**. And anyone who will **continue** to **work** and **strive** and **press** with **patience** and **diligence** will be able to pass God's tests and become **approved unto God**.

And it's not my intention to impress you with my 'storytelling skills', or with just another 'story', but to "equip" each **disciple** to...

...prove his own work, and then shall he have rejoicing in himself alone, and not in another [Gal 6:4](#).

Paul shows us God's intent here—that everyone by The Spirit should share in this **labour in the word** and in this **rejoicing**. But Paul also teaches that God by The Spirit provides **teachers** to help achieve these goals. And this **study** is my contribution by The Spirit to help you to achieve this 'standing' with God. And as should be expected from now on, the following sections should help to correct, improve, and expand your **understanding** of what you've **learned** so far.

SECTION 9 The Rapture of the Dead Jews to Israel
and The Demise of the Red Horse in The Sixth Seal
Judgment



The Rapture of the Dead Jews to Israel

CHART of 7 Distinguishing Features of The Rapture of the Dead Jews
 X = Certain ? = Uncertain BLANK = Certainly Not

Raptures	From Grave	From Earth	Jews	Gentiles	To Earth	To Heaven	Saved
Dead Jews	X	?	X		X		

CHART of The Rapture of the Dead Jews in the Main Sets of Events of The Great Tribulation

Sets of Events	The Beginning of Sorrows	The Abomination of Desolation	The Days of Vengeance	Armageddon
Position		Dead Jews		
Before				

Time to get back to the raptures. The next one on our journey is likely the fifth to occur in The Great Tribulation. I call it The Rapture of the Dead Jews. It's another rapture of only real Jews in the middle of The Great Tribulation and surely before The Abomination of Desolation but likely just after The Rapture of the 144,000 and The Resurrection and Rapture of the Two Witnesses. And it's probably a few weeks before The Rapture of the Tribulation Jews which must occur sixth regardless of the exact order of the previous raptures. Remember this is because of the sequence establishing transitional phrase marking this

rapture in [Revelation 15:5](#).

And remember Gabriel marks the position of The Rapture of the Dead Jews at the midpoint of The Great Tribulation, placing it near the start of the worst time ever'. Gabriel says,

...at that time shall Michael stand up, the great prince which standeth for the children of thy people [the Jews]: and there shall be a time of trouble, such as never was since there was a nation even to that same time: and at that time thy people shall be delivered, every one that shall be found written in the book. And many of them that sleep in the dust of the earth shall awake, some to everlasting life, and some to shame and everlasting contempt [Dan 12:1-2](#).

Gabriel indicates that this rapture of Jews from *sleep*—or from *the grave*—occurs very near the start of this *time of trouble* but necessarily before the Jews flee to *the wilderness* so that these raptured Jews will get the same chance at *everlasting life* or *shame and everlasting contempt* as the rest of the Jews that are otherwise *gathered* to Israel. Again, it would be convenient if the Jews could be raptured during the chaos immediately following The Midterm Great Earthquake, and amidst the distraction of that crazy 'fireworks show' in the sky *quickly* following. This would all help add to the confusion that may be very helpful to those who escape. And remember this 'barrage' of events should not catch all these newly raptured souls off guard if they get a 'heads-up' from the Two Witnesses during their 3 ½-day 'spiritual internment' immediately beforehand. But we *know* that even when the herald angels fly through the sky and set the record straight, *some* still just won't get it. And this will surely lead to *shame and everlasting contempt* for *some* of these 'resurrected' Jews.

But to really get a complete picture of this unique rapture we'll have to go back to the beginning, except not to the beginning of events *on* the Earth, but *inside* it. We'll need to get an idea of everything happening 'underground'. We have talked about most of *the lower parts of the earth* already. But just like all the raptures, we'll need to place all these subterranean 'way stations' in time and space in order to *understand* them. And we'll see that the various *parts* inside the Earth serve to contain diverse groups and at different periods of time throughout the ages and beyond. And from some of these *parts* spirits can be liberated, but from others this cannot be, at least not to any advantage. And throughout The Ages of Creation (see again the chart in [SECTION 2](#)) most of humanity will wait in three or more of these *parts* at one time or another, though usually the fewer parts you have to visit the better. But everyone—and I mean all humanity—must spend at least some time in *the lower parts of the earth*.

Let's warm up with a review and reevaluation of one of these *parts* that we've already dealt with, *the bottomless pit*. Like the several other *parts* in the Earth, the Bottomless Pit is a subterranean 'holding tank' or 'confinement cell'. Like the other *parts*, it's really a *prison*, and those held there are considered in *captivity*. And of course none of these 'cells' or 'tanks' may be found by physically digging a hole deep enough in the ground. They're in a spiritual dimension that's defined by the physical Earth, just like

God's Throne, for example, is in a spiritual dimension defined by some other place way out in space. And this should remind us of Jesus' promise that the time is coming when this present physical **Heaven and earth shall pass away** leaving a **new heaven** and a **new earth**. And this implies that the interior of the New Earth will remain an eternal 'containment zone' for **everlasting punishment** [Mat 25:46](#).

So all these spiritual 'holding tanks' in the Earth contain or keep **captive** certain groups of **spirits** for varying specific purposes and periods. Human **spirits** can only enter these **lower parts** after they die. But their physical 'remains' stay on Earth wherever and however their bodies are disposed of, including being scattered to the wind or waves in ashes. But heavenly **spirits**, or **angels** and other spiritual **creatures**, should be able to enter and exit the interior of the Earth without concern for their 'natural forms', assuming they have God's permission to make these transitions. And human **spirits** with God's help can exit the interior of the Earth too. And these group 'exoduses' by human spirits from **the lower parts of the earth** are part of the process that I call raptures. The other part of this process involves these **spirits** being reunited with their revived and transformed physical bodies.

So you could imagine that the human spirit of the Antichrist will be 'raptured' out of The Bottomless Pit. And we also **know** that **the locusts** of The 5th Trumpet Judgment come out of it. Except they won't have to reunite with physical bodies on Earth to do so. And my guess is that the 'lion-headed', 'winged' **horsemen** of The 6th Trumpet Judgment come out and go back into The Bottomless Pit just like **the locusts** do. But these 'transitions' made by supernatural beings I would not define as raptures because such **creatures** always keep their bodies and spirits together wherever they go. Still we can see that this particular 'holding tank', unlike most the others, probably accommodates both human spirits and supernatural beings, although the human spirit of the Antichrist may be a special case in that he may be the only human spirit that ever resides there. An angel clearly identifying the Antichrist tells John,

The beast that thou sawest was, and is not; and shall ascend out of the bottomless pit, and go into perdition... [and is the same as] the beast that was, and is not, and yet is [Rev 17:8](#).

So I expect all this 'traveling' of the Antichrist includes a trip into the Earth, back out, and finally back in for good. And assuming that the Antichrist remains the same person throughout these transitions, his ascension **out of the bottomless pit** has all the characteristics of a rapture, except that it doesn't involve a group of people.

And again, I **know** of no references that can **prove** any 'switch of entities'. And such a special trip by the human spirit of the Antichrist into **the bottomless pit** puts him temporarily in the place where the **seven** spiritual **kings** along with Satan will also all later temporarily reside. And this seems to be another 'connection' that shows how the Antichrist will be raised to their level—how he is to become a 'supernaturally empowered' human who **is to become the eighth, and one of the seven** [Rev 17:11](#). Another indication of the unique but human nature of the Antichrist is the special immediate punishment in The Lake of Fire following Armageddon that only he

and the False Prophet receive separate from all other humans and also from all other supernatural beings ([Rev 19:19-20](#)).

Also, we can see a specific order of events. From John's timetable we **know** that 1) the **beast** is alive, then 2) dies, then 3) in order to be 'resurrected', **shall ascend out of the bottomless pit...**, and finally, 4) will **go into perdition...** to his final **everlasting punishment**. So in order for any spirit, human or angelic, to be a candidate for 'reanimating' the dead body of the Antichrist, he must be able, willing, and/or constrained to come **out of the bottomless pit**. And if an angel is going to do the job he must be already down there or will have to make the trip down before **he** emerges. Of course I think the Antichrist's original human spirit will descend into this particular 'holding tank' at this time, as opposed to making the more common trip to **hell**, and about 3 days later **shall ascend out of the bottomless pit** because no angel will want the job to wait in The Bottomless Pit, and after that to be confined in a human's body—let alone accept the inevitable early trip to The Lake of Fire—if they have a choice. And no angel, including Satan, would manifest into the human form of the Antichrist for the same reasons, especially if they had a human 'stooge' to do it for them. But we have seen so far that some nasty creatures will come out of The Bottomless Pit. So you could say it doesn't appear to be a 'holding tank' for human spirits, except that the Antichrist—when it comes to humans—is clearly identifiable after his resurrection as 'superhuman'.

By-the-way, whether **devils** now have free access to **hell** or the Bottomless Pit or not I'm not sure. I have heard testimony that they do from those that have visited such places in spirit and were shortly thereafter resuscitated, and I find no problem with this idea scripturally. In fact I recommend cardiologist Dr. Maurice Rawlings books on the subject, **Beyond Death's Door** and **To Hell and Back**. These works in Dr. Rawlings' Christian perspective offer eyewitness accounts of both Heaven and Hell from people resuscitated from the dead, including reports of the involvement of non-human spiritual entities. But the scriptural testimony about **hell** is enough for me, a place where people are **tormented** by **flame** ([Luke 16:19-24](#)) and **worm** ([Mark 9:42-50](#); [Isa 66:24](#)—though modern translations omit the worms in Mark's record). And it stands to reason that since Jesus tells us that **angels** escorted the newly 'preredeemed' to their 'waiting place' in **Abraham's bosom** ([Luke 16:20-24](#)), others of them are likely also involved in the trip to **hell** too. And apparently even beyond the trip.

So **the bottomless pit** would seem to be the most appropriate place for the human spirit of the Antichrist to wait for three days while his body is dead on Earth. And I expect that the human spirit of the Antichrist will return to his body from there with the help of Satan and the consent of God. And sure I think Satan could go to the Bottomless Pit in order to pull off a false resurrection. But I don't think he will because he would more likely first enlist one of his spiritual henchmen to do the job—or extract one that may already be down there. But this is not likely either because I expect that all of Satan's ego-driven, principality-and-power-seeking, unscrupulous and ruthless subordinates will see it as unnecessary and inefficient for any of them to perform this service unless God will not allow the Antichrist to be 'resurrected' otherwise. But this is probably also part of the **strong delusion** God will **send** ([2Thes 2:11](#)).

Of course it would be a 42-month 'get out of jail free card' if the Antichrist is to be 'possessed' by a spirit already imprisoned down there. But I think Satan could instead simply arrange for the manifestation of a spiritual counterfeit of the human body of the Antichrist and be done with it. I mean this must be what 'ghosts' are—whether appearing transparent in appearance or not—because there ain't no one really getting out of **hell** to make such 'guest appearances'. And I mean that both Satan and God's angels apparently 'materialize' in all kinds of disguised forms including discernibly physical ones. In this way Satan would need no 'subterranean errand' run or any 'volunteer extraction' at all.

Except again, we **know** that 'someone' comes **out of the bottomless pit** for this purpose. And we **know** that **the beast** that **was** afterward **is** again, and that **he** becomes **the eighth... of the seven**. Add to this the fact that the Antichrist and False Prophet are the first to be **cast alive into the lake of fire** [Rev 19:20](#) **a thousand years** before anyone else ([Rev 20:1-10](#)), and I must conclude that no spiritual **prince** would volunteer to take the Antichrist's punishment given a choice. And we will further confirm that when the Antichrist and False Prophet are **cast alive into the lake of fire** at the end of The Great Tribulation, Satan along with his subordinate angelic **host of the high ones** [Isa 24:21-22](#) are instead confined in **the bottomless pit** for **a thousand years** and aren't **cast into the lake of fire** until **the thousand years are expired**—after The Last Rebellion at the end of The Millennium (again [Rev 20:1-10](#)), which we will cover more thoroughly in [SECTION 11](#). And this will confirm that Satan cannot possibly take over the role of the Antichrist because their ultimate ends are clearly distinguishable. And this also appears to confirm that the role of Satan's angels, including all his **princes**, is distinguishable too. But however it goes down, they will all relish their chance to 'raise hell' in The Great Tribulation. And what spiritual **prince** would give up his last chance to 'raise hell' at the end of The Millennium too—as we will see they will—by getting himself thrown into The Lake of Fire at the end of The Great Tribulation?

And it occurs to me that Satan himself, contrary to popular depiction, may have never yet been anywhere inside the Earth. I mean I would expect that he would at least generally avoid the place like the plague until he is forcibly, with a **great chain** [Rev 20:1](#), confined there for The Millennium, unless he 'makes appearances' down there along with his subordinates simply to satisfy sadistic pleasures, assuming God allows such things. I mean I accept that it's possible that the **torments** of **the rich man** in **hell** include the mischief of Satan and his angels. Because again, we **know** that human spirits were **carried by the angels** to **Abraham's bosom** ([Luke 16:22](#)), so we can assume that they are also similarly '**carried**' to both **paradise** and **hell** too. But I don't consider this **proof** of satanic involvement in the **torments** of **hell**. And I would expect that avoiding the inside of the Earth is the general rule with all of Satan's **princes of this world** [1 Cor 2:8](#).

And in the same way I expect these 'narcissistic egotists' would avoid confining themselves within the human body of the Antichrist when they can manipulate him to their hearts content just as well from the outside, and still have the option of temporarily possessing him whenever it's considered advantageous. This way they would be free to operate in the spiritual realm while the human spirit of the Antichrist 'babysits' his own body. This also

leaves them 'free' at the end of The Millennium to 'raise hell' one last time too. And again, all this makes the best candidate to make the round trip to and from **the bottomless pit** to be the one and only human spirit of the Antichrist himself.

And besides the Antichrist, the spirit of Lazarus that Jesus resurrected must have gone down into and returned out of the Earth, though in this case probably to **Abraham's bosom**. Still, I think in the same way the spirit of the Antichrist will go to wait in **the bottomless pit** until he is returned to his body too. However I should admit I could be wrong, which makes this just my opinion, but an opinion for which I have not seen a better case to oppose it as yet. And I will gladly acknowledge a corrected, improved and expanded **understanding** of all this as soon as it comes to my attention. After all, **continuing** 'openness' to improving your **understanding** of God's Word and proper caution when speaking for God are the real lessons here.

And speaking of uncertainty, another ambiguity here is that there are clearly several different 'holding tanks' in the **lowest, lower, or nether parts of the earth** to confuse. Their differences are apparently due to the different 'destinies'—or ultimate destinations, if you prefer—of those waiting in them, including whether they will be returning to Earth or going to Heaven, or awaiting final judgment, or waiting on a second chance at life, or simply waiting to be born into the World in the first place. The **bottomless pit** then seems to be a temporary 'holding tank' for entities that can be recalled to the Earth by God or Satan but are ultimately doomed to **eternal damnation**. They seem to be held there to be used by God in His time to help him **'shake the heavens, and the earth... that those things which cannot be shaken may remain'** ([Hag 2:6](#) ... [Heb 12:27](#)). And **those things which cannot be shaken** must be the souls of men who in the presences of God's undeniable displays of **power** and **wrath**, and in the face of Satan's allowed abominable displays of **evil**, are provoked—or from God's perspective, **fitted** [Rom 9:22](#)—to make the **right** choice. So, some entities will escape from **the bottomless pit**, at least temporarily, and enjoy the reprieve from confinement and whatever satisfaction that 'wreaking vengeful havoc' can bring. And the severe effects of their release planned by God will encourage **some** to be **saved**. And this is **'by all means'** the best advantage of this particular **lower part of the earth** designed by God. I mean like the Apostle Thomas, some people need a little more convincing, and God will not hesitate to provide that kind of persuasion, including some that comes right **out the bottomless pit**. Of course we can also see that this **bottomless pit** is part of God's plan to **send... strong delusion** [2 Thes 2:11](#), and evidently part of the Unholy Trinity's 'deceiving' **miracles** ([Rev 13:11-15](#); [19:20](#)) because it's evidently the 'backstage' to one of the biggest **signs and lying wonders** ever ([2 Thes 2:9](#)).

But apparently there is a place just as deep or even deeper down than the Bottomless Pit. King David sings about it in [Psalm 139](#). And he distinguishes it as one of the **lowest parts of the earth** anyway. The psalm begins with him telling us that God's **knowledge** is 'unattainable' and that there is no place where you can go to escape His presence including in **hell**. David sings,

Such knowledge is too wonderful for me; it is high, I cannot attain unto it. Whither shall I go from thy spirit? or whither

shall I flee from thy presence? If I ascend up into heaven, thou art there: if I make my bed in hell, behold, thou art there [Psalms 139:6-8](#).

And he goes on to tell us about a place where evidently all humans were ***made in secret*** and ***curiously wrought*** supposedly all at The Creation of the World, and where each soul waits in a form ***yet being imperfect*** before we are born. And at our appointed time God ***covered us*** or 'put us' in our ***mother's womb***. So goes the story as relayed in David's song in [Verses 13-16](#).

But in Verse 16 we also ***learn*** something astonishing, that God has prepared in advance a record of all that we are to become, starting with our prebirth ***substance*** and 'continuing' throughout our lives. David explains,

Thine eyes did see my substance, yet being unperfect; and in thy book all my members were written, which in continuance were fashioned, when as yet there was none of them.

This is another one for the Calvinists and Arminianists to fight over. And by now you might guess that I side with neither, because both presume to limit God's sovereignty. I mean you shouldn't presume to ***attain*** to God heights of ***knowledge*** on this matter. And I mean that a Calvinist would say this proves 'universal programmed predestination', but an Arminianist would insist that the only thing we're talking about for sure here is God's ***foreknowledge*** about the formation of *members* or body parts, and not necessarily anything like 'preprogrammed robots'. Still, it's plain from this account that He knows us all intimately and in advance. But I ***believe*** it would defeat His purpose to have a real relationship with us if He controlled us all completely. At the same time I believe He has the ability and the occasional 'inclination' to do so. But we are nonetheless apparently free to make God ***angry***, even bring Him to ***indignation***, and we are also free to ***please*** Him, or even make Him ***laugh***. And by our 'choices', when we're allowed them, we can. And we can elicit these 'emotional responses' from God because from our perspective these 'choices' really are our own. Either that or we are teased and deceived by the appearance of way too many 'choices' in this life. The point is that God's omniscience in time and space does not force Him to always control things even though He can and sometime does. And there wouldn't need to be a ***hell*** or ***lake of fire*** if He insisted on complete control. And I mean that He must make 'choices' too—'choices' that are in response to ours, especially if He is more interested in true, free-will, 'love relationships' than 'programmed robots'. And I ***believe*** this is why God has repeatedly ***repented*** (e.g., [Psa 106:45](#)); and why Jesus ***wept*** ([John 11:35](#); [Luke 19:41](#)). These 'emotional responses' were certainly not because of helplessness to do anything else about the circumstances. They were divine responses to free-will human 'choices'.

And remember we talked about the reason God made us in [Revelation 4:11](#). This is where the...

...four and twenty elders fall down before him that sat on the throne, ...saying, Thou art worthy, O Lord, to receive glory and

honour and power: for thou hast created all things, and for thy pleasure they are and were created.

Surely part of the ***pleasure*** God gets by creating us comes from our 'choices'. So you could call it all just theatre, except—call me crazy—I ***experience*** personal interactions with The Holy Trinity. And this isn't just a 'casual relationship'. I mean Jesus has promised to marry me, and anyone else who wants a relationship with Him. And it's not been my ***experience*** that he's only looking for 'robotic servants'. In fact, Jesus says He's looking for ***friends***, and that His ***disciples*** are his ***friends*** [John 15:13-15](#). And the first thing Jesus tells His ***friends*** to do is to ***love one another*** [John 15:17](#). And God 'commands' us ***first*** and foremost to...

...love the Lord thy God with all thy heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy mind, and with all thy strength... ([Deut 6:5](#); [Mat 22:37](#); [Mark 12:30](#); [Luke 10:27](#))

But we should come to ***understand*** that such ***instruction*** is for ***babes***, because the 'mature' are beyond the need of this kind of ***instruction***, because their relationship with God shows them that,

The steadfast love of the LORD never ceases, his mercies never come to an end; they are new every morning; great is thy faithfulness [Lam 3:22 RSV](#).

And I just mean that those who really ***know*** Him personally no longer need to be commanded to ***love*** Him. And that those who still need such commandments are in a shameful condition.

Still and after all, and pardon my crude cliché, but everyone ***knows*** that ***The LORD*** can do whatever He damn well pleases. I mean it's undeniable that He sometimes forces the issue 'Calvinist style'. And by that I mean that a point comes when people no longer get a ***choice***. In The Great Tribulation when He sends ***strong delusion*** this will be the case for the majority of the population on Earth. We saw how God will draw out the Anti-Catholics and the Chinese to their doom at Armageddon, and we will see later in this section how He will do the same kind of thing with the Russians and the Muslims. And Paul reminds us that it's...

God which worketh in you both to will and to do of his good pleasure [Phil 2:13](#).

But you should ***understand*** that this 'work of God' will not turn out well for most people. Only really a ***few***, if they really ***love God***, will have ***good*** results ([Mat 7:13-14](#); [Rom 8:28](#)). And this ***good work*** of God ([Phil 1:6](#)) applies to ***believers*** in general, but arguably more so to the ones who are paying better attention. But Peter reminds us that there is no limit to God's love, because He is ***not willing that any should perish*** [2 Pet 3:9](#). And we ***know*** God will ***draw*** most everyone to Himself because of Jesus' work on the cross ([John 6:44](#); [12:32](#)). And doesn't that mean that most everyone gets a ***choice***? Of course it appears that young children and the unborn can die

without one, which I'm sure makes God really angry, though this must be another way He makes the best of bad situations. And if everyone's *members*, or fully **fashioned** body parts, **were** already **written** in God's **book when as yet there was none of them** [Psa 139:16](#), how do you kill anyone before God's preplanned time and purpose?

But the reason I've been trying to drive you 'loopy' on this topic again is that I want you to concede and better **understand** that it is impossible to remain purely a Calvinist or an Arminianist in light of the whole Word of God. Indeed God knows in advance the full end of everyone who comes out of the **lowest parts of the earth**. But He nonetheless somehow lets most of us who enter this World make a lot of our own 'choices' with limited interference and despite the fact that **in him we live, and move, and have our being** [Acts 17:28](#). And I expect this 'state of affairs' will continue throughout The Millennium until everyone is born into the World, and this 'tank' King David sings about is finally empty. Not long after that all the most important 'choices' will all have been made. But there will be some other important changes that we'll talk about in the last section.

Moving up in the World, elevation-wise, is how I expect we come to the next 'lower part of the Earth' ([Psa 63:1](#); [Isa 44:23](#); [Eph 4:6-10](#)). But here we really find two **parts** connected as a pair of 'holding tanks', both of which we've already talked about a good deal too. These are the ones Jesus tells us about in the story of **a certain rich man** and **a certain beggar named Lazarus**. We already **know** that after these two die they are split up, one in each 'tank'. Jesus tells us that...

...the beggar died, and was carried by the angels into Abraham's bosom: the rich man also died, and was buried; And in hell he lift up his eyes, being in torments, and seeth Abraham afar off, and Lazarus in his bosom [or "by his side"]
[Luke 16:20-25](#).

So going **into Abraham's bosom** simply means being "with" Abraham in this particular 'lower part of the Earth'. And this 'holding place' is separated from where **the rich man** ends up **in hell... in torments**. Still, he is close enough to see and hear **Father Abraham** and **Lazarus** because he calls out to them seeking relief from being **tormented in the flame**. And **Abraham**, having apparently been there a while, explains why this is not going to happen, telling **the rich man** that both he and **Lazarus** have been immovably placed where God has determined each deserves to wait.

Abraham explains the barrier that separates them, telling **the rich man** that,

...between us and you there is a great gulf fixed: so that they which would pass from hence to you cannot; neither can they pass to us, that would come from thence [Luke 16:26](#).

From these passages alone we might assume that these 'divided tanks' are just for good and bad Jews. But going back to what Paul and Peter have to add on the subject, this is not likely their only use. And I think we must conclude that Jesus goes to only one side after he dies on the cross, when, **he**

went and preached unto the spirits in prison [1Pet 3:19](#), that is, **'into Abraham's bosom'**. And evidently all that were waiting there unanimously accepted Him as Savior, after which **he ascended up on high**, and **he led** these **spirits** in **captivity captive** to Heaven ([Eph 4:8](#)). Once there, He deposits their **spirits** in another apparently even more comfortable 'holding place' that I call **the third heaven** or **paradise** as identified in [2 Corinthians 12:2-4](#).

But by-the-way, it's also popularly taught that **the third heaven** or **paradise** is the entire **kingdom of heaven**, including The Temple on the heavenly Mount Zion and God's **many mansions** [John 14:3](#), and that it's not just the 'holding place' of these **spirits**. This is because some presume that the 'first heaven' is the earth's atmosphere; the second is outer space; and the third is God's spiritual realm somewhere 'within' outer space, or something like that. But because of the account in [2 Corinthians 12:2-4](#), I got the idea that **paradise** is that special 'holding place' for **spirits** in Heaven who are waiting for raptures. I mean it's evidently a place visited by **the spirit** of a guy Paul **knew**—possibly by Paul himself—when 'he' died, leaving his body behind, and later returned to Earth when his body was revived—or resurrected. And Paul said it was **unlawful** to speak about this place, while John seems to speak freely about The Temple in Heaven, which leads me to think that **paradise** is indeed just this special place within **the kingdom of heaven**. Anyway, the ambiguity here, again, is because our view through the **glass** remains a little bit too 'dark' to be sure about it. But however this heavenly 'waiting place' for redeemed **spirits** is properly identified, we can be sure that they're missing their **bodies**, because they leave them behind **in the grave** on Earth until they are raptured to rejoin them.

And by-the-way, not long after Jesus takes **the spirits** from **Abraham's bosom** and puts them in **paradise**, God sends **the earnest** of our **inheritance** [Eph 1:14](#)—our "deposit guaranteeing" eternal life—to Earth, which is The Spirit when He comes at **Pentecost** [Acts 2](#), who stays with all those who are **alive** in Christ throughout The Age of Grace.

And since the Resurrection, **the spirits** of those who die in Christ must go straight to **paradise** because Paul tells us that to be **absent from the body** is to **be present with the Lord** [2 Cor 5:6-8](#). And The Spirit will **abide** [1 John 2:27](#) or stay on Earth, and this 'holding place' **with the Lord** in Heaven will continue to fill up with **the spirits** of Christians—while their dead bodies are left behind on Earth—until such time as God will remove The Spirit from the Earth and redeem His **purchased possession** (again [Eph 1:14](#)). He will do so by instantaneously reintegrating and immortalizing the **spirits** and **bodies** of **the dead in Christ... first**, and then by immortalizing those **which are alive**, when we all **meet the Lord in the air** at the unknown or **mystery** end of The Age of Grace ([1 Thes 4:13-18](#), [1 Cor 15:51-54](#)).

And this process must include Gentiles not just from The Age of Grace, but according to Peter's **revelation** at **Cornelius'** house, also God's **accepted** Gentiles from all the **other ages** too. Remember Peter says,

Of a truth I perceive that God is no respecter of persons [Acts 10:34](#).

This is why I expect that before Jesus visits and preaches to **the spirits** in **Abraham's bosom**, it's already filled with all of God's **accepted** both Gentiles and Jews, from all the previous **ages** back to Adam and Eve.

And this preaching in the Earth by Jesus and the following 'procession' to Heaven occurred at the end of The 69th Week of The 70 Weeks Plan of Salvation for the Jews. We **know** this because Daniel tells us that...

...after threescore and two weeks [are added to the previously decreed **seven weeks**, making 69 weeks,] **shall Messiah be cut off** [or **crucified**], **but** [certainly] **not for himself** [but **for the sins of the whole world** [1John 2:2](#)] [Dan 9:24-27](#).

So the 'evacuation' of **Abraham's bosom** happens 3 days after Jesus is **crucified** which according to Daniel's **prophecy** marks the end of The 69th Week of The 70 Weeks Plan for the Jews. And by the end of the remaining **week** God promises the Jews...

...to finish the transgression, and to make an end of sins, and to make reconciliation for iniquity, and to bring in everlasting righteousness, and to seal up the vision and prophecy, and to anoint the most Holy [Dan 9:24](#).

And evidently it will take the entire 70th week to **finish** and **make an end** of God's plan to **bring in everlasting righteousness** on Earth. This of course is the 7-year **week** of Great Tribulation still to come.

And we now **know** that just after The Resurrection of Jesus, or just after The Spirit arrives, this is when we find out about the delay in God's plans for the Jews, and that God has been hiding this planned delay. We find out that God puts The 70th Week on hold because of The Age of Grace. And we can see in all of this that it's been quite a long wait for some of these spirits since then. In fact Adam must have waited even longer in **Abraham's bosom** than he's had to so far in **paradise**. And as for the 'tank' adjoining **Abraham's bosom**, no matter how long the wait its occupants must endure, it will surely be **hell**, and with no hope of any real reprieve, but instead the **promise** of much worse 'accommodations' to come.

But **Abraham's bosom** is a 'holding tank' that evidently more than one group will escape from to redemption. I mean since The Resurrection it should be filling up again with Jews that are to be raptured to Israel in the midtribulation Rapture of the Dead Jews. And part of this 'second round' should include Jews who, after they return to Earth a second time in this rapture, die again near the start of The Days of Vengeance. These Jews evidently die twice and are raptured twice in order to be redeemed to stand before God as seen in Revelation 15. And their **spirits** apparently wait to be raptured first in **Abraham's bosom** and second in **paradise**. But there are a couple other groups of Jews coming from this 'second round' out of **Abraham's bosom** who also die twice and are raptured twice except they survive longer into The Days of Vengeance and catch later raptures that we'll cover in [SECTION 10](#) and [11](#). And there are still other participants in The Rapture of the Dead Jews that successfully escape to God's **prepared** safe haven in **the wilderness**, and others who just successfully hide elsewhere,

and survive The Great Tribulation. Their final transformation comes at the end of The Millennium covered in [SECTION 11](#). And there is still another group of these Jews that die twice. However this last part, possibly numbering half of all the second-round Jews coming out of **Abraham's Bosom**, winds up one way or another in **shame and everlasting contempt** in **hell** to await their final transformation at the end of The Millennium too.

You should also notice that I am assuming when Paul says to be **absent from the body** is to **be present with the Lord**—in **paradise**—that this will still apply in The 70th Week when it did not in The 69th. Of course technically there were no **dead in Christ** in the first 69 weeks, nor anytime before, because Jesus had not yet died for our sins. Still, I suppose it's possible that it could go either way. Maybe God has planned further separation of certain groups during The Great Tribulation. For example, we'll see that some groups are clearly not invited to The Marriage of the Lamb because they are raptured after this event. And that some will be raptured to Earth, not to Heaven. So I think it's at least possible that God will let a 'third round' wait in **Abraham's Bosom** for this purpose. And this would not affect their salvation, just their station. Except that **Abraham's Bosom** seems to be for 'God-selected', 'pre-saved' **spirits** who don't yet know Jesus, while Paradise or The Third Heaven is clearly for **spirits** who do. But you **know** God isn't against exceptions to the rule. And if you count The Two Witnesses as a separate round coming out of **Abraham's Bosom**, not to mention as an exception to the rule, there might be as many as six or seven different groups raptured out of this 'tank' altogether. Though I doubt that you can identify them all yet. But if you presume that this many groups will emerge from **Abraham's Bosom** then you also have to assume that the only saved groups that wait in Paradise for redemption are the Church along with the ones that Jesus personally 'extracts' from **Abraham's Bosom** after His **resurrection**. And I doubt this too. I'm guessing instead that all **the spirits of the dead in Christ**, no matter when they die, will wait in Paradise for their various raptures.

But these groups that come out of **Abraham's Bosom**, however many there are—and counting The Two Witnesses there must be at least three—get 'ringside seats' to **hell**. Surely this must be profoundly affecting. I mean **the rich man** pleaded for his family! So don't you think others **in hell** will plead for theirs? And surely family members see each other across the **great gulf** that separates them. Hey, 'it's a small World after all'. And Jesus indicates that families will be commonly split ([Luke 12:52](#)). How terrible it must be to see all **the spirits** of those who will never escape their horrifying fate. All human spirits that end up **in hell** will only get out to 'get their day in court' to be finally 'sentenced'. And at this time they will be 'remanded' to their ultimate eternal doom. And this temporary **prison of torments** is not near to being filled up yet. It should continue to do so all the way up to the end of The Millennium. But I **promise** that you'll get a chance to peak into hell too, as we'll see in [SECTION 11](#). And we'll have more to say about all this in the next couple of sections.

The two remaining **parts** in the **lower parts of the earth** may not be too dissimilar from the **tormented** side of the 'split-tank' called **hell**. But they are clearly different parts. One is only briefly mentioned in **scripture** as far as I **know**. And it's identified in The Bible by the only once used Greek word,

Tartarus, translated in [2 Peter 2:4](#) in the KJV as **hell**. But this is apparently a special **hell**. Peter describes it as a place where...

...angels that sinned [have been] cast... down to hell, and delivered... into chains of darkness, to be reserved unto judgment.

This 'holding cell' for **angels** for inevitable **judgment** seems to be related to the next verse where Peter apparently gives some context as to why these **angels** are so imprisoned. He seems to imply that it is for the same reason that God...

...spared not the old world, but saved Noah the eighth person, a preacher of righteousness, bringing in the flood upon the world of the ungodly 2 Pet 2:5.

So going back to the account of **the flood** in [Genesis 6](#), we find talk about...

...giants in the earth in those days; and also after that, when the sons of God came in unto the daughters of men, and they bare children to them, the same became mighty men which were of old, men of renown.

Now since angels, including **Satan**, are also referred to as **sons of God** ([Job 1:6](#); [2:1](#)), it has been supposed that the unnatural union of **the sons of God** and **the daughters of men** produced half-breed, 'angel-human' **giants** which because of **the flood** became disembodied "demons". And I **believe** this is the case. These are the 'spirits' who, with no bodies of their own, still to this day 'commandeer'—or 'possess'—the bodies of unsuspecting humans. And these would be the kind Jesus **cast out**. And this 'bodiless' type of **unclean spirit** ([Mat 12:43-45](#); [Luke 11:24-26](#)) 'naturally' resists exorcism quite vigorously and prefers long term confinement within a human body, the type of confinement that Satan or other angels would more naturally avoid.

So the story goes that these 'imprisoned angels' in *Tartarus* are the ones who 'fathered' these 'half-breed', 'angel-human' **giants** before **the flood**. And these 'angel-human offspring' were ultimately separated from their physical bodies when they died in **the flood** becoming 'human-body-dependant demons'. The part of their beings that survived **the flood** is only their 'disembodied spirits' that to this day still function best by seeking out—evidently sometimes in 'droves'—a human host to live in and dominate. This is also the explanation for the existence of **giants**—including the offspring of these offspring—all of whom would obviously be considered **mighty men... of renown** not only before **the flood** but also for some time after it.

And I say there were **giants** after **the flood** too because somewhere down the line one of these offspring must have married one of Noah's sons, and survived **the flood**, producing the later **giants** of Old Testament Times, including probably **Nimrod** of the first **Babylon**. We **know** this because it takes up to the time of King David to kill off the last of them during his reign ([1 Ch 20:8](#)). At least it's not until then that **giants** are mentioned no more. I

found 18 references in the Old Testament before the point David finally defeats the offspring of **the giant in Gath**. But their legacy clearly remains in the behavior of "demons" that persistently prey on human hosts—as opposed to **angels** who have no need of such 'confinement'. But 'demonology' is not really the focus of this **study**. It deserves a **study** of its own.

Still we can see that this 'unnatural mess' is likely why these **angels** are now in **Tartarus** in **chains of darkness** awaiting **judgment**. And this is no surprise because such behavior allowed to go unchecked could defeat God's whole plan. And like those confined in **hell**, these 'chained' in **Tartarus** will ultimately leave empty their 'dark prison' for a necessarily 'brighter' future, though I'm sure they would prefer to just remain where they are if they had that choice.

This brings us to the last '**prison**' in **the lower parts of the earth**. Like **hell** it's also World renowned but is apparently presently empty. You should remember that it's first two occupants are to be installed at the end of The Great Tribulation, after The Battle of Armageddon, and that it's to remain mostly empty until the end of The Millennium, until the 'dematerialization' of Heaven and Earth. But we'll save the rest of our discussion about this 'tank' for the next sections.

Next I'd like to further consider those **spirits** who were first in **Abraham's Bosom**, but are now in **paradise—spirits** waiting to join their **incorruptible** bodies at The Rapture. We **know** some of them were Jews including Abraham, but this group must include many Gentiles too, the first evidently being Abel, son of Adam. And none of these, including the Jews, will participate in the final week of The 70 weeks plan for the Jews, as they will all instead wait to become Christ's **bride**, as do all those who live or die **in Christ** in this present **age**. But since no one is able to remain sinless but Jesus, how'd these **spirits in prison**—that Christ **preached to**—get on the 'good side' in the first place? And how did those **in hell** get there? Yes, people were and evidently still are **carried by the angels** to these destinations, but that's not what I'm talking about. And I'm not so much talking about the judgment of God either, but rather His 'prejudgment'. The point being that John records that God will 'judge' **every man according to their works** [Rev 20:12-13](#). So everyone should end up **in hell** if this was all there was to it. Thank God we have a way to avoid **hell** and **judgment** through the sacrifice of Jesus. But did you ever consider that all those who end up **in hell** before The Resurrection never actually got a chance to accept Jesus' sacrifice for them before they died? So I can only think that God must have 'anticipated' their response. And God must make such 'prejudgments'—both before The Church Age and after. We can see this in that He 'pre-separates' the spirits in **hell** and **Abraham's bosom** before Jesus dies for our sins much like He does in **hell** and **paradise** afterward. I mean if everyone who died before The Resurrection were all simply **judged... according to their works** they would have all been sent to **hell**. But they weren't. This implies a 'predetermined choice' of God Himself. Chalk one up for the Calvinists. And I suspect this 'prejudgment' may apply to children who die before they are able to make a choice. God could 'anticipate' their 'choices' too. I mean He knows if they are **vessels of honour** or **dishonour** before they are conceived in their **mother's womb**.

So somehow, before people had a chance to 'choose' or 'reject' Jesus, I **believe** the ones on the 'good side' were put there because God knew that they would 'choose' Jesus when they got the chance, and that this is not something that can be hidden from God. And my hope is that this would apply to anyone who is denied a chance in life to 'choose' Jesus. I call it 'divine anticipation of a redemptive act of free will'. And I mean that most of those who got in on the 'good side' **understood** that they were repentant sinners, so that when Jesus arrived they were ready for Him. But also that there were likely others there too young to be able to recognize this, who God 'anticipated' eventually would. This also fits the description Peter gives of God's 'pre-accepted'. Peter identifies such Gentile sinners by their inclinations to 'fear God and work righteousness' ([Acts 10:35](#)). And I expect this implies that before The Age of Grace, if those old enough to recognize their sin nature are to be **accepted** by God, they had to act like it. However many 'grownup' Christians today, though they may think they should 'behave' themselves, believe they don't really have to anymore, because the blood of Jesus alone is sufficient to save them. But what do you think will happen to people who tell you they are 'repentant' for behavior they really have no intention of changing, let alone to others who rarely find occasion to repent?

This brings us to the ones who end up **in hell** before The Resurrection. They obviously didn't 'fear God', nor attempt to 'work righteousness', nor recognized that they were sinners, which, upon their deaths apparently determines their ultimate fates. And it's undeniably 'fate' once you've come to occupy that particular 'tank' as well as most of the others. But two of these six 'tanks' in the Earth—counting the 'split tank' as two—are now occupied by people of 'yet undetermined fates'. Of course the fates of those yet to be born are yet to be determined—at least by the people themselves. And people who are alive today are still 'determining' their own fates. And all this is naturally a part of "Stationism". But you should **know** of another 'tank' presently being occupied where its occupants still have a **choice** in their ultimate fates. And if you **know** it, you're up to speed and ready to go on. Back up and review otherwise.

Moving ahead in the World, time-wise, I would also like to further consider why this other 'holding tank' of **spirits** of 'yet undetermined fates'—**Abraham's Bosom**—is no longer empty, even though **to be absent from the body...** [now means] **to be present with the Lord** in **paradise**. We can deduce that this is because it's filling up again, day by day, since the moment after the first batch is 'spirited out' by Jesus. And we can deduce that this time it's only with Jews. These particular 'subterranean occupants' are especially privileged too because they are evidently not limited in their selection by 'divine anticipation of a redemptive act of free will' like their predecessors were. No, they are not yet 'prejudged' in any way, except that they have to somehow pass for God's standard of a Jew. And though God knows all outcomes, I say they are not 'prejudged' while they are down there because they will be given another chance at life and to **choose life** in Jesus.

And their numbers must continue to grow down there as Jews on Earth die and leave behind their **very many** and **very dry bones** until their scheduled midtribulation 'evacuation'. On that day, according to the Prophet

Ezekiel, God will **cause breath to enter into** the bodies of this multitude of dead Jews. First God **will lay sinews upon** them, and He **will bring up flesh upon** them, **and cover** them **with skin**, and **put breath** in them. And he confirms that **these bones are the whole house of Israel** [Eze 37:1-14](#).

And their **spirits** that will have been waiting in **Abraham's Bosom** will rise to inhabit these 'rejuvenated' bodies. And we already **know** why God will give them this second chance. Gabriel tells the Jews that at the midpoint of The Great Tribulation that,

...Michael [shall] stand up, the great prince which standeth for the children of... [Daniel's] people: and there shall be a time of trouble, such as never was since there was a nation even to that same time: and at that time... [the Jews] shall be delivered, every one that shall be found written in the book. And many of them that sleep in the dust of the earth shall awake, some to everlasting life, and some to shame and everlasting contempt [Dan 12:1-2](#).

And God plainly tells the Jews through the Prophet Ezekiel that,

I will open your graves, and cause you to come up out of your graves, and bring you into the land of Israel [Eze 37:12](#).

Again, this 'evacuation' of **graves** and of **Abraham's Bosom** is in the middle of The 70th Week. And this is also when time appears to be up for all 'real Jews' to get to Israel for the privilege and opportunity to finally make their **choice**. I guess there may even be Jews who die in China one moment but just in time to be 'revived' and raptured to Israel to make their **choice** the next. God might even cause these kinds of deaths in order to get his people home in time. Of course these exceptionally late deaths may miss the 'heads-up' by The Two Witnesses and in this way be among some of the most confused Jews who 'materialize' in Israel at the midpoint.

But I don't expect all living 'Jews' will make it to Israel. And I can't say whether God will supernaturally transport living Jews at this time. I don't see any evidence for it. But I do expect that all 'real Jews' that die in The Beginning of Sorrows will by this rapture make it to Israel in time. But I also expect that the Antichrist will keep most of his Jewish captives alive in camps, waiting until after this rapture to kill most of them—in case killing them means giving them a means of escape. I have to believe Satan is already considering this anyway. And this must be another reason why Jesus comforts Jews to 'buck up' and **endure unto the end**. Of course all this also implies another 'heads up' for Jews—[get to Israel now](#).

But we also **know** that **some** Jews that make it to Israel don't make the right **choice** to **flee to the wilderness**. Still, we **know** that **some** of these are **blessed**, but only if they **endure unto the end** while being hunted and killed if they can't hide. And still other Jews will join the Antichrist in his **indignation against the holy covenant** and seal their fate. Oh what **strong delusion** there must be in the face of the awesome acts of God at this time. Even with The Rapture of the 144,000 Jews, The Resurrection and

Rapture of the Two Witnesses, and the appearance of 'centuries' of dead Jews revived from their graves in The Rapture of the Dead Jews, not to mention all the spectacles in the sky, **some** Jews still won't get it. And they won't know that all of these events are markers that Israel is about to be **trodden under foot** in The Days of Vengeance ([Dan 8:13-14](#)). Or looking the other way, these are markers that they are about to lose the security they enjoy in The Beginning of Sorrows, as we are about to further confirm.

The Prophet Zechariah outlines three consecutive stages leading up to and through The Beginning of Sorrows that will culminate in a fourth stage, The Days of Vengeance, and all from the perspectives of God and the Jews. These stages are 1) the overwhelming defense of Israel by the Israelis themselves when **they shall devour all the people round about**, followed by 2) the awesome and overwhelming defense of Israel by God when He will **destroy all the nations that come against Jerusalem**, followed by 3) the Jews **revelation of Jesus Christ** which is followed by 4) The Days of Vengeance when $\frac{2}{3}$ of the Jews in Israel **die** while $\frac{1}{3}$ are saved alive obviously starting at The Abomination of Desolation and continuing to The 7th Plague Judgment. More specifically, in His 'layered' way, God reveals,

Behold, I will make Jerusalem a cup of trembling unto all the people round about, when they shall be in the siege both against Judah and against Jerusalem [Stage 1 and 2]. And in that day [beginning in Stage 1] will I make Jerusalem a burdensome stone for all people: all that burden themselves with it shall be cut in pieces, though all the people of the earth be gathered together against it. [And] In that day [beginning in Stage 2], saith the LORD, I will smite every horse with astonishment, and his rider with madness: and I will open mine eyes upon the house of Judah, and will smite every horse of the people with blindness. [Yes, no 'modern military hardware' will be available in Stage 2.] And [beginning in Stage 1] the governors of Judah shall say in their heart, The inhabitants of Jerusalem shall be my strength in the LORD of hosts their God. In that day [in Stage 1, when Israel apparently has the most advanced military defenses ever known to man,] will I make the governors of Judah like an hearth of fire among the wood, and like a torch of fire in a sheaf; and they [Israel] shall devour all the people round about, on the right hand and on the left [specifically in the years before the start of The Great Tribulation and up to The 6th Seal Judgment—this is Stage 1]: and Jerusalem [as a result] shall be [fully] inhabited again in her own place, even in Jerusalem [and if they ever build that wall to divide Jerusalem it will come down in Stage 1]... [And] In that day [beginning Stage 2] shall the LORD [awesomely] defend the inhabitants of Jerusalem [especially against Russia and the Muslims in The 6th Seal Judgment because by then Israel will have lost the capability to defend herself]; and he that is feeble among them at that day shall be as David; and the house of David shall be as God, as the angel of the LORD before them [at least up to the time of The Abomination of Desolation—the end of Stage 2]. And it

shall come to pass in that day [Stage 2], **that I will seek to destroy all the nations that come against Jerusalem. And** [in the brief Stage 3] **I will pour upon the house of David, and upon the inhabitants of Jerusalem, the spirit of grace and of supplications: and they shall look upon me whom they have pierced** [Jesus], **and they shall mourn for him, as one mourneth for his only son, and shall be in bitterness for him, as one that is in bitterness for his firstborn. In that day** [Stage 3, probably while the whole World rejoices over the death of The Two Witnesses,] **shall there be a great mourning in Jerusalem, as the mourning of Hadadrimmon in the valley of Megiddon [Armageddon]. And the land shall mourn, every family apart** [Zec 12 ...](#)

And [in Stage 4] **it shall come to pass, that in all the land, saith the LORD, two parts therein shall be cut off and die** [starting at The Abomination of Desolation]; **but the third shall be left therein** [—hiding, yes, but I'm guessing this also includes those who *flee*]. **And I will bring the third part through the fire, and will refine them as silver is refined, and will try them as gold is tried: they shall call on my name, and I will hear them: I will say, It is my people: and they shall say, The LORD is my God** [Zec 13:8-9](#).

First of all be **patient**. It will take the rest of the section to explain all the clarification

I've added to these passages. But I will. And to start with, **that day** that is repeatedly mentioned in Zechariah 12 must be in God's perspective. But it's really only a small part of a **day** to Him—or a small part of 1000 years. And we are presently only seeing the set up to this time that God is describing—though the actual start is imminent—much more imminent than The Rapture of the Church. This is because most of [Stage 1](#) must go on for some years—maybe decades—before The Rapture of the Church can occur, as you should now be ready to see.

But this is not an easy **revelation** because we not only need to bring with us everything we've learned so far, we must also add all these pieces to another puzzle. I mean God presents this **prophecy** in his usual 'transcendent' and 'layered' way. And this makes us have to work to make chronological sense of it. But if you know what's going on in Israel and the World, you'll be able to see that none of this is happening yet, because these stages begin with Israel becoming **a cup of trembling unto all the people round about** and **Jerusalem a burdensome stone for all people**. And no, in 2009 I don't think they have quite yet become this. But this coming 'state of affairs' is imminent.

And the difference between the first two stages can be seen by who is defending Israel. And sometimes God seems to be referring to both of these stages together. But in cases where God gives Israel the credit for defending herself, this is [Stage 1](#). in others He takes credit Himself; this is [Stage 2](#). Therefore [Stage 1](#) should be a time of unprecedented, undisputed, and absolute Israeli 'modern military superiority' over really anyone who might want to attack her. And this surely has not yet begun because of the recent somewhat successful attack of Hezbollah on Israel from Lebanon in 2007, and

because of Israel's only temporarily effective campaigns against the unceasing missile attacks from Hamas in Gaza in 2009, and because of the continuing open threats of Israel's annihilation from Iran. And beginning late in 2007 there is the renewed talks of dividing Jerusalem in favor of establishing a Palestinian state. But this seems less likely now given the failure of the partition-supporting interim Prime Minister, Tzipi Livni, to win enough support in the September 2008 elections to retain leadership. She would have pushed for a divided Jerusalem and created the opportunity for increased attacks on Jerusalem.

Thank God former Israeli Prime Minister Benjamin (Binyamin) Netanyahu regained sufficient support in the September elections to become Prime Minister again. He will surely block all plans to partition Jerusalem because he has already predicted increased attacks on Israel if Jerusalem is divided. But I also expect that this must all be part of God's plans for providing the motivation for the eventual deployment of unbeatable defense technology by Israel. And you can see the beginnings of this kind of super technology surfacing today. Such 'superior defensive capabilities' are just around the corner, and with them Israel will turn things around as God has revealed to Zechariah. This will be when...

...the governors of Judah [become] like an hearth of fire among the wood, and like a torch of fire in a sheaf; and they shall devour all the people round about, on the right hand and on the left [Zec 12:6a](#).

This is also the time when...

Jerusalem [as a result] shall be [fully] inhabited again in her own place [Zec 12:6b](#).

And this is when, if there is a wall built dividing Jerusalem, it will be torn down uncontested.

But this period is followed by Stage 2, most notably marked by The 6th Seal Judgment, which is when God will have to...

...smite every horse with astonishment, and his rider with madness: and I will open mine eyes upon the house of Judah, and will smite every horse of the people [who attack Israel] with blindness [Zec 12:4](#).

This is a time—as we can see by this description—when 'modern military technology' has become a thing of the past.

And we'll need the rest of this section to more fully develop this sequence of events. But we can deduce that sometime before The 6th Seal Judgment that 'modern military defenses' and other 'technologies' will no longer be available to Israel for her defense, nor to anyone else to attack her. And I suspect this change from Stage 1 to Stage 2 must mark the arrival of a new 'partner planet'—or the return of one of the previous

'visitors'. And this planet must be responsible for rendering most all modern technology inoperable and probably in more ways than one. But for now technology is still on the rise. And apparently Israel in the future will be able to defend herself like never before. But after that must come a time when only **the LORD** [can] **defend the inhabitants of Jerusalem...** This is when God says, ***I will seek to destroy all the nations that come against Jerusalem*** [Zec 12:9](#). And surely this time when God Himself defends Israel has not yet come.

And neither really has the time come when...

...the governors of Judah [become] ***like an hearth of fire among the wood, and like a torch of fire in a sheaf; and they shall devour all the people round about, on the right hand and on the left*** [Zec 12:6a](#).

We **know** this because Israel is still warring over her borders and is still openly threatened with annihilation from all sides. But Israeli-enforced peace is coming soon. And yes, Israel is being defended by God now, but He is allowing Israel to use man-made weapons in the process, though Israel has not yet achieved real security and peace. So 2009 must still be pre-[Stage 1](#). But Israel will establish a time of real peace by her superior technology. After that comes the time when God alone will defend Israel against many **armies** with hordes of riders on horses.

Stage [3](#) is the shortest stage and happens when Israel finally recognizes Jesus. It's when God says,

I will pour upon the house of David, and upon the inhabitants of Jerusalem, the spirit of grace and of supplications: and they shall look upon me whom they have pierced, and they shall mourn for him, as one mourneth for his only son, and shall be in bitterness for him, as one that is in bitterness for his firstborn. In that day shall there be a great mourning in Jerusalem [Zec 12:10-11](#).

So evidently sometime after Israel loses the ability to defend herself, and after God awesomely takes up her defense, the Jews finally recognize Jesus is the Messiah. But as we have already discussed, different groups of Jews seem to recognize Him at different times, though this passage in Zechariah seems to indicate that most of them will do so very late in The Beginning of Sorrows. And I'm guessing that each group's recognition helps trigger the recognition of the next. The 144,000 Jews must be the first big group to come to this **revelation** because they are identified as the **firstfruits** of the Jews, **born** and evidently shortly afterward **caught up** to Heaven. But remember that it appears that The 144,000 are raptured near the same time that Satan is **cast out** of Heaven and **cast down** to Earth, which seems to be when he comes down to 'resurrect' the Antichrist. If this is the case, then the 'not yet empowered' Antichrist probably dies about 3 days before The 144,000 are raptured, and he likely dies trying to kill The Two Witnesses. And if the Antichrist tries to kill The Two Witnesses first, this could mean that The Two Witnesses recognize or acknowledge Jesus before The 144,000 and may

really give their testimony about him first. Nonetheless, they appear to be the second group of Jews to be redeemed. But one way or another, near the end of The Beginning of Sorrows, it must become fairly common knowledge in Israel that Jesus is the Messiah, and this will be the cause of widespread **great mourning** in Israel. And the best time for this appears to be when the rest of the World is distracted with rejoicing over the death of The Two Witnesses.

But Jesus indicates that there will be some Jews who will be imprisoned or killed in Israel in The Beginning of Sorrows because they recognize Jesus long before most of the rest of the Jews. And the Messianic Movement—Jews who **believe** in Jesus—is growing in Israel even today. Of course these **believers** should 'disappear' in The Rapture of the Church. But their disappearance, as well as other awesome early spectacles in The Beginning of Sorrows, apparently wake up at least a few other Jews early on. But since Jesus promises us that these 'early risers' in Israel will be either killed or imprisoned, I'm guessing that this will limit their ability to disseminate the Gospel, at least until The Midterm Great Earthquake sets some of the ones that survive free. Then maybe some of them will lead the way to Petra.

This brings us to [Stage 4](#) in Zechariah's **prophecy**. Like the previous stages, it's described by God in a Jewish perspective. And it's an account of The Days of Vengeance. Specifically, God gives us the 'body count' of Israeli Jews along with the fate of the survivors. He tells us that at the end of The Days of Vengeance only a **third** of Israel **shall be left therein** alive, and the rest of the Jews **shall be cut off and die** [Zec 13:8](#). And God promises that He...

...will bring the third part through the fire, and will refine them as silver is refined, and will try them as gold is tried: they shall call on my name, and I will hear them: I will say, It is my people: and they shall say, The LORD is my God [Zec 13:9](#).

But there's a lot of confusion in this for me. I mean it occurs to me that the Jews that escape **to the wilderness** actually leave the country. But I'm still guessing that they're included in this **third**. And of course they must eventually somehow return to Israel alive. So I suppose this **third** refers to the Jews that **flee** plus the few that stay in Israel and somehow survive. And I also find it confusing that I can't tell whether the rest who are **cut off and die** are all **lost**. Because it occurs to me that some of these will '**die**' with a faith in Christ while some others will not. I mean The Rapture of the Tribulation Jews occurs early in The Days of Vengeance and seems to be included in these '**cut off**' Jews. And others throughout the remainder of The Great Tribulation will also be '**cut off and die**' with their faith intact and make later raptures. So do these percentages only apply to mortals and mortalities, or do they apply to immortals and immortality too?

Or to put it another way, I'm not sure whether God is talking only about physical life and death or also about spiritual life and death. Read [Zechariah 13:8-9](#) and mull it over. If God is talking only about physical life and death here, more than a **third** must actually be redeemed, because some that die will be redeemed. But if He is talking about spiritual life and death, some of

the final **'third'** must be redeemed by physically dying—unless this **'third'** doesn't include the Jews that **flee** the country, then there may really be more than this **'third'** again. And surely those who die without a faith in Christ are **'cut off'** from eternal life. But we should also remember that those who die are surely **'cut off'** from stations that other Jews and Gentiles can reach by surviving. Are you confused yet? I mean there are more than just two possible interpretations here. But we'll consider all this further in the next sections. And I can tell you we're still missing some important precepts developed in the remaining sections that we'll need to resolve this confusion. But I'll give you a hint to 'put on the back burner'. Adding the perspective of Stationism naturally changes all perspectives that do not include it. And we have accomplished our goal here. We have raised some good questions to **work** with.

Moving on to other confused perspectives, let me ask another question. Do you think it's easier to be saved in The Age of Grace with the help of The Ministry of The Holy Spirit, or in **other ages** when The Spirit is **out of the way**? Of course the **strong delusion** God will **send** during The Great Tribulation will make it harder. But other than that, do you think it's harder in **ages** without The Spirit at **work** like He is now? I think a case can be made for that—I guess I just did. But I don't think it's necessarily tougher outside The Age of Grace to get saved, just different. It's a difference between the **revelation** of God by **his Spirit** or by **his mighty hand**.

The Spirit of God is now actively, persuasively, and persistently convicting us of our sins more or less 'behind the scenes'. Those that become calloused to The Spirit by actively, persuasively, and persistently choosing to resist Him are doomed to **everlasting punishment**. Paul teaches that God eventually 'gives' **them over to a reprobate mind** [Rom 1:21-32](#), and such reprobates no longer have any hope, let alone the desire, to recover from their condition. And I mean that from a human perspective a person's fate can become sealed before death. But again, such a person really has to actively, persuasively, and persistently 'work' to get there. And The Spirit has many more ministries to try to prevent this from happening than just convicting us of sin. And it's really impossible to tell who is beyond help—except for God.

But things were different before The Age of Grace. Then God's active, persuasive, and persistent attempts to get man to acknowledge his sinfulness were more 'in his face'. He would humble the strongest of nations with His power, convicting them of their sinfulness and convincing them of his **love** for them by His outrageously awesome spectacles of destruction, deliverance, and/or provision. And this is what He will be doing again in The Great Tribulation.

Think about it. Imagine you witnessed God part the sea in front of you, or destroy an army in front of you, or miraculously feed you. While all the while an 'earthshaking planet' raged in the sky above. Or on the other hand, suppose you somehow survived a number of plagues that in a matter of days absolutely leveled your 'world-ruling' nation, and all just like that pesky **prophet** of God said it would happen. God doesn't do such things just to show off. He does them to **destroy the wicked** and **redeem** His people. And He does so more than just convincingly. While **the children of Israel** are still in Egypt God says,

...I will bring you out from under the burdens of the Egyptians, and I will rid you out of their bondage, and I will redeem you with a stretched out arm, and with great judgments [Exo 6:6](#)

So in the face of such spectacles, unless you already have a hopelessly **reprobate mind**, you can't help but reconsider your behavior, and respect the God of such incredible **wonders**. And by His 'heaven-and-earthshaking' methods, you can recognize that it's not only out of **anger**, but also out of **love** that God has **thundered in the heavens**, because He is a **deliverer to all them that trust in him** ([2 Samuel 22](#); [Psalm 18](#)). But **understand** that in the coming Great Tribulation that the **thunder** of God's voice in the Heavens will need to be heard louder and more persuasively than ever before, because it's for all those who failed to respond to the more gentle persuasion of The Spirit in The Age of Grace.

And I should remind you that Velikovsky's research suggests that the interacting atmospheres of planets in God's previous efforts to get mankind's attention evidently stirred up enough smoke and dust to obscure the view of His celestial handiwork from many perspectives—at least some of the time. Nevertheless, John shows us that throughout The Great Tribulation suchlike spectacles will cause people to **hide from the face of God** ([Rev 6:16](#)), and he saw in advance how **the rest of the men which were not killed by these plagues yet repented not** ([Rev 9:20](#), [16:9](#)), and that against all reason they **blasphemed God** ([Rev 16:9,11,21](#)), because they all **know** that it's God who brings all these **wonders** on the Earth. And we **know** the events are overwhelmingly awesome because Jesus says,

Men's hearts [will be] failing them for fear, and for looking after those things which are coming on the earth: for the powers of heaven shall be shaken [Luke 21:26](#).

And don't forget that God delivered the Jews out of Egypt...

...by temptations, by signs, and by wonders, and by war, and by a mighty hand, and by a stretched out arm, and by great terrors... [saying] ***Unto thee it was shewed, that thou mightest know that the LORD he is God; there is none else beside him*** [Deut 4:32-39](#).

And this is what God will do again in The Great Tribulation, except even more so. And men will **know** that these incredible **wonders** come from God.

But when another planet accosts the Earth like in the past, this time it will surely be seen approaching by the whole World before it arrives. And in this modern 'age of reason' you might expect that before things start to fall apart—and with the help of modern mass communications and propaganda—that the World will be led to think that they 'understand' the physical causes of the judgments that follow, even in the midst of unbelievably 'stirring and shaking exchanges'. Except we shouldn't forget that 'right off the bat' there will be those irritating and likely well-publicized Two Witnesses 'keeping score' for God. Still, the difference this time around is that we are now experiencing— as Gabriel promised Daniel we would—the time when

knowledge shall be increased [Dan 12:4](#). And by this I mean that in previous ages some have 'understood'—even documented—the comings and goings of these 'planet-gods', but they did so without our **increased knowledge**. So in the past they chalked it up to false gods—all surely with Satan's help. And these 'planet-gods', including Venus, Mars, the Sun, and the Moon, became the inspiration for many false religions. But in these modern times with modern paradigms, it would seem that modern people would be more inclined to chalk up these 'acts of God' to really, really 'astronomically unlucky', 'long-shot accidents' involving just natural physical laws. But again, John's record tells us that, generally speaking, that this will not be the case. Instead, where the Unholy Trinity isn't getting away with taking the credit, the World will generally be forced to blame God.

And again, during The Plague Judgments John tells us that most people...

...blasphemed the name of God, which hath power over these plagues: and they repented not to give him glory [Rev 16:9](#).

So God's judgments must be about as persuasive as The Spirit of God—just in another way. The displays of His power and control must be so awesome that the mind of modern man will be convinced that these spectacles come by **the hand of God**. And some, thank God, will recognize this as **the love of God** too. And you should **know** that He sometimes expresses His 'tough love' this way.

And all this will be adding to God's past spectacles that still influence the behavior of **the godly**—as well as **the ungodly**—to this very day. Indeed this is no 'cosmological accident'. You have to **understand** that there have been many such 'world-renowned, earthshaking, awesome, destructive, and supremely-respect-building' spectacles administered by God throughout all of the **other ages** that have more than adequately provided this **godly** 'influence'—a different kind of 'influence' than we **experience** now in **the dispensation of the grace of God... by the Spirit**. And this former and future more 'overt influence' of God to get man to repent of his sins is what [The Ages of Creation study](#) will be all about. And this brings us to how God will minister to His people, the Jews, in The Great Tribulation.

God **promises** His awesome personal defense of the Jews in The Great Tribulation in [Psalms 91](#). And surely this **promise** is most remarkably kept starting in [Stage 2](#) when it is God alone who defends Israel in The Beginning of Sorrows against all the nations who attack her. And this **promise** is also the **comfort** from God that,

He that dwelleth in the secret place of the most High shall abide under the shadow of the Almighty. I will say of the LORD, He is my refuge and my fortress: my God; in him will I trust. Surely he shall deliver thee from the snare of the fowler, and from the noisome pestilence. He shall cover thee with his feathers, and under his wings shalt thou trust: his truth shall be thy shield and buckler. Thou shalt not be afraid for the terror by night; nor for the arrow that flieth by day; Nor for the pestilence that walketh in darkness; nor for the destruction that wasteth at noonday. A thousand shall fall at thy side, and ten

thousand at thy right hand; but it shall not come nigh thee. Only with thine eyes shalt thou behold and see the reward of the wicked. Because thou hast made the LORD, which is my refuge, even the most High, thy habitation; There shall no evil befall thee, neither shall any plague come nigh thy dwelling.

With 'all hell breaking loose' around them, the Jews will be as safe as can be in Israel in The Beginning of Sorrows. And God alone will protect them in the latter half of it. Psalms 91 is not just a general **promise** but also a prophetic account of this coming protection. Yes, these **promises** must apply to lots of occasions where God has come to Israel's defense, but its best application will be in The 6th Seal Judgment. This is when God will need to protect Israel from all these things at once—and when Israel will not be able to defend herself anymore. And God will protect the Jews He 'gathers' to Israel up until The Abomination of Desolation. After that He will protect the ones who recognize Jesus, but especially those who **flee to the mountains** and **into the wilderness** where He will protect them throughout The Days of Vengeance in a 'sanctuary' **prepared** by Him.

And we can now see this special protection of God—including the protection Zechariah describes throughout these four stages—is all still yet to begin. And this places The Rapture of the Church even further away. This is because The Rapture won't take place until late in [Stage 1](#). And [Stage 1](#)—the period of Israel's uncontested, self-won security—may last decades. And remember that I'm no **prophet**. But by **rightly dividing the word of truth**—as anyone who will **continue in the word** and will **study to show** themselves **approved unto God** can—I can tell you that The Rapture will not be imminent until Israel is finally absolutely secure and at peace within her borders and with her neighbors. And you should be able to better **understand** how I'm speaking for God about all this in the next subsection.

[The Demise of the Red Horse in The Sixth Seal Judgment](#)

Next we're going to talk about one of the coming 'world-renowned, awesome, earthshaking, destructive, and supremely-respect-building' spectacles of God that are slated to occur early in The Great Tribulation. As usual it's all about the protection of the Jews. And we are now ready to confirm this event as the one that marks the transition from [Stage 1](#) to [Stage 2](#). This spectacle involves the biggest attack on Israel ever—unless you see **Armageddon** as an attack on Israel, which I don't. And Psalms 91 shows us how the overwhelming forces that are involved are completely defeated by God as they attempt to surround and attack Israel. These future invaders will experience the most awesome defense of Israel ever.

And there are other **scriptures** that tell us about the condition of Israel's economy and their status in the World just before this event occurs. They will also help us specifically identify **all the nations** that to no avail attack Israel at this time. Particularly, they will tell us details about the economy and

status of Russia, and pretty much the same about many Southwest Asian and North African Muslims countries, and even some about The U.S. and their allies who will evidently interject their protests into this conflict centered in The God Zone. And we will **learn** how in the strictest Calvinistic sense just how deeply God can get involved in war. I mean, no one will really have any choice in the matter.

A lot of this story about God's most spectacular defense of Israel in The Beginning of Sorrows is given to us by God through the Prophet Ezekiel. In the first 6 verses of [Chapter 38](#) he identifies the many countries that will presume to attack Israel early in The Great Tribulation when they will believe her to be defenseless. The principal perpetrator and ring leader of this attack is **Gog**. Everyone, including present day Israelis themselves, identify **Gog** as 'the ruler of Russia'. **Gog** apparently means 'king'. And this king lives **in the land of Magog**, and he is also called **the chief prince** of the kingdoms **of Meshesh and Tubal**, and is further identified in other translations as "the chief prince of Rosh". God tells us about a future attack of **Israel** by **Gog**, saying,

And thou shalt come from thy place out of the north parts, thou, and many people with thee, all of them riding upon horses, a great company, and a mighty army: And thou shalt come up against my people of Israel, as a cloud to cover the land; it shall be in the latter days, and I will bring thee against my land, that the heathen may know me, when I shall be sanctified in thee, O Gog, before their eyes [Verses 15-16](#) (see also [Eze 39:1-2 & 7](#)).

Now since this conclusion that **Gog** is the ruler of Russia is so widely accepted, and so much so in Hebrew speaking Israel that you can regularly see Russia referred to in their daily Hebrew newspapers as "**Rosh**", and since Russia in modern times has always been the chief provider of weapons to the Muslim World against Israel, and since there is plainly no other country that could fit the part better than Russia—including her northern geography—we'll leave it at that. **Gog** is 'the ruler of Russia'.

Former career KGB officer and present Prime Minister of Russia—former President of Russia—and **Time** Magazine's 2008 "Man of the Year" because of his leadership of Russia's present remarkable resurgence, is Vladimir Putin. And it should be no surprise that he's taken a lot of heat worldwide recently for accusations of draconian tactics against those who would voice opposition to the newly revived communist bent to his regime. And many of these voices of opposition are being silenced rather quickly, even far outside the country as you may have heard. It leads me to believe that there won't be anyone who will be able to do anything to quell this revival of communism in Russia, because it's really God who is raising it up. Indeed this must be part of God's plan. But the purpose God has in mind for Russia will probably not come to pass as soon as these circumstances might lead you to think, as we will see.

In [Verse 4](#) we see just how deeply God can get his **hooks** into a nation like Russia. And the **LORD** may very well be speaking to Putin, assuming he's still in charge of things for years to come—a reign as long as Fidel Castro's would

probably be sufficient—or God may be speaking to one of Putin’s successors, when He says,

I will turn thee back, and put hooks into thy jaws, and I will bring thee forth, and all thine army, horses and horsemen, all of them clothed with all sorts of armour, even a great company with bucklers and shields, all of them handling swords.

It’s clear that this 'pull to war' is all God’s doing. **Gog** will be as helpless about engaging Israel as a 'fish on a hook'. And this is how God makes plain that He is taking all of the credit for Russia’s decision to attack Israel. He will irresistibly 'bait' her with **temptations** —just like He will later 'bait' China to attack the vulnerable Antichrist Kingdom by drying up the **Euphrates**. In this **same** way He will 'tempt' Russia to lead this attack on Israel. He will somehow make the Jews appear to be all of a sudden recognizably defenseless, and I expect this 'defenselessness' will come about just as quickly as the **Euphrates** is dried up. And since these 'hook-drawn' events happen not too long after the extremely deadly 4th Seal Judgment, God likely adds **famine** and **pestilences** to the **temptations** involved, making it so that anyone who can pick up a **sword** will be really hungry for **spoil**. And shortly before The 6th Seal Judgment, Russia should be plenty hungry for it.

And here again we see the clues to the kind of warfare that will be used in this attack. And because of the nature of the attack, you might first think that it takes place back in Biblical times, except that we will easily see that such an attack has never happened before. This event is too spectacular and identified in too much detail to have been overlooked in history. And it’s a popular conclusion that this is a future event. But in this age of modern warfare it’s also popular to reduce Ezekiel to the 'primitive man' perspective. I mean it’s commonly assumed that Ezekiel is just doing his best to describe modern military hardware and WMD’s using ancient terms. But Ezekiel plainly describes a war that **will** include an **army** with **horses and horsemen**, and soldiers with body **armour, shields, and swords**, and also **bow** and **arrows** ([Eze 39:3](#)). And the descriptions of destruction here seem to better match what God has done in the past, and not really what modern man might do in the future, that is, unless you’re already aware of what God has done in the past, and can follow all the clues, because then you can **understand** that God is really **the same yesterday, and to day, and for ever**, and that man will often be limited to these options too.

And it’s not hard to see that Russia will not be the only nation 'lured' into this attack. God tells us that there are many presently Muslim countries that will willingly join Russia. Of course nowadays the Muslims are always looking for revenge against Israel and attack them anytime they think they can get away with it—including frequent suicide missions. But so far these efforts have proved not to be enough to bring Israel down. In fact I would expect that even the 'flood of armies' described in Ezekiel 38-39 would also be defeated by Israel’s defenses given the prophetic projections of her ever-improving 'modern defense capabilities'. But this defense of Israel will be acknowledged by all **the heathen** to be by **the hand of God**. So this attack must be at a time when Israel and everyone else no longer have 'modern military

capabilities', making this type of **storm** attack irresistible. And I mean this attack is not made or defended by nuclear or modern man-made weapons of any kind. It's made by **many people** against numerically defenseless Israel. But God, who must be speaking to faithful Israeli Jews during this attack, says,

A thousand shall fall at thy side, and ten thousand at thy right hand; but it shall not come nigh thee.

And surely this **comfort** God offers Jews will apply in this worst-ever **storm** attack described by Ezekiel. But adding Zechariah's perspective, we can see that it cannot involve **Stage 1** modern manmade defenses. And I don't mean that Israel's **Stage 1** defense of herself will not be impressive and undeniably effective. I just mean God's **Stage 2** defense of Israel will be much more impressive.

But those who sometimes forget that God doesn't need man's help might suppose that Russia could employ a satellite-based network capable of producing EMP's—electromagnetic pulses—to disarm everyone's technological defenses in order to get away with such a **storm** attack. This is not likely because by this point I don't see any room for such satellites in Earth's orbit anymore due to the recent positioning of a 'satellite-eating' planet in close proximity to the Earth. And I'm guessing that this planet will induce its own incredible but 'natural' EMP exchanges with the Earth—disabling technology worldwide—working as part of God's plan to provoke Russia and the Muslims into thinking they can get away with attacking Israel. And surely this planet will provide all the other more familiar 'Biblical phenomena' occurring during this attack too.

Such an irresistible 'low-tech **storm** attack' against Israel also fits the time when it occurs in The Beginning of Sorrows. It must be when Russia is again hungry for **spoil**, after she first finishes reconquering her former holdings, and evidently after the devastating **plagues** of The 4th Seal Judgment. And it's also likely before The 2nd Egyptian War, before Russia is taken out of the Antichrist's way. So this attack fits perfectly during The 6th Seal Judgment as the totality of this **study** confirms.

There are also some good reasons why a planet to planet EMP is likely God's primary provocation for this attack. First, 'temptation' for this attack cannot come because of the disarray after The 1st Great Earthquake of The 6th Seal Judgment because we will see that this earthquake occurs during this attack. This **great earthquake** is part of God's defense of Israel. But an earlier occurring EMP is certainly one thing that could cause the Russians and Muslims to think they can get away with a massive foot and horseback attack on what they perceive to be a technologically and numerically defenseless Israel.

And **Gog** is not likely to attack if he thinks Israel could defend herself even better than she can today. And **Gog** would not use an **army** with...

...horses and horsemen, all of them clothed with all sorts of armour, even a great company with bucklers and shields, all of them handling swords...

...if they still had modern capabilities. He would only do so if both he and the Israelis were reduced to what we would now consider 'ancient defenses' which would leave Israel vastly outnumbered. And a God-sent planetary EMP could possibly facilitate all this.

Also, we saw how The U.S. and their allies successfully back down the Antichrist with warships in the Mediterranean. This seems to place The 2nd Egyptian War before this supposed EMP. But if The U.S. can get some of her WWII warships 'out of mothballs' and operational—or simply retrofit and adapt newer ships rendered 'dead in the water' by the EMP—then this 2nd Egyptian War could occur after this attack of Russia and the Muslims on Israel. And it makes sense that the Antichrist would be emboldened to attack and spoil Egypt if God has already rendered Russia and the entire Muslim World helpless in their attack on Israel. And Egypt at this time would appear to be the next best accessible **spoil** for The Antichrist Kingdom.

It also makes sense that that The U.S. could provide a formidable sea defense in the Mediterranean, even after the EMP, protecting defenseless Egypt across the sea from the Antichrist's then Europe-centered kingdom. But it also makes sense The U.S. could do nothing but voice their protests against the earlier even more massive land-based attack by Russia and the Muslims against Israel, because The U.S. would have no way to stand in the way of such a **storm** attack.

So Russia may very well be taking advantage of a planet to planet EMP that disables everyone when they and the Muslims attack Israel. But we **know** that their coming is part of the **strong delusion** sent by God that brings them out. He makes them think that they can get away with spoiling Israel. And if it's an EMP that renders all technology useless and tempts Russia to attack Israel, it will be awesomely provided by God. I imagine it could occur when the Earth 'catches' its new 'companion planet', leading not too long thereafter to The 1st Great Earthquake in The 6th Seal Judgment. And I also see how God uses this planet to defend Israel from Russia's attack, and how this devastation of Russia and the Muslim World is followed by the Antichrist's attempted 2nd Egyptian War when he mistakenly thinks he can spoil Egypt, not expecting to find anyone else in his way.

But certainly all of these events must be near the middle of The Beginning of Sorrows. And whatever Russia's and the Muslims' reasons for the return to this 'old style' of warfare, it will not succeed. And however Israel is disarmed, surely her defenselessness is God's 'fishhook', and only He will be in a position to stop the attack. But there's more to say about the likelihood of God's incredible planet to planet EMP—or EMP's—in due course.

The Muslim nations involved in this future attack on Israel are clearly identified for the most part. [Verse 5-6](#) specifically name...

Persia, Ethiopia, and Libya with them... [and] Gomer, and all his bands; the house of Togarmah of the north quarters, and all his bands.

Persia probably includes all of present day Syria, Iraq, Iran, and possibly even Pakistan and Afghanistan, and maybe even the several other Muslim-majority countries to the north presently huddled near the eastern shore of the Caspian Sea. Most of these nations play an adversarial role against Israel

and will likely join in on the attack.

Also there will be the help of **Gomer** and **the house of Togarmah of the north quarters**. In [Genesis 3:10](#), **Togarmah** is listed as the son of **Gomer** making him the grandson of **Japheth**, son of **Noah**. My encyclopedia tells me that the descendants of **Togarmah** are the Turkish-speaking peoples and tribes that live in the neighborhood of the Black and Caspian Seas. But it also indicates that the traditions of two other smaller countries in this region, Georgia and Armenia, believe that they descended from this people too. However over 80% of Georgians are members of the 'sacrament-and-liturgy-driven' Georgian Orthodox Church, and over 95% of Armenians are members of the similarly driven Armenian Apostolic Church—this time the founders professed to be Thaddeaus and Bartholomew, respectively. So these two countries will instead likely lean to the whims of the Antichrist, while predominantly Muslim Turkey seems sufficient and most likely to fill these shoes.

Some have also suggested that **Gomer** is now represented by Germany. And Germany has been sympathetic overall to Muslims against Jews in recent history. But with Germany surrounded by and filled with Catholics, she will much more likely side with the Antichrist. As for Georgia and Armenia, they may participate by first being assimilated by Russia, though they will inevitably later more naturally fall in line with the Antichrist. But really the same goes for all the Muslim countries near the southern border of Russia, except they may not fall in line so easily.

Russia and these northern predominantly Muslim countries will naturally draw on the help and Muslim leadership to the south of Israel—especially from **'Ethiopia'**. And at this time we should expect that **'Ethiopia'** must be controlled by **the king of the south**, who must control most all of Northeast Africa. So this region is obviously not just present day Ethiopia, but primarily **Egypt** and probably also includes the significantly Muslim countries of Sudan, Eritrea, Djibouti, and Somalia. But ongoing intertribal rivalries within these Northeast African countries seem to show that more time is needed before a sufficiently dominant faction will arise that could help lead any attack on Israel. But we **know** that Gabriel in Daniel 11 implies that this region of Northeast Africa will again become a leader of the Muslim World—something like it was during The Six Day War against Israel in 1967—except this time even richer and more powerful. We **know** this because **Egypt** will eventually build and field **a very great and might army** [Dan 11:25](#). And this **army** will be able to contend with the Antichrist Kingdom in Europe early in The Beginning of Sorrows. But it must also be a major player in the attack with Russia on Israel.

And it's no surprise that **Libya** will also join the Russians and their Muslim neighbors in this attack. We already **know** that after The 3rd Egyptian War ([Dan 11:40](#)) that both the **Libyans and the Ethiopians** will 'cozy up' to the Antichrist ([Dan 11:43](#)). But this must be after he conquers all of North Africa and after he 'scatters' the Jews in Israel ([Dan 11:41](#)). And the Antichrist will be able to dominate North Africa and Southwest Asia at this time because Russia will have become a nation that no one will want to 'cozy up' to anymore.

And other North African and Southwest Asian Muslim countries may be involved in the attack on Israel in The 6th Seal Judgment too. The more that

participate in this attack, the better it will eventually work out for the Antichrist because for their efforts these nations will only eliminate or diminish themselves as rivals that he must later content with.

Still there will be a few Muslim countries on the Arabian Peninsula who either openly protest this Russian attack or simply will not participate. And some think that some of this dissention also comes from certain Northeast African nations. This makes sense in that Ethiopia and Eritrea are presently both about half 'Catholic' if you include Oriental Orthodox Church membership—a church that predictably chooses the Apostle Philip as its founder (see [Act 8:5-40](#)). By-the-way, I should repeat that any of these claims of the Catholic or Orthodox Churches of specific 'apostolic succession' only fraudulently establish their credibility, but these false claims evidently also make for powerful churches. So the strength of 'Catholics' in these countries might place them among those that protest Russia's attack if they can get the upper hand—like they will in Europe. I mean it may be more likely that the Catholic and Oriental Orthodox Churches of Ethiopia and Eritrea will get their act together than that the Muslim factions surrounding them will—except in this case we can't ignore that these 'Catholics' are surrounded by a lot of Muslims. But it should be on the Antichrist's mind not to let these supporters of his go to waste. So I expect they may eventually assist in the Antichrist's 'mop up' of the region—unless they are overwhelmingly slaughtered. Then, they will at least be more motivation for the 'mop up'.

And we will get to more of the specifics of which countries are the best candidates to join the 'vocal opposition' against this grand assault on Israel a little later. For now you can be sure that whoever supports or dissents, Satan and the Antichrist will try to take the credit for God's awesome work in repelling this **storm** of an attack. They will surely try to spin it as the defeat their enemies and the protection of their supporters. But we will also see that they can have only limited success with this strategy at best.

In [Verses 7-12](#), God gives us an overview of the 'marching orders' for Russia and their Muslim accomplices, and identifies His involvement too. He also begins to identify Israel as the target and begins to speak to their situation at the time of the attack. In Verse 7 God tells Russia that her responsibility to these Muslim countries **that are assembled unto** her is to be **a guard unto them**—their leader and protector. You could say that Russia has been playing this role since before Israel became a nation—providing the Muslim World with weapons and tactical supervision for all their wars against Israel. And in this future invasion Russia will again be running the show except this time she will be 'mobilizing' her own entire army to participate in the attack too.

In Verse 8 God confirms that this attack will take place in the distant future from the time of Ezekiel's **prophecy**, specifically, **After many days**. And though Israel has miraculously defended herself several times in recent history, we are obviously still looking for events as spectacular as the ones described in this **prophecy**. We are also looking for Israel to reach a level of security that is unprecedented. And in this still necessarily future period we'll be expecting that both Russian and Muslim troops will...

...come into the land that is brought back from the sword [or "recovered from war"], **and is gathered out of many people, against the mountains of Israel, which have been always waste: but it is brought forth out of the nations, and they shall dwell safely all of them.**

So we can see this time to be approaching. But it's not here yet. Certainly **the land** that has been reoccupied by **Israel** was a **waste** land from the time they left it to the time they got it back. And certainly Jews from around the World are in the process of being **gathered out of many people, against the mountains of Israel**. And surely **Israel** is being **brought forth out of the nations** to prominence. (Beware—modern translations alert!) This process begins after WWI when they become a new British colony in 1919 —initiated by the Balfour Declaration—and accelerates after WWII after they declare themselves an independent nation in 1948.

And this return of Jews to Israel is observably still going on today. My guess is that it doesn't really end until that very last Jew dies near the end of The Beginning of Sorrows, which should be just in time to be resurrected and transported from **Abraham's Bosom** to **Israel** where the rest of the surviving Jews will be **gathered** in order for them to **choose** their fates. But most Jews that die between The Resurrection and the end of The Beginning of Sorrows that end up in **Abraham's Bosom** should die before the start of The Great Tribulation. So they'll miss this revealing Russia-led attack and the rest of God's awesome and 'heart-changing' ministry to Jews during The Beginning of Sorrows. And this leads me to think that these Jews raptured into the chaos in Israel at the end of The Beginning of Sorrows—likely at The Midterm Great Earthquake—will need the subterranean preaching of The Two Witnesses to have any clue to what is going on. Of course they will also have the second-hand reports that surely are continuously coming down to them by those dying along the way. I mean do you think these dead Jews won't talk? (Read with a New York-Jewish accent if you can.) But however it goes, God's purpose will be to **reveal** Himself to His people. He will persuade His people one way or another that He is their Father, and finally that Jesus is His Son.

But there are a couple other required conditions described in Verse 8 that are plainly still developing. At the time of the attack, Israel and its people are described to be...

...the land that is brought back from the sword [or "recovered from war"]... **and they shall dwell safely all of them.**

And I mean you could say that Israel is in the process of being **brought back from the sword** where they will eventually be able to **dwell safely all of them**, but at this point I have to say they haven't fully reached such a condition. Starting at the Annapolis Summit, November 27, 2007, new negotiations arranged by The U.S. were restarted for Israel to reconsider giving back all the land they gained since their independence in 1948 for which their Arab neighbors would promise peace. This at least tells us there is still not yet peace or safety. But should these negotiations 'succeed', this can only result in a further delay in the coming peace and security of Israel

because such concessions have always only resulted in intensified attacks on Israel, certainly not in more security or peace. Only stunning and overwhelming displays of military superiority by Israel can possibly bring the kind of peace to this region described by Ezekiel. And evidently Israel has not yet provided a convincing enough display of this kind. But if you **know** what to **watch** for, you can see that Israel is working on these kinds of incredibly advanced defense systems now. I envision from technology presently being developed that Israel will one day soon be able to detect any weapon and threat, and not only stop it but destroy the source as appropriate, and with astounding efficiency, making the hope of any attack futile, at least until God Himself disarms her.

And surely Ezekiel's **prophecy** makes clear that Muslims will never stop hating Israel. And surely the peace that exists before Russia's attack must come by Israel's overwhelming ability to defend herself. So this [Stage 1](#), pretribulation and early tribulation period is when modern, man-made technology must play a significant role. But when Russia and her accompanying **bands... storm** Israel on horseback with **shields** and **swords**, this can only be a good strategy because The Technological Age has come to an end. And this is likely due to the arrival of that technology-disabling planet in the sky that God uses, among other purposes, to draw Russia and the Muslims out against Israel. But again, disabling everyone's modern strategic defense capabilities must mean disabling Israel's too, but it also means that God intends to show the World how spectacularly he can defend His people all by Himself from then on.

But a massive planet to planet EMP in The 6th Seal Judgment would not be soon enough for Russia and the Muslims to prepare for such an attack. So I expect it will occur at least by the 4th Seal Judgment. Such a complete and immediate 'shutdown' of technology would make war accessible to everyone formerly held back by modern strategic defenses. It would become more a numbers game, where the consequences of **famine** and **pestilence** provoke war for survival. And a 'globe to globe' EMP in a period when people are starving would provoke the kind of worldwide war that Jesus describes in The Beginning of Sorrows. So after the Antichrist and Russia consolidate control in their regions, this seems to me to be the time when **Gog** gets this idea that he can get away with attacking Israel on horseback—an idea he evidently would have not considered possible before. And God will evidently respond to this attack with The 1st Great Earthquake, and He will certainly get everyone's attention.

So before the start of The Great Tribulation I'm expecting some super technological weapons and defenses to be developed in Israel. But I'm not just expecting them to be developed. I'm expecting one or more overwhelming displays of this force that will finally bring a period of peace that will exist in Israel until the point when the whole World is rendered technologically helpless. And this will draw out the Russians and Muslims, but also likely all the **war** released in The 4th Plague Judgment too. Of course such Israeli military superiority will make it easier for the Antichrist to negotiate an international peace treaty too. In this [Stage 1](#) period before the start of The Great Tribulation, because of Israel's invulnerability, peace will be the only option. And it will be the only thing the Antichrist has to use against them.

And since this is one of the points I promised to **prove** in the introduction, let's go through it one more time. Anyone who knows anything about 'Middle East Muslims' know that peace in that region is not possible until either Israel is destroyed or she is so militarily superior that attacking her is unthinkable. And think about if Israel had lasers or other weapons that could track and shoot down any incoming missile or aircraft, and also somehow simultaneously retaliate by tracking chemical or thermal trajectories back to their original launch points and destroy them too. Betcha these kinds of defenses in Israel are a matter of time. Then, even pesky Hezbollah and Hamas 'over-the-wall' missile attacks would prove useless and self-destructive. And Israeli cities should eventually have everywhere-present sensors that could simultaneously distinguish any bomb chemicals, high levels of anxiety, and even a person's DNA. And suchlike detection and identification technologies will make even suicide bombing virtually impossible.

Of course these specifics are speculative but I've read in scientific periodicals that most of these kinds of technologies are already in development. And unquestionably, for Israel to survive and **dwell safely** they must convince their neighbors that there is no hope of any kind of success in attacking them. And this will necessarily require a display of Israel's vastly superior, technologically advanced both offensive and defensive military prowess.

And **Gog** will have no idea that he can defeat Israel until these defenses of Israel's are disabled during some of the awesome displays of God's prowess. And God will render Israel defenseless so that only He will be able to defend her. Again, this view places the arrival of a 'planet in the sky' that will somehow disable the World's technological capabilities sometime before this attack by Russia and the Muslim World. And again, the time of this attack coincides with The 1st Great Earthquake of The 6th Seal Judgment because we will see that God will use this earthquake to defend Israel during the attack. And a previously occurring EMP would be the opening for **Gog**. He will think he can **storm** Israel with numbers because the only thing left to fight with will be numbers. And we **know** that by The 6th Seal Judgment God will reduce the best conventional military offensives to **riders on horses** with **shields** and **swords** from then on.

In any event, this time when Israel is **brought back from the sword** and living **safely** must be a time when they have survived passed a period of wars to a time when the threat of them has passed. And Israel has not yet reached this period of 'peace and safety' by this writing, and I don't expect they will anytime real soon. This is another glaring reason why The Rapture of the Church will also not likely occur anytime real soon either. My present perspective leads me to guess that we'll need to give it another decade or two. But there is more detail to talk about relating to this **prophecy** that will improve this perspective.

Looking back over the detail of the rise of the Antichrist and his kingdom provided by Gabriel in Daniel 11, we can see how it fits into John's allegorical vision of The 1st Seal Judgment—the first judgment 'opened' by Jesus in The Great Tribulation. Johns sees...

...a white horse: and he that sat on him had a bow; and a crown was given unto him: and he went forth conquering, and to conquer.

This **white horse**, released upon the World by Jesus, is most likely the Antichrist. And his rise to power involves him going **forth conquering, and to conquer**. First of all, he will be involved with **conquering** his own kingdom which in this case should be mostly a persecution of Protestants and Jews. Next, besides continuing to persecute Protestants and Jews, he will double-cross the Muslims in his kingdom—likely violating a behind the scenes non-aggression pact between Catholics and Muslims—and in the process provoke **Egypt** and the rest of The Muslim World. And in this early stage of The Beginning of Sorrows Israel must still be militarily superior to everyone, so the Antichrist will not think to attack them yet.

In The 2nd Seal Judgment and in the same way Jesus releases Russia to go on a campaign of 'military expansionism' too. John records,

...there went out another horse that was red: and power was given to him that sat thereon to take peace from the earth, and that they should kill one another: and there was given unto him a great sword [or 'great military power'] [Rev 6:4](#).

So evidently right after the Antichrist takes control of his empire, **Gog** will begin to retake his—the former U.S.S.R. And evidently not long after **Gog** finishes reestablishing himself, his 'powerful' but 'hungry' nation will be provoked by God to **take a spoil** in 'suddenly defenseless' Israel.

Now surely the Antichrist's **white horse** rides throughout The Great Tribulation, becoming much more powerful in the second half. But it looks like the **red** horse doesn't ride beyond The 6th Seal Judgment. And the remaining descriptions in Ezekiel 38-39 seem to show that God's 'planet-powered' judgments must bring absolute defeat to this **great** military power at the time of her attack on Israel. The point is that if the rising **white** Antichrist Empire and the rising **red** Russian Empire are the most significant 'horses' in the race **to take peace from the earth** in The God Zone, and if the **white horse** isn't the first to attack Israel, then it must be the **red** one that does. And surely Russia—through her evidently initially successful 'expansionist wars'—will cause many to **kill one another**. And if God didn't stop her at The 6th Seal Judgment she might otherwise be unstoppable—at least in the God Zone. So God's actions at this stage should turn out to be to the Antichrist's advantage. I mean otherwise, Russia would eventually come after him.

The 'low-tech **storm** attack' is described in [Verse 9](#). God convinces the Russian and Muslim troops to...

...come like a storm, [and] thou shalt be like a cloud to cover the land, thou, and all thy bands, and many people with thee.

From this description it's no wonder that any dissenting nations will only be able to complain. And this would even be difficult for a militarily superior Israel to defend against. But it will not be for God. He's got 'smart weapons'

that will necessarily put all of man's efforts to **shame**. And undoubtedly, **the Lord GOD... shall also** [make these things] **come to pass...**

In [Verse 10](#) God tells us that He **shall** [make] **things come into** [Gog's] **mind, and** [make him] **think an evil thought**. This takes 'thought police' to a whole other level. But we already **know** that God admits that He does **create evil** [Isa 45:7](#). And sometimes you have to take it on faith that He does it for **good** reasons. But not so much this time. Here you can see for yourself that God will use the **evil** He puts in **Gog's mind** against him, and for the **good** of Israel.

In [Verses 11-12](#) God reveals the **evil** plan that He will 'implant' in **Gog's** head. He makes **Gog** think and then...

...say, I will go up to the land of unwalled villages; I will go to them that are at rest, that dwell safely, all of them dwelling without walls, and having neither bars nor gates, To take a spoil, and to take a prey; to turn thine hand upon the desolate places that are now inhabited, and upon the people that are gathered out of the nations, which have gotten cattle and goods, that dwell in the midst of the land.

Here we see more detail about Israel's coming time of strength, peace, and safety, but also of prosperity and **rest**. We see again that they will **dwell safely**, but this time we see this 'safety' will be accomplished in **unwalled villages** and **without walls**, and where **neither bars nor gates** will be needed for security. Again, this indicates further advanced technology than is seen today—where Israel's security **walls** will no longer be needed for protection! And we can expect that not only Israel's former **desolate places** will be gone, but that Israelis will prosper with an abundance of **cattle and goods**.

In the last century we have already seen the worst part of this **latter days** journey of theirs. It started with the Balfour Declaration of 1919 when the Jews finally got back access to their land. And they have come a long way. But again, they're plainly not there yet. The land is clearly no longer **desolate**, and it's now one growing in **cattle and goods**. But now Israel plainly does not **dwell safely... without walls**. In fact Israel has recently built hundreds of miles of the most formidable border security walls ever built. And they are specifically to protect Israelis from the Muslims terrorist just on the other side. And security **walls** are still being built everywhere in Israel. For example, at the time of this writing, Israel is building a 26 foot (8 m) concrete wall around the city of Bethlehem as this city is now in Palestinian control and a continuing terrorist threat (**TIME**, December 31, 2007, p.13). All such walls in Israel are for security because there is no peace. And at this point there can be nothing near 'safety' without them. So plainly the time for this attack by Russia and the Muslims is still a ways off. Israel must improve her defensive and security capabilities to the point where no one will have any hope of attacking her. And these coming capabilities will not require security **walls** to be effective.

So what must happen before this **prophecy** can be completely fulfilled is that these **walls** must be torn down! And before that Israelis will need a flawlessly effective way to defend themselves—so effective that no one will

any longer presume to try to attack her. But many of the surrounding Muslim radicals are persistent to say the least. This is why I say that things must get worst before they will get better. Israel may have to repeatedly demonstrate their coming invulnerable defenses on stubborn Muslim radicals, both at short and long range, before they will 'take the hint'. And only then can the peace begin. And demonstrations like this are not necessarily immediately in sight. At best I can only say that we may be near the end of the 'wall-building' stage.

In fact, remember that along with the presently ongoing 'road to peace' plan—the negotiations to give the pre-1948 holdings of Palestine back to the Muslims—is also talk of building another 'Berlin wall' dividing Jerusalem. Indeed if East Jerusalem is 'given back' to the Palestinians so they can establish their new capital there, another wall would seem a necessity. And clearly we're before the time when such a wall is built, let alone very close to the time that the presently nearly 500-mile-long Israeli boarder security wall comes down. I mean there will need to be a lot of walls torn down once it's deemed 'safe' to do so, and just tearing them all down is going to take some time.

And it should be a good while after this that **Gog** and his **bands** will **come...**

...To take a spoil, and to take a prey; to turn thine hand upon the desolate places that are now inhabited, and upon the people that are gathered out of the nations, which have gotten cattle and goods, that dwell [safely] in the midst of the land [without walls, and having neither bars nor gates].

Again, because of The 4th Seal Judgment the World will be hungry. And all nations will be looking for **spoil**. And at this time no nation will be stronger than Russia. And also at this time no nation will be so seemingly vulnerable but so rich in **cattle and goods** as Israel.

In [Verse 13](#) we see the dissenting 'complainers'. These are the ones that will bring the 'vocal opposition' against this attack. The first of these protesters are **Sheba, and Dedan**. My encyclopedia says the location of **Sheba** is disputed. Some say it's present day Ethiopia (and Eritrea). And we have already made the 'half Catholic' case for protestors in this region. Others say it's present day Yemen on the southwestern end of the Arabian Peninsula. But this disagreement leads me to think that some may be confusing **Sheba** with **Seba**. These are both descendants of **Ham** and his son **Cush** [Gen 10:6-7](#). And these names also appear in the line of **Shem** too. The **Sheba** in the line of **Shem** is named in [Gen 10:28](#). He is the son of **Joktan**. And maybe it's the **Seba** in the line of **Shem** in [Psalms 72:10](#) where both **Sheba and Seba** are mentioned together. Here they are implied to be **kings** that are both roughly east of Solomon's kingdom in Israel. This would seem to be on the present day Arabian Peninsula.

And it's apparently because of such distinctions that some also place '**Sheba**' near the Persian Gulf more in the center of present day Saudi Arabia. For this perspective see the [Map of THE WORLD AS KNOWN TO THE HEBREWS ACCORDING TO THE MOSAIC ACCOUNT](#) on the following page. But **understand** I only take this map as another man's 'studied' guess, though

he surely made an honorable effort to sort it all out from *scripture*. In the process he found two locations for '**Seba**' and three for '**Havilah**'. This again is because *scripture* tells us that both **Shem** and **Ham** have descendants named '**Seba**' and '**Havilah**' as the map indicates. But this kind of duplication on the map is not only because of identically named descendants in different lines. It's also because of migration or expansion. Still, *scripture* records that both **Ham** and **Shem** have descendants named **Sheba** while there is only one **Sheba** on the map. And the one on the map is identified as the descendant of **Ham** (highlighted in yellow) who is also the son of **Cush** [Gen 10:7](#). However on the map in the line of **Shem** we also find **Joktan** [Gen 10:25](#) who is the father of the other **Sheba** [Gen 10:28](#).

But there is more confusion we need to address. Maybe you noticed that sometimes '**Ethiopia**' (or **Cush** in the Hebrew) encompasses '**Egypt**' (or **Mizraim** in the Hebrew— brother of **Cush** [Gen 10:6](#)) and that sometimes it appears to be the other way around (e.g., [Gen 2:13](#) vs. [Dan 11:25, 42-43](#)). And other times '**Ethiopia**' is described as separate from '**Egypt**' just as these two brothers are distinct. In these cases **Ethiopia** is south of **Egypt**

(e.g. [Eze 29:10](#)) evidently including present day Sudan and Ethiopia.

THE WORLD AS KNOWN TO THE HEBREWS ACCORDING TO THE MOSAIC ACCOUNT.



SONS OF



JAPHET

SONS OF



HAM

SONS OF



SHEM

and EBER
with his descendents the
Hebrews Ishmaelites
and Edomites.

Extent of the ancient
Assyrian Empire.

The problem is that if Ezekiel's **Sheba** is somewhere or near 'Ethiopia', it will be hard to positively identify exactly where. Except again, it would seem likely that the apparently Cushite but undeniably Catholic descendants in this region would side against Russia and the other Muslims assuming they survive at all. But maybe you remember that some of the descendants of Ham are 'cursed' by Noah while the descendants of Shem are 'blessed' by him (Genesis 9:20-27). This leads me to think that it's the descendants of Shem—somewhere on the Arabian Peninsula—who are the ones who will join the 'vocal dissent' against this attack. And this might be the region on the southernmost corner of the Arabian Peninsula which in this case is the land of Seba or present day Yemen. Then again, remember that Seba is distinguished from Seba in Palms 72:10, and both are apparently somewhere in Israel. And the Seba that is connected to Dedan Gen 10:7 is supposedly an area on the present day Arabian Peninsula but more on the Persian Gulf. An entire region was supposedly settled by the descendants of both Ham and his son Cush as indicated on the map. But really there's another obvious reason why any group of Muslims on the Arabian Peninsula—even in North Africa—would oppose the intrusion of the entire Russian Army to their neighborhood. It would be because they don't trust the Russians. Any Muslim country would and should be afraid that after Israel is finished off, Russia will next come after them. So Seba today may be any part of the Arabian Peninsula, or possibly part of North East Africa. And we have at best only narrowed down our candidates for Seba and Dedan and Ethiopia. By the way, all the origins of the peoples of the World are found

in Genesis 10. They all descend from Noah's sons **Shem**, Japheth, or Ham. And even if these tribes are correctly placed and identified on the Map of THE WORLD AS KNOWN IN THE BIBLE, tribes grow, shrink, and migrate over time for a variety of reasons. For example, Velikovsky—as well as some Bible scholars—deduce that the Assyrians migrate down and spoil Egypt—meeting Moses and his people on the way—because the damage done in Assyria during The Plagues of Egypt must have been worse than the devastation in Egypt. And if you add to migration the population fluctuation imposed by changing political boundaries over time, then all we have so far is a margin of uncertainty. So digging up the past probably can't give us answers we can depend on. We must instead expect to rely on the clues that come from anticipating the present day motives of those who would protest such an attack on Israel by Russia—like Catholics in present day Ethiopia, or Muslims who would naturally be distrustful of Russia. However, surely a lot of good work went into producing this map and we should follow up on all the leads from all investigations on this topic. And adding together investigations of the past and the present, someone should be able to redraw this map and bring it up to date. Or maybe someone has. By the way, the map comes from the Historic **d**

But there is at least one certainty. **Egypt**, the prominent first rival of the Antichrist Kingdom according to Daniel, must really be the same as **Ethiopia**, one of the aggressors against Israel according to Ezekiel. Also the identity of dissenting **Dedan** is more certain because this region is paired with **Sheba**. Of course they may have separated or merged since Old Testament times,

but my encyclopedia says **Dedan** likely set up camp on the Arabian Peninsula near The Persian Gulf. And this is near where some say **Sheba** did too which makes this location most credible. And this would make both **Sheba** and **Dedan** present day Saudi Arabia—likely including The United Arab Emirates (The U.A.E.). And I would guess these Muslims would protest this attack despite the fact that they are Sunni Muslims and commonly anti-Semitic. Again, they should object simply because they would see themselves as defenseless in the face of the larger Russian army after Israel falls. And Arabian Peninsula countries like Saudi Arabia that have for a long time now relied on The U.S. for defense are less likely to trust Russia. And if **Sheba** and **Dedan** are now represented by Saudi Arabia and The U.A.E., then Oman and Yemen on the end of the Arabian Peninsula—whoever they are—are not likely to want to 'parade across' Saudi Arabia to join in on the attack either. But we are looking for likely protestors who are able to get the World's attention. I like Saudi Arabia for this reason too.

Also we should suspect that Jordan—formerly **Edom, and Moab, and... Ammon** [Dan 11:41](#)—where Petra is located, will not be participating either. We already **know** from Daniel 11 that this region will not be able to be touched by the Antichrist. And the Jews likely flee to this region. So I would guess then that Jordan will not join this attack on Israel. They may, however, be too close to the action to 'vocally complain'. But Saudi Arabia, The United Arab Emirates, Oman, and Yemen, and probably the Persian Gulf peninsula state of Qatar, and the island state of Bahrain, will likely join the chorus of complaints against Russia and the other Muslim aggressor states—with Saudi Arabia likely screaming the loudest.

And I guess Kuwait could go either way. But since it's on the wrong side of the Persian Gulf—and probably by then defenseless—it will not likely escape assimilation by **Persia** in such troubled times. I mean the Antichrist Kingdom, Russia, and China shouldn't be the only totalitarian governments expanding their holdings in The Beginning of Sorrows. And remember I also suspect the consolidation of Catholic Central and South America under some tyrant like Hugo Chavez, or possibly one of his successors.

But God tells Ezekiel of another group of nations in protest over this attack. It's **the merchants of Tarshish, with all the young lions thereof**. Now we already **know** something about these **merchants of Tarshish**—how their **ships** became a generic term for large, long-voyage, usually merchant, but also possibly warships. These nations are also referred to as **young lions**, meaning plainly that they are relatively young—compared to **Sheba** and **Dedan**, for example—but militarily strong nations that are able to attack their enemies and defend themselves against the best there is—just like **young lions** are both the best at attacking prey and defending themselves against all other predators. So by the process of elimination, The U.S. must be the 'chief predator-defender' among these so-called **merchants** that reside 'a long voyage away' from The God Zone. But the fact that there is evidently more than one of these **young lions** brings me to another reconsideration.

I said that The U.K. would likely be the source of the greatest resistance to the formation of the Antichrist Kingdom because of their overwhelming Protestant bent, but that since they're already so strongly connected with its predecessor, The E.U., they will likely succumb to the Antichrist in the process

of the development of his kingdom. I think this is true, but there could be a question of when. I mean the question should be raised as to whether The U.K. will fall in line immediately. And this is because of the image and actions of these **merchants of Tarshish**. What we are apparently talking about here is a 'distant' opposing alliance. And this alliance must be opposed to both the Antichrist-Catholic and the Russian-Muslim alliances. And though The U.S. must be the biggest part of this third alliance, we still should be able to identify at least one more significant ally on her side.

The British Empire had its own height of glory called Pax Britannica. It was often said that 'the Sun never set on The British Empire'. And The U.S. is one of her 'children' as are many nations around the World. And I think that nations such as these, because of their traditional charitable Protestant bent, after The Rapture of the Church, will likely be newly 'resupplied' with 'baby Christians' who will more likely survive The Great Tribulation in the greatest numbers. And this view of mine is not so much 'racist' as an expectation based on current demographic and political trends. And I think it's the natural alliance of suchlike countries that I expect God is referring to here.

But I wouldn't consider most of England's 'offspring' really to be **'lions'** like The U.S. and The U.K. could be considered to be. Australia and Canada, for example, both arguably 'children' of the British Empire, are certainly not prominent military powers, but have supported The U.S. and The U.K. in the past, and I believe would again if not overwhelmed with China and/or their own Catholics. And all this leads me to think that The U.S. and The U.K. are these **young lions**. It's certainly true that The U.S. and The U.K. are among the younger great nations in the World. And their ships, both for war and merchandise, are among the largest and most numerous in the World. Surely no nation's reach is further than either of these two predominantly Protestant and appropriately called **young lions**. I see no better candidates by a process of elimination anyway.

So I think it's very likely that the overwhelmingly Protestant U.K.—probably not including Catholic Ireland—could resist the popular Antichrist long enough to again side with The U.S. to 'vocally complain' about the ensuing atrocity that will be attempted under Russia's direction against Israel. And evidently not long after that I think they will again support The U.S. with warships—like they are now doing in the Persian Gulf—except this time to blockade the way of the Antichrist at a point when he thinks he's safe to 'mop up' Egypt and the rest of the Muslim World. And it follows that this 'wipeout' of Russia and the Muslim World makes the Antichrist think he has a 'green light' to attack Egypt. And initially the Antichrist won't need the U.K. because he will have plenty of eager mainland European Catholic support. And he shouldn't miss any 'across-the-channel', reluctant support from Protestant England early on.

However I expect that Protestant England, Scotland, and Northern Ireland should again become occupied in quite a 'squabble' with Antichrist-supported Catholic Ireland, just like they were throughout most of the 20th century. And if you don't know about the I.R.A.—the Irish Republican Army—you need to look it up. But I'm guessing that at least England and Scotland will hold their own and partner with The U.S. for a good part of The Beginning of Sorrows. Nevertheless, for interfering with the Antichrist's plans these **young lions** will eventually be overcome by him—the U.S. more likely with the help of

China, and their southerly Catholic neighbors, and The U.K. evidently more directly by the Antichrist Kingdom itself. But it will surely be a matter of time, one way or another, before the Antichrist will be able to undermine both American and British efforts to resist him. Still I say, "Go PIHO's!" And may many be **born** into The Kingdom of God in the process.

From all this we can also deduce that should either The U.S. or The U.K. already have ships in the Persian Gulf or in the Mediterranean Sea at the time of the Russian-Muslim attempted 'inundation' of Israel, it will be of no consequence. Up to this point I'm guessing that they will still be dealing with their own problems anyway—including possibly frantically trying to retrofit a fleet of EMP disabled ships. So I don't think they will have ships ready in time for this attack. And even if they did, with WWII warship capability at best, they could not expect to offer any real resistance to such a land based **storm**. But they will evidently be able to blockade a later attack across the Mediterranean by the Antichrist.

So let's recap. The reference to **the young lions** that are **the merchants of Tarshish** demands at least a couple of **lions** that fit this description. Again, by deduction no other nations fit these 'paw prints' better than The U.S. and The U.K. All other nations of consequence have other parts to fill. The U.S. and The U.K. must be these foolhardy, long-voyage **merchants** and top-predator **lions** that join in the 'vocal resistance' against the Russian and Muslim attack on Israel, and shortly thereafter also have big enough **ships of Tarshish** afloat and positioned in **Chittim** waters to defend the then vulnerable Muslim World against the Antichrist's poised attack. Again, in Daniel 11 we see that the Antichrist's focus will be on **Egypt** because they evidently are the best source of **spoil**. But these **young lions** will succeed in turning the Antichrist back home **grieved** [Dan 11:30](#). Still, and generally speaking, we also **know** that when it comes to the Antichrist, 'resistance is futile', though not anywhere near as futile as trying to resist God. Such adventures into futility even Gene Roddenberry never imagined.

By-the way, and speaking of demographic and political trends, let's add a manufacturing and production trend. I'm guessing that The U.S. and The U.K. will have retrofitted naval capability at this time because of their ingenuity. I don't know how or if they will be able to get 'mothballed' WWII battleships back into the water without modern machinery available—assuming there are still any left 'in mothballs'. Maybe they'll mostly only be able to revive, adapt, and retrofit newer EMP-killed boats. And certainly boats in the water are more likely to survive **great** earthquakes. And I expect the boats that repel the Antichrist must survive all kinds of disasters. And I'm guessing that large sailing ships will become quite valuable too, especially if they have cannons. The point is that this alleged coming incredible EMP between the Earth and another 'red planet'—that should 'fry' most everything powered electronically—will not keep the stronger nations from getting some of their boats back to maybe a WWII level of operations. And big boats will be required for The 2nd Egyptian War, probably just passed the midpoint of The Beginning of Sorrows. And there must still be a good number of boats left even after **the third part of the ships** in the oceans are **destroyed** in The 2nd Trumpet Judgment ([Rev 8:9](#)). And sea transportation, if not warships, also figure into the details of The Great Tribulation very late into The Days of Vengeance. In The 6th Plague Judgment some big boats must still be in use to transport

soldiers across the Atlantic to Armageddon. And I'm guessing a lot of them will still be in operation early in The Millennium to transport people who survive The Great Tribulation to Jerusalem for the annual Feast of Tabernacles, as we will see in [SECTION 11](#).

And I hope that some of those big, old-school, WWII, steam-powered boats will still be around that they can 'break out of mothballs' from wherever they keep them. But I hear that just like WWII veterans, they are fading fast too. And this could be partly why The U.S. and England don't show up with any boats until The 2nd Egyptian War. They simply may not be able to get enough 'warships' operational until then. And this could be why they can only protest at the time of Russia's attack, if not simply because of the futility of trying to stop such a land **storm** without modern weapons.

Now this kind of a defense of Israel by God in The 6th Seal Judgment reminds me of a couple of programs I saw on *The Science Channel*. One had lots of scientists talking about the sensational topic of what we could do about a 'large meteor' threatening to strike the Earth and what would happen if it did. Besides the mass devastation similar to what they said killed the dinosaurs, they also said that there would be a massive worldwide EMP that would disable all but very hardy electrical devices. Of course this is the effect of a hard or inelastic collision with a comparatively very small but very fast moving asteroid. But in The Great Tribulation we're talking instead about a 'cushioned' magnetic and gravitational field collision with a planet of comparable size to the Earth. And I predict that one of the effects of such a soft or elastic collision of the force fields of two generally earth-sized electromagnets would include worldwide, electronics-debilitating EMP's, and that their continued close proximity should cause severe 'signal interference' in all forms of electromagnetic transmissions. That would be radio, TV, cell phones—everything—and especially satellites transmissions as the satellites themselves would likely all be gone within 'an orbit'.

But I don't really have to predict these results myself. Another program I saw showed a computer graphics representation based on photos of Jupiter from the Galileo Orbiter spacecraft. The presentation was of a quite vigorous electromagnetic exchange. It showed an enormous bolt of lightning that shot out from Jupiter to one of her own planet-sized moons. So it's no wonder that Jupiter—or Zeus—has long held that kind of reputation. And Velikovsky and I will have much more to say about this in the next **study**. Go to <http://solarsystem.nasa.gov/galileo/gallery/jupiter-lightning.cfm> (no longer at this site) for some real pictures of Jovian lightning. These real pictures were taken by the Galileo Orbiter spacecraft. The computer graphics presentation I saw on *The Science Channel* is more 'shocking' than these NASA pictures, but they have another satellite on the way to Jupiter now and are hoping to get some better ones. But they will certainly not get any as good as the ones you can get in this **study**. So forget high-tech weapons beyond the early Seal Judgments. If an EMP is not the main reason for their elimination—I mean besides worldwide infrastructure-debilitating earthquakes—any other means will be God's doing too. Are you getting the picture?

The remainder of Ezekiel 38-39 is not fantastic science fiction. It is awesomely fantastic science non-fiction, and it's the heart of the **prophecy**. Here is where we will see pictures that are far more fantastic than could ever

be taken by any NASA space probe. And this is where God can be expected to produce some more of His same old 'world-renowned, awesome, earthshaking, destructive, and supremely-respect-building' spectacles as He has in the past. The only difference is that He **promises**, amazingly enough, that this final round will be even more fantastic than ever before. But as usual these spectacles come with a message. And I expect that this particular message will be His best emphasized message ever—besides possibly Armageddon. I mean these particular spectacles in The 6th Seal Judgment will be more than sufficient to notify everyone in Heaven and Earth—and beyond a very large, say, planet-sized shadow of a doubt—that there is a God in the Heavens, and that He is on the side of Israel. And this is plainly the major theme of this **prophecy** as it's repeated several times in it. Again, the purpose of this necessarily overwhelmingly awesome spectacle is specifically to make abundantly clear that God supports Israel against all enemies. Read through these two chapters and count how many times God repeats Himself on this point. I mean, the point is that He's going to make it pretty plain.

God starts this more detailed account of these spectacles with the sign that occurs just before they are to begin, saying,

Therefore, son of man [Ezekiel], prophesy and say unto Gog, Thus saith the Lord GOD; In that day when my people of Israel dwelleth safely, shalt thou not know it? [Verse 14](#)

Here **God** is questioning **Gog** rhetorically. He's implying that the time of this attack on Israel will be more than obvious because it comes following a period of time when Israel has just as obviously been 'dwelling safely'. And it's also just as obvious that this time has not yet even started. But this is another way that the faithful in Israel and all the rest of the World can **know** the end has come—or has not yet come. They can **know it** because of the conspicuously secure state of affairs that must exist in **Israel** sometime before this attack by Russia and the Muslims. And these safe conditions as described by God in this **prophecy** must also exist a while before The Rapture of the Church can take place. And The Rapture can't occur until **Israel dwelleth safely** for a while because this period of Israel's indisputable strategic supremacy must last considerably longer than the about 1½ to 2 years between The Rapture and this attack in The 6th Seal Judgment. And I mean that Israel must become clearly the best defended World 'superpower' long before The Rapture of the Church can occur.

And remember this is Ezekiel's **prophecy** to the Jews. Faithful Jews worldwide **know** this **prophecy** only too well. They should now **know**—because they are presently building 'security walls'—that it's not yet fully **the time of the end** for them. But they should also **know** that making themselves safe will bring it to pass, and that 'wall-building' is a step toward that. Wall-building will buy them the time they need to develop the technology they need to become even more secure. And when they get there they will no longer need walls. Surely now Israel is working on these kinds of super defenses—defenses that will eventually allow them to tear down their security walls and still **dwelt safely all of them**. And these walls must come down sometime before The Rapture of the Church, because it makes no sense

that they would feel safe enough to tear them down in The Beginning of Sorrows.

So it's In [Verse 14](#) that God tells us that the time for this attack will be obvious. It will be obvious because He says it's **when my people of Israel dwelleth safely**. And how will they **know** when they're really finally safe? It's when even **Gog** will **know** that he can have no hope of attacking Israel. The time is coming when Russia's leaders would have to be 'MAD' to attack Israel because the best result they could expect would be 'mutually assured destruction'—assuming they could even get a strike in against Israel at all. But God is not only indirectly telling us about the time when **Gog** will **know** that attacking Israel is futile, He is also directly telling us about the time when such an attack becomes irresistible.

From [Verse 15](#) on God tells us about the time when **Gog** recognizes that Israel has all of a sudden become seemingly hopelessly defenseless. This is when God says to him,

...thou shalt come from thy place out of the north parts... against my people of Israel.

Again, apparently the time when Israel is invincible will be just as obvious as when she becomes vulnerable. And **Gog** will surely **know it** when this change occurs. And I'm guessing that a global EMP will be the main cause of this sudden change because The 1st Great Earthquake doesn't occur until during **Gog's** attack.

Also in Verse 15 we get more detail identifying the Russian led forces that...

...come... out of the north parts... and [with] many people..., all of them riding upon horses, a great company, and a mighty army.

This **mighty army** must be bigger than the **very great and mighty army** of **Egypt's** first king who is deposed in the earlier bloody civil war instigated by the Antichrist. And I'm guessing this earlier 1st Egyptian War is a necessary **evil** to get all the participating Muslim aggressor nations solidly on the side of the Russians—an alliance they eventually hope to use against the Antichrist. Remember in Daniel 11 when the Antichrist and the new Egyptian king **speak lies at one table** supposedly negotiating peace? Yeah, it makes sense that Egypt's real intentions at this time involve an alliance with Russia against first Israel and then the Antichrist—then against each other. And the plan would work in either Gog's or Egypt's favor except that attacking Israel is attacking God.

And I should pause to say here that these observations from Ezekiel's **prophecy** seem to further establish the order of events. But there is still speculation involved. And it could be that further speculations will change our views yet again, but they should at least improve them. And I can't promise it won't involve more 'wild goose chases'. You should **know** by now they're part of The Natural Progression of The Word of God. There is, however, one promise I can absolutely guarantee I will never fail to keep in this **study** or at any other time in my life. I can promise I'm fallible. And I

guarantee you that any even 'meaty' **study** is at best 'state of the art', and not possibly flawless and undoubtedly 'improvable' in time with your help and God's. So from this point we can only push forward together with this new, 'state-of-the-art' order of events in The Natural Progression of The Word of God by The Ministry of The Spirit of God.

In [Verses 16-17](#) we get another picture of the 'low-tech **storm** attack', **as a cloud to cover the land**. And we get another specific reference that this assault will occur late in God's plan, or more specifically, **in the latter days**, which must be another way to say **the time of the end** ([Dan 8:17](#); [11:40](#); [12:4,9](#)). And the new information God connects here to these repeated facts (are you feeling the burn?) is that even **the heathen** will get what is going on. They will **understand** that **the Lord GOD** has defeated **Gog** in **Israel**. And God tells us that this is more repetition too because evidently other **prophets of Israel** speak of this—which begs further **study**, doesn't it?

[Verses 18-19](#) simply inform us that God is very angry with Russia's presumptuous attack on Israel. This is despite the fact that God put this **evil thought** in Gog's head in the first place. And this must mean that **Gog** and all who follow him must nonetheless experience making a **choice**. And God will evidently hold them responsible for these 'choices'. At the same time God must also be using them in their hopelessly reprobate condition. We **know** God uses those who have **received not the love of the truth** to **make known the riches of his glory** to those who **from the beginning** [are] **chosen... to salvation** ([2 Thes 2:10-13](#); [Rom 9:22-24](#)). And I guess it would be a pity to let the reprobate go to a complete waste when they can be used for our **examples** [1 Cor 10:6](#) and **for our learning** and **patience and comfort** [Rom 15:4](#). Or as Paul would say,

Now all these things happened unto them for ensamples: and they are written for our admonition, upon whom the ends of the world are come [1 Cor 10:11](#).

Now when God gets **angry**, this is when you would expect to start to see some of those 'world-renowned, awesome, earthshaking, destructive, and supremely-respect-building' spectacles. The descriptions of these events begin in [Verse 20](#) starting with an emphasis on the 'world renowned' and 'earthshaking' effects. God says,

... the fishes of the sea, and the fowls of the heaven, and the beasts of the field, and all creeping things that creep upon the earth, and all the men that are upon the face of the earth, shall shake at my presence, and the mountains shall be thrown down, and the steep places shall fall, and every wall shall fall to the ground.

In other words, there goes the bulk of the World's heavy infrastructures. And with the order of events we've constructed so far we can place this event in Revelation too. This is plainly one of three **great earthquakes** described in Revelation, but it must be the first one at The 6th Seal Judgment. We can deduce this simply because the one at the midpoint is for the purpose of dividing Jerusalem before the Jews scatter, not for protecting them from

attack. And it cannot be the last one because that close to Armageddon it would instead involve **the kings of the east** [Rev 16:12](#) who will be coming across the dry **Euphrates** riverbed—not Russia from **the north parts**. But we'll consider this last and greatest **great earthquake** further in [SECTION 10](#).

So this **great shaking in the land of Israel** [Verse 19](#) that occurs during this **great** attack by Russia and its **bands** on Israel—also obviously having worldwide effects—must occur during the **great earthquake** described during The 6th Seal Judgment ([Rev 6:12-17](#)). The evidence presented so far is sufficient for this conclusion, but as usual the better evidence is in the totality of this **study**.

We should also remind ourselves here that all of these **great** earthquakes are connected to God's efforts to 'encourage' those who will only respond to 'extreme persuasion', and these same will ultimately thank Him for both this 'intense urging' and also for His equally unbelievable 'restraint'. Through this incredible display of power God will be able to lead **some** to the **right** conclusions. But we must also **understand** that those who respond in this way will be relatively **few**. Because most others who survive this 1st Great Earthquake—who are already unreachable because of a hopelessly **reprobate mind**—will increasingly follow the remaining contenders to World domination. For most this will be either the Antichrist or whoever is leading China. However **the young lions** will still have a thing or two to say about how things will go down. And **Egypt** will rally the Muslims in one last desperate attempt to defeat the Antichrist. But within another year or so after this 'earthshaking' event, The U.S., Russia, and the Muslims won't be among the 'power players' anymore.

And at the end of The Beginning of Sorrows—after this **great shaking in the land of Israel** and after The Trumpet Judgments—the Antichrist will 'open' **his mouth in blasphemy against God, to blaspheme his name, and his tabernacle, and them that dwell in heaven** [Rev 13:6](#). And after these **wonders** John records that in general humankind still **repented not of the works of their hands** [Rev 9:20](#), and that **the nations** only become **angry** with God for His efforts ([Rev 11:18](#)). And throughout The Plague Judgments attitudes only tend to get worse. John reports that in the middle of them that **men blasphemed God** [Rev 16:21](#) despite all His restraint and trouble. Of course all this shows that most **know** that God is behind it all. But I still suspect that Satan will try to take credit wherever he can—though He will be forced to assign a lot of the blame to God.

And we can also see in Ezekiel's account of this **great shaking** that God gets most of the blame. Ezekiel tells us that **the heathen** can see that God is behind it ([Verse 16](#)). And this matches John's account in The 6th Seal Judgment. He reveals a similar worldwide reaction during a **great earthquake** when,

...the sun became black as sackcloth of hair, and the moon became as blood; And the stars of heaven fell unto the earth, even as a fig tree casteth her untimely figs, when she is shaken of a mighty wind. And the heaven departed as a scroll when it is rolled together; and every mountain and island were moved out of their places. And the kings of the earth, and the

great men, and the rich men, and the chief captains, and the mighty men, and every bondman, and every free man, hid themselves in the dens and in the rocks of the mountains; And said to the mountains and rocks, Fall on us, and hide us from the face of him that sitteth on the throne, and from the wrath of the Lamb: For the great day of his wrath is come; and who shall be able to stand? [Rev 6:12-17](#).

The similar global reaction of awe and respect for God in this first **great earthquake** is heard when 'everyone' says, **hide us from the face of him that sitteth on the throne, and from the wrath of the Lamb: For the great day of his wrath is come; and who shall be able to stand?** Up to this point in The Beginning of Sorrows there will have been **war, famine, and pestilences** in historically unprecedented proportions and likely some unrivaled **earthquakes** too. And all this must be partially the result of the initial interactions—including an enormous EMP or two—with the planet God has 'thrown' from somewhere out in space and caught with the Earth. But The 6th Seal Judgment most obviously suggests that this planet is at work for God's purposes. At this time, because of the evidently dramatically awesome nature of this display of His power, the whole World must acknowledge that God **on the throne** and Jesus **the Lamb** are responsible for this **mighty** spectacle.

So in both John and Ezekiel's accounts we have a unique situation where it's reported that **all the men that are upon the face of the earth** are in such awe of God that their unavoidable reflex is to acknowledge and respect Him. And both accounts describe the same kind of global 'mountain-moving' judgment taking place. And you should see more and more that these two accounts together provide a picture similar to some of God's past performances in **other ages**.

And in [Verse 22](#) we see an expression of God's fury comparable to John's account. We also see that this fury involves the same 'bad weather forecast' too. And again, these 'meteorological conditions' cannot just be of the extreme, solely Earth-generated variety. God **promises** a downpour of...

...pestilence and with blood... [that He] will rain upon him [Gog], and upon his bands, and upon the many people that are with him, an overflowing rain, and great hailstones [not burning], fire, and brimstone [burning].

So we also have strikingly similar horrific 'cosmic storms'. The only difference is that John is not quite as specific in his account. He does not mention that this global **rain of stones** is apparently more **overflowing** in some places, and intermittently mixed with **blood** and/or **fire**. And we will delve even more specifically into this phenomenon in the next **study**. But the first step is to believe God can 'target' such judgments precisely how, when, and where He wants to. And you need to see that John's account is less detailed and a more general World report, while Ezekiel's is more focused on Israel. And by all the clues you should also see that both accounts are of The 6th Seal Judgment occurring close to halfway through The Beginning of Sorrows, and that they are part of the **fearful sights and great signs... from heaven**

that Jesus speaks of on The Mount of Olives.

By-the-way, we may be seeing here that God is somehow 'administering' **pestilence** by extraterrestrial means too. This was apparently also the case in one or two of The Egyptian Plague Judgments, and maybe also once when the Jews were wandering in the wilderness. So the **pestilences** of The 4th Seal Judgment may be initiated by this means too. And this could be another indication that the 'red companion planet' arrives in time for The 4th Seal Judgment.

But it also occurs to me that this planet may be the cause of The 3rd Seal Judgment too. In that judgment we apparently see the collapse of the World's economy—find it in Revelation 6. But in it we see no destruction of any kind except for what may be still ongoing with the newly begun **white** and **red** revolutions. And I mean this apparently non-violent sudden collapse of the World's economy may be the result of a massive global EMP. And I mean the first effect of such a pulse would be worldwide economic collapse. Remember the Y2K scare? It would be much worse than the worse case scenario of that. And an EMP this early would give Russia and the Muslims the time they should need to prepare their new strategy of attack—you know, round up enough **horses** and learn to ride them, etc.

And before we go on let's review these early wars of The Beginning of Sorrows, now that we have identified them all, and have a better idea where they all might fit. First the Antichrist uses the aggravated Catholics in Europe to initiate his 'take three - get ten' coup of Europe. Let's call it The New European Catholic Revolution—this begins with The 1st Seal Judgment. Following that but mostly concurrently, Russia evidently similarly forces several former Soviet Bloc nations back into her fold. Let's call this The 2nd Russian Communist Revolution—it begins with The 2nd Seal Judgment. And both of these 'consolidations' of regional power may at least involve the real threat of WMD's, but nothing too devastating because we're talking about their home territories. And I suspect China will be up to the same thing in her region, troubling the U.S. in the process. Let's call that The 2nd Chinese Communist Revolution. Certainly this contender to World domination will be doing her best to expand early in The Beginning of Sorrows too, but out of view of The God Zone. Also troubling the U.S. at this time should be a consolidation of power in Catholic Central and South America who may be aided by China, Russia, and the Antichrist Kingdom to some extent. Let's call this The American Catholic Revolution. Finally we are also seeing the presently ongoing but disjointed various Muslim jihads which will be a continuing irritant to Catholics in Europe. And they will remain a significant threat until Catholics become sufficiently aggravated and the Antichrist takes over in Europe. And I expect that they should also increasingly become an irritant in The U.S. until Catholics there start to subdue them too. Again, WMD's may play a role in the early stages of all of these revolutions, and you could say that all these players are already preparing for them.

And by the time that the first king in Egypt is overthrown in a civil war with the help of the Antichrist in The 1st Egyptian War, the threat of WMD's may still be available—or not. I mean Egypt—and possibly Venezuela—may develop nuclear weapons programs between here and there. Or they may simply be the nations that are able to take the earliest advantage of the EMP. But certainly by the time Russia is ready for its grand attack on Israel, WMD's

will no longer be available to anyone because this is surely part of the rationale for this attack. It's how God will draw Russia **out** from her **place** in **the north parts**. And it's probably how He draws out many other nations too.

I also assume that it's sometime after The 6th Seal Judgment that the Antichrist will attempt his second attack on Egypt, The 2nd Egyptian War, because then both Russia and the Muslims will be vulnerable, but The U.S. and her allies by then should be ready to intercede. These **young lions** should be sailing and hopefully also steaming their old-school and/or retrofitted boats to the Mediterranean Sea by then.

The last wars of The Beginning of Sorrows begin once these other revolutions have played out somewhat. When The Chinese Communist Revolution is completing the consolidation of power in that region, and when The American Catholic Revolution has The U.S. on the defensive and struggling, then the European Catholics in the Antichrist Kingdom will be free to 'mop up' the Southwest Asian and North African Muslim World. This is The 3rd Egyptian War probably during The 6th Trumpet Judgment. And this **whirlwind** war should immediately proceed all the midterm events in Israel ([Dan 11:40-41](#)). Of course during The 6th Trumpet Judgment the worst 'warriors' of all time emerge. They are the spiritual creatures sent by God to slay **the third part of the earth**. And it may be that these horrible 'monsters' will help the Antichrist by not significantly interfering with his plans—another step where God may facilitate **evil** in order to 'lure' its practitioners to their ultimate destruction. Either that, or maybe all these revolutions get 'thinned out' more or less equally by God's 'monsters'.

From God's perspective given in Revelation we first see the riding of the **white horse**, then the **red** one. These contenders to World domination are the only two we first see because they are the only ones operating in The God Zone early in The Beginning of Sorrows. But I guess you could look at it another way. Maybe this single **white horse** represents the Worldwide Catholic Revolution. After all, won't the Antichrist and the Pope be leading all 'Catholics' everywhere really? And maybe this single **red** one suggests some kind of treaty between Russia and China who together lead their subordinates in the Worldwide Communist Revolution, at least until Russia is taken out and China is left to carry on without her. Indeed these two sides, the **white** and the **red**, could be seen as the main contenders for World domination throughout The Great Tribulation—the **white** one masquerading as a religious revolution, and the **red** one as a coldly political and atheistic one. And China—a **red** power—should still have the biggest army and be the 'odds-on favorite' contending for World domination come **Armageddon**. And this gives us more reason to think that when the Antichrist Kingdom is tested on her eastern and northern borders early in The Days of Vengeance ([Dan 11:44](#)) that this is China's first attempt at expansion westward. Ezekiel and Daniel also give us clues of the **trouble** The U.S. and probably the U.K. take on in The Beginning of Sorrows. They evidently will choose not to remain isolationist. And they will have some success in The Beginning of Sorrows but evidently will be overwhelmed by the end of it. And certainly the current behavior of all these 'players' is consistent with these future scriptural roles.

So which is it? Are the **white** and **red** revolutions in Revelation 6 God Zone-focused—only specifically referring to Russia and Europe—or are they a

global representation of The Worldwide Catholic Revolution under the Antichrist and the Pope and The Worldwide Communist Revolution under both China and Russia and later just China? I think it's both. God sees all things from all perspectives after all. And it's our failure to do so that leads to misinterpretation.

But surely Russia is a top player among the communist nations let go early by God to **take peace from the earth** in the **red** revolution. And **the chief prince of** Russia will be God's 'Manchurian candidate' to attack Israel. And Russia obviously won't directly attack the budding Antichrist Empire. So her early efforts must instead involve regaining the lost, mostly non-Catholic territories of the former Soviet Union. She would also naturally threaten and intimidate the rest of the World in the same manner she did throughout most of the 20th Century. In fact she already appears to be 'gearing up' for this again. Except this time I'm expecting she'll become a little more 'chummy' with China and her allies.

And these leading factions of the **white** and **red** revolutions will probably be able to get a long way toward consolidating power in their own regions before they lose modern conventional and nuclear capabilities. And in the earliest Seal Judgments of The Beginning of Sorrow apparently only The U.S. and probably The U.K. will be using their strategic capabilities to try to hinder both **white** and **red** expansion. But they evidently will only likely succeed in protecting themselves, and only for a while. This is the time when all those mostly Muslim nations huddled north of Iran and east of the Caspian Sea which used to be part of The Soviet Union should come into focus by Russia again. Being predominantly Muslim, they should easily enough be convinced to join in the fight against the Jews. The question is on which side. I'm guessing that Russia's early expansion will keep these northernmost Muslim countries out of The 1st Egyptian War, and that all of Eastern Europe will be 'shaking in their shoes'. After all, these countries will be caught between the **white horse** released by God to go out **conquering, and to conquer** and the **red** one who is allowed **to take peace from the earth** and **kill** with **a great sword**. And both these revolutions will greatly expand before they are finally

'wiped out' by God. And from this perspective the **white** and **red** revolutions never really get a decisive advantage over the other before they are 'lured' together, torturously incapacitated, then destroyed by Jesus.

So it appears that both a 'revived Roman Empire'—The Antichrist Empire—and 'a revived Soviet Union' will be on the rise throughout most of the first half of The Beginning of Sorrows. But evidently in The 6th Seal Judgment the 'revived Soviet Union' will overstep their boundaries and be annihilated by God, and this will be acknowledged by every living creature on Earth. And evidently Satan and the Antichrist will be too smart for this blunder. They will **know** that anyone that touches Israel up to this time will be destroyed by God. And they will **know** that they can only seduce Israel to defeat herself from within. This seditious campaign that intensifies after The 2nd Egyptian War will create **indignation against the holy covenant** [Dan 11:30](#), and by The Abomination of Desolation will convince a majority of cheering Jews to invite the Antichrist into Israel, and then into their Temple, after which he will immediately turn on them. This is when many of God's faithful must flee, and even more will be killed.

But I should reemphasize that the order of a couple of these **wars and rumors of wars** [Mat 24:6](#) is speculative. For one thing it could be that Russia will join the U.S. and her allies in The Mediterranean Sea Blockade to stand in the way of the Antichrist when he threatens Egypt in The 2nd Egyptian War. This will be at a time when the Antichrist has already divided and conquered about half of Egypt's army by instigating a civil war. So maybe this is enough incentive for him to attempt an attack on Egypt even before the attack on Israel. Or it could be that Russia still has ships left to put in the Antichrist's way even if her ground forces are already 'wiped out'. Whichever the case, remember that one of the reasons almost anyone attacks anyone else in this chaotic period will be for the **spoil**. And not as much for greed as hunger. But I doubt that the Antichrist will try an attack outside of Europe before God takes Russia's **great sword** away from her. And it appears he will have enough to do consolidating power in Europe until after The 6th Seal Judgment anyway. And there shouldn't be much to **spoil** in Russia immediately after she is destroyed, as we will see. And the first indication we have that the Antichrist expands to **the north** and **the east** is after he has transplanted himself in Israel after the start of The Days of Vengeance.

But if the Antichrist Kingdom is hungry enough early on, he may decide he has already dealt a serious enough blow to Egypt in The 1st Egyptian War, and may think that no one will interfere if he tries to take them. And if Russia is not yet destroyed I would guess that she would likely help stand in the way. And this could lead to enough solidarity with the Muslim World so that they all decide to unite with Russia against Israel shortly thereafter. So the difference in this scenario is that it puts The 2nd Egyptian War before the Russian and Muslim attack on Israel. But again, I don't like this scenario as much because the alliances and motivations are less believable to me. It seems a lot more risky for the Antichrist, and it seems to cram way too much in front of The 6th Seal Judgment, though I suppose it's possible.

But we **know** that in The 6th Seal Judgment in the middle of The Beginning of Sorrows that Russia and the aggressor Muslim nations are 'wiped out' by God. And we **know** that The 2nd Egyptian War must fit somewhere near this time too. Again, I lean to the idea that Russia and most of the entire Middle East is taken out by God first because this kind of vulnerability would be the most tempting to the Antichrist, and this would leave the defense of the Muslims to the PIHO's, who would as usual defend them mainly because of their fear for the World's stability. And the PIHO's alone seem the most likely defenders of the Muslims because surely somehow they will already be occupied with China, and likely also in their own region, so that the Antichrist would least expect their interference. And before God takes the Muslims down, I would expect they could defend themselves against the Antichrist in their home territory, and with or without the Russian Navy's assistance. And I don't expect Gog would stick his neck out except for 'easy pickin's' and 'hoggishly selfish' motives.

As for the U.K., I should add that even now they are finding themselves on the cutting edge of a Protestant vs. Muslim European 'civil war'. This may seem to be a connection that will draw them into an alliance with nine other necessarily more Catholic Antichrist Kingdom 'provinces'. But since The 1st Egyptian War is likely 'stirred up' by a double-cross against Muslims in Europe,

the Antichrist will likely first persecute mostly Protestants and Jews. And the overwhelming majority of PIHO's left in England and Scotland after The Rapture—with WMD's still available to protect themselves—probably won't fit into the Antichrist's early gameplan. So for the U.K., it doesn't really come down to whether they will succumb to the Muslims, because they won't. It comes down to when and how they will succumb to the Antichrist and the Pope.

In any case, there will be enough 'big boats' floating in The Mediterranean Sea to stop the Antichrist's attempt to attack Egypt whether this happens before or after the annihilation of the majority of the Russian and Muslim forces. And this isn't a 'wild goose chase' because we have been careful not to confuse **truth** with speculation, and because it's clear we're not done asking, seeking, knocking, and watching for that indisputable **proof** of the exact order of all these **wars and rumors of wars**. At this point I consider it enough that we have identified them, discerned their approximate order, and raised a lot of good question in the process.

But likely the biggest problem ahead of us will be that there are way too many good **teachers** of **prophecy** who have for way too long had 'a foot', maybe even 'a whole leg', 'way too far down their throats' when it comes to such topics. And I'm afraid the condition is so 'severely chronic' for some of them that they may no longer be able to 'pull them out' and find more 'solid footing'. But such 'deep-throated foot extractions' must occur sooner or later. It's part of The Natural Progression of The Word of God, and absolutely required in order to **grow** in **prophecy** as well as in The Word of God in general. And naturally, in The Millennium, everyone will know what went down, and such conditions will be remedied. But you must see how this will be quite embarrassing for the more 'chronic' cases. Fortunately for the 'less chronic' conditions, **prophecy** can be a 'less afflicting' and instead 'good therapy' for **disciples** to gain the **skill** inevitably necessary to 'purge the mouth and throat' as needed.

But I'm expecting that the final 'cure' will start with a 'plague of cats'. Yes, because I'm expecting an 'epidemic' of 'cat got your tongue' syndrome. And I expect the ability of these 'feline critters' to maneuver around 'lodged feet' to get at and silence tongues will be amazing. But really it will not be the cats—no really—it will be the dumbfoundingly spectacular nature of The Great Tribulation that will be the cause of this condition. I mean especially among the redeemed. But we're not through with our view of the worldwide spectacles by **GOD** against **Gog** and **his bands**. Here are some more previews of this surely flabbergasting coming attraction.

You may have noticed that we passed by [Verse 21](#). This is where Ezekiel records,

I will call for a sword against him [Gog] throughout all my mountains, saith the Lord GOD: every man's sword shall be against his brother.

Now this is an old tactic of God's too. And this is obviously not talking about Jews fighting with Jews, but Russians and Muslims fighting with other Russians and Muslims. This is what happens in the famous story about **Gideon**. God leads **Gideon** and his 'chosen' 300 Israelites to defeat the many

tens of thousands of Midianites and Amalekites. The number of this vast army of these **children of the east** is described to be...

...like grasshoppers for multitude; and their camels were without number, as the sand by the sea side for multitude [Judges 7:12](#).

But,

...the LORD set every man's sword against his fellow [Judges 7:22](#)

So in this 'battle' God confuses them so they all fight against each other. And the Midianites and Amalekites fight with other Midianites and Amalekites till they all retreat in panic and are finally chased across the Jordan River. There both **princes of the Midianites** are killed ([Judges 7:25](#)). And this is something like what God will be up to when the Russians and the Muslims also **kill one another**. In this future 'battle', somehow again **every man's sword shall be against his brother**. They will mistakenly think they are fighting the Israelites.

Chapter 38 ends with a declaration by God that as a result of this **mighty** judgment...

...many nations... shall know that I am the LORD [Verse 23](#).

And this will be the cause of **some** being **saved**. And because of these **wonders** some of these will also gain the fortitude that will be necessary to resist **the mark** with **the patience and faith** of a true **saint** of God. In Chapter 39 God reveals how Israel and the World will come to **know** Him through this one-sided war, and gives us other details of this rout.

We get the casualty report in [Verses 2-5](#). God tells us that all but **the sixth part** of the forces of **Gog** and his Muslim allies will **fall upon the open field**. We also **learn** in these verses—and from other verses layered throughout the chapter—that this battle will produce more 'bird feed' than any other battle up to that point. God, like Tarzan I guess, calls all the carrion birds, the meat-eaters, to come eat the flesh off all these slain (see also [Verses 17-20](#)). And this will evidently be help that the Israelites will need because in the following **seven months** 'clean-up operation' they will still be able to make a mountain out of what the birds don't want. And this new 'manmade formation' will be called the **valley of Hamongog** or the Valley of Mount Gog (see also [Verses 11-16](#)). And you might imagine that this might be too much for just the birds within flying distance. So maybe God will have to rapture carrion birds worldwide to Israel in order to get the job done quickly enough. But when it comes to God's 'bird buffet bonanzas', we'll see that there is a bigger 'bird feed' to come, which we'll get to next section.

In [Verse 6](#), Gog's luck goes from disastrous—5 out of 6 soldiers dead—to nightmarish. And like what we see in John's account of The 6th Seal Judgment, here we see also in Ezekiel's account how it's not going so well for the rest of the World either. God says,

I will send a fire on Magog [Russia], and among them that dwell carelessly in the isles [or the continents or “coastlands”]: and they [the whole World] shall know that I am the LORD.

This is 'targeting'. Primarily God is going to 'dump fire' on Mother Russia. And no, not nuclear bombs. Remember he didn't need that kind of help in the past so he won't in the future either. And he's plainly used planets in our solar system for such purposes before so he evidently has future plans to do this again. Somehow he'll again use the 'locked interacting atmospheres' of Earth and another planet to dump on Russia and the Muslim aggressors, and also on ***them that dwell carelessly in the isles***—and a common conclusion is that ***the isles*** means 'the continents'. Though evidently God doesn't 'dump on' those who are 'awake' or are 'waking up', but only on those that ***dwell carelessly***.

And you should ***know*** by now that God really can '***sever between***' the ones He wants to 'dump on', and the ones He doesn't, amazingly well. And the devastation on those he wants to 'dump on' is evidently overwhelming. I mean it evidently takes the rest of The Great Tribulation and some time beyond to ***burn all the shields and the bucklers, the bows and the arrows, and the handstaves, and the spears*** dropped by dead soldiers in Israel. Specifically, God says in [Verses 9-10](#) that it will take ***seven years*** to ***burn the weapons*** left on the ground from this 'battle'. This must mean that most Jews only get to use this temporary source of fuel for about 1 ½ to 2 years during the second half of The Beginning of Sorrows and for another year or two at the beginning of Millennium, and that Gentiles will get the rest during The Days of Vengeance while most Jews wait in the refuge ***prepared of God***, or hide, or are killed. Then again, some Jews ***that dwell in the cities of Israel*** could be available, marked, and enslaved to ***burn the weapons*** during The Days of Vengeance, as well as available for anything else slaves might be used for.

And by-the-way, I have heard talk of machine guns and other weapons made of 'combustible metals' so they can be destroyed if necessary. First of all, I don't think Russia could afford to equip such a ***storm*** of Muslims with such expensive weapons. And even if they could afford the cost of such weaponry, we must remember that this is just another Hitler/Stalin-like arrangement. And the Russians must know that the Muslims will only cooperate with them to a point. So they wouldn't want them too well armed. But even more conclusive is Ezekiel's descriptions of the ***weapons*** used in this attack. These would be...

...the shields and the bucklers, the bows and the arrows, and the handstaves, and the spears.

And these would easily be made of mostly combustible materials.

In [Verses 7-8](#) God explains that this spectacular event is the culmination of His plans to 'reintroduce' Himself to Israel. And it's when Israel also 'recognizes'—in a purely Jewish way—their long lost God, ***the Holy One in Israel***. And God reiterates in [Verse 22](#) that because of this event,

...the house of Israel shall know that I am the LORD their God from that day and forward.

But I don't think this event causes many of them to recognize yet that God has a Son, and that His name is Jesus. This **revelation** will happen a little later.

From [Verse 23](#) on **the Lord GOD** explains that the meaning of this event will be so plain that even **the heathen shall know** that this is part of the culmination of God's plan. In particular,

...the heathen shall know that the house of Israel went into captivity for their iniquity: because they trespassed.

And they will **know** it is God that...

...caused them to be led into captivity among the heathen.

But they will also **know** that by God's **mercy** the Jews will be...

...gathered... out of their enemies' lands [and] gathered... unto their own land [and 'dwell'] safely in their land.

And they will **know** that they were then made to appear vulnerable so that God could **magnify** Himself defending them in this coming 'world-renowned, earthshaking, awesome, destructive, and supremely-respect-building' event.

So it's going to be some reunion. But Gabriel tells us that near the time of this spectacle a newly 'throttled-down' Antichrist will mount his seditious **indignation against the holy covenant** campaign. And we **know** he'll have a good measure of success with it. But this campaign can only have so much success, because in [Verse 29](#) **the Lord God** also says that in the process of this mighty outpouring of His power,

I have [also] poured out my spirit upon the house of Israel.

And again, I **understand** this in a '70th week' sense. That this is where the 'real' **house of Israel**—the ones slated for **everlasting life** and not the ones doomed to **shame and everlasting contempt**—will recognize and acknowledge their Father, God, but not yet His Son. But to coin a variation on a **promise of God**, and to whomever it applies, I say, greater is He that is in **the house of Israel**, than he that will then be in the World.

At this point it's also worth reassessing a special group of Jews that Jesus speaks of in His discourse on the Mount of Olives, the ones who receive special persecution in The Great Tribulation. These are the faithful Christian Jews in Israel. They are the few Jews who early on **know** the true identity of their Messiah. And they emerge very early in The Great Tribulation. According to Jesus, they're identified by their persecution by other Jews in Israel. And He seems to indicate that the rise of their persecution may even precede The Rapture of the Church. Speaking to these Jews who **know** Him, Jesus says,

...Nation shall rise against nation, and kingdom against kingdom: And great earthquakes shall be in divers places, and famines, and pestilences; and fearful sights and great signs shall there be from heaven. But before all these, they [Jews who don't know Jesus] shall lay their hands on you [Jews who do know Jesus], and persecute you, delivering you up to the synagogues, and into prisons, being brought before kings and rulers for my name's sake. And it shall turn to you for a testimony. Settle it therefore in your hearts, not to meditate before what ye shall answer: For I will give you a mouth and wisdom, which all your adversaries shall not be able to gainsay nor resist. And ye shall be betrayed both by parents, and brethren, and kinsfolks, and friends; and some of you shall they cause to be put to death. And ye shall be hated of all men for my name's sake. But there shall not an hair of your head perish. In your patience possess ye your souls [Luke 21:11-19](#).

These Jews that are **hated of all men for Jesus' sake** must be relatively few in number and evidently will have no one they can trust. And since their persecution starts **before** most everything else that happens in The Beginning of Sorrows—even before **Nation shall rise against nation** when The 1st Seal Judgment is opened—then this persecution could begin sometime **before** The Rapture of the Church. In fact there is evidence that persecution of Messianic Jews in Israel has already begun in 2008. Google "persecution of Messianic Jews" and you can see for yourself that such persecution in Israel has recently "increased" including a bombing and a burned-down Christian Mission where in both cases no arrests were made by the Israeli authorities.

Matthew and Mark give similar accounts of Jesus' counsel to these special Jews. And Gabriel offers another perspective, saying,

And such [Jews] as do wickedly against the covenant shall he [the Antichrist] corrupt by flatteries: but the people that do know their God shall be strong, and do exploits. And they that understand among the people shall instruct [and evangelize] many [when the time comes]: yet they shall fall by the sword, and by flame, by captivity, and by spoil, many days. Now when they shall fall, they shall be holpen [helped] with a little help: but many shall cleave to them with flatteries. And some of them of understanding shall fall, to try them, and to purge, and to make them white, even to the time of the end: because it is yet for a time appointed [Dan 11:32-35](#)

So you might call these special Jews God's 'third team' of ministers in Israel—the other two being The Two Witnesses and The 144,000. But again, I don't expect that many in this 'third team' will be in a position to evangelize about Jesus very much during most of The Beginning of Sorrows. And I expect The Two Witnesses and The 144,000 will only lead a revival of Judaism in Israel, until they, along with this 'third team', finally lead an explosive Christian revival among Jews in Israel just before The Abomination of Desolation.

But I also expect that the early persecution of Protestants and Jews in the

Antichrist Kingdom and in other Catholic domains—and likely in all domains—will be quite intimidating to Israel. And this should provoke some strong persecution of Christian Jews in Israel throughout The Beginning of Sorrows. I mean when contenders to World domination turn on Protestants and Jews worldwide, Jews in Israel who don't **know** their Messiah will evidently succumb to the extreme pressure to incarcerate and kill those who do. And this period of peak persecution of Jews against Jews in Israel must start **before** God's 'get reacquainted party' with His people. I mean **before** that Russian and Muslim 'blowout barbeque' where **fearful sights and great signs... from heaven** will definitely be on the menu. But I take it that after it's over, and everyone in Israel is 'sitting around campfires' singing "Cum ba ya", this won't mark any slowdown of Jew on Jew persecution. Instead I expect that this huge transitional judgment of God for Jews to closely coincide with the beginning of the Antichrist's campaign to increase such persecution. But still, such a cathartic, life-changing encounter with the 'world-renowned, earthshaking, awesome, destructive, and supremely-respect-building' power of God must turn a good number of Jews in the right direction too—I mean back to Judaism.

So in the middle of The Beginning of Sorrows when the destruction of Russia and her armies, and of the Muslim armies, and of many others who **dwell carelessly** around the World, brings the exaltation of God in **the house of Israel**, then the persecution of Christian Jew in Israel will be in 'full stride'. But this will also be a 'rebirth' of sorts for Israel—or more appropriately, their 'conception'. And in fact the 'sealing' of The 144,000 immediately follows this grand spectacle. And this astounding intervention by God for Israel must be perceived by Israelites as badly needed and timely because leading up to this event the Jews must **know** they have become defenseless and increasingly hated throughout the World. So morale must be getting pretty bad up to this point. But this deliverance of Israel by God can only be a temporary reprieve. This is because it's probably too quickly followed by the Antichrist's preempted 2nd Egyptian War. And even if this is already past too, then the Antichrist's new campaign to shrink the ranks of faithful Jews in Israel should be starting to gain momentum. Indeed the 'idled' Antichrist should be able to quickly turn the attention of many Jews toward frustrating the **godly** 'vigor' of the truly **faithful** ones.

Also, just as I see no reason for all weapons to be burnt before the end of The Great Tribulation—or even by just Jews—so I also see no reason why all the judgments of God must be uniformly spaced. In fact, we already **know** that they are not. We **know** The 7th Seal Judgment is only '**half an hour**' and that The 5th Trumpet Judgment is **five months**—two months longer than the 'average'. So for example, in a scenario where The Seal Judgments wrap up within the first year leaving 2 ½ years for The Trumpet Judgments, the undesignated Seal Judgments would average less than two months each and the undesignated Trumpet Judgments over four. And maybe the Jews in Israel will need their rescue to arrive sooner. And God may need to make Himself **known** to Israel a little earlier to make it possible for them to keep the **faith**. But it's all about God applying the perfect escalating pressure on not just the Jews but also on the whole World in order to draw people back to Himself. So, though a compacted first set of judgments could add to the escalating effect, the increasing intensity of the judgments themselves seems to accomplish

this well enough too. Still, and whatever the schedule, I would expect some kind of ordered numerical symmetry or pattern to God's plan.

And I don't think we need the Russian's help in The Mediterranean Sea Blockade to stop the Antichrist. And I don't think the Antichrist would even try to mop up Egypt unless Russia and the rest of the Muslim World were already disabled. Go U.K! Go U.K! I mean I do hope England makes it to the Mediterranean Sea for the honor and privilege of performing this very important work of God. And it would be natural for The U.S. and The U.K. to see the urgent need to hold back the Antichrist after $\frac{5}{6}$ of the armies of Russia and the Muslim aggressor nations have just been 'wiped out'. This is natural because there are so many PIHO's in the U.S. and The U.K. which should mean lots of post-Rapture conversions. And clearly the Antichrist's gamble that The U.S. is already sufficiently distracted and too far away to get involved will not pay off.

And remember an earlier planet to planet EMP will give the strongest strategic advantages to countries with larger populations or alliances. With this in mind it's even more unlikely that the Antichrist will try his second campaign against Egypt with Russian's army still intact and right next door. I mean attacking southward toward Egypt at a time when modern defenses are no longer available would leave his eastern flank irresistibly vulnerable to the Russians. And there is also the fact that the Antichrist feels free to start his campaign of ***indignation against the holy covenant*** in the middle of 'Muslim territory' right after The U.S. and company back him down. This implies that the armies of the Muslims in The God Zone must already also be out of the way—I mean except for the remains of a lot of 'bird-eaten bones' and the weapons they carried with them to the battlefield.

Also it occurs to me that no one would be better than a former Patriarch of Babylon to organize a campaign in Israel against Israel. I mean besides Satan and his princes, he should be best at getting things done in this region. And while he is 'infiltrating' Israel, I expect he will also be working on undermining The U.K. And at the same time he would be helping the Catholics in the Americas put the U.S. in retreat—as I expect the expanding Empire of China should also be doing. And when The U.S., The U.K., and Israel are sufficiently destabilized, the Antichrist will have nothing left to slow Him down—except for some major interference from judgments of God. Though I expect it's possible that the colossal army of creatures in The 6th Trumpet Judgment will be more of a help to the Antichrist than a hindrance.

And once the Antichrist is free to 'wreak havoc', things don't go so well for most of the Jews. Remember God gives us a casualty report for Jews in The Days of Vengeance through the Prophet Zechariah. One third live and two thirds die ([Zec 13:8-9](#) [audio error]). But there is uncertainty about who the real players are in this tally, because there is more uncertainty about whether God is reckoning in mortal or spiritual terms, or both. But there is something else we **know** about the real players because they are also identified by God to Ezekiel near the end of Chapter 39. Here God makes clear that only Jews who are in Israel by The 6th Seal Judgment can be redeemed as 'real Jews'. God says,

Then [at The 1st Great Earthquake of The 6th Seal Judgment] ***shall they*** [both ***the heathen*** and ***Israel***] ***know that I am the LORD***

their God, which caused them to be led into captivity among the heathen: but I have gathered them unto their own land, and have left none of them any more there [Verse 28](#).

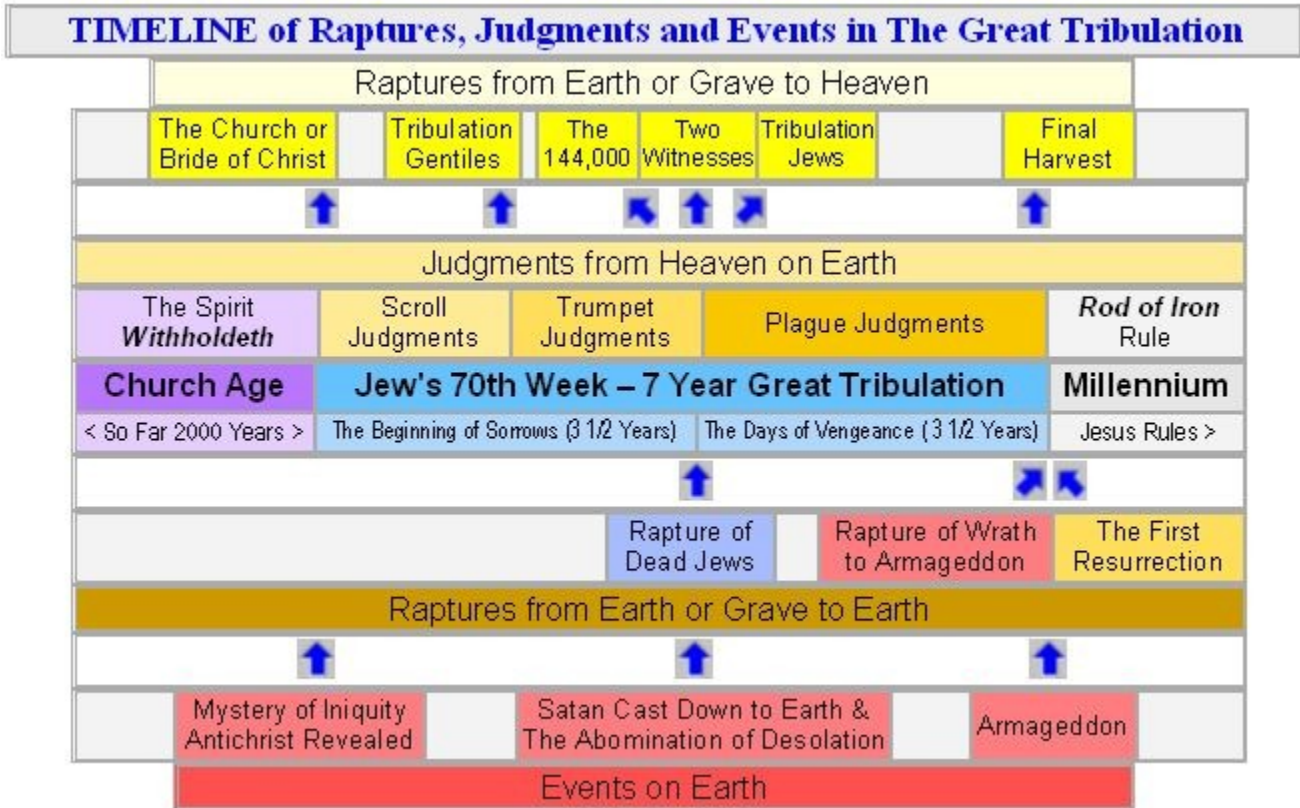
So by the time of this judgment God promises that all 'real Jews' will have been ***gathered... unto their own land*** and that He will have ***left none of them any more... among the heathen***. But I also expect that some 'real Jews' will be waiting in ***Abraham's Bosom*** who won't ***experience*** The 6th Seal Judgment, and who more likely get their 'heads up' from The Two Witnesses, and who will instead arrive in Israel near the end of The Trumpet Judgments. And I'm assuming that other 'real Jews' who remain ***scattered*** around the World and survive beyond The 6th Seal Judgment must die before the midpoint if they are to be ***'gathered'*** by God to Israel by way of ***Abraham's Bosom***. So at the end of Ezekiel 39, God must be talking about living 'real Jews' who must arrive in Israel by The 6th Seal Judgment, not about the dead ones who arrive via ***Abraham's Bosom*** before the midpoint. And that missing both these 'cutoffs' makes you a Gentile.

And when ***...the people of the prince that shall come*** [the Antichrist] ***shall destroy the city and the sanctuary*** [Dan 9:26](#), all the Jews in Israel will have been there for at least half of The Beginning of Sorrows, except for the newly raptured ones Gabriel seems to indicate have just arrived. This is why I say that Jews who don't make it to Israel, one way or another, in time must 'opt out' of God's plan for Jews and become as Gentiles, because He will have ***gathered*** all his people ***unto their own land*** of Israel by The 6th Seal Judgment, leaving ***among the heathen... none of them any more there*** —at least ***none of them*** that survive. Nevertheless, the people of the World will hate 'Jews' in any form and no matter where they are, but especially the ones that believe in Jesus ([Mat 24:9](#)). But God's designation of Jew or Gentile not only depends on where you are but also on your perspective, and it can get more than a little complicated. Still, seeking God's perspective always brings more clarity. And this is our goal in the remaining sections.

As the 'clock grins down' toward The Abomination of Desolation, and apparently before God restarts the 'blasting' of His 'precisely targeted big guns' at the Earth in The Days of Vengeance, the Antichrist will 'mop up' and 'clean out' Egypt in The 3rd Egyptian War. And he will likely top that by getting himself killed trying to kill The Two Witnesses in Israel. But a few days later, newly empowered, he'll kill them, and in short order also every 'Jew and Protestant' he can get his hands on, probably including a lot of relatively defenseless Muslims too, especially those and anyone else who won't take his ***mark*** and worship his ***image***. And maybe some of these Jews who ***endure unto the end*** are included in this fortunate ***third*** Zechariah tells us about. Or maybe they're part of the less fortunate other ***two parts*** instead. It depends on the perspective, doesn't it. Whichever the case, in this process Gabriel tells us the Antichrist will immediately ***overthrow many nations***. And from then on, and for as long as he is allowed, his primary goal will be to separate as many 'Jews and Protestants' from their heads as possible. And when this ***indignation against the holy covenant*** is complete, his 42 months will be up too. But throughout these ***days of vengeance*** there will be true Christian Jews and Protestants who ***endure***

unto the end, and who must ***know*** their God, and at least ***know*** that whenever and however they are eventually reunited with Him, it will be a joyous reunion. And we'll talk more about all of these various 'happy get-togethers' in the remaining sections. And as for the 'real Jews' who escape the clutches of the Antichrist and make it to that safe place ***prepared of God***, we'll talk more about them in the next sections too.

SECTION 10 The Coming Posttribulation Raptures: The Final Harvest Rapture to The Marriage of The Lamb and The Rapture of Wrath to Armageddon



The Final Harvest Rapture to The Marriage of The Lamb

CHART of 7 Distinguishing Features of The Final Harvest Rapture
 X = Certain X = Uncertain BLANK = Certainly Not

Raptures	From Grave	From Earth	Jews	Gen-tiles	To Earth	To Heaven	Saved
Final Harvest	X	X	X	X		X	X

CHART of The Final Harvest Rapture in the Main Sets of Events of The Great Tribulation

Sets of Events	The Beginning of Sorrows	The Abomination of Desolation	The Days of Vengeance	Armageddon
Position				
End			Final Harvest	

We're finally ready for the end of The Great Tribulation in Revelation 19. The events in this chapter are no longer concurrent with the 'stacked' accounts of the events of The Days of Vengeance in Chapters 12-18 because they follow these events. Remember that Chapters 12-18 give at least five different perspectives, and each of them more or less covers the entire Days of Vengeance from beginning to end. However at the end of one of these 'stackable' accounts—the heavenly perspective in Chapter 14—we find two Great Tribulation-

ending events we have yet to cover. In Jesus' Discourse on the Mount of Olives these two events must fit **'Immediately after the tribulation of those days'**. And they must also fit immediately before all the **Armageddon** markers in Daniel's prophecies. And like the 'drying up' of **the great river Euphrates** in The 6th Plague Judgment, these two events also help position the **armies** that will meet at **Armageddon**. And they must be in step with The Marriage and Marriage Supper of the Lamb in Heaven which is the first event described in Chapter 19. The events I'm talking about are the seventh and eighth group raptures of The Great Tribulation.

But there is reason to believe that these raptures take place a few weeks apart. In this way each marks a different end to The Great Tribulation depending what 'end' you're talking about. So far we have attempted to properly 'stack' together the various perspectives of this story in order find a single timeline. Now we're ready to attach the 'ends' of this story from these same perspectives to distinguish these raptures. Here's a brief review of how we got here that also shows the challenges still before us.

In the last section we grappled with trying to decide whether or not **Gog** survived long enough to be able to float **ships of Chittim** in The Mediterranean Sea Blockade between those constantly quarreling 'kings of the north and south'. Though probably not, there is some doubt and this is no surprise. This analysis attempts to put together accounts from several prophets, apostles, and Jesus too, which in turn must be laid atop John's account of The Beginning of Sorrows (Revelation 6-11) because all these accounts generally fit in this period. Again, the exact order of all these events remains speculative to a certain extent due to the 'stacking' and 'sorting' required to place them all.

On top of all this, near the middle of Revelation, the account of The Ministry of the Two Witnesses (Chapter 11) 'stacks upon' the rest of John's otherwise sequential account of The Beginning of Sorrows. And this account of The Two Witnesses 'steps on' each of the five or more subsequent accounts of The Days of Vengeance that follow (Chapters 12-18). And each of these perspectives of The Days of Vengeance makes it increasingly difficult to establish the precise order of events. So any attempt to decipher the order of events in the transition from The Beginning of Sorrows to and throughout The Days of Vengeance must align these several separate but stackable second-half summary accounts in conjunction with another account that initiates them all. The challenge that remains is to attach one more account (Chapter 19) at the 'ends' of the 'separate but stackable' second-half summary accounts which surely will lead to more uncertainty.

But by this **understanding** we have come a long way. Despite these challenges you should see in this **study** how we have made some very encouraging, God-led progress. Surely we're on schedule in God's plan in the natural progression of the **revelation** of His Word. We have identified at least the general placement in time of many specific events and conditions that will take place both before and throughout The Beginning of Sorrows in their differing perspectives. These include the pretribulation period of the manifest invincibility of Israel including the tearing down of her security walls, the pretribulation rise of Egypt, Russia, China, and probably Venezuela, and the continuing strong influence of The U.S. and The U.K. in World affairs.

We can also see that the beginning of The Great Tribulation is marked by

The Rapture of the Church, The Mystery of Iniquity, the start of The Ministry of The Two Witnesses, the start of The New European Catholic Revolution and The 2nd Russian and Chinese Communist Revolutions, and just before all of these, the rise of unprecedented persecution of Protestants and Jews, with all of this followed by The 1st Egyptian War. Early on we also encounter other Seal Judgments that cause worldwide economic and technological collapse, and billions of casualties by wars, famine, and pandemic. About halfway into this first 3 ½ years we come to the initiation of The Ministry of the 144,000 Jews, The Rapture of the Tribulation Gentiles, and The 1st Great Earthquake including Israel's 'big reunion' with God when He deals defeat to Russia and many other Muslim nations when they attack Israel. And following The Seal Judgments is The Ministry of the 144,000 Jews, and the horrific Seven Trumpet Judgments. And near the start of this set of judgments is where I'd place The 2nd Egyptian War including the start of the more covert period of The Indignation Against the Holy Covenant. Of course some of these events in The Beginning of Sorrows overlap and may also continue into The Days of Vengeance.

Midterm events that conclude The Beginning of Sorrows and start The Days of Vengeance include The 3rd Egyptian War, The Rapture of the 144,000 Jews, The War in Heaven and The Fall of Satan and the Angels, The Death and Resurrection of the Antichrist including The Empowerment of the Antichrist and the False Prophet, The Slaughter, Resurrection, and Rapture of the Two Witnesses including a worldwide celebration, but also likely along with that some localized **revelation** and **mourning** of Jesus Christ by Jews in Israel, then probably The Rapture of the Dead Jews at The Midterm Great Earthquake, and The Celebration of the Kingdom of God and of Christ in Heaven, and finally The Abomination of Desolation, The Flight of the Jews, the start of The Absolute Enforcement of the Worship of Satan and the Antichrist—otherwise known as The War with the Saints—which likely begins with a 'flash global holocaust' that is followed by The Rapture of the Tribulation Jews, all of which marks the start of the overt period of The Indignation Against the Holy Covenant—with overlapping in all these events again common.

Other overlapping events of The Days of Vengeance include The Jewish Sanctuary of 1260 days, The Herald Angels, the economic and spiritual control of the World through **the mark of the beast** and **the image of the beast** managed by the empowered False Prophet who is the Pope of the Catholic Church, the overthrow of **many nations** by the empowered Antichrist, the establishment of his **palace** and **seat** in Israel, and the torturous Plague Judgments from Heaven ending with The Final Great Earthquake. And somewhere late in The Days of Vengeance we can also add the overthrow of the Pope, Vatican City, and the Catholic Church by the Antichrist's **ten kings**, and the emergence of the extremely 'unorthodox' worship of the Antichrist's **god of forces** 'church'. But this evidently mostly ideological upheaval only reduces the Pope to a subordinate of the Antichrist and leaves the economy of Vatican City and the institutional holdings of the Catholic Church mostly intact and in the control of the Antichrist. After this we see the remaining **white** and **red** forces gathered for war at **Armageddon** where, during The Final Great Earthquake, the God Zone goes dark while the rest of the planet settles into probably an extended hazy period that stabilizes the global temperature, but just after the widely

viewable, sudden and total destruction of Vatican City by God.

See how much you've **learned** about The Great Tribulation! Now we can gather other events that are clearly Great Tribulation-ending events or Millennium-starting events. This takes us to Revelation 14 where we find two more raptures. To identify them we will **continue** to rely on the same deductive process that has served us so well so far.

But before I go on I want to make sure I haven't undersold God's **promises**. So far the process of elimination and deduction has taken us a very long way toward certainty in the order of most of the events and the identification of most of the players. And remember that in cases where this hasn't taken us all the way—and probably by design so as not to 'over-equip' the enemy—the alternatives are severely limited. We have reduced the speculation on positioning to just a few events and to fairly narrow ranges of time. And we have restricted the remaining speculation on players to a very narrow range of possible perpetrators.

And my testimony is that we are providentially 'on schedule'. I mean, God is not saying to Himself, 'Oops, I made this puzzle a little too difficult for those stupid humans to figure out—I should have made it a little easier so they would have figured it out a long time ago.' No, the new **revelations** in this **study** have come exactly on His schedule. And He has advanced the state of the art of **prophecy** to this **promised** time. And I mean that the **more sure word of prophecy** is now no longer even somewhat **shut up**. So come all ye 'skilled', 'diligent', 'experienced', and 'wise handlers' of The Word of God, for now it can be 'handled' as fully 'open' and 'unsealed', because certainly **the time of the end** has now finally fully come.

Alleluia; Salvation, and glory, and honour, and power, unto the Lord our God.

This is a quote from the **people in heaven** at the end of The Great Tribulation from [Revelation 19:1](#), which makes it an appropriate response for what we have covered so far too.

However, I should not neglect to add that the process of deduction and elimination, etc., can leave the honest, diligent practitioner looking a little silly from time to time. I mean if the Apostle Paul can make mistakes, we should expect it will happen to us too. But we have clues to this danger. One of the most obvious clues is seen in 'apparently contradictory' precepts. But such clues will not be found or proven without regular **exercise** in **scripture**. And without this, misinterpretation is undetectable and will not be exposed. Yet those who are **diligent** and **continue** will find more 'crossroads' than in any maze, and more 'pieces' to place than in any crossword puzzle. Still, we are only really lost when we fail to admit the times when we are unsure of the right choice. Because God has designed His Word to test us with these kinds of 'speed bumps' and 'stop signs'. God expects us to slow down, and to stop to ask questions, and then to **patiently** wait for the answers as necessary. And He expects us to formulate new questions until a good answer is **revealed**. Then He expects us to 'continually' test it to make sure it will stand up to all scrutiny. All this is part of The Natural Progression of The Word of God. And **integrity** is required in this process to keep you on course. Among other things this means that there are no good reasons for

unrelenting resistance to a recognizable course correction. After all, such 'waywardness' will ultimately be **proclaimed upon the housetops** to your **shame** ([Luke 12:3](#)), though hopefully not at the cost of your salvation. I mean Paul feels free to tell those who **know** Jesus but **have not the knowledge of God** that they are a **shame** [1Cor 15:34](#). And surely the day is coming when God will too.

But the **wise** see that it's better to find and admit their 'missteps' earlier than later. So I have taken us on a few 'wild goose chases' and other similar 'missteps' in case you haven't yet experienced or acknowledged dealing with too many of these 'course corrections' on your own before. These 'misadventures', along with the general construction of this **study**, are meant to simulate what growing in The Word of God is really like. I mean it's generally 'two steps forward and one step back'. And I mean you have to routinely give up conclusions you have held dear from time to time in order to **grow**—which means that sometimes there will be 'deeply lodged throat impediments' that must occasionally be 'purged'. But the 'impediments' I have more gently 'maneuvered down your throat' in this **study**—just so you could **experience** having them 'pulled out' again, let alone trying to 'pull them out' yourself—have been small ones compared to some of the more serious 'gagging' that way too many **believers** still need to 'get off and out of their chests'. And such 'dislodgings' could be hardest on some of the better **teachers** of **prophecy** that I am indebted to for **teaching** me. So I can only hope that the harder 'transitions' still to be **revealed** in this **study** can be accomplished without too much 'choking, kicking and screaming'. And any cheering would be nice—it's all for God after all. And we should be happy He has protected His Word in this way, because this clearly divides those with **integrity** from those without it, and to the degree that they have it.

The **interpretation** of Revelation 14, unfortunately, is not just where we unfold events that connect to the 'conclusions' of our story. It's also where we find one of our most embarrassing and damaging examples of prophetic misinterpretation that we have yet to correct. This popular misinterpretation is embarrassing for two reasons. It's because our best Protestant **teachers** have been misled by a clearly untrustworthy source, and because they have failed to recognize how Jesus' **teaching** on this subject properly interprets it. And this has naturally led to the most popular misplacement of The Rapture of the Church of them all. Be **patient**. We'll unravel all this in this section.

But we've done most of the elimination and deduction on The Rapture of the Church already. In this process we placed the first six raptures we have already covered. And once a perfect fit is found and continues to hold up to the exclusion of all other alternatives, it's no longer a candidate for other positions, and so it generally gets easier and easier to place all the remaining players, places, positions, times, etc., the farther you go. But there is still some speculation left—more 'shoes to try on for size'. And we must also not forget that you can never **know** for sure until you try them all on and find a 'fit' that continues to stand up to the tests over time. Still and again, it's safe to say, because of extensive 'cross-examinations', our case has progressed to a narrow list of suspects and alternatives, and the conclusions have become increasingly '**more sure**'.

Take for example the regions of the World that have been considered reasonable candidates to host the coming Antichrist Kingdom. Sticking to the

most popular there are Europe, Southwest Asia, and The U.S. But **understanding** the **prophecy** of the eye-opening events in Ezekiel 38-39, and their placement in The Great Tribulation, Southwest Asia is absolutely eliminated because it will not remain in a condition to host the Antichrist Kingdom in The Beginning of Sorrows. And this means that Russia and the Muslims get early elimination as dominant players. But of course Southwest Asia is a region the Antichrist later conquers, and where he establishes his **palace** and **seat** after The Abomination of Desolation, though this will be in relatively 'untouched' Israel.

And The U.S. can be eliminated easily enough too because Daniel 11 shows us that that the Antichrist is **a king of the north**. And Daniel 8 also shows us that The European Union is the only reasonable power in a position that could expand **toward the south, and toward the east** to eventually encompass **the pleasant land** of Israel. Not to mention we also need reasonable candidates for those who would stand in the way of the Antichrist when he attempts to attack **the king of the south**. The U.S. and The U.K. are the best fits for that.

So by elimination we can determine that Europe is the only possible choice for the original Antichrist Kingdom and home of the literal 10 kingdoms under their **ten kings**. And the 10 most principally Catholic of these nations—with the likelihood of some consolidation of nations between here and there—are the most likely to be included in these 10. But if you're inexperienced with all these precept you shouldn't close the case yet. And besides that, over time the case should be improved if not corrected because the deeper you get into the finer details the stronger and more focused the whole case should get. Remember this **study** is just a kind of 'get your bearings' view of end times **prophecy**. I say this again in case this **study** alone turns out not to be enough to break your attachments to other interpretations, though what we've covered so far should already be more than those with such 'death grips' were bargaining for. For such let the 'choking, kicking, and screaming' **continue**.

The remaining players in the final raptures of The Great Tribulation in Revelation 14 obviously include Jews and/or Gentiles, and the already dead and/or the still living. And as in other raptures they will travel to destinations either on Earth or in Heaven, and the participants may be redeemed but possibly not. Another telling distinction in these raptures would be whether they are for 'mark-takers' or 'mark-avoiders'. Also we can tell for sure that The Rapture of the Church is not seen in this chapter.

Continuing then at the end of Chapter 14, after the account of the orbiting Herald Angels that warn of unprecedented impending danger about to menace the entire globe in The Days of Vengeance, and about the only salvation from it, we come to these raptures that **'sever between'** participants in The Days of Vengeance. These participants will be separated by where they choose to stand throughout this worst **time, times and an half** ever. One of these raptures will be of a group that stands on the **right** side, but the other is for those who are going to get 'royally' **trodden under foot**.

Between the account of the Herald Angels and the account of these raptures we see a final encouraging 'blessing' promised from another **voice from heaven**, saying,

...the dead which die in the Lord from henceforth... may rest from their labours; and their works do follow them [Verse 13](#).

This blessing implies that many die in order to be redeemed throughout The Days of Vengeance. And it must be a clue to the identity of those who participate in the first of these two raptures. But does this tribulation-ending rapture account for the remainder of ***the dead*** who will be redeemed in The Great Tribulation? No, not all ***the dead which die in the Lord from henceforth*** make this rapture. This is clear because we will see that a specific part of ***the dead*** are described to be 'resurrected' even later. So only part of these ***dead***—and possibly some that are still alive—will make this privileged rapture in Chapter 14. This rapture is popularly called The Final Harvest because of the way it's described in [Verses 14-16](#). John writes,

And I looked, and behold a white cloud, and upon the cloud one sat like unto the Son of man, having on his head a golden crown, and in his hand a sharp sickle. And another angel came out of the temple, crying with a loud voice to him that sat on the cloud, Thrust in thy sickle, and reap: for the time is come for thee to reap; for the harvest of the earth is ripe. And he that sat on the cloud thrust in his sickle on the earth; and the earth was reaped.

This ***Son of man*** with ***a golden crown*** cannot be just '***another angel***', but must be Jesus Himself. During His ministry on Earth Jesus refers to Himself as ***the Son of man*** frequently. And He will be seen to be involved in a couple of other events just following these raptures too. So the ***sickle*** Jesus will use on cue from ***another angel to reap... the harvest of the earth*** makes it a ***harvest***, and this event's proximity to the end of The Great Tribulation—as better ***revealed*** in the next rapture—makes it 'final'. But who is ***reaped*** here? Again, the preceding clue leads us to suspect that it at least includes some of ***the dead which die in the Lord*** in The Days of Vengeance. And a brief review of the destinations of the earlier, large, supernaturally-extracted groups to Heaven or Earth will help us see who is left to be involved in this 'final' one.

At the beginning of The Age of Grace, all the spirits of the newly converted ***dead in Christ*** from ***other ages***, the ones 'pre-selected' by God to wait in ***Abraham's bosom***, are taken by Jesus all the way up to ***paradise*** to again wait for all ***the spirits*** that will join them during The Age of Grace, and to wait to be finally reunited with their bodies that remain ***in the grave***. At the end of The Age of Grace, in The Rapture of the Church, all these dead ***bodies*** are instantaneously immortalized as they are rejoined by their ***spirits***, and others that are still ***alive*** in Christ are simply immortalized. And in this ***twinkling of an eye***, all these new immortals will ***meet the Lord in the air***. And though it's ***promised*** that they will stay with Jesus from then on, this must be only 'generally' ***true*** because sometime after this 'meeting' they evidently split up. The ***four and twenty elders*** do go to their ***four and twenty seats*** around ***the throne of God*** where Jesus can also be seen, and ***the souls of them that were slain for the word of God*** end up ***under the altar*** inside The Temple in Heaven too, but apparently everyone

else participating in this rapture end up in some unknown place in Heaven, apparently out of view of **the throne**, and probably outside The Temple, maybe because this is when they begin 'making themselves ready' for The Marriage of The Lamb. But we know that their ultimate destination, according to Jesus, will be to become **kings and priests** who **shall reign on the earth** which we will talk about more in the remaining sections.

Next, a year or two later in the middle of The Beginning of Sorrows, a 'batch' of Gentiles is redeemed up to The Temple in Heaven to **serve** in it. Maybe some of them will leave Earth alive but more likely all these first die in The Seal Judgments apparently becoming **absent from the body** but **present with the Lord** [2 Cor 5:6-8](#) where their **spirits** will fill or refill some 'holding area' in **paradise** while their dead bodies stay on the Earth until they are immortalized and rejoined by their spirits in this rapture to The Temple in Heaven. And their rapture should empty out a waiting place for disembodied **spirits** somewhere in **the third heaven** for the second time.

Near the midpoint in probably the fifth rapture God commands a lot of dead Jews to...

...come up out of your graves... [Eze 37:12](#)

And in the process their **spirits** evidently 'come up' out of **Abraham's Bosom**—likely the second evacuation of this 'holding tank', third if you count The Two Witnesses. And this group of **spirits** must wait down there because they're definitely not yet **in Christ** when they die, just 'real Jews'. And they plainly do not go up to Heaven when they're raptured. These spirits instead rejoin 'rejuvenated' mortal bodies from **the grave** and get 'transported' **into the land of Israel** to join other Jews that will have already been gathered there in defense of or in **indignation against the holy covenant**. Those who would defend **the holy covenant** best flee to safety at the start of the immediately following Days of Vengeance because if they fail to do so they will have a much harder time of it. Still, one way or another, all the Jews who side with God will eventually meet up with Him and they will all eventually be **blessed**. And we will count the ways. But those who side with the **indignation against the holy covenant** will be double-crossed by the Antichrist. And this will be a hard road that offers no blessings but instead the punishment of **hell** and ultimately a doomed eternity in **the lake of fire**. But shortly after this 'resurrection-style' rapture to Israel and just after The Abomination of Desolation, there will be hard times for all Jews, because this is when there will be a great slaughter of Jews on both sides of **the holy covenant**, all of which happens not too long before the next rapture.

The sixth rapture of The Great Tribulation which follows the worst of this slaughter redeems some of those killed who stand for **the holy covenant**. I mean that only Jews who are slain resisting Satan and the Antichrist will get this particular **victory over the beast, and over his image, and over his mark**. These Jews are the ones who will sing **the song of Moses** standing on the **sea of glass** before The Throne of God. And **the spirits** of these **dead in Christ** can have but a very short stay in **paradise** before rejoining their immortalized bodies and being transported to The Temple on Mount Zion in Heaven—which apparently removes all 'disembodied spirits' from **the**

third heaven once again.

Or does it? Actually we're still missing a group or two. I mean since there is evidently some 'spiritual holding period' for everyone who dies before a redemptive or even a non-redemptive rapture, then there must be some overlapping of these periods. We can certainly see that different groups are coming from and going to different places and at different times. Jesus empties a tank in the Earth when he ascends to Heaven and fills up another place in Heaven. But the one in the Earth evidently starts filling up again with Jews **not in Christ** until it is finally emptied out back on Earth near the midpoint of The Great Tribulation at The Rapture of the Dead Jews. And the one in Heaven also continues to grow in occupancy with those **in Christ** until The Rapture of the Church 'drains' it. But after that this 'holding place'—or some other place in **paradise**—must start to fill up again with Tribulation Gentiles. And when these are raptured halfway through The Beginning of Sorrows this 'holding place' must empty out again. But it should then start to fill up again with new casualties **in Christ** for the rest of The Great Tribulation. This would include for a short period some Christian Jews who come and go just before The Rapture of the Tribulation Jews. And at the end of The Great Tribulation there is another evacuation at The Final Harvest Rapture. But still this can't leave **paradise** empty because there must still be one more group that will have been growing since The Abomination of Desolation that we'll clearly see does not participate in The Final Harvest Rapture. Again, this group will be 'resurrected' to another 'call of duty' shortly afterward which we'll cover in the next section.

By-the-way, it should occur to you that each group may have their own special spiritual 'holding areas' somewhere in Heaven since they clearly end up in different places of service—or not. And maybe some of the groups that I have assumed wait in **paradise**—especially the all Jewish ones—may instead wait for redemption in **Abraham's bosom**. But that would only be if the **promise** that being **absent from the body** is to be **present with the Lord** [2 Cor 5:5-8](#) is only for The Age of Grace—which I doubt.

So Jews **in Christ** who die resisting the Antichrist at the very beginning of The Days of Vengeance are redeemed in The Rapture of the Tribulation Jews. And we will see that other Jews and Gentiles **in Christ** who are later **beheaded** for resisting the Antichrist will be redeemed after The Final Harvest. This implies that the rest of the Jews and Gentiles **in Christ** who don't make earlier raptures, and who die by other means than resisting the Antichrist, must be redeemed in The Final Harvest Rapture because there is no other opportunity for these **saints** to be redeemed.

And from all this we can see that anyone who dies **in Christ** starts (or restarts) their spiritual **captivity**. Some of these, whether Jews or Gentiles, will serve a total time of 'confinement' in **paradise** very near two millennia if their 'incarceration' began just after the resurrection of Christ. But 'real Jews' who haven't yet been given their chance to **choose** Jesus will instead spend this time in **Abraham's Bosom**. And between these two 'detention centers', the immediate descendants of Adam and Eve, the first to die since Creation, could serve nearly six millennia separated from their bodies. And Jews now in **prison** in **the lower parts of the earth** may again become **captive** in **the third heaven** during the final **time, times, and an half**, either that or **in hell**. And other Jews and Gentiles born late in The Age of Grace—or anyone

who dies just before a rapture—may only have brief stays in Abraham's Bosom and/or **paradise**. But those raptured **alive** spend no time in '**captivity**'. Of course those that survive The Great Tribulation will likely die sometime in The Millennium and I expect that their **spirits** would then wait in either heavenly or subterranean spiritual 'confinement' too—while their bodies remain in their graves—until The Millennium-ending raptures. But remember we're constructing this picture with some arguably obscure clues and certainly while looking through 'dark glass'. So there must be a lot we're missing that we'll see much more clearly on the other side of it.

But we're now better ready to consider what is to become of the Gentiles who survive beyond The Rapture of the Tribulation Gentiles and who avoid the Antichrist but nonetheless die and end up waiting in **paradise**, and the Jews who after The Rapture of the Tribulation Jews also avoid the Antichrist but also find themselves 'disembodied' in Heaven. These later **dead in Christ**—both Jews and Gentiles—must participate in The Final Harvest Rapture because they die by some cause other than resisting the Antichrist, and too late to make earlier raptures, and again, because there is no other place for them to be redeemed. Likely the most common 'other cause' of their deaths must be God's judgments. But even if by 'accident', from God's perspective these fatalities are 'mercy killings'. And this is what I meant when I said God would save some by killing them. Certainly He will instigate the death of some of **his own elect** in order to spare them from an overwhelmingly horrifying confrontation with the Antichrist. And this brings new meaning to an Age of Grace **promise**. Paul says,

There hath no temptation taken you but such as is common to man: but God is faithful, who will not suffer you to be tempted above that ye are able; but will with the temptation also make a way to escape, that ye may be able to bear it [1Cor 10:13](#).

Since The Spirit of God is 'off duty' so to speak during The Great Tribulation, death may be the best means available to God to provide **a way to escape** from **temptation** in many circumstances. And even though The Ministry of The Spirit of God in The Age of Grace must offer many more ways for this **promise** to be **fulfilled** that would not be available **in other ages**, I still **believe** that in one way or another God always fulfills this **promise**, and that everything going on in The Great Tribulation is a necessary transition in God's plans in order to **save** as many as He can. And He will **continue** to do so by **all means**, only abandoning those **means** when they are no longer effective. And besides, God must always make **a way** to avoid **temptation** for everyone at all times—I mean, up to the time when He chooses to give the **reprobate** over to their **corrupt minds** ([Rom 1:18-2:11](#); [2 Tim 3:1-9](#))—because this **reveals** Him as an incomparably **righteous judge**. And I mean He not only takes responsibly for judging **evildoers**, He also takes responsibility for keeping the **righteous** on the right path. And surely everyone will have **witnessed** the **proof** of this beyond any shadow of a doubt at least when they are finally **judged**. Of course we cannot presume to be able to share all His **higher... thoughts** with Him.

So true to His character, He will be faithful to 'step things up' as much as

possible to save as many as possible when the time comes. I mean He will resume and intensify His tactic of getting attention by displays of His awesome power and unbelievable finesse that He has already proven in times past to be effective. I mean how do you think he filled up **Abraham's Bosom** before The Resurrection? And just as God takes some out from this age in a timely manner for their own good, so He will on a much grander scale after the suspended previous age restarts. Some of the Gentiles that are slain will be redeemed as temple servants in The Rapture of the Tribulation Gentiles. And some of the slain Jews will also be redeemed to God's Temple in The Rapture of the Tribulation Jews. Still other expired both Jews and Gentiles will participate in The Final Harvest Rapture. And still more 'Antichrist victims' will be resurrected in yet another even later rapture that we'll cover more fully next section.

But will The Final Harvest Rapture also include living Jews who survive The Days of Vengeance in their special 'sanctuary' **prepared of God**, and also other Jews hiding in Israel? My first impression was that these survivors are the most likely candidates for this 'final' **harvest of the earth** by Jesus because this rapture is at the end of The 70th Week of Daniel's **prophecy** and must be primarily for Jews to complete Gods plan...

...to make an end of sins, and to make reconciliation for iniquity, and to bring in everlasting righteousness, and to seal up the vision and prophecy, and to anoint the most Holy [Dan 9:24](#).

And it seems the 1260-day 'sanctuary' that keeps these special Jews safe may also serve as their 'holding place' while they await their rapture. And this would mean that God would be rapturing alive both Jews and Gentiles at the beginning and end of The Great Tribulation. But I have to assume that some surviving Jews and Gentiles will have no need of a rapture or 'holding tank' because they must survive to repopulate Israel and the nations during The Millennium. And the need to repopulate Israel is a good reason to instead think that those who survive in God's 'sanctuary' will instead simply return alive to Israel led by Jesus when He returns. But it's time to acknowledge the difference between speculation and **truth** on this subject—assuming you've considered it at all—and let **scripture** have it's say. And this is where the plot thickens.

There is another 'angle' to the triumphal return of Jesus to the Earth we need to consider. We **know** He likely first touches down on **the mount of Olives** just like he left, except when He lands He will split the **mountain** making **a very great valley** running east-west ([Acts 1:11](#); [Zec 14:4](#)). And I would expect that Jesus immediately destroys all His enemies in Jerusalem upon arrival likely including the Antichrist himself. Then I would expect that Jesus goes northeast [\[audio error\]](#) to the Jezreel Valley—formerly the Valley of Megiddo or **Armageddon**—for two reasons. First, because this is where most of His enemies will be **gathered** [Rev 16:16](#), and also because this seems to be where He will get the best opportunity to get His clothes all bloody ([Rev 19:11-16](#); [14:20](#)). But this is probably not the only place He gets 'bloodied up', because He is ultimately seen coming **with [red] dyed garments from Bozrah** [Isa 63:1-4](#).

Bozrah was a city in **Edom** or **Idumea**—Esau's homeland—that was generally southeast of the Dead Sea, and should not be confused with any modern cities by that name presently in Southwest Asia. The city and region Isaiah speaks of is around 150 miles south of the present day Jezreel Valley. This **Bozrah** must have been very close to where Petra is today. And we see in [Isaiah 63:1-4](#) that Jesus must do some 'trouncing' in **Bozrah** too. In fact there are several references to the coming permanent ruin of this region of **Edom** or **Idumea** including **Bozrah** ([Isa 34:5-6](#); [Eze 35:15](#); [36:5](#); [Jer 49:13, 17, 22](#); [Amos 1:11-12](#)). And if you read the entire **prophecies** involved with these references you can see that God may save **Edom, and Moab, and... Ammon** from Satan and the Antichrist ([Dan 11:41](#)), but only so He can finally destroy them on His **day of vengeance** Himself.

Now restricted to this collection of **scriptures**, some think that no fighting really goes on at **Armageddon** in the north. They think **Armageddon** is just a staging area and that all the 'trouncing' happens when these armies move south to **Idumea** to attack the 'sequestered' Jews. I suppose this is possible. But I think it is more likely that these are different groups that Jesus comes to destroy—these being the contending **white** and **red** forces of the Antichrist and China in the north, and the characteristically unrelenting anti-Semite descendants of **Esau** in the south. And there is another clue to consider. It's back in one of John's descriptions of the overflowing bloody slaughter in Revelation 14, an event that evidently follows after The Final Harvest Rapture. This is when an **angel...**

...gathered the vine of the earth, and cast it into the great winepress of the wrath of God. And the winepress was trodden without the city, and blood came out of the winepress, even unto the horse bridles, by the space of a thousand and six hundred furlongs [about 180 miles] [Rev 14:19-20](#).

Remember this is where I get the idea of 'Lake Armageddon'. Indeed it would take an incredible number of people to produce so much **blood**. But maybe we should think of it more as a river. Take a look at the [MAP of Israel](#) and its current topography and then consider the following.



Note: The Gaza Strip is not presently in Israeli control, sort of

Since the **blood** from Jesus' slaughter runs 'bridle-deep' for about 180 miles, we could assume it runs from **Armageddon** all the way to **Bozrah** uninterrupted. Formerly called **Armageddon**, the Jezreel Valley is bordered on the north by the Sea of Galilee, on the south by the West Bank and Mount Gilboa, on the west by the Mount Carmel range, and on the east by the Jordan Valley or the Jordan Rift Valley which is the northern end of the Great Rift Valley which runs southward all the way to Mozambique. Yes, in Southern Africa. But the Jordan Rift Valley ends at the Dead Sea. South of the Dead Sea continues another section of the Great Rift Valley called the Arabah (or the Wady el-Arabah). It's a valley that runs all the way to the Gulf of Aqaba (or Akaba or Akabah) which empties into the next section of the Great Rift Valley called the Red Sea. And situated in the rose-colored mountains on the eastern side of the Arabah is a rock-buttressed basin known today as Petra. And there are some really nice 'accommodations' carved into these mountains which presently attract a lot of tourists.

Now the Dead Sea is the lowest part of this rift. In fact it's the lowest land

location on Earth. And with the introduction of enough water into this section of the Great Rift Valley, it could be filled from the Sea of Galilee all the way to a high point just over half way down the Arabah, at which point, with a little more water, would begin to spill over from there and run down into the Gulf of Aqaba. And just how **Satan** will **cast... water as a flood after** the Jews **that he might cause them to be carried away of the flood** [Rev 12:15](#) I can't be sure. But I'm guessing that he either drives water north up the Arabah from the Gulf of Aqaba, or he pushes it south out of the Dead Sea at them. Whatever the case, I'm expecting that with 'the Earth's help' ([Rev 12:16](#)), there will be a unique basin in the mountains on the eastern side of the Arabah that becomes even more in-accessible to foot soldiers because of all the water that I expect that will **pool** up nearby ([Isa 35:7](#)). However we'll see in the next section that this rift is supplied by a new source of water that Jesus creates when He arrives on Earth. But we should now see, one way or another, that Petra has the potential to become a place **prepared of God** where many Jews will be **nourished for a time, and times, and half a time, from the face of the serpent** [Rev 12:14](#). And I also expect that these and/or other 'renovations' will somehow cause all the **blood** to flow downhill for about 180 miles through this section of the Great Rift Valley, and that all this implies that Jesus will be 'kicking buttresses' from **Armageddon** all the way to **Bozrah**.

And when Jesus is done with the slaughter, Micah gives us a clue where Jesus goes next. And Micah also reveals where the sequestered Jews have been in the mean time. God says,

I will surely assemble, O Jacob, all of thee; I will surely gather the remnant of Israel; I will put them together as the sheep of Bozrah, as the flock in the midst of their fold: they shall make great noise by reason of the multitude of men. The breaker [Jesus] is come up before them: they [the Jews] have broken up [or have been broken out], and have passed through the gate, and are gone out by it: and their king [Jesus] shall pass before them, and the LORD [Jesus] on the head of them [Micah 2:12-13](#).

God describes a two-step, time-separated operation here. First He 'pins up' the Jews in **Bozrah** like **sheep**—a very 'great and noisy' **flock** of **sheep**. Later He sends their **king** to 'break them out'. Go to blbclassic.org [site address changed] and click on the block "V" next to Verse 13 in the KJV for some easier to understand translations of this verse. Or it's safe to just try your own modern translation here. Presumably we are told here that Jesus will literally break open this mountain fortress and lead the Jews out and back home to Israel. And this means these 'sequestered' Jews are not raptured to Heaven but will live on in Israel into The Millennium. This is the beginning of their unique station in Christ's eternal kingdom. And we'll talk a lot more about them in the next section.

And from this we can **understand** that probably the only ones who make The Final Harvest Rapture are the ones who avoid the Antichrist but nonetheless **die in Christ** after The Rapture of the Tribulation Gentiles if Gentiles or after The Rapture of the Tribulation Jews if Jews. And we'll have more to say about this group in the next section too. But remember there is

an important way to distinguish 'Jews' who recognize their true Messiah. Some make it to Israel and some do not. The ones who do not can only at best expect a fate like other Gentiles. I say this because we **learned** in the last section that God tells Ezekiel that He brings every last living 'real Jew' **scattered** among the nations back to Israel by The 6th Seal Judgment—except for the ones who die and are later raptured **there** from **Abraham's Bosom** and from their **graves**. The **LORD their God** says,

Then [because of The 1st Great Earthquake and other marvels of The 6th Seal Judgment] **shall they know that I am the LORD their God, which caused them to be led into captivity among the heathen: but I have gathered them unto their own land, and have left none of them any more there** [Eze 39:28](#).

So God gathers every last one of his **chosen** 'real Jews' to Israel one way or another. And once there surely some of them will not escape to **the mountains** in time and will be slaughtered in time to make The Rapture of the Tribulation Jews. And others will escape and be 'pinned-up' by God alive but finally be led home by Jesus to live with Him in The Millennium. And I guess a few others must somehow survive alive in Israel. And I guess a few more might flee in the wrong direction and somehow survive to return back home too. But anyone alive who doesn't come home to Israel by The 6th Seal Judgment can only hope to be **saved** as other Gentiles can be.

Beyond that, those redeemed in The Rapture of the Tribulation Gentiles and later in The Rapture of the Tribulation Jews have identifiably distinct stations in eternity. So do other Jews and Gentiles who fall prey to the designs of the Antichrist in The Days of Vengeance. But there are still other **believers** who die in The Great Tribulation who are not eligible for any of these raptures. And there is no other time for them to be redeemed other than in The Final Harvest Rapture. And these must also share a distinct station in eternity.

Of course there must also be survivors worldwide. And this part of the **few there be that find it** [Mat 7:13-14](#) make it into God's eternal Kingdom simply by surviving The Great Tribulation. And we can deduce that these must also have a distinct station—or stations—in The Eternal Kingdom of God and of Christ. And we'll talk more about these survivors in the following sections too. But before we're done with this one we'll see that anyone who takes **the mark of the beast** will not survive The Great Tribulation.

Now we're ready to consider a different but even more important question. Why do these distinctions matter? The answer is really already in the

CHART of the Raptures and Stations of the Immortals	
Rapture	Station
The Church	<i>kings and priests</i> and the <i>wife</i> of Jesus
The Tribulation Gentiles	<i>servants</i> of God in the Temple in Heaven
The 144,000 Jews	<i>virgins, firstfruits</i> and entourage of Jesus
The Two Witnesses	<i>two witnesses</i> and <i>two candlesticks</i> before God
The Tribulation Jews	<i>victory over the beast, mount Sion</i> Temple Jews
The Final Harvest	?
The First Resurrection	<i>beheaded for the witness of Jesus</i> millennial rulers
The Second Resurrection	<i>the nations</i> and the <i>new Jerusalem</i> city dwellers

previous paragraphs—stations. And though we're still missing an account of one of the two groups of 'Antichrist-resisters' who are casualties in The Days of Vengeance, and also accounts of a couple of other identifiable raptures and stations, I think it's time to outline the identifiable eternal stations of the immortal **sons of God**. So, excluding the damned, and only leaving the station of those redeemed in The Final Harvest Rapture still unidentified, I see eight general stations of groups redeemed in eight different raptures as depicted in the [CHART of the Raptures and Stations of the Immortals \(p.443\)](#).

And there is a lot about these stations we already **know**. We **know** the members of the Church will be **kings and priest** and will be the **wife** of Jesus. But maybe we should instead consider ourselves 'queens and priestesses' in that our **royal** offices will come with our **marriage** to Jesus. We also **know** those raptured in the middle of The Beginning of Sorrows in The Rapture of the Tribulation Gentiles will **serve** God **day and night in his temple** in Heaven. And we **know** that at the midpoint that those raptured in The Rapture of the Dead Jews join other Jews in Israel who then have a shot at no less than five different stations, if you include **the lake of fire** as one of the destinations. Can you name the other four? One 'blessed' result is had by those that get **victory over the beast** and end up with God on **mount Sion** (or **Zion**) in The Rapture of the Tribulation Jews shortly after the midpoint. But other Jews and Gentiles will also do well in their deaths by avoiding the Antichrist and be redeemed at The Final Harvest Rapture to some unknown station at the end of The Great Tribulation. And Jews who are **beheaded** resisting the Antichrist who die after The Rapture of the Tribulation Jews—as well as Gentiles who die this way from The Abomination of Desolation on—will participate in The First Resurrection immediately following The Great Tribulation. John tells us that these **saints** will 'live and reign' **with Christ a thousand years**. And a **first resurrection** implies

that there will be a second. Apparently there will need to be a resurrection at the end of The Millennium too for **the dead in Christ** who die sometime during that **dispensation**—which I expect should also include a 'transition to immortality' for all those who survive to the end of the physical World. These two 'resurrections' are also covered in the last two sections.

So now that we can generally exclude what everyone else will be doing, what is left for the redeemed in this final **harvest of the earth** in The Great Tribulation? This is hard to say because there is no direct indication in Chapter 14 as to their actual function or position in The Millennium and beyond. We only **know** by the position of the rapture itself that it involves those who are redeemed at the end of The 70th Week, and that this must make them a select group. All 'wild goose chasing' aside, I'm not sure what their 'assignment' will be. But we can narrow it down a bit when we deduce where they go after their rapture. This is apparently seen in Chapter 19. Surely everyone that has been raptured during The Great Tribulation will attend **the marriage of the Lamb**, and the following wedding reception, **the marriage supper of the Lamb**.

And John records a **promise** here for everyone who attends this wedding. He says,

Blessed are they which are called unto the marriage supper of the Lamb [Rev 19:9](#).

This must refer to the 'more privileged' groups in The Eternal Kingdom of God and of Christ. And they are 'more privileged' because we will confirm that many of the 'less-privileged' eternally redeemed will miss this ceremony and celebration altogether. They are simply not invited. However you could also argue that everyone up to that point is 'invited' but that many simply decline their 'invitations' to this 'premier gathering' of all time ([Mat 22:1-14](#); [Luke 14:16-24](#)). And the fact remains that those who survive into The Millennium or are born in it, and even some who die **in Christ** during The Great Tribulation, will have no chance at all to attend.

And I'm guessing that there must be some kind of a 'cut line' that distinguishes these **blessed** from others who are **redeemed**. But it's not the case that these more fortunate ones will be the only ones that get to live with Jesus in Jerusalem—and ultimately New Jerusalem—as we will verify next section. Specifically, we will verify that those **beheaded** by the Antichrist **for the witness of Jesus** and all survivors of The Great Tribulation will 'miss this cut', but that a lot of these will nonetheless live in Jerusalem with Jesus. However these divisions must indicate different stations. And surely those in different stations will have different roles and probably live in different places. In the same way the **marriage** and **marriage supper of the Lamb** must indicate some of these dividing lines too. Maybe those who attend the 'wedding' will minister more directly to God and Jesus or 'inwardly', and those who don't attend will minister more directly to Israel and the nations or 'outwardly'. Just an idea. But we'll get a clearer picture of all this in the remainder of this **study**.

But there also appears to be a distinct division between these select 'invitees'. Some of them are part of the **wife**, but apparently the rest are only **called unto the marriage supper of the Lamb** [Rev 19:9](#). I mean it's not

likely that all who are **called** are part of the **wife**. Some must be 'guests' at this 'wedding' because you can't have a 'wedding' and a 'reception' without 'guests'. I mean surely The Two Witnesses, The 144,000 Jews, The Mount Zion Jews, and The Gentile Temple Servants will be 'invited' but are not part of the **bride**. And surely these will all be 'guests' at this temple **marriage** and at **the marriage supper of the Lamb** when Jesus 'marries' His **wife**, who are the **kings** and **royal priesthood** redeemed in The Rapture of the Church.

Now you may have assumed thus far that the **wife** is represented only by those that participate in The Rapture of the Church. And so far I have only offered subtle clues that it could be otherwise. But now it's time to be more obvious about it, because we have not determined the station of those taken in The Final Harvest Rapture. Apparently this **marriage** takes place after The Final Harvest Rapture. So the **saints** redeemed in it must attend the 'wedding'. But are these last to be redeemed in time for this 'wedding' expected only as 'guests', or to complete **the bride**? I can't say for sure. But if they are 'just guests', I doubt that they will be your average, 'run-of-the-mill' Jerusalem 'city dwellers'. And we'll try to better identify all the 'city dwellers'—as well as the 'nation dwellers'—before we're done.

The big picture here is that it will matter throughout eternity when and where you accept Jesus and possibly whether you are a Jew or a Gentile when you do because these factors will forever bear upon your ultimate station in eternity. The best choice for anyone who would participate in this 'wedding' seems to be to accept Jesus in The Age of Grace. And the best choice for the average Jew who ends up in The Great Tribulation must involve being in Israel. And I'm guessing the best choice in The Great Tribulation for Gentiles—and I said best not easiest—involves surviving passed The Rapture of the Tribulation Gentiles but then later dying with their heads attached. Because Jews or Gentiles who survive the whole thing, or are **beheaded** by the Antichrist, will miss this 'wedding'.

And though all this is a little confusing, it should not be a surprise. We **know** that God has made some **vessels of wrath** and some of **mercy** and **honor** ([Rom 9:14-24](#), [2 Tim 2:20-26](#), [Jer 18:1-10](#)). And surely God also decides the position of **wrath** or **honor** each man receives. But it's also a universal perspective that we all **experience** the choices that take us to where we end up. Still, no matter how much **the potter** may influence or refrain from influencing our choices, He certainly has anticipated them, because He's already told us about the different places of **wrath** and **honor** He has planned for all of us in advance. But these coming rewards and punishments also imply—at least from our perspective—that we have at least some say in the matter because He is a **righteous judge**.

And unless your **experience** is fundamentally different than mine, it won't help to check from time to time for those 'hooks in your mouth'. If you ever get one in yours I'm guessing you won't **experience** it that way. And simply believing that it's all just fate won't really help much to **experience** it that way either. But you will surely **experience** that you are responsible for what side you choose to stand on, and also for how solidly you choose to stand on that side. In fact, I have supernatural insider **knowledge** that you're rather stubborn and selfish this way. I mean I **know** you were born with a...

...heart [that] is *deceitful above all things, and desperately wicked* [Jer 17:9](#).

And that you ultimately insist on your own way—or at least think that you do. But hopefully God is already having some success in 'fixing your vessel' in order to save you from yourself and strengthen your **foundation** in Him.

And just as sure as you are born with one of those **desperately wicked** hearts, **continuing** in God's Word will help quite a lot with your 'condition'. In fact Jesus and Peter **promise** that it's a guaranteed 'cure'. But those who don't **study** God's Word make this 'recovery' much harder for both God and themselves. And such neglect will not likely lead to choices anyone would be completely happy with—even if they choose to stand on the **right** side. Yes, this is part of what Jesus means when He says that there will be **the least in the kingdom of heaven** as well as the **great in the kingdom of heaven** [Mat 5:19](#). The reality is that half of the **redeemed** will end up on the 'low end of the totem pole' in The Kingdom of God and of Christ throughout eternity. And you'd best believe it and start making better 'choices' if you don't really want to **choose** to end up in that position. And I mean if wanting to do God's **will** is not your #1 **pleasure** [Phil 2:13](#), you are in a seriously dangerous state of mind. And the best remedy for this condition is **the fear of the Lord** ([Job 28:28](#); [Psa 111:10](#); [Pro 1:7](#); [9:10](#); [15:33](#); [Isa 11:1-5](#); [33:6](#), etc.), because this state of mind will not fail to get you on the 'fast track' to being **great in the kingdom of heaven**.

Now we're ready to get back to that dangerous misinterpretation of **prophecy** I told you about. It's related to the 'mess' made with a popular misinterpretation of the rapture that Jesus describes in His Discourse on the Mount of Olives. Again, most who **believe** in The Rapture think it will be at the start of The Great Tribulation. But others connect this rapture with the first of the two raptures John describes in Revelation 14, if with anything at all. The problem is that the one Jesus describes really connects to the second rapture from Revelation 14. And no speculation is necessary here. I'm speaking for God.

The Rapture of Wrath to Armageddon

CHART of 7 Distinguishing Features of The Rapture of Wrath							
X = Certain X = Uncertain BLANK = Certainly Not							
Raptures	From Grave	From Earth	Jews	Gen- tiles	To Earth	To Heaven	Saved
Rapture of Wrath		X	X	X	X		

CHART of The Rapture of Wrath in the Main Sets of Events of The Great Tribulation				
Sets of Events	The Beginning of Sorrows	The Abomination of Desolation	The Days of Vengeance	Armageddon
Position				
Beginning				Rapture of Wrath

The next and eighth rapture—the 'bad' final harvest of the Earth—is described in [Revelation 14:17-20](#). And it's unmistakably bad. John sees...

...another angel came out of the temple which is in heaven, he also having a sharp sickle. And another angel came out from the altar, which had power over fire; and cried with a loud cry to him that had the sharp sickle, saying, Thrust in thy sharp sickle, and gather the clusters of the vine of the earth; for her grapes are

fully ripe. And the angel thrust in his sickle into the earth, and gathered the vine of the earth, and cast it into the great winepress of the wrath of God. And the winepress was trodden without the city, and blood came out of the winepress, even unto the horse bridles, by the space of a thousand and six hundred furlongs.

We should notice here that Jesus does not personally administer this 'second harvest'. This is because he's got a particular job to do connected with it. And that would be His 'romp' around what I call The Lord's Triangle—from **Jerusalem** to **Armageddon** to **Bozrah** and back. And I'm guessing that the heavenly temple **marriage** and **the marriage supper of the Lamb** take place between these two 'harvests' for one very good reason. Doing both 'harvests' before the **marriage** would 'pile' too many people into this **winepress** way too soon. So I'm guessing that the **angel** of this second **harvest** won't **thrust in his sickle into the earth** and 'gather' the **evil fruit** of the **vine of the earth, and cast it into the great winepress of the wrath of God** until just in time for **it** to be **trodden under foot** along with the other bad **grapes** who will have already voluntarily climbed into this great 'wine vat' on their own.

Bringing the metaphor back to the literal, we **understand** that we are talking about producing an unbelievable amount of **blood** that comes out of this figuratively 'foot-powered' **winepress** which will literally flow **even unto the horse bridles, by the space of a thousand and six hundred furlongs**—or for about 180 miles according to most translations. However one translation I'm following suggests **blood** will flow closer to 200 miles. And I'm guessing that The Great Tribulation-sized, topographical renovation caused by The Final Great Earthquake will 'dredge out' a declining 'trough' on Israel's eastern border so that it will fittingly slowly 'drain' this **blood**. And conveniently enough, it's about 200 miles from the Jezreel Valley down to the Gulf of Aqaba. And we will see next section that God has other profitable

uses for this section of The Great Rift Valley in the future beside a 'flood catcher' or a 'blood drain'.

By-the-way, I don't know exactly how long a **furlong**—or **stadia** in the Greek—is. But I know that **Bethany**—where **Lazarus, Mary, and Martha** lived—**was nigh unto Jerusalem, about fifteen furlongs off** [John 11:18](#). And my encyclopedia tells me that Bethany is between 1½ and 2 miles or about 3 kilometers from Jerusalem. This would make a **furlong** about 1/8 of a mile (1.86 miles/15 **furlongs**). And this would make 1600 **furlongs** very close to 200 miles (1600 **furlongs** x 1/8 miles/furlong). And this would be a supernaturally large flow of real human blood that only God could make.

This horrendous event must be when...

...the day of the LORD cometh, cruel both with wrath and fierce anger, to lay the land desolate: and [when] he shall destroy the sinners thereof out of it [Isa 13:9](#).

And He will evidently be doing a good portion of this 'desolating destruction' within The Lord's Triangle, because any **sinners** that don't come there voluntarily in The 6th Plague Judgment, or already live in the general vicinity, He will have His **angel** 'gather' them and 'transport' them there. And this must be the case because a voluntary gathering of 'bad grapes' in the Jezreel Valley—along with some 'Herculean plumbing alterations'—could create a 200-mile 'blood drain', but probably not up to **the horse bridles**—say 3 or 4 feet deep. Again, only a supernatural cause could explain how so many people could come together and release that much **blood** altogether in one flow. So besides the supernatural 'plumbing', the supernatural explanation that makes possible the collection of such an incredible amount of **blood** is The Rapture of Wrath. And The Herald Angels of Revelation 14 must not only be giving us a clue of who will be redeemed in the first Harvest, they also must be warning us of who will be 'flushed' in the second. This is why I expect that everyone who has taken **the mark of the beast**—whether they come voluntarily or not—will experience first hand this **cruel** and **fierce** God-powered **great winepress of the wrath of God**. And Revelation 19 must give us even more details of this horrific **day**.

The account of **Armageddon** in Chapter 19 begins in [Verses 11-16](#) where we are introduced to Jesus and his mission that follows **the marriage of the lamb**. John tells us Jesus will perform this mission riding His **white horse**. In [Verse 14](#) John adds that...

...armies in heaven followed him upon white horses, clothed in fine linen, white and clean.

These **armies** must include at least some of the previously **redeemed**, though not likely all of them as we will see. But we already **know** that this will include His new **bride**, because to the Church Paul says,

When Christ, who is our life, shall appear, then shall ye also appear with him in glory [Col 3:4](#).

Of course, maybe this is instead a reference to the earlier **'in the sky'** appearance at The Rapture of the Church. But if that is the case, Paul also tells us that once we are with Him **in the sky**, we will from then on for **ever be with the Lord** [1Thes 4:17](#), which must mean that we will be with Him on this 'ride' from Heaven to Earth too. And this means that this reference in Colossians may very well be a brief description of this 'ride'. Just in case, I recommend that you take as many opportunities as you can to ride horses, unless you don't mind missing too much at the 'back of the pack'. I mean it may not be like in that movie **The Matrix** where we are 'automatically preprogrammed' to know how to ride a horse. And surely at least the horses will know where to go, but just because God can put ideas in our heads doesn't necessarily mean He will. However there is at least one more 'supernatural, mind-altering transformation' coming. We will see the evidence of this in the final section.

But just as there are exceptions to the 'once to die' rule, there must also be exceptions to the 'always being **with the Lord**' rule. I say this because it appears we will not be going with Jesus on His trip to **Armageddon** or **Idumea** but will wait for Him in Jerusalem. This also implies that we will all go to Jerusalem first so that Jesus can leave us there. And if you had read the earlier references about the destruction of **Idumea—Edom, and Moab, and... Ammon**—you would have already suspected this. In Isaiah 63 we find out that we apparently remain in Jerusalem because Jesus does His **winepress** thing **alone**. Jesus says,

I have trodden the winepress alone; and of the people there was none with me: for I will tread them in mine anger, and trample them in my fury; and their blood shall be sprinkled upon my garments, and I will stain all my raiment. For the day of vengeance is in mine heart, and the year of my redeemed is come. And I looked, and there was none to help; and I wondered that there was none to uphold: therefore mine own arm brought salvation unto me; and my fury, it upheld me [Isa 63:3-5](#).

And there's a lot more you could **learn** from these references—especially if you read the entire connected **prophecies**, and watch the transitions and 'layering', and be careful to account for God's transcendent perspective. For example, in Isaiah 35 we get another picture of how God restores **the wilderness** around Israel by making **waters break out, and streams in the desert** [Verse 6](#). Of course you could say the Israelites have started this already. But there must be even more of this to come by God's hand alone. I expect God alone will all of a sudden make the **thirsty land** that will sequester the Jews become a **pool** with **springs of water** [Verse 7](#). And I assume that this will be part of their protection as well as their sustenance. And I assume that the bulk of this 'irrigation work' will be done by God when the Jews flee Israel, and later in The Final Great Earthquake, and finished by Jesus when He comes to Earth again.

We also get a picture in this chapter of how Jesus will lead the Jews home. And in an earlier **prophecy** of Isaiah he says,

...the ransomed of the LORD shall return, and come to Zion with songs and everlasting joy upon their heads: they shall obtain joy and gladness, and sorrow and sighing shall flee away [Isa 35:10](#).

And some of you should remember the popular Church hymn found in [Isaiah 51:11](#) that is very similar to this. But sorry, this doesn't directly apply to the Church. But we should be in Jerusalem to receive them when they arrive ***with songs and everlasting joy*** at a time of ***joy and gladness, and sorrow and sighing shall flee away*** from everyone left in Israel. Of course again, we might have to be taught the words to these Jewish songs —not to mention ***learn*** Hebrew. But one way or another we will all speak God's ***pure language*** as the Prophet Zephaniah's single ***prophecy*** reveals in [Zephaniah 3:9](#).

Back in Revelation 19, in [Verse 13](#), is another place that showcases Jesus as ***dipped in blood*** like in Isaiah 63. And in [Verse 15](#) we see that the enemy under attack by Jesus is ***the nations***. And in this verse we naturally find the same metaphor from Isaiah 63 showing how overwhelming His attack will be. John says,

...out of his mouth goeth a sharp sword, that with it he should smite the nations: and he shall rule them with a rod of iron: and he treadeth the winepress of the fierceness and wrath of Almighty God.

Then [Verse 17-18](#) tells us of ***an angel*** who calls...

...all the fowls that fly in the midst of heaven [to]... Come... eat the flesh of kings, and the flesh of captains, and the flesh of mighty men, and the flesh of horses, and of them that sit on them, and the flesh of all men, both free and bond, both small and great.

This must be the general description of the carnage left behind from this ***battle of that great day of God Almighty***.

But since we have also been told that Jesus will ultimately ***rule all nations with a rod of iron***, this implies that His ***fury, fierce anger, and the fierceness of his wrath*** will ***'sever between'*** certain groups within all these ***nations***. Some will be separated to be destroyed and others will survive to live in The Eternal Kingdom of God and of Christ in one of Earth's remaining ***nations***. Who will be separated and destroyed? Again, Chapter 16 tells us how God dries up the Euphrates to lure ***the kings of the east*** to attack the Antichrist Kingdom, and also releases ***out of the mouth*** or 'at the command' of Satan, the Antichrist, and the False Prophet the ***spirits of devils*** to do their 'pied piper' routine to gather the Antichrist's armies to defend his kingdom. And these ***'hooks'*** lure vast armies of willing participants to ***Armageddon***. And surely these armies of the Antichrist and China are a part of the bloodbath described in Chapter 14. I haven't done the math. Maybe someone should. Or maybe someone has. But I'm sure it's not reasonable to believe that such an incredible quantity of blood could be

centralized by human endeavor alone. I mean people will have to be 'piled' into this valley like **grapes** in a **winepress**. After all, this is **that great day of Almighty God**. And in **that day**, I expect He will show Himself as such. So in addition to those who can be 'deluded' by God to come 'voluntarily', there must be many more 'supernaturally shanghaied' by Him. And this portion of 'involuntarily transported' participants I call The Rapture of Wrath to Armageddon. These would be the rest of the people on the planet that have taken **the mark of the beast**.

But I don't necessarily expect that Esau's descendants will be transported there or even to **Bozrah** in this Rapture of Wrath because they will already be in the neighborhood. And it's clear that Jesus also has plans to annihilate all of **Idumea** on His way around The Lord's Triangle anyway. And all the mark-takers from around the World plus all the armed forces of both the **white** and **red** revolutions—all 'piled' in one **winepress** known as the Jezreel Valley—should be the perfect 'supernatural concentration' of humanity to produce the 200-mile long, waist deep river of blood running from there to the Gulf of Aqaba. But this will require various topographical renovations that will make the Jezreel Valley the high ground in the Great Rift running along the eastern border of Israel. It requires that this rift becomes a 'well-plumbed draining basin' from north to south. And this is really not that hard to imagine. Take another look at the map on [p.441](#).

However before all this—as the Jews **flee** to the **wilderness** at the midpoint—I'm guessing Satan will 'inadvertently' flood the Arabah adjacent to Petra. And the deliverance of the Jews must be partly due to the **flood** Satan commands and partly due to the Earth's 'help' to 'swallows it up'. This 'adjustment' by the Earth to contain this **flood** I could call the first stage of topographical renovation in the Great Rift adjoining Israel—unless the first two Great Earthquakes do some renovation there too. Now the closest source of a lot of water that Satan could command is from the Dead Sea, except that it's presently drying up. In fact it's not even one sea anymore but two smaller ones because so much water is being diverted from it. But Israel and Jordan have plans to do something about that. It's officially called the "Two Seas Canal" where they will pump water up from the Gulf of Aqaba nearly 400 feet and then drop it by canal nearly 1800 feet into The Dead Sea, producing some electricity and desalinating some water in the process. There have been some stalls in this plan, and there is another plan to instead move the water from the Mediterranean Sea—which would not benefit Jordan so much. But one way or another and sooner or later I expect a new source of water will flow into the Dead Sea because even if Israel is presently too distracted to get the job done, the time is coming when nothing will be able to distract her. And then the Dead Sea should at least stop receding so Satan can be provoked to use this water should he want to.

However you should have noticed here just how far below sea level the Dead Sea is—at the moment approaching 1400 feet below sea level. So though the Gulf of Aqaba is further away, it's about the same distance from Petra, so it may be easier for Satan to push water up the Arabah instead. Maybe. Whatever the case, I expect The Final Great Earthquake will level things out considerably. And we can certainly see that this would have to be a lift of 'Great Tribulation' proportions. But we will see in the next section that such a 'leveling out' of the land will eventually occur. And again, we will see

that such 'replumbing' will be required for other purposes besides the 200-mile 'blood drainage system'.

But you probably have never heard of this Rapture of Wrath by any name. This oversight is not just because most are lost in the Book of Revelation. It's also because most Protestants have been led to believe that Jesus' description of this rapture in His Discourse on the Mount of Olives is instead of The Rapture of the Church. But this cannot be. First of all and again, **the holy apostles and prophets** made clear that Jesus could say nothing about The Rapture of the Church—not directly anyway. So his entire **teaching** on the Mount of Olives is about the Jews' fate, not The Church's. And the rapture He describes in these passages cannot be of the Church. Another clue is that it plainly takes place at the second **coming of the Son of man** or, **Immediately after the tribulation—at Armageddon**. This 'timestamp' disqualifies it as The Rapture of the Church for anyone using as much **scripture** as is used in this **study**. Still, those paying closer attention to the order of events in The Discourse on the Mount of Olives more naturally place The Rapture of the Church at the end of The Great Tribulation because this is plainly when this rapture Jesus describes occurs. And this observation makes this rapture fit one of the tribulation-ending raptures in Revelation 14. However we have further incontrovertible **proof** that it can't be the good one. Jesus subtly provides part of this proof by telling us how the rapture works. He says,

Then shall two be in the field; the one shall be taken, and the other left. Two women shall be grinding at the mill; the one shall be taken, and the other left...

And this of course raises the questions of who are **taken** and where, and who are **left** behind and why. It's popularly mistaken that the ones that are **taken** are the Church in their rapture and that everyone else is **left**. Oops.

So about here we need **teachers... who by reason of use have their senses exercised to discern both good and evil**. And such **strong meat** eaters would tell you something like this. Beware of confidence in self-centered interpretations. And the problem is that I haven't really found this perspective anywhere. Instead I find everywhere this kind of self-centered confidence due to the pervasive Biblical immaturity in today's Church. But God has shown me—I mean me personally—that it's time for a major course correction. And this would be for everyone who continues to believe that the group **taken** here is the Church. But such a correction will unavoidably show us those who refuse to receive it. And all these need to be recognized as unfit to speak for God—at least about His **more sure word of prophecy**. And you can take that as a 'slap in the face' if it applies to you, especially if it will get your attention. And **understand** me, I'm guessing that the Prophet **Nehemiah** would not hesitate to slap anyone for **teaching** such embarrassing error. In his day he not only **smote** ("struck" or "beat") those involved in serious 'misdirection', he also **cursed them** and **plucked off their hair** [Neh 13:25](#). And one reason you may be in need of such a jolt is because you are used to being let **sleep**. And I mean as an ignorant **babe** I had a problem with this misinterpretation when I first heard it decades ago. I immediately saw that I was expected to believe that this was a

pretribulation rapture happening **immediately after the tribulation**. Hello? Anyone **awake**? And I knew that if I could see this at first glance that anyone responsible for **teaching** the Church should too. In fact this overwhelmingly obvious observation has led many to believe that The Rapture of the Church takes place at the end of The Great Tribulation. What a mess.

But worse than this, many also believe that the rest of us stupid enough to fall for a pretribulation rapture and vigorously defend it must be apostate. Yeah, this is serious. Indeed, pretribulationists who **teach** that this rapture from Jesus' Discourse on the Mount of Olives is The Rapture of the Church do immeasurable damage to the Church by making Protestants look like fools, and they provoke posttribulationists to think that they have the superior position when they simply have a different brand of **foolishness** also based on insufficient consultation of The Word of God! By-the-way, I may not have been shouting when I wrote that last line but my fingers typed it that way. Brothers and sisters, the **reward** and **shame** will be real to all no matter where you end up. And if you can't take the **preaching** along with the **revelations** you are likely to end up with more **shame** than **reward**. And if you can't receive this you have no need of me. You need to go back to **teachers** not 'pressing' so hard for the 'higher mark'. Really. However now we're ready for probably the biggest and least known **revelations** of this **study**.

To absolutely **prove who shall be taken** we need to find out for sure where they **shall be taken**. And this will also indicate who will be **left** behind and why. And the best way to get to the bottom of this is to ask the same question Jesus' disciples asked Him on the subject. The problem is that neither Matthew, Mark, nor Luke record the asking of this key question on the Mount of Olives. However Matthew does record Jesus' mysterious answer to the question there. And evidently God purposefully chose to report the asking of this critical question in only one of the four similar accounts. But the account that includes the question is not one that takes place on the Mount of Olives, nor is it recorded by a disciple who is originally there to hear it. But by now you should **know** some of the reasons why God has built tests into His Word that provoke our continuing **diligence** and **integrity** and show the **foolishness** of those 'handling' it without these 'skills'—or at least their weaknesses in them. And only those who embrace His Word with **diligence** and **integrity** can expect to solve its 'puzzling presentation' to **reveal** the meatier **truth** that will make them naturally and properly **grow in grace, and in the knowledge of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ**.

The critical question is recorded sometime before Jesus' Discourse on the Mount of Olives. It is born out of an exchange between Jesus and the Pharisees about **when the kingdom of God should come** in [Luke 17:20-37](#). Of course the one who records the question who is not there to hear it is Luke. In this passage Jesus also gives the description of this Great Tribulation-ending rapture, saying,

I tell you, in that night [Immediately after the tribulation of those days—see also [Mat 24:27-44](#)] there shall be two men in one bed; the one shall be taken, and the other shall be left. Two women shall be grinding together; the one shall be taken,

and the other left. Two men shall be in the field; the one shall be taken, and the other left [Luke 17:34-36](#).

The big difference here is that Luke records the question the disciples ask as well as Jesus' answer. They ask, **Where, Lord?**—or 'where are they taken?' The answer is astonishing and apparently not what most people would ever expect. It first hit me like a ton of bricks when the **revelation** came to me about two decades ago. Jesus answers,

Wheresoever the body is, thither will the eagles be gathered together [Luke 17:37](#).

And Jesus' restatement of this answer on the Mount of Olives is really identical. He says,

For wheresoever the carcass is, there will the eagles be gathered together [Mat 24:28](#).

However on the Mount of Olives this 'answer' is placed in context with **the coming of the Son of man** like **lightning** [Mat 24:27-28](#), obviously at **Armageddon**. And the details of how the rapture works are again connected to **the coming of the Son of man** several verses later ([Mat 24:39-42](#)). So as usual, the 'scattering and layering' of **precepts** hide this **revelation**.

And what is the **revelation**? It's the **understanding** that the ones that will be **taken** end up as blood-drained corpses that the **eagles** will be **gathered together** to **eat**. And we **know** where these meat-eating birds are **gathered**. It's to **the supper of the great God** [Rev 19:17-18](#). These **fowls that fly in the midst of heaven... gather** where God has 'lured' and 'supernaturally transported' the **men** and **women** He has **taken** to be **trodden under foot** at **Armageddon**—certainly not to Heaven as most imagine. And this is in fact how there will be enough **blood** for a 200-mile-long, horse's-bridle-deep river of it. But evidently gravity and the birds will help God clean up the worst of the mess. And this would involve that bigger 'bird buffet bonanza' I told you about. This must be the demise of all those who take **the mark of the beast**. So I expect that God will not strongly 'target' mark-takers for death during The Days of Vengeance simply because He would not want too many of them to miss all the 'excitement' He has planned for them in the Jezreel Valley. And this further implies that The Plague Judgments are more about 'teeth-gnashing' torment than death.

By-the-way, in case you're still compartmentalizing, it doesn't make much sense to expect birds to fly into a nuclear blast zone looking for food, nor for Israel to try use this region for anything productive after such an explosion. But this 'blowout' does in some ways appear to be described like a 'nuclear blast', especially by the Prophet Zechariah. He says,

And this shall be the plague wherewith the LORD will smite all the people that have fought against Jerusalem; Their flesh shall consume away while they stand upon their feet, and their eyes shall consume away in their holes, and their tongue shall consume away in their mouth [Zec 14:12](#).

So this **plague** of **the LORD** is another connected **precept** we can add that shows us how all the armies of the World—plus about **one** out of every **two** of the remaining 'civilians'—will be squeezed by **God Almighty** into the Jezreel Valley to be supernaturally **trodden under foot** by Jesus. And combining the metaphors of the 'sword out of His mouth' and 'the winepress' with Zechariah's literal description above, I picture these unfortunate souls being 'exploded' like 'squeezed grapes' on Jesus' command—maybe something like in that movie, **Raiders of the Lost Ark**. And I **understand** that all that spilled **blood** will be good for the soil. And that what's left of their 'carcasses' will be eaten by birds—except for their bones, and there is no mention of these bones as far as I **know**. Maybe Jesus 'disintegrates' all their bones this time simply because it would be too many to gather, and this would be even better for the soil. But 'the meat on the bones' must not 'disintegrate' or the birds would get nothing to **eat**. And **the spirits** of these 'cruelly departed' will be dispatched to **hell** to await their final transition to being eternally 'poached' in **the lake of fire**. And all the other 'civilians' who evidently have not **received the mark of the beast** and are not **taken** to this figurative **winepress** must be **left** to live on Earth in Jesus' Millennial Kingdom—these being the ones who will repopulate the Earth during The Millennium. And we'll talk more about these that are 'left behind in a good way' in the remaining sections.

This glaring oversight that these people are really **taken** in a 'rapture of wrath', coupled with the shameful misinterpretation that the pretribulation Rapture of the Church occurs 'immediately after' The Great Tribulation, have been responsible for foundational errors in pretribulational and posttribulational versions of end times **prophecy** for a long time. And it will surely be a while before even the choking from newly 'dislodged feet' subsides. Assuming I can even get any healthy 'gagging reflexes' going anytime soon. I was spared this particular indignity when the Lord showed me this chain of precepts near the beginning of my **study**. Why have I waited so long to share these **revelations**? I didn't really. But being so divergent from 'the party line', very few ever cared what I thought. And I gave up on those who knew me a long time ago mostly because I was perceived as naive and immature back then—in my late twenties. And I doubt any 'higher Church leaders' who were already publicly 'gagging on their own feet' got even a hint of what God was showing me.

So I was clearly 'despised for my youth' ([1 Tim 4:12](#)). But I had much less maturity in The Word of God back then. And even now I still doubt my **power** in it. See [1 Corinthians 2:4-5](#); [4:18](#) and [1 Thessalonians 1:5](#) for what I mean by that. Even still, over the years I have considered informing 'higher Church leaders'—I mean beyond the local ones that I originally gave up on trying to **persuade**. But not being sure I had the 'go-ahead' from God, and for lack of any other support, along with the ongoing pervasive and chronic condition of 'feet-impaired throats' everywhere I looked, I did not believe I alone could 'enlighten' very many others, until now. I mean I had to wait for God's timing since I pretty much could only count on His help alone. And some of you must be able to relate to this. There are surely some of you out there that already knew some of these things or at least had serious questions and have just as understandably kept such things to yourself too. And I mean that we

who strive to **know** Him have all been His fools. Some have simply been more painfully exposed in this process than I have until now. And surely God offers tests and trials to everyone. Mine have brought me to a confidence that God will overlook my future mistakes and misrepresentations because I have so far faithfully **continued** to find and acknowledge so many of them in the past. In this way you can see Calvinism in hindsight. You can see how God has 'molded' your **vessel**. But you can see Arminianism in hindsight too. You can see how He has let you hinder Him from doing this **work** as well as He might have otherwise.

At present the still-living **teachers of prophecy** I respect the most still continue to support some horrendous 'messes' of prophetic misinterpretation. And I have recently attempted to contact and illicit a response from some of them—none of whom know me at this point. They above all deserve this opportunity and respect because without them I would not have had any 'shoulders worth climbing on', and they are the ones who can be of the most help in finally establishing the irrefutable pretribulational, premillennial **[audio error]**, dispensational, and stationary **understanding** of God's now even **more sure word of prophecy**.

But what about you? Will you now knowingly resist coming out against the crowd when these mistakes potentially lead many to **shame** or even to abandon their faith. I am especially referring to those that have been misled to believe that most the whole Church is apostate for preaching a pretribulational rapture. I can only hope that the Church as a whole will come to a better **understanding** of what God has in store for us all **before** it's too late for that **knowledge** to be of any help.

And while we're on the subject, there is one more disaster of modern prophecy in Jesus' Discourse on The Mount of Olives I will take this opportunity to clear up. The reasons for my holding back on this one until now are the same as for The Rapture of Wrath. And this 'mess' must also one day prove to be an equally shameful oversight. I am referring to the **parable of the fig tree** found in Matthew 24, Mark 13, and Luke 21 that's commonly supposed to represent 'the birth and growth of the nation of Israel'. But this cannot be the case either because the **fig tree** in this passage is stated to represent something else. And it's all the more embarrassing because in this case we do not really have to jump from **here a little to there a little** to realize this error. Jesus tells us that **the fig tree is a parable of all these things** that He relates to us right there on the Mount of Olives. So there is no reason to guess what **the fig tree** represents. We simply need to acknowledge **all these things** that Jesus tells us about and **understand** that they will begin to occur in a manner that is not unlike how a **fig tree** blossoms.

And the problem is that Jesus is not really talking about the formation of the nation of Israel in this passage. Neither have His disciples really asked Him anything about it. They ask Him about **the sign... of the end of the world**, and that's exactly what Jesus tells them about in the form of summaries of The Beginning of Sorrows, The Abomination of Desolation, and The Days of Vengeance. In this account Jesus gives His disciples the summaries of these two halves of The Great Tribulation as well as the major transition event that separates them because these are the best 'signs' **of**

the end of the world He can give. And it's after this accounting that He offers the **parable of the fig tree**. He says,

Now learn a parable of the fig tree; When his branch is yet tender, and putteth forth leaves, ye know that summer is nigh: So likewise ye, when ye shall see all these things [The Beginning of Sorrow, The Abomination of Desolation, and The Days of Vengeance], **know that it [the coming of the Son of man at the end of the world] is near, even at the doors** [Matthew 24:32-33](#).

And the context here has not changed. Jesus is still answering the same question—**what shall be the sign of thy coming, and of the end of the world?** [Matthew 24:3](#) And it's still plain that **all these things** don't really have anything to do with the formation and growth of the nation of Israel. Jesus clearly identifies the 'signs' that **the fig tree** specifically represents to be, 1) the rise of 'false christs', 2) the persecution of Jews by Jews, 3) **wars** and **rumors of war**, 4) **famines**, 5) **pestilences**, 6) **earthquakes**, 7) **the abomination of desolation**, 8) **fearful sights and great signs... from heaven** and judgments of God where **the powers of heaven shall be shaken**, and where, **Immediately after the tribulation in those days... then shall they see the Son of man coming in a cloud with power and great glory**. These are the 'signs' described in this passage that lead to **the coming of the Son of Man**. And they are specifically represented by the 'blossoming' of this figurative **fig tree**. They are The Beginning of Sorrows, The Abomination of Desolation, and The Days of Vengeance—not the formation and growth of the nation of Israel. And yes I **know**, a **fig tree** is used several times in **scripture** to represent the nation of Israel. But so are olive trees, harlots, and a brood of baby chicks, etc., and none of these really apply here either.

And by-the-way, did you know this idea of the 'fig tree' representing Israel in the Discourse on the Mount of Olives comes from **The Apocalypse of Peter**? This is an apocryphal work likely written in the first part of the second century. The form we have received it in today was pieced together from various and divergent sources. In it 'Peter' adds to the information from Jesus' Discourse on the Mount of Olives. And though the account is frequently unintelligible and otherwise problematic, 'Peter' does clearly ask 'Jesus' what the 'fig tree' represents, and 'Jesus' plainly tells him that it represents Israel. Later on in this account 'Jesus' also finally admits—because 'Peter' persistently presses the point—that all sinners will eventually be recovered from The Lake of Fire and saved. Talk about a 'dead giveaway'. This is one of the many reasons why this 'account' remained uncanonized by the early Church fathers—because it doesn't belong in The Word of God. And it's still popularly considered 'apocryphal'—meaning 'untrue' or 'false'. Still, embarrassingly enough, it's the basis for the misunderstanding that the **fig tree** represents the nation of Israel in The Discourse on the Mount of Olives. And this counterfeit of **the truth** is as bad as the **lie** disseminated by that third century anti-Semite, Mr. Pompous-ass, who started the slander that Daniel 11 was a fabrication by Maccabean Jews gloating over their victory over Mr. Greaseball, except that **The Apocalypse of Peter** is a 'fabrication' that tries to 'substantiate' itself by 'stealing' **scripture** to mix with its lies.

And in the case of the **parable of the fig tree**, we can stick with our **more sure word of prophecy** and the clear **instruction** from Jesus that in order to **learn the parable** we need only recognize **all these things** that He tells us about that are related to it. And **all these things** produce this 'blossoming effect' that show us that **the end of the world... is near**. And of course we **know** that the formation of the nation of Israel must come first. But look and see! Jesus is not speaking of signs that will eventually lead to the end of the World. He is telling us about the ones at the very end—in the last seven years—which lead directly to His second coming.

But unfortunately the misinterpretation doesn't stop here. 'Building' on the error that **the fig tree** is a sign of the formation and growth of the nation of Israel, some popular Protestant **teachers** of **prophecy** have naturally gone a step further and tried to connect the verse following this parable to a kind of formula. In [Matthew 24:34](#) Jesus adds,

Verily I say unto you, This generation shall not pass, till all these things be fulfilled.

Now since **all these things** are the **signs** of The Great Tribulation, there isn't really any problem here. We **know** they will all occur in seven years, well within the limit of any definition of a '**generation**'. But if you presume that Jesus is talking about the formation of the nation of Israel here, you've got big problems—the kind that will drive Christians from Christianity. The problem is that for '**generations**' now we have been told that our '**generation**' can't **pass away, till all these things be fulfilled**. This was originally declared to have started when England, in 1919, established Palestine as a British protectorate or colony. And it used to be believed that before a new born Jew would turn 30, in 1949, it would all be over. But when that didn't happen it became necessary to reconsider this 'interpretation'. So the 'blossoming' of this **prophecy** was next placed at the point when Israel became a sovereign nation in 1948. But by the late 70's it became necessary to reexamine the 'interpretation' again. This time it was necessary to change the definition of a '**generation**'. A longer period of time was needed to force the fit. And unfortunately someone found an excuse for this reasoning in Psalms. So the definition of a '**generation**' in the 'interpretation' changed from the period of time from offspring to offspring to the period of a normal lifetime of 70 to 80 years. Another Psalm pushed it to possibly 90 years. But further burdening this equation are the 7 years of The Great Tribulation that haven't started yet that also must fit into this period of 'less than a **generation**'. This reasoning sets the outside dates for the beginning of The Great Tribulation at 1948 + 63 or 73 or 83 = 2011 or 2021 or 2031. And time's running out for a 2011 start. And you must **understand** that because of the popularity of this 'interpretation', its impending failure will be harmful to the Church.

So one of the reasons I could not wait any longer to try to release this **study** is because I am hoping that God will 'stem the tide' of this potentially disastrous disappointment. And I think it's very likely that Jesus will not come until after 2031 for some good reasons we have already covered. Israel is certainly long from **safely... dwelling without walls**. And Egypt is far from the **great riches** and **very great and mighty army** she is supposed to

have. And there are some **young lions** hanging out in Iraq and Afghanistan right now that probably should not still be there if The Great Tribulation was ready to start real soon. The Iraqi Defense Minister recently said that U.S. troops would be needed in Iraq until 2018 (*Time*, January 28, 2008, p.17), though 'redeployment' out of Iraq is already started under President Obama. However some of this 'redeployment' includes increasing the number of troops in Afghanistan because of this regions presently increasing instability, thanks to the continued help from Iran. And I'm sure the same 'hopes' were expressed for our troops withdrawal from Okinawa, South Korea, and The Philippines. But such encampments have always gone on for at least several decades. And whatever the case, not just one but likely all of these things and more must occur before it's time.

And besides, a more reasonable **generation** is more likely the period from offspring to offspring because this best fits with Jesus' approximation of the duration of the end-times period He describes—the 7-year Great Tribulation. And the shortest possible '**generation**' in this sense still easily fits around the 7-year Great Tribulation. Kick and scream if you want to. But many in the Church of Jesus Christ must ultimately 'swallow their pride', and no longer 'their foot', and hopefully in time to help save the Church from this coming 'trainwreck'. But some will surely be **lost** over such prophetic confusion. But hopefully I will be a little more than just a 'voice in the wilderness' against these errors and schemes of the Devil before it's too late. Because The Word of God tells me not to go into 'last-minute panic mode' just yet, but that we still have some time to get our act together and at least rescue the perishing within our own ranks.

Finally, there are a couple of major characteristics of the events that lead to **Armageddon** I want to review. They provide **proof** that God is the only cause of these redemptions as well as of the **judgments** of The Great Tribulation. His **hand** can be seen in the descriptions of what is plainly the greatest earthquake and 'rock storm' in history. This cataclysm apparently precedes the **darkness** that the Antichrist's and China's armies find themselves caught in before The Battle of Armageddon. And it's described in [Revelation 16:18-20](#). John says it's a...

...great earthquake, such as was not since men were upon the earth, so mighty an earthquake, and so great...

And he describes it as part of The 7th Plague Judgment when...

...every island fled away, and the mountains were not found.

Try to image how the Earth itself could generate an earthquake that could shake all islands underwater and all mountains flat. Isn't it actually easier to imagine that the Earth has some 'outside help'? And the same 'outside help' that generates this 'greatest earthquake' must also provide **a great hail** of 75-100 lbs 'stones'. And this isn't overkill. It's God's controlled **judgment** on Earth, as with all the previous judgments from Heaven, also involving **blood**,

pestilence, and other **destruction**. And it's all accomplished as Luke records, by **fearful sights and great signs... from heaven** including...

...signs in the sun, and in the moon, and in the stars; and upon the earth distress of nations, with perplexity; the sea and the waves roaring; Men's hearts failing them for fear, and for looking after those things which are coming on the earth: for the powers of heaven shall be shaken.

Again, this ain't no 'fireworks show'. It's more like 'interplanetary billiards' where gravity, magnetic charge, momentum, and surface gasses and debris are all factors in the 'game'. And it's surely not the result of any contributions by man. And man's impotence in these matters can be seen in that his best efforts, even coupled with Satan's assistance, are restricted to assaults by **horsemen** with handmade **swords, spears, and shields**. I mean I'm guessing most all ammunition will be expended or destroyed in the opening wars of The Beginning of Sorrows and that this is also about when the ability to mass produce ammunition and weaponry will end too. Surely some guns will be available, but we have repeatedly seen that they must become unavailable for 'wide-scale warfare' not long into The Great Tribulation. And we'll see the real usefulness of all these **swords** and **spears** when we talk about The Millennium in the next section.

And we can count on Isaiah for an unusually good supernaturally derived picture of things when it comes to The Great Tribulation. Remember his view from outer space in [Chapter 24](#)? Let's consider this 'bird's eye view' of The Great Tribulation again because it focuses on the final results. And this time let's consider the whole chapter. You should now be ready to **understand** every **line** of it.

Behold, the LORD maketh the earth empty, and maketh it waste, and turneth it upside down, and scattereth abroad the inhabitants thereof. And it shall be, as with the people [or "laypeople" or 'parishioners'], so with the priest; as with the servant, so with his master; as with the maid, so with her mistress; as with the buyer, so with the seller; as with the lender, so with the borrower; as with the taker of usury [or "the banker" or "the creditor"], so with the giver of usury to him ["the debtor"]. The land shall be utterly emptied, and utterly spoiled: for the LORD hath spoken this word. The earth mourneth and fadeth away, the world languisheth and fadeth away, the haughty people of the earth do languish. The earth also is defiled under the inhabitants thereof; because they have transgressed the laws, changed the ordinance, broken the everlasting covenant. Therefore hath the curse devoured the earth, and they that dwell therein are desolate: therefore the inhabitants of the earth are burned, and few men left. The new wine mourneth, the vine languisheth, all the merryhearted do sigh. The mirth of tabrets ceaseth, the noise of them that rejoice endeth, the joy of the harp ceaseth. They shall not drink wine with a song; strong drink shall be bitter

to them that drink it. The city of confusion is broken down: every house is shut up, that no man may come in. There is a crying for wine in the streets; all joy is darkened, the mirth of the land is gone. In the city is left desolation, and the gate is smitten with destruction. When thus it shall be in the midst of the land among the people, there shall be as the shaking of an olive tree, and as the gleaning grapes when the vintage is done. ["But"] They shall lift up their voice, they shall sing for the majesty of the LORD, they shall cry aloud from the sea [or "from the west" of Israel]. Wherefore glorify ye the LORD in the fires [or "the dawning light", or "in the east" of Israel], even the name of the LORD God of Israel in the isles [or "coastlands"] of the sea. From the uttermost part of the earth have we heard songs, even glory to the righteous. But I said, My leanness, my leanness, woe unto me! the treacherous dealers have dealt treacherously; yea, the treacherous dealers have dealt very treacherously. Fear, and the pit, and the snare, are upon thee, O inhabitant of the earth. And it shall come to pass, that he who fleeth from the noise of the fear shall fall into the pit; and he that cometh up out of the midst of the pit shall be taken in the snare: for the windows from on high are open, and the foundations of the earth do shake. The earth is utterly broken down, the earth is clean dissolved, the earth is moved exceedingly. The earth shall reel to and fro like a drunkard, and shall be removed like a cottage [or "a hut" or "a tent"]; and the transgression thereof shall be heavy upon it; and it shall fall, and not rise again. And it shall come to pass in that day, that the LORD shall punish the host of the high ones that are on high, and the kings of the earth upon the earth. And they shall be gathered together, as prisoners are gathered in the pit, and shall be shut up in the prison, and after many days shall they be visited. Then [at the time they are imprisoned] the moon shall be confounded, and the sun ashamed, when the LORD of hosts shall reign in mount Zion, and in Jerusalem, and before his ancients gloriously.

Did you notice again that **the windows from on high are open**, and that **the foundations of the earth do shake** so that it **is utterly broken down**, and **moved exceedingly**? We can see here **the earth... reel to and fro like a drunkard** and become **removed like a cottage**, shaken flat, **and not rise again**—it will be Jesus' eternal kingdom that will rise instead. The **stone** hits the **feet**, right? ([Dan 2:34](#)). And the worst of all this 'shaking' undeniably occurs in The 7th Plague Judgment, the final set up for **Armageddon**.

We also **learn** in this general overview that **the world languisheth** and **the haughty people of the earth do languish** and that even **the vine languisheth**. And evidently the World will deserve it. This can be seen in a reiteration when Isaiah says, **...the treacherous dealers have dealt treacherously; yea, the treacherous dealers have dealt very treacherously**. I guess this is worth repeating because people in The Great

Tribulation, generally speaking, must behave **very treacherously**. And surely these include the 'lowlife' types that will be 'lured' to **Armageddon** to **languish**. Certainly these particular **haughty people... languish** there most of all.

And you should have also noticed this time the story of the fate of Satan, his princes, and his angels, and of certain of the Earth's disobedient kings and peoples which are to be held as **prisoners are gathered in the pit** after **Armageddon** and until the end of The Millennium. The **host of** angels will evidently be with Satan in **the bottomless pit** and will finally be let out for 'one last hoorah', then judged. And **the kings of the earth** and everyone else will wait **in hell** and **after many days shall they be visited** too, but in their case only to be judged. However **the beast** and **the false prophet** will be **cast into the lake of fire** immediately after **Armageddon**, never to be **'visited'** again, all of which we'll talk about more next section.

Still there is mention of people all over the World who **shall lift up their voice, they shall sing for the majesty of the LORD, they shall cry aloud from the sea** [or "from the west" of Israel]... [and those who] **glorify... the LORD in the fires** [or "the dawning light" or "in the east" of Israel], [and those who will **glorify**] **even the name of the LORD God of Israel in the isles** [or "coastlands"] **of the sea**. I see here some of the **few** who are awestruck in The Great Tribulation by **the majesty of the LORD** and cannot help but **glorify... the LORD** as they **sing** and **cry** amidst the destruction. And surely these are not the ones who **dwell carelessly in the isles** [Eze 39:6](#), but instead they are the ones who will survive The Great Tribulation to **glorify... the name of the LORD God of Israel in the isles of the sea**, so that, **From the uttermost part of the earth** there will be **heard songs, even glory to the righteous** God of Heaven, because of these **wonders** which are to come from Heaven upon the Earth. And from the beginning of The Millennium **the LORD of hosts shall reign in mount Zion, and in Jerusalem, and before his ancients gloriously**.

And there is one more spectacular perspective we should consider. It's that somehow when Jesus...

...cometh with clouds... every eye shall see him, and they also which pierced him: and all kindreds of the earth shall wail because of him [Rev 1:7](#).

Do you still think this could be TV? Not a chance. You should instead reconsider how people **afar off** will see the smoke 'rising' from the destruction of Babylon. It will likely be because the smoke will rise as high as the planet caught by the Earth. And with a little rotation over just a little time this planet should be seen quite **afar off** as the visible cause of Babylon's destruction. And it occurs to me that Jesus will be equally visible when He comes. Certainly His universal visibility will be greatly enhanced by His brilliant, arching, deep-space approach.

And you should remember that by the time **they shall see the Son of man coming in the clouds of heaven with power and great glory** that the Pacific Ocean will be completely dead—there will be virtually no more sea life or islands left in it. And it should be much larger due at least partially to the melted icecaps from The 4th Plague Judgment, not to mention because of

the coastlands that are shaken underwater in The 7th Plague Judgment, and otherwise because of **the sea and the waves roaring** [Luke 21:25](#). And no one should be on Antarctica. So at the time of Jesus' Second Coming there will only be a limited portion of the Earth still supporting life. Examine a globe considering all these things and see what I mean. I mean Jesus could take a slanted or arching incoming trajectory slightly more over the northern hemisphere and most **every eye** that is looking should be able to **see him** coming in **as lightning**. And I mean it's something more like that than a television broadcast 'live from Armageddon'.

You should also be ready to **understand** about every **line** in Zechariah's **prophecy** about **Israel** in Chapters 12-14. We've covered a lot of this **prophecy** already so you should now also easily see that those who find a 'nuclear holocaust' in [Zechariah 14:12](#) do not fully **understand** this **prophecy**. Surely this **plague** administered by Jesus comes **out of his mouth** like **a sharp sword** [Rev 19:15](#) against all those who fight **against Jerusalem** all around The Lord's Triangle—from **Jerusalem** to **Armageddon** to **Bozrah** and back. Evidently all The Lord will have to do is speak and His enemies will be excruciatingly destroyed. And do you really think The One who spoke the World into existence will need a 'nuclear weapon' to finish off his enemies ([Psa 33:8-9](#); [Col 1:12-17](#); [Eph 3:9](#))?

Another **revelation** that will alleviate some confusion concerning Jesus' Discourse on the Mount of Olives is that His **coming** and the rapture of His **elect** are given out of order. It appears from these accounts alone that **Armageddon** comes before The Final Harvest Rapture. But by now it should be no surprise that there is some 'layering' in these passages. And we can now **understand** that these events (e.g. [Mat 24:30-31](#)) are recounted out of order because elsewhere—in Revelation 14 and 19—they are more clearly given chronologically. Of course Jesus may be talking about 'when' He will **gather together his elect** at The Final Harvest before Armageddon as well as hinting at 'when' He later resurrects them at The First Resurrection after Armageddon too. Either way the **'then'**—in Matthew 24:31, for example—must not mean 'next' but 'around that time'. Check it out and get the **revelation**.

Next, abruptly and unapologetically, some information we left behind is about to change our perspective once again. Remember that starting at The Abomination of Desolation there are 42 months—about 1240 days—**given** to the Antichrist ([Rev 13:5](#)). And from this same starting point there are 1260 days of safe haven for the sequestered Jews ([Rev 12:6](#)). And also from this midpoint there are 1290 days to **the end of these wonders** ([Dan 12:6-7](#))—not to mention the **'Blessed'** who make it to the end of 1335 days ([Dan 12:12](#)). See the problem here? You should see that this does not line up with our earlier conclusions. Remember I lead you to think that the sequestered Jew would be 'broken out' of their rock fortress by Jesus after Armageddon, but apparently on the same 1290th day. But we **know** that God will only sequester them 1260 days. So Jesus must break them out on the 1260th day. And doesn't this mean that **'Armageddon'**—or Jesus' 'buttress-kicking trip' around The Lord's Triangle—must also happen on the 1260th day? If so, this implies that God will only need around 20 days to sufficiently **lay low** the lowlifes at Armageddon before Jesus comes to finish them off for good. Apparently 50 days would be too long for these lowlifes to fully appreciate

the 'finale'. But I still expect that the 'finale' begins with The Rapture of Wrath.

And suck it up. These are the kind of transitions—'transformations by the renewing of your mind'—that you must **learn to endure** if you are to **eat** what Paul calls **strong meat** and not 'choke' like a **babe**. And congratulations to any of you who were not fooled by this 'wild goose chase'. You are indeed **approved unto God** on this subject. But those of you who are still somewhat confused at this point should—yes—start over. And yes, this creates another loose end. Besides the promenade home of the Jews, what else could be going on between the 1260th and the 1290th day? We'll get to my best guess on that in the next section.

And this brings us to some information we haven't gotten to yet that will make us adjust our picture yet again. In [Revelation 19:19](#) we confirm that John...

...saw the beast, and the kings of the earth, and their armies, gathered together to make war against him that sat on the horse, and against his army.

This is where we seem to see that the **armies** of the Antichrist and China do indeed intend to **make war against** Jesus and **his army**. However I still **believe** that the armies of the Antichrist and China are 'lured' to the Jezreel Valley by their misguided assumptions—and that the soldiers on the ground do not originally expect to attack Jesus. The **red** forces will come because they believe they can finally overrun the **white** forces, and the **white** forces will come to defend themselves. And I still **believe** that all these forces will become 'pinned down' for nearly 3 weeks in darkness until Jesus arrives to **cause the arrogance of the proud to cease, and...lay low the haughtiness of the terrible**. And evidently God will restrain Himself in order to bring **the kingdoms of nations** to this unimaginable 'finale' of His **power** and **cruelty**, and somehow do it so as not to take all their **strength** in these **darkened** days. This must be the case because Jesus and **his army** will evidently face off with these representatives of the worst of humanity and—for a moment—make them at least hope that they have a chance to **make war against** Him.

But this seems to be a contradiction with Isaiah 63 where Jesus says, ***I have trodden the winepress alone; and of the people there was none with me: for I will tread them in mine anger, and trample them in my fury; and their blood shall be sprinkled upon my garments, and I will stain all my raiment. For the day of vengeance is in mine heart, and the year of my redeemed is come. And I looked, and there was none to help; and I wondered that there was none to uphold: therefore mine own arm brought salvation unto me; and my fury, it upheld me. And I will tread down the people in mine anger, and make them drunk in my fury, and I will bring down their strength to the earth.*** [Isa 63:3-6](#).

So, putting John's and Jesus' testimony together I can only assume that Jesus' **army** is with Him, but that they are only spectators who do not join Him in

the fight. Indeed they are powerless to help. Jesus' **army** must only watch as the **armies** of the Antichrist and China scream in terror with **pangs of sorrow** and **pain** like a woman giving birth.

And now you should be ready to fully **understand** a description from Isaiah of **the wrath of the LORD of hosts... in the day of his fierce anger**. Isaiah says,

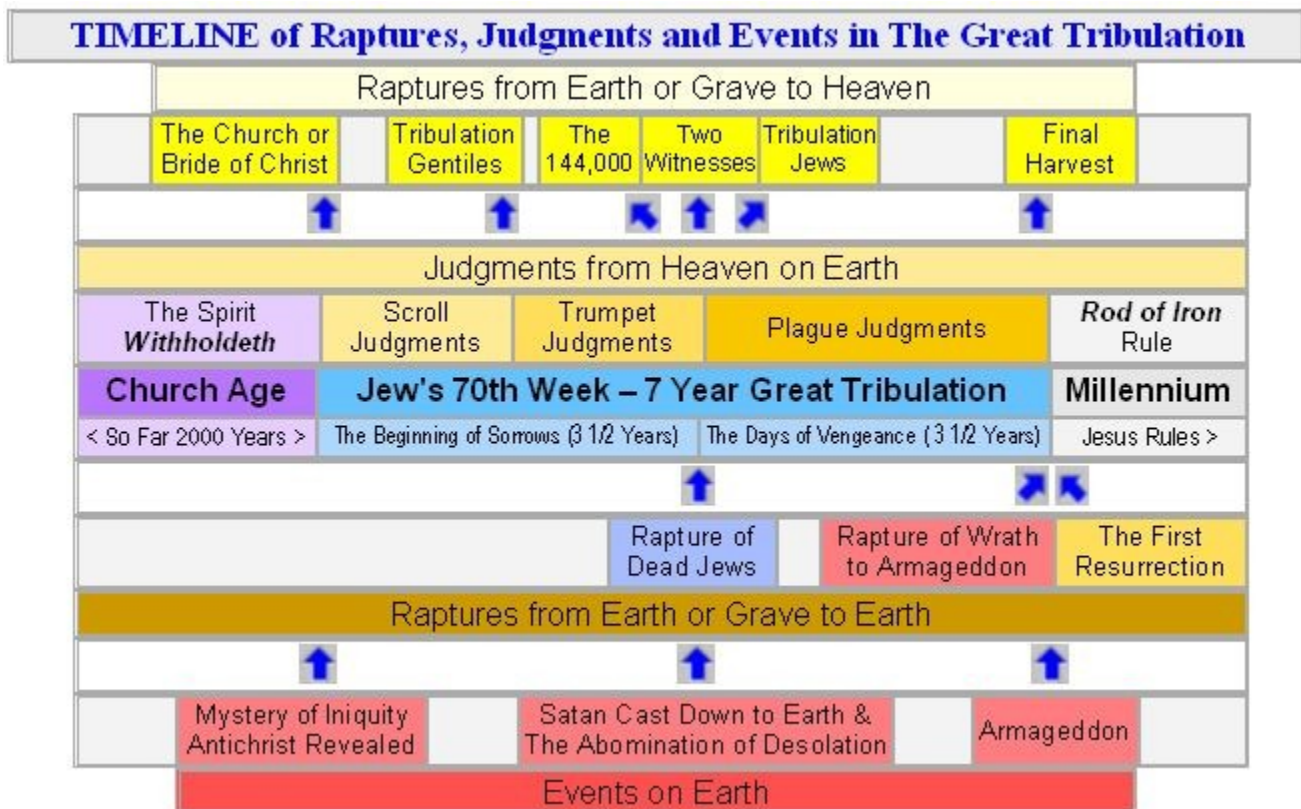
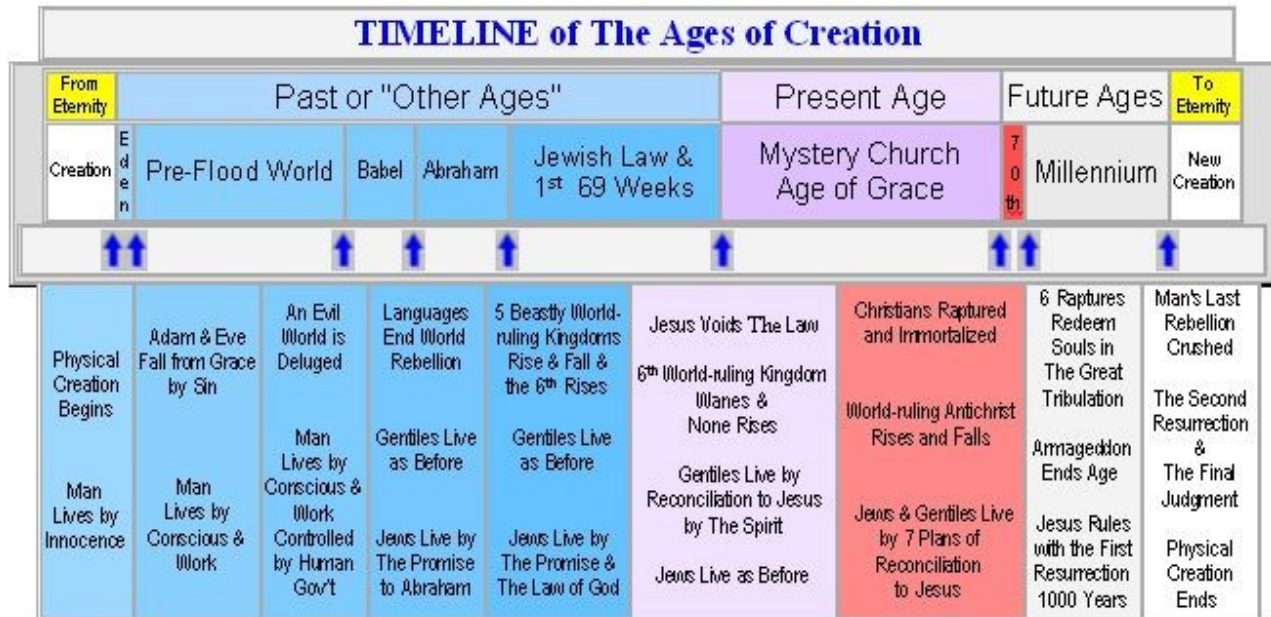
The noise of a multitude in the mountains, like as of a great people; a tumultuous noise of the kingdoms of nations gathered together: the LORD of hosts mustereth the host of the battle. They [The Lord's armies] come from a far country, from the end of heaven, even the LORD, and the weapons of his indignation, to destroy the whole land. Howl ye; for the day of the LORD is at hand; it shall come as a destruction from the Almighty. Therefore shall all hands be faint, and every man's heart shall melt: And they shall be afraid: pangs and sorrows shall take hold of them; they shall be in pain as a woman that travaileth [or is in labor]: they shall be amazed one at another; their faces shall be as flames. Behold, the day of the LORD cometh, cruel both with wrath and fierce anger, to lay the land desolate: and he shall destroy the sinners thereof out of it. For the stars of heaven and the constellations thereof shall not give their light: the sun shall be darkened in his going forth, and the moon shall not cause her light to shine. And I will punish the world for their evil, and the wicked for their iniquity; and I will cause the arrogance of the proud to cease, and will lay low the haughtiness of the terrible. I will make a man more precious than fine gold; even a man than the golden wedge of Ophir. Therefore I will shake the heavens, and the earth shall remove out of her place, in the wrath of the LORD of hosts, and in the day of his fierce anger [lsa 13:4-13](#).

It's funny how a few overlooked details and one new one can make a 'wild goose chase' out of a lot of what we thought we had already proven. Nonetheless, this 'wild goose chase' should help you **understand** better than ever how to **grow in grace and in the knowledge of the Lord Jesus Christ**. And you should see by now that there's no end to it. All conclusions unavoidably lead to more questions and corrected or improved conclusions. And naturally there are parts to this 'puzzle' we're still missing that will further 'adjust' the 'picture'. And I **know** it's a matter of time before I find more of them. But if you're only newly examining this 'picture', it will take a little longer. And you are even more vulnerable to leaving behind or overlooking some of the precepts. This **study** attempts to take you through years of **revelations** much too fast. So unless you are already experienced with all these topics you will forget some of the parts you've **learned** so far and actually mistake some of the 'pictures' that we imagined on our '

wild goose chases' to still be true until—if you **continue**—you stumble back across the pieces that will clear things up again. This still happens to me with newly found pieces. This is because a 'meaty picture' takes **work** just to maintain, let alone **grow**. This is The Natural Progression of The Word of God. And you are only **safe** if you **continue** in it.

This is the end of our overview of The Great Tribulation. A couple of sections follow on the rest of the physical future of the Earth and the beginning of the coming **new heaven** and **new earth** so we can complete some of the main topics we've carried throughout this **study**. This includes another rapture that takes place just after The Great Tribulation at the beginning of The Millennium, one that takes place at the end of it, and some of the fates of those in their final stations that remain to be identified. OK, and probably a couple more 'wild goose chases' too.

SECTION 11 The Coming Premillennial Rapture of The First Resurrection Martyrs,
The Millennial Kingdom, and The Last Rebellion



The First Resurrection Martyrs

CHART of 7 Distinguishing Features of The First Resurrection							
X = Certain = Uncertain BLANK = Certainly Not							
Raptures	From Grave	From Earth	Jews	Gen- tles	To Earth	To Heaven	Saved
1st Resurrection	X		X	X	X		X

CHART of The First Resurrection in the Main Sets of Events of The Great Tribulation				
Sets of Events	The Beginning of Sorrows	The Abomination of Desolation	The Days of Vengeance	Armageddon
Position				
After				1st Resurrection

Revelation 20 is a much longer period of future history than all of Revelation 6-19 put together. This would be The Millennial Kingdom of Jesus Christ. It starts immediately after The Great Tribulation, after Armageddon. And one marker of its beginning is our ninth rapture. But this rapture could also be considered a marker for the end of The Great Tribulation. And since this rapture occurs so close to the end of The Great Tribulation but really at the very beginning of The Millennium, it could be considered either a posttribulation or premillennial rapture.

Everyone participating in this rapture is referred to as **beheaded** in Days of

Vengeance in the period of the 42 months of The Absolute Enforcement of the Worship of Satan and the Antichrist. However I would expect that more of them are executed nearer to the beginning of The Days of Vengeance. But again, it will be a big job, and it will take some time to catch and decapitate some of the more creative 'evaders' in this group. Remember Corrie ten Boom and Anne Frank? But whenever in The Days of Vengeance these martyrs are caught and killed, they will be part of the first redeemed group who plainly will not be invited to The Marriage Supper of The Lamb, because they are clearly not redeemed until after it. Still, they are nonetheless 'royal city dwellers' because they will **reign with Jesus a thousand years** in Jerusalem where Jesus will then be.

Now when they die they likely wait somewhere in the Third Heaven for their redemption. Or could it be **under the altar** in The Temple in Heaven? And do they have the same station as the martyrs that are seen there early in The Beginning of Sorrows waiting for God to **avenge** their **blood**? At first glance this seems to fit. We do **know** that the martyrs seen early in The Beginning of Sorrows are waiting for more martyrs to join them, and that these **beheaded** are surely martyrs too. But being in The Temple in Heaven implies redemption—not that you're awaiting redemption. And this is why I would expect that the earlier batch are all martyred before the start of The Great Tribulation and that these all go to The Marriage of the Lamb to be part of **the bride** of Christ. However it also occurs to me that their place in The Temple in Heaven also implies that they will stay with God for The Millennium since we will confirm that at least one more group does. And remember these temple martyrs must be 'spiritually tanked' during The Age of Grace in Paradise—some of them spending time in **Abraham's Bosom** beforehand (see [Heb 11:37-40](#)), and must be raptured along with the rest of the Church at the start of The Great Tribulation. But the **beheaded** martyrs that participate in The First Resurrection must instead be 'tanked' in The Days of Vengeance before they are resurrected as immortals directly to Jerusalem.

And these distinctions lead me to think that all other martyrs who die in The Great Tribulation must also be 'spiritually tanked' during The Great Tribulation to be redeemed in one of four possible groups. Martyred Gentiles and non-Israeli Jews can be redeemed with the Tribulation Gentiles. And martyred Israeli Jews can be redeemed with the Tribulation Jews just following The Abomination of Desolation—and remember that there is no mention that decapitation is required for this group. Other martyred Gentiles and non-Israeli Jews who die after The Rapture of the Tribulation Gentiles, and Israeli Jews who die after The Rapture of the Tribulation Jews may be redeemed at The Final Harvest, but apparently only if they aren't **beheaded** resisting the Antichrist in the process. The rest are the **beheaded** martyrs, possibly including all who die resisting the Antichrist, who are redeemed in The First Resurrection after Armageddon and must include Gentiles and Jews wherever they may be found. However, surely it's possible that some or all of these martyrs may be held back for one of the later raptures. I mean maybe more than just one of these groups will go in The Final Harvest, for example.

Still we can see that these 'tribulation martyrs' may find up to four separate stations. Besides martyrs in the Church, there are the ones who might join the Tribulation Gentiles who will be serving God in His Temple in Heaven from the midpoint of The Beginning of Sorrows on. And there are martyred Tribulation Jews who appear on Mount Zion in The Temple in Heaven near the midpoint of The Great Tribulation evidently also to begin some special Temple service. And it's possible some martyrs may somehow participate in The Final Harvest and whatever station this rapture leads to. And finally The First Resurrection Martyrs appear on Earth with the specifically given job description to 'live and reign with Christ' throughout The Millennium.

And I suppose it may not be safe to assume that you must be literally **beheaded** to make The First Resurrection. It could be that anyone martyred in anyway while resisting the Antichrist will be eligible. I mean if you are killed trying to escape **the mark** wouldn't you still qualify? Then again, maybe the Antichrist's forces will go to the trouble of decapitating resisters even after they're already dead. There would be some 'shock value' to this. Also remember John tells us that **as many as would not worship the image of the beast should be killed** [Rev 13:15](#). But does this mean that these martyrs are all **beheaded** too? Surely the martyrs that make The First Resurrection must all resist The Absolute Enforcement of the Worship of Satan and the Antichrist during The Days of Vengeance, but maybe actually being **beheaded** is just the general fate of most in this group and not a specific requirement. But the answers to such questions determine which group some martyrs really end up in.

Now we already **know** of at least five major events that happen in the aftermath of the 'treading' of **the winepress of the fierceness and wrath of Almighty God** at **Armageddon**. These would be **1)** The Supper of the Great God—that bird of prey buffet bonanza, **2)** The Eternal Punishment of the Beast and the False Prophet in The Lake of Fire, **3)** The Millennial Incarceration of Satan and his Angels in the Bottomless Pit, **4)** The First Resurrection, and **5)** The Inauguration of The Eternal Kingdom of God and of Christ on Earth.

It's evidently immediately after Armageddon that these 'fat and happy'

birds will get the biggest 'chow-down' of all time. And this must also be the time when **the beast** and **the false prophet** take their final 'big plunge' seen at the end of Revelation 19. And we can assume that these two villains are the only ones tossed in at this time because of what we **know** from [Isaiah 24](#). But there is further clarification of this imprisonment in the Bottomless Pit found in the first three verses of [Revelation 20](#) when we are told what specifically befalls **Satan** immediately following Armageddon. John records,

And I saw an angel come down from heaven, having the key of the bottomless pit and a great chain in his hand. And he laid hold on the dragon, that old serpent, which is the Devil, and Satan, and bound him a thousand years, And cast him into the bottomless pit, and shut him up, and set a seal upon him, that he should deceive the nations no more, till the thousand years should be fulfilled: and after that he must be loosed a little [or a short] season.

This confirms that both **Satan** and all **the host of his high ones** will be 'tanked' as **prisoners are gathered in the pit** at this time. And we can deduce that they will all remain in **the bottomless pit... till the thousand years should be fulfilled**. And we can also deduce that all the **lost** human princes and peoples will wait **in hell** during this age, except, of course, for the Antichrist and the False Prophet.

In [Verse 4](#) we see the scene set for the next rapture. John shows us...

...thrones, and they sat upon them, and judgment [of the beast, the false prophet, Satan, the host of the high ones, and the rest of the dead] was given unto them.

These **thrones** likely include The Throne of Jesus over the World and of David over Jerusalem. Who else? Maybe the 24 Elder's transplant their **seats** to the Earth? And evidently there will be other **royal**, priestly, and administrative **thrones**. Remember John tells the Church that they will be **kings and priests**, and Peter adds that they will be **a royal priesthood**. So again, I expect the role of the **wife** will be a **royal** one like that of a queen—the queen of King Jesus. However we will repeatedly confirm that The Father won't **come down** to take His throne on the Earth until after The Millennium—and especially in the next section.

The group first seen before these **thrones** seems to be a motivated assembly who has just arrived with Jesus from Heaven to take charge of operations worldwide. However it's made clear by the end of [Verse 5](#) that these new arrivals more likely come from two directions, their bodies being raptured out of the Grave and their **spirits** coming from the Third Heaven. It's clear they are newly **redeemed** but not 'newlyweds' because they are resurrected from **the dead**. John sees,

...the souls of them that were beheaded for the witness of Jesus, and for the word of God, and which had not worshipped the beast, neither his image, neither had received his mark upon their foreheads, or in their hands; and they lived and

reigned with Christ a thousand years. But the rest of the dead lived not again until the thousand years were finished. This is the first resurrection.

Now at first glance, and for years, I did not ***understand*** the implications of the last two sentences in this passage. These lines apparently explain how God will ***'sever between'*** those still in the Grave after The Great Tribulation is over. And they are predictably divided. The ***dead*** for whom ***hell*** will have ***enlarged... her mouth*** during The Great Tribulation to receive their ***spirits*** —[Isaiah 5:14](#)—and everyone else already down there from the ***other ages***—these are ***the rest of the dead***. And they will be going nowhere right away, not ***until the thousand years*** are ***finished*** when it's implied here that they will finally be ***visited*** or raptured to where their dead bodies finally reunite with their ***spirits*** again so that they can be judged and damned. This is only deduced here, but we will confirm it later in the chapter. And this rapture at the end of The Millennium is the one I call The Rapture of the Damned to The Great White Throne Judgment. Now the only other ***'dead'*** besides these ***rest of the dead*** here are the ones that participate in ***the first resurrection*** who will have died getting their own brand of ***'victory over the beast'***. They are the part of ***the dead*** whose ***spirits*** will instead wait somewhere in Heaven and who will instead 'live again' as a result of this rapture following Armageddon. And again, this rapture can be seen as either ending The Great Tribulation or beginning The Millennium or both.

In [Verse 6](#) the redemption of these 'resurrected rulers' is confirmed, further distinguishing them from ***the rest of the dead***. And their new 'high office' is clarified too. John writes,

Blessed and holy is he that hath part in the first resurrection: on such the second death hath no power, but they shall be priests of God and of Christ, and shall reign with him a thousand years.

This verse tells us a couple of things. It tells us that these participating in ***the first resurrection*** are now redeemed incorruptible immortals. We ***know*** this because ***on such the second death hath no power***. But as usual you have to read the whole chapter to ***understand*** that this means they will ***never*** be ***cast into the lake of fire***, which is ***the second death***, which is the fate of all the damned that wait ***in hell*** as we will shortly confirm. And we ***learn*** more specifically in this verse that these redeemed ***shall be priests of God and of Christ, and*** [again] ***shall reign with him a thousand years***. And since they ***reign*** as ***priests***—or ministers—it seems likely that they will occupy at least some of these ***thrones*** too. But as all service to God could be considered ministerial, in their case I would guess that their positions are more governmental. I mean it occurs to me that just as England recognizes a king and queen, a Prime minister and many representative executors and legislators, so similar ministerial positions could exist to occupy these ***thrones*** in Jerusalem in The Millennium. And by-the-way, even if these immortal ***priests*** initially outnumber the populations of the many ***nations*** that they govern at the start of The Millennium, we will see that this must change over time, until by the end of The Millennium there will

be a 'governable population' more than ***the number of whom is as the sand of the sea.***

But why is this called ***the first resurrection***? It must be because for the first time bodies in ***the grave*** will be immediately redeemed to Earth, not Heaven. There is no need for them to be 'transported to Heaven' at this time because by then Jesus'

'headquarters' will already be relocated on Earth. So this is the first time a ***resurrection*** will suffice for immortals. This should also mean that the 'holding tank' or 'tanks' in the Third Heaven will be completely emptied of ***spirits of the dead in Christ*** again, and that The Final Harvest Rapture could not have left everything empty. But it also implies that Paradise will start filling up again with Jews and Gentiles who will die during The Millennium who are evidently to be redeemed in The Second Resurrection at the end of The Millennium. We'll talk more about this implied Second Resurrection and The Rapture of the Damned later and in the next section.

We should also notice that The First Resurrection should be both of Jews and Gentiles, including all persons...

...that were beheaded for the witness of Jesus, and for the word of God, and which had not worshipped the beast, neither his image, neither had received his mark upon their foreheads, or in their hands [Verse 4](#).

And I don't think too many will aspire to be in this station until there is no better choice. These are people who find themselves in a position where they realize they must settle for the much 'better of two evils' in order to be saved. Remember that all of these 'millennial rulers' must have been alive in The Age of Grace, and whether Jews or Gentiles, must have missed the earlier 'better chances' to escape.

It also occurs to me that this rapture could very well mark the ***blessed*** 1335th day following The Abomination of Desolation ***prophesied*** by Daniel ([12:12](#))—being so vaguely referenced there because of the involvement of Gentiles as well as Jews. Or maybe they arrive on the 1290th day. Whichever the case, I also expect that this 1335th day is the inauguration ceremony and celebration of an early period of The Millennium I would call The Inauguration of the Eternal Kingdom of God and of Christ on Earth. And I would expect that this inauguration period ends when The Millennial Temple in Jerusalem is completed and ***cleansed*** on the 2300th day ([Dan 8:13-14](#)). And it fits for me that this 1335th day is described in the first half of Revelation 20. We can certainly see in Daniel 12 that this ***blessed*** day is connected with the end of the ***indignation against the holy covenant***. But again, it might just as well be the 1290th day. Or maybe the whole period from the 1290th to the 1335th day best marks this transition. I mean you should be seeing by now how God likes to 'layer' His transitions. But whatever the case, reviewing some of these major event markers in the rest of Daniel's ***prophecies*** can only help clarify that we're at least in the right ballpark.

We ***know*** Daniel 2 identifies this juncture. And it plainly marks The Inauguration of the Eternal Kingdom of God and of Christ on Earth following Armageddon. In Daniel's ***interpretation*** he speaks of the beginning of this eternal...

...kingdom, which shall never be destroyed: and the kingdom shall not be left to other people, but it shall break in pieces and consume all these [7] kingdoms [of Satan], and it shall stand for ever [Dan 2:44](#).

This is when Satan's political, economic, and religious 'conglomeration' under **seven kings** and **kingdoms**—only the last 5 of which are discernable in this **prophecy**—are finally destroyed in Jesus' attack on its final manifestation, the Antichrist Kingdom, at Armageddon.

I gave you Daniel 7 as a homework assignment. It's time to check your answers. This perspective of the World's **end [Verse 26](#)** gives lots of markers of events. I see the **little horn** of The Beginning of Sorrows, and **that horn that had eyes, and a mouth that spake very great things** of The Abomination of Desolation and The Days of Vengeance ([Verse 8](#)), **and the same horn made war with the saints, and prevailed against them** throughout the 'overt stage' of The Indignation Against the Holy Covenant which is also the period of The Absolute Enforcement of the Worship of Satan and the Antichrist ([Verse 21](#)). Armageddon is identified where we see that Satan and His **princes** and the Antichrist and the False Prophet have their **thrones... cast down [Verse 9](#)**, and where Jesus **comes in the clouds [Verse 13](#)**. But we also see here that a **judgment** is **set** and **the books** are **opened [Verse 10](#)**. This is evidently the same **judgment** [that] **was given unto them** in [Revelation 20:4](#), that is, **given to the saints of the most High [Verses 22-23, 26-27](#)**. This identifies a very important **judgment** that takes place at the start of The Millennium—not at the end of it. Let's call it The First Great White Throne Judgment because this must be the first time souls reach the 'final stage' of eternal damnation—The Lake of Fire. But again, apparently only two 'people' reach this **second death** at this point. So I also call this event The Eternal Damnation of the Antichrist and the False Prophet. And this event is specifically identified when we see that **the horn or the beast** [the Antichrist] **was slain, and his body destroyed, and given to the burning flame [Verse 11](#)**. We also specifically see The Millennial Incarceration of Satan and his Angels in the Bottomless Pit when we see here that **the rest of the beasts** [Satan and his princes]... **had their dominion taken away: yet their lives were prolonged for a season and time**.

Then there is the fate of **the rest of the dead** at this premillennial judgment who are **not found written in the book of life [Rev 20:15](#)**. These **dead** are not really 'judged' when **the Ancient of days...** [and his "court"] **shall sit**, at the same time when **they** [**the saints of the most High**] **shall take away...** [the Antichrist's] **dominion** ([Verses 9-13, 22, 26](#)), but instead John tells that **the rest of the dead lived not again until the thousand years were finished**, meaning they will remain incarcerated **in hell** until the time of the final judgment of the damned at the end of The Millennium. So I guess we'll have to rename the final judgment that we find in the second half of Revelation 20—clearly at the end of The Millennium. I'll call it The Final Great White Throne Judgment to distinguish it from The First Great White Throne Judgment occurring a thousand years earlier and identified in Daniel 7. Again, in the first **judgment** when **the books** are

opened, many will be determined to be doomed, but evidently only two at this time will experience **the second death** and will be eternally damned. Of course it wouldn't be hard to confuse these two judgments as one in the same, would it? This could mess up your timeline in a number of ways, depending on how few precepts you were working with to make one. For example, it may lead you to assume that The Millennium has already started. See how God is? Praise God, He has set us up to 'mess up' if we don't **continue**.

Also marked and 'layered-in' repeatedly in Daniel 7 is The Inauguration of the Eternal Kingdom of God and of Christ on Earth where we see Jesus is **given** by God **a kingdom and everlasting dominion, which shall not pass away** [Verse 14](#), and where **the** [immortal] **saints of the most High shall take the kingdom** [evidently on horseback], **and possess the kingdom for ever, even for ever and ever** [Verse 18](#), and where **the kingdom and dominion, and the greatness of the kingdom under the whole heaven, shall be given to the people of the saints of the most High, whose kingdom is an everlasting kingdom, and all dominions** [the greatest of which are represented by all those **thrones** in Jerusalem] **shall serve and obey him** [Verse 27](#). And in all these references I see the millennial **dominions** of The Church, The 144,000 Jews, The Final Harvest Saints, and The First Resurrection Martyrs. And ministering to God in Heaven throughout The Millennium I see The Tribulation Gentiles, and probably also The Tribulation Jews, and maybe also The Temple Martyrs too. And we'll see how it could be better for all these heavenly immortal ministers to stay with God in Heaven for The Millennium. But however these actual **dominions** break down, we **know** that the **saints of the most High shall take... and possess the kingdom for ever, even for ever and ever**, and that **the people of the saints of the most High, whose kingdom is an everlasting kingdom, and all dominions shall serve and obey him**, and that this all begins a 1000 years before The Final Great White Throne Judgment, after which **new Jerusalem** comes down out of Heaven to Earth with God, and all the **angels**, and all the rest of the **saints**.

Daniel 8 shows us what happens about 3 years after Armageddon or 2300 days after The Abomination of Desolation. This is when The Millennial Temple in Jerusalem is completed, **cleansed**, and 'open for business' again ([Verses 13-14](#)). And this is defined as **the last end of the indignation** [Verse 19](#). We can **understand** from this **prophecy** that the 'overt period' of The Indignation Against the Holy Covenant is marked beginning at The Abomination of Desolation where we see **an host was given him** [the Antichrist] **against the daily sacrifice** [Verse 12](#), but that **the indignation** doesn't really **end** until The Temple in Jerusalem is rebuilt and reopened 2300 days later—about three years into The Millennium. This shows us a third stage to The Indignation Against the Holy Covenant. The first is The Covert Stage in the latter part of The Beginning of Sorrows that begins following The 2nd Egyptian War when the Antichrist will **return, and have indignation against the holy covenant... and have intelligence with them that forsake the holy covenant** [Dan 11:30](#). The second is The Overt Stage spanning The Days of Vengeance. The third will be after Armageddon in the following 1040 days (2300 – 1260) ending when The Millennial Temple is back in operation. Let's call this The Cleansing Stage. This stage begins with the

defeat of the enemies of the Holy Covenant and ends with the completion of the building and cleansing of The Millennial Temple. So I see The Inauguration of the Eternal Kingdom of God and of Christ on Earth not just happening on the 1290th day, nor just on the 1335th **blessed** day either, but that it's a 'cleansing process' that is ongoing from **Armageddon**, or really The 7th Plague Judgment, to **the last end of the indignation**. And this **last end** does not come until The Millennial Kingdom is fully operational. This is when The Millennial Temple is completed and **cleansed**.

And all this implies we need to name a couple more events. What we could call the last marker of the end of The Great Tribulation, which could also be considered the first marker of the beginning of The Millennium, is The Inauguration of Millennial Rule. I'm guessing this must be on the 1335th day or 75 days after Armageddon (1335 - 1260) when there will somehow already be **thrones... set** in Jerusalem—though construction must really just be getting started at that point. I mean I'm also guessing that this is the day of The Groundbreaking Ceremony for The Millennial Temple, if not also for the entire City of Jerusalem, and that this day could also very well be the day of The First Resurrection. So then 965 days after the 1335th day (2300 - 1335), and still arguably a Millennium-beginning event, comes The Inauguration of Millennial Temple Worship which I would say completes the period of The Inauguration of the Eternal Kingdom of God and of Christ on Earth.

And still you could argue that this inauguration period of God's kingdom really begins immediately before The Abomination of Desolation at The Celebration of The Eternal Kingdom of God and of Christ in Heaven, remember? Like the transition between The Beginning of Sorrows to The Days of Vengeance, there are a few ways you can look at the transition between The Great Tribulation to The Millennium ranging from simply saying that Armageddon is the transition to instead that the whole 2300 days—from The Celebration of The Eternal Kingdom of God and of Christ in Heaven all the way to The Inauguration of Millennial Temple Worship—is all part of this transition. And we can see here again how God has set up those who get too dogmatic about the singular importance of any of these transition events. Such dogmatists who will not accept correction show themselves as 'unapproved' to **teach** at least **prophecy**—especially if they misidentify or misplace, or simply miss finding too many of these events. Make yourself a timeline of all these important events in the order I have suggested if it will help you see them all better. This is at least a good place to start.

During The Millennium many more mortal humans are still to be **redeemed** or **lost**. These would be the survivors of The Great Tribulation and their progeny. And the immortal **saints of the most High** will establish their **dominions** over these mortals at The Inauguration of Millennial Rule. Again, these 'reigning' immortal **sons of God** must include The Church, The 144,000 Jews, The Final Harvest Saints, and The First Resurrection Martyrs. But also ruling with them must be the still mortal Jews that God will keep safe in **the wilderness** and **mountains of Bozrah** that Jesus leads back home to **Zion**. But again, I'm guessing that the exclusion of both The Sequestered Jews and The First Resurrection Martyrs from The Marriage of The Lamb, and any part with **the armies... in heaven** that ride down with Jesus, seems to mean that they have more of an 'outer-circle' ministerial role in Jesus' kingdom. In contrast, I'm guessing that invitations to the wedding, and the

following 'horse ride', imply a more 'Jesus-centered' or 'Father-centered' ministry.

And I should admit that I have thought it possible that Jesus' **wife** might remain in Heaven for The Millennium and appear with **the holy city, new Jerusalem, coming down from God out of heaven, prepared as a bride adorned for her husband** [Rev 21:2](#). But remember that Paul promises that, **When Christ... shall appear...** [we] **shall... also appear with him in glory** [as immortals] [Col 3:4](#)—which may only be talking about The Rapture, but he also promises that when we **meet the Lord in the air... so shall we ever be with the Lord** [1Thes 4:17](#). That seems to settle the issue for me. And the Apostle Peter **promises** that it's the Church's destiny to act as a **royal priesthood** [1Pet 2:9](#). And Jesus reveals to us in His **revelation** repeatedly that the members of **the churches** are **kings and priests** who **shall reign on the earth** ([Rev 1:4-6](#); [5:10](#)). So it's safe to assume that Jesus' **wife** will be with Him at The Inauguration of Millennial Rule because it appears to be her station to have some of those **thrones** and one of those **dominions** and **reign on the earth** then too.

But surely some Immortals stay with God in Heaven for The Millennium. Again, I'm guessing that the **victory** Jews raptured to Mount Zion in Heaven near the midpoint of The Great Tribulation will remain in Heaven with The Father for the duration of The Millennium because of their station, whatever that is. It just occurs to me that they are connected to Him in some kind of Temple service. I also think this because it's clear that The Tribulation Gentiles will be staying in Heaven. They are clearly given the job to be...

...before the throne of God, and serve him day and night in his temple; and he that sitteth on the throne shall dwell among them. They shall hunger no more, neither thirst any more; neither shall the sun light on them, nor any heat [Rev 7:15-16](#).

These circumstances must be because that throughout The Millennium they are always perpetually inside God's Temple in Heaven, and that a similar environment awaits them following The Millennium as we will see. And they could begin this kind of service immediately in The Temple in Heaven, but they would be waiting for years before they could begin such work on Earth. Remember it will be about 1½ to 2 years plus 2300 days—about 8 years—from the time they are raptured till The Millennial Temple on Earth is ready. And on Earth they would no longer be **before the throne of God**, nor would it be possible for them to remain continually out of the **sun light**. We will also see that **there is not enough room for them all in The Millennial Temple on Earth. And we will see that [mistakenly left out of recording]** there are others—and I mean Jews that are still mortal—who will serve Jesus in His Temple on Earth.

So since the Tribulation Gentiles must be staying in Heaven during The Millennium, it also seems likely that other groups seen in The Temple in Heaven with God will also stay there too. And I would think that the martyrs **under the altar** and **the four and twenty elders** would stay with Father God during The Millennium too, except that they must be redeemed at The Rapture of the Church, and must therefore originally **meet the Lord in the air: and so shall... ever be with the Lord** Jesus, which means that they

should ride down with Him to Earth at His Second Coming. But since I see no indication where Tribulation Jews pass The Millennium, except that they are last seen to be around The Throne of God, I'm inclined to expect they will stay in Heaven doing Temple service too. And we'll consider other ideas about all these heavenly Temple immortals before we're through with this section, and in the next section too.

So altogether in The Millennium I expect to see that there will be 'divisions of service' and a 'hierarchy of leadership' found in these different groups of the immortal **sons of God** both in Heaven and on Earth, but that this 'hierarchy' also includes the mortal Jews on Earth rescued by Jesus from **Bozrah**, and that all these groups must have roles in 'ascending stations' under both Jesus and The Father, where Jerusalem will be Jesus' capitol city on Earth, but that various 'administrations' by The Father in Heaven over all will still be ongoing too. We can also see to a limited extent that these divisions are made by the separate 'tracks' Jew and Gentiles may take on their 'roads to immortality' that God has prepared for them to choose from. And we can assume that at least some immortals that miss earlier raptures to redemption will be forced to take later ones and miss out on the apparently higher 'ruling-class' stations. Still, it appears we'll need lots of **thrones** to administer God's World kingdom from different levels and capacities and likely also to provide Jerusalem-centered representative **government** for all **the nations** of the Earth. But again, however it all breaks down, I don't anticipate that we will ever have a situation where there are 'too many chiefs and not enough Indians', because,

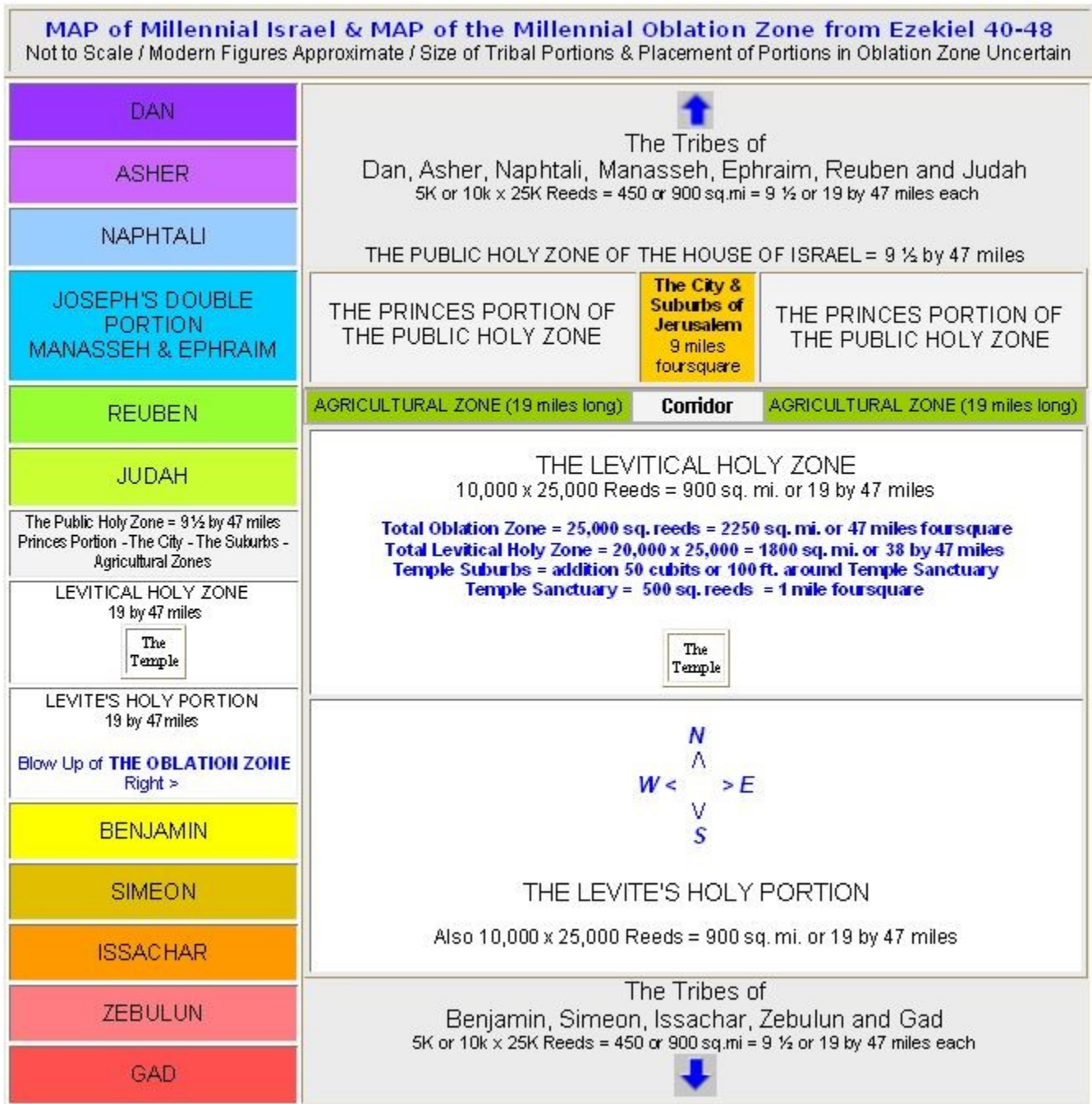
Of the increase of his government and peace there shall be no end, upon the throne of David, and upon his kingdom, to order it, and to establish it with judgment and with justice from henceforth even for ever. The zeal of the LORD of hosts will perform this [Isa 9:7](#).

In the next subsection we'll take a close look at the information about the physical, political, and religious structure of The Millennial Kingdom that God has already **revealed** to us, and from that consider some other things we can deduce about it, as well as some speculation too. Unfortunately however, this may involve some of the 'kicking and screaming' I warned you about earlier. The problem is that though we have had most of this information in Ezekiel 40-48 available to us for some time now, all of the best 'handlers' of The Word of God I know still somewhat misinterpret it, including finding references to the presently existing ruins of the last temple, or about The Tribulation Temple. But even when properly recognizing that the **prophecy** is solely about The Millennial Temple, there are misidentifications made between The Temple Sanctuary, The Temple itself, and the City of Jerusalem, etc. And I mean The Millennial Temple and its surrounding sanctuaries must be outside of the City of Jerusalem during The Millennium. And this shouldn't be too big a surprise. I mean the previous Jerusalem Temples had some pretty big differences too. And though Jesus regularly visited them in the past, he has never lived in one on Earth as yet. And this

is the best reason I have for the grand new layout we'll see in The Millennial Temple.

But this kind of confusion is to be expected. It's what this **study** is all about. The confusion comes from compartmentalization and a much too narrow examination of **scripture**. And it comes from trying to see the presentation of God's Word in a linear fashion instead of in the '**here a little, and there a little**' way God really teaches meaty **knowledge** and **doctrine**. And even worse than this kind of immaturity, it comes from pieces of **scripture** only presumed to be understood from the midst of passages that are mostly unintelligible to the users otherwise. Indeed, the nine chapters in Ezekiel that contain this 'puzzle-itized' information must be 'handled' **precept upon precept** and from **here a little, and there a little** to properly 'decipher' them. In other words, God as usual 'layers' and 'scatters' the information about Millennial Israel throughout this **prophecy**. So as usual you have to gather the scattered information about the physical, political, and religious structure of Millennial Israel and put it together God's way, or you can count on confusion, if not 'making a big mess' of things.

The Millennial Kingdom



The above [MAP of Millennial Israel & MAP of the Millennial Oblation Zone from Ezekiel 40-48](#) is an estimation made after some considerable grappling with the 'scattered' and 'layered' descriptions found in these chapters. In this subsection I'll show you how I came to these parameters and some of what it all means.

But to start with, if we remember that this newly established, newly

inaugurated **kingdom** really has its beginnings at The Celebration of the Kingdom of God and of Christ in Heaven at the close of The Beginning of Sorrows, then we should expect some aspects of its operation begin then too. One reason for this assumption is because of the definably different groups of 'chiefs' visible from this inception. We have already established that The Millennium is a period when both Jesus and his 144,000 strong Jewish 'virgin entourage' will **rule all nations with a rod of iron**. I would expect then that during the 3 ½ years of The Days of Vengeance that they will be among the first preparing to **rule** the World in The Millennium. And probably the assignment of the Wife to 'make herself ready' in Heaven and the apparently similar assignment forced upon The Sequestered Jews on Earth includes some of this kind of preparation too. I think this is another way we can see that this coming eternal kingdom will operate under a 'multilayered hierarchical' system of **government**.

And when this **government** reaches full operation about three years into Jesus' 1000-rule, it will include the administration of a new Temple in Jerusalem. Doing what? We should remember that God tells the Jews that **feast days**, particularly **the feast of tabernacles**, are designated as **a statute for ever in your generations** [Lev 23:34-41](#). But does this mean throughout The Millennium and beyond?

In [Zechariah 14](#) **the prophet** begins the chapter with an 'earthshaking' account of The Great Tribulation from a Jerusalem-focused perspective. However by [Verse 9](#) it has clearly turned into a description of The Millennium. Zechariah speaks of the time when...

...the LORD shall be king over all the earth: in that day shall there be one LORD, and his name one... and there shall be no more utter destruction; but Jerusalem shall be safely inhabited [Zec 14:9,11](#).

In [Verse 16](#), Zechariah reveals a major annual event during The Millennium, saying,

...it shall come to pass, that every one that is left of all the nations which came against Jerusalem shall even go up from year to year to worship the King, the LORD of hosts, and to keep the feast of tabernacles. And it shall be, that whoso will not come up of all the families of the earth unto Jerusalem to worship the King, the LORD of hosts, even upon them shall be no rain.

We also **learn** in the next couple of verses that God will add **plague** on top of drought for any Egyptians who neglect to come to the annual Feast of Tabernacles.

But it's Ezekiel who gives a 'complete' account of temple construction and operations for The Millennium. In [Ezekiel 40-48](#), in a **prophecy** recorded at the time when Ezekiel and the split-off 10 tribes of the Kingdom of Israel are in their 25th year of **captivity** in Assyria (around 572 BC), God gives Ezekiel extensive plans and **instruction** for what must be The Millennial Temple and all of Millennial Israel. We **know** this must be Millennial Israel for lots of

reasons, probably the most obvious being that the dimensions given will make this temple sanctuary nearly a mile square—much too big for any of the other temples in Jerusalem. And certainly some 'tribulation-style topographical renovation' will be required first before it will be possible to be constructed as described in these chapters, as we well see.

Though much bigger and grander than previous temples, including an **altar** 24 feet on each side that will need **stairs** [Eze 43:15-17](#), it will pretty much serve the same purposes that all the previous ones did. Also as before, Ezekiel informs us that **Levites**—and certainly not any Gentiles—will recommence their duties in it with an opening ceremony involving seven days of administered **sin** and **burnt offerings** including the use of 'unblemished bulls, rams and goats' which are **burnt** on the **altar** repeatedly and whose **blood** is sprinkled basically all over it and on all the 'entryway posts' too. I assume that this initial weeklong ritual is completed on the 2300th day after The Abomination of Desolation, and is the conclusion to how and when **the sanctuary** is **cleansed** [Dan 8:14](#). And this is said to begin a process, **upon the eighth day, and so forward**, of evidently regular **burnt offerings** and **peace offerings**, etc., taking place throughout The Millennium ([Eze 43:17-23](#); [45:13-25](#); [46:2-7, 12-15](#); [Isa 56:7](#)), though all these practices cannot go on this way beyond The Millennium, as we will see.

But the obvious question is: why should any **sin offering** [Eze 45:17](#) of any kind be needed in Jesus' Millennial Temple? The best answer I've heard for this is that it's not needed at all. Just like Gentiles symbolically drink Jesus' blood and eat His body **in remembrance of** Him, so we would expect that millennial blood sacrifices by Jews will be done as a memorial too, and not as a requirement because the requirement was fulfilled by Jesus on the cross. And I'm guessing that Gentiles in **the nations** during The Millennium will likely voluntarily **continue** regular **communion** as well. But sacrificial Temple worship for the Jews in The Millennium will not be voluntary but mandatory. They will not have a choice. I **know** this because it's not until that **eighth day** following the 'cleansing' of The Temple that **the Lord GOD** will say to them, **I will accept you**. So He absolutely does require it of them, and who am I to say He can't.

We also **know** that He will require of everyone else in the World that they at least come to the annual Feast of Tabernacles, and that evidently only then will they be **accepted** by Him too. In fact, if The Temple's week of final cleansing is finished just before The Feast of Tabernacles, I expect the whole World will be there. But one way or another they will certainly all be coming before the end of a year. And all this must be for the benefit of those who survive The Great Tribulation. I mean they will still have their **sinful flesh** that must still be incessantly **warring against** their **members** [Rom 7:23-8:4](#), and which should still be provoking these mortals to **wars and fightings** [James 4:1](#), and evidently this will be the state of affairs all the way to the end of The Millennium, as we will see. And call these requirements what you want, but **the LORD** calls them **the ordinances of the house of the LORD** [Eze 44:5](#), and I'm sure they will be enforced with **a rod of iron**, metaphorically speaking.

And clearly things will not go on without **controversy**, because Jesus says,

...in controversy they [the Levites] shall stand in judgment; and they shall judge it according to my judgments: and they shall keep my laws and my statutes in all mine assemblies... Eze 44:24.

And the involvement of mortals in the resolution of **controversy** during The Millennium will not just fall on **the Levites**. It will also be expected of the mortal **princes of Israel**. Jesus will require that His **princes** keep order and behave themselves, saying,

...my princes shall no more oppress my people; and the rest of the land shall they give to the house of Israel according to their tribes... Let it suffice you, O princes of Israel: remove violence and spoil, and execute judgment and justice, take away your exactions [or "dispossessing" or "evictions" or "expropriations"] from my people Eze 45:8-9

This shows us an executive division of mortal government in addition to the judicial one, and that the mortal royal 'executive branch' will be tempted to **oppress** the people and to not **Let it suffice** that they only **remove violence and spoil, and execute judgment and justice**. Hey, David himself 'slipped-up big time', remember? And evidently the millennial **princes of Israel** will have the power and temptation to put **exactions** on the people—basically taking from them anything they want—and possibly not only in Israel but worldwide—not that I expect that Jesus will let anything get too 'out of hand'. Still, is this the kind of eternal kingdom you were expecting to live in with Christ? Get ready. Get set. Because here it comes. And there's no longer any reason to be surprised about it.

In other **ordinances** for **the Levite, the LORD** requires that...

...they teach my people the difference between the holy and profane, and cause them to discern between the unclean and the clean Eze 44:23.

Now this seems to imply a 'separation' **between the unclean** mortal Gentiles—called **strangers Eze 44:7-9; 47:22-23**—and **the clean** mortal Jews and proselyte Gentiles, as well as **between the holy and profane** areas, etc. But could it also include a separation of some kind between immortal Jews and Gentiles of The Bride of Christ and other immortal Gentiles? This doesn't seem likely. But whatever the case, you should see that many questions are raised here. And you should now also be more confident that by **the Spirit of truth** we can to begin to 'sort out' some of the **answers** as we **continue** to properly 'sort out' God's Word. But whatever we discover, we're going to see that things are surely going to change in the next age, especially for Gentiles whether mortal or immortal, because whether they are considered **unclean** or not, all these Jewish practices will become central in their lives too. I mean Gentiles must **learn** to respect these scrupulous Jewish operations one way or another, and participate in them to at least some extent, as we will see.

Again, the difficulty I have with this is that I was lead to believe in my '

infancy' in Christ that suchlike 'divisions' among those who God calls **my people** would no longer exist in The Millennium—and I never thought any believer would be considered a **stranger**. But there are some clear 'divisions' seen here. And we will see some 'segregation' within the Jews too. And all this is already more than I bargained for because it makes me feel somewhat excluded. Again, get ready for some 'growing pains', because to **grow** we must **understand** that the Lord **rules** and will **accept** who He wants how He wants regardless of how we think it ought to be. Yes, this means that you have to give up the **way which seemeth right** to you ([Pro 14:12](#); [16:25](#)). And that there will evidently be some strict and exclusive **laws** and **statutes** during The Millennium that when broken have very serious consequences.

For example, it appears that only the descendants of a certain faithful generation of **Levites** will be able to get close to Jesus in the **inner court** that surrounds His **house**, and they must change their clothes every time they enter or leave His service ([Eze 44:10-19](#)). And anyone who is **uncircumcised** will not get passed **the gates** of His **house** [Eze 44:9](#). But again, can all this apply to immortals? Let's consider some more of this account that God gives to the Jews through Ezekiel before I commit myself any further.

Again and more specifically, there are a couple of reasons why all this is so hard to put together. One is that God has 'scattered and layered' the information throughout this **prophecy** quite a bit. We get information in some places in measurements. We get more in other places about the way these parts and areas will be used by different **people** or **princes** or by **the Lord** Himself. And rarely are all the measurements or uses for a particular part found in just one place. To finally conquer this confusion you must **understand** that you must go to several places within this **prophecy** to get the most complete picture it offers about any particular part of Millennial Israel.

Another reason all this is so hard to put together is that the same terms are used to describe different areas and parts. For example, the **sanctuary** might only be referring to the centermost **temple** itself—an elaborately walled and doored **building** only half of which is **the most holy place**. Or the **sanctuary** might be the larger walled and gated and doored **building** of **the inner court** and **within** that surrounds and includes **the temple**. Or it might be the even larger, walled and gated **utter court** or **outward court** or **outward sanctuary** that surrounds all these places. And apparently **sanctuary** is also an appropriate term for the very much larger, also **holy** and likely also walled and gated area that surrounds all of this too. And the same kind of confusion applies to the use of terms such as **the temple** or **the house of the Lord**. All of these terms are used to describe these larger and smaller mostly concentric 'walled' and 'gated' or 'doored' 'buildings' and/or 'courts' or 'portions'. And there seems to be an endless supply of such opportunities for confusion not only because of the easy to misunderstand and interchangeably used terms such as **temple, house, tabernacle, sanctuary, holy place, building, wall, gate, and door**, but because you can also get lost with all the prepositions and other directions such as **outward, between, over against, in the midst of**, etc. The problem is that because all the directions are found and qualified in multiple

places too, you must **understand** that any direction you get in one place may not even be half the 'treasure map'. So you can't be satisfied with your concept of the size, location, orientation, or operation of anything from just one place because you are very likely to get the wrong picture this way.

And you've got to **understand** and appreciate that God is not having trouble making himself clear. He does all this on purpose to see who is willing to hang in there and sort it all out—to see who really wants **the truth**. And He wants to see that when your first efforts fail—and your second and third efforts too—as they will, that you never fail to have the integrity to humbly and happily admit it and 'soldier on'. God wants to see that you cannot be satisfied until you have removed all the contradictions and confusion you can see and that you at least think you **understand** it all. Only then will you be in a position to start sorting it all out. And don't you think He will **know** if you have not submitted to Him in this way. And don't you **know** by now that these 'stamps of integrity' are required on your 'passport' if you expect to 'travel this road to wisdom'. I keep bringing this up as if it's something we have to continually struggle with because it is. Certainly even modern Bible translators have failed to earn this **approval** from God and have therefore failed to get a good picture of what Millennial Israel is really going to be like. Of course the picture I will present here will not likely be perfect, nor will I try to describe everything I think I see. But what you should really be concerned with at this point, especially if this is the first time you are attempting to get any real **understanding** of this **prophecy**, is that you begin to see that without the entire **prophecy** in **use** and properly 'sorted out', it is supposed to be unclear what Millennial Israel will really look like—not to mention that God withholds information about the participation of immortals because many of them are Gentiles and must necessarily be hidden from Ezekiel. From the start you should expect that 'sorting' this out is meant to be quite a chore—some pretty **strong meat**. And I will **understand** if you're not up for it yet.

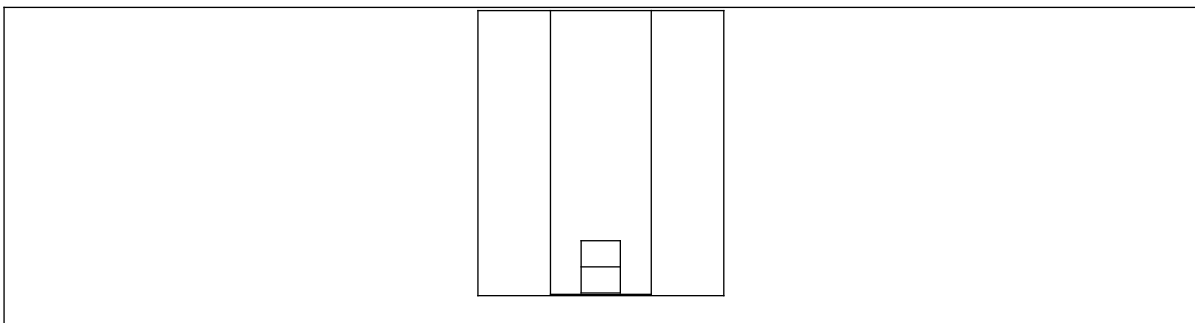
Making it even more difficult is the necessity to view in it the KJV. We'll have to 'muddle through' with the Old English even if this is your first time through because I don't even want to think about what some of the modern translators do with this **prophecy** in order to try to make sense of it. And if you do 'venture down this road' you will only confirm that modern translators clearly sometimes 'stretch' the Hebrew. You can see it in this **prophecy** in the many verses where they clearly disagree with one another. That's why for now I suggest you try to stay with the KJV as much as possible and only check verses in modern translations that you don't **understand** at all. However the more verses you check in modern translations the more you will see that you're not the only one who doesn't **understand**. Remember you can click on the 'blocked V' next to any KJV verse at blbclassic.org [site address changed] to get more than a dozen different verse translations at a time. By-the-way, translations that still have copyrights are the modern ones. Click on © [Info](#) if unsure.

And again, you don't have to be a Hebrew scholar to see that these modern translators are more interested in 'renderings' they can immediately **understand** and explain, rather than ones that clearly match the Hebrew, especially if a straightforward translation of the Hebrew renders a translation they cannot make sense of or explain. Their foundational misconception—or

pride—is that they think they should be able to make sense of every verse of **scripture**. But some **scripture** is not meant to be immediately **understood**—and some **prophecy** cannot be expected to be **interpreted** until **the time of the end**, remember? And no **scripture** should be expected to be sufficiently **understood** without the clarification of other **scripture** from other places. Anyone who expects to **grow** beyond being a **milk**-drinking **babe** must accept this as a starting point. And this is how you join in with The Natural Progression of The Word of God. And even some Bible translators, who show that they do not **understand** God's way by showing that they don't **know** how to 'sort out' this **prophecy** as a whole are no exceptions—not to mention showing they have no integrity. And I must see these published 'disputes' masquerading as the **pure words** of God ([Psalms 12:6-7](#)) as a subtle but dangerous form of what the Apostle James calls **wars and fightings among you**. Because 'handling' God's Word this way certainly leads to a lot of division within the Church and must even be intended to provoke some of it. And James tells us where such disagreements come from, saying,

From whence come wars and fightings among you [Christians]? come they not hence, even of your lusts that war in your members? [James 4:1](#)

So yes, such disagreements are **the works of the flesh** [Gal 5:19-21](#), and you must **war against** suchlike temptations ([1 Pet 2:11](#)) and win if you want to **know** the taste of **strong meat** [Heb 5:11-14](#) and **eat... that which is good, and let your soul delight itself in fatness** [Isa 55:1-2](#). This is a battle the mature must **fight** every day. And it should not be expected to be easy because those who are able to **study** God's way and show themselves as **workman** that are **approved unto God** [2 Tim 2:15](#) are not guaranteed that they will never again **err**. But they are guaranteed that as long as they **continue** they will **grow** in the **wisdom, knowledge, and understanding** of God and His Word, and will be **given** as a result many **exceeding great and precious promises** [2 Pet 1:4](#). And praise God, by now I'm expecting that you have a better idea than ever before of how to wage this **good fight** yourself ([1 Tim 6:12](#); [2 Tim 4:7](#)). Still, **teachers** are meant to help in this process. So here's another 'boost'.



The line drawing of a long rectangle with a small square in the center of it, and another smaller square inside that, and an even smaller horizontally split rectangle inside that, is a not-to-scale diagram of the **wall** and **building** and **court** and **house** and **tabernacle** and **temple** sanctuaries I described above. The point is that all of these portions or courts or buildings are temple sanctuaries in some capacity or another. And some parts are **holy**, some are more **holy**, one is **most holy**, and one, though **holy** in some capacity, is also designated as **profane** and/or outside **the holy place**. This diagram does not show the **gates** or **doors**, nor what I assume to be the **five and twenty cubits** wide by **an hundred cubits** long (or 50 x 200 ft) arched and palm-tree-decorated 'entryways' that run **an hundred cubits** ([Ezek 40:6-16](#), [20-37](#)) from **the lower gate 40:19** in **the outward court** ([40:17](#), [20](#), [34](#)), or **the utter court** ([40:31](#), [37](#); [42:1-3](#), [7-9](#), etc.), to **the inner gate** of **the inner court** ([40:15](#), [19](#), [23](#), [27-28](#), [32](#), [44](#)) which all adjoin to the outside of the smaller square that surrounds the split rectangle. And this would be one gate and entryway on each side, except there may not be one on the west side. And this smaller square surrounding the split rectangle, **the inner court** ([40:19](#), [23](#), [27-28](#), [32](#), [44](#)), is **an hundred cubits long, and an hundred cubits broad, foursquare** (or 200 x 200 ft) ([40:47](#); [41:13-15](#); [42:7-8](#)). And I'm assuming the entryways to the gates would be hard to show because it appears that half or **fifty cubits** ([40:15](#), [21](#), [25](#), [29](#), [33](#), [36](#); [42:2](#), [7-8](#)) of these **hundred cubits** long entryways ([40:19](#), [23-24](#), [27-28](#)), and more than half or **seventy cubits** on the **west** side ([41:12](#))—if it really has a similar gate on that side too—must 'tunnel' **under** ([40:15](#), [42:9](#)) the surrounding **three stories** of **galleries** and **chambers** and connect to the interior **porches** ([40:17-19](#), [44-46](#); [41:15](#); [42:2,7](#)) that are **round about 41:15-16 the inner court**. (By-the-way, these descriptions are hard enough to understand without being distracted by the many **scripture** references needed to support them, so if you're listening to my audio recording, you'll probably need to look at the text to better **understand** them.)

And I see the necessity for the 'tunneling' because these **galleries** and **chambers** and **porches** that surround the walled **inner house** are contained in **fifty cubits** wide by **an hundred cubits** long 'buildings' on the **north**, **east**, and **south** sides, and also possibly in a **building** that will be **seventy** by **ninety cubits** on the **west** side—hence the entryways must 'tunnel' **fifty** to **seventy cubits** through them. And all of these outer buildings and walls are apparently part of the same temple **building** because all these measurements are included before Ezekiel's 'tour guide angel' **made an end of measuring the inner house** in [Ezekiel 42:15](#). But the temple **building 40:5** surrounding the **inner court** and **temple** can also be considered part of **the outward** or **utter court** too, which is the largest square in the diagram. And even though these outer buildings—the ones with the **galleries** and **chambers** and **porches** that surround **the inner court**—are sometimes considered part the **inner house 42:15**, they're also considered part of **the outward** or **utter court**, because the **inner** gates in the **inner court** that lead to **the outward** or **utter court** are in the wall of **the inner court** so that the buildings themselves are technically beyond these gates—in **the outward** or **utter court**.

The exception to this is the Levites' **holy chambers** (44:19; 46:19). They are evidently still considered within **the holy place** even though these **chambers** are in the **building** that is otherwise considered to be in **the outward** or **utter court**. In other words, in this **building** surrounding **the inner court** and **temple** only the priests' **holy chambers** in it are part of **the holy place** 42:7-8. This is also **understood** by the fact that when the priests leave their **holy chambers** they **go out of the holy place into the utter court** 42:13-14. Naturally everything inside the one **hundred** by one **hundred cubits** area of **the inner court** that is defined by the surrounding **galleries, chambers, porches, and gates** is also part of **the holy place**, including the **forty** by **twenty cubits** (or 80 x 40 ft) **inner temple** (41:2-4; 15) or **house** (40:47; 41:5-10) which is the centermost horizontally split rectangle. But I should clarify here that the **inner house** or just **the house** may be referring to all **the outward** or **utter court** and buildings and walls as well as **the inner court** and **the inner temple** 42:15, or it may be referring to just **the inner court** and **inner temple** 41:13-17, or it may just be referring to **the inner temple** alone (41:5-10). Again, these kinds of confusions are many.

And again, though I am trying to help you **understand** all this, it's God that has made this **prophecy** impossible to be easily **understood**. And just accepting my word and **interpretation** proves nothing. So I'm trying to give you enough clues so you can begin to 'sort it all out' and **prove** it for yourself. I mean, unless you can **work** through it on your own and see it for yourself then you are only really choosing the story or storyteller you like best. And I'm telling you that you shouldn't be that interested in someone that expects you to take their word for it. And if you need help you must look for someone who will help you see it for yourself and who then expects you to keep testing it to **prove** it to be **the truth**.

Beyond this, Jesus Himself tells Ezekiel in this **prophecy** to...

...describe the temple to the house of Israel, that they may be ashamed of their iniquities; and let them measure the pattern 43:10.

But that only...

...if they are ashamed of all that they have done, make known to them the [entire] design of the temple and its arrangement and all its ordinances... and all its laws 43:11.

So God tells Ezekiel to **make known** the **entire design** only if they are **ashamed of their iniquities**. This tells me that anyone who expects to really **understand** this **prophecy**, or meaty **scripture** in general, must first be **worthy** of such **knowledge** by becoming **contrite** and **humble** about their condition. And this means your **integrity** must be driven by **humility**. Surely, this is part of what Peter means when he 'concludes' in his second letter to the Church to **grow in grace, and in the knowledge of our Lord**. And this is why I have been so hard on you throughout this **study**, testing your **humility** every step of the way. But really it's not me. It's really what anyone will **understand** who is mature enough to **eat** the **strong meat** of

The Word of God. And with this **understanding** you should nonetheless want to be **approved unto God, a workman that needeth not to be ashamed**, who can **prove all things** by **rightly dividing the word of truth** ([1Thes 5:21](#); [2Tim 2:15](#)). I do. And I have personal **experience** that any dummy eventually can ([Psa 19:7](#)). And what I think you should **learn** in this **study** is that every dummy will eventually have to—sooner with **double honour** [1Tim 5:17](#), or later with **the shame of thy nakedness** [Rev 3:18](#). So, let's get on with it.

In the process of all this measuring we are told that in the **north** and **south** sections of this **outward court** surrounding **building** that we will find **chambers** that are **holy**, or for God's specific purpose. These **chambers** are further described to be for the **priests** to change clothes, **eat**, and prepare offerings ([40:44-46](#); [42:13-14](#); [44:19](#); [46:19-24](#)). And this seems to imply that besides these **holy chambers** the remaining portions of this surrounding building are for entryways and **galleries** that accept **profane** guests, which means that they will be open to both the Jewish and Gentiles public for a place to meet and pray ([Isa 56:7](#)), and possibly to see into **the inner court** through **the narrow windows** [41:15-16](#). We can also expect that people will line up at **the north gate** to give **offerings** of all kinds. And I'm guessing that the **east side** will be a 'porch of judgment' something like Solomon's because the mortal **prince** will have access to **the inner court** by **way of the gate of the outward sanctuary which looketh toward the east**. And **the prince** will enter on that side in order to **eat bread before the LORD** [44:1-3](#) and to **prepare... offerings, and... worship** [46:2](#).

By-the-way, attached to the original Temple of Solomon on the east side was 'the porch of judgment', a large hall 50 cubits long and 30 cubits wide where king Solomon would make judgments and exercise justice. The following is a description from *BibleHistory.com*...

The "porch" or "portico" was located on the east side of the outer court of the New Testament temple of Herod, and it rested on a massive Herodian retaining wall (which incidentally can still be seen in part at the present Temple wall area). The wall that supported it was 400 cubits high [800 feet] resting in the valley below and made of marvelous stones. According to Josephus [the first century historian] this was the area of the original temple that survived and was still standing in Jesus' day and probably because of its immense size and beauty the Chaldeans left it standing. Its immenseness presented a marvelous appearance. Josephus says, "Its fineness, to such as had not seen it, was incredible; and to such as had seen it was greatly amazing." It was in these cloisters that the Levites resided and it was here that the doctors of the law met to hear and answer questions. The porch of Solomon was no doubt a special place for Jesus. It was here that Jesus was seen often, speaking and teaching the people or just walking, as in John 10 during the festival of "lamps" or Chanukkah, which commemorates the re-dedication of the temple and of God to His people. Later, after His death His disciples gathered here often. http://www.bible-history.com/backd2/solomons_porch.html

So I'm guessing that this **building** with its **galleries thereof on the one side and on the other side... and... round about on their three stories** [41:15-16](#) all around **the inner court** of The Millennial Temple will provide 'controlled access' to Jesus. And all of this together helps us better **understand** the well known verses that include that wonderful Church hymn...

And it shall come to pass in the last days, that the mountain of the LORD'S house shall be established in the top of the mountains, and shall be exalted above the hills; and all nations shall flow unto it. And many people shall go and say, Come ye, and let us go up to the mountain of the LORD, to the house of the God of Jacob; and he will teach us of his ways, and we will walk in his paths: for out of Zion shall go forth the law, and the word of the LORD from Jerusalem. And he shall judge among the nations, and shall rebuke many people: and they shall beat their swords into plowshares, and their spears into pruninghooks: nation shall not lift up sword against nation; neither shall they learn war any more [Isa 2:2-4](#).

And feel free to sing that middle part if you know the melody.

Other missing details from my diagram include the Levite's **houses** in the area of the large rectangle. This area is said to be...

...an holy portion of the land: the length shall be the length of five and twenty thousand [10-foot] ***reeds, and the breadth shall be ten thousand*** [or an area of 250 million square reeds or about 900 square miles]. ***This shall be holy in all the borders thereof round about. Of this*** [or within this area] ***there shall be for the sanctuary*** [or inner house] ***five hundred in length, with five hundred in breadth, square round about*** [or 250 thousand square reeds or about one mile square—the large square]; ***and fifty cubits round about*** [this square] ***for the suburbs thereof*** [—but for who?]. ***And of this measure*** [of the large rectangle] ***shalt thou measure the length of five and twenty thousand, and the breadth of ten thousand*** [again, 900 square miles]: ***and in*** [or within] ***it shall be the*** [one-mile-square] ***sanctuary and the*** [inner temple—the small split rectangle—which contains the] ***most holy place. The holy portion of the land shall be for the priests the ministers of the sanctuary, which shall come near to minister unto the LORD: and it shall be a place for their houses, and an holy place for*** [or surrounding] ***the*** [mile-square] ***sanctuary*** [Eze 45:1-4](#).

Notice that my diagram is also missing the **fifty cubits** wide **suburbs** that are **round about** The Temple Sanctuary (the large square), whose purpose I can only guess would be to help facilitate the service of it. And beyond these **suburbs** we can now **understand** what the large rectangle surrounding the large square is for. It's where the Levites will have their **houses**, and this housing area is meant to surround the 'inner' **sanctuary** or **the inner house**. And we **know** that inside this mile square **sanctuary** is another still

'inner' **sanctuary** of **the inner court** [44:27](#)—the smaller square around the split rectangle—and that inside this is **the most holy place** which is the bottom half of the split rectangle—where I expect Jesus' **throne** will be ([43:7](#)). We also **know** Jesus' **altar** or **table** [41:22](#) is in the top half of the split rectangle. And I expect that special Levites will serve Him there, and apparently the mortal Prince of Israel will **eat bread** with Him there ([44:3](#)). And God knows who else will dine with The Lord there.

Remember also that we already determined that the **building** that surrounds **the inner court**, except for **the holy chambers of the priests**, are not part of **the holy place**, though clearly this building is part of **the inner house** within the mile-square Temple **sanctuary**. Again, it appears that this is because people from all over the World will come to this **building** to **worship, pray, do justice, study**, and bring **offerings** to Jesus, presumably many being **strangers** or mortal **uncircumcised** Gentiles ([Isa 2:2-4](#); [56:7](#)). But when we **learn** that the 'tour guide angel' measures the **wall round about** the mile-square Temple Sanctuary **to make a separation between the sanctuary and the profane place** [42:15-20](#), from this we might expect a different line of Gentile exclusion. This seems to designate the area of the large rectangle outside The Temple Sanctuary as both a **holy place**—set aside for the Levites' homes and to surround The Temple Sanctuary—and a **profane place**—evidently indicating that **strangers** or Gentiles have access to this **portion** but not inside of the mile-square Temple Sanctuary. I mean it implies that non-proselyte Gentiles will **not** be allowed into the mile-square Temple Sanctuary, though I expect that proselytes—Gentiles who fully convert to Judaism—will be accepted inside. And Jesus seems to be pretty clear about **uncircumcised** Gentiles. He says,

No stranger, uncircumcised in heart, nor uncircumcised in flesh, shall enter into my sanctuary, of any stranger that is among the children of Israel ([44:9](#); [47:22-23](#)).

This is quite a 'bombshell', and it tells us quite a lot. I take it that being **uncircumcised in heart** means 'unsaved', and **uncircumcised in flesh** means 'not really Jewish or a proselyte'—both circumcisions being required to get into Jesus' **sanctuary**. And this implies that some living **among the children of Israel** will be lacking one or both of these circumcisions. This could mean that some will backslide and that some will actually survive The Great Tribulation **uncircumcised in heart**—as long as they avoid The Absolute Enforcement of the Worship of Satan and the Antichrist. And with both circumcisions required to get into Jesus' **sanctuary**, I'm guessing that the **uncircumcised in flesh** will worship just outside of this mile-square **sanctuary**.

But it's difficult to determine which '**sanctuary**' Jesus is talking about. At the end of Chapter 42 the 'tour guide angel' is obviously measuring the large mile-square **sanctuary** and speaking of the **north, south, east, and west** mile-long **walls** and one of it's gates **whose prospect is toward the east** ([Verses 15-20](#)). But early in Chapter 43 we see that Ezekiel is ushered back **into the inner court** again ([Verse 5](#)). And he apparently stays there throughout this chapter because next Jesus speaks about His 'personal space'. He says,

...the place of my throne, and the place of the soles of my feet, where I will dwell in the midst of the children of Israel for ever, and my holy name, shall the house of Israel no more defile...

[Verse 7](#)

And after He preaches about the importance of **the ordinances** and **the law of the house** [Verses 8-12](#), the rest of the chapter is about the measurements and **the ordinances of the altar** for **burnt offerings** [Verses 13-27](#).

So at the beginning of Chapter 44 when Ezekiel is **brought... back the way of the gate of the outward sanctuary which looketh toward the east** [Verse 1](#), how can we tell whether he is referring to the inner or outer east gate? Since Ezekiel is apparently in **the inner court** before this move, it appears that he goes from **the inner court** to **the outward court** through the inner east gate. And the fact that this gate will only be used by Jesus and **the prince** [Verses 2-3](#) also indicates to me that Ezekiel has just gone out the east gate from **the inner court** into **the outward sanctuary**. All this implies that in [Verse 9](#) when Jesus says, **No stranger...shall enter into my sanctuary**, He is talking about His **inner house** [42:15](#) which includes the **building** that surrounds it. And this would mean that **uncircumcised** Gentiles would have access inside the mile-square Temple **sanctuary**—just not inside **the inner house** and **sanctuary**. Confusing, isn't it.

By-the-way, I left out in my diagram **the altar that was before the house** [40:47](#) **to offer burnt offerings thereon, and to sprinkle blood thereon** [43:13-18](#), and that it must be situated in **the inner court** in the little space above the split rectangle. And there are also the **thirty... chambers** [41:5-6](#)—or possibly 90 of them altogether because there are evidently three levels of these **chambers** with possibly **thirty** in each "story" surrounding the **inner temple**—the small split rectangle. There are also various other details and decorations in the various walls, gates, and porches we won't attempt to locate on this line diagram.

And **the Levites** will **minister in the gates of the inner court, and within** [44:17](#). Again, **the inner court** or **inner house** is the smallest square surrounding the split rectangle. More specifically,

...they shall be ministers in my sanctuary [within the **hundred cubit long** connected buildings and walls that border the four sides of **the inner court** [40:47](#); [41:13](#)], **having charge at the gates** [from **the outward court** to **the inner court**] **of the house, and ministering to the house** [which in this case is only referring to the interior **building** or **temple** or **tabernacle** that is **forty** by **twenty cubits** [or 80 x 40 ft—the split rectangle, [40:48-49](#); [41:11](#)]: **they shall slay the burnt offering and the sacrifice for the people, and they shall stand before them to minister unto them** [especially at **the north gate**] [40:20](#), [44:11](#).

The **gates** in this **wall on the outside of the house round about** that the Levites **minister in** are the first things Ezekiel sees measured ([40:5-47](#)). The

Levites will receive offerings for sacrificing and burning on **the altar at the north gate** (40:20-23, 35-37) or the north **door** 42:2 entering through to do this service through various **doors** 42:4. The animal offerings will be accepted on eight **tables**, some of them for 'washing' and some to **slay thereon the burnt offering and the sin offering and the trespass offering** 40:35-43. And the **priests** that work this **gate** have access **without the inner gate** 40:44 and **in the outward court** 40:17 to **holy** changing and offering preparation **chambers**. The **chamber** [at the side of the east gate 40:44] **whose prospect** [or door] **is toward the north is for the priests, the keepers of the charge of the altar** 40:46. This **chamber** is also evidently one of **thirty chambers** 40:17 within the **building** accessible from **the outward court** that provides a place for the **priests** to change clothes, etc. And the **priests** not only have to put on special clothes to serve Jesus (44:17-18), but also at the end of the day, **when they go forth into the utter** [or outward] **court**, they cannot wear the same cloths they use to minister to the Lord when they go home (44:19). And the changing **chambers of the singers in the inner court, which was at the side of the north gate** 40:44... **whose prospect is toward the south, is** [also] **for the priests, the keepers of the charge of the house** 40:45, which should include the **priests** that **minister** directly to the Lord's **altar** or **the table that is before the LORD** 41:22. Other **chambers** are used by the Levites to cook and **prepare** offerings (46:19-24), and also to **lay** or store and **eat the most holy things** 42:13-14.

And it's **only the sons of Zadok among the sons of Levi** [at least among the mortals], **which come near to the LORD to minister unto him** 40:46, because Jesus says, **they kept the charge of my sanctuary when the children of Israel went astray from me** 44:15. See what obedience can get you? And what you might be excluded from otherwise? I mean I'm sure God doesn't just reward worthy Jews with this kind of 'access'.

And by-the-way, apparently there will be continual Temple music and singing provided by some of Zadok's descendants. Actually I'm hoping that the members of Ta-Shma, a currently performing Jewish group, are Zadok's descendants and will be available to perform in The Millennial Temple during The Millennium. Google 'Ta Shma' and listen to "Shine" on their "Come Listen" album. I listen to it on their MySpace page **or on YouTube at** <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=71GMrGB1KKo>. I think it would make great live 'temple musak' anyway.

Also, though it's clearly established that these **priests** are absolutely not allowed **to drink wine... when they enter into the inner court** 44:21, nor to **take for their wives a widow** [that is, that was not previously married to a **priest**], **nor her that is put away** [or divorced] 44:22, we can deduce from these requirements that they may not otherwise be 'teetotalers', nor bachelors, nor be required to take any vows of silence. 'L'chiam!', (pronounced more like 'La **hi** um'), which in Hebrew means, 'to life!'. Remember *Fiddler on the Roof*? Or maybe you remember when the Ark of the Covenant was brought into Jerusalem how **David danced... leaping and dancing** so as to really embarrass some people (2 Sam 6:14-16)—but hopefully not you, because I hear Jews can be that way, and evidently on occasion we're going to have to get used to it, if not join in. Of course these requirements of **priests** also show that though divorce and remarriage may

be uncommon in The Millennium, they will not be unheard of, even in Israel.

Another Levitical **ordinance** decrees that **Levites** can't touch a **dead person** without having to be **cleansed**, proving people die in The Millennium and presumably begin filling up Paradise again. And evidently the **uncircumcised in heart** will to some extent continue to fill up **hell** some more too. Also,

They [the Levites] shall eat the meat offering, and the sin offering, and the trespass offering; and every dedicated thing in Israel shall be theirs. And the first of all the firstfruits of all things, and every oblation of all, of every sort of your oblations, shall be the priest's: ye shall also give unto the priest the first of your dough, that he may cause the blessing to rest in thine house. The priests shall not eat of any thing that is dead of itself, or torn, whether it be fowl or beast [44:29-31](#)

And all of this shows that lots of sacrifices and offering and feast days to **the LORD** according to **the ordinances of the house of the LORD** will be ongoing throughout The Millennium. It also proves animal **meat** will be eaten, both **fowl** and **beast**, throughout The Millennial Age, and that it will be common to keep livestock and make your own bread. And I guess all this means that it's going to be acceptable, even necessary, and even easier to raise livestock and catch fish and hunt wildlife in The Millennium, since, as we will also see, animals won't be afraid of us anymore again.

Now **the east gate** [40:6-19](#) is usually **shut** [44:1-2](#) because the Lord enters there, except when **the prince, he shall sit in it to eat bread before the LORD; he shall enter by the way of the porch of that gate** [44:3](#). And **it shall be opened** for **the prince** for other occasions too. Ezekiel records,

The gate of the inner court that looketh toward the east shall be shut the six working days; but on the sabbath it shall be opened, and in the day of the new moon it shall be opened. And the prince shall enter by the way of the porch of that gate without, and shall stand by the post of the gate, and the priests shall prepare his burnt offering and his peace offerings, and he shall worship at the threshold of the gate: then he shall go forth; but the gate shall not be shut until the evening. Likewise the people of the land shall worship at the door of this gate [probably at the lower or outer gate in the outward court] before the LORD in the sabbaths and in the new moons... 46:1-3 And [also] in the feasts and in the solemnities 46:11... [and whenever] the prince shall prepare a voluntary burnt offering or peace offerings voluntarily unto the LORD [which implies occasional 'wars and fightings' and other 'controversy' among the people] 46:12.

These verses makes clear that **the people of the land**, which we can assume includes **strangers**, will **worship at the door of this gate** or probably at the entrance to the **lower gate** in **the outward** or **utter court**

on the **east** side, which would put them inside the mile-square Temple Sanctuary wall—the larger square, and outside **the inner court and building** that surround it—the smaller square around the split rectangle. And evidently only Jews and **strangers** that are both circumcised **in heart and in flesh** will be allowed to also circulate in the **galleries** above. And boy am I expecting some serious traffic jams. But I also expect not everyone will normally show up to worship at once—that worship will be spaced out over an entire day or week as appropriate. And we will get to one of God's plans to alleviate too much congestion within the mile-square Temple Sanctuary a little later.

As for **the south gate** [40:20-23](#), [28-31](#), [44](#); [44:4](#), some of the **holy chambers** for **the priests** [42:13](#) are on the south side, and probably, as with all **thirty chambers**, are all on the ground floor, for **the priests** regular and convenient access. But as for the **galleries** likely above them, as well as for the **galleries** on all the other sides, I expect that they are for **prayer and worship, study and fellowship**, and also possibly for executive and judicial administration of **justice**—though I expect this **building** is not directly accessible to **uncircumcised** mortals. Of course I may have something confused here. And beyond this, I can only further speculate.

But now we are ready for some 'clean up work'. Ezekiel speaks for some time on his 'tour' of The Millennial Temple with an angel I call his 'tour guide' ([40:3](#)), and Ezekiel begins to speak with Jesus Himself from [Ezekiel 43:7](#) on. In [Ezekiel 42:15](#), starting at The Temple Sanctuary's east gate, is where the angel begins measuring its **four sides**, each with a **wall round about, five hundred reeds long, and five hundred broad**—again, this is about a mile square. And it's here that Ezekiel adds,

He measured it... to make a separation between the sanctuary and the profane place [42:20](#).

Now some have supposed—or affirmed—that this **profane place** is the Dome of The Rock, that shiny gold-domed Muslim 'holy place' presently on Jerusalem's Temple Mount. This shrine honors the site where Abraham is reportedly told by Allah to spare Ishmael from sacrifice. Yeah, Muslims don't want to accept that it was really Isaac. But the area on the present Temple Mount where the shrine sits can't be this **profane place** because the shrine must be long gone by the start of The Millennium. And if it's still standing on this Temple Mount halfway through The Great Tribulation, the Antichrist will surely tear it down as a rival to his worship no later than right after he destroys The Tribulation Temple. Remember that the Antichrist **will destroy the city and the sanctuary** of Jerusalem at this time ([Dan 9:26](#)). Of course he can't destroy The Temple Mount itself—now called **mount Zion**—which was formerly called **mount Moriah** when Abraham was stopped from sacrificing Isaac there ([Gen 22:1-2](#), [2 Chon 3:1](#)). And you should now **understand** that we're expecting that **mount** to 'grow' considerably in size in The Final Great Earthquake so that it can accommodate Jesus' Millennial Temple Sanctuary. I mean the present Temple Mount must be replaced by what Ezekiel calls **a very high mountain** [40:2](#)—surely a much bigger one than is there today. And we haven't even started talking about the rest of the 'greater Jerusalem area' in The Millennium. And even the large rectangle

we've discussed so far is only the center of the top of this coming **very high mountain**.

And though I suppose it is good news that there will be enough room for The Tribulation Temple next to the 'profane' Dome of The Rock on the present Temple Mount, it's a misuse of **scripture** to say that [Ezekiel 42:20](#) proves that. And it could prove embarrassing for some if The Dome of The Rock manages to be torn down before The Tribulation Temple is built, which, since we're expecting a coming period of Israeli 'invincibility', appears more likely than not. And speculating is OK, but those who suppose this **profane place** has something to do with The Dome of the Rock show they are completely lost in this **prophecy** as we will **continue** to show in this section. And though we must all speculate in order to **grow** and in order to have a chance to **prove all things**, we should not try to emulate that famous king who expected to 'learn all the World's knowledge while standing on just one foot', or even two. Let me show you a comparison to explain further.

I once heard a teaching for the supposed validity of the Philippines-based Iglesia Ni Cristo (INC) or 'Church of Christ' and their founding prophet, Felix Manalo. It is considered by its members to be the only true church and theirs the only true prophet because he is the only one that comes from the Philippines as they believe the Bible 'prophesies'. This is because he is believed to be that **seed from the east** mentioned in [Isaiah 43:5-7](#). And to come to this conclusion you have to operate just as 'narrowly' and be just as 'lost' as someone who believes that the **profane place** from [Ezekiel 42:20](#) is the Dome of the Rock. And suchlike misinterpretation is foundational for this 'eastern church' that since 1914 has gained millions of members. And there is no question that it's a false church because its members openly deny the deity of Christ. But what do you think the consequences are when the true Church 'handles' doctrine equally shamefully? We'll get back to that. The point for now is that you must ultimately see how easily such narrow perspectives encourage such shameful confusion both in and out of the Church. And that such confusion—or manipulation—can only be avoided **if ye continue** to examine whole **prophecies** and connect them to the rest of The Word of God. And if you are up to speed in this **study**, you should already be able to see this in Ezekiel's **prophecy**, even though we're not done yet. And when we properly **handle** the entire **prophecy** from Isaiah in the next section, the misuse of **scripture** by the INC Church will be just as 'quickly' apparent. But it's not like there's that much consideration required to sort out so many of these popular misconceptions. I mean, it's time for us to start operating on a much 'higher level'—and not just for our own sakes.

We **know** an age is coming where forevermore we no longer need to sleep. So the time is coming when being too tired to be that **workman** who will **study** to show himself **approved unto God** [2 Tim 2:15](#) will no long work as an excuse. But if by then you're not already one of those **workman** that is already used to a 'work-till-you-drop' regimen of **study**, you will have some catching up to do—and you may never, ever really be able to do so, because who's going to slow down so you can catch up? And you're expecting to be one of the **kings and priests**, right? Surely these **kings and priests** will be responsible to **Take heed unto** themselves, **and unto the doctrine**, and to **continue in them: for in doing this** they **shalt both save** themselves, **and** also the mortals still on the Earth **that hear them** ([1](#)

[Tim 4:16](#)). I mean these **kings and priests** should have the capacity to **minister** The Word of God without ministering confusion, don't you think? This is why I hope some of you will join me in this **work** now. And if you are starting to get the idea that Jews will have a lot of requirements on them in The Millennium, consider that the **work** I **speak** of here will require everything of you. It requires **giving all diligence** [2 Pet 1:5-11](#) if you expect to **strive** [Luke 13:24](#) and **press** [Phil 3:14](#) to enter The Kingdom of God and of Christ without **shame** ([1 Cor 6:5](#); [15:34](#)). And it promises everything too—that you'll receive that [**high**] **prize** [Phil 3:14](#) and an [**abundantly ministered**] **entrance... into the everlasting kingdom of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ** [2 Pet 1:11](#). I think this means that, like so many others, you won't be left standing in the 'outward courts' looking in.

And God knows I'm going to need help from those who will **work** with me on this 'meatier level'—I mean the 'level' I'm trying to introduce in this **study**. But to those of you who still aren't motivated to **grow in grace and in the knowledge of the Lord Jesus Christ** [2 Pet 3:18](#)—those of you who **have not the knowledge of God**, (and again, neither I nor Paul are speaking about **salvation** here), I **speak** this **to your shame** [1 Cor 15:34](#), so that I might **provoke** you to **desire** that **high** 'level' of **love and good works** ([Phil 3:14](#); [1 Pet 2:2](#); [Heb 10:24](#)) that God must now more than ever expect so late in this age. And don't be confused. I only mean these things as Jesus, Paul, and Peter do.

Getting back to Ezekiel, we have only just begun looking at **the profane place** outside the mile-square Temple Sanctuary. And though this outer area inside the large rectangle is clearly designated **profane**, we **know** that it is also **holy** because it's for the Levite's **houses**, and because it surrounds the mile-square Temple Sanctuary. So the fact that it's **profane** too must mean that **uncircumcised** Gentiles are allowed in this area. So **profane** here doesn't mean an **abomination**. It just means 'unkosher'. And apparently even the 'unkosher' will be allowed within the mile-square Temple **sanctuary** to **worship** at the **east** gate of the **inner temple**. But let's get back to this a little later too.

Now maybe you still have doubts that this is really The Millennial Temple and its operations that we're talking about. I mean if the fact that The Temple Sanctuary is nearly a mile square doesn't convince you, then what I call 'The Levitical Holy Zone' should. This is the larger area around The Millennial Temple that **the LORD** requires as **an oblation** [or offering] **unto the LORD, an holy portion of the land** [45:1-9](#). Do the math yourself. Your Bible probably tells you that **a reed** is about 10 feet making this **portion of the land** to be nearly 1800 square miles. And there are really two **portions** of 10,000 x 25,000 **reeds** each—a total area approaching a quarter of Israel's present day holdings. To calculate this I just went to [Ask.com](#) to find the present 'surface area of Israel' in square miles and found all of Israel to be a little over 8,000 square miles. One of these two **portions** then is the large rectangle we've already been talking about—the one in my line diagram with The Temple Sanctuary in the middle. And I mean that there are really two adjacent large rectangles.

The other, equal-in-size, adjacent **holy portion**—the same size as the first large rectangle, 10,000 x 25,000 **reeds** or about 900 square miles,

...shall also [be for] the Levites, the ministers of the house, [to] have for themselves, for a possession for twenty chambers 45:5.

So this is another large rectangle for the Levites. And the only things described to be in this rectangle are those **twenty chambers**. Are they oversized barns for storage? Convention centers? I can't say. And besides possibly some 'easements' for access through this **portion**, could all this area be exclusively for **the Levites**? We can assume so because there is another evidently more public **portion of the land** in Israel, half again the size of each Levite **portion**—5,000 x 25,000 **reeds**—**over against the** [double rectangle] **oblation of the holy portion...** [which] **shall be for the whole house of Israel**. So the final part of Greater Jerusalem is this about 450-square-mile **portion** wherein I expect that the whole World will interact.

Now there is another **portion** identified to be for the **princes**, but as no specific dimensions are given for it, I assume that it fits within the **portion** for **the whole house of Israel**, and because it's description immediately follows this common portion's description. And this is confirmed much later when we are finally told that all the parts of the total **oblation** which is **foursquare**—or in the shape of a perfect square—has an area of 25,000 **reeds** square—10,000 + 10,000 + 5,000 x 25,000 (48:20). The two Levitical **holy** portions, one of which contains The Temple, I call The Levitical Holy Zone, while the whole area of **oblation** that also includes the portion for **the whole house of Israel** I call The Oblation Zone. And this brings the size of this total **oblation** or offering to near 2250 square miles, and well over a quarter of Israel's present day holdings. This makes it abundantly clear that this must be a description of the greater Jerusalem area in The Millennium. And this is also evidence that Israel as a whole will change quite a bit between here and there, maybe back to somewhere near her original, God-defined size. But there is much more evidence that these descriptions are of Millennial Israel—not Tribulation Israel—in the rest of this section. But before you go on take another look at the 'blowup' [MAP of the Millennial Oblation Zone](#) on [page 474](#).

Now since we are also told early on in this **prophecy**—and much later too—that **the rest of the land** [of Israel] **shall they [the princes] give to the house of Israel according to their tribes** (45:8; 48:1-29), and along the way that **Joseph** gets **two portions** 47:13, this leaves only the 450 square mile **portion** for **the whole house of Israel** to serve as some kind of 'commons' or common possession of all the **tribes**. This is that **portion** that is **over against the oblation of the holy portion** for the Levites, and it is part of the **foursquare** Oblation Zone.

But we also are told in due course that the **rest of the land** is not exclusively just for the **tribes**, but also for **strangers** or Gentiles that will live **among** these **tribes** in **their portions** who **shall beget children** and have their own **inheritance... among the tribes of Israel** 47:22. And I imagine that if these Gentiles are going to live **among the tribes**, that a lot of them will become proselytes. But I also expect that there will be minority groups—like the Christians in Israel today. I mean that apparently **strangers** who are **uncircumcised in flesh**—and even a few who are **uncircumcised in heart** too—will live **among the tribes**. And this implies that the smaller rectangle

(of 5,000 x 25,000 reeds) for **the whole house of Israel** within the Oblation Zone (of 25,000 x 25,000 reeds) should also offer access to **strangers**.

And at this point in the **prophecy** we have already been told that,

...the people of the land shall worship at the door of this [east] gate before the LORD in the sabbaths and in the new moons
[46:3](#).

So we **know** by deduction that since **the people of the land** include **strangers** or Gentiles—at least some of which are likely **uncircumcised**—then these **strangers** must be included in the number that **shall worship** [in the **holy place**] **at the [lower gate] door of this [east] gate before the LORD** which is within the mile-square Temple Sanctuary. And we do **know** that **strangers** from all over the World must come at least annually for **the feast of tabernacles**. And they will understandably also want to get as close as they are allowed to **worship** the Lord. My best guess is that they will also be allowed to approach the **east gate to the inner court** and **inner house** or **inner temple**. And I expect that the whole World will flow passed the entrance to this innermost **east gate** in **the outward sanctuary**. Then again, I'm sure someone could do the math to determine just how many people could reasonable 'flow' passed such a gate, and determine that more space would be needed for so many Gentiles, implying instead that non-Israelis would be restricted to worship outside the **east gate** of the mile-square Temple Sanctuary, simply because of the lack of room for them otherwise. Either that or we might expect a back-up out this east gate in times of heavy traffic—which I expect would be quite often.

However we are also told that **the people of the land shall come before the LORD in the solemn feasts**, and during these **feasts** they must enter the mile-square Temple Sanctuary but must only exit from the gate opposite the one that they entered ([46:9](#)). And this must be referring to the gates on the walls of mile-square Temple Sanctuary because the people cannot enter the inner gates. This will force **the people of the land** on **solemn feasts** to travel all the way through the mile-square Temple Sanctuary from one side to the other. Notice also in this verse that only the **north** and **south** gates are mentioned. This makes sense because we will see that **the people of the land** live north and south of The Oblation Zone. We also **know** that Jesus enters The Temple Sanctuary **from the way of the east** [43:2,4](#). So it appears that the outer east gate, as well as the inner east gate, are instead both exclusively used by Jesus and His mortal reigning **prince**, if not also by immortals. And by-the-way, though the east gate in the greater Temple Sanctuary wall is specifically identified a couple of times ([42:15](#); [47:2](#)), I see no mention of one on the west, so I'm assuming that there is no outer west gate. We also see that Ezekiel walks in the **waters** that originate in **the inner court** from **the right side** of the Lord's **house** (looking at it from the east side?)—between **the house** or **inner temple** and **the south side of the altar** of sacrifice ([47:1-3](#)). These waters evidently flow from **the inner court** out the inner east gate and continue out of the outer east gate all the way down to the Jordan River. Will there be a bridge on the east side within **the outward sanctuary** for north-south traffic flow? I see no mention of one. So evidently north and south traffic—after they have

worshipped at the east gate—will have to travel around the inner temple on the west side in order to leave **the outward sanctuary** without getting wet. Or maybe there will be a whole lot of 'wading' going on. We will see that Ezekiel does some 'wading'. And this water source could be convenient for baptisms. But we will see that it will be **good** for a lot more than that.

Also, all indications continue to be that 'horses and buggies' will be the fastest mode of transportation available. But surely they'll have to leave their horses, etc., somewhere outside. And this would make it necessary for everyone to pass through The Temple Sanctuary twice or travel around it to get back where they left their stuff. Naturally I'm guessing that livery stables will be back in style, and I'm guessing that all the droppings the animals leave behind in this new agrarian society will be put to good use nearby, as we will see. We've already seen that these people are predominantly livestock-raising, bread-making farmers and/or hand-craftsmen and merchants who should commonly be in pretty good physical shape. Such folks will likely think nothing of a few miles walk to and around The Temple Sanctuary grounds.

But why must everyone travel all the way through The Temple Sanctuary on the **feasts**? I'm guessing it's for 'traffic control'. And I'm also guessing it will be good for the local economy. But much more importantly, I expect that it will be because of the soul-benefiting exposure to certain sights and sounds that will be available on such treks. This way everyone will get a fuller view of the **building of the house of the Lord**. But there's something else quite startling that everyone visiting Jerusalem is supposed to come in 'earshot' of on the southeast side of **the city**. And I'm guessing this especially has to do with man's sin nature. And I bet you really want to know what will be so startling on the southeast side of Jerusalem. We'll get to it.

But first you should also be wondering where **the city** of Jerusalem is. We have not located it so far anywhere in the **holy oblation** for **the Levites** that has **the sanctuary in the midst thereof**, nor have we seen it in their additional adjacent **portion 45:1-5**. So again, the only place left for **the city** is in the smaller public portion of The Oblation Zone which is for **the whole house of Israel** where also evidently **the princes** will live too **45:6-7**. The confirmation of this comes at the end of the **prophecy** when we **learn** that **the profane place** is the smallest of these three rectangular portions of the land (**48:15-22**). In this smaller 5,000 x 25,000-reed 'common portion' we find that **the city** with its 12 **gates** is contained inside, and we confirm again that The Princes Portion is too. So I'll call this multipurpose smaller rectangular portion The Public Holy Zone because it's specifically referred to as **profane 48:15**, but also as part of the entire **foursquare, holy oblation** that Millennial Israelites will **offer** to the Lord (**48:20**). Again, this Public Holy Zone is about 450 square miles in size—about 9 by 47 miles—and it helps make the whole Oblation Zone **foursquare**—about 47 by 47 miles. And this smaller 'public portion' must also be accessible to Gentiles. It's ¼ the size of The Levitical Holy Zone—or 1/5 of the whole Oblation Zone. And I'm guessing that it's the same size as the regular portions for each of the 12 tribes.

But in the last account of The Public Holy Zone, it's not so much described as a 'commons', but simply as a portion that includes **the city** of Jerusalem. The **city** measures 4500 x 4500 **reeds**, just over 8½ miles across which would be about 72 square miles. There is a wall with **three gates** on each

side, each gate named for one of the 12 tribes, and it's said to be **in the midst of the profane place** [48:15-16](#), [30-34](#), or in the middle of this portion where the **princes** also live. The Public Holy Zone is also said to include **the suburbs of the city** of Jerusalem, evidently extending out another 250 reeds—almost another ½ mile—on all sides outside the city wall [48:17](#). These **suburbs** will be used by...

...they that serve the city [and they] **shall serve it out of all the tribes of Israel** [and use it] **for dwelling**.

So Israelites from **all the tribes** will **serve** the Jerusalemites. Just who could these city-dwellers be? Let's get some more details first.

One rather important detail is that there is still another 'zone' to be accounted for in The Public Holy Zone. This is what I call The Agricultural Zone. We **learn** in [Ezekiel 48:18](#) that the **increase** of its **food** is to feed these Israelites that inhabit **the suburbs** that **serve the city**. And I'm guessing that this **increase** must be referring to what is leftover after feeding the city—and we're evidently talking about the produce and livestock produced in this agricultural 'sub-portion'. So some of the 'suburb-dwellers' must work in The Agricultural Zone as part of serving the city. And maybe such service **out of all the tribes of Israel** is a limited term of service like military service—or not. At first glance this Agricultural Zone would seem to be a section measuring 10,000 x 10,000 **reeds**—almost 360 square miles in total area, but this cannot be the case for a few reasons.

The first is in the description of this **residue** or 'left-over' sub-portion itself. The description only tells us its **length**, and implies that it must be split in two, and that the two parts can be found **against the oblation of the** [Levitical] **holy portion**. So I envision this 'split agricultural sub-portion' as kind of like 'landscaping' in front of The Levitical Holy Zone. I see it as two relatively narrow **ten thousand**-reed long—nearly 19 miles long each—agricultural 'flower beds', including some livestock too, one running **eastward** from the city and the other **westward** from the city leaving up to a 5,000-reed wide—or about 9 to 10 mile wide—'corridor' in the middle for access between Jerusalem and The Levitical Holy Zone for **people** to get to The Temple Sanctuary and also for Jesus and the Levites to come and go as often as they do. I mean I don't expect that Jesus remains continually 'hold-up' within The Temple Sanctuary, nor the Levites within their zone. But since we are not told how deep these two 'flower beds' **against** The Levitical Holy Zone are, we won't be able to tell exactly how big the remaining **residue** for the **princes** is either. And this is the second reason this Agricultural Zone cannot be so big. There must be room for **the princes**. If it were actually going to be 10,000 x 10,000 reeds in size, it would leave an area of only one quarter the size of the city left for all the princes and their families, and I'm hoping that this will not be enough room for them—at least late in The Millennium, as we will see. Also the descriptions of The Princes Portion itself lead me to believe that it cannot be too greatly limited by the 'agricultural zoning'.

So let's speculate further on the unspecified sizes of both the **princes** and the agricultural 'sub-portions'. And we can do this based on numbers taken 'right out of the blue'. Suppose the two 19-mile long Agricultural Zones are

each 2000 reeds or about 3 ½ miles deep each. This would make the total Agricultural Zone about 143 square miles. Subtracting the City of Jerusalem including its suburbs—about 81 miles **foursquare**, and if I've got my math right, that would still leave for the **princes** an area of about 4 times the size of the city or about 226 square miles

in total area—about 15 miles across if **foursquare**—including any other needed common areas. But given the size of the City of Jerusalem within The Public Holy Zone, and that it's specifically described to be **foursquare**, I don't think The Princes Portion could also be **foursquare**, neither is it specifically described as such. It can only be **the residue** or the rest of the space left in this zone. Or another way to look at it is that the size of The Agricultural Zones and The Princes Portion are unknown, but we **know** that together they add up to about 369 square miles (450 - 81), which would be just less than 20 miles across if **foursquare**.

There is also some uncertainty in the estimation of the length of **Millennial Israel**. I'm guessing that Joseph's **two portions 47:13** will be the same size as each of the two portions that **the Levites** will get, making all the other tribes' portions half as much or 5,000 x 25,000 reeds or 450 square miles—each the same size as The Public Holy Zone. But if the Levites are getting two 'regular portions', making all the other tribes portions 10,000 x 25,000 reeds or 900 square miles too, this would give Joseph—or Ephraim and Manasseh—20,000 x 25,000 reeds or 1800 square miles—the same size as the entire Levitical Holy Zone.

Whichever the case, it appears from **Chapter 48** that all the portions have the same width **from the east side unto the west side** of Israel—all of them 25,000 reeds or 47 miles across just like The Oblation Zone—except of course for the portions within The Public Holy Zone including **the city** and **the suburbs** of Jerusalem, The Agricultural Zones, and The Princes Portion. So however you imagine this mix of certain and uncertain details, **Millennial Israel** (smaller and larger possible maps, **p.493**) must be a long but relatively thin 'perfect rectangle'. And certainly the center Oblation Zone must be a very large 'perfect square'. How long will this rectangle be if **the Levites** get two 'regular portions', each the size most other tribes get? This would make Israel



145,000 reeds or about 280 miles long north to south (inset right). And how long will it be if **the Levites** instead get two 'double portions' that are each the same size that **Joseph** gets, with the rest of the tribes portions being the same size as The Public Holy Zone? Then it would be only 85,000 reeds or a little over 160 miles long (inset left). Presently, from its northern tip 40 miles southwest of the city of **Damascus**—which is Israel's millennial northern border [48:1](#)—to its southern tip at the Gulf of Aqaba on the Red Sea, Israel is already about 280 miles long. But her topography and borders are presently far from conducive to forming equal rectangular **portions** for all the tribes and zones that I see indicated by Ezekiel's **prophecy**. Also, the southern tip of Israel today may extend 75-100 miles south of where her new millennial southern border will be at **Beersheba** (or Be'ér Sheva) near **Kadesh** [48:28](#). But my encyclopedia tells me that the actual location of Kadesh-Barnea is in dispute because it has been identified with a number of oases scattered throughout the Sinai and Negev deserts.

But even if present day **Beersheba** is misidentified, I still think a better case can be made for the shorter version from the existing topography. This is because Millennial Israel's borders will also include **the great sea** or Mediterranean Sea on the west and the **Jordan** River on the east, as we will see. And in Millennial Israel it appears that these east and west borders will be parallel for the entire length of the country because of the perfectly **foursquare** dimensions of its very large center portion. But is it possible that it will only be **foursquare** in the center? I mean accommodating its present topography, could the northern tribes have narrower but taller portions, while the southern tribes shorter but wider ones? No, because in [Chapter 48](#) we see that all the tribal portions must be the same width **from the east side unto the west side** as the Oblation Zone—25,000 **reeds** or 47 miles—because if they aren't this creates a slot or slots of unaccounted for land adjacent to The Oblation Zone or to the northern and southern tribal portions. And such slots would not accommodate the waterways described on the eastern border as we will see. Besides, it follows that the specific widths of the tribal portions are not given because they are already established by the width of The Oblation Zone. And we must assume that all the tribal portions are equal in area except for the Levites and the 'double portion' for Joseph. I mean Joseph's **two portions** must mean that all the other tribes have exactly half as much. So Millennial Israel will have to be as perfectly rectangular as its center is **foursquare**. And this leads me to think that the shorter version is more likely because it's less likely that the Mediterranean seacoast and the eastern border including the Jordan River could run parallel for much more than 160 miles, and even this will take some major topographical renovation, though the case for the longer version only implies more topographical renovation. Remember all the islands will be shaken below sea level. So we should expect major changes in coastlines, seas, and rivers too. In fact, maybe this is part of what Isaiah means when he is speaking of The Final Great Earthquake and he says,

...the crooked shall be made straight [Isa 40:4](#).

Whatever the case, it appears to me that the measurements of Millennial Israel in Ezekiel 40-48 add up to a perfect rectangle surrounding a perfect

square. And this sounds like God's plan for the layout of a nation to me.

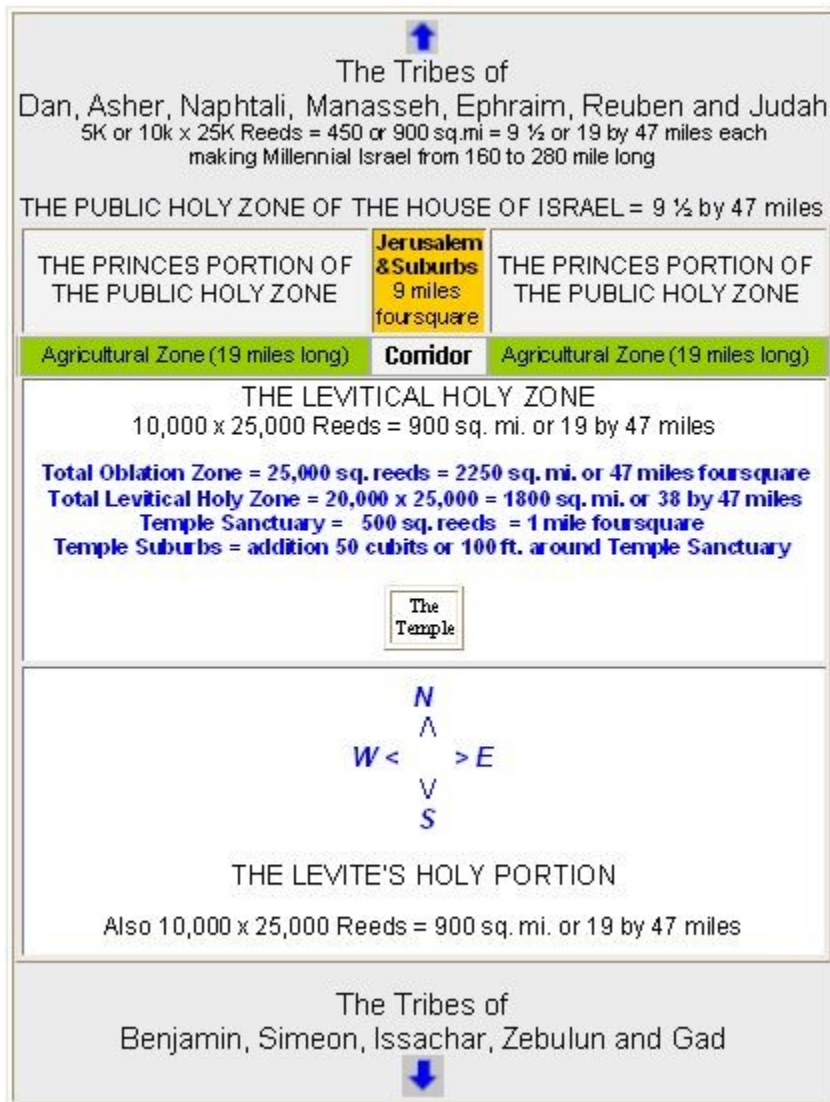
But I'm also guessing, practically speaking, that if they don't need the extra space they won't want it. Israelites, especially in the outer tribes of **Dan** and **Gad**, should prefer the 160-mile-long shorter version because, in a 'horse-and-buggy World', I'm expecting this will make the trips to Sabbath worship or feasts in Jerusalem a little easier. But even this 'shorter commute' to Jerusalem should take those in the outlying tribes up to four days for the round trip. This seems to make regular attendance of Sabbaths in Jerusalem by all Israelites unreasonable to impossible and implies that local Sabbath worship will be acceptable. But even if they only have to come to Jerusalem three times a year for the **solemn feasts**, the longer version of Israel would force Gadites and Danites to take nearly 280-mile, probably week-long round trips which would likely provoke some discontent. Then again, we will also establish that there will be water routes on the east and west sides of the country that I imagine will both work equally well for traveling both north and south. And maybe Israelites, including the Gentiles that live among them, will need more room to **multiply** throughout The Millennium. And all this also gives reason why the rest of the World will only be required to come once a year to The Feast of Tabernacles.

And why isn't God specific about the size of The Agricultural Zone and The Princes' Portion within The Public Holy Zone? I think He is hiding something on purpose. And you could come to this conclusion even if He gave all the dimensions with the way all the information is so scattered about. But without the specific depth of the 19-mile long agricultural sections, we can't tell how big The Princes Portion is going to be. And you might easily think that this **portion** doesn't have to be very big, especially if you only consider what Jesus says in this **prophecy** about the **princes** that will live there in **their portion** (45:8-9). I mean He speaks as if it is only for the mortal Jewish **prince** and his family. But we now **know** God **hid** from Ezekiel The Age of Grace and those Gentiles in it who would be saved to be **kings and priest** with Jesus in The Millennium and beyond. They must be hidden in this picture somewhere. In our example we calculated that The Princes Portion could easily be four times the size of The City of Jerusalem or more. So just who could all these **princes** be that would warrant so much room? Could they also include the **kings and priests** that **appear** with Jesus when He comes again, and also the ones who will **rule with a rod of iron**, and also those who will be the first to be resurrected to 'live and reign with Christ' throughout The Millennium? This could be quite a lot of **princes** indeed, but again, surely not as many as we could hope for. But what other place is there for them, unless there will really be more than just Levites living in The Levitical Holy Zone? So I guess we should pray for miraculous breakthroughs in farming so that The Agricultural Zones are minimized and The Princes Portion is maximized. And apparently the measurements indicate that since there is only 250 reeds (5000 - 4750) or at most about ½ mile of space left between Jerusalem and The Levitical Holy Zone, then this also indicates the depth of The Agricultural Zones. But however deep they are and wherever we are lodged in The Millennium, I'm guessing that The Public Holy Zone will be quite a busy place, where more is merrier, and where both Gentiles and Jews naturally congregate in Israel.

But there is more we can deduce about the layout of The Public Holy

Zone. Jesus tells us that the **portion of the land** for the **princes** is **on the one side and on the other of the holy oblation** of the Levites, **and to the west border** and to **the east border** of Israel, **and** also **over against** or adjoining **the oblation of the holy portion** of the Levites ([45:6-7](#)). And it's again similarly described in [Ezekiel 48:21](#) adding that it's **of the possession of the city** and that **the sanctuary of the house** [The Temple] **shall be in the midst thereof** as it's also similarly described in [Ezekiel 48:8](#). So The Temple must be **in the midst of** or 'between' or 'surrounded by' The Princes Portion while at the same time **in the midst of** the whole Oblation Zone. This must be saying that The Princes Portion is a split portion whose parts sit on either side of The Temple, though not directly on either side because these parts also must adjoin the zone that The Temple sits in. And these parts of The Princes Portion must at the same time 'possess' or surround The City of Jerusalem. Jesus further explains,

Moreover from the possession of the Levites [or from the border of The Levitical Holy Zone], **and from the possession** [or borders] **of the city, being in the midst of that which is the prince's, between the border of Judah and the border of Benjamin, shall be for the prince** [48:22](#)



Putting these scattered and incomplete descriptions all together, it must be that [The Princes Portion](#) within [The Public Holy Zone](#) is situated in such a way as to leave both [The City of Jerusalem](#) and [The Temple in the midst thereof](#) while the **sanctuary** remains **in the midst** of [The Levitical Holy Zone](#) too. The not-to-scale [Map of the Millennial Oblation Zone](#) on the next page is a possible picture of these somewhat confusing and scattered descriptions of this evidently 47 miles **foursquare** central region of Millennial Israel. Jesus' **throne 43:7** will apparently be in the southern section of the split rectangle in my line

diagram. This would correspond to **the most holy place** from previous temples where The Ark of the Covenant was kept. And this will be near the center of the mile-square Millennial Temple Sanctuary which on this map is inside the area that is simply designated, [The Temple](#). But where the other **thrones** mentioned in [Revelation 20:4](#) will be is debatable. They may be in [The Princes Portion](#) outside [The City of Jerusalem](#), or maybe inside the city, or both. Outside makes sense because it is The Princes Portion. Inside makes sense because mortal Israelites serve those within.

But besides the given variables, could this 'map' of Millennial Israel be close to correct? I think this picture is the best you'll find because there are a lot of precepts in play to support it that seem to all fit well together, except how and where God wants it to be impossible to figure out. But I'm hoping that together we can further improve or correct this picture before it becomes purely academic. I mean with all this information, don't you think The Spirit wants to show **us** even more clearly these **things to come**?

But still we must be ever cautious of the embarrassing little or big 'messes' we can get ourselves into speculating with **prophecy**. A good example of such a 'mess' is speculating (little) or even insisting (big) that **the profane place** is The Dome of The Rock. And I expect that some of my speculations in this **study** may turn out to be embarrassing too as they have been before. But again, this is a part of The Natural Progression of the Knowledge of God. So I tell you again, speaking for God, that He has designed His Word to inevitably mislead you into such 'misadventures' to test your integrity and to make the biggest fools of those who have none. And this shows you one of the best reasons why it's so important to **continue to exercise** in The Word of God. I mean, don't be a fool, because to the extent that you don't **continue you will be**—which will not necessarily prevent your salvation. I mean, complete ignorance of The Word of God along with the foolishness to steal when the known penalty was crucifixion did not prevent 'the thief on the cross' from obtaining his salvation. But may God **teach** you more than this. May He make you to **understand** the difference between **truth** and speculation, because the consequences of **ignorance** and **error** can be much worse than embarrassing. And **if** you are **wise** and **hearken diligently**, and **consider**, and **continue in** The Word of God, you can **know** that **an entrance shall be ministered unto you abundantly into the everlasting kingdom of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ** including possibly getting one of the better **thrones** at The Inauguration of Millennial Rule, and also better accommodations wherever it may be in Millennial Israel and later in New Jerusalem. And do you really think that we'll all get the same accommodations? May **the God of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Father of glory... give unto you the spirit of wisdom and revelation in the knowledge of him Eph 1:17**, because if you enter Heaven without these 'growing gifts' it will be a **shame**. And I have to say again. Paul and Peter **teach** these things to Christians who are already **saved**.

So whatever the size and location of The Princes Portion **between the border of Judah and the border of Benjamin** and next to **the possession of the Levites**, with **the city... in the midst** in central Israel, it's presumably large enough for whoever is going to be living there. And we must keep in mind that God is only showing us a 'Jewish view' of things in Ezekiel's **prophecy**, including how He defines these sections of Israel. But if not in The Princes Portion, where is God hiding all the immortal 'ruling-class' **sons of God**, including The Wife, The 144,000 Jews, and The First Resurrection Martyrs? Surely all these, as well as the mortal Jewish **princes** and their families, will all live **with** Jesus somewhere in 'greater Jerusalem' in The Millennium.

We will confirm in the next section that there is **no temple** nor even any longer any **night** in New Jerusalem after The Millennium. And again, since clearly mortal **Levites** get the job to serve in Jesus' Millennial Temple on Earth, this means that the immortal Tribulation Gentiles raptured in the middle of The Beginning of Sorrows must stay in Heaven to **serve** The Father **day and night in his temple** in Heaven during The Millennium. So that's one less group that needs to be 'squeezed into' Jerusalem down on Earth during The Millennium. Considering the space available it also 'fits' that the immortal Tribulation Jews will stay with The Father in Heaven during The Millennium too. I may even one day be surprised to find out that the Wife

waits in New Jerusalem in Heaven for the duration of The Millennium as well, because I have to admit that it's possible that when it says that the **kings and priests of the churches will reign on the earth**, that this means starting after The Millennium on the New Earth, and that there are exceptions to us always being with Jesus. And after all, remember New Jerusalem will be seen **coming down from God out of heaven, prepared as a bride adorned for her husband** ([Rev 21:2](#)). So as with other exceptions to the rule, I suppose it's possible. In fact it's safe to expect many surprises along these lines. And suchlike considerations become even more likely the more you recognize that there very well may not be enough room for all these immortals to be **with** Jesus on Earth during The Millennium. But since we expect to live in New Jerusalem throughout eternity, we might also expect to live in the about 8 ½ miles **foursquare** City of Jerusalem during The Millennium. And since we will see that there will be outrageously spacious accommodations in New Jerusalem, we can also expect that whoever lives in Millennial Jerusalem shouldn't be 'cramped for space' either. Or can we? .

Given the clues for the space available for the mortal **princes, Levites, and people of the land** of Israel, we can **understand** that Israel will be populated with Jews who will one way or another survive The Great Tribulation to live in Israel. Some of these must be **Levites** who will be the ones to do the temple service. So when Jesus says, **the one shall be taken, and the other left**, we should realize that **left** means 'left on Earth to live in The Millennium'. And when we realize that he's talking directly to Jews, we can be sure that in at least some cases that the **other left** will be a Jew, and in fewer cases, a **Levite**. And given the circumstances of The Days of Vengeance in Israel, and Zechariah's forewarning that most of the Jews will 'die', we might expect that Israel will be sparsely populated by mortals at the start of The Millennium.

Still, this also implies that the surviving Jews will be impossible to kill. And this would go for anyone else on the planet that The Lord has plans for. And I expect that more than a few **miracles** will be involved in the **experience** of each and every survivor of The Great Tribulation. And surely this is not the only way God 'intervenes'. If you **continue** in **scripture**—but especially if you have recognized help from your own 'guardian angel'—then you can see why God takes the credit for the ones **he... did predestinate**. Along these lines Paul says,

And we know that all things work together for good to them that love God, to them who are the called according to his purpose. For whom he did foreknow, he also did predestinate to be conformed to the image of his Son, that he might be the firstborn among many brethren. Moreover whom he did predestinate, them he also called: and whom he called, them he also justified: and whom he justified, them he also glorified... For I am persuaded, that neither death, nor life, nor angels, nor principalities, nor powers, nor things present, nor things to come, Nor height, nor depth, nor any other creature [not even in The Great Tribulation], shall be able to separate us from the love of God, which is in Christ Jesus our

Lord

[Rom 8:28-39](#).

And surely this will be the 'unshakable' **hope** and **testimony** of the **whole house of Israel** who will survive The Great Tribulation and see the **portions** set aside for them in Israel by God. And really this will be the **testimony** of anyone who survives because they will also see the **nations** that are spared for them to live in by God.

Nevertheless, the kind of people God really 'goes to bat' for don't let such ideas 'go to their heads'. This must be part of what Jesus means when He says,

Blessed are the meek: for they shall inherit the earth [Mat 5:5](#).

This is probably the best survival strategy of all for The Great Tribulation. And this is the attitude Paul recommends to the Philippians—the ones with the reputation for really loving God the most—and to everyone else when he says,

...work out your own salvation with fear and trembling. For it is God which worketh in you both to will and to do of his good pleasure [Phil 2:12](#).

Among many other things, I think Paul is saying here that despite what your **experience** may lead you to believe, God gets all the credit for anything **good** in you. However the 'flip side' is that you will be held responsible for 'the bad' without Christ's **sacrifice** for you. Paul also says,

...to every man that is among you, not to think of himself more highly than he ought to think; but to think soberly, according as God hath dealt to every man the measure of faith [Rom 12:3](#).

And surely we will never **experience** God's omniscience the way He does. We **know** that his **thoughts** and **ways** are **higher** than ours, even **as the heavens are higher than the earth** [Isa 55:9](#), and that **there is no searching of his understanding** [Isa 40:28](#). So the best plan is to...

Humble yourselves in the sight of the Lord, and he shall lift you up [James 4:10](#).

And of course **there is no searching** of God's complete **understanding** of even just this one verse. But in context of this **study**, this verse means that you should be always prepared to admit it when you see that your views need improving or correcting, which should happen regularly along the way when you **continue**. And you should **understand** that only in this way will the Lord show you more and more of His Word.

And yes, this may seem to be a no-brainer. But the **dull of hearing** somehow don't get it. And it's my **experience** that 'spiritual maturity' is not really that common in the Church today. More commonly, Christians today by compartmentalization are 'bouncing' from Sunday to Sunday and from one

contradictory and irreconcilable misinterpretation to another like 'beach balls', but all the time thinking that's the way it's supposed to be, and that they're really 'growing in the knowledge of God'. And when they catch glimpses that all this confusion cannot be God's way, as everyone who 'hangs in there' does, they don't usually find the help they need to recognize their **shame**. They are instead encouraged to deceive themselves that there is no such thing for those **cleansed by the blood of Christ**. Sure, Christ's **blood** never fails. But this pervasive 'spiritual immaturity' is real and will just as surely prevent those **ignorant** of this condition from 'entering' Heaven as 'abundantly' as they have been misled to believe.

And maybe you can see that the cure is not so easy. In fact it can be an especially hard **revelation** for 'chronic' **babes**. But at the same time it's simple. **Humble yourselves in the sight of the Lord, and he shall lift you up**. Remember in Ezekiel's **prophecy** how Jesus expects His people to be **ashamed of their iniquities** and **ashamed of all that they have done** before He will **shew them the [entire] form of the house... 43:10-11**. He is apparently expecting them to **understand** from what he first shows them—mostly just the parameters of The Temple Sanctuary—that they are 'way off course', and that they are so far off course that they should be **ashamed**. And apparently they should be able to recognize this just by looking at the parameters of **the house**. Well, in this **study** I've shown you the 'parameters' of **handling** God's Word God's Way. So I'm telling you now for God, you can be **ashamed** now or **ashamed** later. But you must eventually acknowledge that God will not really even begin to 'feed' you any **strong meat** until you first come to the possibly painful **revelation** that up to now, and maybe for way too long, you have been an ignorant **babe** and need to become **weaned from the milk, and drawn from the breasts**, and need to **put away childish things 1Cor 13:11**, and begin **handling** God's Word God's way. I mean don't you **know** by now that any other way is **childish** or worse? And such a **revelation** could be pretty humbling, couldn't it.

But there are a couple of other things God requires of you. The Prophet Micah explains,

He hath shewed thee, O man, what is good; and what doth the LORD require of thee, but to do justly, and to love mercy, and to walk humbly with thy God... Micah 6:8

The interpretations here are endless x 3. But again, just in context of this **study**, and along with **humility**, and along with using exercised **skill** and **integrity** in **handling** and 'practicing' God's Word, He will also **require** that you give others the same 'breaks' you'll inevitably need yourself—though those who would presume to be **teachers** must be judged more harshly (**Mat 23:14, James 3:1**), and except that in **time** we all should be **teachers** **Heb 5:12; 2 Tim 2:24-26**.

And the **temptations** connected to such requirements will be no less for Great Tribulation survivors, at least in some respects, because they will not yet be **changed** or **redeemed** but still mortal. And they apparently must also die trusting Jesus sometime into The Millennium and make The Second Resurrection at the end of their age in order to obtain their **immortality**,

though some of their progeny must have the opportunity to survive till the end and obtain their **immortality** having never died, which we'll talk about more in the next section. But some already immortal Jews and Gentiles must also be with Jesus in Millennial Jerusalem. Again, I presume that The Wife will **appear** on Earth with Him when He 'returns' ([Col 3:4](#); [1 Thes 4:17](#)). And we **know** that The First Resurrection Martyrs will 'live and reign' **with Christ a thousand years** [Rev 20:4-6](#). And we **know** that The 144,000 Jews must **follow the Lamb whithersoever he goeth** [Revelation 14:4](#), including possibly into His **sanctuary** in His Millennial Temple—though, **Of the tribe of Levi were sealed** [just] **twelve thousand** [Rev 7:7](#). But if all The 144,000 can **follow** Jesus into the **gates** of His Temple, the 'Levites-only rule' doesn't apply to them, nor possibly to any of the immortals with Jesus—including The Wife and The First Resurrection Martyrs.

And I'm thinking that The Temple exclusion rules described in Ezekiel's **prophecy** must only apply to mortals, because Jesus can't reveal to Ezekiel the 'comings and goings' of the immortals since so many of them are Gentiles. And because God **hid** these details from Ezekiel it will be difficult to **prove** one way or another. Then again, the 'business' of The Temple seems only to apply to mortals. Still, we **know** that these immortal groups have 'princely' or 'priestly' stations including to **rule** with Jesus as **kings and priests** [Rev 1:6](#), [5:10](#), or to **rule with a rod of iron** [Rev 12:5](#), or to somehow otherwise **reign with him a thousand years** [Rev 20:4-6](#). So you could put the question this way. Just how far does the metaphor go that Paul uses that says that the Church will be **grafted in** with the Jews ([Rom 11:17-32](#))? Do we get **grafted in** to rule from The Public Holy Zone from The Princes Portion or from The City of Jerusalem, or instead from The Levitical Holy Zone? My guess is that some of this immortal 'ruling-class' must rule from The Princes Portion, and others from The City of Jerusalem, and still others from within The Levitical Holy Zone depending on such things as what group they're in, or on how **abundant** their **entrance** into this eternal kingdom is. And remember that 'kosher' mortal Jewish **princes** will live in The Public Holy Zone, even though it will be considered **a profane place** [48:15](#). And The Levitical Holy Zone outside The Temple Sanctuary will be called **the profane place** too [42:20](#). So living in these **profane** zones doesn't necessarily make a Jew 'unkosher'. But Paul also says in his metaphor that the Church is **grafted contrary to nature into a good olive tree**. And that the Jews, **which be the natural branches, be grafted into their own olive tree** [Rom 11:24](#). So maybe we should expect some kind of separation of the **contrary** branches from the **natural** ones though at the same time expect that they will all be included inside the **holy** Oblation Zone. This seems to fit this metaphor for me, but I'll leave further speculation about which immortals live where to further **study**.

And even these deductions include a lot of speculation. So tear them apart if you think you can. That's your job and duty. And it's what I'm always trying to do. But whatever the case, there will surely have to be some major 'trodding upon', 'shaking flat', 'straightening out' and also considerable 'raising up' of the whole land of Israel in order for it to be transformed into a nation of suchlike population and dimensions. And however you see Millennial Israel in Ezekiel's **visions of God of the land of Israel** [40:2](#), it's clear God is trying to obscure the view of the complete picture, because He only shows us what

surviving Jews will **experience** and how the mortal Jewish **princes** will rule, leaving us as a recourse only the 'meatiest' of methods to try to discern what we can of what the Immortals will be doing.

And as deduction is part of these methods, there is more detail about the mortality of **the princes** worth considering. Ezekiel says,

Thus saith the Lord GOD; If the prince give a gift unto any of his sons, the inheritance thereof shall be his sons'; it shall be their possession by inheritance. But if he give a gift of his inheritance to one of his servants, then it shall be his to the year of liberty [every 50 years - [Lev 25:10](#)]; after it shall return to the prince: but his inheritance shall be his sons' for them. Moreover the prince shall not take of the people's inheritance by oppression, to thrust them out of their possession; but he shall give his sons inheritance out of his own possession: that my people be not scattered every man from his possession [46:16-18](#).

So obviously the **sons** of this **prince** are mortal and more or less competing for a limited **possession** throughout The Millennium. And God anticipates that these **princes** will be tempted to want to take land from the tribal portions—implying they may feel either a little squeezed and/or greedy from time to time. And it's only with Age-of-Grace hindsight that we can suppose that God is hiding the fact that there will be immortals contributing to this temptation by living among these mortal Jewish rulers. And we **know** that the maximum available space for the mortal **princes** is less than 369 square miles (450 - 81) because of the area needed to grow all the food for **the city**. Again, this is equivalent to an area of less than 20 square miles. But could all the immortal 'ruling class'—including the whole Church of Jesus Christ—fit in this space along with a growing mortal population? I think not.

Further cramping this perspective is the likelihood that these mortal princes will live a very long time, as we will see. But even if they didn't, couldn't they easily overpopulate this portion by themselves in 1000 years? With a record population growth rate of a little over 2%, the original king and his queen of Israel could be responsible for hundreds of millions or even billions of offspring in 1000 years. Do some math, or you can go to <https://calculator.academy/population-growth-calculator> and play with their population calculator to get a feeling of how population grows. The problem is that many believe that there could be hundreds of millions of people who are going to be redeemed in the Church alone. But with the space available, and even if we're talking about 'squeezing' people in like in a Manhattan skyline, even the entire Public Holy Zone doesn't seem to be enough even for the Church alone. Limiting The Agricultural Zones to depths of ½ mile each or about 18 square miles—which may seem nonsensical because it's to make room for a lot more people—and with a population density as high as Manhattan's (about 1.5 million in those 23 square miles), I estimate you could 'high-rise house' maybe around 28 million in The Public Holy Zone at most [(450 - 18) x (1.5 ÷ 23)]. Is this enough room? Are there going to be elevators? And is it really going to be that crowded? Again, I think not. But even adding this same population density into the entire Levitical Holy Zone 1800 x (1.5 ÷ 23) yields space for only another 117 million and makes room for well less than 150 million altogether—and this must include the expanding population of the mortal Jews. Again, could the greater Jerusalem area in The Millennium become that crowded? And does this even account for the Church?

Before I try to deal further with these questions, I want to say that I'm not going to call this another 'wild goose chase'. Yes, I have run you into what appears to be another 'dead end'. But this is the process of speculation and of 'proving all things' that all 'lovers of truth' must get used to, bend with, change and **grow** with—even eventually get excited about—because you can and should **learn** just as much from a 'dead end' as from a 'breakthrough'. Those experienced with these topics—or who are good at math—may have suspected or known about this problem a ways back. But if you were again caught completely 'off guard', you are still closer to **a babe** and 'milk drinker' and to being **unskilful in the word of righteous**, than to a **strong** 'meat eater' **who by reason of use have their senses exercised to discern both good and evil** [Heb 5:12-14](#). But if you have nonetheless truly begun

to **press toward the mark for the prize of the high calling of God in Christ Jesus** [Phil 3:14](#), none of this bothers you anymore. You've accepted the fact that this is part of what 'pressing' is all about, and you're expecting to keep 'pushing forward' no matter what the resistance. And if this is not you, who are you?

Again, if you have not **known** Jesus long, there is no **shame** in the initial reaction that you never bargained for any of this. But if you have **known** him a long time, and **when for the time ye ought to be** [among the] **teachers** and **strong** 'meat eaters', you are still **unskilful** and a 'milk drinker', then this is a **shame** with **eternal** consequences, though hopefully not **damnable** ones. And there surely will be **greater** consequences for the **unskilful** who profess to be **teachers** when they should not, and more likely **damnable** ones. Jesus not only tells us that there will be both **the least** and the **great in the kingdom of Heaven** [Matthew 5:19](#), He also says that there will be **greater damnation** [Mat 23:14](#)—again yes, that there must be 'deeper and hotter spots' you can end up in in The Lake of Fire as a result of **greater sin** [John 19:11](#)—especially for 'teachers' who lead His people astray. But Paul also speaks of **a better resurrection** [Heb 11:32](#). And logically—if you did that concordance search for **crown** rewards—you should suspect that in addition to the **crown of glory** that Peter says faithful teaching and pastoring **elders** will get ([1 Pet 5:4](#)), that there must also be the possibility of 'station demotion' to 'lower positions' in Heaven, including the **shame** of 'chronic mishandling' or **ignorance** of God's Word. I mean does the **shame** Paul speaks of that accompanies **ignorance** of God's Word 'vanish' when **we... shall be caught up together... to meet the Lord in the air**? One more time, I think not. Just as the rewards within each station will be self evident and belong only to those who have earned them, so will the **shame** will be eternally and conspicuously self evident, especially for those who do nothing more than accept Jesus' **sacrifice** for their **sins**—I mean assuming they really do and don't **fall away** altogether ([Heb 6:6](#)). So the consequences of **ignorance** or 'improper' **use** of God's Word are extremely serious whether you are ultimately redeemed or not. And it's an easy way to wind up in the 'hottest places' in The Lake of Fire. But even if you somehow **work out your salvation** in spite of it, it's an easy way to become among **the least in the kingdom of Heaven**. This must be why the Apostle James counsels his relatively 'immature audience', saying,

...be not many masters [apostles, pastors, or teachers] knowing that we shall receive the greater condemnation [James 3:1](#).

Considering the 'higher consequences', this is good advice, especially to **babes**.

But notice also that when James says, **we shall receive the greater condemnation**, that he must be referring mostly to 'church leaders' like himself. But the word **masters** that James uses here is translated **teachers** in a dozen other places in the KJV. So I apply this verse to anyone who would presume to teach The Word of God. Tragically however, some misuse this verse as an excuse from having to **learn** God's Word at all. But remember that Peter says to **newborn babes** to **desire the sincere milk of the word, that ye may grow thereby** [1Pet 2:2](#). And Paul says to **babes** who have been Christians for a while that they **ought to be teachers** [Heb 5:11-14](#). In **time** all Christians should become...

...apt to teach... In meekness instructing those that oppose themselves; if God peradventure will give them repentance to the acknowledging of the truth [2Tim 2:24-26](#).

And that goes for all Christians who want to be **great in the kingdom of heaven** and have an 'abundant entrance' into that kingdom. Of course not everyone will become **teachers** or even receive much teaching. This fact is settled by Jesus when He tells us that some will be considered **the least in the kingdom of heaven**. And surely this is one way to eternally separate **the least** from the **great**. And this is one way to separate those with lesser or **greater damnation** in The Lake of Fire. Remember I told you it's a 'sliding scale'. If you don't **strive** and **press** 'upscale', you'll naturally be **falling** or **backsliding** 'downscale'. And I guess you **understand** by now that I'm with Paul when he says we should continually **exercise** with suchlike **precepts**, and with Peter who adds,

Moreover I will endeavour that ye may be able... to have these things always in remembrance [2Pe 1:13-15](#) (see also [2Pet 3:1-2](#)).

So have I 'endeavored' enough yet? You must **know** that for some—and maybe for you—this may still not be enough.

Another thing all 'lovers' of **the truth** should keep in mind is that though this **study** is 'frozen' in time, you should see by the presentation how any conclusion we have come to can be improved and/or corrected endlessly. And unavoidably, I too am growing in The Word of God throughout this **study** in the process of writing it. Certainly no one should expect to write such a **study** without the help of **the Spirit of truth**, nor expect to stop growing in **understanding** whenever influenced by The One whose job it is to **guide you into all truth**. Again, growing is never-ending and is sometimes quite a 'wild ride'. This is what I have been trying to show you. In fact, until you are accustomed to these kinds of speculative 'roller coaster rides', you are not yet close to being **exercised to discern both good and evil** but are instead closer to **a babe** who plainly is not. And again, this is another clue as to why Peter says that we should **both grow in grace, and in the knowledge of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ** [2 Pet 3:18](#), ([2 Pet 1:2-3, 8](#)).

And finally, in case you're still getting confused by thinking that I'm talking about **salvation**, I'm really not. I'm talking about much more, about those **things that** [should] **accompany salvation**. And to you who have made it this far through this **study**, as Paul says in Hebrews,

...beloved, we are persuaded better things of you, and things that accompany salvation, though we thus speak [that you are dull of hearing and still have need of milk]. For God is not unrighteous to forget your work and labour of love, which ye have shewed toward his name... And we desire that every one of you do shew the same diligence to the full assurance of hope unto the end: That ye be not slothful, but followers of them who through faith and patience inherit the promises [Heb 6:9-12](#).

Yes, he is telling them that they shouldn't be **dull of hearing**, nor continually be in **need of milk**, nor **slothful** in doing **good works** as so many are. But beyond this, his **desire** for them is that by **diligence** and **faith and patience** they find **the full assurance of hope** that comes when they **inherit the promises** of The Word of God. Remember David says,

The law of the LORD is perfect, converting the soul: the testimony of the LORD is sure, making wise the simple [Psalms 19:7](#).

So absolutely anyone who will **continue** can become **wise** by God's standards. And Paul's not hiding the fact that it's a lot of **work and labour**. It absolutely is—like you have anything better to do.

And now back to the question, can we all fit in The Oblation Zone? I don't know. And I don't see how. But let's speculate a bit more to 'get the ball rolling' for future exercises on this topic. First, who will deny that the actual number of those **saved** and **redeemed** up to this point will be disappointing? No matter how many are **saved**, everyone will be disappointed about the ones they know who aren't—especially the ones we are surprised that aren't. And I think we are going to **experience** way too many 'big surprises' along these lines. The **truth** is, according to Jesus, that...

...broad is the way, that leadeth to destruction, and many there be which go in thereat: Because strait is the gate, and narrow is the way, which leadeth unto life, and few there be that find it [Mat 7:13](#).

And I didn't lay down this benchmark. Jesus did. So you should take the number of 'reported Christians' and start by dividing it by 4 according to Jesus' **parable of the sower** [Mat 13:18-30](#). And you should consider that any reported number is not likely to be anywhere near the true number of those who have been...

...enlightened, and have tasted of the heavenly gift, and were made partakers of the Holy Ghost, And have tasted the good word of God, and the powers of the world to come... [Heb 6:4-5](#).

And if you read a verse or two further in this passage you'll see that even all these indicators of salvation are no guarantee either. And I'm not really judging anyone; I'm not The Judge. I'm just saying we're bound to be disappointed with the numbers. And I'm saying that God is completely hiding The Wife's place in Jesus' Millennial Kingdom in His **visions** for Ezekiel about it, meaning either that we are not really there or there cannot be nearly as many of us as we might otherwise like to think. In Millennial Israel, besides the **portions** for the 11 tribes and the Gentiles dwelling among them, there will only be about 47 miles **foursquare** in 'greater Jerusalem' for everyone else to live in. And if we're living there we're 'sharing' it with a growing population of mortals. And I don't expect any 'high-rises with elevators'.

On the other hand, do you remember when it was going around that the entire population of the World—it was about 5 billion at the time—could fit within the city limits of Albuquerque, New Mexico—about 62 miles **foursquare**—with each person given a five-foot square? Of course I'm guessing we'll get more than a five foot square each to live on. And there are **galleries round about on their three stories** in The Millennial Temple building, so maybe we are talking about building up somewhat. And God certainly has no problem with building them high as we'll see with New Jerusalem in the next section.

But again a lot of this is speculation, and I expect we're missing enough pieces to this puzzle to keep us from coming to any firm conclusions at least yet. But indisputably, though there appears to be a space problem, especially over 1000 years, we can be sure that in reality we'll all 'squeeze in' somehow, which leads me to one more speculation. The Levites never had a portion of their own before this time. Why now in The Millennium? And **strangers** will be dwelling among the other 11 tribes in their **portions**, so why couldn't certain unmentioned 'strangers' dwell among **the Levites** too? We will be a **royal priesthood** after all. And what better place for royal, immortal **priests** to live in The Millennium than in a priests' Holy Zone. And this now gives us a plausible rationale for immortals living in each portion of The Oblation Zone. And the constrained space is reason enough why immortals will live in all of them. But will Gentile immortals be considered **profane** or **unclean**? I don't **know**, but it's obvious we will have to be respectful of the Jewish practices going on all around us. And evidently the Levites will **know** because it will be their job to teach everyone else on this subject. But so far I think you would have to 'go way too far out on a limb' to be dogmatic about these configurations and designations one way or the other.

And speaking of 'going out on a limb', have I got a 'fish story' for you. And if you still have doubts that these **visions of God of the land of Israel** recorded by Ezekiel are about The Millennium, I should tell you about all **the trees** that will be along **the river** coming out of Jesus' **house** described in [Ezekiel 47](#). Now we're not talking about the **river of water of life** and **the tree of life** in New Jerusalem yet, but it's the same idea because it is a 'river of life' of sorts. Remember it will come from **under** the **forefront** of The Temple and flow **east**. Specifically,

...the waters came down from under from the right side of the house [looking at it from the east side?], [and] **at the south side of the altar** [of sacrifice] [Verse 1](#).

And if you were to go out the 'outer north gate' and turn right it would take you to where you could see it flowing out of The Temple **eastward** through the **right side** or the north side of the 'outer east gate' ([Verse 2](#)). Up to this point the **waters** are very shallow, **ankle** deep, and it can be walked across because Ezekiel walks in it. I suppose the north-south traffic within the outward sanctuary on Sabbaths, New Moons, and feast days will be able to cross it too. But over the next 2,000 **cubits** or 4,000 feet—evidently still well within The Levitical Holy Zone—it gradually becomes a swimmable **river** and then too wide for Ezekiel to cross ([Verses 3-5](#)). On **the bank of the river** is said to be **very many trees** on both sides ([Verse 7](#)). And in [Verse 8](#) we are told that these waters will **go down into the desert, and go into the sea** in a process whereby all **the waters shall be healed** worldwide.

And **the river** will provide **fish** for the **fishers** thereof in such abundance as has never been seen before...

...and there shall be a very great multitude of fish, because these waters shall come thither: for they shall be healed; and every thing shall live whither the river cometh... as the fish of the great sea, exceeding many [Verses 9-10](#).

And part of this apparently ongoing 'salt water purification process' seems to be indicated in [Verse 11](#). And there will be **trees** on either side of **the river** that produce **fruit** to eat, and so much of it that it can never all be harvested because **the trees** produce **fruit** 'monthly'. And **the leaves of the trees** on either side along **the river** shall be for **medicine** [Verse 12](#). And this indicates that people will evidently continue, however less frequently, to get sick and injured.

And this implies that Jerusalem is the high ground at this time. And this fits when we remember that God's **visions** for Ezekiel begin **in the land of Israel** on **a very high mountain** [40:2](#). This must be God's millennial **holy mountain** repeatedly referred to in Isaiah's **prophecies**, and such descriptions provide a reason why the **waters** that spring from The Temple run downhill to the east. But ultimately the **waters** from **the river** must **go down into the desert, and go into the** [Red] **sea** along the eastern **border** of Israel. And I'm guessing at this point that it doesn't flow northward too—other than to pool northward to some extent—but that the rest of the northern part of the eastern border is defined by **Jordan** which feeds southward into what becomes **the east sea** [Verse 18](#), probably a larger but considerably longer version of the Dead Sea, and possibly even merging with the present Sea of Galilee, and maybe even with Lake Hula further north. See again the [Map of Israel's Current Topography](#) and I think you'll be able to generally see how this is all going to flow, minus the coming major 'modifications' of course.



Note: Gaza Strip not presently in Israeli control, sort of; map [p.506](#).

And remember we naturally presume that most of this renovation occurs at The Final Great Earthquake in The 7th Plague Judgment and also when Jesus returns and 'touches down' **upon the mount of Olives**—evidently **in like manner** as when He ascended ([Acts 1:11](#)), except upon return 'splitting' the mountain with a valley running **toward the east and toward the west** ([Zec 14:4](#)). And apparently after this He makes his trip around The Lord's Triangle—to **Armageddon**, then **Bozrah**, then back home with the Jews to **Jerusalem**.

And the Prophet Zechariah offers more pieces to the puzzle of Millennial Israel in Chapter 14. He confirms that by an...

...earthquake [[Verse 5](#)] **...the land shall be turned as a plain from Geba to Rimmon south of Jerusalem: and it** [Jerusalem] **shall be lifted up** [to be a very high mountain]... [Verse 10](#)

He also says in [Verse 5](#) that **the LORD** will come with **all the saints with** Him, presumably to **fight against** participants from **all nations** and totally **consume** them in **Jerusalem** and at **Armageddon** and elsewhere. But since Isaiah tells us that Jesus will have **trodden the winepress alone** [Isa 63:1-5](#), I'm guessing we won't help Him at **Armageddon** but apparently elsewhere.

Zechariah also says,

...in that day... living waters shall go out from Jerusalem; half of them toward the former sea, and half of them toward the hinder sea: in summer and in winter shall it be... [when] the LORD shall be king over all the earth [Zec 14:8-9](#).

Yep, this changes the picture again. Remember that Ezekiel only sees **waters** flowing **eastward** from the Lord's **house**. So since Ezekiel has no reason to hide the existence of a river flowing west of The Temple, it seems to me that these millennial **rivers** [47:9](#) divide both north and south along the eastern border of Israel implying that the **Jordan** will change direction and that there will also be a way for **the waters** to reach The Mediterranean Sea along the northeastern and northern borders of Millennial Israel. It also further implies that **the east sea** could incorporate the Sea of Galilee. And all this further implies Jerusalem will be significantly **lifted up**. Major renovation, huh? Still, with the Mediterranean Sea, the Red Sea, and the East Sea—which may or may not absorb the Dead Sea and the Sea of Galilee—all being possible candidates for these **former** and **hinder** seas, and with all the renovation that has to go on, it's hard to say for sure where all these **waters** will be going. But it makes sense that somehow getting these 'healing waters' into both the Red and Mediterranean Seas would facilitate the purifying of the waters of the World much faster. Look at a World Map if you need to, and don't forget there's no hurry for the Pacific Ocean.

And of course this is another example of how perspective is corrected and improved as you **grow**. And this is not to say that you have never seen this **prophecy** of Zechariah's before. But that compartmentalizing as usual, or just being 'under-exercised', you forgot and were understandably easily misdirected by someone who sounded like he knew what He was talking about. Again, this is how God tests us on a regular basis. He wants to show you whether or not you have the integrity to **grow** with the changes when He finally connects the 'compartments' for you. Of course from our **experience** it most often seems like we had to do most of the **work** ourselves.

On top of all this I am aware of a few more problems with this perspective of Millennial Israel, some of which we won't get to in this **study**. But this is the way it should be. New **understanding** always brings new questions. And it's kind of humbling, isn't it? In fact I'll say it again, humbling yourself before God is part of The Natural Progression of Growth in the Knowledge of The Word of God. And in this process it's not only Jerusalem that **'shall be lifted up'**. Remember that James says, **Humble yourselves in the sight of the Lord, and he shall lift you up** too [James 4:10](#). And maybe you can now see that He 'requires' no less of a 'major renovation' of you. May this **very high** level of **Grace and peace be multiplied unto you through the**

knowledge of God, and of Jesus our Lord ([Eze 40:1-2](#); [2 Pet 1:1](#)).

And now that at least some of you are thoroughly 'shaken'—in a good way, I hope— I can't help asking at least a few more questions about this perspective of the layout of Millennial Israel to keep you going. Some of the questions are raised from Ezekiel's very first perspective from this **very high mountain**. What does he first see? Is that a skyline he is talking about? What **frame of a city** could this be? And where is it in relation to him? And does this change things again? And what? Are you ever going to be ready to answer questions like these for yourself?—I mean with The Spirit's help, of course.

And it's time to admit one of my compartmentalizations that I overlooked in my first **experience** with these measurements. Most Bible notations on the subject tell you that a **cubit** is 18 inches and therefore that **one reed**, which is **six cubits long by the cubit and an hand breadth** [40:5](#), is about 10 feet. But maybe you noticed that I have instead used a length of 24 inches for a **cubit** in my calculations so far. This is based on the calculations of the father of all modern 'math wizzes', Sir Isaac Newton. And his calculations were published in a **study** of his written in Latin, (***De magnitudine cubiti sacri***). An English translation of this essay is titled, ***A Dissertation Upon the Sacred Cubit of the Jews and the Cubit of Several Nations: in which, from the Dimensions of the Greatest Pyramid, as taken by Mr. John Greaves, the ancient Cubit of Memphis is determined.*** This was published in the ***Miscellaneous Works of John Greaves, Professor of Astronomy in the University of Oxford***, (London, 1737, pages 405-433). And yeah, this is a really long title, but there are no better authorities on the subject in my opinion. So a **cubit** is most likely closer to two feet—not 18 inches. The problem is that when it comes to the **cubits** that make up a **reed** I mistakenly stayed with the 18 inch ones. Oops. I accepted the shorter conversion for a **reed** that I found in modern translations even though I knew about Newton's **study**—proving to myself again that everyone compartmentalizes sometimes. And by-the-way, Sir Isaac determined a cubit to be closer to 25 inches—between 24.90 and 25.02 inches to be exact. Two feet was just an easier figure for me to 'ballpark' with. But this makes a 'Temple' **reed** about 12 feet 9 inches—which includes the 3 inch **hand breadth** ($6 \times 25 + 3 = 153$ inches or 12 feet 9 inches). And this is over 25% longer than a 10-foot **reed**. And remember that this increase is multiplied in areas.

So this is where those of you who are still up to speed will, I hope, figuratively 'throw up your arms and scream'. Or literally if you want to. I mean I said this would be a 'wide ride' and that you should enjoy it. But this is also where you should realize that it shouldn't be a completely 'free ride' either. You'll now have to recalculate, reassess, and reevaluate all the conclusions and speculations that we made in respect to the size of Millennial Israel so far—including the maps—if you want a truer view of the real picture. Of course you can just ballpark the figures now knowing that the distances are over 25% longer and that there will be as a result almost 40% **(audio**

error) more floor space available. But hopefully you will sort through it yourself rather than wait for someone else to do it for you. I mean how else can you check the **work** if you don't do it. And if you're not really interested in doing the **work**, I guess this is all you really need to **know** anyway.

And maybe I still have some errors somewhere in my math. This reminds me of one of the two failed NASA missions to Mars in 1999. A major 'math blunder' was made on a probe they sent to gather climate data while orbiting Mars. The error was in the satellite's software. Some of the 'math-wiz scientists' used the English system of measurement while others working on the project used the Metric system. The result was that the probe crashed on Mars. Oops (*The New York Times, SCIENCE, Chastened, NASA Readies New Mars Craft*, April 3, 2001). And what I am saying is that you've eventually got to **learn** to check all the figures for yourself.

And again, I hope that this gives you a much better appreciation of what it means to **grow in grace, and in the knowledge of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ**. You can really never expect to be done with the **work**. And you should get to the point where you don't always expect someone else to do it all for you.

Moving on to **the solemn feasts** during The Millennium, we find it specifically mentioned that **...In the first month** [of each year]... Jesus ordains the continuing of the feasts of **the passover** and of **unleavened bread** [45:21](#). And, **In the seventh month**, the continuing of the other **feast of the seven days** [45:25](#) which I assume is The Feasts of Atonement and Tabernacles involving **the sin offering, burnt offering, meat offering**, etc. Also mentioned are **firstfruits** offerings that appropriately follow Passover and The Feast of Unleavened Bread in the first month, but are evidently appropriate throughout the year too. And apparently there are also ongoing **trespass offerings, drink offerings, and every oblation of all, of every sort...** [44:30](#). And I would guess that specific mention of The Feast of Weeks and Trumpets are not given in these **visions** because Jesus is speaking of specific requirements of offerings, and these feasts involve **a tribute of a freewill offering** and any kind of an **offering made by fire unto the LORD**, respectively ([Deut 16:10](#); [Lev 23:24-25](#)). So I don't think they are omitted from the schedule; they just involve unspecified offerings. But maybe Israelites will be allowed to skip the **freewill** Feast of Weeks and therefore need come to Israel only twice a year. Not that this will work to their advantage.

Referring to proselytes God says,

Also the sons of the stranger, that join themselves to the LORD, to serve him, and to love the name of the LORD, to be his servants, every one that keepeth the sabbath from polluting it, and taketh hold of my covenant [including **circumcision**]; **Even them will I bring to my holy mountain, and make them joyful in my house of prayer: their burnt offerings and their sacrifices shall be accepted upon mine altar; for mine house shall be called an house of prayer for all people** [Isa 56:6-7](#).

And this indicates that proselytes will be accepted *in* Jesus' **house**, and also may suggest that mortal **uncircumcised** Gentile **strangers** the World over will go at least into the **outward sanctuary** of Jesus' **house** in order to pray. But these verses also cast doubt as to whether **offerings** from the **uncircumcised** will be **accepted**, and may also imply that only Gentile proselytes from all nations will be allowed inside The Temple Sanctuary, and that all other Gentiles will not be, putting their place of worship possibly outside the outer **east gate** along either side of **the river**.

In the last verse of Ezekiel's **visions** we **learn** that Millennial Jerusalem will go by another name. Jesus says, **the name of the city from that day shall be, The LORD is there** or **Yěhovah Shamah** [48:35](#). And The Millennium is the first time it will be appropriate to call God's **house... an house of prayer for all people**. Of course this probably has something to do with the fact that He's no longer a 'bachelor' but 'married'. So whether **uncircumcised** Gentile **strangers** will be able to participate in **offerings** and **sacrifices** on **the solemn feasts** or not, there should nonetheless be a worldwide lifestyle of worship of **the LORD** centered in Jerusalem in The Millennium. Jesus says,

...it shall come to pass, that from one new moon to another, and from one sabbath to another, shall all flesh come to worship before me [Isa 66:23](#).

But again, most don't likely come to **Yěhovah Shamah** every week, just 'occasionally'.

More specifically, in Ezekiel's **prophecy** Jesus gives **instruction** for Israelites as to the continuing of **six working days** and then **worship... in the sabbaths and in the new moons**, etc. And in Jerusalem,

...in the feasts, and in the new moons, and in the Sabbaths, in all solemnities of the house of Israel: he the [mortal] prince shall prepare the sin offering, and the meat offering, and the burnt offering, and the peace offerings, to make reconciliation for the house of Israel ([44:29](#) to the end of [Chapter 46](#)).

Again, inhabitants of **the nations** will be required to come to Jerusalem only once a year to The Feast of Tabernacles ([Zech 14:16](#)), though supposedly they are welcome to come as often as they like. And as in The Law, I'm assuming that Israelites will be required to travel to Jerusalem, **Three times in a year** [Deut 16:16](#), for all **the solemn feasts**, and that they can meet weekly in local synagogues for **worship... in the sabbaths** otherwise. Certainly weekly round trips of hundreds of miles seem impossible without airplanes and even with convenient waterways. And this could be an argument for the return of some kind of 'modern technology' at least in terms of transportation.

However, though Jerusalem in The Millennial Age must be near half again bigger than we originally calculated, we don't seem to be talking about anything like 'The Jetsons'. All the clues seem to point to a pretty 'low-tech' lifestyle. Zechariah supports this conclusion that there will not be a big 'technological rebound' in The Millennium at the end of Chapter 14, telling us,

***In that day shall there be upon the bells of the horses,
HOLINESS UNTO THE LORD [Zec 14:20-21](#).***

So transportation may indeed remain fairly basic, including mostly only by animal and wind power, and be time-consuming, however well 'ornamented'. And it will be OK if there are no paved roads because the World should generally be shaken flat for the most part anyway. Evidently God's ***holy mountain or mountains*** in the center of Jerusalem will be the only ones in the World left to speak of ([Isa 40:4](#); [Rev 16:20](#)).

Also both [Isaiah 2:4](#) and [Micah 4:3](#) tell us that,

...the nations... shall beat their swords into plowshares, and their spears into pruninghooks: nation shall not lift up sword against nation, neither shall they learn war any more.

And apparently a lot of ***swords*** and ***spears*** from The Great Tribulation will be left lying around before it's all over, making The Millennial Age a 'heyday' for blacksmiths. This is another indication that the people of The Millennium will evidently be 'getting back in touch with the land', and with handcraftsmanship—not rediscovering modern technology. And this should in no wise be considered an inferior lifestyle even compared to the standards in today's modern World. And I'm guessing that it's not so much the 'good' from modern technology that will be missed, but the appreciation of a healthier and simpler life that will be cherished.

But there must still be ***the cursed... ground*** to deal with. ***Thorn... and thistles*** will still plague the Earth in The Millennium and 'work by the sweat of the brow' and difficult childbirth will still remain unavoidable parts of mortal existence ([Genesis 3:17](#)). We will confirm that the end of ***the curse*** comes at the end of The Millennium in the next section. However there will be some improvements in The Millennium too. There will be changes that cause improved overall health and well being of people in general.

One is that animal meat for food must be easier to get, and that animals will no longer be the danger that they can be now. We have all heard that The Millennium is a time when 'the lion shall lay down with the lamb'. While this is not a precise quote of ***scripture***, it is correct in concept. In Isaiah 11-12 ***the prophet*** relays a layered and intermittent account of The Millennium. And in the later part of Chapter 11, God tells a story of how He will a...

...second time... recover the remnant of his people... and gather together the dispersed of Judah from the four corners of the earth. [Isa 11:11-12](#).

This regression on how God will return The Jews to ***Israel*** is surrounded by a fantastic tale of what the natural state of affairs will be like sometime after they arrive back. Isaiah tells us that...

...with righteousness... [Jesus] shall smite the earth with the rod of his mouth, and with the breath of his lips shall he slay the wicked... [Isa 11:4](#)

Then he says,

The wolf also shall dwell with the lamb, and the leopard shall lie down with the kid; and the calf and the young lion and the fatling together; and a little child shall lead them. And the cow and the bear shall feed; their young ones shall lie down together: and the lion shall eat straw like the ox. And the sucking child shall play on the hole of the asp [or "cobra"], and the weaned child shall put his hand on the cockatrice' [or "viper's"] den [Isa 11:6-8](#).

And this is really no more amazing than the natural state of affairs that used to exist before The Flood. Then also there was no...

...fear of you and the dread of you... upon every beast of the earth, and upon every fowl of the air, upon all that moveth upon the earth, and upon all the fishes of the sea... [because it's after The Flood that] into your hand are they delivered. Every moving thing that liveth shall be meat for you; even as the green herb have I given you all things [for eating] [Gen 9:2-3](#).

So this is how things changed after The Flood, but also how things will change back in The Millennium. The difference is that before The Flood God does not give man animals for food. But we **know** that in The Millennium **the Levites** will eat meat. So meat eating must be common in The Millennium. And remember The Millennium begins with Age of Grace and Great Tribulation survivors that are used to eating meat long before The Millennium starts. And sorry vegetarians, this cannot be considered in any way generally unhealthy or cruel, because this is clearly God's design and plan.

We also **know** that there will be an unlimited supply of fruit from the millennial 'river of life' alone. And the **fishers** won't be catching all those **fish**, and **exceeding many** of them at that, just to mount on their walls, will they? And we **know** there will be an Agricultural Zone in The Oblation Zone to feed the city, likely producing an abundant supply of fruits and vegetables, but also livestock too, some of which we **know** will be offered in The Temple **sacrifices** and eaten by **the Levites**.

And these animal **sacrifices** must still be appropriate because they will be sacrificing live animals to acknowledge real **sin**. This is another way we **know** that there are will be unredeemed mortals left in The Millennium. But again, I am not implying this is a required price for sin. We **know** Jesus **paid** that. Nor do I think that the act of communion in this age will be, in and of itself, sufficient to save anyone. I instead expect they will do their **sacrifices** for the same reason we Gentiles now take communion—because the Lord tells them to and because they **know** it gives them the right kind of help to properly consider and maintain their eternal souls. And surely these souls are much more valuable than the **many** animals that are sacrificed to help remind them. I mean, since these mortals are not yet redeemed, it will be appropriate for them to make **sacrifices** and **offerings** for their ongoing **sin** until they die and/or are finally redeemed. But I don't expect that the already

redeemed immortals **with Christ** will need to be making any such sacrifices and offerings because they, **like him** [1John 3:2](#), will no longer have a sin nature.

And meat in moderation can't be that bad for you because it appears that unusually long lifespans will return too and presumably ones as long as Pre-Flood standards, but certainly much longer than today's. In Isaiah 65, **the prophet** tells a story explaining that the Jews are dispersed because they are **a rebellious people**. But he also tells us of the future time when God forgets his anger, when He says,

...because the former troubles are forgotten, and because they are hid from mine eyes [Isa 65:16](#).

In this time God says,

There shall be no more thence an infant of days, nor an old man that hath not filled his days: for the child shall die an hundred years old; but the sinner being an hundred years old shall be accursed. And they shall build houses, and inhabit them; and they shall plant vineyards, and eat the fruit of them. They shall not build, and another inhabit; they shall not plant, and another eat: for as the days of a tree are the days of my people, and mine elect shall long enjoy the work of their hands. They shall not labour in vain, nor bring forth for trouble; for they are the seed of the blessed of the LORD, and their offspring with them [Isa 65:20-23](#).

So though childbirth must remain difficult, God seems to be saying here that infant mortality will become almost unheard of, and so will be premature death. And I **believe** God is telling us in these verses that anyone who dies only an hundred years old will be considered to have died young, and that anyone who does not reach an hundred will be considered cursed—possibly damned—but that this will be quite uncommon. So **an hundred years old** will no longer be considered 'old'. And I'm thinking 'hundreds of years' will be a normal lifespan again as it was before The Flood. This is certainly consistent with God's summation, **...the days** [or lifespan] **of a tree are the days of my people, and mine elect shall long enjoy the work of their hands**. Trees live hundreds of years and in The Millennium evidently so will people in general.

But we should not miss noticing that though rare, there will be some **sinners** who aren't as likely to live so long. Jesus will be ruling with **a rod of iron**, so I'm guessing that the enforcement of the death penalty will be the same as indicated in The Law. And it's kind of ridiculous to wonder if Jesus would kill unrepentant **sinners**, because it would be correct to say that His mission on Earth in The Great Tribulation is to **destroy the sinners thereof out of it** [Isa 13:9-13](#). Talk about a 'death penalty'. And **rule... with a rod of iron** in The Millennium must mean that He won't have much tolerance for unrepentant **sinners** in this **age** either.

Isaiah also reconfirms the 'zoological changes' that will occur in this somehow newly 'renovated' World, saying,

The wolf and the lamb shall feed together, and the lion shall eat straw like the bullock: and dust shall be the serpent's meat. They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain, saith the LORD [Isa 65:25](#).

We'll talk more about how and why all these seemingly fantastic changes could 'naturally' happen in [The Ages of Creation study](#).

Another big difference during The Millennium is that we **know** that **Satan**, his **princes**, and all the other 'bad angels' will be 'out of the picture'. In [Daniel 7:12](#), **the prophet** sees in his **vision** the fate of **the rest of the beasts**. In context, this is the fate of **the beasts** other than **the horn** or the Antichrist from the previous verse. Calling them **beasts** here is along the same lines as calling Satan **the dragon**. These **beasts** must be Satan's **princes** that control his 'world-ruling' kingdoms. And Daniel sees,

...concerning the rest of the beasts, [that] they had their dominion taken away: yet their lives were prolonged for a season and time.

Now **the beast and the false prophet** go straight to what is identified as **the second death** which is **the lake of fire** [Rev 20:14](#), but these **beasts** do not go to their deaths because their **lives** are **prolonged**. But they no longer have any authority as **the rulers of the darkness of this world** because they have **their dominion taken away**. This must mean that they are in **the bottomless pit** with **Satan** too, and will be let out with him at the end of The Millennium **for a season and time**. We already saw this in [Isaiah 24:21-22](#). Speaking of The Millennium, **the prophet** says,

And it shall come to pass in that day, that the LORD shall punish the host of the high ones that are on high, and the kings of the earth upon the earth. And they shall be gathered together, as prisoners are gathered in the pit, and shall be shut up in the prison, and after many days shall they be visited.

Of course, we're talking here about **prisoners** in **the lower parts of the earth** that **shall... be visited** and **loosed** out of their **prison**, some with a brief opportunity to 'wreak more havoc', but all to ultimately receive their final eternal judgment of **death**. Still, we'll apparently all be a lot better off without their influence in the World throughout most of The Millennium.

But I don't think we should necessarily assume, with **Satan** and **the host of his high ones** incarcerated in **the bottomless pit** during The Millennium, that God will remove all 'demonic influence' during The Millennium. I mean there could still be "demons" to trouble us. And they may still be around until the end of The Millennium. I can say that these "demons" know that they have a specific **time** when they will go down to their **torment** in the Earth, and that they know specifically when that **time** will be. We **know** this because of an encounter Jesus has with a 'bunch' of these **devils** who are 'possessing' two men. In their panic at being confronted by Jesus, the "demons" ask Him,

What have we to do with thee, Jesus, thou Son of God? art thou come hither to torment us before the time? [Mat 8:29](#).

My best guess is that ***the time*** will not be until the end of the physical World at the end of The Millennium because they should be able to exist on Earth until then, however difficultly, and even without human hosts when they have to. And they will surely have another tough 'transition', like during The Flood, in The Great Tribulation. But these ***devils*** could survive and be 'on the loose' in The Millennium to tempt and corrupt inhabitants of the Earth. It may even be that a ***legion*** of them, on rare occasions, will manage to possess a person every once in a while, though surely there will also be ***saints*** available and ready to ***cast out*** any number of them as needed. And overall they must be a lot less dangerous than they are now because there will no longer be widespread ***ignorance*** of their ways. And we will try to counter some more of this widespread ***ignorance*** in [The Ages of Creation study](#).

So this new World may take some getting used to, but there will be plenty of time for that. People will necessarily be happier and healthier, moving a little slower, and will no longer be harassed by ***the rulers of the darkness of this world*** because they will all be ***shut up in the prison*** in the Earth. But the general benefits in this ***age*** go beyond the absence of certain 'evil adversaries', 'better health and lifestyle', and the removal of some other 'dangerous influences'. Yes, more than all this, we ***know*** that...

...the earth shall be full of the knowledge of the LORD, as the waters cover the sea [Isa 11:9](#); [Hab 2:14](#).

The point is that ***ignorance*** wastes and destroys but ***knowledge*** builds and grows. And on top of that the World will ***experience*** the most powerful level of deterrence against ***sin*** ever. So crime will evidently be mostly unheard of too. There will be a strong ***peace*** and ***prosperity*** supported by the 'overflowing' ***knowledge of the LORD*** and by the deterrence of crime and violence by 'supernatural enforcement'. And this enforcement will involve the best kind of 'thought police'. If you commit a crime, there will ultimately be no hiding it from Jesus or his administrators of ***justice***, because, as Isaiah also reveals,

...the spirit of the LORD shall rest upon him, the spirit of wisdom and understanding, the spirit of counsel and might, the spirit of knowledge and of the fear of the LORD; And shall make him of quick understanding in the fear of the LORD: and he shall not judge after the sight of his eyes, neither reprove after the hearing of his ears: But with righteousness shall he judge the poor, and reprove with equity for the meek of the earth: and he shall smite the earth with the rod of his mouth, and with the breath of his lips shall he slay the wicked. And righteousness shall be the girdle of his loins, and faithfulness the girdle of his reins [or "loins"] [Isaiah 11:2-5](#).

Remember how Ananias and Sapphira in [Acts 5](#) 'dropped dead' when they lied to Peter just about how much they gave to the Church?—it's probably going to be kind of like that. Honesty, integrity, and goodness will triumph through ***the fear of the Lord***. And there will be little confusion about what is right and wrong because, again, ***the earth shall be full of the knowledge of the LORD, as the waters cover the sea*** ([Isa 11:9](#); also [Hab 2:14](#)). This is what it will be like to live in Christ's Kingdom on Earth. And it appears that about the only thing that stands in the way from making this millennial dispensation an eternal age is man's remaining ***sin*** nature. Mankind will certainly not be able to blame it on Satan and his angels anymore. And they won't be able to blame it on oppression, poverty, or other assaults on humanity now common to mankind. But they say all good things must come to an end. And because of man's ***sin*** nature, this must remain true even in Christ's Millennial Kingdom until that nature is gone for good.

The Last Rebellion

In Verse 3 of Revelation 20, we are happy to **learn** that **Satan** and the **principalities... and powers** he was 'overlord' to will be chained in **the bottomless pit** for **the thousand years**. But we must be proportionally disheartened to also **learn** that **...after that he must be loosed a little season**. The account of this 'mass parole and recapture' at the end of The Millennium is in [Verses 7-10](#). John records,

And when the thousand years are expired, Satan shall be loosed out of his prison, And shall go out to deceive the nations which are in the four quarters of the earth, Gog and Magog, to gather them together to battle: the number of whom is as the sand of the sea. And they went up on the breadth of the earth, and compassed the camp of the saints about, and the beloved city: and fire came down from God out of heaven, and devoured them. And the devil that deceived them was cast into the lake of fire and brimstone, where the beast and the false prophet are, and shall be tormented day and night for ever and ever.

We must not underestimate the relentlessness of the **sin** nature of man. After **the thousand years** of Jesus' **rule... with a rod of iron**, Satan and his cohorts, with the renewed support of that ever ungodly kingdom of **Gog and Magog**, will not so much mount an attack with any hope of victory, but they will somehow successfully **deceive** the **number of whom is as the sand of the sea** to believe that such an attack could succeed against The **KING OF KINGS, AND LORD OF LORDS**. Talk about temporary mass insanity. Following The Millennial Age where throughout this dispensation **the earth shall be full of the knowledge of the LORD, as the waters cover the sea**, somehow Satan will successfully enlist an innumerable force of rebels—probably again the vast majority of the people on Earth—against the crowned Conqueror of the World. So again we must be talking about **the working of Satan with all power and signs and lying wonders**. But as before, this can only succeed because of the **deceivableness of unrighteousness in them that perish; because they received not the love of the truth, that they might be saved**. And it doesn't seem possible that this could even ever happen again unless, **for this cause** [of 'truth-hating'] **God shall send them strong delusion, that they should believe a lie: That they all might be damned who believed not the truth, but had pleasure in unrighteousness** [2Thes 2:9-12](#). So I am expecting some degree of 'unraveling' of Christ's Millennial Kingdom at the end of it. Or think of it as a final purge of the **evil** within it.

And all this will transpire despite one more major deterrent to **sin** and rebellion on display throughout The Millennium that everyone should regularly see. And what could be a better disincentive to **sin** than an open view of The Pit of Hell? Popular legend holds that this pit will open up in East Jerusalem, in The Valley of Hinnom. But there are some better reasons for believing this than legend. Repeatedly in Matthew's Gospel, and once in Luke's, Jesus uses

an unusual Greek word that is translated **hell**. James uses it once too in this way. It's the Greek word **geenna** (Strong's G1067) originally meaning the Valley of Hinnom. Its Hebrew equivalent is found a dozen or more times in the Old Testament referring to this literal valley directly southeast of Jerusalem and reported to be in view of the southeast gate of the city. Referring to the literal **valley of Hinnom** or **the valley of the son of Hinnom** as **hell** (Strong's H1516 and H2011) was common in Jesus' day probably because the site was used for dumping trash and dead bodies and was known as a place of much bloodshed. But Jesus' references to this place as **hell** are more than just metaphors. And it's the Prophet Isaiah that makes this clear. At the end of his **prophecies** he says that in The Millennium, whenever anyone comes to **worship** in Jerusalem, and everyone must come at least once a year, they will also **go forth, and look upon** all the **worm-eaten, fire-tortured carcasses** already **in hell** that they will evidently be able to see in a deep pit not too far from the southeast gate of Millennial Jerusalem. Isaiah tells us that God says,

And it shall come to pass, that from one new moon to another, and from one sabbath to another, shall all flesh come to worship before me, saith the LORD. And they shall go forth, and look upon the carcasses of the men that have transgressed against me: for their worm shall not die, neither shall their fire be quenched; and they shall be an abhorring unto all flesh [Isa 66:23-24](#).

My rough estimate of the placement of [The Pit of Hell / The Valley of Hinnom](#) is in the new inset map of [The Public Holy Zone](#) (p.516). It's the same layout as



the old one. It just adds the location of this horrifying spectacle near the southeast corner of [The City & Suburbs of Jerusalem](#). You could call

it an open 'fire and brimstone' sermon by object lesson—or 'The Sermon in the Pit' for short. The problem is we **know** that even this still won't be enough to stop The Last Rebellion in The Millennium. So I can only hope that in the meantime that all of you 'save-by-mercy' types will **learn** to tolerate us 'save-by-fire' types, (see [Jude 1:22-23](#)), because according to God construction of Millennial Israel such a 'fire and brimstone' message should explicitly and graphically be a 'central' one. This is a message God thinks we evidently need in no uncertain terms on a fairly regular basis for our own good. Because evidently the more regularly you will be able to get to Jerusalem to see it the better. And seeing it only once a year for the vast majority—say for as many **as the sand of the sea**—is demonstratively not nearly enough exposure to the message to save them from this very real **eternal damnation** that they will have nonetheless witnessed for themselves many, many times.

And however temporary this Millennium-ending 'mass insanity' will be, the consequences will be **eternal**. Just after John shows us that **the devil that deceived them was cast into the lake of fire and brimstone, where**

the beast and the false prophet are, he next shows us who is going to join them. John sees...

...a great white throne, and him that sat on it, from whose face the earth and the heaven fled away; and there was found no place for them [Rev 20:11](#).

One of the events that identify The Final Great White Throne Judgment is the 'dematerialization' of **the earth and the heaven**. John simply tells us that they just 'disappear' in the best terms he can, saying they **fled away; and there was found no place for them**. This must be the point Jesus is referring to when he says, **heaven and earth shall pass away**, and it must be at the end of The Millennium.

Next John sees,

...the dead, small and great, stand before God; and the books were opened: and another book was opened, which is the book of life: and the dead were judged out of those things which were written in the books, according to their works... [And the bodies of the damned rise to judgment when] **the sea gave up the dead which were in it; and death** [or **the grave** does too] **and** [also the spirits from **hell** rise to join their bodies when] **hell delivered up the dead which were in them: and they** [these reunited bodies and spirits] **were judged every man according to their works. And death and hell** [or these reunited bodies and spirits] **were cast into the lake of fire. This is the second death. And whosoever was not found written in the book of life was cast into the lake of fire.**

Sometime before this event, probably late in The Millennium, all the **offspring** that are to be born into The Millennium will have finished emptying out **the lowest parts of the earth** where **unperfect** human beings wait to be born ([Isa 65:23](#); [Psa 139:15-16](#)). And at the end of The Millennium, all the remaining occupied 'spiritual holding tanks' in the Earth must be emptied out so that their occupants can be **judged every man** [and angel and spiritual creature] **according to their works** and **cast into the lake of fire**. This will also leave the whole surface of the Earth, both **the sea** and **the grave**, empty of any physical remains of mankind. And this is the event that I call The Rapture of the Damned to The Final Great White Throne Judgment.

But what about those who 'die in the Lord' in The Millennium? However safe and healthful this Millennial Kingdom is, humans are prone to accidents. And many must eventually die after they have **filled** their **days... as the days of a tree**, and after they **long enjoy the work of their hands** [Isa 65:20-22](#). And that 'deceived multitude' **as the sand of the sea** must also be responsible for the death of some believers who remain innocent by Christ's blood. So I expect that all these **dead in Christ** will wait in Paradise to be redeemed at the same time. And whenever exactly that is, whether at the end of this Earth or at the beginning of the New Earth, their rapture and redemption is the one I call The Second Resurrection. And there is

scripture that substantiates that this event, along with The Rapture of the Damned, both take place together at the end of The Millennium or the beginning of The Eternal Age, both of which we'll talk about more next section.

So as usual we 'climb another stair step' only to find another. But my **hope** is that in the 'climbing' you've already **learned** much about how to **handle** The Word of God the way He expects you to. And also, I **hope** that you **understand** that this is only the beginning of this eternal **experience**. Welcome to eternity. But I have to warn you again that it will be a **shame** if you wait till The Millennium to begin embracing this neverending challenge. And you'll just kick yourself when you find out what you've been missing. But maybe one more perspective can spur some of you still on the fence into **diligent** action. That would be a brief look at eternity, which will be our next and last adventure in this **study**.

SECTION 12 The Coming Postmillennial Rapture of The Harvest at the End of the World,
 (The Second Resurrection and The Rapture of the Damned),
 and The Eternal Age of Peace

CHART of the Raptures and Stations of the Immortals	
Rapture	Station
The Pre-Church and the Church	<i>kings and priests</i> and the <i>wife</i> of Jesus forever
The Tribulation Gentiles	<i>servants</i> of God in the Temple in Heaven in The Millennium and in <i>new Jerusalem</i> in The Eternal Age
The 144,000 Jews	<i>virgins, firstfruits</i> and entourage of Jesus forever
The Two Witnesses	<i>two witnesses</i> and <i>two candlesticks</i> before God forever
The Tribulation Jews	<i>victory over the beast</i> Jews in Heaven in The Millennium and on <i>mount Zion</i> on the <i>new earth</i> in The Eternal Age
The Final Harvest	?
The First Resurrection	<i>beheaded for the witness of Jesus</i> millennial rulers and rulers in <i>new Jerusalem</i> in The Eternal Age
The Second Resurrection	The Eternal Age <i>nation</i> dwellers and the <i>new Jerusalem</i> city dwellers

CHART of 7 Distinguishing Features of The Harvest at the End of the World							
X = Certain X = Uncertain BLANK = Certainly Not							
Raptures	From Grave	From Earth	Jews	Gentiles	To Earth	To Heaven	Saved
End of World Harvest	X	X	X	X	X	X	X

CHART of 7 Distinguishing Features of The Second Resurrection							
X = Certain X = Uncertain BLANK = Certainly Not							
Raptures	From Grave	From Earth	Jews	Gentiles	To Earth	To Heaven	Saved
2 nd Resurrection	X	X	X	X	X	X	X

CHART of The End of the World Harvest in End Times Events			
Sets of Events	The Church Age of Grace	The Great Tribulation	The Millennium
Position			End of World Harvest
After			

CHART of 7 Distinguishing Features of The Rapture of the Damned							
X = Certain X = Uncertain BLANK = Certainly Not							
Raptures	From Grave	From Earth	Jews	Gentiles	To Earth	To Heaven	Saved
The Damned	X		X	X		X	

This is another part of this **study** where the organization is more arbitrary. And I'm talking about the way I identify and categorize the raptures among other things. But it's also another place where I have little other help than to just do it my way. But I'm not taking the credit because it's not really my doing. It's really God's. And part of what I mean is that He's the one who portrays the last rapture at the end of The Millennium as just one rapture, which I call The Harvest at the End of the World, and also as two raptures, which I call The Second Resurrection and The Rapture of the Damned. Clearly the participants go to two different places and 'fates'. But apparently the transformation happens simultaneously making the rapture really just one event (charts, [p.518](#)). We'll get to more of the specifics of this 'rapture' in this section.

Neither The Great Tribulation nor The Millennial Age is hidden from the Old or New Testament **prophets**. But that doesn't mean all the information about these **ages** is out in plain sight. I mean there are innumerable **precepts** throughout The Bible about these dispensations of God— innumerable because no matter how many are found, those who **continue** will keep finding others. And there are at least a few reasons why you can't find them all. We have seen how God has purposefully scattered the **precepts** on any topic everywhere throughout His Word to keep true **wisdom** and **knowledge** from the 'worldly-wise'. And we ourselves will continue to overlook some of them by compartmentalization, which can cause some really big 'messes' when you're not checking your **work** regularly enough. But we really only begin to get a peek at the innumerable **precepts** still to be found when we **understand** the nature of **strong meat** in The Natural Progression of The Word of God. Because, as time allows, **precepts** can be combined into unlimited and growing combinations revealing countless new ones. And these kind of **precepts** are invisible to those who don't **work** to find them. They are the '**strong meat**' type of **revelations** from God that can only be found by persistently combining **precept upon precept** from both **here a little, and there a little**. So I'm saying I'm sure I haven't found them all yet, and that you shouldn't **believe** anyone who acts as if they have. And we have seen again and again how some make embarrassing mistakes precisely because they proceed as if they've got all the pieces. And the same humility and integrity that it takes to come to these **revelations** will be required in examining God's final **dispensation** which I call The Eternal Age of Peace. However on the surface, the **prophets and apostles** seem to offer less information about this age than some of the others, even though there is no contest that it will be the longest. But we've already begun to 'dig beneath the surface' about what this distant future holds for those who will participate in it. See my revised and improved [CHART of the Raptures and Stations of the Immortals](#) on the previous page ([p.518](#)) for a general look at the different roles different groups will serve in eternity.

And notice the name for the first rapture is changed. And I mean it's about time we acknowledged the ones participating in this rapture by a more proper name. It's not just for the Church in The Age of Grace. It's also for God's **accepted**—both Jews and Gentiles—from the **other ages** before The

Age of Grace too ([Act 10](#); [Eph 3](#)). And I mean calling it just The Rapture of the Church is misleading. And too many think it's just for those who live in The Age of Grace. So from now on I'm calling it The Rapture of the Pre-Church and the Church. Yeah, it's kind of an awkward name. But this will serve the purpose of getting it the appropriate attention it deserves—given the misconceptions that commonly go along with this rapture's more popular names. I mean I want people to ask, 'who is the Pre-Church?'

And notice again the 'graphic uncertainty' of the station of those raptured in The Final Harvest. Can their station or stations be further identified? Maybe. But again, my **experience** tells me I should never expect to see the pretribulation day when I will be confident enough to say that all the references to any age, rapture, or station are identified. Another good reason for this is that **prophecy** should not be anyone's only focus of **study**, because no matter how deep you go, this is too narrow a focus and it will lead to errors. I mean those who are 'diligent', 'skilled', 'exercised', and 'wise' in their **study** and who 'endeavor' to 'properly handle' and 'correctly understand' **scripture** should consider all topics in context of the whole Word of God. But not to worry. God intended that we would not even get our first look at 'fully opened prophecy' until **the time of the end** anyway. And since this is His intention, there is no question in my mind that He will **accomplish** it ([Isa 55:11](#)) by choosing those of us who will take that first look, and **run** with it ([1Co 9:24-27](#); [Gal 2:2](#); [5:7](#); [Phl 2:16-18](#)).

From the perspective of stations, it's now clear to me that God will forever maintain the distinction between Jews and Gentiles that he started with Abraham. And yes, I **know** that Jeremiah records—in Chapters 30-31—that when there is no more Sun, Moon, and Stars, there will no more be a nation of Israel. But this must be because the eternal dwelling place of Jews will be **the holy city, new Jerusalem** [Rev 21:1-3](#) that no longer includes a surrounding nation of Israel. And this will be because New Jerusalem will more than suffice as we will see. And we can see that Jews will always be distinct most obviously because their patriarchs will forever be inscribed over the gates of New Jerusalem. But surely 'temple sacrifices' will cease because evidently 'sinless immortals' won't need to make such sacrifices—not to mention the fact that there will be no temple in New Jerusalem to make them in. We will see that God and Jesus Themselves will be the 'new temple' and the direct focuses of worship. And since God has distinguished all these different raptured groups, many of them being distinctly Jewish, I'm expecting that they will remain distinct in their groups serving God in their different capacities appropriate to their stations forever. Maybe we won't commonly call ourselves Jews or Gentiles anymore, but we will nonetheless all remain distinguishable as groups, though nevermore divided in purpose, at least generally speaking.

The most detailed description of what The Eternal Age will be like is given by John in Revelation 21 and 22. We'll get to that before we're done. But the longest **prophecy** in The Bible, in The Book of Isaiah, introduced in Chapter 39 and running the next 27 chapters to the end of the book, provides a lot of background for The Eternal Age, including some descriptions of it, and even several necessarily obscure hints as to the participation of **Gentiles** in this unfolding eternal drama. Some say that Isaiah is a little Bible in itself. OK. But I'm not comfortable limiting myself to this perspective. The fact that

he is an earlier **prophet** leaves more future time to deal with than the 'average prophet', and he also covers more detail than the 'average prophet', but his message really starts from the point in time when he ministers. And he, like other **prophets**, can only offer 'prophetic accounts' of events that will occur from his time on—the typical and persistent 'layering', 'scrambling', and 'lensing' of details notwithstanding—all of which just leaves us with a lot more 'sorting' and 'stacking' to do than with your 'average prophet'. Also, I see this mega **prophecy** as mostly Isaiah and Jesus dialoging about what Jesus, His Father, and **the Spirit of the LORD** have planned for the last ages of Creation and beyond. And some of this information comes through dialogue with the personified land of Israel, repeatedly referred to as **Zion**. But it's easy to get confused as to who is speaking and who is being spoken to. Again, the speakers include Isaiah, Jesus, The Father, and Zion. But I must admit I'm not always sure who is speaking and who is the intended receiver, though this is a key to being able to more fully **understand** the **prophecy**. And this is how some misinterpret it.

And what I mean by 'lensing' we've talked about repeatedly before. It's the perspective, as in God's or human. And as is common in **scripture**, it's mostly God's transcendent perspective that is **revealed** in this longest of **prophecies**. And God is not so much focusing on Earth's entire history, but really on just the last '3 to 4 days' of His entire '7 day plan', or in human terms, on the last 3,000 to 4,000 years of His 7,000-year plan. So you'll get lost in this **prophecy** if you try to see it just in human perspective, because, again, God speaks of things happening over thousands of years as if they are happening over just a few days. And He even covers rather well the '2 days' in the middle these '4 days', The Age of Grace, since Jesus is the focus of that **dispensation**. However these **days** are mostly 'masked' in a Jewish perspective.

By-the-way, I'll 'argue out' this entire '7 days' is equal to '7,000 years' chronology further in [The Ages of Creation study](#). For now you need to be aware that Isaiah's **prophecy** naturally covers only about half of God's plan, though I should also acknowledge that he does give some testimony here and there of some of God's former glorious works including The Creation, The Flood, and The Crossing of The Red Sea. But I see the mentioning of these occasional and brief 'history lessons' as predominantly for the purpose of encouraging us to accept and believe in faith what God reveals about the future. And we've 'poked around' some in this **prophecy** already, but there are good reasons to undertake a selected survey of the whole thing.

The main reason is that we want the whole context for Isaiah's 'predictions' about The Eternal Age found in this **prophecy**, and we will get the context for references to other topics we have covered too. And the primary context is this. Isaiah's 'pronouncements' for God in this last of his **prophecies** appears to be a response to the plea of **Hezekiah king of Judah** [Isa 38-39](#). He is the second to last 'God-approved' **king of Judah** from the split-off, two-tribed Kingdom of Judah to live and die before these two of the twelve tribes are taken into captivity into **Babylon**. The ten-tribed **kingdom of Israel** has already been 'carried' **captive to Assyria** at this time ([2 Kings 15:29](#)). And this is during the period of the Assyrian Empire's 'World rule', though by then they are demonstratively in decline. The two-tribed Kingdom of Judah escapes Assyrian captivity during Hezekiah's rule, obviously

due to his faithfulness to God. But Assyria shortly thereafter, already gloriously 'whipped' by God, falls to Cyaxares the Mede and Nebopolazzar of Babylon (in about 612 BC) before Cyaxares dies leaving Nebopolazzar and then his son, **Nebuchadnezzar**, in control and finally ready to do his 'round-ups' of the remainder of the Jews and of all their possessions in the lifetime of **Daniel the prophet**. Reread [SECTION 7](#) if you didn't connect all that. Anyway, I suppose Hezekiah's plea to be in response to Isaiah's 'bad news' of the coming Babylonian captivity, and/or in response to Hezekiah's **sickness** [\[audio error\]](#). In response to the 'bad news', I see Hezekiah asking for some 'good news' to go along with the 'bad', for some **comfort** for his people ([Isa 40:1-2](#)). And Isaiah is prepared to offer plenty—27 chapters worth. And though the Jews 'at this time' are already divided into two kingdoms, one of which is already in captivity, Jews today can discern that the **good tidings** Isaiah brings is for both the kingdoms of **Judah** and **Israel**. And we will also be able to see that there is 'good news' in his message for **Gentiles** too. With hindsight from The Age of Grace and the foresight of **the Spirit of truth** that promises to show us **things to come**, including all the methods of **study** and **exercise** we have **learned** and 'used' so far, we can see that these **good tidings** are for Jews and Gentiles the World over. And with a better picture of all these 'comforting' **good tidings** we will be better prepared to **understand** the 'crowning' **comfort** offered by God through Isaiah in this **prophecy**, which is the coming Eternal Age of **peace**.

In [Chapter 39](#), Isaiah seems to provoke the plea by King Hezekiah by offering the 'bad news' about the Babylonian captivity coming in the fairly immediate future. But I guess it's really Hezekiah that causes this 'bad news'. The Babylonian 'provincial prince' under the Assyrian empire's **Sennacherib king of Assyria**, is **Merodachbaladan**, where 'Merodach' mean 'Mars'. And there are earthshaking and 185,000 other reasons why the head of the Babylonian province should, at this time, be named after 'Mars', and if you really can't guess why, an explanation will be found in [The Ages of Creation study](#). This Merodach-Baladan pays King Hezekiah a visit in Jerusalem apparently to do reconnaissance for a future invasion of Israel under the guise of his concern for Hezekiah's health. And Hezekiah falls for it, showing Merodach everything. This provokes the 'bad news' from Isaiah that Babylon will ultimately succeed in a plan to take The Kingdom of Judah captive and haul off all its riches. In the book of Daniel we **learn** that in the process of this successful raid and overthrow of The Kingdom of Judah, **Nebuchadnezzar** will **bring** [for **eunuchs**] **certain of the children of Israel, and of the king's seed, and of the princes... of the children of** [the tribe of] **Judah**, [including in Hezekiah's line,] [Daniel Dan 1:3-6](#). Isaiah promises in advance that this will occur, saying,

...the days come, that all that is in thine [Hezekiah's] house, and that which thy fathers have laid up in store until this day, shall be carried to Babylon: nothing shall be left, saith the LORD. And of thy sons that shall issue from thee, which thou shalt beget, shall they take away; and they shall be eunuchs in the palace of the king of Babylon [Isa 39:6-7](#).

But starting in the next chapter, and all the way to the end of the book, the **tidings** get generally much **better**.

Isaiah's final **prophecy** of 27 chapters starting in [Chapter 40](#) covers future events starting from the then 'soon to occur' Babylonian captivity of both **Judah** and **Israel** all the way to descriptions of the beginning of The Eternal Age of Peace. Typical Biblical 'layering' and 'backtracking' are in abundance in this **prophecy** which recycle and repeatedly refine many topics and themes, which are also found elsewhere all over The Bible. We must **understand**, though, that this particularly generous 'batch of news' is meant to give God's people **comfort**. And we're going to sample some of these comforting topics and themes that are carried throughout this **prophecy** so we can better appreciate the high point of them all. And I'm not implying that any of this is in any kind of a correct order, or free of numerous and lengthy digressions.

One dominant theme that Isaiah continually reemphasizes throughout the **prophecy** is that of God's **greatness** and **glory**, that He can **hear, know**, and **do all** His **pleasure** whether **good** or **evil**, and that nothing is out of his reach or earshot ([45:7](#), [54:16](#), [46:10](#), [59:1](#), [66:18](#)). He cannot be made to 'faint' or become **weary**, and **there is no searching of his understanding** [40:28](#). He created all things, including **the earth** and **man** and **the heavens** which He says He 'commands' ([42:5](#), [45:12,18](#))—evidently in part to bring great judgments on the World and in part to bring deliverance to His people. And He can **accomplish** and **prosper** in anything He sets His mind to do ([55:11](#)). And He will control His power to easily and absolutely annihilate only everything necessary for His people's sake ([54:9](#), [57:16](#), [65:8](#)), though **the slain of the LORD shall be many** [66:16](#). And we can't touch Him in any respect because His **ways** and **thoughts** are so much **higher** than ours, even **as the heavens are higher than the earth** [55:9](#), and there is **none else**, and **none beside**, and **none like** Him ([45:5-22](#), [46:9](#)). And again in this **prophecy**, as is His custom, He is telling us some of what He is going to do in advance so we'll have no excuse but to give Him the credit instead of giving it to 'false gods' when **all** is fulfilled ([46:10](#), [48:3-5](#)). And all this is most comforting because He is **faithful** and **righteous** and full of **mercy** and **lovingkindness** for His people ([49:7](#), [53:11](#), [49:10-13](#), [54:8-10](#)), and even to the **wicked... and the unrighteous man...** [if they will] **return unto the LORD** [55:7](#).

On the other hand there are the recurring warnings to the **wicked** who will not **return unto the LORD**. God calls them **obstinate** [48:4](#). They are also hedonistic, lazy, greedy, ignorant, and drunkards ([47:8](#), [56:10-12](#)). And they are vain, phony, selfish, violent, and rebellious ([48:22](#), [57:20-21](#), [59:7-8](#), [65:2](#)). And worst of all, they are '**evildoers**' and 'rejecters' of the **truth** ([59:4-15](#)). These types tend to be led by **vanity** to trust in **gods** that take the form of **molten** and **graven images** or **idols** that **see not, nor know** anything, so that those who **worshippeth** them **may be ashamed** ([42:17](#), [45:16](#), [44:9-20](#)). But **ashamed** is not the half of it. God promises to **punish** these **wicked**. He is the reason they **perish** and suffer **desolation, and destruction, and the famine, and the sword**, and they **shall all bow down to the slaughter** ([41:11-12](#), [59:7](#), [65:12](#)).

But all these must be the worst of the lot, because there is another

repetitive theme that runs throughout this **prophecy** implying that we're all guilty. Isaiah reveals that,

All we like sheep have gone astray; we have turned every one to his own way 53:6... [And that] we are all as an unclean thing, and all our righteousnesses are as filthy rags; and we all do fade as a leaf; and our iniquities, like the wind, have taken us away. And there is none that calleth upon thy name, that stirreth up himself to take hold of thee 64:6-7.

But God assures us that there is a limit to His anger with His people, and not to his 'mercy' or 'forgiveness'. And this must be why God is repeatedly found to be taking all the credit for 'gathering' and 'delivering' and 'saving' and 'preserving' and 'restoring' and 'redeeming' His people (43:25, 56:8, 45:17, 46:13, 49:6-8, 54:7-8). The only justification in the end for Him **saving** his people is that He does it for His **own sake** and **glory** (43:25, 48:11). He will glorify Himself in this way by His **holy people**, and by His **holy city, Jerusalem**, and by His **holy temple** or **house** (43:7, 45:25, 65:18, 62:1, 66:10-21, 56:7, 60:7). He says that His **arm brought salvation** because no one else could (59:16, 63:5). Of course this **arm** metaphorically is or belongs to Jesus.

And there are also very many other obvious references to Jesus throughout the **prophecy**, including about His first and second comings. However most of these awesomely comforting references, if not already touched on so far or unavoidable further on, are already well **known**, so I'll leave further review of these references to you. And as for the **comfort** for God's people—mixed with other emotions—that comes from the **destruction** of the **wicked** that will not **return** to God, I think we all **understand** what that's all about, so we'll leave that behind for now too.

And though most of this **comfort** in this **prophecy** is specifically directed at **Jacob and Israel**, there is also occasional mention of how all this applies to **Gentiles**. These clues are supposed to be invisible from an 'Old Testament perspective', but we can now see that they were just 'unnoticed' back then. And evidently this 'oversight' was a **work of God**. I mean God sends **strong delusion** right? He must also make it easy enough to ignore the clues that are right in your face if He wants to. And surely God can also hide things lots of other ways. But now we are unhampered by any kind of God's **strong delusion**. Now by The Spirit of Truth the 'hiding techniques' that God has used in the past can be exposed as they have been throughout this **study**. And we can **interpret** all **prophecy** fully because it's no longer **closed up and sealed till the time of the end**. And it will be possible now to see how much of this **prophecy** applies to Gentiles as well as to Jews. The most obvious clues are specific references to **Gentiles** themselves. This particular largest division of mankind is directly mentioned by name 14 times in Isaiah's **prophecy**. And the **prophecies** about them, like The Jews, involve The Church Age of Grace, The Great Tribulation, The Millennial Age of the Kingdom of Christ, and The Eternal Age of Peace. See again the **TIMELINE of The Ages of Creation** (on **page 464** or **22**) for a review of these timeframes.

And actually there are a couple of references to Gentile **salvation** that aren't well hidden at all. God states directly that Jesus will be, specifically,

...a light of the Gentiles; To open the blind eyes, to bring out the prisoners from the prison, and them that sit in darkness out of the prison house [42:6-7](#).

And again about Jesus God says,

I will also give thee for a light to the Gentiles, that thou mayest be my salvation unto the end of the earth [49:6](#).

I mean I used to think that we take The Spirit in The Age of Grace for granted because of how plain these verses are. But we should also **understand** that this is a way to see part of what God meant when he said that He **hid** it. Certainly it's not so much well hidden as lost in the continual assurances of salvation for the Jews. But again, we **know** when God sends **strong delusion** that people will believe **lies**. And we must also **understand** that when He says something's **hid in God** that no one will be able to see it even if it is in plain sight. But now we can clearly see that Jesus is this **light** beginning in The Age of Grace and continuing throughout The Great Tribulation and The Millennial Age wherein Gentiles of all **ages** are saved by Him.

But it does seem that **Jacob and Israel** will end up with the eternal 'upper hand' over **the Gentiles** from Isaiah's perspective. It's **the Gentiles** that are summoned and must come to Jerusalem to serve and support, to pay respect and tribute, and to submit to and work for the Jews. And they and their **children** will do so gladly. Even Gentile **kings** and **queens** will serve the Jews, and **bow down** to them, and will go so far as to **lick up the dust of** [their] **feet** [49:22-23](#). Jews will **inherit the Gentiles**, and Gentile **kings** will **bring** to the Jews **the forces** [or "wealth"] **of the Gentiles** ([54:3](#); [60:5,11](#)), or metaphorically, the Jews will **suck the milk of the Gentiles, and shalt suck the breast of** [Gentile] **kings** [60:16](#).

Further, Jews will have the authority. They...

...shall be named the Priests of the LORD: men shall call you [the Jews] the Ministers of our God: ye shall eat the riches of the Gentiles, and in their glory shall ye boast yourselves [61:6](#).

In other words, all that the **Gentiles** will have will really be owned by the Jews. And this makes sense with what we saw of Millennial Israel in the last section. And Isaiah's **report** is clear that the **nations** made up of **Gentiles** in The Millennial Age and The Eternal Age will be subordinate to the Jews in Israel as well as in New Jerusalem. This is true. But this must really be only a picture of the **Gentiles** who will survive The Age of Grace unsaved, and miraculously enough, also survive The Great Tribulation too, who also produce **offspring**, and who ultimately live under 'Jewish rule' on Earth in Jesus' eternal kingdom starting at the beginning of The Millennium.

But what about all the groups that escape The Great Tribulation by death and/or rapture? We already **know** that Isaiah cannot see where the raptured Gentiles end up, but can only at best be enlightened as to where all the Jews end up, seeing them necessarily as ruling over any surviving Gentiles. But

with **diligence** we can distinguish the different groups of both the Jewish and Gentile redeemed 'ruling-class' that must be **hidden** from Isaiah, because The Holy Spirit now promises in this **age** to show us **thing to come**. And all that is left for us to do is to **believe** that we can finally sort them out in Isaiah's **prophecy**.

But actually, I also **hope** that this is the juncture where all of us get passed our tendency of seeing ourselves as God's main focus. Or maybe you're already convinced that The Final Harvest participants are part of the Bride of Christ? I guess I can't prove it either way. But the only way I can make sense of a myriad of 'apparent contradictions' is to realize that such inconsistencies are based on an 'immature', 'self-centered' perspective. It's the one I was taught when I was still a **babe**—by **babes**. And we **babes** can be cute and lovable and all, but it eventually occurred to me that it takes a rather arrogant and self-centered Gentile to dismiss—or just plain miss—the idea that the main purpose of The Final Harvest Rapture at the end of the 70th Week is to redeem the Jews, and that Isaiah's **prophecy** makes clear that God's original and more openly planned **bride** of Christ is the Jews. Of course everyone seems to be aware that Jews are guilty of the same kind of 'self-centeredness'. They tend to think they will be 'the only ones' too. But they have the better reason because most of the Old Testament proclamations of God's plans of redemption are plainly for them. And The Great Tribulation—The 70th Week of God's plan **prophesied** by Daniel—is specifically intended for them...

...to finish the transgression, and to make an end of sins, and to make reconciliation for iniquity, and to bring in everlasting righteousness, and to seal up the vision and prophecy, and to anoint the most Holy [Dan 9:24](#).

This is God's plan for the Jews, and for **the holy city**, Jerusalem.

So the real question should be how we Gentiles happen to 'fit into' God's plan for them. Or rephrased with Paul's metaphor, how is it that we will somehow be **grafted in** as **branches** to their **root** and **tree**, which is Jesus? And it's not like Paul doesn't make this abundantly clear in [Romans 11](#). But **babes** naturally miss that they aren't the 'center of attention'. And they easily compartmentalize and forget that The Great Tribulation is mainly the completion of the plan of salvation for the Jews. And they wouldn't put it together that the Church—and the Pre-Church—are going to have to wait until God is finished with His plan for **his people** the Jews before we all get 'married' to Jesus. And remember that most Jews who are **gathered** back to Israel according to God's plan don't even recognize their Messiah until about halfway through The Great Tribulation. So it's time to grow up. And by that I mean that it's time for you to see that God's original, 'never-hidden' plan to redeem His **bride** is for the Jews, and that this is 'finished' at the end of His 70 week plan for them, and just in time for the 'wedding' in Heaven that was apparently also originally planned for them too. Praise God He later reveals that Gentiles can also participate in this wedding. And in this way Jews and Gentiles become of the same **tree**, and of the same **bride**, finally all brought together at The Marriage of The Lamb to be **his wife**.

And for those of you who have just come to this **revelation**, don't think of

it as another 'wild goose chase'. It's more just another example of what you must be prepared for and what it sometimes feels like to 'grow-up' in The Word of God. Much like Isaiah, I am not only aiming to **comfort** you, but also to **teach** you how it feels to begin to be **conformed** to God's Word. So I left some **revelations** about The Final Harvest to be discovered now, much like the way it originally occurred to me, so that you too could **experience** a transforming **revelation** in its 'natural habitat'—along the way. You have to get used to the fact that your ideas will and must change in order for you to **grow**. This is what this **study** is all about. That, and **continuing to exercise** in what you think you **know** to be **true** so that you can see that it holds up as **the truth** in every growing 'rearrangement' of **precepts**, and by **'many infallible proofs'** [Acts 1:3](#).

And otherwise, to encourage you to regularly be...

Casting down imaginations, and every high thing that exalteth itself against the knowledge of God, and bringing into captivity every thought to the obedience of Christ [2 Cor 10:5](#).

Because,

...that which beareth thorns and brier is rejected, and is nigh unto cursing; whose end is to be burned [Heb 6:8](#).

And in context of this **study**, erroneous **imaginings** are anywhere from embarrassing to deadly. Speculations are at best worth further speculation but only if they continue to stand up in the never-ending quest to, **Prove all things** and **hold fast that which is good** [1Thes 5:21](#), and only if you 'reject' **every high thing** else. Again, any **thing** purporting to be a **doctrine** or a **teaching and preaching** of **the word of the Lord** that you cannot continually and unfailingly **prove** should be **rejected** as speculation at best to avoid future **shame** or worse. But anything you think you have 'proven' should be part of your continual **exercise** to further establish **the truth** of it, and improve your **understanding** of it. And **the Spirit of truth** will help you with this beyond all human ability.

So here's where we begin to expose some more of God's better 'hiding techniques'. And I mean hiding techniques like 'riddles', 'puzzles', and 'mazes' wherein God hides the 'meatier' **truth** in His Word. And to uncover some of this 'veiled' **truth**, we can start by looking at the 'ruling-class' Jews that are not hidden. In doing so we can expose the comparable 'ruling-class' Gentiles. And I mean from a 'New Testament perspective' we will be able to read into this **prophecy** that **immortal** Gentiles are also **'with'** Jesus in Jerusalem being 'served' alongside the immortal and mortal Jews by the nations' Gentiles. How can we see this? To start with, there are a number of mysterious comments implying Gentiles will not only be saved, but that they will also be called and gathered by God too. God says,

I am sought of them that asked not for me; I am found of them that sought me not: I said, Behold me, behold me, unto a nation that was not called by my name [or to the Gentiles] [65:1](#).

And He is also found to say,

The Lord GOD which gathereth the outcasts of Israel saith, Yet will I gather others to him, beside those that are gathered unto him [again, Gentiles] 56:8.

This **nation** He calls to and the **others** He **will... gather** must be Gentiles. Of course this doesn't tell us what He calls them for, or where He **gathereth** them to. Are they called only to serve the Jews? This can't be the case. The fact that God will **gather** them too implies that they have special places with God and Jesus just like the Jews do. So we can assume that the Gentiles that are seen 'serving the Jews from the nations' and these '**others** God **gathereth** to himself' identify different groups of Gentiles. We can also assume that these **others** are **gathered** at different times for different stations including in The Rapture of the Pre-Church and the Church, The Rapture of the Tribulation Gentiles, The Final Harvest Rapture, and The First Resurrection. At the same time Jews, besides traveling to Israel by conventional means or arriving in The Rapture of the Dead Jews, are also **gathered** at different times including in The Raptures of the Pre-Church and the Church, The Rapture of the 144,000 Jews, The Rapture of the Two Witnesses, The Rapture of the Tribulation Jews, The Final Harvest, and The First Resurrection.

But an even easier way to see Gentiles hiding in the 'ruling class' is to consider Jesus **the bridegroom** and **the husband**, and also His **bride** and **wife**. Isaiah couldn't **know** that this **bride** and **wife** God speaks of repeatedly in his **prophecy** must also include Gentiles. But we can 'read it in' now rather plainly. Isaiah reports that God will 'rejoice' over His people **as the bridegroom rejoiceth over the bride** 62:5. And by **revelation** from Paul and John by The Spirit we now **know** that the Gentile Church is also part of this **bride**. But so are all the Jews and Gentiles from **other ages** 'transferred out' of **Abraham's Bosom** to Paradise at The Resurrection of Jesus. And we must also now assume that all these, including others in The Great Tribulation, are only added to the originally planned **bride**—the Jews who participate in The Final Harvest Rapture at the end of The 70th Week.

This brings us to another transgression of mine that I've also let you 'take the hit for' —again just for the **experience** of it. But don't panic. If we do the necessary 'crime scene investigation' properly, we'll find the 'smoking gun' that is sure to both 'convict the perpetrator' and 'provide restitution for his victims'. But again, I was a 'victim' first. I mean God **hid** it from me in these complicated 'riddles and puzzles' until I finally started asking the right questions. And as usual, I had to **exercise** with the precepts awhile before I recognized my misidentifications and saw God's 'hiding techniques'. But this time more than others, I can only **hope** that I present this in a way that most of you can **understand** immediately, because inevitably some of you will require more **exercise** to see it.

This 'brainteaser' can be found in Isaiah 49. In this passage the **Gentiles** cannot only be found between the lines, but they are plainly declared to be the ones that will be **nursing** the nation of Israel in **her** 'infancy'. And the **prophet** communicates with a metaphor. He personifies the nation of Israel, calling her **Zion**, and **she** mourns her **lost... children**—dead or

dispersed Jews. But Isaiah—**prophesying**—comforts **Zion** telling her that **the LORD** will send her new **children** that will **gather themselves together, and come to** her. And **the LORD** says she will **clothe** herself with these new **children** as a **bride** meaning that so many of them will be 'crammed' into Israel around her that they will complain that they need more room. And I guess this answers the question of whether Millennial Israel will be crowded or not. It will be. And Isaiah tells us where all the people will come from. The following separations are imposed upon this passage to indicate the different speakers in Isaiah's dialogue with himself.

[Isaiah said for God to the personified nation of Israel, **Zion**] **Behold, these** [new **children**] **shall come from far: and, lo, these from the north and from the west; and these from the land of Sinim** [Egypt—but naturally not from the east]. **Sing, O heavens; and be joyful, O earth; and break forth into singing, O mountains: for the LORD hath comforted his people, and will have mercy upon his afflicted.**

But Zion said, The LORD hath forsaken me, and my Lord hath forgotten me. Can a woman forget her sucking child, that she should not have compassion on the son of her womb? yea, they may forget, yet will I not forget thee. Behold, I have graven ["engraved"] **thee upon the palms of my hands; thy walls** [that have become **decayed places** [44:26](#), or **waste places** [51:3](#); [52:9](#); [58:12](#), or **old wastes, former desolations** or **waste cities** [61:4](#), or **ruined places** [Eze 36:36](#) or **desolate places** [Eze 38:12](#); [Isa 49:19](#)] **are continually before me.**

[But Isaiah said for God] **Thy children shall make haste** [to return]; [while] **thy destroyers and they that made thee waste shall go forth of thee. Lift up thine eyes round about, and behold: all these** [from the north, west, and Egypt—but not the east] **gather themselves together, and come to thee. As I live, saith the LORD, thou shalt surely clothe thee with them all, as with an ornament, and bind them on thee, as a bride doeth. For thy waste and thy desolate places, and the land of thy destruction, shall even now be too narrow** ["small", "crowded" or "cramped"] **by reason of the inhabitants, and they that swallowed thee up shall be far away** [in hell]. **The** [new] **children which thou shalt have, after thou hast lost the other, shall say again in thine ears, The place is too strait for me** ["small", "crowded" or "cramped"]: **give place to me** [or more room] **that I may dwell. Then shalt thou** [**Zion**] **say in thine heart, Who hath begotten me these, seeing I have lost my children, and am desolate, a captive, and removing to and fro? and who hath brought up these? Behold, I was left alone; these, where had they been?**

[Isaiah answered for God to **Zion**] **Thus saith the Lord GOD, Behold, I will lift up mine hand to the Gentiles, and set up my standard to the people: and they** [Jews and Gentiles?] **shall bring**

thy sons in their arms, and thy daughters shall be carried upon their [Jewish and Gentile?] shoulders [among other means of transport]. And [Gentile and Jewish] kings [i.e. Israeli Prime Ministers, American Presidents, British Prime Ministers, etc.] shall be thy nursing fathers, and their [Gentile and Jewish] queens [i.e. Queen Elizabeth, Margaret Thatcher, Golda Meier, Tzipi Livni] thy nursing mothers: they [Jews and Gentiles?] shall bow down to thee [Zion] with their face toward the earth, and lick up the dust of thy feet [or kiss the ground upon arriving in Israel]; and thou [Zion] shalt know that I am the LORD: for they [both Gentiles and Jews] shall not be ashamed that wait [and "hope"] for me [49:12-23](#).

Wow! There's a lot here. I see the American and British involvement in the development of the nation of Israel. And I'm pretty sure Israel's not done with her **to and fro** 'boarder challenges' quite yet. But we're looking for the **hidden Gentile bride** among the Jewish part and among some other **Gentiles** that aren't really hidden here at all. And there are a couple of things we need to focus on to identify them better. The first is that these new, surely Jewish, but apparently also Gentile **children** are going to 'crowd' into Israel following her **waste** and **desolate** period that must include some **to and fro** boarder 'rearrangements' that finally result in an outcome where **they that swallowed thee up shall be far away**—presumably **in hell**, or in **the bottomless pit**, but eventually in **the lake of fire**. And surely some of these new Jewish **children** have arrived home already, and are still arriving, and are still involved with the ongoing **to and fro** boarder conflicts. And there must still be more to come because Israel isn't that crowded yet. Of course there should be at least a decade or two to go to further populate Israel by my reckoning. And there will eventually be The Rapture of the Dead Jews to 'help out'. But if only **the third part** of the Jews who make it to Israel 'survive' The Great Tribulation ([Zec 13:9](#)), we should still wind up somewhat short of 'overcrowding' at the end of The Great Tribulation. But the 'overcrowding' apparently doesn't happen until the **destroyers** are **far away**, and this won't be the case until after Jesus' trip around The Lord's Triangle. So evidently there will be some 'ground-kissing' by some 'happy-to-be-home' Jews and Gentiles still going on after The Great Tribulation at the start of The Millennium.

Here's the general order of events we can sort out from this passage. 1) **Zion** or Israel mourns for her **lost** dead or dispersed **children**. 2) She becomes **waste** and **desolate** because of her **destroyers**. 3) And when her **destroyers** withdraw because of Israel's **waste** and **desolate** condition, new Jewish **children** begin to 'hurry back' to Israel. 4) During this time, leaders in Israel and in other prominent Gentile nations help 'nurse' Israel in her 'infancy'. 5) But evidently also during this transition Israel's **destroyers** 'reengage' her because Jews are returning to their homeland. 6) And this goes on until eventually she is no longer **desolate** nor troubled with continual 'boarder squabbles' and wars. 7) And when her **destroyers** are finally put **far away**, evidently **in prison** or **perdition**, this is when all the new **children** finish filling up Israel, and at some point thereafter begin to complain they are too crowded and need more room. And Jesus is The One who will ultimately put these **destroyers... far away** when He comes again

to live with His people in Israel. And hopefully these 'complaints' of 'overcrowding' come early in The Millennium from the Mortals living with the Immortals in the greater Jerusalem area, and also not too long after from the **offspring** in both greater Jerusalem and in the tribal portions too. Because it will be OK to 'squeeze 'em all in' for a millennium or so, because there will eventually be plenty of room for everyone in New Jerusalem, as we will see.

More evidence of this 'full-dress performance' is seen in a metaphor of Isaiah's where we are shown that Israel will **clothe** herself with her people **as with an ornament, and bind them on [herself], as a bride doeth** [49:18](#). And this metaphor is similarly used later by Jesus Himself. He says,

...he [God] hath clothed me [Jesus] with the garments of salvation, he hath covered me with the robe of righteousness, as a bridegroom decketh himself with ornaments, and as a bride adorneth herself with her jewels [61:10](#)

You can get the context that this must be Jesus talking about being 'dressed' by His Father from the first verse of this chapter. And if you **understand** that the **salvation** and **righteousness** He will be **clothed** with here includes the **salvation** of His people and the **righteousness** of His judgment at Armageddon, etc., we can put it together that His first 'full-dress performance' will be when He 'puts on' Millennial Jerusalem at the beginning of The Millennium. Again, it's at the end of The Great Tribulation that the **destroyers** of Israel will be 'put' quite **far away** after which Israel will begin to become quite **narrow by reason of the inhabitants**. And the both Jewish and Gentile Immortals must be a big part of this 'overcrowding'. However I also envision here Jesus being **clothed** by the 'bejeweled' New Jerusalem too. Remember that these two 'full-dress performances' are really only on either end of 'one day' for God. But there are more clues that these 'full-dress performances' will include quite a lot of Gentiles.

In Isaiah's conversation between himself and **Zion** God answers one of her questions. He answers the question about **where** her new **children** come from. Specifically she asks, **where had they been?** And she means, **where** are they before they **gather themselves together, and come to** her. God answers,

Behold, I will lift up mine hand to the Gentiles, and set up my standard to the people: and they shall bring thy sons in their arms, and thy daughters shall be carried upon their shoulders [49:22](#).

Now the correct first impression we get here is that Jews will be gathered from **among the Gentiles** back to Israel. And I assume that the **standard to the people**—to the Jews—that God will **set up** is presently **up** and still signaling Jews to come home to Israel. But a question is raised in context here. Is God simply calling Jews from **among the Gentiles** when he 'lifts up his hand to the Gentiles', or does this instead mean that this is the general time when God also **gathers others** [56:8](#) or **Gentiles** to Himself too? I think we may be seeing two processes here. It could be that God 'sets up His standard' to call the Jews home, and that He also 'lifts up His hand' to call

Gentiles home too, indicating the different ways these two factions are called home.

But there's more **proof** in this 'pudding', which brings us to the next question. When God says to Israel, **they shall bring thy sons in their arms, and thy daughters shall be carried upon their shoulders**, does He mean just Jews **shall bring** their children to Israel, or does He really mean that this includes Gentiles 'bringing their children' to Israel too? Of course we **know** we're talking about the new **children** that come **from the north, west**, and Egypt. But this could apply to both Jews that come from **among the Gentiles** and to Gentiles that 'pit-stop' in Paradise along the way who originate from the same places. And certainly some Jews will also be taking a 'side trip' or two on their way home. And this reveals an interesting choice. God is either referring to just mortal Jews who come to Israel carrying their children, or He is also including—though originally **hiding**—immortal Jews and Gentiles who come to Israel with Jesus who may have **children** with them too. I mean, what happens to redeemed children? Do they find themselves to be immediately 'grown up' **spirits** in Paradise or **Abraham's bosom**, or later when they become immortals? Or do their spiritual and immortal forms continue to grow 'normally' until they are mature? Or do they stay forever small in form. I'm pretty sure that their physical bodies left in the Earth and Sea don't continue to grow at least until they are rejoined with their spirits in immortality. And I wouldn't necessarily expect children to immediately appear '25 years old' in their spirit form when they die. But so that we don't get too sidetracked on this subject, for now I'll limit my questions about these redeemed children to just one. Will they stay small? I **know** that staying small would not stop them from becoming wiser than some kings ([Pro 23:24](#); [Ecc 4:13](#); [Luke 18:17](#); [2 Tim 3:15](#); [Mat 19:14](#); [Mark 10:14](#); [Luke 18:16](#)). And if they do remain small would that be a tragedy? And if they do—or at least do for a time when they are still 'growing'—then some of the smaller ones may be carried to Israel from Heaven too. But evidently for now we cannot be given the 'unlawful' answers to these questions ([2 Cor 12:4](#)), nor can we now see them through the 'dark glass' with any 'clarity' ([1 Cor 13:12](#)). But clearly something is being kept from us on this subject—which must be why Paul said it was 'unlawful' for him to speak about it. However I am sure that some of us will be surprised to find that some of the 'feel-good' messages we've heard on this subject are not entirely true.

And whatever the case, immortal Jews and Gentiles do apparently come home to Israel with Jesus as part of this 'gathering process' and help contribute to the 'over-population' of Israel. And what do you think these immortals will do, both Jews and Gentiles, when **'they'** meet **Zion**? Evidently they'll immediately drop to their knees and kiss her. Surely whether mortal Jews and Gentile proselytes, or immortal Jews and Gentiles, and with children or not, when **'they'** get home to her, God says,

...they shall bow down to thee [Zion] with their face toward the earth, and lick up the dust of thy feet [or kiss the ground]; and thou shalt know that I am the LORD: for they shall not be ashamed that wait for [and hope in] me [49:23](#).

So I think this means we'll all 'kiss her' when we arrive in Jerusalem with Jesus—just like 'real Jews' do when they arrive in Jerusalem today.

But you should remember that I already used this verse to say that Gentiles would literally lick the feet of Millennial Israelites, and well, this was a mistake as you should now clearly see. I originally misidentified whose **feet** God is talking about. He is referring to Zion's **feet** which must be a metaphor for the ground in Israel. But I also think He is referring to both Jews and Gentiles, mortals and immortals, children and adults, when he says '**they**', though surely He doesn't intend that all of these 'homecomers' will be originally recognized. But if He is really referring to all these 'homecomers', this is one of God's more difficult 'hiding techniques' to expose, because it is really only **hidden** by our ignorant, immature, preconceived, self-centered ideas.

But by now you must be getting used to being set up by God for all kinds of misidentifications in many ways. And this passage is full of them, and so is The Bible in general. And we've dealt with lots of them in this **study**. And you should see by now that it's not my doing. It's an unavoidable part of The Natural Progression of The Word of God. It's one of the ways He tests our integrity. And you should see here again that unless you **continue** you're not even really showing up for the tests. And what kind of grade do you think you're going to get that way?—not to mention how unreliable your **understanding of scripture** will be, and how relatively useless and potentially harmful you will be to the ones around you. Peter pleads,

Wherefore the rather, brethren, give diligence to make your calling and election sure: for if ye do these things, ye shall never fall [2 Pet 1:10](#).

And this means that you must **get wisdom** and **get understanding** because this **instruction** is **life** itself ([Pro 4:5-13](#); [16:16](#)). And **wisdom** dictates that,

The hand of the diligent shall bear rule: but the slothful shall be under tribute [and serve those who rule] [Pro 12:24](#).

And more importantly,

The soul of the sluggard desireth, and hath nothing: but the soul of the diligent shall be made fat [Pro 13:4](#).

And it's not me but Jesus who says,

Strive to enter in at the strait gate: for many, I say unto you, will seek to enter in, and shall not be able [Luke 13:24](#).

So '**they**', one way or another, must include all the groups of both the Jewish and Gentile 'ruling class' immortals as well as mortal Jewish and proselyte survivors. And the 'full-dress' clothing metaphor seems to imply that Jesus will interact with all these groups **as a bridegroom decketh**

himself **with ornaments, and as a bride adorneth herself with her jewels**. But we **know** that **his wife** is a group of this 'ruling-class' that includes both Jews and Gentiles—including the **accepted** Pre-Church Jews and Gentiles who die before The Resurrection, and the Jews and Gentiles who die **in Christ** in The Age of Grace, and also the Jews and Gentiles **in Christ** still **alive** at the **moment** of The Rapture of the Pre-Church and the Church. And all these 'subsets' of **the bride** must be **hidden** within Isaiah's **prophecy**. And another **hidden** subset of **the bride** would be the Gentiles who are raptured along with the originally planned Jews in The Final Harvest Rapture. And I can only think that all these 'subsets' will join with Jesus forever at The Marriage of The Lamb before they come down with Him to Jerusalem. And when in Jerusalem we should all be His **wife**, or as Isaiah sees it...

...be named the Priests of the LORD: men shall call you the Ministers of our God: ye shall eat the riches of the [nation-dwelling] Gentiles, and in their glory shall ye boast yourselves [61:6](#).

So if you think that some won't have more to **boast** about in Heaven than others you're in for a surprise—and not likely a good one. Of course this verse most directly indicates the mortal Jews who survive The Great Tribulation. And God plainly says to these mortal Jews that they are to **inherit the Gentiles**, and that Jesus is their...

...husband; the LORD of hosts is his name; and thy Redeemer the Holy One of Israel; The God of the whole earth shall he be called [54:5](#).

So with the 'hindsight' and 'foresight' of The Spirit we can now **understand** there are several 'subsets' of Jewish and Gentile mortals and immortals to be redeemed or rescued in The Great Tribulation who will **inherit** Israel and **rule** over the surviving Gentile nations, and that some 'ruling class' **Gentiles** will have for their **husband... the Holy One of Israel** too.

Remember the scene **before the throne** of God on the **sea of glass** with the **four and twenty** [Jewish] **elders**? They're singing,

...for thou wast slain, and hast redeemed us to God by thy blood out of every kindred, and tongue, and people, and nation; And hast made us unto our God kings and priests: and we shall reign on the earth [Rev 5:9-10](#)

We get a view of these **elders** not only at this time of The Rapture of the Pre-Church and the Church, but at the midpoint of The Great Tribulation in Chapter 11, and at The Marriage of The Lamb in Chapter 19. These preeminent Jewish Christian **elders** are over a group they say—or sing in a **new song**—are made up of obviously lots of pure Gentiles, but obviously also include a large faction of 'Jewish converts to Christianity' who were converted when Jesus visited **Abraham's Bosom**, or sometime during The Age of Grace. And all of this both Gentile and Jewish group now wait in **paradise** for

The Rapture of the Pre-Church and the Church. And again, I now call it The Rapture of the Pre-Church and the Church because it's a more complete description of what will happen in that **moment**. Seven years later I expect that they will appear as part of the Bride of Christ at The Marriage of The Lamb joined by other immortal Jews and Gentiles from The Final Harvest Rapture, who I'm guessing must complete this group who will be 'married' in Heaven, and who will be joined by other honored 'wedding guests'. And one way or another they evidently will all have enough time to 'make themselves ready' for The Marriage of The Lamb. And the Jews involved in this ceremony certainly are, according to Paul, **the natural branches** that we Gentiles—being **contrary to nature**—are fortunate enough to be **grafted in** with ([Romans 11](#)).

And Isaiah's **record** makes clear that at the start of The Millennium this part of **the bride** will be joined by mortal Jews in Israel. But being still mortal they will—just like Christian Gentiles in The Age of Grace—still have the danger of **falling away**. And at the end of The Millennium I'm assuming that some of them are included in **the number of whom is as the sand of the sea** that will **fall away**. I'm also guessing a similar large '**number**' will be **lost** in The Age of Grace, and in The Great Tribulation too, all of which should help with the 'overpopulation problem' in Greater Jerusalem in The Millennium.

And there are others we could think of as distinct groups of mortals and immortals separated out in The Great Tribulation that I expect will be part of The Bride. These groups come from the early-converted Christian Jews who are incarcerated and/or killed in The Beginning of Sorrows. These are the ones Jesus talks about in His Discourse on the Mount of Olives and Gabriel mentions in Daniel 11. And I mean there are two or more groups of these Jews distinguished by the ones that die and the ones that survive. And though I have called them 'early-converted', since they are real Jews I'm guessing it's possible—and I said possible—that they may **know** Jesus even before The Rapture of the Pre-Church and the Church but be left behind by God to participate in God's plan for the Jews through their difficult ministry to Israel during The Beginning of Sorrows. I mean some of The Raptures of The Great Tribulation leave Christians behind because they are for specific groups, though you should remember that I did not acknowledge this particular alternative earlier. But whether this Beginning-of-Sorrows ministry will include Messianic Jews now attracting persecution in Israel today, or just the more 'abruptly awoken' future converts after The Rapture, they will be **hated of all nations** and **a witness unto all nations to the end**. And this also implies that they will somehow attract a lot more attention than I first indicated.

Now if these Christian Jews in Israel die in The Beginning of Sorrows they will be already saved so they shouldn't go down to **Abraham's Bosom** to return to Israel in The Rapture of the Dead Jews. And at first glance I expected that all Christians who die in The Seal Judgments would join The Gentile Temple Servants. But it now seems more likely to me that this rapture does not apply to real Jews in Israel, just to Christian casualties everywhere but in Israel. And I now expect instead that all converted real Jews in Israel who die anytime in The 70th Week will participate in The Final Harvest to The Marriage of the Lamb—I mean if they don't lose their heads.

And I don't see why some of the survivors couldn't end up with the sequestered Jews **in the wilderness**—and even help lead them there. And since God will be able to keep some of them alive in Israel in The Beginning of Sorrows when the whole World hates them, I **believe** He will keep some alive in Israel in The Days of Vengeance too. But I doubt it's all as simple as all this. I expect we've only begun to explore how complicated 'station assignments' can really be.

But I'm not suggesting they are disorderly. I'm guessing, for example, that the 12 Apostles over **the seven churches** and the 12 sons of Jacob over **the twelve tribes** are appropriate representation of The Bride because these 24 will be the preeminent **kings and priests** over the whole World forevermore. However I'm also assuming that a factor in the balancing of this representation will be that the majority of **the church of the Laodiceans**—and a good part of some other **churches**—will get 'spewed out' into The Great Tribulation ([Rev 2:5; 16; 22-23; 3:3; 14-22](#)). And God willing I'll get the opportunity to carry on more discussion about such dangers to **the churches** in the future. It's another **study** in itself. But whatever the case, I expect the coming 'administration' of Jesus' eternal kingdom will provide appropriate 'representation' for all. This could mean that any given '**church**' will be equal to about 'two **tribes**', representationally speaking, with two apostles over each **church** because they're about twice the size of a **tribe**, and with the appropriate patriarch over each **tribe**. Speculation? Sure. But I think there is plenty of evidence God will have an appropriately "orderly" 'chain of command' like this, and that it's unlikely that the 24 **elders** will be in anyway 'out of balance' in their representation of **the bride** as a whole. Remember this 'ruling class' is God's 'creation' too ([65:18; Rev 4:10-11](#)).

This means I'm also guessing that Jesus' **wife** will be made up of about half Gentiles and half Jews—so that there is equal representation for each apostle and patriarch—except that this again leads me to think that not nearly so many will be saved as we could hope for—though again, we should not forget the 'boost' that the Jews will get from The Rapture of the Dead Jews, nor that Millennial Israel must be significantly bigger than we first imagined, and that these considerations should bring the 'overcrowded' numbers in such a reckoning way up. However if **tribes** and **churches** have fairly equal 'representation', this would mean there will be around twice as many Jews as Gentiles—a 12 to 7 ratio—which would not be so good for Gentiles. But whatever the case, certainly Isaiah had no idea of this split of Gentiles and Jews, so that Satan would get the wrong idea and unwittingly do God's will.

And in Isaiah's **prophecy** God constrains Himself mostly to general references that at first glance appear to apply only to mortal Israeli Jews or nation-dwelling Gentiles. But with 'New Testament hindsight', we can now see a 'clumped view' of the groups in Israel. And this should lead to a lot of incomplete identification, misidentification, and confusion which we should now expect is just what **the LORD** had in mind—though we are starting to see that there are ways to distinguish these groups of both the Jewish and Gentile immortals. And it turns out that the 'clumping', 'cramming', and 'crowding' of these groups in Israel is an appropriate picture of how 'thickly' our **bridegroom** plans to 'surround Himself' with them all.

But by now you should have noticed that we have another apparent

incongruity. It's true that there is no way the Jews who survive The Great Tribulation can participate in The Marriage of the Lamb in Heaven, because we return to Earth after the ceremony. But we have already seen that Jesus is nonetheless their **husband** [54:5](#). And the problem is that I am not aware of any specific reference to a 'second ceremony' that will take place on Earth. But there still might be one. It may happen on the **blessed** 1335th day. Or maybe it doesn't happen until after they are immortalized in The Second Resurrection at the end of The Millennium because then there will be no more danger of any of them **falling away** anymore. And this would be similar to what Christians in The Age of Grace have to endure. We are now called **the bride** before the fact. So mortal Jews in Israel might be considered **the bride** and Jesus their **husband** before they are immortalized, and even if the ceremony doesn't take place until the end of The Millennium. Maybe. And maybe you remember this is different than what I told you earlier.

But again and whatever the case, these surviving Jews are the first to be **prophesied** as the **married... bride** of Jesus ([62:1-5](#)). And remember that Gentiles are **branches** that are **wild** and **contrary to nature** that are **grafted in** along with **the natural branches** —which include these surviving mortal Jews. And sure, this 'grafting in of the unnatural branches' is God's once **hidden** but now **known** focus during The Age of Grace. But during The Great Tribulation the focus will be back on **the natural branches**. Then God will **graft them in again** too. And then this originally **prophesied** part of **the bride** will make Jesus their **husband**, one way or another.

And from this perspective we should be able to extract clues in Isaiah's **prophecy** of most all of the 'ruling class' groups. But let's **continue** by further clarifying some of the major distinguishing features of various parts of **the bride** that can be seen in Isaiah's **prophecy**. I mean characteristics that will distinguish **her** from the other groups. Some of these distinctions most clearly apply to the Jewish portion of **the bride** that will remain on Earth during The Great Tribulation. Some of these will be 'protected', 'unharmful', and really completely 'untouched' by some of the more 'egregious unpleasantness' of The Great Tribulation ([54:14-17](#)). And a good way we can see how God watches over this part of His **bride** is by considering The Second and Third Plague Judgments of The Days of Vengeance. These judgments call for all **the waters of the sea**, and all **the rivers and fountains of waters** (springs, wells, etc.) to become like **blood**, obviously undrinkable. But God's testimony through Isaiah, apparently especially for this 'earthbound portion' of **the bride**, is that,

*When **the poor and needy seek water, and there is none, and their tongue faileth for thirst, I the LORD will hear them, I the God of Israel will not forsake them. I will open rivers in high places, and fountains in the midst of the valleys: I will make the wilderness a pool of water, and the dry land springs of water** ([41:17](#)).*

Of course this could apply to any member of **the bride** anywhere and at any time throughout the **ages**. I mean miracles happen. But the most obvious connection for me is when Satan sends a **flood** after the fleeing Jews ([Rev. 12:16](#)), and when God will evidently 'catch' the water in what I'm guessing

will be an 'oversized moat' around Petra preventing access from the west, with steep **mountains** and an extremely narrow pass forbidding access from the east. And this should work quite well in that there will be no modern weapons or transportation available to get to them. And yes, I'm guessing The Final Great Earthquake should drain it enough for Jesus to lead them home again. Then again, it's just as likely He will part this **east sea** [Eze 47:18](#), or simply 'empower' His **beloved** and **chosen people** to walk across it.

And there is another place in Isaiah's **prophecy** where God reaffirms he won't leave His people 'high and dry'. He says He will...

...give waters in the wilderness, and rivers in the desert, to give drink to my people, my chosen [43:20](#).

And certainly this again at least applies to the Jews **in the wilderness** in their 1260-day 'refuge' **prepared of God**, but not as well to others who don't make it there. I mean, here we see one way God may naturally '**sever between**' His 'ruling classes'. The implication is that stations as well as blessings are sometimes administered according to where you are at the time you are assigned.

But really there are three groups that are arguably 'untouchable' in The Great Tribulation. In addition to the sequestered Jews, there is also the Church raptured before the start of The Great Tribulation. And there are The 144,000 Jews who are marked by God in The Beginning of Sorrows, and who are raptured to Heaven before the start of The Days of Vengeance. But The 144,000 are defined as 'not the marrying kind'. So besides them, and also The Two Witnesses, I expect that God's **promises** to the 'untouchable' **chosen** can only apply to the Church or to the Jews who **flee** to safety at The Abomination of Desolation.

This comparison originally led me to think that just like the Jews and Gentiles waiting in **paradise** are **set apart** for the purpose of preparing to participate in The Marriage of The Lamb, so the Jews who **flee** to their safe haven in **the wilderness**, in their 'earthly sanctuary', will in this way also be similarly **set apart** to prepare to participate in The Marriage of The Lamb too. I mean when I was a **babe** some **teachers** were **teaching** that this is what the seven years are for. So it later made sense to me that this must be what the 3½ years for the Jews are for too. And this eventually led me to think that these sequestered Jews would participate in The Final Harvest at the end of The 70th Week, apparently arriving just in time to make the 'wedding' in Heaven—until I discovered that Jesus would personally escort these Jews home from **Bozrah**. But the more basic problem with this thinking is that the members of the Church are not all 'untouched'. Take The Protestant Reformation for example. And hey, I may not even remain 'untouched' for writing this **study**—especially the parts about the Catholic Church. Between **Foxe's Book of Martyrs** and [Hebrews 11:36-40](#), we should be able to see **that they**, in this case the martyrs of the Pre-Church, **without us should not be made perfect**. In other words, we are the **fruit** of their sacrifice in Jesus. So **the bride** is a 'package deal'—a 'package' naturally made up of the 'touched' and the 'untouched'. And Paul tells us that those **not accepting deliverance** do so **that they might obtain a better resurrection**. So

who would you say the lucky ones are?

Also I think this supports the idea that participants in The Final Harvest Rapture are part of the **bride** regardless of the fact they get much less 'preparation time' as immortals before **the marriage**. Because I would think **a better resurrection** would be as the **wife** of Jesus as opposed to one of the other 'lower', 'ruling-class' stations. And though it's true that there are numerous passages in Isaiah's **prophecy** where God refers to His **people**, who are His **chosen**, as his **servants** (e.g. [41:8-9](#), [43:10](#), [44:1-2](#)), I take this to mean we are all his **servants** on one 'level' or another. And we already **know** of mortal groups of Jews and Gentiles that could stand in as **servants to the bride**. Most obviously this includes the mortal Gentiles in **the nations** but apparently also the mortal Jews that live in **the suburbs** of Millennial Jerusalem. And we should not overlook that a **wife** could be considered a **servant** too. In [Gen 2:18-24](#) I read it that a **wife** is supposed to be a **servant** of sorts to her **husband**. I mean however you translate this passage, God created **woman** to "help" **man** as his **wife**. And the point is that I'm expecting to **serve** Jesus like a 'wife' forever, aren't you? But we're talking about 'hierarchy' and 'division of government' here. So I'm saying that both by God's originally **revealed** plan and by a later **revealed... mystery** 'update' of this plan, that both those raptured at the end of The 70th Week and those raptured at the end of The Age of Grace must all be part of the **bride** and **wife** of Jesus. And evidently the 'sequestered' Jews and other surviving Jews and proselytes will be too, except that they, while still **in the flesh**, remain 'susceptible' to being **cut off** until they are finally immortalized.

And this is not to mention that faithful Jews should generally not so much need 'preparation' as **revelation**, while Gentiles are much more likely to need some preparation time in order to live with Jesus and his 'scrupulously Jewish' ways in Millennial Israel. I mean He's going to run a 'tight Jewish ship'. And we've seen that it's more the Gentiles that will have to **learn** to conform. I'm also guessing that most Gentiles will have to make 'big adjustments' by getting over accepting brothers and sisters that they assumed would be excluded from **the bride**—or maybe some of these 'self-centered' Christians will be excluded themselves. But whatever the case, and however 'big' it would be of you to accept **lesser** Christians as part of the Bride of Christ—especially if you find out that some of them are **better** and **greater** than you—we don't need to worry that there will be a shortage of 'guests' for The Marriage Supper of the Lamb, nor a shortage of **servants** for **the bride** once **'she'** is all together on the Earth. And surely she is not the only 'branch' of Jesus' **government**. In The Millennium I see both immortal and mortal divisions in the executive, legislative, and judicial branches of **government**. But of course I'm expecting much more of a 'scriptural monarchy' than a 'constitutional democracy'. And I also see immortals that will stay and serve The Father in Heaven for The Millennium. And I can only hope that there will be all kinds of embarrassment of both Jews and Gentiles who thought that they were the only ones in The Bride. Well, better that than surprise exclusion, don't you think?—especially from The Kingdom of God and Christ altogether. But God takes responsibility for all these choices, and so will the choosers.

We have already identified groups of Jews or Gentiles that are clearly distinguished from the 'one' **chosen** to marry Jesus. These would be the immortal Tribulation Gentiles, The 144,000 Jews, and the mortal Millennial Gentiles of the Nations. Also likely included are the immortal Tribulation Jews, and The First Resurrection Martyrs. But clearly The 144,000 Jews, and The First Resurrection Martyrs have 'ruling-class roles' in Millennial Jerusalem, and must also in The Eternal Age too. And there is evidence that neither of these 'ruling classes' is 'technically' part of The Bride including that The 144,000 are **virgins** and that The First Resurrection Martyrs miss The Marriage of The Lamb. But it seems also to be 'technically' true that everyone that lives with Jesus in Millennial Israel will be part of 'The Greater Bride'. Still, and whether there really are two ways to look at the **bride** or not, all these are clearly distinguishable groups with clearly distinct stations.

And Isaiah gives us pictures of some of these groups in his **prophecy**. One is a general message that could apply to Catholics priests, but that also surely applies to The 144,000 Jewish male **virgins**. And sorry ladies and Gentiles, apparently you've got to be a man and a real Jew to be one of The 144,000. However I should warn you that there is one translation out of the dozen or more I'm watching that goes out of its way to contest this in [Rev 14:4](#). See if you can find it. But indisputably, these Jewish men will have a tough mission to endure in the worst of The Beginning of Sorrows. And when they are raptured at the midpoint of The Great Tribulation God tells us that they will get **a name better than** other more 'run-of-the-mill' **sons and daughters** of God ([43:6](#); [49:22](#); [60:4](#)), though evidently any 'devout virgin' will be similarly elevated in the Eternal Kingdom of God. And contrary to the popular, 'unweaned', 'self-centered' conjecture, this is no 'free gift', but they **obtain** or "gain" this position by their **troubles** and 'momentary' **light affliction** ([Heb 11](#); [2 Cor 4:17](#)). And for it they should expect to be 'elevated' above the 'run of the mill', because it's not just the **blood of Jesus** that makes it possible for them to be so 'elevated'. It's also their **obedience** to Him. They will be **happy to be reproached for the name of Christ** and to **suffer for righteousness' sake** ([1Pet 3:14](#); [4:14](#)) because they **know** that this will 'elevate' them 'closer' to Jesus. And you should **know** Jesus says,

Blessed are ye, when men shall revile you, and persecute you, and shall say all manner of evil against you falsely, for my sake. Rejoice, and be exceeding glad: for great is your reward in heaven: for so persecuted they the prophets which were before you [Mat 5:11](#).

And you can see here that this **great... reward in heaven** is conditional. Those who willingly **suffer for righteousness' sake** must **understand** why they **suffer** and therefore be appropriately **happy** about it. They should be **happy** because they are **promised** an eternal **reward** that others who don't **suffer** this way don't get. In the case of The 144,000, it's their **suffering** of a 'vow of celibacy', and also their **suffering** in their ministry in The Beginning of Sorrows that will elevate them 'very close' to Jesus. And He makes just as plain here that anyone who will tolerate no **trouble** or **affliction** or 'reviling' or **persecution** or 'instigation' of **all manner of evil against you falsely, for my sake** should expect little or no 'elevation' in His kingdom. Still, I

expect many people will get into His Kingdom by the **blood of Jesus** alone ([John 6:53](#); [Eph 2:13](#); [Heb 10:19](#); [1 Pet 1:2](#); [1 John 1:7](#); [Rev 1:5](#)), but at the same time they will experience **shame** for not taking **better** advantage of their **salvation**. Remember it's fairly clear that the station of The 144,000 is to be the continual 'entourage' of Jesus who will likely administrate much of His affairs. They like Him will **rule all nations with a rod of iron** [Rev 12:5](#). And you should **understand** how they will earn this station. Isaiah reports,

For thus saith the LORD unto the eunuchs [male virgins] that keep my sabbaths, and choose the things that please me, and take hold of my covenant; Even unto them will I give in mine house and within my walls a place and a name better than of sons and of daughters: I will give them an everlasting name, that shall not be cut off [56:4-5](#).

Again, this must also apply to some extent to more than just The 144,000. All Jews throughout the ages who **choose** to be **eunuchs** of God's **covenant** are eligible to be so 'elevated'. And it must also somehow apply to Gentiles in a '**new and living covenant**' kind of way. And this is certainly an example of how God will **sever between** His **great** and **lesser** immortal **sons and daughters**. And we can also expect that The 144,000 will be counted as 'honored guests', 'best men' if you will, at The Marriage of The Lamb.

Another message to God's **sons and daughters** in Isaiah's **prophecy** is that some of them will be saved from 'spiritually perilous trials' that they would otherwise have to **experience**. And this message of **mercy** must apply to several of the groups that are redeemed in The Great Tribulation. We **understand** that all 'real Jews' who die after the resurrection of Jesus and before the midpoint of The Great Tribulation will be raptured probably very near the midpoint to Jerusalem to make their **choice** between **everlasting life** and **shame and everlasting contempt**. This will obviously **sever between** the ones who are **sons and daughters** of God and those who really are not. As for the ones who **choose** Jesus and **everlasting life**, some of them will be mercifully killed by God, and some of them possibly for the second time, to spare them otherwise unbearable **oppression** and **terror** ([54:14](#)). And these and other of God's **sons and daughters**, both Jews and Gentiles, will be killed in God's judgments on the Earth, while others are **beheaded for the witness of Jesus, and for the word of God** by the order of the Antichrist. But in either case, all these will die so that they can be **taken away from the evil to come**. In Isaiah's **prophecy** God says,

The righteous perisheth, and no man layeth it to heart: and merciful men are taken away, none considering that the righteous is taken away from the evil to come. He shall enter into peace: they shall rest in their beds, each one walking in his uprightness [57:1-2](#).

So **merciful men** have an advantage. They get God's **mercy**. And this obviously doesn't just apply to Jews but also to Gentiles, and throughout The Great Tribulation. The **righteous** that **perisheth** in The Great Tribulation would include The Tribulation Gentiles, The Tribulation Jews, The Final

Harvest Saints, and The First Resurrection Martyrs.

And we **know** a little about the station assignments of these **righteous**. The Tribulation Gentiles will become The Gentile Temple Servants before God's Throne in Heaven, and surely they will be guests at The Marriage of The Lamb. The Tribulation Jews I expect will be The Jewish Temple Servants, though their service to God is less obviously indicated. These Jews are the first of two groups that 'get' **the victory over the beast, and over his image, and over his mark, and over the number of his name**. We **know** they are all Jews because **they sing the song of Moses the servant of God**, and they **know** Jesus because they **sing... the song of the Lamb**—not to mention that they are in God's Temple in Heaven with Jesus at the time. They are also the second of two groups seen in their entirety in The Temple in Heaven before The Throne of God—the first being The Gentile Temple Servants. These characteristics lead me to believe that they have a distinct station assignment. And I'm guessing that these Jews will also stay in Heaven during The Millennium and serve God before His Throne in a different capacity than The Gentile Temple Servants. One clue to their occupation is that at their appearance in Heaven they also declare that **all nations shall come and worship before God**. Maybe this means that they will be The Father's 'worship leaders', ultimately calling all **nations to fear and glorify God**, as they also declare before Him. Whatever the case, surely these distinct **sons and daughters** martyred for God will be guests at Jesus' 'wedding' in Heaven and will **fear and glorify Him** in whatever station that they will have **suffered** greatly to **obtain** ([Rev 15:2-4](#); [Heb 11](#)).

And the **righteous**, both Jews and Gentiles, who **perisheth** during The Days of Vengeance—or anytime after The Rapture of the Tribulation Gentiles if Gentiles—are fortunate by this means to escape some or all of The Days of Vengeance. And these— if they avoid the Antichrist—must be taken up in The Final Harvest. But victims of the Antichrist during this period have another station. These are...

...the souls of them that were beheaded for the witness of Jesus, and for the word of God, and which had not worshipped the beast, neither his image, neither had received his mark upon their foreheads, or in their hands; and they lived and reigned with Christ a thousand years... This is the first resurrection [Rev 20:4-5](#).

This posttribulational group would be the second one to 'get the victory over the beast'. But this time they cannot be all Jews. And this group is surely staying with Jesus on Earth in The Millennium. Their high station assignment is more specifically identified too. And those redeemed in this **first resurrection** must necessarily be among those who endure The Great Tribulation the longest. But whether they **perish** earlier or later in The Days of Vengeance, they too should be perceived as **taken away from the evil to come**. God certainly makes it plain that this is the way He sees it.

And it makes sense Gentiles will need this kind of **mercy** earlier because being out in **the nations** in The Beginning of Sorrows won't offer any of the protection Jews get in Israel at this time. And in The Days of Vengeance real Jews who aren't able to escape on cue will then need this **mercy** as bad as

the Gentiles do.

But I do have a logistical question that I should at least bring to your attention before we move on, because it could imply a contradiction. And you should have noticed by now that I routinely go out of my way for 'apparent contradictions' because I **know** they are 'gates to growth' in **the knowledge of God**. The contradiction I speak of is that the **righteous** that **perisheth... shall rest in their beds** [57:1-2](#). The obvious question is, where are these **beds**? Are there beds in Paradise? Or does this instead refer to their faithful, fearless, and unshakable attitude before their death? I mean we already **know** that God will **neither slumber nor sleep** [Psa 121:4](#). And since The Gentile Temple Servants serve God **day and night**, I expect that immortals don't ever **sleep** either. And we'll get to more evidence supporting the 'sleepless nature' of immortals before we're done. So this must be talking about how they **rest in their beds**, trusting God before they die. One 'translation' tries to make it read this way anyway. And it seems to work to resolve the 'apparent contradiction'. But another 'translation' eliminates 'the bed' as a metaphor altogether and replaces it with the 'supposed' literal meaning of the metaphor, 'eternal rest'. And this seems to work too. Still another equates 'the bed' to "death" making it mean that the bodies of the dead are at rest in their graves like 'in beds'—which is a focus on the body as opposed to the spirit. And this last one makes the best sense out of the KJV for me because dead bodies 'rest' in their graves 'oblivious', while their separated spirits remain fully 'cognizant'.

But by all these clearly different translations you can again see how too many unfortunate errors are made by Hebrew and Greek scholars 'bending' **scripture** to make it make sense to them. So I can't warn you enough to remain cautious when using modern 'translations' to help you make sense of **scripture**. Be ready to wait on God for some of your answers. Still, sometimes the **warring** Hebrew and Greek scholars help us deduce what the KJV is saying precisely because of their **fightings**. But if you **continue** down this road you will see how all of the modern 'translators' too often shamefully fail to resolve contradictions, and just as often create them. Of course there is always the original Hebrew and Greek. I mean apparently we'll all be speaking Hebrew one day not that long from now. Read [Zephaniah 3:8-9](#). It may even happen in a '**Matrix**-like' moment much like it must have been at The Tower of Babel, but in reverse. Whatever the case, I **know** one way or another it's a matter of time before I'll be a better Greek and Hebrew scholar than most all of these **warring** modern 'translators'.

But getting back to more comforting news, God also comforts His people throughout Isaiah **prophecy** by speaking of specific events and ages that are to come. He tells them the good news that **Babylon** will fall ([43:14](#), [47:1-3](#), [48:14](#), [20](#)), and foretells that He will use **Cyrus** The Persian as a **shepherd** to return the Jews to their homeland and help them 'build' their **temple**, even as He establishes **Cyrus** over The Medo-Persian Empire ([44:28](#), [45:1](#)). Now I don't see any specific references to Greece or Rome in this **prophecy**. And this makes sense because there is apparently no 'comforting news' to be told about these particular 'world-ruling' kingdoms. But there is a lot of 'comforting news' about Jesus, about the contributions He makes as redeemer and savior who will suffer and die at His First Coming, without which there would be no hope of **comfort** or **good tidings** anytime later. And there is

'comforting news' about how He will **keep** His people and the **Gentiles** [42:6](#), one way or another, throughout The Great Tribulation, and a little here and there about His triumph at Armageddon, and much more about His rule as **King** over Israel from then on ([41:21](#), [43:15](#), [44:6](#)). And to sum all that up, Isaiah says,

The God of the whole earth shall he be called [54:5](#).

And there are a few descriptions of The Millennial Age, some of which we have already covered, and all these things being parts of a very 'comforting agenda'.

And one brief summary intended **to comfort all who mourn** is found in [Chapter 61](#). There Jesus 'reveals' His plan for The Age of Grace and The Great Tribulation...

...to preach good tidings unto the meek...[and] to bind up the brokenhearted, to proclaim liberty to the captives, and the opening of the prison to them that are bound; To proclaim the acceptable year of the LORD, and the day of vengeance of our God...

Now we **understand** here how Isaiah cannot see The Age of Grace. And Jews are still waiting for this Messiah to show up in the first place. But it's now plain to us Gentiles that we are experiencing **the acceptable year of the LORD**—The Church Age of Grace. And we now **know** that **the day of vengeance of our God**—the 'world-renowned, awesome, earthshaking, destructive, and supremely-respect-building' Great Tribulation—is still to come. And that if we're paying attention we can all 'sit it out', or at least be 'mercifully delivered' from it—all **good news**.

But the most 'comforting news' must be that there is an age coming that will even out do The Millennium. Remember [Isaiah 9:7](#)?

Of the increase of his government and peace there shall be no end, upon the throne of David, and upon his kingdom, to order it, and to establish it with judgment and with justice from henceforth even for ever. The zeal of the LORD of hosts will perform this.

Again, this is where I get the name The Eternal Age of **peace**. And I don't think it gets anymore comforting that this. But we **know** that even though this **kingdom** starts at the beginning of The Millennium, it's **prophesied** that there will be a 'break in the peace' when Satan is let out of **the bottom pit... for a little season** at the end The Millennium to 'raise hell'—and apparently he will. And the survivors of The Great Tribulation and their **offspring** will keep their 'sin natures' throughout The Millennium, so I expect that some of them—especially in **the nations**—will be found to be 'disturbing the peace' on occasion, however quickly it's restored **with a rod of iron** by Jesus, or later with **fire... from God out of heaven**. And we **know** an immeasurably large **number** of people will turn against God in The Last Rebellion so that He will again have to 'dump on' the Earth this one last time to restore the **peace**.

Still, we **understand** that this eternal **kingdom** must **grow** from its inception despite this final 'major purging' of the 'uncooperative' portion of the population. The fact that Jesus will **order it, and establish it with judgment and with justice** implies that during The Millennium there will be some 'minor disturbances' that will require His metaphorical **rod of iron**, and that this is why God will have to 'bring the hammer down' at the end of The Millennium. But like The Great Tribulation, The Last Rebellion will be a growing **experience** for those who survive it. And after The Millennium, in The New Heaven and The New Earth, and with New Jerusalem in place, I expect there will never again be any need for correction as severe as **a rod of iron** can administer, let alone any 'hammering' from God out of Heaven. We are going to live in a **kingdom** that never stops growing in **peace** in a **world without end** (45:17; Eph 3:21). This is more than comforting, it's comforting beyond imagination.

However it's true that the 24 elders are described as having **harps**, and in fact **harps** and different **harpers** are mentioned throughout John's **vision**. Add to that a never-ending and growing **peace**, and some expect we'll have what is commonly considered to be boredom. And though this is an understandable conclusion of a **simple** or immature mind that doesn't really **know** God, it cannot be the conclusion of anyone who really does know Him. I mean when Jesus says, **broad is the way, that leadeth to destruction, and many there be which go in thereat**, he's talking about people that think like this. And they're not really thinking about anyone other than themselves. And as Jesus makes clear, this kind of person is common. But those with the 'strait gate' perspective **understand** that God is great, and wonderful, and awesome beyond imagination, and so far 'over our heads' that we'll never 'reach' Him, and that it will be the most unimaginably incredible and neverending journey forever trying to get to **know** Him. And God will forever **continue** to 'meet us within reach' with growing challenges because we **know** that it's for His **pleasure** we were **created**. And remember that consistently growing **government** and **peace** implies a regular increase in **knowledge**, and in everything else that's **good** for that matter. Add to that His **promise** of a 'zealous administration'—I mean He is a passionate God after all—and you have an agenda for activity that's not just challenging, but mind-blowing—nothing anywhere near resembling boredom, and more to do than you **ever** will be able to imagine.

And there's plenty of room for all kinds of **zeal**. Surely if God is **zealous** about His Kingdom, He will want us to be too. And given all of eternity, there is no limit to how each of us will **learn** to express the lengths and depths and heights of our own **zeal**. But it's not too soon to get excited about it—or even too soon to get started. I mean the beginning of The Eternal Age of Peace certainly won't be 'the day the music died', but the exact opposite, and the beginning of unlimited opportunity to express your **zeal**. And really 'the music' is already playing for those who are listening.

And no matter what your passion, the synergy of our interconnected involvement will only greatly enhance it. I like how Paul puts it to the Ephesians. He says,

For through him we both have access by one Spirit unto the Father. Now therefore ye are no more strangers and

foreigners, but fellowcitizens with the saints, and of the household of God; And are built upon the foundation of the apostles and prophets, Jesus Christ himself being the chief corner stone; In whom all the building fitly framed together groweth unto an holy temple in the Lord: In whom ye also are builded together for an habitation of God through the Spirit
[Eph 2:18-22](#).

So take a clue. Since it should be clear by **now** that you can wind up near the top or bottom of this 'pyramid-shaped' **household of God**, this **study** is meant to get you started 'climbing up' this **great mountain** motivated by your **zeal** starting **now**. Because The Kingdom of God will be a diverse and growing administration forever, but it's an administration that's really already begun. Remember that **the kingdom of God is** [already] **within you** [Luke 17:21](#), and that The Word of God can 'spark' and 'feed' the **fire** of your **zeal**. Read [Isaiah 55](#) again.

So even if you're bored with your life **now** and have no challenges to inspire you at all, or if you feel overcome, and even if you think your miserable efforts are the best you can do, you can be **comforted** that when you finally find yourself in His externally recognizable **everlasting kingdom** that neither boredom nor defeat will ever again apply to you, and you'll be challenged beyond your imagination. But you are likely to be somewhat embarrassed if you wait to begin finding your **purpose** ([Rom 8:28-30](#); [Eph 1:11](#); [2 Tim 1:8-9](#)), and wait to develop your **gifts of the holy ghost** [Heb 2:4](#) until after you get there, because you're not suppose to wait till then. I mean there's no question that God has already given you a **purpose** and at least a **gift** or two to begin 'building' His **kingdom now**. And it will be unfortunate entering His Kingdom without even knowing what yours are, or entering knowing them and knowing that you left them mostly undeveloped. And God willing we'll get a chance to **study** some of God's **gifts** to mankind for his **purposes**. It's another **study** in itself. And if you don't already **know** yours, **continue** in The Word and they will eventually and unavoidably 'jump right out at you'. And **continuing** further will help you **grow** in their use for God's **purposes**. And such an effort will earn you a **better** and **greater** and more 'abundant' **entrance** into God's **everlasting kingdom**. He **promises**. And only accepting Jesus' sacrifice for your sins doesn't. It only gets you 'in the door', while **working** on your **gifts** and using them to **serve him** will get you 'promoted'. And there's time, so get busy, and **work... while it is day**: [because] **the night cometh, when no man can work** to improve his station in The Eternal Kingdom of God and of Christ anymore.

Now before we get back to the most 'comforting news' of Isaiah's **prophecy**, I mean back to the real 'pie in the sky', I want to try to reset the scene for the beginning of The Eternal Age of Peace. We're talking about the conditions that change to bring about this **everlasting kingdom**. And in looking for these conditions we should start to notice that Isaiah's reports on The Millennium and The Eternal Age are often merged together because of the many natural similarities between these two **ages**. And these descriptions also naturally merge with The Age of Grace too. Remember that Peter explains,

But, beloved, be not ignorant of this one thing, that one day is with the Lord as a thousand years, and a thousand years as one day [2 Pet 3:8](#).

So to God it all looks a lot closer together. He talks of these **ages** as if they develop over a very few days. And the precepts are 'layered' and 'mixed around' as usual. So the **comfort** Isaiah speaks of in these last **ages**, for Gentiles, really starts with The Age of Grace. And I mean this **everlasting kingdom** of God starts at the beginning of this age with Jesus and The Holy Spirit inside us. For Jews however, the transition begins near the end of The Age of Grace and more involves Jerusalem and the nation of Israel which is now developing before our very eyes. The point is that some conditions that exist in The Eternal Age are now already started. Distinguishing these conditions, and adding the changes in The Great Tribulation, and the changes in The Millennium, and the final changes at the beginning of The Eternal Age will produce the most complete picture of this final future eternal age. But again, we must **understand** that God sees these changes and shows them to us as if they are 'tightly squeezed' into a couple of days.

God's tendency to 'merge together' these conditions transpiring across these **ages** is seen in the following example. In this case we see conditions that I believe start in The Age of Grace, and others starting in The Great Tribulation, and others in The Millennium, and still others in The Eternal Age, all of which **shall not be abolished**, but all appear here as if they originate near the same time. Isaiah says,

...the LORD shall comfort Zion: he will comfort all her waste places; and he will make her wilderness like Eden, and her desert like the garden of the LORD; joy and gladness shall be found therein, thanksgiving, and the voice of melody... Lift up your eyes to the heavens, and look upon the earth beneath: for the heavens shall vanish away like smoke, and the earth shall wax old like a garment, and they that dwell therein shall die in like manner: but my salvation shall be for ever, and my righteousness shall not be abolished [51:3.6](#).

Israel is in the process of becoming **like Eden** even now. Sure, there will be a **short space** or two of 'interruption' during The Great Tribulation and during The Last Rebellion in that progress. But otherwise, this new 'trademark' for **Zion** will identify her **for ever** and **shall not be abolished** because God is even now being seen to **comfort all her waste places**. Also, **joy and gladness**, and **thanksgiving** and **melody** must **increase** from now on too, just as also the security and **peace** will. Though again, there will be some 'hiccups' along the way, like the point when they will all **mourn [Zec 12:10-14](#)**, as well as various other **trouble** along the way ([Dan 12:1](#)). But I expect all these 'hiccups' will be 'upstaged' by some breathtakingly encouraging 'fireworks shows' in the sky. This would include the triumphant spectacles of The 6th Seal Judgment, The 7th Plague Judgment, The Second Coming, and The Last Rebellion. And I already see the beginnings of **the increase of his government and peace** that must persist and **grow** long beyond the point that **the heavens shall vanish away like smoke**, even **for ever**.

And speaking of God's **salvation** which **shall be for ever**, some 'station assignments' are already determined for both Gentiles and Jews too. And I don't see that these assignments should really change from now on, though there are many more who must still **choose** their 'assignments', and though God already knows them and how He will 'influence' them, and though no one but God can confirm anyone's 'post' until they die or until they are 'translated alive' by rapture and begin their immortal adventures that go along with filling their 'posts'. Still, I think some of us already **understand** our 'marching orders' for our 'eternal assignments' in this eternal **government**. And some of us are already at **work** in it.

But there are profound universal changes that will take place at the beginning of The Eternal Age that we can distinguish. And many changes that will take place between now and then, some of which we have already discussed, which will be profound and permanent too. We looked at The Millennium in the last section in terms of its differences from The Age of Grace and The Great Tribulation. So now we can look at the transition from The Millennium to The Eternal Age of Peace and identify the new differences between all three of these **ages** and thereby define this final one.

The first and most obvious characteristic change that comes in the transition to The Eternal Age of Peace will be that the physical Heaven and Earth, including the Sun, and the Moon, and all the Stars, will forever **vanish**. And 'no sun' means no more 'physical life' as we know it. And this must mean that **the flesh** as we know it, that stuff that gets so much of the blame for **sin**, will be gone too. Remember that, besides Satan and his cohorts, the **little season** of 'rebellion' at the end of The Millennium can be blamed directly on **the flesh**. And Satan knows that mortals remain vulnerable to...

...the lust of the flesh, and the lust of the eyes, and the pride of life, [which] is not of the Father, but is of the [physical] world [1John 2:16](#).

So the existence of **the flesh** will make it necessary for this last major 'renovation'. Jesus speaks of this 'transition' when He says,

So shall it be at the end of the world: the angels shall come forth, and sever the wicked from among the just, And shall cast them into the furnace of fire: there shall be wailing and gnashing of teeth [Mat 13:49-50](#).

This event that marks **the end of the world** at the end of The Millennium also marks the beginning of The Eternal Age of Peace and identifies its most profound universal change. At this time God will permanently and finally **sever the wicked from among the just**.

And surely this is also the meaning of Jesus' famous parables where He separates **the wheat** from **the tares**, and **the sheep** from **the goats**, etc. From these parables we can also identify another rapture that is not included in the nine that occur in and around The Great Tribulation but must happen instead at the end of The Millennium. And putting together a couple of references, I call it the **harvest at the end of the world**.

Only the Apostle Matthew records the **parable** of **the wheat** and **the**

tares. In it Jesus assures us that **the reapers**, identified as **angels**, will gather the **tares** to be **burned**. Now **tares** are obviously "a wheat-like weed", and Jesus compares them to **the children of the wicked one**. Also Jesus tells His **reapers** to **gather the wheat into my barn**. And He tells us that **the wheat** represents **the children of the kingdom** who are **the righteous**. But Jesus says that He **speaketh... in parables** because He must keep **things... secret** that have been that way **from the foundation of the world**. But He tells his **disciples** that...

...it is given unto you to know the mysteries of the kingdom of heaven [Mat 13:11](#).

And we **know** that it's now given unto us too, because by revealing to his **disciples** the specific **interpretation** of **the parable of the tares of the field**, we can now **understand** that He is also revealing to us the **mysteries of the kingdom of heaven**. Are you ready for this? He interprets **the parable** saying,

He that soweth the good seed is the Son of man; The field is the world; the good seed are the children of the kingdom; but the tares [or the "wheat-like weeds"] are the children of the wicked one; The enemy that sowed them is the devil; the harvest is the end of the world; and the reapers are the angels. As therefore the tares are gathered and burned in the fire; so shall it be in the end of this world. The Son of man shall send forth his angels, and they shall gather out of his kingdom all things that offend, and them which do iniquity; And shall cast them into a furnace of fire: there shall be wailing and gnashing of teeth. Then shall the righteous shine forth as the sun in the kingdom of their Father. Who hath ears to hear, let him hear [Mat 13:36-43](#).

So in God's **kingdom**, at the end of The Millennium at **the end of the world**, there will still be in **his kingdom all things that offend, and them which do iniquity**. And **his angels** will not just come to **gather out... them which do iniquity**—evil people and angels—but also **all things that offend**, which must include **creatures** like those torturing **locusts** in **the bottomless pit** from The Fifth Trumpet Judgment, and that 200-million-strong **army of the** lion-headed, fire-breathing **horseman** of The Sixth Trumpet, and also those trouble-making, disembodied, angel-human half-breed "demons", and God knows what else.

Now let's look again at John's perspective of this event, but this time focusing on how **the angels shall come forth, and sever the wicked from among the just** in order to finally make an end of all **flesh**, and of **sin**, and of Satan and his **angels**, etc, because we are now able to read into it a little more than last time. John sees that...

...when the thousand years are expired, Satan [and his angels and whatever other 'monsters'] shall be loosed out of his prison, And shall go out to deceive the nations which are in the four quarters of the earth, Gog and Magog, to gather them together

to battle: the number of whom is as the sand of the sea. And they [obviously both a physical and spiritual army] **went up on the breadth of the earth, and compassed the camp of the saints about, and the beloved city: and fire came down from God out of heaven, and devoured them. And the devil** [and **all things that offend**] **that deceived them** [the humans **which do iniquity**] **was cast into the lake of fire and brimstone, where the beast and the false prophet are, and shall be tormented day and night for ever and ever** [Rev 20:7-10](#).

Apparently we see here the results of more **signs and wonders in heaven** defeating the enemies of God and again saving His people, not to mention Satan's **power and signs and lying wonders** that are again able to deceive **the wicked**. And probably that same **angel** that throws **Satan** chained into The Bottomless Pit a thousand years earlier will again **cast [the devil] into the lake of fire and brimstone** inside the Earth, where also Satan's angels, the Demons, and **all things that offend**, will finally all be sent to their **torment** where they will remain **for ever and ever**. This is another profound change that will permanently affect the nature of the entire Universe.

And of course Satan and his angels, among other **things**, are not the only 'offenders' to be put away, because next John says,

And I saw a great white throne, and him that sat on it, from whose face the earth and the heaven fled away; and there was found no place for them. And I saw the dead, small and great, stand before God; and the books were opened: and another book was opened, which is the book of life: and the dead were judged out of those things which were written in the books, according to their works. And the sea gave up the dead which were in it; and death and hell delivered up the dead which were in them: and they were judged every man according to their works. And death and hell were cast into the lake of fire. This is the second death [Rev 20:11-14](#).

This passage describes both the 'passing away' of Heaven and Earth and The Rapture of the Damned to The Final Great White Throne Judgment. And those participating in this rapture are those with 'newly reunited bodies and spirits'—their dead bodies coming from **the sea** or from **death**, which must be **the grave**, and their **spirits** coming from **hell**. These newly raptured and transformed but unredeemed persons are then finally righteously **judged** by God and **cast into the lake of fire** too.

By-the-way, another reason why I see both The Second Resurrection and The Rapture of the Damned occurring simultaneously as The Harvest at the End of The World is found in the sequence of events in Revelation 20. In [Verse 9](#) we see The Last Rebellion where the **disobedient** are 'handily disposed of' by God. This is where all the humans who die in this outpouring of **fire** must leave their 'cremated' **bodies** on the ground surrounding Israel while their **spirits** leave for a short stay **in hell**. Next, in [Verse 10](#), **Satan** and the other representatives of the 'spiritual realm' are remanded to The Lake of

Fire, apparently having already been **judged**, where they are to be **tormented day and night for ever and ever**. And following in [Verses 11-14](#) is the account of The Rapture of the Damned to The Final Great White Throne Judgment where we see a trial in which **the dead, small and great, stand before God** and are finally **judged** and **cast into the lake of fire**. Now the human survivors 'squeezed' into Millennial Israel—in **the camp of the saints... and the beloved city**—must be redeemed at this time too because this is when Heaven and Earth disappear—described as when **the earth and the heaven fled away; and there was found no place for them**. Also this must be when surviving mortals in **the nations** will be 'translated' too. So I expect that when **Heaven and earth shall pass away**, this is also when The Harvest at the End of the World occurs including The Second Resurrection where both the dead and those 'left alive' **in Christ** will see their redemption under 'sobering circumstances', which would be to witness The Final Great White Throne Judgment of those simultaneously participating in The Rapture of the Damned. But it's unclear to me exactly where The Second Resurrection Saints are 'assembled' at this time, and everyone else for that matter, though surely we can find some clues.

And Jesus seems to indicate that there is a sequence to these raptures in His **parable of the tares of the field**, more popularly called The Parable of the Wheat and the Tares ([Mat 13:24-30](#); [36-43](#)). In it He says about the **harvest at the end of the world** that **the angels** are told to...

...Gather ye together first the tares [or the wicked], and bind them in bundles to burn them: but gather the wheat into my barn [Mat 13:30](#).

And in His **interpretation** of the parable He speaks of how...

...his angels... shall gather out of his kingdom all things that offend, and them which do iniquity; And shall cast them into a furnace of fire: there shall be wailing and gnashing of teeth [Mat 13:41](#).

And that this will produce the result where...

...the righteous [shall] shine forth as the sun in the kingdom of their Father [Mat 13:43](#).

So putting it all together, apparently **all things that offend** are 'gathered out' **first**, apparently starting with Satan and all his cohorts, and next, and likely in the same 'twinkling of an eye', both **death and hell** and **the righteous** in Christ will be 'gathered out' too, because it apparently all happens when **Heaven and earth shall pass away**.

And the next thing John notices after his description of The Final Great White Throne Judgment—beginning in [Revelation 21](#)—is that there is **a new heaven and a new earth**. So apparently the **new** Creation appears as quickly as the old one 'passes away'. But it's not clear to me whether it happens simultaneously as **Heaven and earth shall pass away** or instead after The Final Great White Throne Judgment is over, except that in order for

The Final Great White Throne Judgment to be completed, I would guess that **the lake of fire** must already be inside the New Earth and available for God to cast **the wicked** into it. And again, it's unclear to me where The Second Resurrection Saints and all the rest of the redeemed will wait while the Damned are **judged**. Do we wait in the **new heaven** near God's **great white throne** somewhere in Heaven, or do we find ourselves on the new earth somehow viewing it all. Still we could be in some kind of a 'transitional universe'—no longer in the old Heaven or Earth and not yet in the New Heaven or Earth either. Whatever the case, I expect that we will all be able to see the proceedings of The Final Great White Throne Judgment. And I'm still going to call it The Second Resurrection even though this transportation may not initially transport its participants to Earth or the New Earth. And I'm sticking to this because Jesus' eternal kingdom 'on Earth' begins at the start of The Millennium. To me this makes this rapture, at least technically, a resurrection.

And one clue we have that these **saints** may all be immediately 'translated' from Earth to the New Earth comes from John's perspective. After **the dead... are judged** he next sees the New Heaven and Earth and then notices **the holy city, new Jerusalem, coming down from God out of heaven** [Rev 21:1-2](#). Remember that our first clue of The Rapture of the Pre-Church and the Church in John's perspective is that he is told to, **Come up hither**. This is similar—but in the opposite direction—to how John sees New Jerusalem **coming down** to where he is, apparently on the New Earth. And I would guess that The Second Resurrection Saints are waiting on the New Earth to see this spectacle with him, and that the rest of the Immortal Sons of God that have been with him in Jerusalem throughout The Millennium are too. And we might also expect that **coming down** inside New Jerusalem at this time with God would be all the Immortal Sons of God who were with Him in His Temple in the Old Heaven during The Millennium. And doesn't this imply that somehow some of the Immortals view The Great White Throne Judgment from the New Heaven and some from the New Earth? And hey, just getting to questions like these is enough accomplished for now.

But after all this, we **know** that God will be finally finished 'severing' **the wicked from among the just**. This would necessarily include **the wicked** humans that have been, up to this finale, living among God's people like **tares**. And this implies that Jesus and His 144,000 will have at least occasional use for **a rod of iron** in His Millennial **kingdom, to order it, and to establish it with judgment and with justice** [Isa 9:7](#). It also implies that you don't have to be **saved** to live in The Millennium, and that **many** people will **fall** or **fall away**. And they will be the ones **falling** because they **err from the truth** and **received not the love of the truth** causing them to be **cast, cast away, or castaway**—to become eternally **cut off** ([1Cor 3:11-15](#); [Mat 7:13-14](#); [Luke 8:13](#); [Heb 6:4-8](#); [2Pet 3:17](#); [2Thes 2:3](#); [Rom 14:13](#); [1Cor 10:12](#); [1Tim 3:6-7](#); [1Tim 6:9](#); [Heb 4:11](#); [2Pet 1:10](#); [Jude 1:24](#); [James 5:12, 19-20](#); [2Thes 2:10](#); [Mat 13:41-42, 49-50](#); [18:8-9](#); [22:12-13](#); [25:30](#); [Luke 12:5](#); [John 6:37](#); [15:6](#); [Rev 20:14-15](#); [1Cor 9:27](#); [Rom 11:22](#); [Gal 5:12](#), etc.)

Go on, use blbclassic.org (formerly BlueLetterBible.org) to do this little **study**. It's not anywhere near approaching 'exhaustive', pun intended. I mean you can expand it if you just type in (or copy and paste) these key KJV

search words and phrases from the last paragraph into the 'Bible/Dictionary Search' box, or into the 'Search the Bible' box, to get other groups of verses to **study** including the ones listed above. Or you can use your own Bible search engine. Or just use a Strong's or other exhaustive concordance along with a multi-translation study Bible—which also usually gives you the 'assistance' of scores of Greek and Hebrew scholars. But always include a KJV so you can settle their incessant 'disagreements'. And always do the **work** to **understand** the context.

By-the-way, I used all kinds of books and Bibles to do my **study** before I started this one and still occasionally do. It's just that I can access a variety of good reference material and over a dozen translations all at blbclassic.org, all with a focus on the KJV, and all a lot faster too. But there are plenty of ways to mishandle **scripture** no matter what 'translation' or 'resources' you use. And there is no one 'right way' to go about it. Different approaches will lead to different perspectives and oversights and errors. Still, blbclassic.org and/or the equivalent books, etc., are good 'precept-gathering tools' as long as you never become sure you've found all of them on any given topic.

And you might get the idea that I am against Bible reading. I'm not. It's a good way to supplement your growth because in reading through The Bible you will stumble across new precepts you would have never found in a concordance search. Reading through The Bible is also invaluable for context—especially for **babes**. And if you're not on some mission for God, regular Church attendance should give God regular opportunities not only to minister to you, but also to **teach you**—that's if you are not already finding even better growth opportunities by doing some **ministering** and **teaching** yourself. But if you do not yet consider yourself **apt to teach**, expect to rely on The Holy Spirit to **teach you**. I mean it's my **experience** that 'teachers'—likely including your pastor—regularly make errors. But you can **learn** either way—by committing yourself to **proving** the **truth** or **error** of **all things** and waiting on God until you do. Besides, finding mistakes or misinterpretations can lead to **revelations** that give 'tingles' that are just as big as the ones you get from the 'rightly handled' Word of God. And it's probably unavoidable that you'll find more opportunities for **learning** by discovering **errors** than through the 'rightly handled' Word of God. This is part of what Solomon means when he says that **in much wisdom is much grief: and he that increaseth knowledge increaseth sorrow** [Ecc 1:18](#).

But let me be clear. Neither I nor the Apostles recommend picking fights with the **ignorant** [1Cor 14:38](#). And you will even need to **learn** to control your excitement about your **revelations** if expressing it will only uselessly offend people. Just take a deep breath and count to 10. And I mean 10 years. Because if you don't have **experience** [Rom 5:3-5](#), you're a **novice** [1Tim 3:6](#). And you're definitely a **novice** if a lot of the **instruction** in this **study** on **rightly dividing the word of truth** is new to you, or even if it's just newly clear to you. Either way it means you have not yet begun to **handle** God's Word properly on a **continuing** basis. So wait at least a decade or so before you speak up to correct your '**elders**'—except maybe if you're already considered an '**elder**'—but then only if the Holy Spirit is 'burdening' you with the job. Because the perils of correction should be left to God and the 'spiritually mature' ([1Pet 5:5-6](#); [James 3:1](#)). And in the meantime you can rest assured that God is always and everywhere answering those who always and

everywhere are 'asking, seeking and knocking'. Remember I said God spoon-fed me? He's The One who will be putting all these precepts in your **path**. And the way that He will help you find what you need to **know** next should be an ethereal, supernatural, and personal **experience**. Either that or you may find yourself overusing phrases like, 'what a coincidence', or 'I was just wondering about that'.

By-the-way, an indispensable strategy to establish context—and avoid misinterpretation and other **error**—is to read as far as necessary before and after precepts until you find out who's speaking to whom and why. This will show you that some verses that you initially think apply actually don't. I mean many verses that come up in any concordance search won't all connect to the precepts you are focusing on—though I made sure that all the ones above that I pulled out do.

But whatever you do, stop deceiving yourself that you're 'safely coasting' into God's **everlasting kingdom**. Instead,

Be sober, be vigilant; because your adversary the devil, as a roaring lion, walketh about, seeking whom he may devour... 1
[Pet 5:8](#)

I mean if you have a clue you already **know** that many Christians will not make it—not that God doesn't already know who's who. But again, this is not our **experience** or perspective. Your perspective should include the attitude that you need to **work out your own salvation with fear and trembling** [Phil 2:12](#). This human perspective and attitude is your **full assurance** [Heb 6:10-12](#) that you'll make it. And only with this attitude should you say, as Paul says,

For I am persuaded, that neither death, nor life, nor angels, nor principalities, nor powers, nor things present, nor things to come, Nor height, nor depth, nor any other creature, shall be able to separate us from the love of God, which is in Christ Jesus our Lord [Rom 8:38](#).

Indeed nothing can separate you from **the love of God** but you yourself, because God is **the righteous judge**.

And after this Final Great White Throne Judgment, after God is finished 'severing' **the wicked from among the just**, this is when the **rejoicing** starts ([2 Cor 1:14](#)). Appropriately enough, Isaiah's **prophecy** contains a good deal of **instruction** by God to **rejoice** and **sing** with **joy** for this and other reasons ([42:10-12](#); [52:9](#); [61:10](#); [65:14,18](#); [66:10,14](#)). There is even repeated similar **instruction** extended to Creation itself including to the **heavens**. And I mean not just to the angels but to the 'heavenly bodies' too. And the same **instruction** is extended to the **earth** including **the mountains, the forests**, and the **lower parts of the earth** ([44:23](#); [49:13](#)). And this shouldn't be too big a surprise since Paul tells us that **the whole creation** is still 'groaning and travailing' **in pain until now** [Rom 8:22](#), and evidently will be until **the end of the world**. But all this **rejoicing** should already have started for you, and continue every time your picture grows of what it's all about.

Except, we also **know** that there is a point in time coming when we will watch many people, including some we have loved in spite of their **iniquity**, get 'tossed' into The Lake of Fire. God certainly will have **loved** them too, at least at some point. And surely some of them will be **saved** from this fate 'just in the nick of time' by God's "steadfast love" ([Lam 3:22-23](#)). And we **know** He will never be **willing that any should perish** [2 Pet 3:9](#). Still, in Isaiah's **prophecy** we are repeatedly instructed by God to **rejoice** and **sing** with **joy** even when God destroys these **that forsake the LORD** from among us ([41:15-16](#), [61:7](#); [65:11-15](#)). But evidently this is not humanly possible, at least for some people, without some help from God. And surely God knows it. This must be the main reason why God will have to stop the **weeping** and **crying** of His **people** first ([65:19](#)). In an earlier **prophecy** of Isaiah's God also makes clear that,

He will swallow up death in victory; and the Lord GOD will wipe away tears from off all faces [25:8](#).

Now this could apply somewhat to the various Great Tribulation raptures, but it's clearly not complete until just after The Harvest at the End of the World including The Second Resurrection, because only then will God finish the work to completely **swallow up death in victory** and completely **wipe away tears from off all faces**. And later in this same **prophecy** we are told more about **the wicked** God will **sever from the just**. Isaiah reports,

They are dead, they shall not live; they are deceased, they shall not rise: therefore hast thou visited and destroyed them, and made all their memory to perish [26:14](#).

So this situation at **the end of the world** will require, evidently, another profound universal change as important as all the others so far. God must 'make' the **memory** of the **dead... to perish**, in order to **wipe away tears from off all faces**. And back in Isaiah's biggest **prophecy** God makes clear when this critical change occurs. God says,

...the former troubles are forgotten, and... they are hid from mine eyes. For, behold, I create new heavens and a new earth: and the former shall not be remembered, nor come into mind [65:16-17](#).

So evidently sometime just after you see some of your 'former loved-ones' **cast into the lake of fire**, we get a 'memory wipe', serving to **wipe away tears from off all faces**, without which we could not **greatly rejoice in the LORD** as He intends us to do.

John speaks of this change too in [Revelation 21:1-5](#). He tells us that this happens just after The Final Great White Throne Judgment starting when he saw that **earth and heaven fled away** [Rev 20:11](#), at which time the **new heaven** and **new earth** may become immediately visible—just not the immediate focus of attention. Surely the center of attention at this point is The Great White Throne and The Lake of Fire that apparently becomes visible to all. And I should admit that I don't **know** whether this final judgment

happens **'in the twinkling of an eye'** or rather in a slow, one-at-a-time process. But Jesus and John tell us God will **'judge' every man according to [his or their] works** ([Mat 16:27](#); [Rev 20:13](#)). And Jesus and Paul speak plainly that **nothing** is **secret** or **hidden** that will not eventually **be made manifest** and **be known... abroad** ([Mark 4:22](#), [Luke 8:17](#), [1 Cor 4:5](#)). And once, just after remarking about **the leaven of the Pharisees, which is hypocrisy**, Jesus explains,

For there is nothing covered, that shall not be revealed; neither hid, that shall not be known. Therefore whatsoever ye have spoken in darkness shall be heard in the light; and that which ye have spoken in the ear in closets shall be proclaimed upon the housetops [Luke 12:1-3](#).

Many have presumed that this kind of 'complete disclosure' must happen at The Final Great White Throne Judgment, and must imply an extensive one-by-one process of judgment so that everyone can hear what everyone else has done. And it's not like there won't be enough time to do it. There will be an eternity available. And however many billions of people that will need to be **judged**, it's still a finite number. But if God can do 'mass selective memory wipes', I'm sure he can also do 'mass selective memory implants' too. And I just mean that I **believe** that He could do it all at once if He wanted to. But again, it's not like that there's going to be any hurry either, is there? Except that however this judgment 'goes down' it must be an extremely unpleasant process with all the **weeping and gnashing of teeth** and everything. Still, and though we can't yet see through the 'dark glass' clearly enough to **know** how this all will work, we do **know** this is when The Lake of Fire will somehow get 'eternally stocked' with the bodies and spirits of the **dead**. And that they, from then on, **shall be tormented... for ever and ever**.

But there are other judgments to consider. There is **the judgment seat of Christ** that I expect must happen **'in the twinkling of an eye'** during The Rapture of the Pre-Church and the Church, because I've done the math and there's not really enough time for it to take any longer. Here's what I mean. The Judgment Seat of Christ is identified in [Romans 14:10-12](#) as when **every one of us** [Christians] **shall give account of himself to God**, and in [2 Corinthians 5:10](#) as when **every one [of us] may receive the things done in his body, according to that he hath done, whether it be good or bad**. And this **reward** and **loss** that will be experienced on that **day** is also described in [1 Corinthians 3](#). And in all these references Paul is talking to the Church, so this judgment must happen in the **moment** of The Rapture of the Pre-Church and the Church, all just before the start of The Great Tribulation. I mean, let's say just a couple hundred million people are saved in this rapture—and hopefully there are really a lot more saved than this—though I don't see how anymore could fit into Millennial Jerusalem. But say if as **few** as 200 million are **saved**, and each individual gets just 10 seconds to be **give** their **account** to God, this would take over 63 years to complete (200,000,000 people x 10 sec ÷ 60 sec/min ÷ 60 min/hr ÷ 24 hrs/day ÷ 365 days/yr = 63.42 years). And remember The Great Tribulation is only 7 years long. And this doesn't consider the 'time' needed to **judge** The Tribulation Gentiles, The 144,000, The Tribulation Jews, The Final Harvest Saints, and The

First Resurrection Martyrs. There would just not be enough time to **judge** them all in a conventional time frame. Of course, God could put us all in some other dimension where it will seem like a lot of time passes when it's just a **moment** on Earth. But however we **experience** it, The Judgment Seat of Christ must happen **'in a moment'** relative to the time that passes on Earth, and it would be reasonable to assume that all the other judgments happen the same way—relatively instantaneously. However it's a scary thought that if as **few** as 200,000 are **saved**, then 10-second individual 'judgment slots' for **every one** would take less than a month to get through. Do the math.

But we **know** that most people will suffer a 'first death', and that all those that reject Jesus will suffer a **second death**. And it will not be instantaneous or oblivion. It will be eternal **torment**. But God wants us to **understand** that getting rid of these **dead** is our gain. At this point **all flesh** and all **spiritual wickedness** of all kinds will be put away, leaving no more 'sin nature' and no more **troubles** [65:16-17](#). At this point neither Jesus nor His 144,000 will any longer need to **rule with a rod of iron** because this was only necessary because of **the flesh**. And this is certainly among the most 'comforting news' so far. I mean, it will be once we're passed the 'memory wipe'.

And we **know** our personal 'groaning' will be over at The Rapture of the Pre-Church and the Church when we experience **the redemption of our body**. However beyond that point, we must witness others and Creation itself continue to **groan** until...

...the creature [or Creation] itself also shall be delivered from the bondage of corruption into the glorious liberty of the children of God... [Rom 8:19-23](#)

It's only after that—1007 years later to be exact—that the last **tears** for the Old Earth will be shed and then the **rejoicing** for the New Earth will begin, because then the 'groaning of Creation' and the 'groaning of the flesh' ([2 Cor 5:1-5](#)) will be over and forgotten. And what a day of rejoicing it will be. Can I get couple of amens and a few alleluias?

And here I am coming round and round again and again to the same topics just like Isaiah, and just like The Word of God naturally does. And this is one way God hides **the truth** from those not **worthy** to **hear** it. If you're not willing to **continue** to 'make the rounds', **exercising** in this way again and again, you will not **learn** as much of **the truth**. **Again**, because I can't remind you enough, the secret is this. Growth in God's **wisdom** and **knowledge** comes only when you **continue** with **diligence** to **study** and **exercise** in a neverending process of 'stacking' and 'sorting' **precept upon precept** from **here a little** and **there a little** from all over The Word of God. And Paul warns,

...your faith should not stand in the wisdom [or the methods] of men... But we [Paul and his friends] speak the wisdom of God in a mystery, even the hidden wisdom, which God ordained before the world unto our glory [1Cor 2:5-7](#).

And I read here that if **we**—Paul and **friends**—use the **wisdom of God**, then **we** can get the **glory**. This must include the **glory** that can be had by properly **handling** God's Word God's way, which is opposed to the **shame**—at best—that comes by 'mishandling' it, or remaining **ignorant** of it. And by-the-way, in the next verse it's exactly this **ignorance** of how to properly **handle** God's Word that 'misleads' Satan and **the princes of this world** to 'crucify' **the Lord of glory**. Surely Satan himself failed in **rightly dividing the word of truth** and was found **unskilful in the word of righteousness**, totally put to **shame** when he crucified Jesus. The point is that if you are not **handling** God's 'mysterious' Word His way, no matter how smart you think you are, you too are being 'misled', at least to some extent. This is why Paul repeatedly warns that **a little leaven leaveneth the whole lump**. And he applies this to both erroneous **teaching** ([Gal 5:1-9](#)), and to those who are all **puffed up** and **glorying** in their false doctrine and wrong behavior ([1 Cor 5:1-7](#)). The solution? **Purge out therefore the old leaven**. This is really what this **study** is all about, because I have **handled** God's Word His way throughout.

But that great day when God shall **make all things new** is both for **the great** and **the least** in the **everlasting kingdom** of God. Because then...

...God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes; and there shall be no more death, neither sorrow, nor crying, neither shall there be any more pain: for the former things are passed away... [and] he that sat upon the throne said, Behold, I make all things new [Rev 21:4-5](#).

And only then will our focus be able to change to how God has made **all things new**. And things will be very different from the physical World that we are all used to. Then there will be no more **death, sorrow, crying**, nor **pain**, and neither any **violence** nor **mourning, wasting nor destruction**, and neither a **sun**, a **moon**, nor any **stars**, nor **seas**, and at the same time, **there shall be no night there**. Both Isaiah and John provide a comforting description of this strange **new** environment. Isaiah says,

Violence shall no more be heard in thy land, wasting nor destruction within thy borders; but thou shalt call thy walls Salvation, and thy gates Praise. The sun shall be no more thy light by day; neither for brightness shall the moon give light unto thee: but the LORD shall be unto thee an everlasting light, and thy God thy glory. Thy sun shall no more go down; neither shall thy moon withdraw itself: for the LORD shall be thine everlasting light, and the days of thy mourning shall be ended. Thy people also shall be all righteous: they shall inherit the land for ever, the branch of my planting, the work of my hands, that I may be glorified [60:18-21](#).

Along these lines John says,

I saw a new heaven and a new earth: for the first heaven and the first earth were passed away; and there was no more sea... And the city [new Jerusalem] had no need of the sun, neither of the moon, to shine in it: for the glory of God did lighten it, and the Lamb is the light thereof. And the nations of them which are saved shall walk in the light of it: and the kings of the earth do bring their glory and honour into it. And the gates of it shall not be shut at all by day... And there shall be no night there; and they need no candle, neither light of the sun; for the Lord God giveth them light: and they shall reign for ever and ever [Rev 21:1; 23-25; 22:5](#).

And just like we'll have ***no need of the sun, neither of the moon*** anymore because the ***light of God*** and ***the Lamb*** will then serve that purpose, so I believe that there will be no more need for any celestial stars either because...

...they that be wise shall shine as the brightness of the firmament; and they that turn many to righteousness as the stars for ever and ever [Dan 12:3](#).

And these distinct individual ***light*** sources must be an eternal testimony of a discriminating ***reward*** that ***every one*** within their stations ***may receive*** and that cannot be hidden. And I mean that I'm seeing in this verse that ***every one*** will have a 'brightness level' from ***the greatest*** to ***the least*** in ***the kingdom of Heaven***. And evidently some of the 'brighter ones' will ***shine*** so bright because they are ***wise*** enough to be of greater service to God, and they surely become even brighter ***stars*** as they ***turn many to righteousness***. And by contrast, this will leave many others I could call 'dim-lits'—

if you see what I mean.

And remember when it comes to ***wisdom***, we're talking about an unending journey of innumerable precepts—because precepts can be put together in larger and larger groups to ***reveal*** increasingly 'meatier' new ones endlessly. And I expect that in eternity that one of the essential differences between the brighter and dimmer immortals will be that some waited longer to get started than others. And I'm guessing 'late-starters' generally never catch up. And in this case 'never' is a very, very long time. Provoked? I hope so. Because this is part of what Paul means when he says we should...

...consider one another to provoke [one another] unto love and to good works [Heb 10:24](#).

But even if you don't become a 'star', you can still look forward to unimaginably rich and luxurious décor and accommodations in ***new Jerusalem***. And you and your new World won't be made of that 'groaning' physical material anymore, but of the 'painless' spiritual kind. So we're talking about a kind of 'pie in the sky' that will be better than anything you could get here, and even if you could ***gain the whole world***—including the

richest and most luxurious circumstances you can possibly imagine. Of course just like 'brightness levels', I expect that there will be obvious differences with immortals in this respect too, the best accommodations going to the formerly **afflicted**, and to those who had experienced being 'storm-**tossed**' for Jesus, and to those not **comforted** in this World. Still, any **new Jerusalem** 'city-dweller' should experience unimaginably rich 'accommodations' on a regular basis. Isaiah gives us a peek, saying,

For the mountains shall depart, and the hills be removed; but my kindness shall not depart from thee, neither shall the covenant of my peace be removed, saith the LORD that hath mercy on thee. O thou afflicted, tossed with tempest, and not comforted, behold, I will lay thy stones with fair colours, and lay thy foundations with sapphires. And I will make thy windows of agates, and thy gates of carbuncles, and all thy borders of pleasant stones. And all thy children shall be taught of the LORD; and great shall be the peace of thy children. In righteousness shalt thou be established: thou shalt be far from oppression; for thou shalt not fear: and from terror; for it shall not come near thee (54:10-14).

Here again we see a mix of details in God's perspective that could apply to either The Millennial or Eternal Ages or really both. Of course, **the mountains shall depart, and the hills be removed** at the end of The Great Tribulation just before Jesus' establishes His eternal kingdom on Earth. But some of the **kindness** that God speaks of here will not be seen until the Eternal Age because remember that the 'bejeweled city', **new Jerusalem**, will not 'come **down from God out of heaven** until The Millennium is over ([Rev 21:2](#)), though Millennial Jerusalem should be pretty spectacular too. And what about those **children**? Could they exist in all these **ages**? It keeps the question open for me anyway.

But surely we will not even get a glimpse of the full expression of God's **kindness** until The Eternal Age. And this would be the unimaginable, out-of-this-World luxury of New Jerusalem. God tells us that Jesus **will lay thy stones** [of your city] **with fair colours, and lay thy foundations with sapphires. And I will make thy windows of agates, and thy gates of carbuncles** ["crystals"], **and all thy borders** [or walls] **of pleasant stones**. In [Revelation 21](#), John also sees this incredibly 'bejeweled city'—possibly now still presently 'under construction'—**coming down from** [and apparently **with**] **God out of [a new] heaven** onto **a new earth** just after **the first heaven and the first earth were passed [away]**.

And I should also make clear that we see again in [Isaiah 54:10-14](#) what Peter means when he tells us that **one day is with the Lord as a thousand years, and a thousand years as one day**, because **the LORD** is describing here a period that to Him is just a little more than **one day**—from the end of the sixth day marked by the 'mountain-leveling' finale to The Great Tribulation to just beyond the seventh day marked by the arrival of 'sparkling' New Jerusalem at the start of The Eternal Age—The Millennium being the seventh day of his 7000-year, or from God's perspective, 7-day plan. Again, and **God willing**, we'll talk more about this whole week in the

next **study**.

And speaking of impressive buildings of God, [The Great Pyramid of Giza](#) in Egypt is the greatest marvel of physical construction ever erected. This is because it was built for and by God. Isaiah tells us of...

...an altar to the LORD in the midst of the land of Egypt, and a pillar [or "monument"] **at the** [Upper and Lower Egyptian] **border thereof to the LORD. And it** [this **altar** and **pillar** being one and the same] **shall be for a sign and for a witness unto the LORD of hosts in the land of Egypt** [Isa 19:19-20](#).

Here we have another riddle. There is **an altar to the LORD** in the form of a **pillar** that is simultaneously **in the midst of the land of Egypt, and... at the border thereof**. This riddle is solved by The Great Pyramid which is in the middle of Egypt on the Giza Plateau which puts it at the border of Upper and Lower Egypt. It has been called by those who **understand** it 'The Word of God in Stone'. And it absolutely is. It's the only one in Egypt that will survive The Final Great Earthquake at the end of The Great Tribulation. All the counterfeits, including its present two equally large companions, along with all the mountains—except **the mountain of the Lord**—will be leveled.

[The Great Pyramid](#) (black and white photo, [p.555](#)) sits on 13 acres with its four corner socket footings penetrating the bedrock of the Giza Plateau. This, and its 'curve of the Earth' matching faces, and the still yet to be back-engineered 'mortar' that holds its enormous stones together, make it 'unshakably' stable unlike any other pyramid in the World. But it's presently missing its brilliantly polished

limestone surface—it was robbed by Muslims to build their mosques following the rise of their religion in the 7th century. And it's also missing its "capstone" or, **The stone which the builders rejected** [which] **is become the head of the corner** or **the chief corner stone** ([Psa 118:22-23](#); [Mat 21:42](#); [Mark 12:10-11](#); [Luke 20:17](#); [Eph 2:20](#); [1Pet 2:6](#); [Isa 28:16](#)). And when this **chief corner stone** is finally placed on top, it will be a concrete metaphor for Jesus Himself. And this missing **headstone** of this massive pyramid is also a concrete metaphor that Jesus has not yet come to establish His eternal kingdom. But in The Millennium this "capstone" will be installed ([Zec 4:7](#)), and then this **altar** and **pillar... to the Lord** will surely be restored even beyond

its former glory.

And then it will finally be **understood** by all—as some of us already **know**—that the entire pyramid—inside and out—is a concrete representation of the Earth itself, and of the Earth’s position in Heaven, and most importantly of the entire Word of God. I hope to cover this topic in much more detail in the future, but this information is not hidden—just lost in a lot of misinformation and counterfeit pyramids. Professor at the University of Edinburgh and Astronomer Royal for Scotland, the late (Charles) Piazzi Smyth helped break this news about The Great Pyramid to the modern World in his book, ***Our Inheritance in the Great Pyramid*** in 1864 which he expanded over time and later called, ***The Great Pyramid: Its Secrets and Mysteries Revealed***. Joseph Augustus Seiss also helped inform the World with his work, ***A Miracle in Stone: or, The Great Pyramid of Egypt*** in 1877. And if you want an exhaustive **study** try Adam Rutherford’s four volume set entitled, ***Pyramidology***, (Books I - IV), though they are out of print and becoming rare. The inset picture comes from one of these volumes of which I own the first three. And this should be enough clues to get us started with some ideas as to what Millennial and New Jerusalem will look like.

According to Isaiah's **prophecy**, this **altar, pillar, sign, and witness unto the LORD of hosts in the land of Egypt** must remain there at least throughout The Millennium. Such a marvel—the only thing that will survive all The Great Earthquakes of The Great Tribulation—provides impressive evidence that The Lord can build anything He wants in this present physical World. And it leads me to think that The Millennial Temple and Millennial Jerusalem, even given their size, will be quite formidable and built with substantial quantities of precious metals and jewels. But Ezekiel mostly just gives us the dimensions of these constructions, though we **know** from His account that construction with **wood** [Eze 41:16; 22-26](#) and **hewn** (or cut) **stone** [40:42](#) is prescribed for some parts of The Millennial Temple and its buildings. And this seems to imply that everything else is made of something else. And Isaiah provides what I believe is a list of the upgraded Millennial Jerusalem building materials when he records God saying,

For brass I will bring gold, and for iron I will bring silver, and for wood brass, and for stones iron: I will also make thy officers peace, and thine exactors righteousness. Violence shall no more be heard in thy land, wasting nor destruction within thy borders; but thou shalt call thy walls Salvation, and thy gates Praise [60:17](#).

John gives us some dimensions of New Jerusalem too, and like Isaiah does, provides an even more opulent list of building materials not including wood, iron, brass, or common stone. And from these descriptions we can see that there are not a lot of comparisons between New Jerusalem and Millennial Jerusalem or even to The Great Pyramid. But there are some. And I mean if you take ideas from Millennial Jerusalem and The Great Pyramid, and then add what John tells us about New Jerusalem—and then think 'out of this World'—you should get some idea what it will be like.

To start with, we **know** that New Jerusalem in The Eternal Age will not have a **temple**. In John's description of New Jerusalem He says,

I saw no temple therein: for the Lord God Almighty and the Lamb are the temple of it... [as well as] ***the light thereof*** [Rev 21:22-23](#).

Also the unimaginably vast size of the jewels used in the construction of New Jerusalem is clearly 'out of this World'. But it can be thought of as just another 'big step up' from Isaiah's upgrades for Millennial Jerusalem that are not seen in previous temples either. Another striking difference is the incredible size of New Jerusalem, though The Great Pyramid is immense as a physical structure, and it could in some ways be a model of New Jerusalem, as we will see.

John calls the eternal **great city** of God, **the bride, the Lamb's wife**. This must be because it accommodates the Immortals that represent **the wife** of Jesus. And I'm assuming that this includes not only The Pre-Church and the Church, but also The Final Harvest Saints, and in a more general way, everyone that lives with Him in His city. And I mean that it must accommodate other immediate members of His family including everyone

from Millennial Israel that Isaiah sees as close to Him **as a bridegroom** [who] **decketh himself with ornaments** ([61:10](#); [62:1-5](#)). And this must include The 144,000 Virgins, The First Resurrection Martyrs, and also some of The Second Resurrection Saints—the ones that live in Millennial Israel too. The rest of the redeemed from The Second Resurrection should occupy **the nations** of the New Earth. And **coming down** with God from Heaven in New Jerusalem must be the rest of the Immortals including The Gentile Temple Servants, but probably also The Jewish Temple Servants too, and possibly also The Two Witnesses, and maybe also The Temple Altar Martyrs—though my best guess is that these are a subset of **the wife** and already on Earth with Jesus. The members of each of these groups must serve in their positions in what we can now identify as at least eight different general stations—all serving God and Jesus eternally in an 'ever-increasing' **government** and **peace** [Isa 9:6-7](#). See again the [CHART of the Raptures and Stations of the Immortals](#) on [page 518](#).

And speaking of this future **great city**, Jesus says,

In my Father's house are many mansions: if it were not so, I would have told you. I go to prepare a place for you. And if I go and prepare a place for you, I will come again, and receive you unto myself; that where I am, there ye may be also [John 14:2-3](#).

Remember He was originally only saying this to the Jews, so it's clear Jesus expects Jews will live in this **place** 'where He is', and that they are His originally intended **bride** and members of His 'immediate family'. And surely He is 'gone' **to prepare** this **place** now. And we should expect that **many** of Gods currently occupied **mansions** will eventually fall out of use. They will all be abandoned, and apparently **vanish**, because eventually God and everyone else with Him, and Jesus and everyone else with Him, must move into New Jerusalem to live on the New Earth. But I don't **know** if we'll get to see New Jerusalem before we see it **coming down from God out of heaven, prepared as a bride adorned for her husband** [Rev 21:1-2](#)—not that I'm worried that it would be bad luck or anything.

But I am sure 'she' will be a beauty. And one of the most striking things about her is that she will be so large. Remember we are told that God's people in Millennial Jerusalem will have occasion to complain about being 'cramped for space'. But this can no longer be the case in New Jerusalem. It will easily accommodate the entire population of New Earth as needed. And evidently New Jerusalem will be used for that purpose since John tells us that, much like in Millennium Jerusalem,

...the nations of them which are saved shall walk in the light of it: and the kings of the earth do bring their glory and honour into it. And the gates of it shall not be shut at all by day: for there shall be no night there. And they shall bring the glory and honour of the nations into it [Rev 21:24](#).

But New Jerusalem will be much larger than Millennial Jerusalem by far. My first impression of it—as I was taught—was that John is describing a city in the shape of an enormous cube. But it eventually occurred to me that it

could just as well be a pentahedron ([audio error](#))—a five-sided pyramid with a square bottom like The Great Pyramid. This **great city** measures **twelve thousand furlongs** [or **stadia**]... in **length, breadth, and height**. This is nearly 1400 miles **foursquare**, and the same distance upward, assuming it is correct to say that one **furlong** (or **stadion** in the Greek) is about 607 feet (or 185 meters) as most annotated 'Bibles' indicate or imply. This would make the ground floor of this city equivalent to about half the area of the mainland of The United States—a square as long as from Maine to Florida on one side, and from Washington, D.C. to Colorado on the other. And if it's a cube it will have a little more than half the volume of the Moon. By-the-way, the Moon has a diameter of about 2,160 miles—can you do the math? If not you'll have to take my word for it or ask someone else and take theirs. But if you're reading this as opposed to listening to it you may remember I got C's in Calculus, though this is just simple algebra. But remember even the 'rocket scientists' at NASA have made some astonishingly simple errors with serious consequences—much like some 'Bible translators' have.

The reason some suggest that New Jerusalem will be in the shape of a cube is because they say it represents the 'holy part' of the temple's shape from previous temples. But certainly not everyone sees all these **most holy** halves of the previous temples as 'cube-shaped'. And those opting for a cube shape for New Jerusalem probably have not yet done the math on The Millennial Temple, most likely because they don't really have a clue what it really looks like. But it's easily enough determined—if you're familiar with Sir Isaac Newton's work on the sacred cubit—that the Millennial **temple** or **tabernacle**, and in this case I mean the **inner temple** or **inner house**, is **twenty cubits** x **forty cubits**, making it about 40 x 80 feet ([Eze 40:47-41:2](#)). And that the **most holy** half of this **temple** and **sanctuary** is **twenty cubits** x **twenty cubits** or about 40 x 40 feet ([Eze 41:3-4](#)). But this **temple** in the **inner court** is apparently surrounded by **chambers**—I'm thinking small alcoves—that are 'mostly unattached' to **the house** ([Eze 41:6; 16-20](#)). They rise in three levels, possibly **thirty** of these **side chambers** in each level making 90 altogether, with each level being **a full reed of six great** [or "full"] **cubits** in **height**, or about 12 feet high each. This makes just the **most holy** half of **the house**, not including the **side chambers round about** but assuming it rises as high they do, to be about 40 x 40 x 36 feet ([Eze 41:5-8](#)). And adding the depth of these **side chambers** of **five cubits** or 10 feet ([Eze 41:9](#)) makes the entire construction of this half of the **inner temple** probably 60 feet wide x 50 feet long x 36 feet high. But however these measurements are interpreted the 'holy half' doesn't seem to be a cube. With or without these **side chambers** it's more like a rectangular cuboid, also referred to as a rectangular hexahedron, or rectangular prism, or rectangular parallelepiped, but more commonly known of as a 'rectangular box'.

And by-the-way, in Verse 8 I like the Young's Literal Translation (YNG). It best helped me see what I think the KJV is saying in this verse. But again, you'll find more contradiction among the modern translations in this **prophecy** than you can 'shake a stick at'. And even some among the older versions. And the KJV is too often unclear to me in some of these verses. But get a clue, popular commentators on **scripture** tend to lean to the translations they depend on, and the translations they depend on too often

lean on interpretations that contradict the KJV and others. But even if the Jews have lost track of the designs of past temples it's not a problem. They can still get the details for ones still to be built the same way they got them in the past—by the **inspiration of God**. So I can't see how anyone can **know** for sure, nor any necessity to yet know for sure, exactly what any of these buildings will really look like, though evidently some think they already do because they publish their disagreements about it as 'Holy Scripture'.

And if you're someone who is finally starting to 'lose footing' that you once thought was 'solid', let me finish 'sweeping you off your feet'. A closer look at [Verse 7](#) changes the picture even more. This verse seems to describe the **inner house** as more like an 'inverted rectangular stepped pyramid' that is formed by the 3 levels of the **side chambers** where each level becomes increasingly wider as it rises. In Solomon's Temple the lower level was **...five cubits broad, and the middle was six cubits broad, and the third was seven cubits broad** [1Kings 6:6](#). And this would be more like an 'upside-down step pyramid' than a 'box', or closer to what you might call an 'inverted trapezoidally stepped cuboid', otherwise known as a 'trapezoidally stepped hexahedron', or a 'trapezoidally stepped prism', but in this case more like an 'upside-down gold brick with ridges'.

And all this should remind you to be careful not to get too 'boxed-in' when it comes to interpreting **scripture**. And I mean if it's speculation, leave it as speculation. And the idea that New Jerusalem will be in the shape of a cube is at best speculation, and likely based on flawed assumptions, but certainly on a perspective that is way too 'narrow' in scope.

And by-the-way, only a few of the modern 'translations' specify that these **side chambers** surrounding **the house** are somehow accessible by a "stairway", though all of them at least imply that there is one, while most of the older translations don't as clearly indicate a "stairway" at all. They instead only clearly describe a building rising in widening levels "like steps". And only one modern 'translation' adds that these **side chambers** are "priests' rooms". So apparently any 'clarification' that these "side rooms" that surround **the house** are "priest's rooms" or that they are accessible by a "stairway" are inserted in Chapter 41 where they probably don't belong. And I mean that the 'multi-use' **holy chambers** of **the priests** are clearly identified in [Ezekiel 42:13-14](#). And the problem is that these "priest's rooms" in Chapter 42 are different **chambers** than the ones described in Chapter 41, because the specifically described "priest's rooms" are in the **building** that surrounds the **inner court** and **temple**. So it occurs to me that there may not be a "stairway" servicing these **chambers** in the **inner court**—at least in the way it is imagined in some of the modern 'translations'. But I can't say for sure what the 30 or 90 **side chambers** built around the **inner temple** are for. But since each are only **four cubits** or 8 feet wide ([Ezek 41:5](#)), I'm guessing they're too small for anything except as an effective 'guard rail' to keep **the priests** from inadvertently touching the wall of the **most holy place**, and except for adding a formidable 'bas-relief decorative effect', though I suppose they could be part of the required temple "storerooms" as mentioned in previous temples in [1Chronicles 9 and 23](#), and [Nehemiah 10](#). But Ezekiel's descriptions of all the uses of all the "priests' chambers" in the **utter court** and connected to the **inner court** are well defined and seem to cover all their needs, so it's curious that the purpose of these **side chambers**

surrounding the **inner temple** is not defined—possibly giving us a clue that there is some kind of **hidden** purpose for them, something **which from the beginning of the world hath been hid in God**. And I mean maybe these **side chambers** are for the Immortals who wouldn't necessarily need a "stairway". Then again, stairs are not described in other places where they are obviously needed. And these **side chambers** may be needed for "storerooms" for all the **offerings**. But then what are those evidently enormous **twenty chambers** in the Levite's second portion for? ([Eze 45:5](#)) Overflow? Whatever the case, and despite all the confusing and contradicting 'clarifications' added by modern 'translators', we can always **continue** to wait on the **inspiration** and **faithfulness** of God to add to our **understanding**.

But I think better evidence and a much wider view of things favors a pyramid shape for New Jerusalem. The basis of this idea is that Jesus is frequently called the **chief corner stone** ([Eph 2:20](#); [1 Pet 2:6](#); [Isa 28:16](#)), or calls himself **the head stone of the corner** ([Psa 118:22-23](#); [Mat 21:42](#); [Mark 12:10-11](#); [Luke 20:17](#))—which one translation renders the "capstone". The point is that a cube doesn't have a **chief corner stone**. But a five-sided pyramid does on its top. Peter quotes Isaiah and brings attention to this concrete metaphor that identifies Jesus, saying,

Wherefore also it is contained in the scripture, Behold, I lay in Sion a chief corner stone, elect, precious: and he that believeth on him shall not be confounded [1Pet 2:6](#); [Isa 28:16](#).

Or maybe the present pyramid-shaped **altar** in Egypt, which in due course will be renovated, might also finally be transformed into spiritual material and remain forever the "monument" to Him and God that will preserve this **chief corner stone** symbolism. I mean I'm not ruling out that **the holy city**, New Jerusalem, might be 'cube-shaped'. This is possible as long as this **altar** in Egypt will not be in the way of the placement of New Jerusalem. But it could be. In fact the size of New Jerusalem gives me reason to think that many **nations** surrounding Jerusalem will not be '**saved**' and go out of existence because it will be sitting where a number of them used to be. Either that or they will have to 'scoot over' some in order to make room for this supernaturally immense megalithic city. If centered over present day Jerusalem it would cover up most of present day Egypt, and a lot of Southwest Asia.

And we can count on the fact that other **nations** such as **Gog and Magog** will make extra room too. Isaiah's **prophecy** tells us that...

...the nation and kingdom that will not serve thee shall perish; yea, those nations shall be utterly wasted [60:12](#).

And the context here comes from the previous verse. And it's in God's perspective. It's a perspective that views the entire Millennium and its conclusion as if it's just 'one day'. The destruction described must happen at the end of The Millennium and must follow a time when Jerusalem's **gates shall be open continually...** [and] **not be shut day nor night**, and at a point when some **nations** will be finally judged as disobedient and **utterly**

wasted forevermore. And I would guess that these **utterly wasted** nations should include some of those who have been way too 'chummy' with the 'habitually rebellious' **Gog and Magog**, including several 'Israel-hating' Muslim nations very close to Israel, but probably also China and some of her allies, not to mention the Antichrist Kingdom and some of her allies. Kind of makes me think that only '**few**' nations will survive too.

So as David sings in [Psalms 122:6](#),

Pray for the peace of Jerusalem.

Indeed, but also that your countrymen will do the same, because surely it's the 'saved nations' where a good number of the eternal **sons of God** will come from. But Christians who think the Church has 'replaced' the Jews will get **correction** [2 Tim 3:16-17](#) or **rejected** [Heb 6:8-9](#) and better sooner than later for the rest of us. And the best way **you** can help with this is to accept your responsibilities of everlasting "citizenship" in this eternal "commonwealth" right now ([Phil 3:20](#)). And **pray** with **fear and trembling** ([Psa 2:11](#); [Phil 2:12](#)) so that you won't be excluded from it. And be on guard against that **roaring lion**, your **adversary, the devil** [1 Pet 5:8](#). Because regrettably, there is an uncomfortably good chance that you may end up in The Great Tribulation and therefore never live with Jesus in New Jerusalem—or even anywhere on the New Earth for that matter. On the other hand, as Peter says, **if ye do these things**, or as Jesus says, **if ye continue in my words**, then you can as Paul says,

Be careful for (or worry about) ***nothing; but in every thing by prayer and supplication with thanksgiving let your requests be made known unto God. And the peace of God, which passeth all understanding, shall keep your hearts and minds through Christ Jesus*** [Phil 4:6-7](#).

Or as Jesus says, ***ye shall know the truth and the truth shall make you free.***

Now being hundreds of miles tall it's natural to expect that New Jerusalem will be multileveled. I imagine too that God's **light** shining through it means that significant parts of it will be transparent which should enhance the city's beauty. And John sees this astronomically large 'sparkling jewel' to be multicolored and placed on a **great and high mountain** [Rev 21:10](#), surely greater and higher than the one Millennial Jerusalem will sit on ([Ezekiel 40:2](#)). But both are called **mount Zion** or **mount Sion** (e.g., [Isa 18:7](#); [24:23](#); [31:4](#); [Jer 31:6](#); [Joel 2:32](#); [Oba 1:17](#); [Micah 4:7](#)). And up to the point when New Jerusalem **comes down** out of Heaven, The Father remains on **mount Sion** in Heaven, in **the temple of the tabernacle of the testimony in heaven** in **the heavenly Jerusalem** ([Heb 12:22](#); [Rev 14:1](#); [15:1-6](#); [21:1-3](#)). But at this point the temples in Heaven and on Earth cease operations—and cease to exist—because this is when the old Heaven and Earth **shall pass away**, and when...

...the throne of God and of the Lamb shall be in it [in new Jerusalem]... And they [his servants] shall see his face; and his name [Rev 22:3-4](#).

But I'm not certain where The Great White Throne from Revelation 20 is in this picture. We **know** it's seen by John when **the earth and the heaven fled away; and there was found no place for them**. But is this the same **throne** that John **saw** God also **sat upon** in New Jerusalem in Chapter 21? And is it the same one John **saw** that God **sat on** following The Rapture of the Pre-Church and the Church in Chapter 4? It's hard to say, but there seems to be a difference between God's **throne** on Mount Zion in The Temple in Heaven from the one in New Jerusalem and even from the one He will sit on in The Final Great White Throne Judgment, if only in location. One reason this seems to be implied is because Jesus doesn't **go to prepare** New Jerusalem until after His Ascension into Heaven 40 days after His Resurrection, and because apparently The Temple in The Old Heaven—the one in existence now—'disappears' before The Great White Throne Judgment starts. But I'm still guessing that part of the **torment** of the Damned will be that they get to see The New Heaven and Earth, and **the throne of God and of the Lamb** along with the opulence of New Jerusalem before they 'take the big plunge'. Either that or there is a separate **throne of judgment**, or maybe The Throne in the old Heaven doesn't disappear right away though everything else does. But by John's description, this **great white throne** seems to stand out from the others as **great** and **white**, which leads me to think there are at least three different Thrones of God involved in His plans. On the other hand, it also occurs to me that the colossal size of New Jerusalem might imply it will be big enough to accommodate all The Damned for their trial, just like The Lake of Fire inside Earth will be big enough to hold them. And I'm guessing it will be big enough for the relatively **few** redeemed **sons of God** and all the **angels** too, so that everyone will be able to participate in The Final Great White Throne Judgment together—except remember John sees New Jerusalem **coming down from God out of heaven** after The Final Great White Throne Judgment is over, which seems to imply **we** remain separated until then. And here you can see again that **revelations** like these leave us with even more questions than answers.

John first sees New Jerusalem to be like one big **jasper stone, clear as crystal** [Rev 21:11](#). From this I assume that we can expect a general transparent appearance. And Isaiah adds that its exterior resembles a rainbow that is made of probably a dozen transparent **stones with fair colours** [Isa 54:11](#). John next describes a **great and high** perimeter **wall** around the city, with **twelve gates**, three on each side, sentried by **twelve angels**, and each **gate** 'named' for one **of the twelve tribes of the children of Israel** [Rev 21:12-13](#). But is this a giant **wall** with **gates** around a much bigger pyramid? Or are these **gates** simply found on the sides of a pyramid or cube? There are also the **twelve foundations**—I'm guessing levels—visible in **the wall**. So I presume that the **wall**, whether around a pyramid or simply the sides of a pyramid or cube, has 12 equal **foundations** or 'levels' on which are written **the names of the twelve apostles of the Lamb** [Rev 21:14](#). But I'm not sure if these **foundations** go up the entire 1400 miles of the sides of the city or if they are only mostly beneath it,

though Isaiah's observations seem to indicate that this 'rainbow effect' applies to the city as a whole. But I am sure we'll see inscribed in **the wall** the name of **Paul** instead of **Matthias** ([Acts 1:15-26](#); [9:1-31](#); [13:9](#)). And it also occurs to me that those from the 'saved nations' that come to the city will be able to see with a corner view up to half the names of the Jewish patriarchs of the **twelve tribes**, but from any angle all the names of the **twelve apostles**, and long before they arrive. Why do you suppose this is?

So let's imagine a couple possible construction designs for the fun of it. Let's say that we're talking about a cube or pyramid without a separate 'surrounding wall', but instead with walls 12,000 stadia or 1400 miles high with **foundations** or levels within **the wall of the city** that are exactly 1000 stadia each or about 117 miles high each. In this case I would imagine that the gates would be found in the first foundation but that they would greatly dwarf the St. Louis Arch, and that a name of one of the **tribes** could be found over each gate, plus a name of one of the **apostles** on each foundation running up the 1400-mile-high wall. And I could expect that these names are written in letters maybe 100 miles high. Then again, I should also expect that there will be a top floor or 'cap floor' for God and Jesus on top making each 'foundation' a little smaller. But I would expect that these names on **the walls of the city** that sits on **a great and high mountain**, as well as the light emanating from the top, would be able to be seen from all the inhabited parts of the New Earth, and endlessly into the New Heaven.

Now the walls are said to be 144 **cubits** or evidently about 300 feet or 100 yards thick—again assuming Doc Newton's right about those 25 inch cubits, and also that it's not one of those special 'temple cubits' that uses an extra **handbreadth** [Eze 43:13](#). Whichever the case, **the walls of the city** are about as thick as a football field is long. But I can't be sure if this wall-thickness is a necessary structural engineering dynamic due to some new kind of 'gravity', or just a symbolic rendering of invulnerability—or both. But building engineers could speculate about what the new real or symbolic parameters of this new 'gravity' might be given these building materials and dimensions. And in this case I would have to trust them on the math. And whether this new gravity is real or symbolic, the impression alone made by such walls is incomparably magnificent. But beyond this, I'll let you speculate about other possible constructions, and the other possible purposes for it, on your own. And I think you should. It's kind of like what Paul says about the coming Rapture of the Pre-Church and the Church. Remember he says,

Wherefore comfort one another with these words [1 Thes 4:18](#).

And I mean, how much excited anticipation do some people enjoy planning vacations to far inferior destinations now?

The materials King David **prepared** for King Solomon to use to construct the original temple in Jerusalem are listed in [1 Chronicles 29:2](#).

Now I have prepared with all my might for the house of my God the gold for things to be made of gold, and the silver for things of silver, and the brass for things of brass, the iron for things of iron, and wood for things of wood; onyx stones, and stones to be

set, glistening stones, and of divers colours, and all manner of precious stones, and marble stones in abundance.

But in The Millennial Temple and New Jerusalem we should expect significant 'upgrades', though more likely 'downgrades' in The Tribulation Temple.

The 'upgrades' that Jesus speaks of in Isaiah's **prophecy** must be about The Millennial Temple. He says,

For brass I will bring gold, and for iron I will bring silver, and for wood brass, and for stones iron [60:17](#).

And evidently John is speaking of New Jerusalem's even better 'upgrades' when he only mentions...

...precious stones, pearls and gold [Rev 21:18-21](#).

Or maybe some of the materials Jesus lists will be used for the interior construction of New Jerusalem too, because He follows this list by speaking in terms that must apply to The Eternal Age, saying,

Violence shall no more be heard in thy land, wasting nor destruction within thy borders; but thou shalt call thy walls Salvation, and thy gates Praise. The sun shall be no more thy light by day; neither for brightness shall the moon give light unto thee: but the LORD shall be unto thee an everlasting light, and thy God thy glory. Thy sun shall no more go down; neither shall thy moon withdraw itself: for the LORD shall be thine everlasting light, and the days of thy mourning shall be ended [60:18-20](#).

So this brings me back to thinking that the new 'building standard' must only apply to the 'sunless' and 'moonless' Eternal Age.

Or maybe Jesus will become the **everlasting light** starting in The Millennial Age because Ezekiel reports,

...the glory of the LORD came into the house by the way of the gate whose prospect is toward the east [Eze 43:4](#).

But I don't expect that He will be so bright then that He and The Father will negate the need for the Sun in that age. And The Father won't be on Earth in The Millennium anyway. And though we **know** Jesus comes like **lightning [Mat 24:27](#)**, and in a way that **every eye shall see him [Rev 1:7](#)**, we also **know** that there are numerous occasions in the Gospels where The Resurrected Christ is on this Earth and still looks, feels, walks and eats just like anyone else. And so much so that if you weren't expecting Him He could easily hide his identity from you (e.g., [Luke 24](#)). So I'm not expecting Him to continually **shine** until The Eternal Age.

And it's more likely, if we **understand** that Isaiah often reports God's perspective, that He is again showing us the entire process when—or 'the day' when—Jesus brings first **officers of peace** and **extractors of**

righteousness, and eventually the end of **Violence, wasting**, and **destruction**, and finally the end of **the sun** and **the moon** too, as if all this will all be happening on the same 'day', when for us it will really be about 1000 years. And this is just like the passage we looked at earlier where Jesus does mention all the 'jewels', and when He says,

O thou afflicted, tossed with tempest, and not comforted, behold, I will lay thy stones with fair colours, and lay thy foundations with sapphires. And I will make thy windows of agates, and thy gates of carbuncles, and all thy borders of pleasant stones [54:11-12](#).

Remember that these verses are within a passage that indicates events and situations that must occur both in The Millennium and The Eternal age, and as if it all happens on the same 'day'. So I suspect that these 'building standards' Jesus speaks of in Isaiah's **prophecy** somewhat merge together the 'upgrades'—the first 'upgrade' being for Millennial Jerusalem and its Temple and the second being for New Jerusalem.

But we can see distinct events and circumstance within this **day** too. I mean that in God's perspective Jesus might focus on the preponderance of jewels in the final 'upgrades' for New Jerusalem to mark the **day**. Or He might instead focus on the materials used to upgrade The Millennial Temple to mark it. Both events in God's perspective would be appropriate markers of the beginning of His eternal kingdom and only about **a day** apart. And this leaves room for material 'upgrades' for both Millennial and New Jerusalem, and a way for us to see the difference between the two. So I expect that New Jerusalem's 'upgrades' finally eliminate **wood** and **stone** altogether, and possibly also **iron, brass**, and even **silver** too. However, **iron, brass**, and **silver** may still be used inside New Jerusalem as there is little mention by Isaiah or John of its interior construction.

By-the way, I think 'staircases' between floors inside New Jerusalem would be unnecessarily time consuming. I mean it's 1400 miles to the top. Gracious, that would be over 7 million foot-high steps. So I instead expect we'll do some 'floating around' and 'through' things, or instantaneously transport ourselves wherever we want **like** Jesus did after His Resurrection. I mean as John says,

Beloved, now are we the sons of God, and it doth not yet appear what we shall be: but we know that, when he shall appear, we shall be like him; for we shall see him as he is [1 John 3:2](#).

And if Jesus could do such things on the physical Earth as recorded in the Gospels, imagine what we will be able to do on a spiritual one when **we** are **like him**. Yes, I mean really try. Of course this should provoke another **study** of the Gospels, etc.

Another clue about what New Jerusalem will look like may come from Daniel's **prophecy** about **a stone** [that] **was cut out without hands** that **became a great mountain, and filled the whole earth** [Dan 2:34-35](#). Daniel tells us this **great mountain** represents Jesus and His eternal

kingdom ([44-45](#)), which you might assume implies the pyramid-shape of New Jerusalem. And **a stone** implies the **precious stones** as **clear as** crystal, all **cut out without hands**, that are to be used in the 'preparation' of **the holy city** New Jerusalem, as well as for its "capstone". And this metaphor for Jesus is also seen where God says,

Behold, I lay in Sion [for a foundation] a chief corner stone, elect, precious: and he that believeth on him shall not be confounded ([Isa 28:16](#); [1 Pet 2:6](#)).

And imagining a **foundation** that at the same time is a **chief corner stone** cannot imply that it's on the very bottom, just as at least eleven of the **twelve foundations** cannot be, but instead that it's a "capstone" on top of the city. And both Isaiah and Peter assure us that if we **understand** and **believe** this, we should be **comforted** and **rest** in the **knowledge** that an ever-increasing **government** and **peace** are inevitable.

Of course if you're someone who really likes shoes I guess you could be in for some disappointment, because I doubt we'll be wearing them much anymore in The Eternal Age, at least inside **the holy city**, because I'm guessing everywhere you step may be **holy ground** ([Exo 3:5](#); [Act 7:33](#)). But surely we'll all need to make adjustments to our present preferences—especially if you're not a Jew. This is something else to think about anyway.

So most if not all of the specific 'spiritual building materials' Jesus is evidently now using to **prepare** New Jerusalem are likely listed by both Isaiah and John. John specifies,

And the building of the wall of it was of jasper: and the city was pure gold, like unto clear glass. And the foundations of the wall of the city were garnished with all manner of precious stones. The first foundation was jasper; the second, sapphire; the third, a chalcedony; the fourth, an emerald; The fifth, sardonyx; the sixth, sardius; the seventh, chrysolite; the eighth, beryl; the ninth, a topaz; the tenth, a chrysoprasus; the eleventh, a jacinth; the twelfth, an amethyst. And the twelve gates were twelve pearls; every several [or individual] gate was of one pearl: and the street of the city was pure gold, as it were transparent glass. [Rev 21:18-21](#).

Now the fact that **the building of the wall of** the city is *of jasper*, and **the foundations of the wall of the city** are made of 12 different **precious stones** including **jasper** seems confusing. It leads you to think that the 12 jewel **foundations** are a different wall than **the building of the wall of** the city, which John says is all *of jasper*. So this could be a pyramid with a perimeter wall. But the definition of **jasper** in The Eaton Bible Dictionary says that it's "a gem of various colours", as does Webster's. And as **jasper** from the original Hebrew also means simply "glittering", it may be that it is being used here in both a more general and a specific way. In general it's the overall look of the 'multicolored glittering wall', and specifically it's one of the **stones** of **fair colours** of the **twelve foundations**. And this could be the case if the city is a pyramid or a cube without an additional perimeter wall.

But whichever the case, we can imagine that from a distance it would look like an enormous 12 layered 'rainbow' atop a mountain, because I imagine that these unimaginably large, precisely formed, transparent 'foundation stones' will be 'backlit' by God and Jesus themselves. So whether pyramid or cube, or running along the bottom or comprising the entire height of the city, these **foundations** will forever be symbolically promising the World that it will never be destroyed again ([Gen 9:11-17](#)).

And it may be that the **twelve gates** [Rev 21:21](#), made of 12 supernaturally large 'single' **pearls** that are 'cut without hand', are simply 'arch-lined' with these **pearls**. I mean, though these **gates** are posted with **angels**, they may have no bars or doors to them. This occurs to me because **the gates... shall not be shut** [Rev 21:25](#). So if there are any bars or doors involved in these **gates** made of **pearls**, their only purpose is decorative and symbolic of God's 'open door policy'. And 'pearl-lined' entryways with no doors of any kind could indicate an age when the sin nature no longer influences the World. Then again, with such doors we could be constantly reminded that we came from such a World. So for me it could go either way. We could even talk about the same need or lack thereof for personal doors within New Jerusalem. There's got to be some differences like this.

But we do **know** that **the wall of the city** and **the street** will be **clear as crystal** and like **transparent glass**, respectively. And **transparent** streets would let **light** through from the upper levels to the lower ones, since I expect that **God and the Lamb** would live on the top level. Of course God's kind of spiritual **light** may penetrate all 'solid objects' even as we should be able to do so. Unless, as Isaiah records, God intends for us to get our **light** through the **windows of agates** He mentions, which implies you won't be able to see through at least some of the interior walls and floors. And evidently we ourselves will also **shine** at our own individual 'brightness levels'. And we also **know** that enough **light** will emanate from the city so that the 'saved nations' **shall walk in the light** of it too [Rev 21:24](#). So there must be plenty of transparent **precious stones** and **gold** that are as **clear as crystal** or **transparent glass** throughout New Jerusalem to make sure that New Jerusalem and the New Earth are always well lit.

And we certainly won't have to worry about anyone 'throwing stones'. Not that you could break anything if you threw one, because the walls and windows should be way too thick and made of harder **stones** than you normally imagine picking up and throwing—not to mention that such **violence** will **no more be heard**. And whatever the case, we will find ourselves in a city where what used to be least common has become the most common, and where what was last becomes first, forever. Do you **know** what I mean?

The next thing John is shown inside the city is evidently the source of the New Earth's sustenance which is seen **proceeding out of the throne of God and of the Lamb**. John sees,

...a pure river of water of life, clear as crystal, proceeding out of the throne of God and of the Lamb. In the midst of the street of it, and on either side of the river, was there the tree of life, which bare twelve manner of fruits, and yielded her fruit every month: and the leaves of the tree were for the healing of the nations [Rev 22:1-2](#).

So I'm guessing *it*—the ***pure river of the water of life, clear as crystal***—will look just like ***the street*** except *it* will be moving ***in the midst of a ' tree-lined avenue'***. However some of the modern translators try to make sense of this line in other ways. I'm also guessing that these ***fruits*** will be used in eternity's ***solemn feasts***, and this could imply that we will all finally be vegetarians again, because there will evidently be plenty of ***fruits*** but no temple for sacrificing animals anymore.

But why should ***the nations*** need '***healing***'? I mean, because the next thing John assures us of after he tells us that ***the leaves of the tree were for the healing of the nations*** is that ***there shall be no more curse*** [Rev 22:3](#)—supposedly again implying that there will be no more ***sin, pain, sickness or disease, or death***. So are we talking about accidents or mishaps of some kind? Or maybe emotional pain from misunderstandings or oversights? Such problems are still likely since none of us will ever be ***omnipotent*** like God. I mean without 'perfect knowledge' we can't be perfect, and we should remain somewhat prone to mistakes, accidents, mishaps, oversights, and errors, even inconsiderate behavior, however decreasingly so. But surely this ***water*** and these ***fruits*** and ***leaves*** will not only 'cure what ails you'. I'm guessing that they will also be so good tasting that you won't miss any of the food or drink from this World that you now might think you wouldn't want to do without.

John speaks in general terms of the occupants of New Jerusalem, that they are God's 'sons' and 'overcomers' that ***shall inherit all things*** [Rev 21:7](#), and ***his servants*** [that] ***shall serve him*** [Rev 22:3](#), not clearly distinguishing the different stations of service. And this is one of the reasons why so many immature Christians, long saved or not, who are not in the habit of looking too far and wide on any given topic, and who commonly compartmentalize or forget applicable precepts that they have ***learned*** previously, and who are as a result still far too 'self-centered', think we'll all pretty much have the same station. But we now ***know*** that there are eight or more different groups of the immortal ***sons of God*** discernable from precepts all over The Bible that can be read into John's account of New Jerusalem. And there is a clear distinction here between the New Jerusalem 'city dwellers' and ***the nations*** who only 'occasionally' ***bring their glory and honour into*** the city from the outside. And if you're looking a little more closely you'll also notice that John distinguishes God's obviously 'city-dwelling' ***holy prophets*** [Rev 22:6](#). But the rest of the stations of service must be brought into John's account, from ***here a little, and there a little***. And God knows I'm not done with the job, and that some of it is supposed to be a surprise.

And we shouldn't forget that ***all*** of God's ***angels*** will live there too. At The Rapture of the Pre-Church and the Church we even get a count of them. Remember we are told that there are 'some millions more than 100 million ***angels***' in attendance at ***the throne*** of God. John gives this figure to us in a math problem. He says,

...the number of them was ten thousand times ten thousand, and thousands of thousands [including ***the four beasts*** and the 24 ***elders***] [Rev 5:11](#).

And I assume this to be **all the angels** still on God's side because we are told at the next rapture that **all the angels stood round about the throne** then too ([Rev 7:11](#)). And remember I don't expect this number will include Satan and his angels, though I could be wrong since they will not be barred from Heaven until after these 'accountings'—and this would change some of my earlier calculations if I am wrong about this.

But Satan and his angels will surely be gone before New Jerusalem arrives on Earth. And the **angel** that John says **shewed** him **these things** about New Jerusalem says of himself to John,

I am thy fellowservant [Rev 22:9](#).

And this begs a **study** of 'the stations of angels' throughout the ages. And I expect there is much more information than what we have covered in this **study** available throughout The Bible that can give us an idea of some of the kinds of things that they will be doing in eternity too. Another time, God willing.

By-the-way, it's also possible that the over 100 million angels **round about the throne** could also indicate the number of people that will be saved. I mean since we **know** that God's **angels** must constantly 'attend' to His **predestinated** people, and especially to the **little ones** ([Eph 1:5-11](#); [Rom 8:28-39](#); [Mat 18:10](#)), then this might indicate the approximate number of those who are **chosen** to be redeemed. But maybe not, because we're not all alive at the same time, unless most of these **angels** are intended to be our eternal companions too. I mean they could get pretty close to us over a lifetime and much more so over eternity. I **know** one saved my life at least once—and that if he's still responsible for me that he has had a mostly thankless job since then too. And just the possibility alone that this could be how things really work makes me want to do better. But who knows if the total number of angels is near the total number of Christians that will be saved, or maybe instead near the number of Christians that can be alive at any given time. We can only hope for the larger number. And still we must consider that it's possible that $\frac{1}{3}$ of these **angels** at the time of this count are Satan's and not included because they are doomed to be **cast out** $3\frac{1}{2}$ years later—which may dash our hopes for a higher number some.

But do you see that pendulum swing—I mean about how many immortals and angels will make it to live in New Jerusalem and in the nations on New Earth? That many angels implies that there are at least that many immortals or more. It also implies that Millennial Jerusalem will be 'cr-ow-ded'—pronounced with three syllables for emphasis. And that many Immortals will have to serve God in Heaven during The Millennium just for the space considerations alone. And if that many angels are on the job and rotating as children grow up and die and new ones are born—well, that could provide quite a lot of 'coverage'.

And here's where I 'swing' a little more 'Calvinistic' than usual too. I don't see how 'less than 200 million angels'—possibly $\frac{1}{3}$ being Satan's—could individually and continually service just all the 'children' that are alive today—not to mention that some of these good angels must have other stations too. So maybe God only has His 'guardian angels' looking after the 'pre-selected' number of **his chosen ones** in **this generation** and in **every** other, which

ultimately limits—in God's 'grand perspective'—the ones who will live in Millennial and New Jerusalem and in the nations of New Earth ([1Chron 16:13](#); [Psa 71:18](#); [Isa 65](#)).

But whatever the case, only God can **know** in advance who will forever **abide** in Him ([John 13-17](#)). Because though He somehow puts His angels to work watching over us even before we are **saved**, it still all feels like 'free-wheeling' Arminianism to us, at least most of the time. But an exception might be when, for example, you **know** you've been miraculously saved from a fatal accident because it should have been impossible to survive it. However, if you're like me it may take years for you to recognize even this kind of handiwork by your **fellow servant**. And hopefully you have identified one or more of these special 'guardian angel moments' yourself. But just because you don't **know** of any doesn't mean anything except that you haven't experienced an incident where it was impossible to hide the fact that you were miraculously saved. Still, to those of us who are sure of such **miracles** it means a lot. And such testimony should encourage those of you who haven't experienced them. I mean, you've got to **believe** they're hard at work on our behalf, and that sometimes they can't hide it, so that there must really be some fantastic stories out there about our buddies the Angels of God.

Finally, there is one more place where the various stations of the immortal **sons of God** can be somewhat distinguished. This is in Jesus' closing plea to anyone **that heareth**. He says,

And the Spirit and the bride say, Come. And let him that heareth say, Come. And let him that is athirst come. And whosoever will, let him take the water of life freely [Rev 22:17](#).

Besides sounding very 'Arminianistic', this implies the coming of **the bride** is a done deal, but also that there are others who will 'hear' that will decide to **come** too, and that others who will 'thirst' will also decide to **come**, and that still others who will desire it enough will eventually decide to **come** too. The point is that there must be other groups of the Immortal Sons of God that **hear** this plea of **the Spirit and the bride** and somehow join them.

And we **know** that before The Resurrection in **other ages** [Eph 3:5](#) that God revealed Himself primarily by His awesome displays of power and thereby separated out His **accepted** [Acts 10:35](#), and that in this Age of Grace The Spirit of Conviction is The One to **reprove the world of sin, and of righteousness, and of judgment** ([John 16:8](#)), and God continues to **draw** this part of the **bride** to her **husband** Jesus up to The Rapture of the Pre-church and the Church ([John 6:44](#); [12:32](#)), but again I expect He will draw another part of His Son's **bride** by awesome displays throughout The Great Tribulation.

We also **know** that the **wrath** of God in the early Beginning of Sorrows will be enough to get the attention of more 'Gentiles'—including some 'crossover Jews'—who will trust Him before they mercifully die. This would be the Gentile Temple Servants who are The 2nd Group of the Immortal Sons of God. And remember that there will be **no temple** in New Jerusalem. So maybe they're the ones who will harvest the 'monthly' **fruits** and **leaves** for **healing** from The Tree of Life on either side of The River of Life flowing out of The

Throne of God in New Jerusalem ([Rev 22:1-2](#)). I mean it would make sense that God would want **servants** who are already very close to Him for this task.

And the rest of The Great Tribulation will get the attention of more Jews and Gentiles to **come** and **serve** God. The Immortal Jewish Sons of God that God **gathers** to **Israel** one way or another—including Gentile 'crossovers' or proselytes—will be split into at least 6 groups, but I expect two of these should end up as part of **the bride**, making probably only 4 new groups of the Immortal Sons of God at the end of the **day**. The first of these 6 Jewish groups escape The Days of Vengeance untouched and escape Earth alive evidently just before The Abomination of Desolation. These are The 144,000 **virgins** and **firstfruits** who become Jesus' permanent 'entourage' **whithersoever he goeth**. This would be The 3rd Group of the Immortal Sons of God and surely a **better** station than most.

The second of these 6 Jewish groups are the Two Witnesses which I count as The 4th Group of the Immortal Sons of God and necessarily the most exclusive group. And I expect they will suffer greatly for their station. And if they are Moses and Elijah as I suspect, they already have. And we've already seen that these two are very close to Jesus, even conferring with Him before the fact about **his decease** on the cross ([Luke 9:28-31](#)).

The third of these 6 Jewish groups is another one to escape The Days of Vengeance untouched. These find refuge and safety in a **place prepared of God** during The Days of Vengeance, and their ultimate redemption when they are finally rescued by Jesus on His trip around The Lord's Triangle at the end of The Great Tribulation. But I also assume this group includes other Jews who make it to Israel by the end of in The Beginning of Sorrows and somehow also survive The Great Tribulation to live in Israel in The Millennium. And though all these Jews remain mortal for some time into The Millennium, and though they miss The Marriage of the Lamb in Heaven, I can only assume that they are part of the originally **chosen** Jews to become part of Jesus' symbolic **wife** forevermore. And this should mean they really don't count as a new group of the Immortal Sons of God because they are really part of The 1st Group—The Bride. I **believe** Paul is assuring us of this when he says,

...have you not heard of the dispensation of grace? ...[a] revelation... [a] mystery... Which in other ages [or dispensations] was not made known unto the sons of men, as it is now revealed unto his holy apostles and prophets by the Spirit; That the Gentiles should be fellowheirs [with the Jews], and of the same body [and bride and wife of Christ], and partakers [with them] of his promise in Christ by the gospel... which from the beginning of the world hath been hid in God [Eph 3](#).

And read again [Romans 11](#) if this isn't clear enough.

The fourth of the 6 Jewish groups are those that fail to escape after The Abomination of Desolation and are all quickly executed for refusing The Absolute Enforcement of the Worship of Satan and the Antichrist. But shortly thereafter these Jews disappear from the Earth and go to be with God in His Temple on Mount Zion in Heaven, and probably stay with Him as His personal servants forevermore. Maybe they too will help with the harvest of **fruit**

every month in New Jerusalem. Or maybe they will be worship leaders. Or maybe they will attend to other things, or all of these things and more. But whatever they do, this distinct assembly is The 5th Group of the Immortal Sons of God, and evidently they must work in very close proximity with The Gentile Temple Servants. And maybe in some respects they will be considered just one group.

The fifth of the 6 Jewish groups I'm guessing cannot be exclusively Jewish—and that's not counting proselytes. This group includes Jews who do not escape to **Bozrah** in **Idumea** (probably Petra) after The Abomination of Desolation but somehow avoid the initial Absolute Enforcement of the Worship of Satan and the Antichrist but are eventually nonetheless mercifully killed by God sometime during The Days of Vengeance, probably in one of His judgments, but necessarily not **beheaded** by the Antichrist. And I'm assuming that this group also includes 'unbeheaded' Gentile **believers** from all over the World who die anytime after The Rapture of the Tribulation Gentiles. And I'm sure all these believers who somehow keep their heads but also somehow expire later in The Great Tribulation will at least make the guest list at The Marriage of The Lamb in time. But as this group includes redeemed, 70th-Week, 'real Jews', I can only think that they are part of the originally revealed Bride too. And I suspect that everyone in this Final Harvest Rapture will be part of the Bride, and therefore not a new group but another part of The 1st Group of the Immortal Sons of God, though they do get to this station a different way. But what else could The Final Harvest at the end of The 70th Week be for anyway? However I have to be clear that there is still a lot of speculation in all of this, though since Darby we've come a long way from his exclusive two groups, and though all the groups I'm differentiating probably don't quite take us all the way either.

The last of the 6 Jewish groups is another one that must also accommodate Gentiles. This distinct group includes the casualties in the slaughter of The Absolute Enforcement of the Worship of Satan and the Antichrist. The Gentiles in this group will be killed throughout The Days of Vengeance, but the Jews in this group must survive the initial slaughter or apparently they would join the Jewish Temple Servants on Mount Zion in Heaven. So these Jews must survive at least a short time into The Days of Vengeance but as other Gentiles be ultimately trapped and executed for refusing to participate in the threefold ministry of the Antichrist and the False Prophet. These Jews and Gentiles are a distinct 'ruling-class' who will 'live and reign' **with Christ** during The Millennium, so they are The 6th Group of the Immortal Sons of God. And they will likely 'reign' with Jesus in some distinct capacity in New Jerusalem forevermore too.

The 7th and 8th Groups of the Immortal Sons of God are apparently the only ones not redeemed in or around The Great Tribulation. They are instead redeemed at the end of The Millennium or at the start of The Eternal Age of Peace. Remember that Jesus explains in **the parable of the tares of the field** [Mat 13:24-30, 36-43](#) that in the both redemptive and damning Harvest at the End of the World Rapture, that **the wheat** or **the good seed** or **the children of the kingdom** are gathered **into my barn**, but **the tares** (or the 'wheat-like weeds') or **the children of the wicked one—the devil**—must be **burned in the fire** when the **angels... shall cast them into a furnace of**

fire where ***there shall be wailing and gnashing of teeth.***

More specifically, at the time of this two part rapture Jesus...

...will say to the reapers, Gather ye together first the tares, and bind them in bundles to burn them: but gather the wheat into my barn [Mat 13:30](#) [later explaining that]... He that soweth the good seed is the Son of man [Jesus]; The field is the world; the good seed are the children of the kingdom; but the tares are the children of the wicked one; The enemy that sowed them is the devil; the harvest is the end of the world; and the reapers are the angels. As therefore the tares are gathered and burned in the fire; so shall it be in the end of this world. The Son of man shall send forth his angels, and they shall gather out of his kingdom all things that offend, and them which do iniquity; And shall cast them into a furnace of fire: there shall be wailing and gnashing of teeth. Then shall the righteous shine forth as the sun in the kingdom of their Father. Who hath ears to hear, let him hear [Mat 13:37-43](#).

And apparently these ***righteous***, whether expiring in or surviving The Millennium, will be 'gathered' into His '***barn***' in this Harvest at the End of the World. And all these must be included as part of the Immortal Sons of God. In earlier sections I referred to this rapture as The Second Resurrection. But now you can see that this is only half the story, and that you could call it two raptures—the other rapture being The Rapture of the Damned. And remember I call it The Second Resurrection because it will apparently be a ***resurrection*** like the ***first*** one where those redeemed will not necessarily need to go to Heaven first because Jesus should still be on Earth—or possibly on New Earth—to receive them there. But again, it's hard to tell exactly how this all works and exactly where they will go in this 'transition'. But whatever the case, these faithful who live at one time or another on Earth in The Millennium supposedly only need a ***resurrection***, or if still alive simply to be ***changed*** to immortality, sometime near the time when the New Heaven and the New Earth appear.

But here's where we see that half of a rapture could again be counted as another two raptures. I mean that being 'gathered' into His '***barn***' means ending up somewhere in New Jerusalem if anytime before that you lived in Millennial Israel, or it instead means ending up back in your nation of origin—except of course on New Earth. But again, those on Earth at the time of this rapture may not simply find themselves on New Earth, but they may first go to wherever The Great White Throne is, though John seems to be on New Earth when he watches God and New Jerusalem 'come down' from New Heaven just after this judgment.

Whatever the case, this to me distinguishes two groups. So let's call The 7th Group of the Immortal Sons of God the New Jerusalem 'city-dwellers'—mostly Jews—who live with Jesus in Israel during The Millennium. However remember that these are also the survivors and progeny of God's 70 Week plan for ***his people***. So again, I expect they're really just the third rapture of the Bride. But if they are a distinct group and station—and they certainly come to their station a completely different way than the other parts of the

Bride, and they do miss **the marriage of the Lamb**—then this would leave for The 8th Group of the Immortal Sons of God the millennial, nation-dwelling Gentiles who will continue to occupy the **nations** on New Earth throughout eternity. And naturally, these nation-dwellers have a different and 'lower' station (pun intended) than all the other stations occupying New Jerusalem.

Having said all that, maybe you haven't forgotten that I said that I expect that all those who dwell in Millennial Israel could be considered part of the Bride. And from this perspective you can see just two stations. But if you consider the various raptured parts of the Bride as separate I count 9 stations—10 if you count The Pre-Church and The Church as distinct groups. Can you name them all? And I'm throwing in this confusion for those who want to get too dogmatic about the number of stations at this point. If they do they should be able to explain themselves, don't you think?

And by-the-way, it occurs to me that the **offspring** of those who survive The Great Tribulation will not have a very 'hard row to hoe'. So in their case it makes sense that they'll have a different and lower assignment than other parts of The Bride. I mean I suspect that some of these Jews redeemed in The Harvest at the End of the World are, generally speaking, the more ordinary, 'run of the mill', city-dwelling **sons of God** as they were in The Millennium, though again and generally speaking, a step above the ordinary, 'run of the mill', nation-dwelling **sons of God**. And this would be because someone needs to play this part—somebody for the various 'ruling classes' to 'rule', and again, because these last to be redeemed will not have the challenges and therefore the opportunities for **reward** that men of **other ages** can have in trying to **turn many to righteousness** since they will live in an age where **the earth shall be full of the knowledge of the LORD, as the waters cover the sea**. And being less **afflicted** while they **press toward the mark for the prize** naturally leaves them less opportunity for a **high calling of God in Christ Jesus** ([Isa 54:10-17](#); [Phil 3:14](#)). So though while mortal they will experience **great... peace**, I'm expecting that this will result in them mostly being just 'common folk' of the Eternal Kingdom of God and Christ. But some of them should nonetheless find ways to distinguish themselves as **great in the kingdom of heaven** by excelling above their **brethren** by winning the **war** with their **sinful flesh** in The Millennium. After all, some of these will have survived The Great Tribulation. But all this means that I'm torn as to whether this group of mainly Jews is a distinct group of the Immortal Sons of God, or just the final part of the Wife of Jesus. And if they are really just another part of the Wife, then there are really just 7 different groups of the Immortal Sons of God that I can distinguish. And I'm going to leave it to you to make the call. WARNING: It's appropriate to experience dizziness going round and round on this issue. In fact if you don't you can't be properly considering it. Use a chair or bed to avoid injury when equilibrium is impaired.

But we have more information about this last rapture. Like The Parable of the Fisherman's Net in [Matthew 13:47-50](#) which also quickly and simply reveals the fate of **the wicked** and **the just** at **the end of the world**. Jesus says,

...the kingdom of heaven is like unto a net, that was cast into the sea, and gathered of every kind: Which, when it was full,

they drew to shore, and sat down, and gathered the good into vessels, but cast the bad away. So shall it be at the end of the world: the angels shall come forth, and sever the wicked from among the just, And shall cast them into the furnace of fire: there shall be wailing and gnashing of teeth.

So this is another marker or the end of The Millennium and the beginning of The Eternal Age of Peace. As Jesus puts it, ***so shall it be at the end of the world***. And it's interesting to notice here that He says that He ***gathered the good into vessels...*** which seems to imply 'divisions' of the Immortal Sons of God being 'divided' specifically at this time. And I expect in this metaphor there are at least two ***vessels of the good***—one for 'nation-dwellers' and one for the New Jerusalem 'city-dwellers'. But you could instead imagine that there are as many ***vessels*** as there are ***nations... which are saved*** [Rev 21:24](#), or even other 'classifications' of ***vessels***.

Another 'end of the world parable' along these lines is The Parable of the Sheep and the Goats in [Matthew 25:31-46](#). And while you're there, check out The Parable of the Talents in [Matthew 25:14-30](#) to see how easy it is to get ***cast... into outer darkness***—that would be The Lake of Fire—where ***there shall be wailing and gnashing of teeth***. Both these ***parables*** imply that all you have to do to end up ***wailing and gnashing*** forever is 'nothing'. And you must have gathered by now that it's what ***believers do*** that determines what ***vessels*** they end up in, and whether they become ***the least*** or ***great*** in The Eternal Kingdom of God and of Christ, however obvious it is that all the ***glory*** is really God's.

But don't be confused by John when he says,

...there shall in no wise enter into it [New Jerusalem] any thing that defileth, neither whatsoever worketh abomination... but [only] they which are written in the Lamb's book of life [Rev 21:27](#).

And when he says,

...without are dogs, and sorcerers, and whoremongers, and murderers, and idolaters, and whosoever loveth and maketh a lie [Rev 22:15](#),

he doesn't mean here that these that ***worketh abomination*** are living somewhere just outside the gates of New Jerusalem, or even among the nations, because before these references God makes plain that the final station of all these that ***worketh abomination*** will be The Lake of Fire, saying,

...the fearful, and unbelieving, and the abominable, and murderers, and whoremongers, and sorcerers, and idolaters, and all liars, shall have their part in the lake which burneth with fire and brimstone: which is the second death [Rev 21:8](#).

So this is where they are **without** the city. They are forever imprisoned in a 'subterranean' **lake of fire**. And this is the reason why they will never be able to **enter into it**. That, and the fact that their **names are not written in the book of life** ([Rev 13:8](#); [17:8](#); [20:15](#)). And it's just as plain that the occupants of **the nations... which are saved** who live outside New Jerusalem but above ground may enter the city. And this is because their names are written in The Book of Life.

By-the-way, Paul also gives us an even longer list of these **unrighteous** who are **cast... into outer darkness**. He says,

Know ye not that the unrighteous shall not inherit the kingdom of God? Be not deceived: neither fornicators, nor idolaters, nor adulterers, nor effeminate ["homosexuals" or "male prostitutes"], **nor abusers of themselves with mankind** ["homosexuals" or "sodomites"—see [Romans 1](#)], **Nor thieves, nor covetous, nor drunkards, nor revilers, nor extortioners, shall inherit the kingdom of God. And such were some of you: but ye are washed, but ye are sanctified, but ye are justified in the name of the Lord Jesus, and by the Spirit of our God [1Cor 6:9](#).**

And hopefully you've stayed that way. But of all the **unrighteous** acts I've seen listed in **scripture**, there is one **abomination** that most catches my attention. It's in John's list where God tells him that **the fearful... shall have their part in the lake which burneth with fire and brimstone** [Rev 21:8](#). I can't help but find it scary that all you have to do is be **fearful** to be excluded from The Book of Life and to forever **have... part** in The Lake of Fire. Of course, this cannot be the healthy **fear of God** that is essential as you **work out your own salvation with fear and trembling** [Phil 2:12](#). It must instead be the kind of 'fearfulness' that is the opposite of trusting God. And it should be no surprise that **trust** in God and resisting **fear** is another repeated theme of Isaiah's **prophecy** ([50:10](#), [57:13](#), [41:9-20](#), [43:1-7](#), [44:1-8](#), [51:1-7](#), [54:4-14](#)). And though it should be obvious that God will 'fry you' if you stop 'abiding' in Him, all these references from Isaiah should remind us that He promises to deliver us, gather us, protect us, help us, and that even in death He is often sparing us from a worse fate if necessary.

And **trusting** Him shouldn't be such a stretch that He must 'harp on it' continually, but He does. You could even say it's the main theme of The Bible's longest **prophecy**. But this 'marathon' **prophecy** is also full of 'cures' for **the fearful** by offering unending **comfort**. And this **comfort** should take you to a place where your sin nature has no choice but to let you **trust** God. I mean He tells us that He's going to make us a brand new world without **sin** or **pain** or **want**, where **the nations** of this New Earth will serve us, and where we will serve **God and the Lamb** in a city beyond palatial splendor that He says He's now preparing for us, and where we will never, ever stop growing in our service to Him and ourselves, nor stop improving ourselves, and where **peace** somehow never stops growing too, and all according to His **pleasure**. So don't you think you can **trust** Him?

And I mean, don't you believe He is **good** enough for you, **longsuffering** enough for your shortcomings, full of enough **lovingkindness** to appreciate

you, or even that He can **love** you enough to care for you? He can balance planets above your head that can simultaneously protect you and destroy your enemies, so don't you think He has enough self-control to engage you at your level, and forever draw you toward His? And don't you think He has enough imagination and **zeal** to think of other things to do than just an 'eternal worship service with harps in the clouds'? And **knowing** what you now **know** about Him, don't you think you could worship Him even when you're not in a room with a lot of other people doing it? After **knowing** all this, if there is still something else you want and love more than Him, you should be **fearful**, because that would not only be **foolish**, it would also be blind **idolatry**, with or without those useless **carved** or **molten** 'statue thingies' God also talks so much about in Isaiah's **prophecy**. Still, I'm afraid this will be one of the main reasons why there will be 'fewer' Immortal Sons of God than we might otherwise have hoped for. But surely those who are **fearful** of losing a World that must **pass away** cannot **inherit the kingdom of God** that **is to come**.

And certainly none of this is to say that we should not **fear God**. Paul says,

Knowing therefore the terror of the Lord, we persuade men... 2
[Cor 5:11](#)

And Jesus is holding back none of the 'horror' when He says,

...at the end of the world: the angels shall come forth, and sever the wicked from among the just, And shall cast them into the furnace of fire: there shall be wailing and gnashing of teeth [Mat 13:49-50](#).

But could God make it any clearer that we should **fear** Him? I'm afraid you already **know** He will. Remember Isaiah prophesies of a spectacle so terrifying that it **shall be an abhorring unto all flesh** throughout The Millennium. And remember it's found at the conclusion to his **prophecy**, in the last two verses, where **the LORD** says,

And it shall come to pass, that from one new moon to another, and from one sabbath to another, shall all flesh come to worship before me, saith the LORD. And they shall go forth, and look upon the carcasses of the men that have transgressed against me: for their worm shall not die, neither shall their fire be quenched; and they shall be an abhorring unto all flesh [Isa 66:23-24](#).

Again, this must be an 'open pit' near Jerusalem—probably **Geanna** or The Valley of Hinnom—where we will all be able to actually **look** into **hell**. How else could we **look upon the carcasses of the men that have transgressed**, whose **worm shall not die, neither shall their fire be quenched**? And you can't call this overkill. This spectacle is appropriately horrifying, because unfortunately for way too many, this is clearly not horrifying enough given the outcome of The Millennium. And this is why when

some speak of **the fear of God** as merely a kind of respect, my blood boils. You must **understand** that this is an error and a false testimony about God, but also that my blood will not boil nearly so hot as in those who are inadequately warned and who burn in that 'unquenchably fire'.

Also remember that Jesus clears things up quite nicely on this matter. He says,

...fear not them which kill the body, but are not able to kill the soul: but rather fear him which is able to destroy both soul and body in hell [Matthew 10:28](#).

This is the way you ought to **fear** God because it will help control your mortal **sinful flesh** that is **warring** in your **members** ([Rom 7:23-8:8](#)). And in The Millennium the most common results of this **warring** will no longer be hard to imagine or even avoidable. This is another reason I would guess that the Immortal Sons of God born into The Millennium, and redeemed at the end of it, are necessarily a 'less' **blessed** group. During their lives they must come to Jerusalem at least once a year. How could they not get **it**? And this must be part of the idea behind what Jesus means when He says,

...blessed are they that have not seen, and yet have believed [John 20:29](#).

And I'm sorry we have visited this pit so few times in this **study**. And many who will have called themselves Christians will be sorry that they did not visit it often enough either. I mean I'm trying to tell you the **revelation** you should get by staring into this pit is **the beginning** of the 'cure' for the sin nature that hinders you, and a lot more than that too ([Psa 111:10](#); [Pro 1:7; 9:10](#)).

And I like how Paul puts it. He makes it clear that the responsibility is yours. He says,

Examine yourselves, whether ye be in the faith; prove your own selves. Know ye not your own selves, how that Jesus Christ is in you, except ye be reprobates [or fallen away]? [2 Cor 13:5](#)

And like Paul in [Hebrews 5:11-6:3](#), I want to get passed **laying again the foundation** which is your salvation in Christ. And no, I'm not into salvation by works. I'm into God's Word. And He tells us our **salvation** comes by **grace**, but that our **reward** comes by **works**. And that when, **giving all diligence**, we **ask, seek, knock, press, run, strive, fight, overcome, suffer**, and **work... while it is day**, we will **win** for ourselves the [**high**] **prize** of a **better resurrection** and become **partakers** of the **precious promises** that come with being a **great** and 'shining' **star** in The Kingdom of God. So get with the program. And speaking of the program, this brings us to the 'worship services schedule' in New Jerusalem.

We **know** God initiates worldwide worship in The Millennium. And we just read again in Isaiah's **prophecy** that **all flesh [shall] come to worship before** Him. And the Jewish Temple Servants in Heaven also declare before

God's throne that **all nations shall come and worship before** Him. This is why I'm guessing that these Mount Zion Jews, along with the **four living creatures**, may end up as 'worship leaders' in New Jerusalem. They will certainly be able to **teach** us The Song of Moses and The Song of The Lamb better than anyone else. And though we **know** there is no **temple** in New Jerusalem except the 'Persons' of **God and the Lamb**, we also **know** that many of these same people who used to **come** to Jerusalem **and worship before** Jesus in The Millennium will **continue** to **bring their glory and honour into** New Jerusalem throughout eternity. In other words, I don't expect that this aspect of Christ's Millennial Kingdom will change much in the transition to The Eternal Age. I expect that services and offerings—minus 'temple sacrifices'—will continue on the same **sabbath, new moon, and feast days** schedule as before. And since New Jerusalem will be able to easily accommodate everyone, and since I'm expecting 'transportation' will become a 'non-issue', it offers **the nations** the opportunity to join in with the three traditionally spaced 'feast days' a 'year' to celebrate and worship **God and the Lamb**.

And at all times in The Millennium and in The Eternal Age, God's...

...gates shall be open continually; they shall not be shut day nor night; that men may bring unto thee the forces [or "wealth"] **of the Gentiles, and that their kings may be brought** [there too] [60:11](#).

Or as John records of just The Eternal Age...

And the nations of them which are saved shall walk in the light of it [New Jerusalem]: **and the kings of the earth do bring their glory and honour into it. And the gates of it shall not be shut at all by day: for there shall be no night there. And they shall bring the glory and honour of the nations into it** [Rev 21:24-26](#).

Now some say that because there will be no more Sun, Moon, or stars that there will be no more 'time', and that a **feast days, new moon, and sabbath days** 'schedule' flies in the face of that. On the other hand we should expect that in any weekly and annual schedule of worship and celebration, all activity is based on cooperative planning and ordered sequential events and must be on a 'timetable' marked by some means so that eternal growth in **government** and **peace** involving hopefully at least hundreds of millions of Immortals and Angels can take place. Hey, we have seen that **all the angels** will show up in Heaven at the same time and place at least twice—once for The Rapture of the Pre-Church and the Church and also for The Rapture of the Tribulation Gentiles—and I'm sure this is not that rare of an experience for them. So maybe God and Jesus will 'glow a little brighter' when it's time for a 'Sabbath', and a little brighter still during the 'feasts' and 'new moon' celebrations. But I believe somehow we'll know the 'time' to quit 'working'—or 'increasing' if you prefer—and come together to feast, fellowship, and worship—not that you couldn't on your own any other 'time' too. Besides, I'm expecting that we're not going to want that **fruit** from **the tree of life** to go to waste—not that **fruit** will rot in The Eternal Age.

And by-the-way, John tells us this **fruit of the tree of life** is **yielded... every month** [Rev 22:2](#). So we'll all still know how long a **month** is, etc.

Or look at it this way. We **know** that God transcends time, but don't you also **know** that you don't—at least usually. And we **know** that His **thoughts** and **ways** will always remain 'way higher' than ours, and I doubt this will ever really change no matter how much we **grow**. I mean it seems to me that it would defeat His purpose for us to reach a point where we transcended time in our growing 'regular pursuits'. Of course I really have no idea what I'm talking about. Because the marvelous picture we can get from our present perspective of New Jerusalem must fall infinitely short of what living in New Jerusalem will eventually become. And sorry for 'spacing out' there for a second. But not that sorry, because 'tingles' and 'short circuits' should also remain a part of the program.

And it's also part of the program that we have left a lot of unanswered questions along the way, and lots of loose ends. In fact this is another recurring and comforting theme found in Isaiah's **prophecy**. This kind of **comfort** is magnified when accompanied by our **trust** in God because of His **love** for us and because of His **power** and **glory** that is forever beyond our imagination. You think you have a 'good deal' when you can analyze every part of a transaction and still like it. But God's 'deal' for us is so much better. Sure He gives us plenty to analyze so that we can see there is **none else**, and **none beside**, and **none like** His 'deal' for us. But at the same time we **know** that we do not yet even have the ability to **know** the wonderful things He has prepared for us. And it's not just a bunch of surprises that he's hiding from us to **reveal** later. It's so much more than that. I mean we can't yet even get close to **understanding** how wonderful it's going to be in New Jerusalem. There is simply no way yet for Him to show us things that are so far 'out of this World'. And surely this is some of what God means in Isaiah's **prophecy** when He says,

For since the beginning of the world men have not heard, nor perceived by the ear, neither hath the eye seen, O God, beside thee, what he hath prepared for him that waiteth for him [64:4](#).

But in this **study**, by The Spirit of God, we have begun to see things that God has **prepared** for us that '**men have not heard**' of ever before. And how is this possible? Paul tells us that **things** have changed since Isaiah's time. He says,

But as it is written, Eye hath not seen, nor ear heard, neither have entered into the heart of man, the things which God hath prepared for them that love him. But God hath revealed them unto us by his Spirit: for the Spirit searcheth all things, yea, the deep things of God. [1Cor 2:9](#)

Yes, Paul tells us that **by his Spirit** we can begin to **search** some of these **deep things of God**, and see **things** that have never been **seen** before. This is what we have been doing in this **study**. And it's my **faith** that God has given me this **study** so that by what you have **learned** in it we can

continue this **search** together. But this could never mean we could even begin to spoil all the 'unimaginable surprises' awaiting us in New Jerusalem in the distant future. But we should be able to enjoy a few of these 'not too distant' surprises 'ahead of schedule', as we have in this **study** already. But you can be comforted that unimaginably wonderful surprises are coming and will never end. Still, the more of them you get before here and eternity, the better off you'll be.

Along the way in this section, I hope you noticed that I spared you a lot the repetition in Isaiah's **prophecy**. The repetition is mostly only seen in the list of **scripture** references that repeat all the various topics—and only if you take the time to look them up. And you should. In fact the purpose for all the **bold italics** throughout this **study** is to provide concordance search words and phrases in the KJV for your further **study**. And it doesn't matter how profound or obvious the **precept**, like the pit of **hell** next to the City of Jerusalem in The Millennium, you need regular exposure to a growing number of precepts so that you will not forget them. Peter says so repeatedly in His second letter to the Church. He says,

Yea, I think it meet [or appropriate], as long as I am in this tabernacle [or in this physical body], to stir you up by putting you in remembrance... This second epistle, beloved, I now write unto you; in both which I stir up your pure minds by way of remembrance: That ye may be mindful of the words which were spoken before by the holy prophets, and of the commandment of us the apostles of the Lord and Saviour [2 Pet 1:12-13; 3:1-2](#).

So yes, if you read The Bible's longest **prophecy** regularly you will **grow** in your **understanding** of it, and you should be **comforted** by it more and more, but especially if you handle it God's way. And if you begin a lifestyle of continually making yourself **mindful of the words which were spoken before by the holy prophets, and of the commandment of... the apostles of the Lord and Saviour**, and if you do it God's way, you will really **experience** that ethereal or supernatural side of 'memory enhancement' otherwise known as The Ministry of The Spirit of Truth. And His ministry in you will become a noticeably powerful and growing part of your life, which God willing is your destiny, and God willing sooner than later.

But what should you expect that this kind of growth looks and feels like? I think it would look and feel like someone who is ready to **understand** Paul's counsel to the Philippians where he says,

Be careful for [or worry about] nothing; but in every thing by prayer and supplication [or asking] with thanksgiving let your requests be made known unto God. And the peace of God, which passeth all understanding, shall keep your hearts and minds through Christ Jesus [Phil 4:6-7](#).

Yes, it should be mindbogglingly peaceful, restful, secure, and comforting.

I also find Isaiah speaking specifically to me in His **prophecy**—I mean very specifically. To me and others like me He says,

I have set watchmen upon thy walls, O Jerusalem, which shall never hold their peace day nor night: ye that make mention of the LORD, keep not silence, And give him [the LORD] no rest [from your continual mentioning of him], till he establish, and till he make Jerusalem a praise in the earth [62:6-7](#).

And don't you **know** that it's already your city now? It's not only time for you to 'pray for its peace', it's also time for you to make it your own. And I don't mean you have to literally move there. I mean you have to figuratively 'give notice' where you're now 'renting'.

And maybe you can now see that it's no random assignment when Jesus teaches us to pray,

Thy kingdom come. Thy will be done in earth, as it is in heaven.

This **kingdom** He speaks of is not only 'in us' but it's also centered in Jerusalem, and it's God's **will** for His Son's **bride** to **reign on the earth** with Him there. My **experience** in Christ has compelled me to speak to whoever **hath an ear** to **hear** the trumpet's **sound** to **prepare** themselves for this coming **kingdom**.

And this **trumpet 'sounding'** should in no way **give an uncertain sound** [1Cor 14:8](#). I mean the clear call of this **study** is to those who think it's **not** their job to give **all diligence** and **strive** and **continue** to **press toward** growing in The Word of God by The Spirit of God. Suchlike Christians are in **danger** and a **danger** to others, and they are a **shame** and a **shame** to others, or at least they are little to no help to **the churches of Jesus Christ** precisely because of their lack of this discipleship. Their lack of continual **use** and **exercise** in The Word of God, though they may nonetheless still be kept by **the blood of Jesus** and The Spirit of God, is **not love**, though the **love** of God remains **both sure and steadfast** [Heb 6:17-20](#) with **mercies that we are not consumed** and **compassions that fail not** and that are **new every morning** because **great is His faithfulness** [Lam 3:22](#), even when we don't really **love** Him.

And I **know** those who ignore God's Word don't really **love** Him because according to Jesus there is one way **everyone** must show their **love** for Him no matter what **gifts** or **purpose** they have in Him otherwise, no exceptions. Jesus explains,

...If a man love me, he will keep my words: and my Father will love him, and we will come unto him, and make our abode with him [John 14:23](#).

And He confirms this here by adding,

He that loveth me not keepeth not my sayings [John 14:24](#).

And from this you should more fully **understand** what Jesus means when He says,

It is written, Man shall not live by bread alone, but by every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of God ([Mat 4:4](#); [Luke 4:4](#); [Deut 8:3](#)).

He means that ***life*** by ***every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of God*** is not only essential and universal, it is inevitable for those who will indeed ***live***. The time is coming when ***everyone*** will be regularly and actively engaged in increasing their ***knowledge of God*** and therefore their ***love*** of God through ***every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of God***. But have you recognized that this is not really that common in the Church today? This is because too many don't have a clue how to ***handle*** God's Word God's way. But don't you now ***know*** that this will inevitably change? So the question is, what are you ***waiting*** for?

John has some ***strait*** talk along these lines. He says,

Love not the world, neither the things that are in the world. If any man love the world, the love of the Father is not in him. For all that is in the world, the lust of the flesh, and the lust of the eyes, and the pride of life, is not of the Father, but is of the world. And the world passeth away, and the lust thereof: but he that doeth the will of God abideth for ever. [1 John 2:15-17](#)

So there's no hiding what you're waiting for or who you ***love***. You can see these things by what a person ***doeth***. And anyone who ***doeth the will of God*** must ***know*** His ***will***. So if you have a Bible and can read, and you don't 'regularly and actively' pursue ***every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of God***, the fact is that you don't ***love*** God as much as you ***love the world***. And aside from our ongoing ***war*** with ***the lust of the flesh, and the lust of the eyes, and the pride of life***, it must be your ignorance of God's Word that makes you ***love the world*** over ***the love of the Father***. This is a ***shame***. But ***knowledge of the holy is understanding*** [Pro 9:10](#), and this ***understanding*** will give you ***strength*** to ***Love not the world, neither the things that are in the world***. I like how Isaiah puts in when He is talking about ***the time of trouble***. He says,

...wisdom and knowledge shall be the stability of thy times, and strength of salvation: the fear of the LORD is his treasure [Isa 33:6](#).

Still ***the blood of Jesus*** remains sufficient to ***deliver*** you even if you continue to ***love the world*** more than God, though this is not a safe way to ***live***. So I will say it again. If you persistently ignore God's Word you are in ***danger*** and a ***danger*** to others, and you are a ***shame*** and a ***shame*** to others, or at least you are little to no help to ***the churches of Jesus Christ*** precisely because of this lack of discipleship. And do you really think you will have an ***eternal life*** that is close to Jesus if you don't give ***all diligence*** and ***strive*** to ***continue*** to ***press toward*** growing in keeping His ***words*** now? You shouldn't. You should now ***know*** that keeping His ***words*** is a requirement for those who will be the closest to Him. And by-the-way, you

should also **know** that I'm speaking for God.

But again, I'm not saying everyone should have the **gift** of **teaching**. This is up to God, not us, though you can and should **desire** it ([1 Cor 12](#); [14:1](#); [Eph 4:8-13](#)). And God gives 'Holy Spirit gifted' **teachers** to the Church to get his people going His way and keep them going in The Word of God. But abuses come on all sides when **teachers** are expected to carry the Church every step of the way. What I'm saying is that eventually we all **ought to be teachers** [Heb 5:11-6:3](#), and be at least **apt to teach** because...

...the servant of the Lord must not strive; but be gentle unto all men, [eventually becoming] apt to teach, patient, In meekness instructing those that oppose themselves; if God peradventure will give them repentance to the acknowledging of the truth; And that they may recover themselves out of the snare of the devil, who are taken captive by him at his will [2Tim 2:24-26](#).

And we all need to eventually become 'experts' on all topics of **scripture** in order to...

...be ready always to give an answer to every man that asketh you a reason of the hope that is in you with meekness and fear [1Pet 3:15](#).

And how else do you think you'll become **wise** and **shine as the brightness of the firmament**, and be able to **turn many to righteousness** [and **shine**] **as the stars for ever and ever**. So stop passing off the responsibility. Become **apt to teach**. More than that, **learn** how to 'speak for God'. And besides, this is how you become **approved unto God**, and become someone who is able to **rightly divide the Word of truth** and **discern both good and evil**. Only then you will be able to...

Take heed unto thyself, and unto the doctrine; [and] continue in them: for in doing this thou shalt both save thyself, and them that hear thee [1Tim 4:16](#).

Still listening? And do you see what I mean about the state of the Church of Jesus Christ today—about the **danger** and coming **shame** for **many**?

But let me get even more personal. Just what do you think your part in the ministry of the **Spirit of truth** is supposed to look like anyway? Some of His 'jobs' are to **guide you into all truth, teach you all things, call to your remembrance whatsoever Jesus said, shew you things to come**, and help you **as... taught to abide in him**. So from God's perspective this may look more like 'remote control', and you may even **experience** it like that occasionally—that 'ethereal experience'. But what should it look like from our God-given human perspective? It shouldn't just look like dutifully and regularly reading through The Bible, because this can only fulfill the **desire** for the **sincere milk of the word** that **newborn babes... grow thereby** [1Pet 2:2](#). Reading through The Bible is not enough for those who are **weaned from the milk**, because it's not really God's way to **teach knowledge** and help us **understand doctrine**, as you now **know**. And you should now

know that—from the human perspective—loving God must include regular **use** and **exercise** in **every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of God** like we have practiced in this **study**. This is the way you can **grow** in your participation with The Ministry of The Spirit of Truth—besides how your **spiritual gifts** also help you remain **established** in God ([Rom 1:11](#)). And you should **know** that no matter who you are or how **simple**—or smart—you think you are, it's only those who **continue** in God's Word who are unavoidably and eventually made **wise** [Psa 19:7](#). And this goes for anyone who can **hear**, because...

...faith cometh by hearing, and hearing by the word of God [Rom 10:17](#).

So it's essential, universal, and inevitable that all who **live will grow** in the **knowledge of him** [Eph 1:17](#) if they are to avoid **danger** and **shame**. And it's how everyone can better and better **understand** and better and better **be partakers of the divine nature** and of the **exceeding great and precious promises** [2 Pet 1:4](#), and in what it really means to **love** God. And you will never really get to **know** and **love** Him as well otherwise—at least until after it's too late to get into one of those stations and positions that are closest to Him. So do you really want to get closer to Jesus before it is too late? **Love** him by getting to **know** Him His way in His **words**. Or as Paul more abruptly charges,

Awake to righteousness, and sin not; for some have not the knowledge of God: I speak this to your shame [1Cor 15:34](#).

Is this enough said? Not likely. So I say again, you deceive yourself if you think that you can **love the Lord thy God with all thy heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy mind, and with all thy strength** but not give **all diligence** and **strive** to **continue** to **press toward** growing in keeping His **words**. Remember that God **magnified** His **word above** His **name** [Psa 138:2](#)—though you need to watch out for the modern translations of this verse. The point again is that if you don't equate loving Him with loving The Word of God, you don't really love Him. How could you? How could you ever even **know** Him as well without it? And it's His intention that you won't be able to get to **know** Him anywhere near as well without it. The reality in this age is that if you aren't devoted to His Word, you can't be devoted to Him, and if you don't take His Word seriously, then He can't take you too seriously either. As the Apostle James says,

Draw nigh to God, and he will draw nigh to you.

Otherwise He won't. And where better than in God's Word can you do this? I mean besides **prayer** and **worship** and **service**, none of which should be neglected. But even your **prayer** and **worship** and **service** will suffer without continual input from The Word of God. Because what will you **pray** if you don't **know** Him as well as you should? And how will you praise Him if you **have not the knowledge of God**? And what can you do for someone you don't **know** that well? And I mean besides the help you'll get from The

Spirit either way. The point is that you certainly should not expect to get anywhere near as **nigh to God** as you could with regular **use** and **exercise** in His Word. And this is part of Jesus' final orders to the Church. He commissioned His disciples, saying,

[Teach] **them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you** [Mat 28:18-20](#).

So don't deceive yourself into believing that from a human perspective that this is naturally supposed to happen without continual regular **use** and **exercise** in God's Word—though in doing so you should expect the supernatural help of The Spirit more and more. And like I said, you'll just kick yourself when you finally accept this spiritually liberating **truth** and begin to **live** what you've been missing all along.

And I can't reemphasize enough that too many have been misled to think that

'knowing God' happens without any effort on their part at all. In fact the opposite is true. If you don't actively **draw nigh unto God**, then you are naturally **falling away** from Him. This is the work of your **flesh**. And if the **falling** continues, you can eventually **fall away** and be **cut off** and **castaway** even though you **were once enlightened, and have tasted of the heavenly gift, and were made partakers of the Holy Ghost**. Sure, God's perspective is that He has **predestinated us unto the adoption of children by Jesus Christ to himself, according to the good pleasure of his will**, because **whom he did foreknow, he also did predestinate to be conformed to the image of his Son**, because **he hath chosen us in him before the foundation of the world, that we should be holy and without blame before him in love...** And like Paul, I too am **confident of this very thing, that he which hath begun a good work in you will perform it until the day of Jesus Christ**, because the spiritual reality is that **in him we live, and move, and have our being**. And we **know** God will make sure that His Word will **accomplish** what He pleases and will make it **prosper** where He sends it. But all these are not our perspectives. They are God's. Ours are neither omniscient nor complete. Ours **grow** by our increasing **wisdom, understanding, and knowledge of him**. And this takes **work**. And the best way you can avoid being **ashamed** and at the same time become **approved unto God** is to become **a workman that needeth not to be ashamed** as you **continue... rightly dividing the word of truth**.

And I hope from this **study** that you now see beyond any doubt that our **experience** of loving God involves joyful, awe-inspiring, eternally rewarding, and neverending **work**. And this is plainly not an easy task. But it wouldn't be any fun if it was anyway. It would be boring! And with this **work** comes the promise **ye shall never fall**. This is what Jesus means when He says,

Strive to enter in at the strait gate: for many, I say unto you, will seek to enter in, and shall not be able.

And remember that this 'striving process' has its rewards. Paul encourages us all to...

...press toward the mark for the prize of the high calling of God in Christ Jesus.

And Peter 'crowns' the **promise** of **exceeding great and precious promises**, saying,

...if ye do these things, ye shall never fall: For so an entrance shall be ministered unto you abundantly into the everlasting kingdom of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ.

And Jesus doesn't put this in terms of 'remote control'. He puts it in terms of our God-given human perspective when He says,

If ye continue in my word, then are ye my disciples indeed; And ye shall know the truth, and the truth shall make you free... [And] If the Son therefore shall make you free, ye shall be free indeed.

He promises that from our perspective we will finally be **free** and **free indeed**.

The Natural Progression of The Word of God is a continual succession of paradigm shifts: 'tingles' to 'short circuits' to 'tingles' again. But don't get stuck in one for too long. Coming back around to it after you have left it for a while helps you find more and more new perspectives and connections, because it's all about new connections of precepts. But again, you may need to keep a chair or a bed handy for some of the 'meatier contemplations'. And don't get the idea that you have even **learned** what's 'on the surface' of this **study**. You haven't. I haven't. And you'll have to keep going over it all just to remember that some of the precepts are really 'wild goose chases' that you forgot you already rejected, so that you can finally really 'sweep them out of your brain' for good. And this only gets harder because you should also be simultaneously trying to 'situate' newly discovered precepts, all of which will need future correction or improvement. And if you still don't **know** what I mean by this, **continue** and you will.

And whenever you get the chance, don't forget to 'throw up your hands and scream'. I mean have fun 'riding' this 'ride' as much as you can. It supposed to be an 'out-of-this-world', 'wild ride'. Everyone who ends up in Jesus' eternal kingdom will eventually begin this 'eternal joyride'. But oh the difference for those who start now.

And we have seen that time is not as short as so many would lead you to believe. I'm guessing we have at least a decade or two. Of course this is not a lifetime. And when time's up—it's up. So, **work the works of God while it is day** because **the night cometh, when no man can work** [John 9:4](#).

This brings us to the conclusion of this **study** and to the question from Peter that inspired it. Peter asks, **Seeing then that all these things shall**

be dissolved, what manner of persons ought ye to be...? Read the answers in [2 Peter 3:10-18](#) slowly and repeatedly.

...the day of the Lord will come as a thief in the night; in the which the heavens shall pass away with a great noise, and the elements shall melt with fervent heat, the earth also and the works that are therein shall be burned up. Seeing then that all these things shall be dissolved, what manner of persons ought ye to be in all holy conversation and godliness, Looking for and hasting unto the coming of the day of God, wherein the heavens being on fire shall be dissolved, and the elements shall melt with fervent heat? Nevertheless we, according to his promise, look for new heavens and a new earth, wherein dwelleth righteousness. Wherefore, beloved, seeing that ye look for such things, be diligent that ye may be found of him in peace, without spot, and blameless. And account that the longsuffering of our Lord is salvation; even as our beloved brother Paul also according to the wisdom given unto him hath written unto you; As also in all his epistles, speaking in them of these things; in which are some things hard to be understood, which they that are unlearned and unstable wrest [or wrestle with], as they do also the other scriptures, unto their own destruction. Ye therefore, beloved, seeing that ye look for such things, beware lest ye also, being led away with the error of the wicked, fall from your own steadfastness. But grow in grace, and in the knowledge of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ. To him be glory both now and for ever. Amen.

But you surely **know** by now that this cannot be the end. In fact, congratulations if this is your second time though this **study**, and especially if you added a lot more 'side study' along the way. And if this is your first time through, this is as far as I should need to take you to get you going on your own. Still, God willing, I will get the chance to assist you further down this road we have traveled together. But ultimately the task falls on you. From now on your perspective must **continue** to change and improve forever as you become **partakers** and **fellowcitizens** in The Eternal Kingdom of God and of Christ as one of **the sons of God**. But even to those of you who will put off this inevitability I say, **Grace to you, and peace, from God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ. Amen.**